LPP 8

ALBERUNI'S INDIA

Vols. I & II
(Bound in One)

EDITED WITH NOTES AND INDICES

EDWARD C. SACHAU

LPP
Publication

Alberuni's India

ALBERUNI'S INDIA

An account of the religion, philosophy, literature, geography, chronology, astronomy, customs, laws and astrology of India about AD 1030

Edited with notes and Indices by
Dr. Edward C. Sachau

VOLUMES I AND II
(bound in one)

LOW PRICE PUBLICATIONS
DELHI - 110052

Distributed by
D K Publishers Distributors P Ltd.
24, Ansari Road, Darya Ganj,
New Delhi-110002
Phones: 23278368, 23261465, 23278584
Fax: 23264368
visit us at: www.dkpd.com
e-mail: dkpd@del3.vsnl.net.in

First Published 1910

Reprinted in **LPP** 1989, 1993, 1996, 2003

ISBN 81-7536-307-X

Published by
Low Price Publications
A-6, Nimri Commercial Centre,
Near Ashok Vihar Phase-IV,
Delhi-110052
Phone: 27401672, 27452453
visit us at: www.lppindia.com
e-mail: lpp@nde.vsnl.net.in

Printed at
D K Fine Art Press P Ltd.
Delhi-110052

PRINTED IN INDIA

Dedicated

TO

CHARLES SCHEFER,

MEMBRE DE L'INSTITUT, PARIS

AS

A HOMAGE BOTH TO

THE MAN AND THE SCHOLAR.

Distributed by
[illegible] Publishers Distributors (P) Ltd.
[illegible] Ansari Road, Daryaganj
New Delhi-110002
Phones: 2327[illegible]
Fax: [illegible]
Visit us at: [illegible]
e-mail: [illegible]

First Published 19[illegible]

Reprinted in 1998, 1999, [illegible]

ISBN 81-[illegible]

Published by
Low Price Publications
A-6, Nimri Commercial Centre
Near Ashok Vihar
Delhi-110052
Phones: [illegible]
Visit us at: [illegible]
e-mail: [illegible]

Printed at
[illegible]
Delhi-[illegible]

PRINTED IN INDIA

PREFACE.

I.

Mahmûd and Firdausî.

THE literary history of the East represents the court of King Maḥmûd at Ghazna, the leading monarch of Asiatic history between A.D. 997–1030, as having been a centre of literature, and of poetry in particular. There were four hundred poets chanting in his halls and gardens, at their head famous Unsurî, invested with the recently created dignity of a poet-laureate, who by his verdict opened the way to royal favour for rising talents; there was grand Firdausî, composing his heroic epos by the special orders of the king, with many more kindred spirits. Unfortunately history knows very little of all this, save the fact that Persian poets flocked together in Ghazna, trying their kasîdas on the king, his ministers and generals. History paints Maḥmûd as a successful warrior, but ignores him as a Mæcenas. With the sole exception of the lucubrations of bombastic Utbî, all contemporary records, the *Makâmât* of Abû-Naṣr Mishkânî, the *Ṭabakât* of his secretary Baihaḳî, the chronicles of Mullâ Muḥammad Ghaznavî, Maḥmûd Warrâk, and others, have perished, or not yet come to light, and the attempts at a literary history dating from a time 300–400 years later, the so-called *Tadhkiras*, weigh very light in the scale of matter-of-fact examination, failing almost invariably whenever they are applied to for information on some detail of ancient Persian literature. However this may be, Unsurî, the panegyrist, does not seem to have missed the sun of royal favour, whilst Firdausî, immortal Firdausî, had to fly in disguise to evade the doom of being trampled to death by elephants. Attracted by the rising fortune of the young emperor, he seems to have repaired to his court only a year after his enthronisation, *i.e.* A.D. 998. But when he had finished his *Shâhnâma*, and found himself disappointed in his hopes for reward, he flung at him his famous satire, and fled into peaceless exile (A.D. 1010).[1] In the case of the king *versus* the poet the king has lost. As long as Firdausî retains the place of honour accorded to him in the history of the world's mental achievements, the stigma will cling to the name of Maḥmûd, that he who hoarded up perhaps more worldly treasures than were ever hoarded up, did not know how to honour a poet destined for immortality.

And how did the author of this work, as remarkable among the prose compositions of the East as the *Shâhnâma* in poetry, fare with the royal Mæcenas of Ghazna?

Mahmûd and Alberuni.

Alberuni, or, as his compatriots called him, Abû Raiḥân, was born A.D. 973, in the territory of modern Khiva, then called Khwârizm, or Chorasmia in antiquity.[2] Early distinguishing himself in science and literature, he played a political part as councillor of the ruling prince of his native country of the Ma'mûnî family. The counsels he gave do not seem always to have suited the plans of King Maḥmûd at Ghazna, who was looking out for a pretext for interfering in the affairs of independent Khiva, although its rulers were his own near relatives. This pretext was furnished by a military *émeute*.

---

[1] *Cf.* J. Mohl, *Le Livre des Rois*, traduit, &c. Publié par Mme. Mohl, 1876, préface, pp. xl. *seq.*

[2] There is a reminiscence of his native country, i. 166, where he speaks of a kind of measure used in Khwârizm.

Maḥmûd marched into the country, not without some fighting, established there one of his generals as provincial governor, and soon returned to Ghazna with much booty and a great part of the Khiva troops, together with the princes of the deposed family of Ma'mûn and the leading men of the country as prisoners of war or as hostages. Among the last was Abû-Raiḥân Muḥammad Ibn Ahmad Alberuni.

This happened in the spring and summer of A.D. 1017. The Chorasmian princes were sent to distant fortresses as prisoners of state, the Chorasmian soldiers were incorporated in Maḥmûd's Indian army; and Alberuni—what treatment did *he* experience at Ghazna? From the very outset it is not likely that both the king and his chancellor, Aḥmad Ibn Hasan Maimandî, should have accorded special favours to a man whom they knew to have been their political antagonist for years. The latter, the same man who had been the cause of the tragic catastrophe in the life of Firdausî, was in office under Maḥmûd from A.D. 1007–1025, and a second time under his son and successor, Mas'ûd, from 1030–1033. There is nothing to tell us that Alberuni was ever in the service of the state or court in Ghazna. A friend of his and companion of his exile, the Christian philosopher and physician from Bagdad, Abulkhair Alkhammâr, seems to have practised in Ghazna his medical profession. Alberuni probably enjoyed the reputation of a great *munajjim*, *i.e.* astrologer-astronomer, and perhaps it was in this quality that he had relations to the court and its head, as Tycho de Brahe to the Emperor Rudolf. When writing the 'Ινδικά, thirteen years after his involuntary immigration to Afghanistan, he was a master of astrology, both according to the Greek and the Hindu system, and indeed Eastern writers of later centuries seem to consider him as having been the court astrologer of King Maḥmûd. In a book written five hundred years later (v. *Chresto-*

mathie Persane, &c., par Ch. Schefer, Paris, 1883, i. p. 107 of the Persian text), there is a story of a practical joke which Maḥmûd played on Alberuni as an astrologer. Whether this be historic truth or a late invention, anyhow the story does not throw much light on the author's situation in a period of his life which is the most interesting to us, that one, namely, when he commenced to study India, Sanskrit and Sanskrit literature.

Historic tradition failing us, we are reduced to a single source of information—the author's work—and must examine to what degree his personal relations are indicated by his own words. When he wrote, King Maḥmûd had been dead only a few weeks. *Le roi est mort*—but to whom was *Vive le roi* to be addressed?

Two heirs claimed the throne, Muḥammad and Mas'ûd, and were marching against each other to settle their claims by the sword. Under these circumstances it comes out as a characteristic fact that the book has no dedication whatever, either to the memory of Maḥmûd, or to one of the rival princes, or to any of the indifferent or non-political princes of the royal house. As a cautious politician, he awaited the issue of the contest; but when the dice had been thrown, and Mas'ûd was firmly established on the throne of his father, he at once hastened to dedicate to him the greatest work of his life, the *Canon Masudicus.* If he had been affected by any feeling of sincere gratitude, he might have erected in the 'Ινδικά a monument to the memory of the dead king, under whose rule he had made the necessary preparatory studies, and might have praised him as the great propagator of Islam, without probably incurring any risk. He has not done so, and the terms in which he speaks of Maḥmûd throughout his book are not such as a man would use when speaking of a deceased person who had been his benefactor.

He is called simply *The Amîr Maḥmûd*, ii. 13 (Arabic text, p. 208, 9), *The Amîr Maḥmûd, may God's mercy be with him*, i. 116 (text, p. 56, 8), *The Amîr Maḥmûd, may the grace of God be with him*, ii. 103 (text, p. 252, 11). The title *Amîr* was nothing very complimentary. It had been borne by his ancestors when they were simply generals and provincial governors in the service of the Sâmânî king of Transoxiana and Khurasan. Speaking of Maḥmûd and his father Sabuktagîn, the author says, *Yamîn-aldaula Maḥmûd, may God's mercy be with them*, i. 22 (text, p. 11, 9). He had received the title *Yamîn-aldaula, i.e. The right hand of the dynasty* (of the Khalif), from the Khalif, as a recognition of the legitimacy of his rule, resembling the investiture of the German Emperor by the Pope in the Middle Ages. Lastly, we find at ii. 2 (text, p. 203, 20) the following terms: "*The strongest of the pillars* (of Islam), *the pattern of a Sultan, Maḥmûd, the lion of the world and the rarity of the age, may God's mercy be with him.*"

Whoever knows the style of Oriental authors when speaking of crowned heads, the style of their prefaces, which attains the height of absurdity at the court of the Moghul emperors at Delhi, will agree with me that the manner in which the author mentions the dead king is cold, cold in the extreme; that the words of praise bestowed upon him are meagre and stiff, a poor sort of praise for a man who had been the first man in Islam, and the founder of Islam in India; lastly, that the phrases of benediction which are appended to his name, according to a general custom of Islam, are the same as the author would have employed when speaking of any acquaintance of his in common life who had died. He says of Maḥmûd (i. 22): "He utterly ruined the prosperity of the country (of India), and performed those wonderful exploits by which the Hindus became like atoms of dust scattered in all directions, and like a tale of old in the mouth of the people." To criticise these words from a Muslim point of view, the passage of the ruining of the prosperity of the country was perfectly out of place in the glorification of a Ghâzî like Maḥmûd.

That it was not at all against the moral principles of Alberuni to write such dedications to princes is shown by two other publications of his, with dedications which exhibit the customary Byzantinism of the time. In the preface of the "Chronology of Ancient Nations" (translated, &c., by Edward Sachau, London, 1879), he extols with abundant praise the prince of Hyrcania or Jurjân, Shams-alma'âlî, who was a dwarf by the side of giant Maḥmûd. The studied character of the neglect of Maḥmûd in the 'Ινδικά comes out more strongly if we compare the unmerited praise which Alberuni lavishes upon his son and successor. The preface of his *Canon Masudicus* is a farrago of high-sounding words in honour of King Mas'ûd, who was a drunkard, and lost in less than a decennium most of what his father's sword and policy had gained in thirty-three years. The tenor of this preface, taken from the manuscript of the Royal Library in Berlin, is as follows:—

To those who lead the community of the believers in the place of the Prophet and by the help of the Word of God belongs "the king, the lord majestic and venerated, the helper of the representative of God, the furtherer of the law of God, the protector of the slaves of God, who punishes the enemies of God, Abû-Sa'îd Mas'ûd Ibn Yamîn-aldaula and 'Amîn-almilla Maḥmûd—may God give him a long life, and let him perpetually rise to glorious and memorable deeds. For a confirmation of what we here say of him lies in the fact that God, on considering the matter, restored the right (*i.e.* the right of being ruled by Mas'ûd) to his people, after it had been concealed. God brought it to light. After he had been in distress, God helped him. After he had been rejected, God raised him, and brought him the empire and the rule, after people from all sides had tried to get possession of it, speaking: 'How should he come to rule over us, as we have a better right to the rule than he?' But then they received (from God) an answer in the event (lit. sign) which followed. God carried out His promise relating to him (Masʿûd), giving him the inheritance without his asking for it, as He gave the inheritance of David to Solomon without reserve. (That is, the dead King Maḥmûd had proclaimed as his successor his son Muḥammad, not Masʿûd, but the latter contested the will of his father, and in the following contest with his brother he was the winner.) If God had not chosen him, the hearts of men would not have been gained (?) for him, and the intrigues of his enemies would not have missed their aim. In short, the souls of men hastened to meet him in order to live under his shadow. The order of God was an act of predestination, and his becoming king was written in the Book of Books in heaven (from all eternity).

"He—may God make his rule everlasting!—has conferred upon me a favour which was a high distinction to me, and has placed me under the obligation of everlasting gratitude. For although a benefactor may dispense with the thank-offerings for his deeds, &c., a sound heart inspires those who receive them with the fear that they might be lost (to general notice), and lays upon them the obligation of spreading them and making them known in the world. But already, before I received this favour, I shared with the inhabitants of all his countries the blessings of his rule, of peace and justice. However, then the *special service* (towards his Majesty) became incumbent upon me, after (until that time) obeying in general (his Majesty) had been incumbent on me. (This means, probably, that Masʿûd conferred a special benefit (a pension?) on the author, not immediately after he had come to the throne, but some time later.) Is it not he who has enabled me for the rest of my life (Alberuni was then sixty-one years old) to devote myself entirely to the service of science, as he let me dwell under the shadow of his power and let the cloud of his favour rain on me, always personally distinguishing and befriending me, &c.? And with regard to this (the favour conferred upon me), he has deigned to send his orders to the treasury and the ministry, which certainly is the utmost that kings can do for their subjects. May God Almighty reward him both in this and in yonder world," &c.

Thereupon, finding that his Majesty did not require his actual service, and besides, finding that science stood in the highest favour with him, he composes a book on astronomy, to which he had been addicted all his life, and adorns it with the name of his Majesty, calling it *Canon Masudicus* (*Alḳânûn Almasʿûdî*), &c.

To put the phrases of this preface into plain language, the author was in favour with King Masʿûd; he had access to the court—living, probably, near it—and received an income which enabled him to devote himself entirely to his scientific work. Besides, all this appears as a new state of things, the reverse of which had been the case under the king's predecessor, his father, Maḥmûd. We do not know the year in which this change in the life of Alberuni was brought about. Perhaps it was in some way connected with the fact that the chancellor, Maimandî, died A.D. 1033, and that after him one Abû-Naṣr Aḥmad Ibn Muḥammad Ibn ʿAbdusṣamad became chancellor, who before, *i.e.* from 1017 to 1033, had administered Khwarizm, the native country of Alberuni. He and Maimandî had been political antagonists—not so he and ʿAbdusṣamad.

The difference of the author's condition, as it appears to have been under Masʿûd, from what it was under Maḥmûd when he prepared the Ἰνδικά, is further illustrated by certain passages in the book itself. When speaking of the difficulties with which he had to grapple in his efforts to learn everything about India, he continues: "What scholar, however, has the same favourable opportunities of studying this subject as I have? That would be only the case with one to whom the grace of God accords, what it did not accord to me, a perfectly free disposal of his own doings and goings; fòr it has never fallen to my lot in my own doings and goings to be perfectly independent, nor to be invested with sufficient power to dispose and to order as I thought best. However, I thank God for that which He has bestowed upon me, and which must be considered as sufficient for the purpose" (i. 24). These lines seem to say that the author, both at Ghazna and in India, at Multân, Peshâvar, &c., had the opportunity of conversing with pandits, of procuring their help, and of buying books; that, however, in other directions he was not his own master, but had to obey a higher will; and lastly, that he was not a man in authority.

In another place (i. 152) he explains that art and science require the protection of kings. "For they alone could free the minds of scholars from the daily anxieties for the necessities of life, and stimulate their energies to earn more fame and favour, the yearning for which is the pith and marrow of human nature. The present times, however, are not of this kind. They are the very opposite, and therefore it is quite impossible that a new science or any new kind of research should arise in our days. What we have of sciences is nothing but the scanty remains of bygone better times." Compare with this a dictum quoted (i. 188): "The scholars are well aware of the use of money, but the rich are ignorant of the nobility of science."

These are not the words of an author who basks in the sunshine of royal protection. The time he speaks of is the time of Maḥmûd, and it is Maḥmûd whom he accuses of having failed in the duties of a protector of art and science imposed upon him by his royal office. Firdausi, in his satire (Mohl, i. préf. p. xlv.), calls him "*un roi qui n'a ni foi ni loi ni manières*" (*royales*); and he says: "*Si le roi avait été un homme digne de renom, il aurait honoré le savoir,*" &c. It is most remarkable to what degree Firdausî and Alberuni agree in their judgment of the king. To neither of them had he been a Mæcenas.

In the absence of positive information, we have tried to form a chain of combinations from which we may infer, with a tolerable degree of certainty, that our author, during the thirteen years of his life from 1017 to 1030, after he had been carried from his native country to the centre of Maḥmûd's realm, did not enjoy the favours of the king and his leading men; that he stayed in different parts of India (as a companion of the princes of his native country?), probably in the character of a hostage or political prisoner kept on honourable terms; that he spent his leisure in the study of India; and that he had no official inducement or encouragement for this study, nor any hope of royal reward.

A radical change in all this takes place with the accession of Mas'ûd. There is no more complaint of the time and its ruler. Alberuni is all glee and exultation about the royal favours and support accorded to him and to his studies. He now wrote the greatest work of his life,[1] and with a swelling heart and overflowing words he proclaims in the preface the praise of his benefactor. Living in Ghazna, he seems to have forgotten India to a great extent. For in the *Canon Masudicus* he rarely refers to India; its chapter on Hindu eras does not prove any progress of his studies beyond that which he exhibits in the Ἰνδικά, and at the end of it he is even capable of confounding the era of the astronomers, as used in the *Khaṇḍakhâdyaka* of Brahmagupta, with the Guptakâla.

---

[1] The *Canon Masudicus*, extant in four good copies in European libraries, waits for the patronage of some Academy of Sciences or some Government, and for the combination of two scholars, an astronomer and an Arabic philologist, for the purpose of an edition and translation.

The author's interest in India.

If the author and his countrymen had suffered and were still suffering from the oppression of King Maḥmûd, the Hindus were in the same position, and perhaps it was this community of mishap which inspired him with sympathy for them. And certainly the Hindus and their world of thought have a paramount, fascinating interest for him, and he inquires with the greatest predilection into every Indian subject, howsoever heathenish it may be, as though he were treating of the most important questions for the souls of Muhammadans,—of free-will and predestination, of future reward and punishment, of the creation or eternity of the Word of God, &c. To Maḥmûd the Hindus were infidels, to be dispatched to hell as soon as they refused to be plundered. To go on expeditions and to fill the treasury with gold, not to make lasting conquests of territories, was the real object of his famous expeditions; and it was with this view that he cut his way through enormous distances to the richest temples of India at Tanêshar, Mathurâ, Kanoj, and Somanâth.

To Alberuni the Hindus were excellent philosophers, good mathematicians and astronomers, though he naïvely believes himself to be superior to them, and disdains to be put on a level with them (i. 23).[1] He does not conceal whatever he considers wrong and unpractical with them, but he duly appreciates their mental achievements, takes the greatest pains to appropriate them to himself, even such as could not be of any use to him or to his readers, *e.g.* Sanskrit metrics; and whenever he hits upon something that is noble and grand both in science and in practical life, he never fails to lay it before his readers with warm-hearted words of approbation. Speaking of the construction of the ponds at holy bathing-places, he says: "In this they have attained a very high degree of art, so that our people (the Muslims), when they see them, wonder at them, and are unable to describe them, much less to construct anything like them" (ii. 144).

---

[1] For a similar trait of self-confidence *cf.* i. 277, last lines.

Apparently Alberuni felt a strong inclination towards Indian philosophy. He seems to have thought that the philosophers both in ancient Greece and India, whom he most carefully and repeatedly distinguishes from the ignorant, image-loving crowd, held in reality the very same ideas, the same as seem to have been his own, *i.e.* those of a pure monotheism; that, in fact, originally all men were alike pure and virtuous, worshipping one sole Almighty God, but that the dark passions of the crowd in the course of time had given rise to the difference of religion, of philosophical and political persuasions, and of idolatry. "The first cause of idolatry was the desire of commemorating the dead and of consoling the living; but on this basis it has developed, and has finally become a foul and pernicious abuse" (i. 124).

He seems to have revelled in the pure theories of the *Bhagavadgîtâ*, and it deserves to be noticed that he twice mentions the saying of Vyâsa, "Learn twenty-five (*i.e.*, the elements of existence) by distinctions, &c. Afterwards adhere to whatever religion you like; your end will be salvation" (i. 44, and also i. 104). In one case he even goes so far as to speak of Hindu scholars as "*enjoying the help of God*," which to a Muslim means as much as *inspired by God, guided by divine inspiration* (ii. 108). These words are an addition of the author's in his paraphrase of the *Brihatsaṁhitâ* of Varâhamihira, v. 8. There can be scarcely any doubt that Muslims of later times would have found fault with him for going to such length in his interest for those heathenish doctrines, and it is a singular fact that Alberuni wrote under a prince who burned and impaled the Karmatians (*cf.* note to i. 31).

Still he was a Muslim; whether Sunnî or Shî‘a cannot be gathered from the Ἰνδικά. He sometimes takes an occasion for pointing out to the reader the superiority of Islam over Brahmanic India. He contrasts the democratic equality of men with the castes of India, the matrimonial law of Islam with degraded forms of it in India, the cleanliness and decency of Muslims with filthy customs of the Hindus. With all this, his recognition of Islam is not without a tacit reserve. He dares not attack Islam, but he attacks the Arabs. In his work on chronology he reproaches the ancient Muslims with having destroyed the civilisation of Eran, and gives us to understand that the ancient Arabs were certainly nothing better than the Zoroastrian Eranians. So too in the Ἰνδικά, whenever he speaks of a dark side in Hindu life, he at once turns round sharply to compare the manners of the ancient Arabs, and to declare that they were quite as bad, if not worse. This could only be meant as a hint to the Muslim reader not to be too haughty towards the poor bewildered Hindu, trodden down by the savage hordes of King Maḥmûd, and not to forget that the founders of Islam, too, were certainly no angels.

The author's character.

Independent in his thoughts about religion and philosophy, he is a friend of clear, determined, and manly words. He abhors half-truths, veiled words, and wavering action. Everywhere he comes forward as a champion of his conviction with the courage of a man. As in religion and philosophy, so too in politics. There are some remarkable sentences of political philosophy in the introductions to chapters ix. and lxxi. As a politician of a highly conservative stamp, he stands up for throne and altar, and declares that "their union represents the highest development of human society, all that men can possibly desire" (i. 99). He is capable of admiring the mildness of the law of the Gospel: "To offer to him who has beaten your cheek the other cheek also, to bless your enemy and to pray for him. Upon my life, this is a noble philosophy; but the people of this world are not all philosophers. Most of them are ignorant and erring, who cannot be kept on the straight road save by the sword and the whip. And, indeed, ever since Constantine the Victorious became a Christian, both sword and whip have ever been employed, for without them it would be impossible to rule" (ii. 161). Although a scholar by profession, he is capable of taking the practical side of a case, and he applauds the Khalif Mu'âviya for having sold the golden gods of Sicily to the princes of Sindh for money's worth, instead of destroying them as heathen abominations, as bigoted Muslims would probably have liked him to do. His preaching the union of throne and altar does not prevent him from speaking with undisguised contempt of the "preconcerted tricks of the priests" having the purpose of enthralling the ignorant crowd (i. 123).

He is a stern judge both of himself and of others. Himself perfectly sincere, it is sincerity which he demands from others. Whenever he does not fully understand a subject, or only knows part of it, he will at once tell the reader so, either asking the reader's pardon for his ignorance, or promising, though a man of fifty-eight years, to continue his labours and to publish their results in time, as though he were acting under a moral responsibility to the public. He always sharply draws the limits of his knowledge; and although he has only a smattering of the metrical system of the Hindus, he communicates whatever little he knows, guided by the principle that the best must not be the enemy of the better (i. 200, 6–9), as though he were afraid that he should not live long enough to finish the study in question. He is not a friend of those who hate to avow their ignorance by a frank *I do not know*" (i. 177), and he is roused to strong indignation whenever he meets with want of sincerity. If Brahmagupta teaches two theories of the eclipses, the popular one of the dragon Râhu's devouring the luminous body, and the scientific one, he certainly committed the sin against conscience from undue concessions to the priests of the nation, and from fear of a fate like that which befell Socrates when he came into collision with the persuasions of the majority of his countrymen. *Cf.* chapter lix. In another place he accuses Brahmagupta of injustice and rudeness to his predecessor, Aryabhaṭa (i. 376). He finds in the works of Varâhamihira by the side of honest scientific work sentences which sound to him "*like the ravings of a madman*" (ii. 117), but he is kind enough to suggest that behind those passages there is perhaps an esoteric meaning, unknown to him, but more to the credit of the author. When, however, Varâhamihira seems to exceed all limits of common sense, Alberuni thinks that "*to such things silence is the only proper answer*" (ii. 114).

His professional zeal, and the principle that *learning is the fruit of repetition* (ii. 198), sometimes induce him to indulge in repetitions, and his thorough honesty sometimes misleads him to use harsh and even rude words. He cordially hates the verbosity of Indian authors or versifiers,[1] who use lots of words where a single one would be sufficient. He calls it "mere nonsense—a means of keeping people in the dark and throwing an air of mystery about the subject. And in any case this copiousness (of words denoting the same thing) offers painful difficulties to those who want to learn the whole language, and only results in a sheer waste of time" (i. 229, 299, 19). He twice explains the origin of the Dîbajat, *i.e.* Maledives and Laccadives (i. 233; ii. 106), twice the configuration of the borders of the Indian Ocean (i. 197, 270).

Whenever he suspects humbug, he is not backward in calling it by the right name. Thinking of the horrid practices of Rasâyana, *i.e.* the art of making gold, of making old people young, &c., he bursts out into sarcastic words which are more coarse in the original than in my translation (i. 189). In eloquent words he utters his indignation on the same subject (i. 193): "The greediness of the ignorant Hindu princes for gold-making does not know any limit," &c. There is a spark of grim humour in his words on i. 237, where he criticises the cosmographic ravings of a Hindu author: "We, on our part, found it already troublesome enough to enumerate all the seven seas, together with the seven earths, and now this author thinks he can make the subject more easy and pleasant to us by inventing some more earths below those already enumerated by ourselves!" And when jugglers from Kanoj lectured to him on chronology, the stern scholar seems to have been moved to something like a grin. "I used great care in examining every single one of them, in repeating the same questions at different times in a different order and context. But lo! what different answers did I get! God is all-wise" (ii. 129).

---

[1] *Cf.* his sarcasms on the versifying bias of Hindu authors, i. 137.

The tendency of his work. In the opening of his book Alberuni gives an account of the circumstances which suggested to him the idea of writing the 'Ινδικά. Once the conversation with a friend of his, else unknown, ran on the then existing literature on the history of religion and philosophy, its merits and demerits. When, in particular, the literature on the belief of the Hindus came to be criticised, Alberuni maintained that all of it was second-hand and thoroughly uncritical. To verify the matter, his friend once more examines the books in question, which results in his agreeing with our author, and his asking him to fill up this gap in the Arabic literature of the time. The book he has produced is not a polemical one. He will not convert the Hindus, nor lend a direct help to missionary zealots. He will simply describe Hinduism, without identifying himself with it. He takes care to inform the reader that *he* is not responsible for whatsoever repugnant detail he has to relate, but the Hindus themselves. He gives a repertory of information on Indian subjects, destined for the use of those who lived in peaceable intercourse with them, and wished to have an insight into their mode and world of thought (i. 7; ii. 246).

The author has nothing in common with the Muhammadan Ghâzî who wanted to convert the Hindus or to kill them, and his book scarcely reminds the reader of the incessant war between Islam and India, during which it had been prepared, and by which the possibility of writing such a book had first been given. It is like a magic island of quiet, impartial research in the midst of a world of clashing swords, burning towns, and plundered temples. The object which the author had in view, and never for a moment lost sight of, was to afford the necessary information and training to "*any one* (in Islam) *who wants to converse with the Hindus, and to discuss with them questions of religion, science, or literature, on the very basis of their own civilisation*" (ii. 246).

The author and his readers.

It is difficult to say what kind of readers Alberuni had, or expected to have, not only for the 'Ινδικά, but for all his other publications on Indian subjects. Probably educated, and not bigoted or fanatical Muslims in Sindh, in parts of the Panjab, where they were living by the side of Hindus and in daily intercourse with them; perhaps, also, for such in Kabul, the suburb of which had still a Hindu population in the second half of the tenth century, Ghazna, and other parts of Afghanistan. When speaking of the *Pulisasiddhânta,* a standard work on astronomy, he says: "A translation of his (Pulisa's) whole work into Arabic has not hitherto yet been undertaken, because in his mathematical problems there is an evident religious and theological tendency"[1] (i. 375). He does not tell us what this particular tendency was to which the readers objected, but we learn so much from this note that in his time, and probably also in his neighbourhood, there were circles of educated men who had an interest in getting the scientific works of India translated into Arabic, who at the same time were sufficiently familiar with the subject-matter to criticise the various representations of the same subject, and to give the preference to one, to the exclusion of another. That our author had a certain public among Hindus seems to be indicated by the fact that he composed some publications for people in Kashmîr; *cf.* preface to the edition of the text, p. xx. These relations to Kashmîr are very difficult to understand, as Muslims had not yet conquered the country, nor entered it to any extent, and as the author himself (i. 206) relates that it was closed to intercourse with all strangers save a few Jews. Whatever the interest of Muslims for the literature of and on India may have been, we are under the impression that this kind of literature has never taken deep root; for after Alberuni's death, in A.D. 1048, there is no more original work in this field; and even Alberuni, when he wrote, was quite alone in the field. Enumerating the difficulties which beset his study of India, he says: "I found it very hard to work into the subject, although I have a great liking for it, *in which respect I stand quite alone in my time*," &c. (i. 24). And certainly we do not know of any Indianist like him, before his time or after.

---

[1] Alberuni does not seem to have shared these scruples, for he translated it into Arabic (*cf.* i. 154).

The author's method.

In general it is the method of our author not to speak himself, but to let the Hindus speak, giving extensive quotations from their classical authors. He presents a picture of Indian civilisation as painted by the Hindus themselves. Many chapters, not all, open with a short characteristic introduction of a general nature. The body of most chapters consists of three parts. The first is a *précis* of the question, as the author understands it.

The second part brings forward the doctrines of the Hindus, quotations from Sanskrit books in the chapters on religion, philosophy, astronomy, and astrology, and other kinds of information which had been communicated to him by word of mouth, or things which he had himself observed in the chapters on literature, historic chronology, geography, law, manners, and customs. In the third part he does the same as Megasthenes had already done; he tries to bring the sometimes very exotic subject nearer to the understanding of his readers by comparing it with the theories of ancient Greece, and by other comparisons. As an example of this kind of arrangement, *cf.* Chapter v. In the disposition of every single chapter, as well as in the sequence of the chapters, a perspicuous, well-considered plan is apparent. There is no patchwork nor anything superfluous, and the words fit to the subject as close as possible. We seem to recognise the professional mathematician in the perspicuity and classical order throughout the whole composition, and there was scarcely an occasion for him to excuse himself, as he does at the end of Chapter i. (i. 26), for not being able everywhere strictly to adhere to the geometrical method, as he was sometimes compelled to introduce an unknown factor, because the explanation could only be given in a later part of the book.

The author's critical mind.

He does not blindly accept the traditions of former ages; he wants to understand and to criticise them. He wants to sift the wheat from the chaff, and he will discard everything that militates against the laws of nature and of reason. The reader will remember that Alberuni was also a physical scholar, and had published works on most departments of natural science, optics, mechanics, mineralogy, and chemistry; *cf.* his geological speculation on the indications of India once having been a sea (i. 198), and a characteristic specimen of his natural philosophy (i. 400). That he believed in the action of the planets on the sublunary world I take for certain, though he nowhere says so. It would hardly be intelligible why he should have spent so much time and labour on the study of Greek and Indian astrology if he had not believed in the truth of the thing. He gives a sketch of Indian astrology in Chapter lxxx., because Muslim readers "are not acquainted with the Hindu methods of astrology, and have never had an opportunity of studying an Indian book" (ii. 211). Bardesanes, a Syrian philosopher and poet in the second half of the second Christian century, condemned astrology in plain and weighty words. Alberuni did not rise to this height, remaining entangled in the notions of Greek astrology.

He did not believe in alchemy, for he distinguishes between such of its practices as are of a chemical or mineralogical character, and such as are intentional deceit, which he condemns in the strongest possible terms (i. 187).

He criticises manuscript tradition like a modern philologist. He sometimes supposes the text to be corrupt, and inquires into the cause of the corruption; he discusses various readings, and proposes emendations. He guesses at *lacunæ*, criticises different translations, and complains of the carelessness and ignorance of the copyists (ii. 76; i. 162–163). He is aware that Indian works, badly translated and carelessly copied by the successive copyists, very soon degenerate to such a degree that an Indian author would hardly recognise his own work, if it were presented to him in such a garb. All these complaints are perfectly true, particularly as regards the proper names. That in his essays at emendation he sometimes went astray, that, *e.g.* he was not prepared fully to do justice to Brahmagupta, will readily be excused by the fact that at his time it was next to impossible to learn Sanskrit with a sufficient degree of accuracy and completeness.

When I drew the first sketch of the life of Alberuni ten years ago, I cherished the hope that more materials for his biography would come to light in the libraries of both the East and West. This has not been the case, so far as I am aware. To gain an estimate of his character we must try to read between the lines of his books, and to glean whatever minute indications may there be found. A picture of his character cannot therefore at the present be anything but very imperfect, and a detailed appreciation of his services in the advancement of science cannot be undertaken until all the numerous works of his pen have been studied and rendered accessible to the learned world. The principal domain of his work included astronomy, mathematics, chronology, mathematical geography, physics, chemistry, and mineralogy. By the side of this professional work he composed about twenty books on India, both translations and original compositions, and a number of tales and legends, mostly derived from the ancient lore of Eran and India. As probably most valuable contributions to the historic literature of the time, we must mention his history of his native country Khwârizm, and the history of the famous sect of the Karmatians, the loss of both of which is much to be deplored.

II.

On the *origines* of Arabic literature.

The court of the Khalifs of the house of Omayya at Damascus does not seem to have been a home for literature. Except for the practical necessities of administration, they had no desire for the civilisation of Greece, Egypt, or Persia, their thoughts being engrossed by war and politics and the amassing of wealth. Probably they had a certain predilection for poetry common to all Arabs, but they did not think of encouraging historiography, much to their own disadvantage. In many ways these Arab princes, only recently emerged from the rocky wilderness of the Hijâz, and suddenly raised to imperial power, retained much of the great Bedouin Shaikh of the desert. Several of them, shunning Damascus, preferred to stay in the desert or on its border, and we may surmise that in their households at Rusâfa and Khunâsara there was scarcely more thought of literature than at present in the halls of Ibn Arrashîd, the wily head of the Shammar at Hâil. The cradle of Arabic literature is not Damascus, but Bagdad, and the protection necessary for its rise and growth was afforded by the Khalifs of the house of Abbâs, whose Arab nature has been modified by the influence of Eranian civilisation during a long stay in Khurâsân.

The foundation of Arabic literature was laid between A.D. 750 and 850. It is only the tradition relating to their religion and prophet and poetry that is peculiar to the Arabs; everything else is of foreign descent. The development of a large literature, with numerous ramifications, is chiefly the work of foreigners, carried out with foreign materials, as in Rome the *origines* of the national literature mostly point to Greek sources. Greece, Persia, and India were taxed to help the sterility of the Arab mind.

What Greece has contributed by lending its Aristotle, Ptolemy, and Harpocrates is known in general. A detailed description of the influx and spread of Greek literature would mark a memorable progress in Oriental philology. Such a work may be undertaken with some chance of success by one who is familiar with the state of Greek literature at the centres of learning during the last centuries of Greek heathendom, although he would have to struggle against the lamentable fact that most Arabic books of this most ancient period are lost, and probably lost for ever.

Persian element in Arabic literature.

What did Persia, or rather the Sasanian empire, overrun by the Arab hordes, offer to its victors in literature?

It left to the east of the Khalifate the language of administration, the use of which during the following centuries, till recent times, was probably never much discontinued. It was this Perso-Sasanian language of administration which passed into the use of the smaller Eastern dynasties, reared under the Abbaside Khalifs, and became the language of literature at the court of one of those dynasties, that of the Sâmânî kings of Transoxiana and Khurâsân. Thus it has come to pass that the dialect of one of the most western parts of Eran first emerged as the language of literature in its farthest east. In a similar way modern German is an offspring of the language used in the chanceries of the Luxembourg emperors of Germany.

The bulk of the narrative literature, tales, legends, novels, came to the Arabs in translations from the Persian, *e.g.* the "Thousand and One Nights," the stories told by the mouth of animals, like *Kalîla and Dimna*, probably all of Buddhistic origin, portions of the national lore of Eran, taken from the *Khudâinâma*, or Lord's Book, and afterwards immortalised by Firdausî; but more than anything else love-stories. All this was the fashion under the Abbaside Khalifs, and is said to have attained the height of popularity during the rule of Almuḳtadir, A.D. 908–932. Besides, much favour was apparently bestowed upon didactic, parænetic compositions, mostly clothed in the garb of a testament of this or that Sasanian king or sage, *e.g.* Anushirvân and his minister Buzurjumihr, likewise upon collections of moralistic apothegms. All this was translated from Persian, or pretended to be so. Books on the science of war, the knowledge of weapons, the veterinary art, falconry, and the various methods of divination, and some books on medicine and *de rebus venereis*, were likewise borrowed from the Persians. It is noteworthy that, on the other hand, there are very few traces of the exact sciences, such as mathematics and astronomy, among the Sasanian Persians. Either they had only little of this kind, or the Arabs did not choose to get it translated.

An author by the name of 'Alî Ibn Ziyâd Altamîmî is said to have translated from Persian a book, *Zîj-alshahriyâr*, which, to judge by the title, must have been a system of astronomy. It seems to have been extant when Alberuni wrote his work on chronology; *vide* "Chronology of Ancient Nations," translated, &c., by Edward Sachau, London, 1876, p. 6, and note p. 368. Perhaps it was from this source that the famous Alkhwârizmî drew his knowledge of Persian astronomy, which he is said to have exhibited in his extract from the *Brahmasiddhânta*, composed by order of the Khalif Ma'mûn. For we are expressly told (*vide* Gildemeister, *Scriptorum Arabum de rebus Indicis loci*, &c., p. 101) that he used the *media*, *i.e.* the mean places of the planets as fixed by Brahmagupta, whilst in other things he deviated from him, giving the equations of the planetary revolutions according to the theory of the *Persians*, and the declination of the sun according to Ptolemy. Of what kind this Persian astronomy was we do not know, but we must assume that it was of a scientific character, based on observation and computation, else Alkhwârizmî would not have introduced its results into his own work. Of the terminology of Arabian astronomy, the word *jauzahar* = Caput draconis, is probably of Sasanian origin (*gaocithra*), as well as the word *zîj* (= canon), *i.e.* a collection of astronomical tables with the necessary explanations, perhaps also *kardaj, kardaja*, a measure in geometry equal to $\frac{1}{96}$ of the circumference of a circle, if it be identical with the Persian *karda*, *i.e. cut*.

Indian elements in Arabic literature.

What India has contributed reached Bagdad by two different roads. Part has come directly in translations from the Sanskrit, part has travelled through Eran, having originally been translated from Sanskrit (Pali? Prâkṛit?) into Persian, and farther from Persian into

Arabic. In this way, *e.g.* the fables of *Kalîla and Dimna* have been communicated to the Arabs, and a book on medicine, probably the famous *Caraka*. *Cf.* Fihrist, p. 303.

In this communication between India and Bagdad we must not only distinguish between two different roads, but also between two different periods.

As Sindh was under the actual rule of the Khalif Mansûr (A.D 753–774), there came embassies from that part of India to Bagdad, and among them scholars, who brought along with them two books, the *Brahmasiddhânta* to Brahmagupta (Sindhind), and his *Khaṇḍakhâdyaka* (Arkand). With the help of these pandits, Alfazârî, perhaps also Yakûb Ibn Târik, translated them. Both works have been largely used, and have exercised a great influence. It was on this occasion that the Arabs first became acquainted with a scientific system of astronomy. They learned from Brahmagupta earlier than from Ptolemy.

Another influx of Hindu learning took place under Harun, A.D. 786–808. The ministerial family Barmak, then at the zenith of their power, had come with the ruling dynasty from Balkh, where an ancestor of theirs had been an official in the Buddhistic temple *Naubehâr*, i.e. *nava vihâra* = the new temple (or monastery). The name Barmak is said to be of Indian descent, meaning *paramaka*, *i.e.* the superior (abbot of the *vihâra ?*). *Cf.* Kern, *Geschichte des Buddhismus in Indien*, ii. 445, 543. Of course, the Barmak family had been converted, but their contemporaries never thought much of their profession of Islam, nor regarded it as genuine. Induced probably by family traditions, they sent scholars to India, there to study medicine and pharmacology. Besides, they engaged Hindu scholars to come to Bagdad, made them the chief physicians of their hospitals, and ordered them to translate from Sanskrit into Arabic books on medicine, pharmacology, toxicology, philosophy, astrology, and other subjects. Still in later centuries Muslim scholars sometimes travelled for the same purposes as the emissaries of the Barmak, *e.g.* Almuwaffak not long before Alberuni's time (*Codex Vindobonensis, sive medici Abu Mansur liber fundamentorum pharmacologiæ*, ed. Seligmann, Vienna, 1859, pp. 6, 10, and 15, 9).

Soon afterwards, when Sindh was no longer politically dependent upon Bagdad, all this intercourse ceased entirely. Arabic literature turned off into other channels. There is no more mention of the presence of Hindu scholars at Bagdad nor of translations of the Sanskrit. Greek learning had already won an omnipotent sway over the mind of the Arabs, being communicated to them by the labours of Nestorian physicians, the philosophers of Harrân, and Christian scholars in Syria and other parts of the Khalifate. Of the more ancient or Indo-Arabian stratum of scientific literature nothing has reached our time save a number of titles of books, many of them in such a corrupt form as to baffle all attempts at decipherment.

Among the Hindu physicians of this time one ابن دهن is mentioned, *i.e. the son of DHN*, director of the hospital of the Barmaks in Bagdad. This name may be *Dhanya* or *Dhanin*, chosen probably on account of its etymological relationship with the name *Dhanvantari*, the name of the mythical physician of the gods in Manu's law-book and the epos (*cf.* A. Weber, *Indische Litteraturgeschichte*, pp. 284, 287). A similar relation seems to exist between the names *Kaṅka*, that of a physician of the same period, and *Kâṅkâyana*, an authority in Indian medicine (*cf.* Weber, *l. c.*, pp. 287 note, and 284 note, 302).

The name اطر, that of an author of a book on drinkables, may be identical with *Atri*, mentioned as a medical author by Weber, *l. c.*, p. 288.

There was a book by one بيدبا (also written بيدباه) on wisdom or philosophy (*cf.* Fihrist, p. 305). According to Middle-Indian phonetics this name is = *vedavyâsa.*[1] A man of this name, also called *Vyâsa* or *Bâdarâyaṇa*, is, according to the literary tradition of India, the originator of the Vedânta school of philosophy (*cf.* Colebroke, Essays, i. 352), and this will remind the reader that in the Arabian Sufism the Indian Vedânta philosophy reappears.

Further, an author سادبرم, *Sadbrm,*[2] is mentioned, unfortunately without an indication of the contents of his book. Alberuni (i. 157) mentions one *Satya* as the author of a *jâtaka* (*cf.* Weber, *l. c.*, p. 278), and this name is perhaps an abbreviation of that one here mentioned, *i.e.* *Satyavarman.*

A work on astrology is attributed to one صنجهل, *SNGHL* (*vide* Fihrist, p. 271), likewise enumerated by Alberuni in a list of names (i. 158). The Indian equivalent of this name is not certain (*cf.* note to i. 158).

There is also mentioned a book on the signs of swords by one باجهر, probably identical with *Vyâghra*, which occurs as a name of Indian authors (*cf.* i. Fihrist, p. 315).

The famous Buddha legend in Christian garb, most commonly called *Joasaph and Barlaam*, bears in Fihrist, p. 300, the title بوباسف و بلوهر. The former word is generally explained as *Bodhisattva,* although there is no law in Indian phonetics which admits the change of *sattva* to *saf.* The second name is that of Buddha's spiritual teacher and guide, in fact, his *purohita*, and with this word I am inclined to identify the signs in question, *i.e.* بلوهد.

What Ibn Wâḍiḥ in his chronicle (ed. by Houtsma) relates of India, on pp. 92–106, is not of much value. His words on p. 105, "the king كوش = *Ghosha*, who lived in the time of Sindbâd the sage, and this *Ghosha* composed the book on the cunning of the women," are perhaps an indication of some fables of Buddhaghosha having been translated into Arabic.

---

[1] Benfey in *Kalilag und Damnag, Einleitung*, p. xliii. note 3. The word has received currency in the form *Bidpai.*

[2] *Cf.* Benfey, *l. c.*, *Einleitung*, p. xl.

Besides books on astronomy, mathematics (الحساب الهندى), astrology, chiefly *jâtakas*, on medicine and pharmacology, the Arabs translated Indian works on snakes (*sarpavidyâ*), on poison (*vishavidyâ*), on all kinds of auguring, on talismans, on the veterinary art, *de arte amandi*, numerous tales, a life of Buddha, books on logic and philosophy in general, on ethics, politics, and on the science of war. Many Arab authors took up the subjects communicated to them by the Hindus and worked them out in original compositions, commentaries, and extracts. A favourite subject of theirs was Indian mathematics, the knowledge of which became far spread by the publications of Alkindî and many others.

The smaller dynasties which in later times tore the sovereignty over certain eastern countries of the Khalifate out of the hands of the successors of Mansûr and Harun, did not continue their literary commerce with India. The Banû-Laith (A.D. 872–903), owning great part of Afghanistan together with Ghazna, were the neighbours of Hindus, but their name is in no way connected with the history of literature. For the Buyide princes who ruled over Western Persia and Babylonia between A.D. 932 and 1055, the fables of Kalila and Dimna were translated. Of all these princely houses, no doubt, the Samanides, who held almost the whole east of the Khalifate under their sway during 892–999, had most relations with the Hindus, those in Kabul, the Panjab, and Sindh; and their minister, Aljaihânî, probably had collected much information about India. Originally the slave of the Samanides, then their general and provincial governor, Alptagîn, made himself practically independent in Ghazna a few years before Alberuni was born, and his successor, Sabuktagîn, Mahmûd's father, paved the road for the war with India (i. 22), and for the lasting establishment of Islam in India.

The author's study of India before he wrote the present book.

Some of the books that had been translated under the first Abbaside Khalifs were extant in the library of Alberuni when he wrote the 'Ινδικά, the *Brahmasiddhânta* or *Sindhind*, and the *Khaṇḍakhâdyaka* or *Arkand* in the editions of Alfazârî and of Yakûb Ibn Târik, the *Caraka* in the edition of ʿAlî Ibn Zain, and the *Pañcatantra* or *Kalila and Dimna.* He also used an Arabic translation of the *Karaṇasâra* by Vitteśvara (ii. 55), but we do not learn from him whether this was an old translation or a modern one made in Alberuni's time. These books offered to Alberuni—he complains of it repeatedly—the same difficulties as to us, viz., besides the faults of the translators, a considerable corruption of the text by the negligence of the copyists, more particularly as regards the proper names.

When Alberuni entered India, he probably had a good general knowledge of Indian mathematics, astronomy, and chronology, acquired by the study of Brahmagupta and his Arabian editors. What Hindu author was his teacher and that of the Arabs in pure mathematics (الحساب الهندى) is not known. Besides Alfazârî and Yakûb Ibn Târik, he learned from Alkhwârizmî, something from Abulhasan of Ahwâz, things of little value from Alkindî and Abû-Maʿshar of Balkh, and single details from the famous book of Aljaihânî. Of other sources which he has used in the 'Ινδικά, he quotes: (1.) A Muhammadan canon called *Alharḳan*, i.e. *ahargaṇa.* I cannot trace the history of the book, but suppose that it was a practical handbook of chronology for the purpose of converting Arabian and Persian dates into Indian ones and *vice versâ*, which had perhaps been necessitated by the wants of the administration under Sabuktagîn and Mahmûd. The name of the author is not mentioned. (2.) Abû Ahmad Ibn Catlaghtagîn, quoted i. 317 as having computed the latitudes of Karlî and Tâneshar.

Two other authorities on astronomical subjects are quoted, but not in relation to Indian astronomy, Muhammad Ibn Ishâk, from *Sarakhs*, ii. 15, and a book called *Ghurrat-alzîjât*, perhaps derived from an Indian source, as the name is identical with *Karaṇatilaka*. The author is perhaps Abû-Muhammad Alnâib from Âmul (*cf.* note to ii. 90).

In India Alberuni recommenced his study of Indian astronomy, this time not from translations, but from Sanskrit originals, and we here meet with the remarkable fact that the works which about A.D. 770 had been the standard in India still held the same high position A.D. 1020, viz., the works of Brahmagupta. Assisted by learned pandits, he tried to translate them, as also the *Pulisasiddhânta* (*vide* preface to the edition of the text, § 5), and when he composed the Ἰνδικά, he had already come forward with several books devoted to special points of Indian astronomy. As such he quotes:—

(1.) A treatise on the determination of the lunar stations or *nakshatras*, ii. 83.

(2.) The *Khayâl-alkusûfaini*, which contained, probably beside other things, a description of the *Yoga* theory, ii. 208.

(3.) A book called *The Arabic Khaṇḍakhâdyaka*, on the same subject as the preceding one, ii. 208.

(4.) A book containing a description of the *Karaṇas*, the title of which is not mentioned, ii. 194.

(5.) A treatise on the various systems of numeration, as used by different nations, i. 174, which probably described also the related Indian subjects.

(6.) A book called "Key of Astronomy," on the question whether the sun rotates round the earth or the earth round the sun, i. 277. We may suppose that in this book he had also made use of the notions of Indian astronomers.

(7.) Lastly, several publications on the different methods for the computation of geographical longitude, i. 315. He does not mention their titles, nor whether they had any relation to Hindu methods of calculation.

Perfectly at home in all departments of Indian astronomy and chronology, he began to write the 'Ινδικά. In the chapters on these subjects he continues a literary movement which at his time had already gone on for centuries; but he surpassed his predecessors by going back upon the original Sanskrit sources, trying to check his pandits by whatever Sanskrit he had contrived to learn, by making new and more accurate translations, and by his conscientious method of testing the data of the Indian astronomers by calculation. His work represents a scientific *renaissance* in comparison with the aspirations of the scholars working in Bagdad under the first Abbaside Khalifs.

Alberuni seems to think that Indian astrology had not been transferred into the more ancient Arabic literature, as we may conclude from his introduction to Chapter lxxx.: "Our fellow-believers in these (Muslim) countries are not acquainted with the Hindu methods of astrology, and have never had an opportunity of studying an Indian book on the subject," ii. 211. We cannot prove that the works of Varâhamihira, *e.g.* his *Bṛihatsaṁhitâ* and *Laghujâtakam*, which Alberuni was translating, had already been accessible to the Arabs at the time of Mansûr, but we are inclined to think that Alberuni's judgment on this head is too sweeping, for books on astrology, and particularly on *jâtaka*, had already been translated in the early days of the Abbaside rule. *Cf.* Fihrist, pp. 270, 271.

As regards Indian medicine, we can only say that Alberuni does not seem to have made a special study of it, for he simply uses the then current translation of

Caraka, although complaining of its incorrectness, i. 159, 162, 382. He has translated a Sanskrit treatise on loathsome diseases into Arabic (*cf.* preface to the edition of the original, p. xxi. No. 18), but we do not know whether before the Ἰνδικά or after it.

What first induced Alberuni to write the Ινδικά was not the wish to enlighten his countrymen on Indian astronomy in particular, but to present them with an impartial description of the Indian theological and philosophical doctrines on a broad basis, with every detail pertaining to them. So he himself says both at the beginning and end of the book. Perhaps on this subject he could give his readers more perfectly new information than on any other, for, according to his own statement, he had in this only one predecessor, Aleranshahrî. Not knowing him or that authority which *he* follows, *i.e.* Zurḳân, we cannot form an estimate as to how far Alberuni's strictures on them (i. 7) are founded. Though there can hardly be any doubt that Indian philosophy in one or other of its principal forms had been communicated to the Arabs already in the first period, it seems to have been something entirely new when Alberuni produced before his compatriots or fellow-believers the *Sâṁkhya* by Kapila, and the *Book of Patañjali* in good Arabic translations. It was this particular work which admirably qualified him to write the corresponding chapters of the Ἰνδικά. The philosophy of India seems to have fascinated his mind, and the noble ideas of the *Bhagavadgîtâ* probably came near to the standard of his own persuasions. Perhaps it was he who first introduced this gem of Sanskrit literature into the world of Muslim readers.

As regards the Purâṇas, Alberuni was perhaps the first Muslim who took up the study of them. At all events, we cannot trace any acquaintance with them on the part of the Arabs before his time. Of the literature of fables, he knew the *Pañcatantra* in the Arabic edition of Ibn Almukaffa.

Judging Alberuni in relation to his predecessors, we come to the conclusion that his work formed a most marked progress. His description of Hindu philosophy was probably unparalleled. His system of chronology and astronomy was more complete and accurate than had ever before been given. His communications from the Purâṇas were probably entirely new to his readers, as also the important chapters on literature, manners, festivals, actual geography, and the much-quoted chapter on historic chronology. He once quotes Râzî, with whose works he was intimately acquainted, and some Sûfî philosophers, but from neither of them could he learn much about India.

His Sanskrit sources.

In the following pages we give a list of the Sanskrit books quoted in the 'Ινδικά:—

Sources of the chapters on theology and philosophy: *Sâṁkhya*, by Kapila; *Book of Patañjali; Gîtâ*, *i.e.* some edition of the *Bhagavadgîtâ*.

He seems to have used more sources of a similar nature, but he does not quote from them.

Sources of a Paurânic kind: *Vishṇu-Dharma*, *Vishṇu-Purâṇa*, *Matsya-Purâṇa*, *Vâyu-Purâṇa*, *Âditya-Purâṇa*.

Sources of the chapters on astronomy, chronology, geography, and astrology: *Pulisasiddhânta; Brahmasiddhânta*, *Khaṇḍakhâdyaka*, *Uttarakhaṇḍakhâdyaka*, by Brahmagupta; Commentary of the *Khaṇḍakhâdyaka*, by Balabhadra, perhaps also some other work of his; *Brihatsaṁhitâ*, *Pañcasiddhântikâ*, *Bṛihat-jâtakam*, *Laghu-jâtakam*, by Varâhamihira; Commentary of the *Brihatsaṁhitâ*, a book called *Srûdhava* (perhaps *Sarvadhara*), by Utpala, from Kashmîr; a book by Âryabhaṭa, junior; *Karaṇasâra*, by Vitteśvara; *Karaṇatilaka*, by Vijayanandin; *Srîpâla; Book of the Rishi* (sic) *Bhuvanakośa; Book of the Brâhman Bhaṭṭila; Book of Durlabha*, from Multan; *Book of Jîvaśarman; Book of Samaya; Book of Auliatta* (?), the son of Sahâwî (?); *The Minor Mânasa,* by Puñcala; *Srûdhava* (*Sarvadhara?*), by Mahâdeva Candrabîja; Calendar from Kashmîr.

As regards some of these authors, Śrîpâla, Jîvaśarman, Samaya (?), and Auliatta (?), the nature of the quotations leaves it uncertain whether Alberuni quoted from books of theirs or from oral communications which he had received from them.

Source on medicine: *Caraka*, in the Arabic edition of ʿAlî Ibn Zain, from Tabaristan.

In the chapter on metrics, a lexicographic work by one Haribhaṭa (?), and regarding elephants a "Book on the Medicine of Elephants," are quoted.

His communications from the *Mahâbhârata* and *Râmâyaṇa*, and the way in which he speaks of them, do not give us the impression that he had these books before him. He had some information of Jaina origin, but does not mention his source (Âryabhaṭa, jun.?) Once he quotes Manu's *Dharmaśâstra*, but in a manner which makes me doubt whether he took the words directly from the book itself.[1]

The quotations which he has made from these sources are, some of them, very extensive, *e.g.* those from the *Bhagavadgîtâ*. In the chapter on literature he mentions many more books than those here enumerated, but does not tell us whether he made use of them for the *Ἰνδικά*. Sometimes he mentions Hindu individuals as his informants, *e.g.* those from Somanâth, i. 161, 165, and from Kanoj, i. 165; ii. 129.

In Chapter i. the author speaks at large of the radical difference between Muslims and Hindus in everything, and tries to account for it both by the history of India and by the peculiarities of the national character of its inhabitants (i. 17 *seq.*). Everything in India is just the reverse of what it is in Islam, "and if ever a custom of theirs resembles one of ours, it has certainly just the opposite meaning" (i. 179). Much more certainly than to Alberuni, India would seem a land of wonders and monstrosities to most of his readers. Therefore, in order to show that there were other nations who held and hold similar notions, he compares Greek philosophy, chiefly that of Plato, and tries to illustrate Hindu notions by those of the Greeks, and thereby to bring them nearer to the understanding of his readers.

---

[1] The places where mention of these books occurs are given in Index I. *Cf.* also the annotations on single cases.

Greek and other parallels.

The rôle which Greek literature plays in Alberuni's work in the distant country of the Paktyes and Gandhari is a singular fact in the history of civilisation. Plato before the doors of India, perhaps in India itself! A considerable portion of the then extant Greek literature had found its way into the library of Alberuni, who uses it in the most conscientious and appreciative way, and takes from it choice passages to confront Greek thought with Indian. And more than this: on the part of his readers he seems to presuppose not only that they were acquainted with them, but also gave them the credit of first-rate authorities. Not knowing Greek or Syriac, he read them in Arabic translations, some of which reflect much credit upon their authors. The books he quotes are these:—

Plato, *Phædo.*
    Timæus, an edition with a commentary.
    Leges. In the copy of it there was an appendix relating to the pedigree of Hippokrates.
Proclus, Commentary on *Timæus* (different from the extant one).
Aristotle, only short references to his *Physica* and *Metaphysica.*
    Letter to Alexander.
Johannes Grammaticus, *Contra Proclum.*
Alexander of Aphrodisias, Commentary on Aristotle's *φυσικὴ ἀκρόασις.*
Apollonius of Tyana.
Porphyry, *Liber historiarum philosophorum* (?).
Ammonius.

Aratus, *Phænomena*, with a commentary.
Galenus, *Protrepticus*.
  περὶ συνθέσεως φαρμάκων τῶν κατὰ τόπους.
  περὶ συνθέσεως φαρμάκων κατὰ γένη.
  Commentary on the Apophthegms of Hippokrates.
  De indole animæ.
  Book of the Proof.
Ptolemy, *Almagest*.
  Geography.
  Kitâb-almanshûrât.
Pseudo-Kallisthenes, Alexander romance.
Scholia to the *Ars grammatica* of Dionysius Thrax.
A synchronistic history, resembling in part that of Johannes Malalas, in part the *Chronicon* of Eusebius. *Cf.* notes to i. 112, 105.

The other analogies which he draws, not taken from Greek, but from Zoroastrian, Christian, Jewish, Manichæan, and Sûfî sources, are not very numerous. He refers only rarely to Eranian traditions; *cf.* Index II. (Persian traditions and Zoroastrian). Most of the notes on Christian, Jewish, and Manichæan subjects may have been taken from the book of Erânshahrî (*cf.* his own words, i. 6, 7), although he knew Christianity from personal experience, and probably also from the communications of his learned friends Abulkhair Alkhammâr and Abû-Sahl Almasîḥî, both Christians from the farther west (*cf. Chronologie Orientalischer Völker, Einleitung*, p. xxxii.). The interest he has in Mânî's doctrines and books seems rather strange. We are not acquainted with the history of the remnants of Manichæism in those days and countries, but cannot help thinking that the quotations from Mânî's "Book of Mysteries" and *Thesaurus Vivificationis* do not justify Alberuni's judgment in this direction. He seems to have seen in them venerable documents of a high antiquity, instead of the syncretistic ravings of a would-be prophet.

That he was perfectly right in comparing the Sûfî philosophy—he derives the word from σοφία, i. 33—

with certain doctrines of the Hindus is apparent to any one who is aware of the essential identity of the systems of the Greek Neo-Pythagoreans, the Hindu Vedânta philosophers, and the Sûfîs of the Muslim world. The authors whom he quotes, Abû Yazîd Albistâmî and Abû Bakr Alshiblî, are well-known representatives of Sufism. *Cf.* note to i. 87, 88.

As far as the present state of research allows one to judge, the work of Alberuni has not been continued. In astronomy he seems by his *Canon Masudicus* to represent the height, and at the same time the end, of the independent development of this science among the Arabs. But numerous scholars toiled on in his wake, whilst in the study of India, and for the translation of the standard works of Sanskrit literature, he never had a successor before the days of the Emperor Akbar. There followed some authors who copied from his Ἰνδικά, but there was none who could carry on the work in *his* spirit and method after he had died, eighteen years after the composition of the Ἰνδικά. We must here mention two authors who lived not long after him, under the same dynasty, and probably in the same place, Ghazna, viz., Gardêzî (*cf.* note to ii. 6), who wrote between A.D. 1049 and 1052, and Muhammad Ibn 'Uḳail, who wrote between A.D. 1089 and 1099 (*cf.* note to i. 5). Of the later authors who studied Alberuni's Ἰνδικά and copied from it, the most notorious is Rashîd-aldîn, who transferred, *e.g.* the whole geographical Chapter xviii. into his huge chronicle.

India at the author's time.

When Alberuni entered India, times were not favourable for opening friendly relations with native scholars. India recoiled from the touch of the impure barbarians. The Pâla dynasty, once ruling over Kabulistan and the Panjab, had disappeared from the theatre of history, and their former dominions were in the firm grasp of King Mahmûd and under the administration of his slaves, of Turkish descent. The princes of North-Western

Mentioning the trinity of the Buddhistic system, *buddha, dharma, saṅgha*, he calls Buddha *Buddhodana*, which is a mistake for something like *the son of Śuddhodana*. *Cf.* note to i. 40 and i. 380, which latter passage is probably derived from the *Vishṅu-Dharma* (on which *vide* note to i. 54).

Of Buddhistic authors there are mentioned Candra, the grammarian, i. 135 (*cf.* Kern, *Geschichte des Buddhismus in Indien*, ii. 520), Sugrîva, the author of an astronomical work, and a pupil of his, i. 156.

Of the manners and customs of the Buddhists, only their practice of disposing of their dead by throwing them into flowing water is mentioned, ii. 169.

Alberuni speaks (ii. 11) of a building erected by King Kanishka in Peshavar, and called *Kanishkacaitya*, as existing in his time, most likely identical with that *stûpa* which he is reported to have built in consequence of a prophecy of no less a person than Buddha himself. *Cf.* Kern, *l. c.*, ii. 187. The word *bihâr*, *i.e. vihâra*, which Alberuni sometimes uses in the meaning of temple and the like, is of Buddhistic origin. *Cf.* Kern, *l. c.*, ii. 57.

Among the various kinds of writing used in India, he enumerates as the last one the "*Bhaikshukî, used in Udunpûr in Pûrvadeśa. This last is the writing of Buddha,*" i. 173. Was this Udunpûr (we may also read *Udannapûr*) the Buddhistic monastery in Magadha, *Udaṇḍapurî*, that was destroyed by the Muslims, A.D. 1200? *Cf.* Kern, *l. c.*, ii. 545.

The kosmographic views of the Buddhists, as given by Alberuni, i. 249, 326, ought to be examined as to their origin. Perhaps it will be possible to point out the particular Buddhistic book whence they were taken.

He speaks twice of an antagonism between Buddha and Zoroaster.

If Alberuni had had the same opportunity for travelling in India as Hiouen-Tsang had, he would easily have collected plenty of information on Buddhism.

Considering the meagreness of his notes on this subject, we readily believe that he never found a Buddhistic book, and never knew a Buddhist "from whom I might have learned their theories," i. 249. His Brahman pandits probably knew enough of Buddhism but did not choose to tell him.

Lastly, India, as known to Alberuni, was in matters of religion Vishnuitic (*vaishnava*), not Sivaitic (*śaiva*). Vishṇu, or Nârâyaṇa, is the first god in the pantheon of his Hindu informants and literary authorities, whilst Śiva is only incidentally mentioned, and that not always in a favourable manner. This indicates a remarkable change in the religious history of those countries. For the predecessors of Mahmûd in the rule over Kabulistan and the Panjâb, the Pâla dynasty, were worshippers of Śiva (*cf.* Lassen, *Indische Alterthumskunde*, 3, 895), as we may judge from their coins, adorned with the image of Nanda, the ox of Śiva, and from the etymology of their names. *Cf.* note to ii. 13, and Lassen, *l. c.*, 3, 915. The image of Nanda reappears a second time on the coins of the last of the descendants of King Mahmûd on the throne of Ghazna.

CONCLUSION.

It was in the summer of 1883 that I began to work at the edition and translation of the Ἰνδικά, after having fulfilled the literary duties resulting from my journey in Syria and Mesopotamia in 1879 and 1880. A copy of the Arabic manuscript had been prepared in 1872, and collated in Stambul in the hot summer months of 1873.

In order to test my comprehension of the book, I translated it into German from beginning to end between February 1883 and February 1884. In the summer of the latter year the last hand was laid to the constitution of the Arabic text as it was to be printed.

In 1885–86 the edition of the Arabic original was printed. At the same time I translated the whole book a second time, into English, finishing the translation of every single sheet as the original was carried through the press.

In 1887 and the first half of 1888 the English translation, with annotations and indices, was printed.

My work during all these years was not uninterrupted.

Translating an Arabic book, written in the style of Alberuni, into English, is, for a person to whom English is not his mother-tongue, an act of temerity, which, when I was called upon to commit it, gravely affected my conscience to such a degree that I began to falter, and seriously thought of giving up the whole thing altogether. But then there rose up before "my mind's eye" the venerable figure of old MacGuckin de Slane, and as he had been gathered to his fathers, I could not get back the word I had given him. *Cf.* preface to the edition of the Arabic text, p. viii. Assuredly, to do justice to the words of Alberuni would require a command over English like that of Sir Theodore Martin, the translator of "Faust," or Chenery, the translator of *Harîrî*.

As regards my own translation, I can only say I have tried to find common sense in the author's language, and to render it as clearly as I could. In this I was greatly assisted by my friend the Rev. Robert Gwynne, Vicar of St. Mary's, Soho, London, whose training in Eastern languages and literature qualified him to cooperate in revising the entire manuscript and correcting the proof sheets.

Perhaps it will not be superfluous to point out to the reader who does not know Arabic that this language sometimes exhibits sentences perfectly clear as to the meaning of every single word and the syntactic construction, and nevertheless admitting of entirely different interpretations. Besides, a first translator who steers out on such a sea, like him who first tries to explain a difficult, hardly legible inscription, exposes himself to many dangers which he would easily have avoided had kind fortune permitted him to follow in the wake of other explorers. Under these circumstances, I do not flatter myself that I have caught the sense of the author everywhere, and I warn the reader not to take a translation, in particular a first translation, from Arabic for more than it is. It is nothing absolute, but only relative in many respects; and if an Indianist does not find good Indian thought in my translation, I would advise him to consult the next Arabic philologist he meets. If the two can obtain a better insight into the subject-matter, they are very likely to produce a better rendering of the words.

My annotations do not pretend to be a running commentary on the book, for that cannot be written except by a professed Indianist. They contain some information as to the sources used by Alberuni, and as to those materials which guided me in translating. On the phonetic peculiarities of the Indian words as transcribed by Alberuni, the reader may compare a treatise of mine called *Indo-Arabische Studien*, and presented to the Royal Academy of Berlin on 21st June of this year.

My friend Dr. Robert Schram, of the University of Vienna, has examined all the mathematical details of chronology and astronomy. The results of his studies are presented to the reader in the annotations signed with his name. All this is Dr. Schram's special domain, in which he has no equal. My thanks are due to him for lending me his help in parts of the work where my own attempts at verification, after prolonged exertions in the same direction, proved to be insufficient.

Of the two indices, the former contains all words of Indian origin occurring in the book, some pure Sanskrit, some vernacular, others in the form exhibited by the

Arabic manuscript, howsoever faulty it may be. The reader will perhaps here and there derive some advantage from comparing the index of the edition of the Arabic original. The second index contains names of persons and places, &c., mostly of non-Indian origin.

It was the Committee of the Oriental Translation Fund, consisting at the time of Osmond de Beauvoir Priaulx, Edward Thomas, James Fergusson, Reinhold Rost, and Theodore Goldstücker, who first proposed to me to translate the Ἰνδικά. Thomas, Goldstücker, and Fergusson are beyond the reach of human words, but to O. de Beauvoir Priaulx, Esq., and to Dr. Rost, I desire to express my sincerest gratitude for the generous help and the untiring interest which they have always accorded to me, though so many years have rolled on since I first pledged to them my word. Lastly, Her Majesty's India Office has extended its patronage from the edition of the Arabic original also to this edition of the work in an English garb.

Of the works of my predecessors, the famous publication of Reinaud, the *Mémoire géographique, historique et scientifique sur l'Inde*, Paris, 1849, has been most useful to me. Cf. on this and the labours of my other predecessors § 2 of the preface to the edition of the Arabic original.

The Sanskrit alphabet has been transliterated in the following way :—*a*, *â*, *i*, *î*, *u*, *û*—*ṛi*, *ai*, *au*—*k*, *kh*, *g*, *gh*, *ṅ*—*c*, *ch*, *j*, *jh*, *ñ*—*ṭ*, *ṭh*, *ḍ*, *ḍh*, *ṇ*—*t*, *th*, *d*, *dh*, *n*—*p*, *ph*, *b*. *bh*, *m*—*y*, *r*, *l*, *v*—*ś*, *sh*, *s*, *h*.

EDWARD SACHAU.

BERLIN, *August* 4, 1888.

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

(*For Alberuni's Synopsis of the Single Chapters of the Book,*
vide pp. 9–16.)

VOL. PAGE
I. 3. AUTHOR'S PREFACE.
9. SYNOPSIS OF THE EIGHTY CHAPTERS.
17. CHAPTER I., AUTHOR'S SPECIAL INTRODUCTION.
27. CHAPTERS II.–XI., ON RELIGION, PHILOSOPHY, AND RELATED SUBJECTS.
125. CHAPTERS XII.–XVII., ON LITERATURE, METROLOGY, USAGES, AND RELATED SUBJECTS.
196. CHAPTERS XVIII.–XXXI., ON GEOGRAPHY, COSMOGRAPHY, AND ASTRONOMY.
319 TO VOL. II. P. 129. CHAPTERS XXXII.–LXII., ON CHRONOLOGY, ASTRONOMY, AND RELATED SUBJECTS.
II. 130. CHAPTERS LXIII.–LXXIX., ON MANNERS AND CUSTOMS, FESTIVALS, AND RELATED SUBJECTS.
211. CHAPTER LXXX., ON ASTROLOGY.
247. ANNOTATIONS OF THE TRANSLATOR.
403–431. INDICES.

ALBÊRÛNÎ'S INDIA

AN

ACCURATE DESCRIPTION OF ALL CATEGORIES
OF HINDU THOUGHT,

AS WELL THOSE WHICH ARE ADMISSIBLE AS
THOSE WHICH MUST BE REJECTED.

COMPOSED BY

'ABÛ-ALRAIḤÂN MUḤAMMAD IBN 'AḤMAD

ALBÊRÛNÎ.

PREFACE.

In the Name of God, the Compassionate, the Merciful.

Page 2.

1. On tradition, hearsay and eye-witness.
2. The different kinds of reporters.
3. Praise of truthfulness.

No one will deny that in questions of historic authenticity *hearsay* does not equal *eye-witness*; for in the latter the eye of the observer apprehends the substance of that which is observed, both in the time when and in the place where it exists, whilst hearsay has its peculiar drawbacks. But for these, it would even be preferable to eye-witness; for the object of eye-witness can only be *actual* momentary existence, whilst hearsay comprehends alike the present, the past, and the future, so as to apply in a certain sense both to that which *is* and to that which is *not* (*i.e.* which either has ceased to exist or has not yet come into existence). Written tradition is one of the species of hearsay—we might almost say, the most preferable. How could we know the history of nations but for the everlasting monuments of the pen?

The tradition regarding an event which in itself does not contradict either logical or physical laws will invariably depend for its character as true or false upon the character of the reporters, who are influenced by the divergency of interests and all kinds of animosities and antipathies between the various nations. We must distinguish different classes of reporters.

One of them tells a lie, as intending to further an interest of his own, either *by lauding* his family or nation, because he is one of them, or *by attacking* the family or nation on the opposite side; thinking that thereby he can gain his ends. In both cases he acts from motives of objectionable cupidity and animosity.

Another one tells a lie regarding a class of people whom he likes, as being under obligations to them, or whom he hates because something disagreeable has happened between them. Such a reporter is near akin to the first-mentioned one, as he too acts from motives of personal predilection and enmity.

Another tells a lie because he is of such a base nature as to aim thereby at some profit, or because he is such a coward as to be afraid of telling the truth.

Another tells a lie because it is his nature to lie, and he cannot do otherwise, which proceeds from the essential meanness of his character and the depravity of his innermost being.

Lastly, a man may tell a lie from ignorance, blindly following others who told him.

If, now, reporters of this kind become so numerous as to represent a certain body of tradition, or if in the course of time they even come to form a consecutive series of communities or nations, both the first reporter and his followers form the connecting links between the hearer and the inventor of the lie; and if the connecting links are eliminated, there remains the originator of the story, one of the various kinds of liars we have enumerated, as the only person with whom we have to deal.

That man only is praiseworthy who shrinks from a lie and always adheres to the truth, enjoying credit even among liars, not to mention others.

It has been said in the Koran, "*Speak the truth, even if it were against yourselves*" (Sûra, 4, 134); and the Messiah
Page 3. expresses himself in the Gospel to this effect: "*Do not mind the fury of kings in speaking the truth before them.*

They only possess your body, but they have no power over your soul" (*cf.* St. Matt. x. 18, 19, 28; St. Luke xii. 4). In these words the Messiah orders us to exercise *moral courage*. For what the crowd calls courage—bravely dashing into the fight or plunging into an abyss of destruction—is only a *species* of courage, whilst the *genus*, far above all *species*, is *to scorn death*, whether by word or deed.

Now as justice (*i.e.* being just) is a quality liked and coveted for its own self, for its intrinsic beauty, the same applies to *truthfulness*, except perhaps in the case of such people as never tasted how sweet it is, or know the truth, but deliberately shun it, like a notorious liar who once was asked if he had ever spoken the truth, and gave the answer, "If I were not afraid to speak the truth, I should say, no." A liar will avoid the path of justice; he will, as matter of preference, side with oppression and false witness, breach of confidence, fraudulent appropriation of the wealth of others, theft, and all the vices which serve to ruin the world and mankind.

I. On the defects of Muslim works on religious and philosophical doctrines.

II. Exemplified with regard to the Hindus. Criticism of the book of Erânshahrî.

III. Bêrûnî asked to write a book on the subject.

IV. He states his method.

When I once called upon the master 'Abû-Sahl 'Abd-Almun'im Ibn 'Alî Ibn Nûḥ At-tiflîsî, may God strengthen him! I found that he blamed the tendency of the author of a book on the Mu'tazila sect to misrepresent their theory. For, according to them, God is omniscient of himself, and this dogma that author had expressed in such a way as to say that *God has no knowledge* (like the knowledge of man), thereby misleading uneducated people to imagine that, according to the Mu'tazilites, *God is ignorant*. Praise be to God, who is far above all such and similar unworthy descriptions! Thereupon I pointed out to the master that precisely the same method is much in fashion among those who undertake the task of giving an account of religious and philosophical systems from which they slightly differ or to which they are entirely opposed. Such misrepresentation is easily detected in a report about dogmas comprehended within the frame of one single religion, because they are closely related and blended with each other. On the other hand, you would have great difficulty in detecting it in a report about entirely foreign systems of thought totally differing both in principle and details, for such a research is rather an out-of-the-way one, and there are few means of arriving at a thorough comprehension of it. The same tendency prevails throughout our whole literature on philosophical and religious sects. If such an author is not alive to the requirements of a strictly scientific method, he will procure some superficial information which will satisfy neither the adherents of the doctrine in question nor those who really know it. In such a case, if he be an honest character, he will simply retract and feel ashamed; but if he be so base as not to give due honour to truth, he will persist in litigious wrangling for his own original standing-point. If, on the contrary, an author has the right method, he will do his utmost to deduce the tenets of a sect from their legendary lore, things which people tell him, pleasant enough to listen to, but which he would never dream of taking for true or believing.

In order to illustrate the point of our conversation, Page 4. one of those present referred to the religions and doctrines of the Hindus by way of an example. Thereupon I drew their attention to the fact that everything which exists on this subject in our literature is second-hand information which one has copied from the other, a farrago of materials never sifted by the sieve of critical examination. Of all authors of this class, I know only one who had proposed to himself to give a simple and exact report of the subject *sine irâ ac studio*, viz. 'Abû-al'abbâs Alêrânshahrî. He himself did not believe in any of the then existing religions, but was the sole believer in a religion invented by himself, which he tried to propagate. He has given a very good account of the doctrines of the Jews and Christians as well as of the contents of both the Thora and the Gospel. Besides, he furnishes us with a most excellent account of the Manichæans, and of obsolete religions of bygone times which are mentioned in their books. But when he came in his book to speak of the Hindus and the Buddhists, his arrow missed the mark, and in the latter part he went astray through hitting upon the book of *Zarḳân*, the contents of which he incorporated in his own work. That, however, which he has not taken from *Zarḳân*, he himself has heard from common people among Hindus and Buddhists.

At a subsequent period the master 'Abû-Sahl studied the books in question a second time, and when he found the matter exactly as I have here described it, he incited me to write down what I know about the Hindus as a help to those who want to discuss religious questions with them, and as a repertory of information to those who want to associate with them. In order to please him I have done so, and written this book on the doctrines of the Hindus, never making any unfounded imputations against those, our religious antagonists, and at the same time not considering it inconsistent with my duties as a Muslim to quote their own words at full length when I thought they would contribute to elucidate a subject. If the contents of these quotations happen to be utterly heathenish, and *the followers of the truth*, *i.e.* the Muslims, find them objectionable, we can only say that such is the belief of the Hindus, and that they themselves are best qualified to defend it.

This book is not a *polemical* one. I shall not produce the arguments of our antagonists in order to refute such of them as I believe to be in the wrong. My book is nothing but *a simple historic record of facts*. I shall place before the reader the theories of the Hindus exactly as they are, and I shall mention in connection with them similar theories of the Greeks in order to show the relationship existing between them. For the

Greek philosophers, although aiming at truth in the abstract, never in all questions of popular bearing rise much above the customary exoteric expressions and tenets both of their religion and law. Besides Greek ideas we shall only now and then mention those of the Sûfîs or of some one or other Christian sect, because in their notions regarding the transmigration of souls and the pantheistic doctrine of the unity of God with creation there is much in common between these systems.

I have already translated two books into Arabic, one about the *origines* and a description of all created beings, called *Sâṁkhya*, and another about the emancipation of the soul from the fetters of the body, called *Patañjalí* (*Pâtañjala ?*). These two books contain most of the elements of the belief of the Hindus, but not all the single rules derived therefrom. I hope that the present book will enable the reader to dispense with these two earlier ones, and with other books of the same kind; that it will give a sufficient representation of the subject, and will enable him to make himself thoroughly acquainted with it—God willing!

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

CHAPTER I.

ON THE HINDUS IN GENERAL, AS AN INTRODUCTION TO OUR ACCOUNT OF THEM. Page 5.

CHAPTER II.

ON THE BELIEF OF THE HINDUS IN GOD.

CHAPTER III.

ON THE HINDU BELIEF AS TO CREATED THINGS, BOTH "INTELLIGIBILIA" AND "SENSIBILIA."

CHAPTER IV.

FROM WHAT CAUSE ACTION ORIGINATES, AND HOW THE SOUL IS CONNECTED WITH MATTER.

CHAPTER V.

ON THE STATE OF THE SOULS, AND THEIR MIGRATIONS THROUGH THE WORLD IN THE METEMPSYCHOSIS.

CHAPTER VI.

ON THE DIFFERENT WORLDS, AND ON THE PLACES OF RETRIBUTION IN PARADISE AND HELL.

CHAPTER VII.

ON THE NATURE OF LIBERATION FROM THE WORLD, AND ON THE PATH LEADING THERETO.

CHAPTER VIII.

ON THE DIFFERENT CLASSES OF CREATED BEINGS, AND ON THEIR NAMES.

CHAPTER IX.

ON THE CASTES, CALLED "COLOURS" (VARṆA), AND ON THE CLASSES BELOW THEM.

CHAPTER X.

ON THE SOURCE OF THEIR RELIGIOUS AND CIVIL LAW, ON PROPHETS, AND ON THE QUESTION WHETHER SINGLE LAWS CAN BE ABROGATED OR NOT.

CHAPTER XI.

ABOUT THE BEGINNING OF IDOL-WORSHIP, AND A DESCRIPTION OF THE INDIVIDUAL IDOLS.

CHAPTER XII.

ON THE VEDA, THE PURÂṆAS, AND OTHER KINDS OF THEIR NATIONAL LITERATURE.

CHAPTER XIII.

THEIR GRAMMATICAL AND METRICAL LITERATURE.

CHAPTER XIV.

HINDU LITERATURE IN THE OTHER SCIENCES—ASTRONOMY, ASTROLOGY, ETC.

CHAPTER XV.

NOTES ON HINDU METROLOGY, INTENDED TO FACILITATE THE UNDERSTANDING OF ALL KINDS OF MEASUREMENTS WHICH OCCUR IN THIS BOOK.

CHAPTER XVI.

NOTES ON THE WRITING OF THE HINDUS, ON THEIR ARITHMETIC AND RELATED SUBJECTS, AND ON CERTAIN STRANGE MANNERS AND CUSTOMS OF THEIRS.

CHAPTER XVII.

ON HINDU SCIENCES WHICH PREY ON THE IGNORANCE OF PEOPLE.

CHAPTER XVIII.

VARIOUS NOTES ON THEIR COUNTRY, THEIR RIVERS, AND THEIR OCEAN—ITINERARIES OF THE DISTANCES BETWEEN THEIR SEVERAL KINGDOMS, AND BETWEEN THE BOUNDARIES OF THEIR COUNTRY.

CHAPTER XIX.

ON THE NAMES OF THE PLANETS, THE SIGNS OF THE ZODIAC, THE LUNAR STATIONS, AND RELATED SUBJECTS.

CHAPTER XX. **Page 6.**

ON THE BRAHMÂṆḌA.

CHAPTER XXI.

DESCRIPTION OF EARTH AND HEAVEN ACCORDING TO THE RELIGIOUS VIEWS OF THE HINDUS, BASED UPON THEIR TRADITIONAL LITERATURE.

CHAPTER XXII.

TRADITIONS RELATING TO THE POLE.

CHAPTER XXIII.

ON MOUNT MERU ACCORDING TO THE BELIEF OF THE AUTHORS OF THE PURÂṆAS AND OF OTHERS.

CHAPTER XXIV.

TRADITIONS OF THE PURÂṆAS REGARDING EACH OF THE SEVEN DVÎPAS.

CHAPTER XXV.

ON THE RIVERS OF INDIA, THEIR SOURCES AND COURSES.

CHAPTER XXVI.

ON THE SHAPE OF HEAVEN AND EARTH ACCORDING TO THE HINDU ASTRONOMERS.

CHAPTER XXVII.

ON THE FIRST TWO MOTIONS OF THE UNIVERSE (THAT FROM EAST TO WEST ACCORDING TO ANCIENT ASTRONOMERS, AND THE PRECESSION OF THE EQUINOXES) BOTH ACCORDING TO THE HINDU ASTRONOMERS AND THE AUTHORS OF THE PURÂṆAS.

CHAPTER XXVIII.

ON THE DEFINITION OF THE TEN DIRECTIONS.

CHAPTER XXIX.

DEFINITION OF THE INHABITABLE EARTH ACCORDING TO THE HINDUS.

CHAPTER XXX.

ON LAṆKÂ, OR THE CUPOLA OF THE EARTH.

CHAPTER XXXI.

ON THAT DIFFERENCE OF VARIOUS PLACES WHICH WE CALL THE DIFFERENCE OF LONGITUDE.

CHAPTER XXXII.

ON THE NOTIONS OF DURATION AND TIME IN GENERAL, AND ON THE CREATION OF THE WORLD AND ITS DESTRUCTION.

CHAPTER XXXIII.

ON THE VARIOUS KINDS OF THE DAY OR NYCHTHEMERON, AND ON DAY AND NIGHT IN PARTICULAR.

CHAPTER XXXIV.

ON THE DIVISION OF THE NYCHTHEMERON INTO MINOR PARTICLES OF TIME.

CHAPTER XXXV.

ON THE DIFFERENT KINDS OF MONTHS AND YEARS.

CHAPTER XXXVI.

ON THE FOUR MEASURES OF TIME CALLED MÂNA.

CHAPTER XXXVII.

ON THE PARTS OF THE MONTH AND THE YEAR.

CHAPTER XXXVIII.

ON THE VARIOUS MEASURES OF TIME COMPOSED OF DAYS, THE LIFE OF BRAHMAN INCLUDED.

CHAPTER XXXIX.
ON MEASURES OF TIME WHICH ARE LARGER THAN THE LIFE OF BRAHMAN.

CHAPTER XL.
ON THE SAMDHI, THE INTERVAL BETWEEN TWO PERIODS OF TIME, FORMING THE CONNECTING LINK BETWEEN THEM

CHAPTER XLI.
DEFINITION OF THE TERMS "KALPA" AND "CATURYUGA," AND AN EXPLICATION OF THE ONE BY THE OTHER. Page 7.

CHAPTER XLII.
ON THE DIVISION OF THE CATURYUGA INTO YUGAS, AND THE DIFFERENT OPINIONS REGARDING THE LATTER.

CHAPTER XLIII.
A DESCRIPTION OF THE FOUR YUGAS, AND OF ALL THAT IS EXPECTED TO TAKE PLACE AT THE END OF THE FOURTH YUGA.

CHAPTER XLIV.
ON THE MANVANTARAS.

CHAPTER XLV.
ON THE CONSTELLATION OF THE GREAT BEAR.

CHAPTER XLVI.
ON NÂRÂYAṆA, HIS APPEARANCE AT DIFFERENT TIMES, AND HIS NAMES.

CHAPTER XLVII.
ON VÂSUDEVA AND THE WARS OF THE BHÂRATA.

CHAPTER XLVIII.
AN EXPLANATION OF THE MEASURE OF AN AKSHAUHIṆÎ.

CHAPTER XLIX.
A SUMMARY DESCRIPTION OF THE ERAS.

CHAPTER L.

HOW MANY STAR-CYCLES THERE ARE BOTH IN A "KALPA" AND IN A "CATURYUGA."

CHAPTER LI.

AN EXPLANATION OF THE TERMS "ADHIMÂSA," "ÛNARÂTRA," AND THE "AHARGAṆAS," AS REPRESENTING DIFFERENT SUMS OF DAYS.

CHAPTER LII.

ON THE CALCULATION OF "AHARGAṆA" IN GENERAL, THAT IS, THE RESOLUTION OF YEARS AND MONTHS INTO DAYS, AND, VICE VERSÂ, THE COMPOSITION OF YEARS AND MONTHS OUT OF DAYS.

CHAPTER LIII.

ON THE AHARGANA, OR THE RESOLUTION OF YEARS INTO MONTHS, ACCORDING TO SPECIAL RULES WHICH ARE ADOPTED IN THE CALENDARS FOR CERTAIN DATES OR MOMENTS OF TIME.

CHAPTER LIV.

ON THE COMPUTATION OF THE MEAN PLACES OF THE PLANETS.

CHAPTER LV.

ON THE ORDER OF THE PLANETS, THEIR DISTANCES AND SIZES

CHAPTER LVI.

ON THE STATIONS OF THE MOON.

CHAPTER LVII.

ON THE HELIACAL RISINGS OF THE STARS, AND ON THE CEREMONIES AND RITES WHICH THE HINDUS PRACTISE AT SUCH A MOMENT.

CHAPTER LVIII.

HOW EBB AND FLOW FOLLOW EACH OTHER IN THE OCEAN

CHAPTER LIX.

ON THE SOLAR AND LUNAR ECLIPSES.

CHAPTER LX.

ON THE PARVAN.

CHAPTER LXI.

ON THE DOMINANTS OF THE DIFFERENT MEASURES OF TIME IN BOTH RELIGIOUS AND ASTRONOMICAL RELATIONS, AND ON CONNECTED SUBJECTS.

CHAPTER LXII.

ON THE SIXTY YEARS-SAMVATSARA, ALSO CALLED "SHASHṬYABDA." Page 8

CHAPTER LXIII.

ON THAT WHICH ESPECIALLY CONCERNS THE BRAHMANS, AND WHAT THEY ARE OBLIGED TO DO DURING THEIR WHOLE LIFE.

CHAPTER LXIV.

ON THE RITES AND CUSTOMS WHICH THE OTHER CASTES, BESIDES THE BRAHMANS, PRACTISE DURING THEIR LIFETIME.

CHAPTER LXV.

ON THE SACRIFICES.

CHAPTER LXVI.

ON PILGRIMAGE AND THE VISITING OF SACRED PLACES.

CHAPTER LXVII.

ON ALMS, AND HOW A MAN MUST SPEND WHAT HE EARNS.

CHAPTER LXVIII.

ON WHAT IS ALLOWED AND FORBIDDEN IN EATING AND DRINKING.

CHAPTER LXIX.

ON MATRIMONY, THE MENSTRUAL COURSES, EMBRYOS, AND CHILDBED.

CHAPTER LXX.

ON LAWSUITS.

CHAPTER LXXI.

ON PUNISHMENTS AND EXPIATIONS.

CHAPTER LXXII.

ON INHERITANCE, AND WHAT CLAIM THE DECEASED PERSON HAS ON IT.

CHAPTER LXXIII.

ABOUT WHAT IS DUE TO THE BODIES OF THE DEAD AND OF THE LIVING (THAT IS, ABOUT BURYING AND SUICIDE).

CHAPTER LXXIV.

ON FASTING, AND THE VARIOUS KINDS OF IT.

CHAPTER LXXV.

ON THE DETERMINATION OF THE FAST-DAYS.

CHAPTER LXXVI.

ON THE FESTIVALS AND FESTIVE DAYS.

CHAPTER LXXVII.

ON DAYS WHICH ARE HELD IN SPECIAL VENERATION, ON LUCKY AND UNLUCKY TIMES, AND ON SUCH TIMES AS ARE PARTICULARLY FAVOURABLE FOR ACQUIRING IN THEM BLISS IN HEAVEN.

CHAPTER LXXVIII.

ON THE KARAṆAS.

CHAPTER LXXIX.

ON THE YOGAS.

CHAPTER LXXX.

ON THE INTRODUCTORY PRINCIPLES OF HINDU ASTROLOGY, WITH A SHORT DESCRIPTION OF THEIR METHODS OF ASTROLOGICAL CALCULATIONS.

CHAPTER I.

ON THE HINDUS IN GENERAL, AS AN INTRODUCTION TO OUR ACCOUNT OF THEM.

Page 9.

Description of the barriers which separate the Hindus from the Muslims and make it so particularly difficult for a Muslim to study any Indian subject.

BEFORE entering on our exposition, we must form an adequate idea of that which renders it so particularly difficult to penetrate to the essential nature of any Indian subject. The knowledge of these difficulties will either facilitate the progress of our work, or serve as an apology for any shortcomings of ours. For the reader must always bear in mind that the Hindus entirely differ from us in every respect, many a subject appearing intricate and obscure which would be perfectly clear if there were more connection between us. The barriers which separate Muslims and Hindus rest on different causes.

First reason: Difference of the language and its particular nature.

First, they differ from us in everything which other nations have in common. And here we first mention the language, although the difference of language also exists between other nations. If you want to conquer this difficulty (*i.e.* to learn Sanskrit), you will not find it easy, because the language is of an enormous range, both in words and inflections, something like the Arabic, calling one and the same thing by various names, both original and derived, and using one and the same word for a variety of subjects, which, in order to be properly understood, must be distinguished from each other by various qualifying epithets. For nobody could distinguish between the various meanings of a word unless he understands the context in which it occurs, and its relation both to the following and the preceding parts of the sentence. The Hindus, like other people, boast of this enormous range of their language, whilst in reality it is a defect.

Further, the language is divided into a neglected vernacular one, only in use among the common people, and a classical one, only in use among the upper and educated classes, which is much cultivated, and subject to the rules of grammatical inflection and etymology, and to all the niceties of grammar and rhetoric.

Besides, some of the sounds (consonants) of which the language is composed are neither identical with the sounds of Arabic and Persian, nor resemble them in any way. Our tongue and uvula could scarcely manage to correctly pronounce them, nor our ears in hearing to distinguish them from similar sounds, nor could we transliterate them with our characters. It is very difficult, therefore, to express an Indian word in our writing, for in order to fix the pronunciation we must change our orthographical points and signs, and must pronounce the case-endings either according to the common Arabic rules or according to special rules adapted for the purpose.

Add to this that the Indian scribes are careless, and do not take pains to produce correct and well-collated copies. In consequence, the highest results of the author's mental development are lost by their negligence, and his book becomes already in the first or second copy so full of faults, that the text appears as something entirely new, which neither a scholar nor one familiar with the subject, whether Hindu or Muslim, could any longer understand. It will sufficiently illustrate the matter if we tell the reader that we have sometimes written down a word from the mouth of Hindus, taking the greatest pains to fix its pronunciation, and that afterwards when we repeated it to them, they had great difficulty in recognising it.

As in other foreign tongues, so also in Sanskrit, two or three consonants may follow each other without an intervening vowel—consonants which in our Persian grammatical system are considered as having a *hidden* vowel. Since most Sanskrit words and names begin with such consonants without vowels, we find it very difficult to pronounce them.

Page 10.

Besides, the scientific books of the Hindus are composed in various favourite metres, by which they intend, considering that the books soon become corrupted by additions and omissions, to preserve them exactly as they are, in order to facilitate their being learned by heart, because they consider as canonical only that which is known by heart, not that which exists in writing. Now it is well known that in all metrical compositions there is much misty and constrained phraseology merely intended to fill up the metre and serving as a kind of patchwork, and this necessitates a certain amount of verbosity. This is also one of the reasons why a word has sometimes one meaning and sometimes another.

From all this it will appear that the metrical form of literary composition is one of the causes which make the study of Sanskrit literature so particularly difficult.

Second reason: Their religious prejudices.

Secondly, they totally differ from us in religion, as we believe in nothing in which they believe, and *vice versâ*. On the whole, there is very little disputing about theological topics among themselves; at the utmost, they fight with words, but they will never stake their soul or body or their property on religious controversy. On the contrary, all their fanaticism is directed against those who do not belong to them—against all foreigners. They call them *mleccha*, *i.e.* impure, and forbid having any connection with them, be it by intermarriage or any other kind of relationship, or by sitting, eating, and drinking with them, because thereby, they think, they would be polluted. They consider as impure anything which touches the fire and the water of a foreigner; and no household can exist without these two elements. Besides, they never desire that a thing which once has been polluted should be purified and thus recovered, as, under ordinary circumstances, if anybody or anything has become unclean, he or it would strive to regain the state of purity. They are not allowed to receive anybody who does not belong to them, even if he wished it, or was inclined to their religion. This, too, renders any connection with them quite impossible, and constitutes the widest gulf between us and them.

Third reason: The radical difference of their manners and customs.

In the third place, in all manners and usages they differ from us to such a degree as to frighten their children with us, with our dress, and our ways and customs, and as to declare us to be devil's breed, and our doings as the very opposite of all that is good and proper. By the by, we must confess, in order to be just, that a similar depreciation of foreigners not only prevails among us and the Hindus, but is common to all nations towards each other. I recollect a Hindu who wreaked his vengeance on us for the following reason:—

Some Hindu king had perished at the hand of an enemy of his who had marched against him from our country. After his death there was born a child to him, which succeeded him, by the name of Sagara. On coming of age, the young man asked his mother about his father, and then she told him what had happened. Now he was inflamed with hatred, marched out of his country into the country of the enemy, and plentifully satiated his thirst of vengeance upon them. After having become tired of slaughtering, he compelled the survivors to dress in our dress, which was meant as an ignominious punishment for them. When I heard of it, I felt thankful that he was gracious enough not to compel us to Indianise ourselves and to adopt Hindu dress and manners.

Fourth reason: Aversion of the Buddhists towards the countries of the West, whence they had been expelled. First inroads of the Muslims into India.

Another circumstance which increased the already existing antagonism between Hindus and foreigners is that the so-called Shamaniyya (Buddhists), though they cordially hate the Brahmans, still are nearer akin to them than to others. In former times, Khurâsân, Persis, 'Irâḳ, Mosul, the country up to the frontier of Syria, was Buddhistic, but then Zarathustra went forth from Âdharbaijân and preached Magism in Balkh (Baktra). His doctrine came into favour with King Gushtasp, and his son Isfendiyâd spread the new faith both in east and west, both by force and by treaties. He founded fire-temples through his whole empire, from the frontiers of China to those of the Greek empire. **Page 11.** The succeeding kings made their religion (*i.e.* Zoroastrianism) the obligatory state-religion for Persis and 'Irâḳ. In consequence, the Buddhists were banished from those countries, and had to emigrate to the countries east of Balkh. There are some Magians up to the present time in India, where they are called *Maga*. From that time dates their aversion towards the countries of Khurâsân. But then came Islam; the Persian empire perished, and the repugnance of the Hindus against foreigners increased more and more when the Muslims began to make their inroads into their country; for Muḥammad Ibn Elkâsim Ibn Elmunabbih entered Sindh from the side of Sijistân (Sakastene) and conquered the cities of Bahmanwâ and Mûlasthâna, the former of which he called *Al-manṣûra*, the latter *Al-ma'mûra*. He entered India proper, and penetrated even as far as Kanauj, marched through the country of Gandhâra, and on his way back, through the confines of Kashmir, sometimes fighting sword in hand, sometimes gaining his ends by treaties, leaving to the people their ancient belief, except in the case of those who wanted to become Muslims. All these events planted a deeply rooted hatred in their hearts.

Muhammadan conquest of the country by Maḥmûd.

Now in the following times no Muslim conqueror passed beyond the frontier of Kâbul and the river Sindh until the days of the Turks, when they seized the power in Ghazna under the Sâmânî dynasty, and the supreme power fell to the lot of Nâṣir-addaula Sabuktagîn. This prince chose the holy war as his calling, and therefore called himself *Al-ghâzî* (i.e. *warring on the road of Allah*). In the interest of his successors he constructed, in order to weaken the Indian frontier, those roads on which afterwards his son Yamin-addaula Maḥmûd marched into India during a period of thirty years and more. God be merciful to both father and son! Maḥmûd utterly ruined the prosperity of the country, and performed there wonderful exploits, by which the Hindus became like atoms of dust scattered in all directions, and like a tale of old in the mouth of the people. Their scattered remains cherish, of course, the most inveterate aversion towards all Muslims. This is the reason, too, why Hindu sciences have retired far away from those parts of the country conquered by us, and have fled to places which our hand cannot yet reach, to Kashmîr, Benares, and other places. And there the antagonism between them and all foreigners receives more and more nourishment both from political and religious sources.

Fifth reason: The self-conceit of the Hindus, and their depreciation of anything foreign.

In the fifth place, there are other causes, the mentioning of which sounds like a satire—peculiarities of their national character, deeply rooted in them, but manifest to everybody. We can only say, folly is an illness for which there is no medicine, and the Hindus believe that there is no country but theirs, no nation like theirs, no kings like theirs, no religion like theirs, no science like theirs. They are haughty, foolishly vain, self-conceited, and stolid. They are by nature niggardly in communicating that which they know, and they take the greatest possible care to withhold it from men of another caste among their own people, still much more, of course, from any foreigner. According to their belief, there is no other country on earth but theirs, no other race of man but theirs, and no created beings besides them have any knowledge or science whatsoever. Their haughtiness is such that, if you tell them of any science or scholar in Khurâsân and Persis, they will think you to be both an ignoramus and a liar. If they travelled and mixed with other nations, they would soon change their mind, for their ancestors were not as narrow-minded as the present generation is. One of their scholars, Varâhamihira, in a passage where he calls on the people to honour the Brahmans, says: "*The Greeks, though impure, must be honoured, since they were trained in sciences, and therein excelled others. What, then, are we to say of a Brahman, if he combines with his* Page 12. *purity the height of science?*" In former times, the Hindus used to acknowledge that the progress of science due to the Greeks is much more important than that which is due to themselves. But from this passage of Varâhamihira alone you see what a self-lauding man he is, whilst he gives himself airs as doing justice to others. At first I stood to their astronomers in the relation of a pupil to his master, being a stranger among them and not acquainted with their peculiar national and traditional methods of science. On having made some progress, I began to show them the elements on which this science rests, to point out to them some rules of logical deduction and the scientific methods of all mathematics, and then they flocked together round me from all parts, wondering, and most eager to learn from me, asking me at the same time from what Hindu master I had learnt those things, whilst in reality I showed them what they were worth, and thought myself a great deal superior to them, disdaining to be put on a level with them. They almost thought me to be a sorcerer, and when speaking of me to their leading men in their native tongue, they spoke of me as *the sea* or as *the water which is so acid that vinegar in comparison is sweet.*

Personal relations of the author.

Now such is the state of things in India. I have found it very hard to work my way into the subject, although I have a great liking for it, in which respect I stand quite alone in my time, and although I do not spare either trouble or money in collecting Sanskrit books from places where I supposed they were likely to be found, and in procuring for myself, even from very remote places, Hindu scholars who understand them and are able to teach me. What scholar, however, has the same favourable opportunities of studying this subject as I have? That would be only the case with one to whom the grace of God accords, what it did not accord to me, a perfectly free disposal of his own doings and goings; for it has never fallen to my lot in my own doings and goings to be perfectly independent, nor to be invested with sufficient power to dispose and to order as I thought best. However, I thank God for that which He has bestowed upon me, and which must be considered as sufficient for the purpose.

The author declares his intention of comparing Greek theories, because of their being near akin, and of their strictly scientific character as contrasted with those of the Hindus.

The heathen Greeks, before the rise of Christianity, held much the same opinions as the Hindus; their educated classes thought much the same as those of the Hindus; their common people held the same idolatrous views as those of the Hindus. Therefore I like to confront the theories of the one nation with those of the other simply on account of their close relationship, not in order to correct them. For that which is not *the truth* (*i.e.* the true belief or monotheism) does not admit of any correction, and all heathenism, whether Greek or Indian, is in its pith and marrow one and the same belief, because it is only a deviation *from the truth*. The Greeks, however, had philosophers who, living in their country, discovered and worked out for them the elements of science, not of popular superstition, for it is the object of the upper classes to be guided by the results of science, whilst the common crowd will always be inclined to plunge into wrong-headed wrangling, as long as they are not kept down by fear of punishment. Think of Socrates when he opposed the crowd of his nation as to their idolatry and did not want to call the stars gods! At once eleven of the twelve judges of the Athenians agreed on a sentence of death, and Socrates died faithful to the truth.

The Hindus had no men of this stamp both capable and willing to bring sciences to a classical perfection. Therefore you mostly find that even the so-called scientific theorems of the Hindus are in a state of utter confusion, devoid of any logical order, and in the last instance always mixed up with the silly notions of the crowd, *e.g.* immense numbers, enormous spaces of time, and all kinds of religious dogmas, which the vulgar belief does not admit of being called into question. Therefore it is a prevailing practice among the Hindus *jurare in verba magistri*; and I can only compare their mathematical and astronomical literature, as far as I know it, to a mixture of pearl shells and sour dates, or of pearls and dung, or of costly crystals and common pebbles. Both kinds of things are equal in their eyes, since they cannot raise themselves to the methods of a strictly scientific deduction. Page 13.

The author's method.

In most parts of my work I simply relate without criticising, unless there be a special reason for doing so. I mention the necessary Sanskrit names and technical terms once where the context of our explanation demands it. If the word is an *original* one, the meaning of which can be rendered in Arabic, I only use the corresponding Arabic word; if, however, the Sanskrit word be more practical, we keep this, trying to transliterate it as accurately as possible. If the word is a secondary or *derived* one, but in general use, we also keep it, though there be a corresponding term in Arabic, but before using it we explain its signification. In this way we have tried to facilitate the understanding of the terminology.

Lastly, we observe that we cannot always in our discussions strictly adhere to the geometrical method, only referring to that which precedes and never to that which follows, as we must sometimes introduce in a chapter an unknown factor, the explanation of which can only be given in a later part of the book, God helping us!

CHAPTER II.

ON THE BELIEF OF THE HINDUS IN GOD.

The nature of God.

THE belief of educated and uneducated people differs in every nation; for the former strive to conceive abstract ideas and to define general principles, whilst the latter do not pass beyond the apprehension of the senses, and are content with derived rules, without caring for details, especially in questions of religion and law, regarding which opinions and interests are divided.

The Hindus believe with regard to God that he is one, eternal, without beginning and end, acting by free-will, almighty, all-wise, living, giving life, ruling, preserving; one who in his sovereignty is unique, beyond all likeness and unlikeness, and that he does not resemble anything nor does anything resemble him. In order to illustrate this we shall produce some extracts from their literature, lest the reader should think that our account is nothing but hearsay.

Quotation from Patañjali.

In the book of Patañjali the pupil asks:

"Who is the worshipped one, by the worship of whom blessing is obtained?"

The master says:

"It is he who, being eternal and unique, does not for his part stand in need of any human action for which he might give as a recompense either a blissful repose, which is hoped and longed for, or a troubled existence, which is feared and dreaded. He is unattainable to thought, being sublime beyond all unlikeness which is abhorrent and all likeness which is sympathetic. He by his essence knows from all eternity. *Knowledge*, in the human sense of the term, has as its object that which was *unknown* before, whilst *not knowing* does not at any time or in any condition apply to God."

Further the pupil speaks:

"Do you attribute to him other qualities besides those you have mentioned?"

The master says:

"He is height, absolute in the idea, not in *space*, for he is sublime beyond all existence *in any space*. He is the pure absolute good, longed for by every created being. He is the knowledge free from the defilement of forgetfulness and not-knowing."

The pupil speaks:

"Do you attribute to him speech or not?"

The master says:

"As he knows, he no doubt also speaks."

The pupil asks:

"If he *speaks* because he *knows*, what, then, is the difference between him and the *knowing* sages who have *spoken* of their *knowing*?"

The master says:

Page 14. "The difference between them is time, for they have learned in time and spoken in time, after having been not-knowing and not-speaking. By speech they have transferred their knowledge to others. Therefore their speaking and acquiring knowledge take place in time. And as divine matters have no connection with time, God is *knowing*, *speaking* from eternity. It was he who spoke to Brahman, and to others of the first beings in different ways. On the one he bestowed a book; for the other he opened a door, a means of communicating with him; a third one he inspired so that he obtained by cogitation what God bestowed upon him."

The pupil asks:

"Whence has he this knowing?"

The master answers:

"His knowing is the same from all eternity, for ever and ever. As he has never been not-knowing, he is *knowing* of himself, having never acquired any knowledge which he did not possess before. He speaks in the Veda which he sent down upon Brahman:

"'*Praise and celebrate him who has spoken the Veda, and was before the Veda.*'"

The pupil asks:

"How do you worship him to whom the perception of the senses cannot attain?"

The master says:

"His name proves his existence, for where there is a report there must be something to which it refers, and where there is a name there must be something which is named. He is hidden to the senses and unperceivable by them. However, the soul perceives him, and thought comprehends his qualities. This meditation is identical with worshipping him exclusively, and by practising it uninterruptedly beatitude is obtained."

In this way the Hindus express themselves in this very famous book.

Quotation from the book *Gîtâ*.

The following passage is taken from the book *Gîtâ*, a part of the book *Bhârata*, from the conversation between Vâsudeva and Arjuna:—

"I am the universe, without a beginning by being born, or without an end by dying. I do not aim by whatever I do at any recompense. I do not specially belong to one class of beings to the exclusion of others, as if I were the friend of one and the enemy of others. I have given to each one in my creation what is sufficient for him in all his functions. Therefore whoever knows me in this capacity, and tries to become similar to me by keeping desire apart from his action, his fetters will be loosened, and he will easily be saved and freed."

This passage reminds one of the definition of philosophy as *the striving to become as much as possible similar to God.*

Further, Vâsudeva speaks in the same book :—

"It is desire which causes most men to take refuge with God for their wants. But if you examine their case closely, you will find that they are very far from having an accurate knowledge of him; for God is not apparent to every one, so that he might perceive him with his senses. Therefore they do not know him. Some of them do not pass beyond what their senses perceive; some pass beyond this, but stop at the knowledge of the *laws of nature*, without learning that above them there is one who did not give birth nor was born, the essence of whose being has not been comprehended by the knowledge of any one, while *his* knowledge comprehends everything."

On the notions of the action and the agent.

The Hindus differ among themselves as to the definition of what is *action*. Some who make God the source of action consider him as the universal cause; for as the existence of the *agents* derives from him, he is the cause of their action, and in consequence it is his own action coming into existence through their intermediation. Others do not derive action from God, but from other sources, considering them as the *particular causes* which in the last instance—according to external observation—produce the action in question.

Quotation from the book *Sâṁkhya*.

In the book *Sâṁkhya* the devotee speaks: "Has there been a difference of opinion about *action* and the *agent*, or not?"

The sage speaks: "Some people say that the soul is not alive and the matter not living; that God, who is self-sufficing, is he who unites them and separates them from each other; that therefore in reality he himself is the *agent*. *Action* proceeds from him in such a way that he causes both the soul and the matter to move, like as that which is living and powerful moves that which is dead and weak.

Page 15.

"Others say that the union of *action* and the *agent* is effected by nature, and that such is the usual process in everything that increases and decreases.

"Others say the agent is the soul, because in the Véda it is said, 'Every being comes from Purusha.' According to others, the agent is time, for the world is tied to time as a sheep is tied to a strong cord, so that its motion depends upon whether the cord is drawn tight or slackened. Still others say that action is nothing but a recompense for something which has been done before.

"All these opinions are wrong. The truth is, that action entirely belongs to matter, for matter binds the soul, causes it to wander about in different shapes, and then sets it free. Therefore matter is the agent, all that belongs to matter helps it to accomplish action. But the soul is not an agent, because it is devoid of the different faculties."

Philosophical and vulgar notions about the nature of God.

This is what educated people believe about God. They call him *îśvara, i.e.* self-sufficing, beneficent, who gives without receiving. They consider the unity of God as absolute, but that everything beside God which may appear as a unity is really a plurality of things. The existence of God they consider as a real existence, because everything that exists exists through him. It is not impossible to think that the existing beings are *not* and that he *is*, but it is impossible to think that he *is not* and that they *are*.

If we now pass from the ideas of the educated people among the Hindus to those of the common people, we must first state that they present a great variety. Some of them are simply abominable, but similar errors also occur in other religions. Nay, even in Islam we must decidedly disapprove, *e.g.* of the anthropomorphic doctrines, the teachings of the Jabriyya sect, the prohibition of the discussion of religious topics, and such like. Every religious sentence destined for the people at large must be carefully worded, as the following example shows. Some Hindu scholar calls God *a point*, meaning to say thereby that the qualities of bodies do not apply to him. Now some uneducated man reads this and imagines, God is as small as *a point*, and he does not find out what the word *point* in this sentence was really intended to express. He will not even stop with this offensive comparison, but will describe God as much larger and will say, "He is twelve fingers long and ten fingers broad." Praise be to God, who is far above measure and number! Further, if an uneducated man hears what we have mentioned, that God comprehends the universe so that nothing is concealed from him, he will at once imagine that this comprehending is effected by means of eyesight; that eyesight is only possible by means of an eye, and that two eyes are better than only one; and in consequence he will describe God as having a thousand eyes, meaning to describe his omniscience.

Similar hideous fictions are sometimes met with among the Hindus, especially among those castes who are not allowed to occupy themselves with science, of whom we shall speak hereafter.

CHAPTER III.

ON THE HINDU BELIEF AS TO CREATED THINGS, BOTH "INTELLIGIBILIA" AND "SENSIBILIA."

Notions of the Greeks and the Ṣûfî philosophers as to the *First Cause*.

On this subject the ancient Greeks held nearly the same view as the Hindus, at all events in those times before philosophy rose high among them under the care of the seven so-called *pillars of wisdom*, viz. Solon of Athens, Bias of Priene, Periander of Corinth, Thales of Miletus, Chilon of Lacedæmon, Pittacus of Lesbos, and Cleobulus of Lindos, and their successors. Some of them thought that all things are *one*, and this *one* thing is according to some τὸ λανθάνειν, according to others ἡ δύναμις; that *e.g.* man has only this prerogative before a stone and the inanimate world, that he is by one degree nearer than they to the *First Cause*. But this he would not be anything better than they.

Page 16.

Others think that only *the First Cause* has real existence, because it alone is self-sufficing, whilst everything else absolutely requires it; that a thing which for its existence stands in need of something else has only a dream-life, no real life, and that reality is only that *one* and *first* being (*the First Cause*).

Origin of the word Ṣûfî.

This is also the theory of the *Ṣûfîs*, i.e. *the sages*, for *ṣûf* means in Greek *wisdom* (σοφία). Therefore a philosopher is called *pailâsôpâ* (φιλόσοφος), *i.e.* loving wisdom. When in Islam persons adopted something like the doctrines of these *philosophers*, they also adopted their name; but some people did not understand the meaning of the word, and erroneously combined it with the Arabic word *ṣuffa*, as if the *Ṣûfî* (= φιλόσοφοι) were identical with the so-called *'Ahl-aṣṣuffa* among the companions of Muḥammad. In later times the word was corrupted by misspelling, so that finally it was taken for a derivation from *ṣûf*, i.e. *the wool of goats*. Abû-alfatḥ Albustî made a laudable effort to avoid this mistake when he said, "From olden times people have differed as to the meaning of the word *ṣûfî*, and have thought it a derivative from *ṣûf*, *i.e.* wool. I, for my part, understand by the word a youth who is *ṣâfî*, *i.e.* pure. This *ṣâfî* has become *ṣûfî*, and in this form the name of a class of thinkers, the *Ṣûfî*."

Further, the same Greeks think that the existing world is only *one* thing; that the First Cause appears in it under various shapes; that the power of the First Cause is inherent in the parts of the world under different circumstances, which cause a certain difference of the things of the world notwithstanding their original unity.

Others thought that he who turns with his whole being towards the First Cause, striving to become as much as possible similar to *it*, will become united with *it* after having passed the intermediate stages, and stripped of all appendages and impediments. Similar views are also held by the *Ṣûfî*, because of the similarity of the dogma.

As to the souls and spirits, the Greeks think that they exist by themselves before they enter bodies; that they exist in certain numbers and groups, which stand in various relations to each other, knowing each other and not knowing; that they, whilst staying in bodies, earn by the actions of their free-will that lot which awaits them after their separation from the bodies, *i.e.* the faculty of ruling the world in various ways. Therefore they called them gods, built temples in their names and offered them sacrifices; as Galenus says in his book called προτρεπτικὸς εἰς τὰς τέχνας: "Excel- Galenus.

lent men have obtained the honour of being reckoned among the deified beings only for the noble spirit in which they cultivated the arts, not for their prowess in wrestling and discus-throwing. *E.g.* Asclepius and Dionysos, whether they were originally human beings in bygone times and afterwards deified, or were divine beings from the very beginning, deserved in any case the greatest of honours; because the one taught mankind the science of medicine, the other the art of the cultivation of the vine."

Page 17.

Galenus says in his commentary on the aphorisms of Hippocrates: "As regards the offerings to Asclepius, we have never heard that anybody offered him a goat, because the weaving of goat's-hair is not easy, and much goat's-meat produces epilepsy, since the humours of the goats are bad. People only offer him a cock, as also Hippocrates has done. For this divine man acquired for mankind the art of medicine, which is much superior to that which Dionysos and Demeter have invented, *i.e.* the wine and the cereals whence bread is prepared. Therefore cereals are called by the name of Demeter and the vine is called by the name of Dionysos."

Plato.

Plato says in his *Timæus:* "The θεοί whom the barbarians call *gods*, because of their not dying, are the δαίμονες, whilst they call *the* god *the first god.*"

Further he says: "God spoke to the gods, 'You are not of yourselves exempt from destruction. Only you will not perish by death. You have obtained from my will at the time when I created you, the firmest covenant.'"

In another passage of the same book he says: "God is in the single number; there are no gods in the plural number."

These quotations prove that the Greeks call in general *god* everything that is glorious and noble, and the like usage exists among many nations. They go

Johannes Grammaticus.

even so far as to call *gods* the mountains, the seas, &c. Secondly, they apply the term *god* in a special sense to the *First Cause*, to the angels, and to their souls. According to a third usage, Plato calls gods the *Sekînât* (= Μοῦσαι). But on this subject the terms of the interpreters are not perfectly clear; in consequence of which we only know the name, but not what it means. Johannes Grammaticus says in his refutation of Proclus: "The Greeks gave the name of gods to the visible bodies in heaven, as many barbarians do. Afterwards, when they came to philosophise on the abstract ideas of the world of thought, they called these by the name of gods."

Galenus.

Hence we must necessarily infer that being deified means something like the state of angels, according to our notions. This Galenus says in clear words in the same book: "If it is true that Asclepius was a man in bygone times, and that then God deigned to make him one of the angels, everything else is idle talk."

In another passage of the same book he says: "God spoke to Lycurgus, 'I am in doubt concerning you, whether to call you a man or an angel, but I incline to the latter.'"

Difference of denominating God in Arabic, Hebrew, and Syriac.

Page 18.

There are, however, certain expressions which are offensive according to the notions of one religion, whilst they are admissible according to those of another, which may pass in one language, whilst they are rejected by another. To this class belongs the word *apotheosis*, which has a bad sound in the ears of Muslims. If we consider the use of the word *god* in the Arabic language, we find that all the names by which the *pure truth, i.e.* Allâh, has been named, may somehow or other be applied to other beings besides him, except the word *Allâh*, which only applies to *God*, and which has been called his *greatest name*.

If we consider the use of the word in Hebrew and

Syriac, in which two languages the sacred books before the Koran were revealed, we find that in the Thora and the following books of prophets which are reckoned with the Thora as one whole, that word *Rabb* corresponds to the word *Allâh* in Arabic, in so far as it cannot in a genitive construction be applied to anybody besides God, and you cannot say the *rabb* of the house, the *rabb* of the property (which in Arabic is allowed). And, secondly, we find that the word *'Eloah* in Hebrew corresponds in its usage there to the word *Rabb* in Arabic (*i.e.* that in Hebrew the word אֱלֹהַּ may apply to other beings but *God*, like the word رَبّ in Arabic). The following passages occur in those books:—

"The sons of *Elohim* came in unto the daughters of men" (Gen. vi. 4), before the deluge, and cohabited with them.

"Ṣatan entered together with the sons of *Elohim* into their meeting" (Job i. 6).

In the Thora of Moses God speaks to him: "I have made thee a *god* to Pharaoh" (Exod. vii. 1).

In the 82d Psalm of the Psalter of David the following occurs: "God standeth in the congregation of the *gods*" (Ps. lxxxii. 1), *i.e.* of the angels.

In the Thora the idols are called *foreign gods*. If the Thora had not forbidden to worship any other being but God, if it had not forbidden people to prostrate themselves before the idols, nay, even to mention them and to think of them, one might infer from this expression (*foreign gods*) that the order of the Bible refers only to the abolition of *foreign gods*, which would mean *gods that are not Hebrew ones* (as if the Hebrews had adored *national gods*, in opposition to the *gods* of their neighbours). The nations round Palestine were idol worshippers like the heathen Greeks, and the Israelites always rebelled against God by worshipping the idol of Baal (lit. *Ba'lâ*) and the idol of Ashtârôth, *i.e.* Venus.

From all this it is evident that the Hebrews used to apply the term *being god*, grammatically a term like *being king*, to the angels, to the souls invested with divine power (v. p. 34); by way of comparison, also, to the images which were made to represent the bodies of those beings; lastly, metaphorically, to kings and to other great men.

Passing from the word *God* to those of *father* and *son*, we must state that Islam is not liberal in the use of them; for in Arabic the word *son* means nearly always as much as a *child* in the natural order of things, and from the ideas involved in parentage and birth can never be derived any expression meaning the Eternal Lord of creation. Other languages, however, take much more liberty in this respect; so that if people address a man by *father*, it is nearly the same as if they addressed him by *sir*. As is well known, phrases of this kind have become so prevalent among the Christians, that anybody who does not always use the words *father* and *son* in addressing people would scarcely be considered as one of them. By *the son* they understand most especially Jesus, but apply it also to others besides him. It is Jesus who orders his disciples to say in prayer, "O our *father* which art in heaven" (St. Matt. vi. 9); and informing them of his approaching death, he says that he is going to his *father* and to their *father* (St. John xx. 17). In most of his speeches he explains the word *the son* as meaning himself, that he is *the son of man*.

Page 19. Besides the Christians, the Jews too use similar expressions; for the 2d Book of Kings relates that God consoled David for the loss of his son, who had been borne to him by the wife of Uriah, and promised him another son from her, whom he would *adopt as his own son* (1 Chron. xxii. 9, 10). If the use of the Hebrew language admits that Salomo is by adoption a *son* of God, it is admissible that he who adopted was a *father*, viz. God.

Note on the Manichæans.

The Manichæans stand in a near relationship to the Christians. Mânî expresses himself in a similar way in the book called *Kanz-al'iḥyâ* (*Thesaurus Vivificationis*): "The resplendent hosts will be called young women and virgins, fathers and mothers, sons, brothers, and sisters, because such is the custom in the books of the prophets. In the country of joy there is neither male nor female, nor are there organs of generation. All are invested with living bodies. Since they have divine bodies, they do not differ from each other in weakness and force, in length and shortness, in figure and looks; they are like similar lamps, which are lighted by the same lamp, and which are nourished by the same material. The cause of this kind of name-giving arises, in the last instance, from the rivalry of the two realms in mixing up with each other. When the low dark realm rose from the abyss of chaos, and was seen by the high resplendent realm as consisting of pairs of male and female beings, the latter gave similar outward forms to its own children, who started to fight that other world, so that it placed in the fight one kind of beings opposite the same kind of the other world."

The educated among the Hindus abhor anthropomorphisms of this kind, but the crowd and the members of the single sects use them most extensively. They go even beyond all we have hitherto mentioned, so as to speak of wife, son, daughter, of the rendering pregnant and other physical processes, all in connection with God. They are even so little pious, that, when speaking of these things, they do not even abstain from silly and unbecoming language. However, nobody minds these classes and their theories, though they be numerous. The main and most essential point of the Hindu world of thought is that which the Brahmans think and believe, for they are specially trained for preserving and maintaining their religion. And this it is which we shall explain, viz. the belief of the Brahmans.

Notions of the educated Hindus. All created beings are a unity.

Regarding the whole creation (τὸ ὄν), they think that it is a unity, as has already been declared, because Vâsudeva speaks in the book called *Gîtâ*: "To speak accurately, we must say that all things are divine; for Vishṇu made himself the earth that the living beings should rest thereupon; he made himself water to nourish them thereby; he made himself fire and wind in order to make them grow; and he made himself the heart of every single being. He presented them with recollection and knowledge and the two opposite qualities, as is mentioned in the Veda."

How much does this resemble the expression of the author of the book of Apollonius, *De Causis Rerum*, as if the one had been taken from the other! He says: "There is in all men a divine power, by which all things, both material and immaterial, are apprehended." Thus in Persian the immaterial Lord is called *Khudhâ*, and in a derivative sense the word is also used to mean a man, *i.e.* a human lord.

Purusha.

I. Those Hindus who prefer clear and accurate definitions to vague allusions call the soul *purusha*, which means *man*, because it is the living element in the existing world. Life is the only attribute which they give to it. They describe it as alternately knowing and not knowing, as not knowing ἐν πράξει (actually), and as knowing ἐν δυνάμει (potentially), gaining knowledge by acquisition. The not-knowing of *purusha* is Page 20. the cause why action comes into existence, and its knowing is the cause why action ceases.

Avyakta.

II. Next follows the general matter, *i.e.* the abstract ὕλη, which they call *avyakta*, *i.e.* a shapeless thing. It is dead, but has three powers potentially, not actually, which are called *sattva*, *rajas*, and *tamas*. I have heard that Buddhodana (*sic*), in speaking to his adherents the Shamanians, calls them *buddha*, *dharma*, *saṅgha*, as it were *intelligence*, *religion*, and *ignorance* (*sic*). The first power is rest and goodness, and hence come existing and growing. The second is exertion and fatigue, and hence come firmness and duration. The third is languor and irresolution, and hence come ruin and perishing. Therefore the first power is attributed to the angels, the second to men, the third to the animals. The ideas *before*, *afterwards*, and *thereupon* may be predicated of all these things only in the sense of a certain sequence and on account of the inadequacy of language, but not so as to indicate any ordinary notions of time.

Vyakta and prakṛiti.

III. Matter proceeding from δύναμις into πρᾶξις under the various shapes and with the *three primary forces* is called *vyakta*, i.e. *having shape*, whilst the union of the *abstract* ὕλη and of the *shaped matter* is called *prakṛiti*. This term, however, is of no use to us; we do not want to speak of an *abstract* matter, the term *matter* alone being sufficient for us, since the one does not exist without the other.

Ahaṅkâra.

IV. Next comes *nature*, which they call *ahaṅkâra*. The word is derived from the ideas of *overpowering*, *developing*, and *self-assertion*, because matter when assuming shape causes things to develop into new forms, and this growing consists in the changing of a foreign element and assimilating it to the growing one. Hence it is as if *Nature* were trying to overpower those *other* or foreign elements in this process of changing them, and were subduing that which is changed.

Mahâbhûta

V.–IX. As a matter of course, each compound presupposes simple elements from which it is compounded and into which it is resolved again. The universal existences in the world are the five elements, *i.e.* according to the Hindus: heaven, wind, fire, water, and earth. They are called *mahâbhûta*, i.e. *having great natures*. They do not think, as other people do, that the fire is a hot dry body near the bottom of the ether. They understand by fire the common fire on earth which comes from an inflammation of smoke. The *Vâyu Purâṇa* says: "In the beginning were earth, water, wind,

Annotation from *Vâyu Purâṇa*.

and heaven. Brahman, on seeing sparks under the earth, brought them forward and divided them into three parts: the first, *pârthiva*, is the common fire, which requires wood and is extinguished by water; the second is *divya*, *i.e.* the sun; the third, *vidyut*, *i.e.* the lightning. The sun attracts the water; the lightning shines through the water. In the animals, also, there is fire in the midst of moist substances, which serve to nourish the fire and do not extinguish it."

Pañca mâtáras.
Page 21.

X.-XIV. As these elements are compound, they presuppose simple ones which are called *pañca mâtáras*, *i.e.* five mothers. They describe them as the functions of the senses. The simple element of heaven is *śabda*, *i.e.* that which is heard; that of the wind is *sparśa*, *i.e.* that which is touched; that of the fire is *rûpa*, *i.e.* that which is seen; that of the water is *rasa*, *i.e.* that which is tasted; and that of the earth is *gandha*, *i.e.* that which is smelled. With each of these *mahâbhûta* elements (earth, water, &c.) they connect, firstly, *one* of the *pañca-mâtáras* elements, as we have here shown; and, secondly, all those which have been attributed to the *mahâbhûta* elements previously mentioned. So the earth has all five qualities; the water has them *minus* the smelling (= four qualities); the fire has them *minus* the smelling and tasting (*i.e.* three qualities); the wind has them *minus* smelling, tasting, and seeing (*i.e.* two qualities); heaven has them *minus* smelling, tasting, seeing, and touching (*i.e.* one quality).

I do not know what the Hindus mean by bringing *sound* into relation with heaven. Perhaps they mean something similar to what Homer, the poet of the ancient Greeks, said, "*Those invested with the seven melodies speak and give answer to each other in a pleasant tone.*" Thereby he meant the seven planets; as another poet says, "*The spheres endowed with different melodies are seven, moving eternally, praising the Creator, for it is he who holds them and embraces them unto the farthest end of the starless sphere.*"

Porphyry says in his book on the opinions of the most prominent philosophers about the nature of the sphere: "The heavenly bodies moving about in forms and shapes and with wonderful melodies, which are fixed for ever, as Pythagoras and Diogenes have explained, point to their Creator, who is without equal and without shape. People say that Diogenes had such subtle senses that he, and *he* alone, could hear the sound of the motion of the sphere."

All these expressions are rather hints than clear speech, but admitting of a correct interpretation on a scientific basis. Some successor of those philosophers, one of those who did not grasp the full truth, says: "Sight is watery, hearing airy, smelling fiery, tasting earthy, and touching is what the soul bestows upon everybody by uniting itself with it." I suppose this philosopher connects the sight with the water because he had heard of the moist substances of the eye and of their different classes (*lacuna*); he refers the smelling to the fire on account of frankincense and smoke; the tasting to the earth because of his nourishment which the earth yields him. As, then, the four elements are finished, he is compelled for the fifth sense, the touching, to have recourse to the soul.

The result of all these elements which we have enumerated, *i.e.* a compound of all of them, is the animal. The Hindus consider the plants as a species of animal as Plato also thinks that the plants have a sense, because they have the faculty of distinguishing between that which suits them and that which is detrimental to them. The animal is an animal as distinguished from a stone by virtue of its possession of the senses.

XV.–XIX. The senses are five, called *indriyāṇi*, the hearing by the ear, the seeing by the eye, the smelling by the nose, the tasting by the tongue, and the touching by the skin. **Indriyāṇi.**

XX. Next follows the will, which directs the senses **Mansa.**

in the exercise of their various functions, and which dwells in the heart. Therefore they call it *manas*.

Karmendriyâṇi.

Page 22.

XXI.–XXV. The animal nature is rendered perfect by five *necessary functions*, which they call *karmendriyâṇi*, *i.e.* the senses of action. The former senses bring about learning and knowledge, the latter action and work. We shall call them the *necessaria*. They are: 1. To produce a sound for any of the different wants and wishes a man may have; 2. To throw the hands with force, in order to draw towards or to put away; 3. To walk with the feet, in order to seek something or to fly from it; 4, 5. The ejection of the superfluous elements of nourishment by means of the two openings created for the purpose.

Recapitulation of the twenty-five elements.

The whole of these elements are twenty-five, viz.:—

1. The general soul.
2. The abstract ὕλη.
3. The shaped matter.
4. The overpowering nature.
5–9. The simple mothers.
10–14. The primary elements.
15–19. The senses of apperception.
20. The directing will.
21–25. The instrumental *necessaria*.

The totality of these elements is called *tattva*, and all knowledge is restricted to them. Therefore Vyâsa the son of Parâśara speaks: "Learn twenty-five by distinctions, definitions, and divisions, as you learn a logical syllogism, and something which is a certainty, not merely studying with the tongue. Afterwards adhere to whatever religion you like; your end will be salvation."

CHAPTER IV.

FROM WHAT CAUSE ACTION ORIGINATES, AND HOW THE SOUL IS CONNECTED WITH MATTER.

The soul longing to be united with the body, is so united by intermediary spirits.

VOLUNTARY actions cannot originate in the body of any animal, unless the body be living and exist in close contact with that which is living of itself, *i.e.* the soul. The Hindus maintain that the soul is ἐν πράξει, not ἐν δυνάμει, ignorant of its own essential nature and of its material substratum, longing to apprehend what it does not know, and believing that it cannot exist unless by matter. As, therefore, it longs for the good which is duration, and wishes to learn that which is hidden from it, it starts off in order to be united with matter. However, substances which are dense and such as are *tenuous*, if they have these qualities in the very highest degree, can mix together only by means of intermediary elements which stand in a certain relation to each of the two. Thus the air is the medium between fire and water, which are opposed to each other by these two qualities, for the air is related to the fire in tenuity and to the water in density, and by either of these qualities it renders the one capable of mixing with the other. Now, there is no greater antithesis than that between *body* and *not-body*. Therefore the soul, being what it is, cannot obtain the fulfilment of its wish but by similar media, spirits which derive their existence from the *matres simplices* in the worlds called *Bhûrloka*, *Bhuvarloka*, and *Svarloka*. The Hindus call them *tenuous bodies* over which the soul rises like the sun over the earth, in order to distinguish them from the *dense bodies* which derive their existence from the common five elements. The soul, in consequence of this union with the media, uses them as its vehicles. Thus the image of the sun, though he is only *one*, is represented in many mirrors which are placed opposite to him, as also in the water of vessels placed opposite. The sun is seen alike in each mirror and each vessel, and in each of them his warming and light-giving effect is perceived.

When, now, the various bodies, being from their nature compounds of different things, come into existence, being composed of *male* elements, viz. bones, veins, and sperma, and of *female* elements, viz. flesh, blood, and hair, and being thus fully prepared to receive life, then those spirits unite themselves with them, and the bodies are to the spirits what castles or fortresses are to the various affairs of princes. In a farther stage of development five winds enter the bodies. By the first and second of them the inhaling and exhaling are effected, by the third the mixture of the victuals in the stomach, by the fourth the locomotion of the body from one place to the other, by the fifth the transferring of the apperception of the senses from one side of the body to the other.

Page 23.

Five winds regulating the functions of the body.

The difference of the souls depending upon the difference of the bodies and their interaction.

The spirits here mentioned do not, according to the notions of the Hindus, differ from each other in substance, but have a precisely identical nature. However, their individual characters and manners differ in the same measure as the bodies with which they are united differ, on account of the three forces which are in them striving with each other for supremacy, and on account of their harmony being disturbed by the passions of envy and wrath.

Such, then, is the supreme highest cause of the soul's starting off into action.

On the other hand, the *lowest* cause, as proceeding from matter, is this: that matter for its part seeks for perfection, and always prefers that which is better to that which is less good, viz. proceeding from δύναμις into πρᾶξις. In consequence of the vainglory and ambition which are its pith and marrow, matter produces and shows all kinds of possibilities which it contains to its pupil, the soul, and carries it round through all classes of vegetable and animal beings.

On matter seeking the union with the soul.

Hindus compare the soul to a dancing-girl who is clever in her art and knows well what effect each motion and pose of hers has. She is in the presence of a sybarite most eager of enjoying what she has learned. Now she begins to produce the various kinds of her art one after the other under the admiring gaze of the host, until her programme is finished and the eagerness of the spectator has been satisfied. Then she stops suddenly, since she could not produce anything but a repetition; and as a repetition is not wished for, he dismisses her, and action ceases. The close of this kind of relation is illustrated by the following simile: A caravan has been attacked in the desert by robbers, and the members of it have fled in all directions except a blind man and a lame man, who remain on the spot in helplessness, despairing of their escape. After they meet and recognise each other, the lame speaks to the blind: "I cannot move, but I can lead the way, whilst the opposite is the case with you. Therefore put me on your shoulder and carry me, that I may show you the way and that we may escape together from this calamity." This the blind man did. They obtained their purpose by helping each other, and they left each other on coming out of the desert.

Illustrations of this particular kind of union.

Further, the Hindus speak in different ways of the *agent*, as we have already mentioned. So the *Vishṇu Purâṇa* says: "Matter is the origin of the world. Its action in the world rises from an innate disposition, as a tree sows its own seed by an innate disposition, not

Action of matter rising from an innate disposition.

intentionally, and the wind cools the water though it only intends blowing. *Voluntary* action is only due to Vishṇu." By the latter expression the author means the living being who is above matter (God). Through him matter becomes an *agent* toiling for him as a friend toils for a friend without wanting anything for himself.

On this theory Mâni has built the following sentence: "The Apostles asked Jesus about the life of inanimate nature, whereupon he said, 'If that which is inanimate is separated from the living element which is commingled with it, and appears alone by itself, it is again inanimate and is not capable of living, whilst the living element which has left it, retaining its vital energy unimpaired, never dies.'"

Page 24.

On matter as the cause of action according to the Sâṁkhya school of philosophers.

The book of Sâṁkhya derives action from matter, for the difference of forms under which matter appears depends upon the *three primary forces*, and upon whether one or two of them gain the supremacy over the remainder. These forces are the *angelic*, the *human*, and the *animal*. The three forces belong only to matter, not to the soul. The task of the soul is to learn the actions of matter like a spectator, resembling a traveller who sits down in a village to repose. Each villager is busy with his own particular work, but he looks at them and considers their doings, disliking some, liking others, and taking an example from them. In this way he is busy without having himself any share in the business going on, and without being the cause which has brought it about.

The book of Sâṁkhya brings action into relation with the soul, though the soul has nothing to do with action, only in so far as it resembles a man who happens to get into the company of people whom he does not know. They are robbers returning from a village which they have sacked and destroyed, and he has scarcely marched with them a short distance, when they are overtaken by the avengers. The whole party are taken prisoners, and together with them the innocent man is dragged off; and being treated precisely as they are, he receives the same punishment, without having taken part in their action.

People say the soul resembles the rain-water which comes down from heaven, always the same and of the same nature. However, if it is gathered in vessels placed for the purpose, vessels of different materials, of gold, silver, glass, earthenware, clay, or bitter-salt earth, it begins to differ in appearance, taste, and smell. Thus the soul does not influence matter in any way, except in this, that it gives matter life by being in close contact with it. When, then, matter begins to act, the result is different, in conformity with the one of the *three primary forces* which happens to preponderate, and conformably to the mutual assistance which the other two latent forces afford to the former. This assistance may be given in various ways, as the fresh oil, the dry wick, and the smoking fire help each other to produce light. The soul is in matter like the rider on a carriage, being attended by the senses, who drive the carriage according to the rider's intentions. But the soul for its part is guided by the intelligence with which it is inspired by God. This *intelligence* they describe as that by which the reality of things is apprehended, which shows the way to the knowledge of God, and to such actions as are liked and praised by everybody.

CHAPTER V.

ON THE STATE OF THE SOULS, AND THEIR MIGRATIONS THROUGH THE WORLD IN THE METEMPSYCHOSIS.

As *the word of confession*, "There is no god but God, Muhammad is his prophet," is the shibboleth of Islam, the Trinity that of Christianity, and the institute of the Sabbath that of Judaism, so metempsychosis is the shibboleth of the Hindu religion. Therefore he who does not believe in it does not belong to them, and is not reckoned as one of them. For they hold the following belief:—

Beginning, development, and ultimate result of metempsychosis. Page 25.

The soul, as long as it has not risen to the highest absolute intelligence, does not comprehend the totality of objects at once, or, as it were, in no time. Therefore it must explore all particular beings and examine all the possibilities of existence; and as their number is, though not unlimited, still an enormous one, the soul wants an enormous space of time in order to finish the contemplation of such a multiplicity of objects. The soul acquires knowledge only by the contemplation of the individuals and the species, and of their peculiar actions and conditions. It gains experience from each object, and gathers thereby new knowledge.

However, these actions differ in the same measure as the three primary forces differ. Besides, the world is not left without some direction, being led, as it were, by a bridle and directed towards a definite scope. Therefore the imperishable souls wander about in perishable bodies conformably to the difference of their actions, as they prove to be good or bad. The object of the migration through the world of *reward* (*i.e.* heaven) is to direct the attention of the soul to the good, that it should become desirous of acquiring as much of it as possible. The object of its migration through the world of *punishment* (*i.e.* hell) is to direct its attention to the bad and abominable, that it should strive to keep as far as possible aloof from it.

The migration begins from low stages, and rises to higher and better ones, not the contrary, as we state on purpose, since the one is *a priori* as possible as the other. The difference of these lower and higher stages depends upon the difference of the actions, and this again results from the quantitative and qualitative diversity of the temperaments and the various degrees of combinations in which they appear.

This migration lasts until the object aimed at has been completely attained both for the soul and matter; the *lower* aim being the disappearance of the shape of matter, except any such new formation as may appear desirable; the *higher* aim being the ceasing of the desire of the soul to learn what it did not know before, the insight of the soul into the nobility of its own being and its independent existence, its knowing that it can dispense with matter after it has become acquainted with the mean nature of matter and the instability of its shapes, with all that which matter offers to the senses, and with the truth of the tales about its delights. Then the soul turns away from matter; the connecting links are broken, the union is dissolved. Separation and dissolution take place, and the soul returns to its home, carrying with itself as much of the bliss of knowledge as sesame develops grains and blossoms, afterwards never separating from its oil. The intelligent being, intelligence and its object, are united and become one.

It is now our duty to produce from their literature

Quotations from the book *Gîtâ*.

some clear testimonies as to this subject and cognate theories of other nations.

Vâsudeva speaks to Arjuna instigating him to the battle, whilst they stand between the two lines: "If you believe in predestination, you must know that neither they nor we are mortal, and do not go away without a return, for the souls are immortal and unchangeable. They migrate through the bodies, while man changes from childhood into youth, into manhood and infirm age, the end of which is the death of the body. Thereafter the soul proceeds on its return."

Further he says: "How can a man think of death and being killed who knows that the soul is eternal, not having been born and not perishing; that the soul is something stable and constant; that no sword can cut it, no fire burn it, no water extinguish it, and no wind wither it? The soul migrates from its body, after it has become old, into another, a different one, as the body, when its dress has become old, is clad in another. What then is your sorrow about a soul which does not perish? If it were perishable, it would be more becoming that you should not sorrow about a thing which may be dispensed with, which does not exist, and does not return into existence. But if you look more to your body than to your soul, and are in anxiety about its perishing, you must know that all that which is born dies, and that all that which dies returns into another existence. However, both life and death are not your concern. They are in the hands of God, from whom all things come and to whom they return." Page 26.

In the further course of conversation Arjuna speaks to Vâsudeva: "How did you dare thus to fight Brahman, Brahman who was before the world was and before man was, whilst you are living among us as a being, whose birth and age are known?"

Thereupon Vâsudeva answered: "Eternity (pre-existence) is common to both of us and to him. How often have we lived together, when I knew the times of our life and death, whilst they were concealed from you! When I desire to appear in order to do some good, I array myself in a body, since one cannot be with man except in a human shape."

People tell a tale of a king, whose name I have forgotten, who ordered his people after his death to bury his body on a spot where never before had a dead person been buried. Now they sought for such a spot, but could not find it.; finally, on finding a rock projecting out of the ocean, they thought they had found what they wanted. But then Vâsudeva spoke unto them, "This king has been burned on this identical rock already many times. But now do as you like; for the king only wanted to give you a lesson, and this aim of his has now been attained."

Vâsudeva says: "He who hopes for salvation and strives to free himself from the world, but whose heart is not obedient to his wish, will be rewarded for his action in the worlds of those who receive a good reward; but he does not attain his last object on account of his deficiency, therefore he will return to this world, and will be found worthy of entering a new shape of a kind of beings whose special occupation is devotion. Divine inspiration helps him to raise himself in this new shape by degrees to that which he already wished for in the first shape. His heart begins to comply with his wish; he is more and more purified in the different shapes, until he at last obtains salvation in an uninterrupted series of new births."

Further, Vâsudeva says: "If the soul is free from matter, it is knowing; but as long as it is clad in matter, the soul is not-knowing, on account of the turbid nature of matter. It thinks that it is an agent, and that the actions of the world are prepared for its sake. Therefore it clings to them, and it is stamped with the impressions of the senses. When, then, the soul leaves the body, the traces of the impressions of the senses remain in it, and are not completely eradicated, as it longs for the world of sense and returns towards it. And since it in these stages undergoes changes entirely opposed to each other, it is thereby subject to the influences of the *three primary forces.* What, therefore, can the soul do, its wing being cut, if it is not sufficiently trained and prepared?"

Vâsudeva says: "The best of men is the perfectly wise one, for he loves God and God loves him. How many times has he died and been born again! During his whole life he perseveringly seeks for perfection till he obtains it."

Page 27.

Vishṇu-Dharma.

In the *Vishṇu-Dharma*, Mârkaṇḍeya, speaking of the spiritual beings, says: "Brahman, Kârttikeya, son of Mahâdeva, Lakshmî, who produced the Amṛita, Daksha, who was beaten by Mahâdeva, Umâdevî, the wife of Mahâdeva, each of them has been in the middle of this *kalpa*, and they have been the same already many times."

Varâhamihira speaks of the influences of the comets, and of the calamities which befall men when they appear. These calamities compel them to emigrate from their homes, lean from exhaustion, moaning over their mishap, leading their children by the hand along the road, and speaking to each other in low tones, "We are punished for the sins of our kings;" whereupon others answer, "Not so. This is the retribution for what we have done in the former life, before we entered these bodies."

Mânî.

When Mânî was banished from Êrânshahr, he went to India, learned metempsychosis from the Hindus, and transferred it into his own system. He says in the *Book of Mysteries:* "Since the Apostles knew that the souls are immortal, and that in their migrations they array themselves in every form, that they are shaped in every animal, and are cast in the mould of every figure, they asked Messiah what would be the end of those souls which did not receive the truth nor learn the origin of their existence. Whereupon he said, 'Any weak soul which has not received all that belongs to her of truth perishes without any rest or bliss.'" By *perishing* Mânî means her being punished, not her total disappearance. For in another place he says: "The partisans of Bardesanes think that the living soul rises and is purified in the carcase, not knowing that the latter is the enemy of the soul, that the carcase prevents the soul from rising, that it is a prison, and a painful punishment to the soul. If this human figure were a real existence, its creator would not let it wear out and suffer injury, and would not have compelled it to reproduce itself by the sperma in the uterus."

Patañjali.

The following passage is taken from the book of Patañjali:—"The soul, being on all sides tied to ignorance, which is the cause of its being fettered, is like rice in its cover. As long as it is there, it is capable of growing and ripening in the transition stages between being born and giving birth itself. But if the cover is taken off the rice, it ceases to develop in this way, and becomes stationary. The retribution of the soul depends on the various kinds of creatures through which it wanders, upon the extent of life, whether it be long or short, and upon the particular kind of its happiness, be it scanty or ample."

The pupil asks: "What is the condition of the spirit when it has a claim to a recompense or has committed a crime, and is then entangled in a kind of new birth either in order to receive bliss or to be punished?"

Page 28.

The master says: "It migrates according to what it has previously done, fluctuating between happiness and misfortune, and alternately experiencing pain or pleasure."

The pupil asks: "If a man commits something which necessitates a retribution for him in a different shape from that in which he has committed the thing, and if between both stages there is a great interval of time and the matter is forgotten, what then?"

The master answers: "It is the nature of action to adhere to the spirit, for action is its product, whilst the body is only an instrument for it. Forgetting does not apply to spiritual matters, for they lie outside of time, with the nature of which the notions of long and short duration are necessarily connected. Action, by adhering to the spirit, frames its nature and character into a condition similar to that one into which the soul will enter on its next migration. The soul in its purity knows this, thinks of it, and does not forget it; but the light of the soul is covered by the turbid nature of the body as long as it is connected with the body. Then the soul is like a man who remembers a thing which he once knew, but then forgot in consequence of insanity or an illness or some intoxication which overpowered his mind. Do you not observe that little children are in high spirits when people wish them a long life, and are sorry when people imprecate upon them a speedy death? And what would the one thing or the other signify to them, if they had not tasted the sweetness of life and experienced the bitterness of death in former generations through which they had been migrating to undergo the due course of retribution?"

Quotations from Plato and Proclus.

The ancient Greeks agreed with the Hindus in this belief. Socrates says in the book *Phaedo*: "We are reminded in the tales of the ancients that the souls go from here to Hades, and then come from Hades to here; that the living originates from the dead, and that altogether things originate from their contraries. Therefore those who have died are among the living. Our souls lead an existence of their own in Hades. The soul of each man is glad or sorry at something, and contemplates this thing. This impressionable nature ties the soul to the body, nails it down in the body, and gives it, as it were, a bodily figure. The soul which is not pure cannot go to Hades. It quits the body still filled with its nature, and then migrates hastily into another body, in which it is, as it were, deposited and made fast. Therefore, it has no share in the living of the company of the unique, pure, divine essence."

Further he says: "If the soul is an independent being, our learning is nothing but remembering that which we had learned previously, because our souls were in some place before they appeared in this human figure. When people see a thing to the use of which they were accustomed in childhood, they are under the influence of this impressionability, and a cymbal, for instance, reminds them of the boy who used to beat it, whom they, however, had forgotten. Forgetting is the vanishing of knowledge, and knowing is the soul's remembrance of that which it had learned before it entered the body."

Proclus says: "Remembering and forgetting are peculiar to the soul endowed with reason. It is evident that the soul has always existed. Hence it follows that it has always been both knowing and forgetting, knowing when it is separated from the body, forgetting when it is in connection with the body. For, being separated from the body, it belongs to the realm of the spirit, and therefore it is knowing; but being connected with the body, it descends from the realm of the spirit, and is exposed to forgetting because of some forcible influence prevailing over it." Page 29.

Ṣûfî doctrine.

The same doctrine is professed by those Ṣûfî who teach that this world is a sleeping soul and yonder world a soul awake, and who at the same time admit that God is immanent in certain places—*e.g.* in heaven—in the *seat* and the *throne* of God (mentioned in the Koran). But then there are others who admit that

God is immanent in the whole world, in animals, trees, and the inanimate world, which they call his *universal appearance.* To those who hold this view, the entering of the souls into various beings in the course of metempsychosis is of no consequence.

CHAPTER VI.

ON THE DIFFERENT WORLDS, AND ON THE PLACES OF RETRIBUTION IN PARADISE AND HELL.

The three *lokas.*

THE Hindus call the world *loka*. Its primary division consists of the upper, the low, and the middle. The upper one is called *svarloka, i.e.* paradise; the low, *nâgaloka, i.e.* the world of the serpents, which is hell; besides they call it *naraloka*, and sometimes also *pâtâla, i.e.* the lowest world. The middle world, that one in which we live, is called *madhyaloka* and *manushyaloka, i.e.* the world of men. In the latter, man has to earn, in the upper to receive his reward; in the low, to receive punishment. A man who deserves to come to *svarloka* or *nâgaloka* receives there the full recompense of his deeds during a certain length of time corresponding to the duration of his deeds, but in either of them there is only the soul, the soul free from the body.

For those who do not deserve to rise to heaven and to sink as low as hell there is another world called *tiryagloka*, the irrational world of plants and animals, through the individuals of which the soul has to wander in the metempsychosis until it reaches the human being, rising by degrees from the lowest kinds of the vegetable world to the highest classes of the sensitive world. The stay of the soul in this world has one of the following causes: either the award which is due to the soul is not sufficient to raise it into heaven or to sink it into hell, or the soul is in its wanderings on the way back from hell; for they believe that a soul returning to the human world from heaven at once adopts a human body, whilst that one which returns there from hell has first to wander about in plants and animals before it reaches the degree of living in a human body.

Quotation from the *Vishṇu-Purâṇa.*

The Hindus speak in their traditions of a large number of hells, of their qualities and their names, and for each kind of sin they have a special hell. The number of hells is 88,000 according to the *Vishṇu-Purâṇa.* We shall quote what this book says on the subject:—

"The man who makes a false claim and who bears false witness, he who helps these two and he who ridicules people, come into the *Raurava* hell.

"He who sheds innocent blood, who robs others of their rights and plunders them, and who kills cows, comes into *Rodha.* Those also who strangle people come here.

Page 30.

"Whoso kills a Brahman, and he who steals gold, and their companions, the princes who do not look after their subjects, he who commits adultery with the family of his teacher, or who lies down with his mother-in-law, come into *Taptakumbha.*

"Whoso connives at the shame of his wife for greediness, commits adultery with his sister or the wife of his son, sells his child, is stingy towards himself with his property in order to save it, comes into *Mahâjwâla.*

"Whoso is disrespectful to his teacher and is not pleased with him, despises men, commits incest with animals, contemns the Veda and Purâṇas, or tries to make a gain by means of them in the markets, comes into *Śavala.*

"A man who steals and commits tricks, who opposes the straight line of conduct of men, who hates his father, who does not like God and men, who does not honour the gems which God has made glorious, and who considers them to be like other stones, comes into *Kṛimîśa.*

"Whoso does not honour the rights of parents and grandparents, whoso does not do his duty towards the angels, the maker of arrows and spear-points, come to *Lâlâbhaksha*.

"The maker of swords and knives comes to *Viśasana*.

"He who conceals his property, being greedy for the presents of the rulers, and the Brahman who sells meat or oil or butter or sauce or wine, come to *Adhomukha*.

"He who rears cocks and cats, small cattle, pigs, and birds, comes to *Rudhirândha*.

"Public performers and singers in the markets, those who dig wells for drawing water, a man who cohabits with his wife on holy days, who throws fire into the houses of men, who betrays his companion and then receives him, being greedy for his property, come to *Rudhira*.

"He who takes the honey out of the beehive comes to *Vaitaraṇî*.

"Whoso takes away by force the property and women of others in the intoxication of youth comes to *Kṛishṇa*.

"Whoso cuts down the trees comes to *Asipatravana*.

"The hunter, and the maker of snares and traps, come to *Vahnijwâla*.

"He who neglects the customs and rules, and he who violates the laws—and he is the worst of all—come to *Sandaṁśaka*."

We have given this enumeration only in order to show what kinds of deeds the Hindus abhor as sins.

According to some Hindus, the migration through plants and animals takes the place of hell.

Some Hindus believe that the middle world, that one for earning, is the human world, and that a man wanders about in it, because he has received a reward which does not lead him into heaven, but at the same time saves him from hell. They consider heaven as a higher stage, where a man lives in a state of bliss which must be of a certain duration on account of the good deeds he has done. On the contrary, they consider the wandering about in plants and animals as a lower stage, where a man dwells for punishment for a certain length of time, which is thought to correspond to the wretched deeds he has done. People who hold this view do not know of another hell, but this kind of degradation below the degree of living as a human being.

Page 31. Moral principles of metempsychosis.

All these degrees of retribution are necessary for this reason, that the seeking for salvation from the fetters of matter frequently does not proceed on the straight line which leads to absolute knowledge, but on lines chosen by guessing or chosen because others had chosen them. Not one action of man shall be lost, not even the last of all; it shall be brought to his account after his good and bad actions have been balanced against each other. The retribution, however, is not according to the deed, but according to the intention which a man had in doing it; and a man will receive his reward either in the form in which he lives on earth, or in that form into which his soul will migrate, or in a kind of intermediary state after he has left his shape and has not yet entered a new one.

The *Sâṁkhya* criticises metempsychosis.

Here now the Hindus quit the path of philosophical speculation and turn aside to traditional fables as regards the two places where reward or punishment is given, *e.g.* that man exists there as an incorporeal being, and that after having received the reward of his actions he again returns to a bodily appearance and human shape, in order to be prepared for his further destiny. Therefore the author of the book *Sâṁkhya* does not consider the reward of paradise a special gain, because it has an end and is not eternal, and because this kind of life resembles the life of this our world; for it is not free from ambition and envy, having in itself various degrees and classes of existence, whilst cupidity and desire do not cease save where there is perfect equality.

Ṣûfî parallel.

The Ṣûfî, too, do not consider the stay in paradise a special gain for another reason, because there the soul delights in other things but the Truth, *i.e.* God, and its thoughts are diverted from the Absolute Good by things which are not the Absolute Good.

On the soul leaving the body, according to popular views.

We have already said that, according to the belief of the Hindus, the soul exists in these two places without a body. But this is only the view of the educated among them, who understand by the soul an independent being. However, the lower classes, and those who cannot imagine the existence of the soul without a body, hold about this subject very different views. One is this, that the cause of the agony of death is the soul's waiting for a shape which is to be prepared. It does not quit the body before there has originated a cognate being of similar functions, one of those which nature prepares either as an embryo in a mother's womb or as a seed in the bosom of the earth. Then the soul quits the body in which it has been staying.

Others hold the more traditional view that the soul does not wait for such a thing, that it quits its shape on account of its weakness whilst another body has been prepared for it out of the elements. This body is called *ativâhika*, i.e. *that which grows in haste*, because it does not come into existence by being born. The soul stays in this body a complete year in the greatest agony, no matter whether it has deserved to be rewarded or to be punished. This is like the Barzakh of the Persians, an intermediary stage between the periods of acting and earning and that of receiving award. For this reason the heir of the deceased must, according to Hindu use, fulfil the rites of the year for the deceased, duties which end with the end of the year, for then the soul goes to that place which is prepared for it.

Quotations from *Vishṇu Purâṇa* and the Sâṃkhya school.

We shall now give some extracts from their literature to illustrate these ideas. First from the *Vishṇu Purâṇa*.

"Maitreya asked Parâśara about the purpose of hell and the punishment in it, whereupon he answered: 'It is for distinguishing the good from the bad, knowledge

Page 32.

from ignorance, and for the manifestation of justice. But not every sinner enters hell. Some of them escape hell by previously doing works of repentance and expiation. The greatest expiation is uninterruptedly thinking of Vishṇu in every action. Others wander about in plants, filthy insects and birds, and abominable dirty creeping things like lice and worms, for such a length of time as they desire it.' "

In the book *Sâṁkhya* we read: "He who deserves exaltation and reward will become like one of the angels, mixing with the hosts of spiritual beings, not being prevented from moving freely in the heavens and from living in the company of their inhabitants, or like one of the eight classes of spiritual beings. But he who deserves humiliation as recompense for sins and crimes will become an animal or a plant, and will wander about until he deserves a reward so as to be saved from punishment, or until he offers himself as expiation, flinging away the vehicle of the body, and thereby attaining salvation."

Muslim authors on metempsychosis.

A theosoph who inclines towards metempsychosis says: "The metempsychosis has four degrees:

"1. The *transferring*, *i.e.* the procreation as limited to the human species, because it *transfers* existence from one individual to another; the opposite of this is—

"2. The *transforming*, which concerns men in particular, since they are *transformed* into monkeys, pigs and elephants.

"3. A stable condition of existence, like the condition of the plants. This is worse than *transferring*, because it is a stable condition of life, remains as it is through all time, and lasts as long as the mountains.

"4. The *dispersing*, the opposite of number 3, which applies to the plants that are plucked, and to animals immolated as sacrifice, because they vanish without leaving posterity."

Abû-Ya'ḳûb of Sijistân maintains in his book, called "*The disclosing of that which is veiled*," that the species are preserved; that metempsychosis always proceeds in one and the same species, never crossing its limits and passing into another species.

Quotations from Johannes Grammaticus and Plato.

This was also the opinion of the ancient Greeks; for Johannes Grammaticus relates as the view of Plato that the rational souls will be clad in the bodies of animals, and that in this regard he followed the fables of Pythagoras.

Socrates says in the book *Phœdo:* "The body is earthy, ponderous, heavy, and the soul, which loves it, wanders about and is attracted towards the place, to which it looks from fear of the shapeless and of Hades, the gathering-place of the souls. They are soiled, and circle round the graves and cemeteries, where souls have been seen appearing in shadowy forms. This phantasmagoria only occurs to such souls as have not been entirely separated, in which there is still a part of that towards which the look is directed."

Further he says: "It appears that these are not the souls of the good, but the souls of the wicked, which wander about in these things to make an expiation for the badness of their former kind of rearing. Thus they remain until they are again bound in a body on account of the desire for the bodily shape which has followed them. They will dwell in bodies the character of which is like the character which they had in the world. Whoso, *e.g.* only cares for eating and drinking will enter the various kinds of asses and wild animals; and he who preferred wrong and oppression will enter the various kinds of wolves, and falcons, and hawks."

Further he says about the gathering-places of the souls after death: "If I did not think that I am going first to gods who are wise, ruling, and good, then afterwards to men, deceased ones, better than those here, I should be wrong not to be in sorrow about death." Page 33.

Further, Plato says about the two places of reward and of punishment: "When a man dies, a *daimon, i.e.* one of the guardians of hell, leads him to the tribunal of judgment, and a guide whose special office it is brings him, together with those assembled there, to Hades, and there he remains the necessary number of many and long cycles of time. Telephos says, 'The road of Hades is an even one.' I, however, say, 'If the road were even or only a single one, a guide could be dispensed with.' Now that soul which longs for the body, or whose deeds were evil and not just, which resembles souls that have committed murder, flies from there and encloses itself in every species of being until certain times pass by. Thereupon it is brought by necessity to that place which is suitable to it. But the pure soul finds companions and guides, gods, and dwells in the places which are suitable to it."

Further he says: "Those of the dead who led a middle sort of life travel on a vessel prepared for them over Acheron. After they have received punishment and have been purified from crime, they wash and receive honour for the good deeds which they did according to merit. Those, however, who had committed great sins, *e.g.* the stealing from the sacrifices of the gods, robberies on a great scale, unjust killing, repeatedly and consciously violating the laws, are thrown into Tartarus, whence they will never be able to escape."

Further: "Those who repented of their sins already during their lifetime, and whose crimes were of a somewhat lower degree, who, *e.g.* committed some act of violence against their parents, or committed a murder by mistake, are thrown into Tartarus, being punished there for a whole year; but then the wave throws them out to a place whence they cry to their antagonists, asking them to abstain from further retaliation, that they may be saved from the horrors of punishment. If those now agree, they *are* saved; if not, they are sent back into

Tartarus. And this, their punishment, goes on until their antagonists agree to their demands for being relieved. Those whose mode of life was virtuous are liberated from *these* places on *this* earth. They feel as though released from prison, and they will inhabit the pure earth."

Tartarus is a huge deep ravine or gap into which the rivers flow. All people understand by the punishment of hell the most dreadful things which are known to them, and the Western countries, like Greece, have sometimes to suffer deluges and floods. But the description of Plato indicates a place where there are glaring flames, and it seems that he means the sea or some part of the ocean, in which there is a whirlpool (*durdûr*, a pun upon *Tartarus*). No doubt these descriptions represent the belief of the men of those ages.

CHAPTER VII.

ON THE NATURE OF LIBERATION FROM THE WORLD, AND ON THE PATH LEADING THERETO.

First part: Moksha in general.

If the soul is bound up with the world, and its being bound up has a certain cause, it cannot be liberated from this bond save by the opposite of this identical cause. Now according to the Hindus, as we have already explained (p. 55), the reason of the bond is *ignorance*, and therefore it can only be liberated by *knowledge*, by comprehending all things in such a way as to define them both in general and in particular, rendering superfluous any kind of deduction and removing all doubts. For the soul distinguishing between things (τὰ ὄντα) by means of definitions, recognises its own self, and recognises at the same time that it is its noble lot to last for ever, and that it is the vulgar lot of matter to change and to perish in all kinds of shapes. Then it dispenses with matter, and perceives that that which it held to be good and delightful is in reality bad and painful. In this manner it attains real knowledge and turns away from being arrayed in matter. Thereby action ceases, and both matter and soul become free by separating from each other.

Page 34.

Moksha according to *Patañjali.*

The author of the book of *Patañjali* says: "The concentration of thought on the unity of God induces man to notice something besides that with which he is occupied. He who wants God, wants the good for the whole creation without a single exception for any reason whatever; but he who occupies himself exclusively with his own self, will for its benefit neither inhale, breathe, nor exhale it (*śvâsa* and *praśvâsa*). When a man attains to this degree, his spiritual power prevails over his bodily power, and then he is gifted with the faculty of doing eight different things by which detachment is realised; for a man can only dispense with that which he is able to do, not with that which is outside his grasp. These eight things are:—

"1. The faculty in man of making his body so thin that it becomes invisible to the eyes.

"2. The faculty of making the body so light that it is indifferent to him whether he treads on thorns or mud or sand.

"3. The faculty of making his body so big that it appears in a terrifying miraculous shape.

"4. The faculty of realising every wish.

"5. The faculty of knowing whatever he wishes.

"6. The faculty of becoming the ruler of whatever religious community he desires.

"7. That those over whom he rules are humble and obedient to him.

"8. That all distances between a man and any far-away place vanish."

Sûfî parallel.

The terms of the Ṣûfî as to the *knowing* being and his attaining the *stage of knowledge* come to the same effect, for they maintain that he has two souls—an eternal one, not exposed to change and alteration, by which he knows that which is hidden, the transcendental world, and performs wonders; and another, a human soul, which is liable to being changed and being born. From these and similar views the doctrines of the Christians do not much differ.

The different degrees of knowledge according to *Patañjali*.

The Hindus say: "If a man has the faculty to perform these things, he can dispense with them, and will reach the goal by degrees, passing through several stages:—

"1. The knowledge of things as to their names and qualities and distinctions, which, however, does not yet afford the knowledge of definitions.

"2. Such a knowledge of things as proceeds as far as the definitions by which particulars are classed under the category of universals, but regarding which a man must still practise distinction.

"3. This distinction (*viveka*) disappears, and man comprehends things at once as a whole, but within *time*.

"4. This kind of knowledge is raised above *time*, and he who has it can dispense with names and epithets, which are only instruments of human imperfection. In this stage the *intellectus* and the *intelligens* unite with the *intellectum*, so as to be one and the same thing."

This is what *Patañjali* says about the knowledge which liberates the soul. In Sanskrit they call its liberation *Moksha*—i.e. *the end*. By the same term they call the last contact of the eclipsed and eclipsing bodies, or their separation in both lunar and solar eclipses, because it is *the end* of the eclipse, the moment when the two luminaries which were in contact with each other separate. Page 35.

According to the Hindus, the organs of the senses have been made for acquiring knowledge, and the pleasure which they afford has been created to stimulate people to research and investigation, as the pleasure which eating and drinking afford to the taste has been created to preserve the individual by means of nourishment. So the pleasure of *coitus* serves to preserve the species by giving birth to new individuals. If there were not special pleasure in these two functions, man and animals would not practise them for these purposes.

On knowledge according to the book *Gîtâ*.

In the book *Gîtâ* we read: "Man is created for the purpose of *knowing*; and because *knowing* is always the same, man has been gifted with the same organs.

If man were created for the purpose of *acting*, his organs would be *different*, as actions are *different* in consequence of the difference of the *three primary forces*. However, bodily nature is bent upon *acting* on account of its essential opposition to *knowing*. Besides, it wishes to invest action with *pleasures* which in reality are *pains*. But knowledge is such as to leave this nature behind itself prostrated on the earth like an opponent, and removes all darkness from the soul as an eclipse or clouds are removed from the sun."

Quotation from Plato's *Phædo*.

This resembles the opinion of Socrates, who thinks that the soul "being with the body, and wishing to inquire into something, then is deceived by the body. But by cogitations something of its desires becomes clear to it. Therefore, its cogitation takes place in that time when it is not disturbed by anything like hearing, seeing, or by any pain or pleasure, when it is quite by itself, and has as much as possible quitted the body and its companionship. In particular, the soul of the philosopher scorns the body, and wishes to be separate from it."

"If we in this our life did not make use of the body, nor had anything in common with it except in cases of necessity, if we were not inoculated with its nature, but were perfectly free from it, we should come near *knowledge* by getting rest from the ignorance of the body, and we should become pure by knowing ourselves as far as God would permit us. And it is only right to acknowledge that this is the truth."

The process of knowledge according to *Gîtâ* and another source.

Now we return and continue our quotation from the book *Gîtâ*.

"Likewise the other organs of the senses serve for acquiring knowledge. The *knowing person* rejoices in turning them to and fro on the field of knowledge, so that they are his spies. The apprehension of the senses is different according to time. The *senses* which serve the heart perceive only that which is present. The heart reflects over that which is present and remembers also the past. The *nature* takes hold of the present, claims it for itself in the past, and prepares to wrestle with it in future. The *reason* understands the nature of a thing, no regard being had of time or date, since past and future are the same for it. Its nearest helpers are *reflection* and *nature*; the most distant are the five senses. When the *senses* bring before reflection some particular object of knowledge, *reflection* cleans it from the errors of the functions of the senses, and hands it over to reason. Thereupon reason makes universal what was before particular, and communicates it to the *soul*. Thus the soul comes to know it."

Further, the Hindus think that a man becomes *knowing* in one of three ways:—

1. By being inspired, not in a certain course of time, but at once, at birth, and in the cradle, as, *e.g.* the sage Kapila, for he was born knowing and wise.

2. By being inspired after a certain time, like the children of Brahman, for they were inspired when they came of age.

3. By learning, and after a certain course of time, like all men who learn when their mind ripens.

Page 36

Cupidity, wrath, and ignorance are the chief obstacles to Moksha.

Liberation through knowledge can only be obtained by abstaining from *evil*. The branches of evil are many, but we may classify them as *cupidity*, *wrath*, and *ignorance*. If the roots are cut the branches will wither. And here we have first to consider the rule of the two forces of *cupidity* and *wrath*, which are the greatest and most pernicious enemies of man, deluding him by the pleasure of eating and the delight of revenge, whilst in reality they are much more likely to lead him into pains and crimes. They make a man similar to the wild beasts and the cattle, nay, even to the demons and devils.

Next we have to consider that man must prefer the reasoning force of mind, by which he becomes similar to the highest angels, to the forces of cupidity and wrath; and, lastly, that he must turn away from the actions of the world. He cannot, however, *give up* these actions unless he does away with their causes, which are his lust and ambition. Thereby the second of the *three primary forces* is cut away. However, the abstaining *from action* takes place in two different ways:—

1. By laziness, procrastination, and ignorance according to the *third force*. This mode is not desirable, for it will lead to a blamable end.

2. By judicious selection and by preferring that which is better to that which is good, which way leads to a laudable end.

The abstaining from actions is rendered perfect in this way, that a man quits anything that might occupy him and shuts himself up against it. Thereby he will be enabled to restrain his senses from extraneous objects to such a degree that he does not any more know that there exists anything besides himself, and be enabled to stop all motions, and even the breathing. It is evident that a greedy man strains to effect his object, the man who strains becomes tired, and the tired man pants; so the panting is the result of greediness. If this greediness is removed, the breathing becomes like the breathing of a being living at the bottom of the sea, that does not want breath; and then the heart quietly rests on one thing, viz. the search for liberation and for arriving at the absolute unity.

Further quotations from *Gîtâ*.

In the book *Gîtâ* we read: "How is a man to obtain liberation who disperses his heart and does not concentrate it alone upon God, who does not exclusively direct his action towards him? But if a man turns away his cogitation from all other things and concentrates it upon the One, the light of his heart will be steady like the light of a lamp filled with clean oil, standing in a corner where no wind makes it flicker, and he will be occupied in such a degree as not to perceive anything that gives pain, like heat or cold, knowing that everything besides the One, *the Truth*, is a vain phantom."

In the same book we read: "Pain and pleasure have no effect on the real world, just as the continuous flow of the streams to the ocean does not affect its water. How could anybody ascend this mountain pass save him who has conquered *cupidity* and *wrath* and rendered them inert?"

On account of what we have explained it is necessary that cogitation should be continuous, not in any way to be defined by number; for a number always denotes *repeated times*, and repeated times presuppose a break in the cogitation occurring between two consecutive times. This would interrupt the continuity, and would prevent cogitation becoming united with the object of cogitation. And this is not the object kept in view, which is, on the contrary, *the continuity of cogitation.*

This goal is attained either in a *single shape, i.e.* a single stage of metempsychosis, or *in several shapes*, in this way, that a man perpetually practises virtuous behaviour and accustoms the soul thereto, so that this virtuous behaviour becomes to it a nature and an essential quality.

The nine commandments of the Hindu religion.

Virtuous behaviour is that which is described by the religious law. Its principal laws, from which they derive many secondary ones, may be summed up in the following nine rules:—

1. A man shall not kill.
2. Nor lie.
3. Nor steal.
4. Nor whore.
5. Nor hoard up treasures. Page 37.
6. He is perpetually to practise holiness and purity.
7. He is to perform the prescribed fasting without an interruption and to dress poorly.

8. He is to hold fast to the adoration of God with praise and thanks.

9. He is always to have in mind the word *ôm*, the word of creation, without pronouncing it.

The injunction to abstain from killing as regards animals (No. 1) is only a special part of the general order to *abstain from doing anything hurtful.* Under this head falls also the robbing of another man's goods (No. 3), and the telling lies (No. 2), not to mention the foulness and baseness of so doing.

The abstaining from hoarding up (No. 5) means that a man is to give up toil and fatigue; that he who seeks the bounty of God feels sure that he is provided for; and that, starting from the base slavery of material life, we may, by the noble liberty of cogitation, attain eternal bliss.

Practising purity (No. 6) implies that a man knows the filth of the body, and that he feels called upon to hate it, and to love cleanness of soul. Tormenting oneself by poor dress (No. 7) means that a man should reduce the body, allay its feverish desires, and sharpen its senses. Pythagoras once said to a man who took great care to keep his body in a flourishing condition and to allow it everything it desired, "Thou art not lazy in building thy prison and making thy fetter as strong as possible."

The holding fast to meditation on God and the angels means a kind of familiar intercourse with them. The book *Sâṁkhya* says: "Man cannot go beyond anything in the wake of which he marches, it being a scope to him (*i.e.* thus engrossing his thoughts and detaining him from meditation on God)." The book *Gîtâ* says: "All that which is the object of a man's continuous meditating and bearing in mind is stamped upon him, so that he even unconsciously is guided by it. Since, now, the time of heath is the time of remembering what we love, the soul on leaving the body is united with that object whicd we love, and is changed into it."

However, the reader must not believe that it is only the union of the soul with any forms of life that perish and return into existence that is perfect *liberation*, for the same book, *Gîtâ*, says: "He who knows when dying that God is everything, and that from him everything proceeds, *is liberated*, though his degree be lower than that of the saints."

Quotations from *Gîtâ*.

The same book says: "Seek deliverance from this world by abstaining from any connection with its follies, by having sincere intentions in all actions and when making offerings by fire to God, without any desire for reward and recompense; further, by keeping aloof from mankind." The real meaning of all this is that you should not prefer one because he is your friend to another because he is your enemy, and that you should beware of negligence in sleeping when others are awake, and in waking when others are asleep; for this, too, is a kind of being *absent* from them, though outwardly you are *present* with them. Further: Seek deliverance by guarding soul from soul, for the soul is an enemy if it be addicted to lusts; but what an excellent friend it is when it is *chaste!*"

Greek and Şûfî parallels.

Socrates, caring little for his impending death and being glad at the prospect of coming to his Lord, said: "My degree must not be considered by any one of you lower than that of the swan," of which people say that it is the bird of Apollo, the sun, and that it therefore knows what is hidden; that is, when feeling that it will soon die, sings more and more melodies from joy at the prospect of coming to its Lord. "At least my joy at my prospect of coming to the object of my adoration must not be less than the joy of this bird."

For similar reasons the Şûfî define *love* as being engrossed by the creature to the exclusion of God.

Second part: The *practical* path leading to Moksha

In the book of *Patañjali* we read: "We divide the path of liberation into three parts:—

"I. *The practical one* (*kriyâ-yoga*), a process of habituaccording to *Patañjali*, *Vishṇu-Dharma*, and *Gitâ*.

Page 38.

ating the senses in a gentle way to detach themselves from the external world, and to concentrate themselves upon the internal one, so that they exclusively occupy themselves with God. This is in general the path of him who does not desire anything save what is sufficient to sustain life."

In the book *Vishṇu-Dharma* we read: "The king Parîksha, of the family of Bhṛigu, asked Śatânîka, the head of an assembly of sages, who stayed with him, for the explanation of some notion regarding the deity, and by way of answer the sage communicated what *he* had heard from Śaunaka, Śaunaka from Uśanas, and Uśanas from Brahman, as follows: 'God is without first and without last; he has not been born from anything, and he has not borne anything save that of which it is impossible to say that it is *He*, and just as impossible to say that it is *Not-he*. How should I be able to ponder on the absolute good which is an outflow of his benevolence, and of the absolute bad which is a product of his wrath; and how could I know him so as to worship him as is his due, save by turning away from the world in general and by occupying myself exclusively with him, by perpetually cogitating on him?'

"It was objected to him: 'Man is weak and his life is a trifling matter. He can hardly bring himself to abstain from the necessities of life, and this prevents him from walking on the path of liberation. If we were living in the *first* age of mankind, when life extended to thousands of years, and when the world was good because of the non-existence of evil, we might hope that that which is necessary on this path should be done. But since we live in the *last* age, what, according to your opinion, is there in this revolving world that might protect him against the floods of the ocean and save him from drowning?'

"Thereupon Brahman spoke: 'Man wants nourishment, shelter, and clothing. Therefore in *them* there is no harm to him. But happiness is only to be found in abstaining from things besides them, from superfluous and fatiguing actions. Worship God, him alone, and venerate him; approach him in the place of worship with presents like perfumes and flowers; praise him and attach your heart to him so that it never leaves him. Give alms to the Brahmans and to others, and vow to God vows—special ones, like the abstaining from meat; general ones, like fasting. Vow to him animals which you must not hold to be something different from yourselves, so as to feel entitled to kill them. Know that he is everything. Therefore, whatever you do, let it be for his sake; and if you enjoy anything of the vanities of the world, do not forget him in your intentions. If you aim at the fear of God and the faculty of worshipping him, thereby you will obtain liberation, not by anything else.'"

The book *Gîtâ* says: "He who mortifies his lust does not go beyond the necessary wants; and he who is content with that which is sufficient for the sustaining of life will not be ashamed nor be despised."

The same book says: "If man is not without wants as regards the demands of human nature, if he wants nourishment to appease thereby the heat of hunger and exhaustion, sleep in order to meet the injurious influences of fatiguing motions and a couch to rest upon, let the latter be clean and smooth, everywhere equally high above the ground and sufficiently large that he may stretch out his body upon it. Let him have a place of temperate climate, not hurtful by cold nor by heat, and where he is safe against the approach of reptiles. All this helps him to sharpen the functions of his heart, that he may without any interruption concentrate his cogitation on the unity. For all things besides the necessities of life in the way of eating and clothing are pleasures of a kind which, in reality, are disguised pains. To acquiesce in them is impossible, and would end in the gravest inconvenience. There is pleasure only to him who kills the two intolerable enemies, *lust* and *wrath*, already during his life and not when he dies, who derives his rest and bliss from within, not from without; and who, in the final result, is able altogether to dispense with his senses." Page 39.

Vâsudeva spoke to Arjuna: "If you want the absolute good, take care of the nine doors of thy body, and know what is going in and out through them. Constrain thy heart from dispersing its thoughts, and quiet thy soul by thinking of the upper membrane of the child's brain, which is first soft, and then is closed and becomes strong, so that it would seem that there were no more need of it. Do not take perception of the senses for anything but the nature immanent in their organs, and therefore beware of following it."

The path of renunciation as the second part of the path of liberation according to *Gîtâ*.

II. The second part of the path of liberation is renunciation (the *via omissionis*), based on the knowledge of the evil which exists in the changing things of creation and their vanishing shapes. In consequence the heart shuns them, the longing for them ceases, and a man is raised above the *three primary forces* which are the cause of actions and of their diversity. For he who accurately understands the affairs of the world knows that the good ones among them are evil in reality, and that the bliss which they afford changes in the course of recompense into pains. Therefore he avoids everything which might aggravate his condition of being entangled in the world, and which might result in making him stay in the world for a still longer period.

The book *Gîtâ* says: "Men err in what is ordered and what is forbidden. They do not know how to distinguish between good and evil in actions. Therefore, giving up acting altogether and keeping aloof from it, this is *the* action."

The same book says: "The purity of knowledge is high above the purity of all other things, for by knowledge ignorance is rooted out and certainty is gained in exchange for doubt, which is a means of torture, for there is no rest for him who doubts."

It is evident from this that the first part of the path of liberation is instrumental to the second one.

Worship as the third part of the path of liberation according to *Gîtâ*.

III. The third part of the path of liberation which is to be considered as instrumental to the preceding two is *worship*, for this purpose, that God should help a man to obtain liberation, and deign to consider him worthy of such a shape of existence in the metempsychosis in which he may effect his progress towards beatitude.

The author of the book *Gîtâ* distributes the duties of worship among the *body*, the *voice*, and the *heart*.

What the *body* has to do is fasting, prayer, the fulfilment of the law, the service towards the angels and the sages among the Brahmans, keeping clean the body, keeping aloof from killing under all circumstances, and never looking at another man's wife and other property.

What the *voice* has to do is the reciting of the holy texts, praising God, always to speak the truth, to address people mildly, to guide them, and to order them to do good.

What the *heart* has to do is to have straight, honest intentions, to avoid haughtiness, always to be patient, to keep your senses under control, and to have a cheerful mind.

On Rasâyana as a path leading to Moksha.

The author (Patañjali) adds to the three parts of the path of liberation a fourth one of an illusory nature, called *Rasâyana*, consisting of alchemistic tricks with various drugs, intended to realise things which by nature are impossible. We shall speak of these things afterwards (*vide* chap. xvii.). They have no other relation to the theory of *Moksha* but this, that also in the tricks of Rasâyana everything depends upon the intention, the well-understood determination to carry them out, this determination resting on the firm belief in them, and resulting in the endeavour to realise them.

On the nature of Moksha itself.

According to the Hindus, liberation is union with God; for they describe God as a being who can dispense with hoping for a recompense or with fearing opposition, unattainable to thought, because he is sublime beyond all unlikeness which is abhorrent and all likeness which is sympathetic, knowing himself not by a knowledge which comes to him like an accident, regarding something which had not in every phase before been known to him. And this same description the Hindus apply to *the liberated one*, for he is equal to God in all these things except in the matter of beginning, since he has not existed from all eternity, and except this, that before liberation he existed in *the world of entanglement*, knowing the objects of knowledge only by a phantasmagoric kind of knowing which he had acquired by absolute exertion, whilst the object of his knowing is still covered, as it were, by a veil. On the contrary, in the world of liberation all veils are lifted, all covers taken off, and obstacles removed. There the being is absolutely knowing, not desirous of learning anything unknown, separated from the soiled perceptions of the senses, united with the everlasting ideas.

Page 40.

Quotations from *Patañjali*.

Therefore in the end of the book of *Patañjali*, after the pupil has asked about the nature of liberation, the master says: "If you wish, say, Liberation is the cessation of the functions of *the three forces*, and their returning to that home whence they had come. Or if you wish, say, It is the return of the soul as a *knowing* being into its own nature."

From *Sâṁkhya*.

The two men, pupil and master, disagree regarding him who has arrived at the stage of liberation. The anchorite asks in the book of Sâṁkhya, "Why does not *death* take place when *action* ceases?" The sage replies, "Because the cause of the separation is a certain condition of the soul whilst the spirit is still in the body. Soul and body are separated by a natural condition which severs their union. Frequently when the cause of an effect has already ceased or disappeared, the effect itself still goes on for a certain time, slackening, and by and by decreasing, till in the end it ceases totally; *e.g.* the silk-weaver drives round his wheel with his mallet until it whirls round rapidly, then he leaves it; however, it does not stand still, though the mallet that drove it round has been removed; the motion of the wheel decreases by little and little, and finally it ceases. It is the same case with the body. After the action of the body has ceased, its effect is still lasting until it arrives, through the various stages of motion and of rest, at the cessation of physical force and of the effect which had originated from preceding causes. Thus liberation is finished when the body has been completely prostrated."

From Patañjali.

In the book of Patañjali there is a passage which expresses similar ideas. Speaking of a man who restrains his senses and organs of perception, as the turtle draws in its limbs when it is afraid, he says that "he is not fettered, because the fetter has been loosened, and he is not liberated, because his body is still with him."

There is, however, another passage in the same book which does not agree with the theory of liberation as expounded above. He says: "The bodies are the snares of the souls for the purpose of acquiring recompense. He who arrives at the stage of liberation has acquired, in his actual form of existence, the recompense for all the doings of the past. Then he ceases to labour to acquire a title to a recompense in the future. He frees himself from the snare; he can dispense with the particular form of his existence, and moves in it quite freely without being ensnared by it. He has even the faculty of moving wherever he likes, and if he like, he might rise above the face of death. For the thick, cohesive bodies cannot oppose an obstacle to his *form* of existence (as, *e.g.* a mountain could not prevent him from passing through). How, then, could his body oppose an obstacle to his soul?"

Ṣûfî parallels.

Similar views are also met with among the Ṣûfî. Some Ṣûfî author relates the following story: "A company of Ṣûfî came down unto us, and sat down at some distance from us. Then one of them rose, prayed, and on having finished his prayer, turned towards me and spoke: 'O master, do you know here a place fit for us *to die* on?' Now I thought he meant *sleeping*, and so I pointed out to him a place. The man went there, threw himself on the back of his head, and remained motionless. Now I rose, went to him and shook him, but lo! he was already cold."

Page 41.

The Ṣûfî explains the Koranic verse, "We have made room for him on earth" (Sûra 18, 83), in this way: "If he wishes, the earth rolls itself up for him; if he wishes, he can walk on the water and in the air, which offer him sufficient resistance so as to enable him to walk, whilst the mountains do not offer him any resistance when he wants to pass through them."

On those who do not reach Moksha according to Sâṁkhya.

We next speak of those who, notwithstanding their greatest exertions, do not reach the stage of liberation. There are several classes of them. The book *Sâṁkhya* says: "He who enters upon the world with a virtuous character, who is liberal with what he possesses of the goods of the world, is recompensed in it in this way, that he obtains the fulfilment of his wishes and desires, that he moves about in the world in happiness, happy in body and soul and in all other conditions of life. For in reality good fortune is a recompense for former deeds, done either in the same shape or in some preceding shape. Whoso lives in this world piously but without knowledge will be raised and be rewarded, but not be liberated, because the means of attaining it are wanting in his case. Whoso is content and acquiesces in possessing the faculty of practising the above-mentioned eight commandments (*sic*, *vide* p. 74), whoso glories in them, is successful by means of them, and believes that *they* are liberation, will remain in the same stage."

A parable showing people in the various degrees of knowledge.

The following is a parable characterising those who vie with each other in the progress through the various stages of knowledge:—A man is travelling together with his pupils for some business or other towards the end of the night. Then there appears something standing erect before them on the road, the nature of which it is impossible to recognise on account of the darkness of night. The man turns towards his pupils, and asks them, one after the other, what it is? The first says: "I do not know what it is." The second says: "I do not know, and I have no means of learning what it is." The third says: "It is useless to examine what it is, for the rising of the day will reveal it. If it is something terrible, it will disappear at daybreak; if it is something else, the nature of the thing will anyhow be clear to us." Now, none of them had attained to knowledge, the first, because he was ignorant; the second, because he was incapable, and had no means of knowing; the third, because he was indolent and acquiesced in his ignorance.

The fourth pupil, however, did not give an answer. He stood still, and then he went on in the direction of the object. On coming near, he found that it was pumpkins on which there lay a tangled mass of something. Now he knew that a living man, endowed with free will, does not stand still in his place until such a tangled mass is formed on his head, and he recognised at once that it was a lifeless object standing erect. Further, he could not be sure if it was not a hidden place for some dunghill. So he went quite close to it, struck against it with his foot till it fell to the ground. Thus all doubt having been removed, he returned to his master and gave him the exact account. In such a way the master obtained the knowledge through the intermediation of his pupils.

Parallels from Greek authors, Ammonius, Plato, and Proclus.

With regard to similar views of the ancient Greeks we can quote Ammonius, who relates the following as a sentence of Pythagoras: "Let your desire and exertion in this world be directed towards the union with *the First Cause*, which is the cause of the cause of your existence, that you may endure for ever. You will be saved from destruction and from being wiped out; you will go to the world of the true sense, of the true joy, of the true glory, in everlasting joy and pleasures."

Further, Pythagoras says: "How can you hope for the state of detachment as long as you are clad in bodies? And how will you obtain liberation as long as you are incarcerated in them?"

Page 42.

Ammonius relates: "Empedocles and his successors as far as Heracles (*sic*) think that the soiled souls always remain commingled with the world until they ask the universal soul for help. The universal soul intercedes for it with the *Intelligence*, the latter with the Creator. The Creator affords something of his light to Intelligence; Intelligence affords something of it to the universal soul, which is immanent in this world. Now the soul wishes to be enlightened by Intelligence, until at last the individual soul recognises the universal soul, unites with it, and is attached to its world. But this is a process over which many ages must pass. Then the soul comes to a region where there is neither place nor time, nor anything of that which is in the world, like transient fatigue or joy."

Socrates says: "The soul on leaving space wanders to the holiness (τὸ καθαρόν) which lives for ever and exists eternally, being related to it. It becomes like holiness in duration, because it is by means of something like contact able to receive impressions from holiness. This, its susceptibility to impressions, is called *Intelligence*."

Further, Socrates says: "The soul is very similar to the divine substance which does not die nor dissolve, and is the only *intelligibile* which lasts for ever; the body is the contrary of it. When soul and body unite, nature orders body to serve, the soul to rule; but when they separate, the soul goes to another place than that to which the body goes. There it is happy with things that are suitable to it; it reposes from being circumscribed in space, rests from folly, impatience, love, fear, and other human evils, on this condition, that it had always been pure and hated the body. If, however, it has sullied itself by connivance with the body, by serving and loving it so that the body was subservient to its lusts and desires, in this case it does not experience anything more real than the species of bodily things (τὸ σωματοειδές) and the contact with them."

Proclus says: "The body in which the rational soul dwells has received the figure of a globe, like the ether and its individual beings. The body in which both the rational and the irrational souls dwell has received an erect figure like man. The body in which only the irrational soul dwells has received a figure erect and curved at the same time, like that of the irrational animals. The body in which there is neither the one nor the other, in which there is nothing but the nourishing power, has received an erect figure, but it is at the same time curved and turned upside down, so that the head is planted in the earth, as is the case with the plants. The latter direction being the contrary to that of man, man is a heavenly tree, the root of which is directed towards its home, *i.e.* heaven, whilst the root of vegetables is directed towards *their* home, *i.e.* the earth."

Brahman compared to an Aśvattha tree according to *Patañjali.*

The Hindus hold similar views about nature. Arjuna asks, "What is Brahman like in the world?" Whereupon Vâsudeva answers, "Imagine him like an *Aśvattha* tree." This is a huge precious tree, well known among them, standing upside down, the roots being above, the branches below. If it has ample nourishment, it becomes quite enormous ; the branches spread far, cling to the soil, and creep into it. Roots and branches above and below resemble each other to such a degree that it is difficult to say which is which.

"Brahman is the upper roots of this tree, its trunk is the Veda, its branches are the different doctrines and schools, its leaves are the different modes of interpretation ; its nourishment comes from *the three forces;* the tree becomes strong and compact through the senses. The intelligent being has no other keen desire but that of felling this tree, *i.e.* abstaining from the world and its vanities. When he has succeeded in felling it, he wishes to settle in the place where it has grown, a place in which there is no returning in a further stage of metempsychosis. When he obtains this, he leaves behind himself all the pains of heat and cold, and coming from the light of sun and moon and common fires, he attains to the divine lights." **Page 43.**

Ṣûfî parallels. The doctrine of *Patañjali* is akin to that of the Ṣûfî regarding being occupied in meditation on *the Truth* (*i.e.* God), for they say, "As long as you point to something, you are not a *monist;* but when *the Truth* seizes upon the object of your pointing and annihilates it, then there is no longer an indicating person nor an object indicated."

There are some passages in their system which show that they believe in the pantheistic union ; *e.g.* one of them, being asked what is *the Truth* (God), gave the following answer: "How should I not know the being which is *I* in essence and *Not-I* in space? If I return once more into existence, thereby I am separated from him ; and if I am neglected (*i.e.* not born anew and sent into the world), thereby I become light and become accustomed to the *union*" (*sic*).

Abû-Bekr Ash-shiblî says: "Cast off all, and you will attain to us completely. Then you will exist; but you will not report about us to others as long as your doing is like ours."

Abû-Yazîd Albistâmî once being asked how he had attained *his* stage in Ṣufism, answered: "I cast off my own self as a serpent casts off its skin. Then I considered my own self, and found that *I* was *He*," *i.e.* God.

The Ṣûfî explain the Koranic passage (Sûra 2, 68), "*Then we spoke: Beat him with a part of her*," in the following manner: "The order to kill that which is dead in order to give life to it indicates that the heart does not become alive by the lights of knowledge unless the body be killed by ascetic practice to such a degree that it does not any more exist as a reality, but only in a formal way, whilst your heart is a reality on which no object of the formal world has any influence."

Further they say: "Between man and God there are a thousand stages of light and darkness. Men exert themselves to pass through darkness to light, and when they have attained to the stations of light, there is no return for them."

CHAPTER VIII.

ON THE DIFFERENT CLASSES OF CREATED BEINGS, AND ON THEIR NAMES.

The various classes of creatures according to *Sâṁkhya*.

THE subject of this chapter is very difficult to study and understand accurately, since we Muslims look at it from without, and the Hindus themselves do not work it out to scientific perfection. As we, however, want it for the further progress of this treatise, we shall communicate all we have heard of it until the date of the present book. And first we give an extract from the book *Sâṁkhya*.

"The anchorite spoke: 'How many classes and species are there of living bodies?'

"The sage replied: 'There are three classes of them—the spiritual ones in the height, men in the middle, and animals in the depth. Their species are fourteen in number, eight of which belong to the spiritual beings: Brahman, Indra, Prajâpati, Saumya, Gandharva, Yaksha, Râkshasa, and Piśâca. Five species are those of the animals—cattle, wild beasts, birds, creeping things, and *growing things*, *i.e.* the trees. And. lastly, *one* species is represented by man.'"

The author of the same book has in another part of it given the following enumeration with different names: "Brahman, Indra, Prajâpati, Gandharva, Yaksha, Râkshasa, Pitaras, Piśâca."

The Hindus are people who rarely preserve one and the same order of things, and in their enumeration of things there is much that is arbitrary. They use or invent numbers of names, and who is to hinder or to control them?

Page 44.

In the book *Gîtâ*, Vâsudeva says: "When the *first* of the *three primary forces* prevails, it particularly applies itself to developing the intellect, purifying the senses, and producing *action* for the angels. Blissful rest is one of the consequences of this force, and liberation one of its results.

"When the *second* force prevails, it particularly applies itself to developing cupidity. It will lead to fatigue, and induce to actions for the Yaksha and Râkshasa. In this case the recompense will be according to the action.

"If the *third* force prevails, it particularly applies itself to developing ignorance, and making people easily beguiled by their own wishes. Finally, it produces wakefulness, carelessness, laziness, procrastination in fulfilling duties, and sleeping too long. If man acts, he acts for the classes of the Bhûta and Piśâca, the devils, for the Preta who carry the spirits in the air, not in paradise and not in hell. Lastly, this force will lead to punishment; man will be lowered from the stage of humanity, and will be changed into animals and plants."

In another place the same author says: "Belief and virtue are in the Deva among the spiritual beings. Therefore that man who resembles them believes in God, clings to him, and longs for him. Unbelief and vice are in the demons called Asura and Râkshasa. That man who resembles them does not believe in God nor attend to his commandments. He tries to make the world godless, and is occupied with things which are harmful in this world and in the world beyond, and are of no use."

The author enumerates eight classes of spiritual beings.

If we now combine these statements with each other, it will be evident that there is some confusion both in the names and in their order. According to the most popular view of the majority of the Hindus, there are the following eight classes of *spiritual* beings :—

1. The *Deva*, or angels, to whom the north belongs. They specially belong to the Hindus. People say that Zoroaster made enemies of the Shamaniyya or Buddhists by calling the devils by the name of the class of angels which *they* consider the highest, *i.e. Deva.* And this usage has been transmitted from Magian times down to the Persian language of our days.

2. *Daitya 'dânava*, the demons who live in the south. To them everybody belongs who opposes the religion of the Hindus and persecutes the cows. Notwithstanding the near relationship which exists between them and the Deva, there is, as Hindus maintain, no end of quarrelling and fighting among them.

3. *Gandharva*, the musicians and singers who make music before the Deva. Their harlots are called Apsaras.

4. *Yaksha*, the treasurers or guardians of the Deva.

5. *Râkshasa*, demons of ugly and deformed shapes.

6. *Kinnara*, having human shapes but horses' heads, being the contrary of the centaurs of the Greek, of whom the lower half has the shape of a horse, the upper half that of a man. The latter figure is that of the Zodiacal sign of *Arcitenens.*

7. *Nâga*, beings in the shape of serpents.

8. *Vidyâdhara*, demon-sorcerers, who exercise a certain witchcraft, but not such a one as to produce permanent results.

Criticisms on this list.

If we consider this series of beings, we find the angelic power at the upper end and the demoniac at the lower, and between them there is much interblending. The qualities of these beings are different, inasmuch as they have attained this stage of life in the course of metempsychosis by *action*, and actions are different on account of the *three primary forces.* They live very long, since they have entirely stripped off the bodies, since they are free from all exertion, and are able to do things which are impossible to man. They serve man in whatever he desires, and are near him in cases of need. Page 45.

However, we can learn from the extract from *Sâṁkhya* that this view is not correct. For Brahman, Indra, and Prajâpati are not names of species, but of individuals. Brahman and Prajâpati very nearly mean the same, but they bear different names on account of some quality or other. Indra is the ruler of the worlds. Besides, Vâsudeva enumerates the Yaksha and Râkshasa together in one and the same class of demons, whilst the Purâṇas represent the Yaksha as guardian-angels and the servants of guardian-angels.

On the Devas. After all this, we declare that the spiritual beings which we have mentioned are one category, who have attained their present stage of existence by action during the time when they were human beings. They have left their bodies behind them, for bodies are weights which impair the power and shorten the duration of life. Their qualities and conditions are different, in the same measure as one or other of the *three primary forces* prevails over them. The first force is peculiar to the Deva, or angels who live in quietness and bliss. The predominant faculty of their mind is the comprehending of an idea *without matter*, as it is the predominant faculty of the mind of man to comprehend the idea *in matter*.

The *third force* is peculiar to the Piśâca and Bhûta, whilst the second is peculiar to the classes between them.

The Hindus say that the number of Deva is thirty-three *koṭi* or *crore*, of which eleven belong to Mahâdeva. Therefore this number is one of his surnames, and his name itself (Mahâdeva) points in this direction. The sum of the number of angels just mentioned would be 330,000,000.

Further, they represent the Deva as eating and drinking, cohabiting, living and dying, since they exist within matter, though in the most subtle and most simple kind of it, and since they have attained this by action, not by knowledge. The book *Patañjali* relates that Nandikeśvara offered many sacrifices to Mahâdeva, and was in consequence transferred into paradise in his human shape; that Indra, the ruler, had intercourse with the wife of Nahusha the Brahmin, and therefore was changed into a serpent by way of punishment.

On the Pitaras and Ṛishis.

After the Deva comes the class of the *Pitaras*, the deceased ancestors, and after them the *Bhûta*, human beings who have attached themselves to the *spiritual beings* (Deva), and stand in the middle between them and mankind. He who holds this degree, but without being free from the body, is called either *Ṛishi* or *Siddha* or *Muni*, and these differ among themselves according to their qualities. *Siddha* is he who has attained by his action the faculty to do in the world whatever he likes, but who does not aspire further, and does not exert himself on the path leading to liberation. He may ascend to the degree of a Ṛishi. If a Brahmin attains this degree, he is called *Brahmarshi;* if the Kshatriya attains it, he is called *Râjarshi.* It is not possible for the lower classes to attain this degree. Ṛishis are the sages who, though they are only human beings, excel the angels on account of their knowledge. Therefore the angels learn from them, and above them there is none but Brahman.

After the Brahmarshi and Râjarshi come those classes of the populace which exist also among us, the castes, to whom we shall devote a separate chapter.

Vishnu the unity of Brahman, Nârâyana, and Rudra.

All these latter beings are ranged under matter. Now, as regards the notion of that which is above matter, we say that the ὕλη is the middle between matter and the spiritual divine ideas that are above matter, and that the *three primary forces* exist in the ὕλη dynamically (ἐν δυνάμει). So the ὕλη, with all that is comprehended in it, is a bridge from above to below.

Any life which circulates in the ὕλη under the exclusive influence of the *First Cause* is called *Brahman*, Page 46. *Prajâpati*, and by many other names which occur in their religious law and tradition. It is identical with nature in so far as it is active, for all bringing into existence, the creation of the world also, is attributed by them to Brahman.

Any life which circulates in the ὕλη under the influence of the *second force* is called *Nârâyaṇa* in the tradition of the Hindus, which means nature in so far as it has reached the end of its action, and is now striving to preserve that which has been produced. Thus Nârâyaṇa strives so to arrange the world that it should endure.

Any life which circulates in the ὕλη under the influence of the *third force* is called *Mahâdeva* and *Śaṁkara*, but his best-known name is *Rudra*. His work is destruction and annihilation, like nature in the last stages of activity, when its power slackens.

These three beings bear different names, as they circulate through the various degrees to above and below, and accordingly their actions are different.

But prior to all these beings there is one source whence everything is derived, and in this unity they comprehend all three things, no more separating one from the other. This unity they call *Vishṇu*, a name which more properly designates the *middle force*; but sometimes they do not even make a distinction between this *middle force* and *the first cause* (*i.e.* they make Nârâyaṇa the *causa causarum*).

Here there is an analogy between Hindus and Christians, as the latter distinguish between the Three *Persons* and give them separate names, Father, Son, and Holy Ghost, but unite them into one substance.

This is what clearly results from a careful examination of the Hindu doctrines. Of their traditional accounts, which are full of silly notions, we shall speak hereafter in the course of our explanation. You must not wonder if the Hindus, in their stories about the class of the Deva, whom we have explained as *angels*, allow them all sorts of things, unreasonable in themselves, some perhaps not objectionable, others decidedly objectionable, both of which the theologians of Islam would declare to be incompatible with the dignity and nature of angels.

Greek parallels. Stories about Zeus.

If you compare these traditions with those of the Greeks regarding their own religion, you will cease to find the Hindu system strange. We have already mentioned that they called the angels gods (p. 36). Now consider their stories about Zeus, and you will understand the truth of our remark. As for anthropomorphisms and traits of animal life which they attribute to him, we give the following tradition: "When he was born, his father wanted to devour him; but his mother took a stone, wrapped rags round it, and gave him the stone to swallow, whereupon he went away." This is also mentioned by Galenus in his *Book of Speeches*, where he relates that Philo had in an enigmatical way described the preparation of the φιλώνειον φάρμακον in a poem of his by the following words:—

> *"Take red hair, diffusing sweet odour, the offering to the gods,*
> *And of man's blood weigh weights of the number of the mental faculties."*

The poet means *five* pounds of saffron, because the senses are *five*. The weights of the other ingredients of the mixture he describes in similar enigmatic terms, of which Galenus gives a commentary. In the same poem occurs the following verse:—

> *"And of the pseudonymous root which has grown in the district in which Zeus was born."*

To which Galenus adds: "This is *Andropogon Nardus*, which *bears a false name*, because it is called *an ear* of corn, although it is not an ear, but a root. The poet prescribes that it should be Cretan, because the mythologists relate that Zeus was born on the mountain Page 47. Δικταῖον in Creta, where his mother concealed him from his father Kronos, that he should not devour him as he had devoured others."

Besides, well-known story-books tell that he married certain women one after the other, cohabited with others, doing violence to them and not marrying them; among them Europa, the daughter of Phœnix, who was taken from him by Asterios, king of Crete. Afterwards she gave birth to two children from him, Minos and Rhadamanthus. This happened long before the Israelites left the desert and entered Palestine.

Another tradition is that he died in Crete, and was buried there at the time of Samson the Israelite, being 780 years of age; that he was called *Zeus* when he had become old, after he had formerly been called *Dios;* and that the first who gave him this name was Cecrops, the first king of Athens. It was common to all of them to indulge in their lusts without any restraint, and to favour the business of the pander; and so far they were not unlike Zoroaster and King Gushtâsp when they desired to consolidate the realm and the rule (*sic*).

Chroniclers maintain that Cecrops and his successors are the source of all the vices among the Athenians, meaning thereby such things as occur in the story of Alexander, viz. that Nectanebus, king of Egypt, after having fled before Artaxerxes the Black and hiding in the capital of Macedonia, occupied himself with astrology and soothsaying; that he beguiled Olympias, the wife of King Philip, who was absent. He cunningly contrived to cohabit with her, showing himself to her in the figure of the god Ammon, as a serpent with two heads like rams' heads. So she became pregnant with Alexander. Philip, on returning, was about to disclaim the paternity, but then he dreamt that it was the child of the god Ammon. Thereupon he recognised the child as his, and spoke, "Man cannot oppose the gods." The combination of the stars had shown to Nectanebus that he would die at the hands of his *son*. When then he died at the hands of Alexander from a wound in the neck, he recognised that he was his (Alexander's) father.

The tradition of the Greeks is full of similar things. We shall relate similar subjects when speaking of the marriages of the Hindus.

Quotations from Aratos.

Now we return to our subject. Regarding that part of the nature of Zeus which has no connection with humanity, the Greeks say that he is Jupiter, the son of Saturn; for Saturn alone is eternal, not having been born, according to the philosophers of the Academy, as Galenus says in the *Book of Deduction*. This is sufficiently proved by the book of Aratos on the Φαινόμενα, for he begins with the praise of Zeus:

"We, mankind, do not leave him, nor can we do without him;
Of him the roads are full,
And the meeting-places of men.
He is mild towards them;
He produces for them what they wish, and incites them to work.
Reminding them of the necessities of life,
He indicates to them the times favourable
For digging and ploughing for a good growth,
Who has raised the signs and stars in heaven.
Therefore we humiliate ourselves before him first and last."

And then he praises the spiritual beings (the Muses). If you compare Greek theology with that of the Hindus, you will find that Brahman is described in the same way as Zeus by Aratos.

The author of the commentary on the Φαινόμενα of Aratos maintains that he deviated from the custom of the poets of his time in beginning with the gods; that it was his intention to speak of the celestial sphere. Further, he makes reflections on the origin of Asclepius, like Galenus, and says: "We should like to know

Page 48.

which Zeus Aratos meant, the mystical or the physical one. For the poet Krates called the celestial sphere *Zeus*, and likewise Homer says:

> 'As pieces of snow are cut off from *Zeus*.'"

Aratos calls the ether and the air *Zeus* in the passage: "The roads and the meeting-places are full of him, and we all must inhale him."

Therefore the philosophers of the Stoa maintain that Zeus is the spirit which is dispersed in the ὕλη, and similar to our souls, *i.e.* the nature which rules every natural body. The author supposes that he is mild, since he is the cause of the good; therefore he is right in maintaining that he has not only created men, but also the gods.

CHAPTER IX.

ON THE CASTES, CALLED "COLOURS" (VARṆA), AND ON THE CLASSES BELOW THEM.

Throne and altar.

If a new order of things in political or social life is created by a man naturally ambitious of ruling, who by his character and capacity really deserves to be a ruler, a man of firm convictions and unshaken determination, who even in times of reverses is supported by good luck, in so far as people then side with him in recognition of former merits of his, such an order is likely to become consolidated among those for whom it was created, and to continue as firm as the deeply rooted mountains. It will remain among them as a generally recognised rule in all generations through the course of time and the flight of ages. If, then, this new form of state or society rests in some degree on religion, these twins, state and religion, are in perfect harmony, and their union represents the highest development of human society, all that men can possibly desire.

The kings of antiquity, who were industriously devoted to the duties of their office, spent most of their care on the division of their subjects into different classes and orders, which they tried to preserve from intermixture and disorder. Therefore they forbade people of different classes to have intercourse with each other, and laid upon each class a particular kind of work or art and handicraft. They did not allow anybody to transgress the limits of his class, and even punished those who would not be content with their class.

Castes of the ancient Persians.

All this is well illustrated by the history of the ancient Chosroes (Khusrau), for they had created great institutions of this kind, which could not be broken through by the special merits of any individual nor by bribery. When Ardashîr ben Bâbak restored the Persian empire, he also restored the classes or castes of the population in the following way:—

The first class were the knights and princes.

The second class the monks, the fire-priests, and the lawyers.

The third class the physicians, astronomers, and other men of science.

The fourth class the husbandmen and artisans.

And within these classes there were subdivisions, distinct from each other, like the species within a genus. All institutions of this kind are like a pedigree, as long as their origin is remembered; but when once their origin has been forgotten, they become, as it were, the stable property of the whole nation, nobody any more questioning its origin. And forgetting is the necessary result of any long period of time, of a long succession of centuries and generations.

Among the Hindus institutions of this kind abound. We Muslims, of course, stand entirely on the other side of the question, considering all men as equal, except in piety; and this is the greatest obstacle which prevents any approach or understanding between Hindus and Muslims.

The four castes.

The Hindus call their castes *varṇa*, i.e. *colours*, and from a genealogical point of view they call them *jâtaka*, i.e. *births*. These castes are from the very beginning only four.

Page 49.

I. The highest caste are the Brâhmaṇa, of whom the books of the Hindus tell that they were created from the head of Brahman. And as Brahman is only another name for the force called *nature*, and the head is the highest part of the animal body, the Brâhmaṇa are the choice part of the whole genus. Therefore the Hindus consider them as the very best of mankind.

II. The next caste are the Kshatriya, who were created, as they say, from the shoulders and hands of Brahman. Their degree is not much below that of the Brâhmaṇa.

III. After them follow the Vaiśya, who were created from the thigh of Brahman.

IV. The Śûdra, who were created from his feet.

Between the latter two classes there is no very great distance. Much, however, as these classes differ from each other, they live together in the same towns and villages, mixed together in the same houses and lodgings.

Low-caste people.

After the Śûdra follow the people called *Antyaja*, who render various kinds of services, who are not reckoned amongst any caste, but only as members of a certain craft or profession. There are eight classes of them, who freely intermarry with each other, except the fuller, shoemaker, and weaver, for no others would condescend to have anything to do with them. These eight guilds are the fuller, shoemaker, juggler, the basket and shield maker, the sailor, fisherman, the hunter of wild animals and of birds, and the weaver. The four castes do not live together with them in one and the same place. These guilds live near the villages and towns of the four castes, but outside them.

The people called Hâḍî, Ḍoma (Ḍomba), Caṇḍâla, and Badhatau (*sic*) are not reckoned amongst any caste or guild. They are occupied with dirty work, like the cleansing of the villages and other services. They are considered as one sole class, and distinguished only by their occupations. In fact, they are considered like illegitimate children; for according to general opinion they descend from a Śûdra father and a Brâhmaṇî mother as the children of fornication; therefore they are degraded outcasts.

Different occupations of the castes and guilds.

The Hindus give to every single man of the four castes characteristic names, according to their occupations and modes of life. *E.g.* the Brâhmaṇa is in general called by this name as long as he does his work staying at home. When he is busy with the service of one fire, he is called *ishṭin;* if he serves three fires, he is called *agnihôtrin;* if he besides offers an offering to the fire, he is called *dîkshita.* And as it is with the Brâhmaṇa, so is it also with the other castes. Of the classes *beneath* the castes, the Hâḍî are the best spoken of, because they keep themselves free from everything unclean. Next follow the Ḍôma, who play on the lute and sing. The still lower classes practise as a trade killing and the inflicting of judicial punishments. The worst of all are the Badhatau, who not only devour the flesh of dead animals, but even of dogs and other beasts.

Customs of the Brahmins.

Each of the four castes, when eating together, must form a group for themselves, one group not being allowed to comprise two men of different castes. If, further, in the group of the Brâhmaṇa there are two men who live at enmity with each other, and the seat of the one is by the side of the other, they make a barrier between the two seats by placing a board between them, or by spreading a piece of dress, or in some other way; and if there is only a line drawn between them, they are considered as separated. Since it is forbidden to eat the remains of a meal; every single man must have his own food for himself; for if any one of the party who are eating should take of the food from one and the same plate, that which remains in the plate becomes, after the first eater has taken part, to him who wants to take as the second, *the remains of the meal,* and such is forbidden. Page 50.

Such is the condition of the four castes. Arjuna asked about the nature of the four castes and what must be their moral qualities, whereupon Vâsudeva answered:

"The Brâhmaṇa must have an ample intellect, a quiet heart, truthful speech, much patience; he must be master of his senses, a lover of justice, of evident purity, always directed upon worship, entirely bent upon religion.

"The Kshatriya must fill the hearts with terror, must be brave and high-minded, must have ready speech and a liberal hand, not minding dangers, only intent upon carrying the great tasks of his calling to a happy end.

"The Vaiśya is to occupy himself with agriculture, with the acquisition of cattle, and with trade.

"The Śûdra is to endeavour to render services and attention to each of the preceding classes, in order to make himself liked by them.

"If each member of these castes adheres to his customs and usages, he will obtain the happiness he wishes for, supposing that he is not negligent in the worship of God, not forgetting to remember him in his most important avocations. But if anybody wants to quit the works and duties of his caste and adopt those of another caste, even if it would bring a certain honour to the latter, it is a sin, because it is a transgression of the rule."

Further, Vâsudeva speaks, inspiring him with courage to fight the enemy: "Dost thou not know, O man with the long arm, that thou art a Kshatriya; that thy race has been created brave, to rush boldly to the charge, to care little for the vicissitudes of time, never to give way whenever their soul has a foreboding of coming misfortune? for only thereby is the reward to be obtained. If he conquers, he obtains power and good fortune. If he perishes, he obtains paradise and bliss. Besides, thou showest weakness in the presence of the enemy, and seemest melancholy at the prospect of killing this host; but it will be infinitely worse if thy name will spread as that of a timid, cowardly man, that thy reputation among the heroes and the experienced warriors will be gone, that thou wilt be out of their sight, and thy name no longer be remembered among them. I do not know a worse punishment than such a state. Death is better than to expose thyself to the consequences of ignominy. If, therefore, God has ordered thee to fight, if he has deigned to confer upon thy caste the task of fighting and has created thee for it, carry out his order and perform his will with a determination which is free from any desire, so that thy action be exclusively devoted to him."

Moksha and the various castes.

Hindus differ among themselves as to which of these castes is capable of attaining to liberation; for, according to some, only the Brâhmaṇa and Kshatriya are capable of it, since the others cannot learn the Veda, whilst according to the Hindu philosophers, liberation is common to all castes and to the whole human race, if their intention of obtaining it is perfect. This view is based on the saying of Vyâsa: "Learn to know the twenty-five things thoroughly. Then you may follow whatever religion you like; you will no doubt be liberated." This view is also based on the fact that Vâsudeva was a descendant of a Śûdra family, and also on the following saying of his, which he addressed to Arjuna: "God distributes recompense without injustice and without partiality. He reckons the good as bad if people in doing good forget him; he reckons the bad as good if people in doing bad remember him and do not forget him, whether those people be Vaiśya or Śûdra or women. How much more will this be the case when they are Brâhmaṇa or Kshatriya." **Page 51.**

CHAPTER X.

ON THE SOURCE OF THEIR RELIGIOUS AND CIVIL LAW, ON PROPHETS, AND ON THE QUESTION WHETHER SINGLE LAWS CAN BE ABROGATED OR NOT.

Law and religion among the Greeks founded by their sages.

THE ancient Greeks received their religious and civil laws from sages among them who were called to the work, and of whom their countrymen believed that they received divine help, like Solon, Draco, Pythagoras, Minos, and others. Also their kings did the same; for Mianos (*sic*), when ruling over the islands of the sea and over the Cretans about two hundred years after Moses, gave them laws, pretending to have received them from Zeus. About the same time also Minos (*sic*) gave his laws.

At the time of Darius I., the successor of Cyrus, the Romans sent messengers to the Athenians, and received from them the laws in twelve books, under which they lived till the rule of Pompilius (Numa). This king gave them new laws; he assigned to the year twelve months, whilst up to that time it had only had ten months. It appears that he introduced his innovations against the will of the Romans, for he ordered them to use as instruments of barter in commerce pieces of pottery and hides instead of silver, which seems on his part to betray a certain anger against rebellious subjects.

Quotation from Plato's *Laws*.

In the first chapter of the *Book of Laws* of Plato, the Athenian stranger says: "Who do you think was the first who gave laws to you? Was he an angel or a man?" The man of Cnossus said: "He was an angel. In truth, with us it was Zeus, but with the Lacedæmonians, as they maintain, the legislator was Apollo."

Further, he says in the same chapter: "It is the duty of the legislator, if he comes from God, to make the acquisition of the greatest virtues and of the highest justice the object of his legislation."

He describes the laws of the Cretans as rendering perfect the happiness of those who make the proper use of them, because by them they acquire all the human good which is dependent upon the divine good.

The Athenian says in the second chapter of the same book: "The gods, pitying mankind as born for trouble, instituted for them feasts to the gods, the Muses, Apollo the ruler of the Muses, and to Dionysos, who gave men wine as a remedy against the bitterness of old age, that old men should again be young by forgetting sadness, and by bringing back the character of the soul from the state of affliction to the state of soundness."

Further he says: "They have given to men by inspiration the arrangements for dancing, and the equally weighed rhythm as a reward for fatigues, and that they may become accustomed to live together with them in feasts and joy. Therefore they call one kind of their music *praises*, with an implied allusion to the prayers to the gods."

The Rishis, the authors of Hindu law. Page 52.

Such was the case with the Greeks, and it is precisely the same with the Hindus. For they believe that their religious law and its single precepts derive their origin from Ṛishis, their sages, the pillars of their religion, and not from the prophet, *i.e.* Nârâyaṇa, who, when coming into this world, appears in some human figure. But he only comes in order to cut away some evil matter which threatens the world, or to set the world right again when anything has gone wrong. Further, no law can be exchanged or replaced by another, for they use the laws simply as they find them. Therefore they can dispense with prophets, as far as law and worship are concerned, though in other affairs of the creation they sometimes want them.

Whether laws may be abrogated or not.

As for the question of the abrogation of laws, it seems that this is not impossible with the Hindus, for they say that many things which are now forbidden were allowed before the coming of Vâsudeva, *e.g.* the flesh of cows. Such changes are necessitated by the change of the nature of man, and by their being too feeble to bear the whole burden of their duties. To these changes also belong the changes of the *matrimonial system* and of *the theory of descent.* For in former times there were three modes of determining descent or relationship:

Different matrimonial systems.

1. The child born to a man by his legitimate wife is the child of the father, as is the custom with us and with the Hindus.

2. If a man marries a woman and has a child by her; if, further, the marriage-contract stipulates that the children of the woman will belong to *her* father, the child is considered as the child of its grandfather who made that stipulation, and not as the child of its father who engendered it.

3. If a stranger has a child by a married woman, the child belongs to her husband, since the wife being, as it were, the soil in which the child has grown, is the property of the husband, always presupposing that the sowing, *i.e.* the cohabitation, takes place with his consent.

The story of Pâṇḍu and Vyâsa.

According to this principle, Pâṇḍu was considered as the son of Śântanu; for this king had been cursed by an anchorite, and in consequence was unable to cohabit with his wives, which was the more provoking to him as he had not yet any children. Now he asked Vyâsa, the son of Parâśara, to procreate for him children from his wives in his place. Pâṇḍu sent him one, but she was afraid of him when he cohabited with her, and trembled, in consequence of which she conceived a sickly child of yellow hue. Then the king sent him a second woman; she, too, felt much reverence for him, and wrapped herself up in her veil, and in consequence she gave birth to Dhṛitarâshṭra, who was blind and unhealthy. Lastly, he sent him a third woman, whom he enjoined to put aside all fear and reverence with regard to the saint. Laughing and in high spirits, she went in to him, and conceived from him a child of moon-like beauty, who excelled all men in boldness and cunning.

Birth of Vyâsa.

The four sons of Pâṇḍu had one wife in common, who stayed one month with each of them alternately. In the books of the Hindus it is told that Parâśara, the hermit, one day travelled in a boat in which there was also a daughter of the boatman. He fell in love with her, tried to seduce her, and finally she yielded; but there was nothing on the bank of the river to hide them from the looks of the people. However, instantaneously there grew a tamarisk-tree to facilitate their purpose. Now he cohabited with her behind the tamarisk, and made her conceive, whereupon she became pregnant with this his excellent son Vyâsa.

All these customs have now been abolished and abrogated, and therefore we may infer from their tradition that in principle *the abrogation of a law is allowable.*

Various kinds of marriage with Tibetans and Arabs.

As regards unnatural kinds of marriage, we must state that such exist still in our time, as they also existed in the times of Arab heathendom; for the people inhabiting the mountains stretching from the region of Panchîr into the neighbourhood of Kashmîr live under the rule that several brothers have one wife in common. Among the heathen Arabs, too, marriage was of different kinds:—

Page 53.

1. An Arab ordered his wife to be sent to a certain

man to demand sexual intercourse with him; then he abstained from her during the whole time of her pregnancy, since he wished to have from her a generous offspring. This is identical with the third kind of marriage among the Hindus.

2. A second kind was this, that the one Arab said to the other, "Cede me your wife, and I will cede you mine," and thus they exchanged their wives.

3. A third kind is this, that several men cohabited with one wife. When, then, she gave birth to a child, she declared who was the father; and if she did not know it, the fortune-tellers had to know it.

4. The *Nikâḥ-elmakt* (= *matrimonium exosum*), *i.e.* when a man married the widow of his father or of his son, the child of such a marriage was called *ḍaizan*. This is nearly the same as a certain Jewish marriage, for the Jews have the law that a man must marry the widow of his brother, if the latter has not left children, and create a line of descent for his deceased brother; and the offspring is considered as that of the deceased man, not as that of the real father. Thereby they want to prevent his memory dying out in the world. In Hebrew they call a man who is married in this way *Yâbhâm*.

Marriage among the ancient Iranians.

There was a similar institution among the Magians. In the book of Tausar, the great *herbadh*, addressed to Padashvâr-girshâh, as an answer to his attacks on Ardashîr the son of Bâbak, we find a description of the institution of a man's being married as the substitute for another man, which existed among the Persians. If a man dies without leaving male offspring, people are to examine the case. If he leaves a wife, they marry her to his nearest relative. If he does not leave a wife, they marry his daughter or the nearest related woman to the nearest related male of the family. If there is no woman of his family left, they woo by means of the money of the deceased a woman for his family, and marry her to some male relative. The child of such a marriage is considered as the offspring of the deceased.

Whoever neglects this duty and does not fulfil it, kills innumerable souls, since he cuts off the progeny and the name of the deceased to all eternity.

We have here given an account of these things in order that the reader may learn by the comparative treatment of the subject how much superior the institutions of Islam are, and how much more plainly this contrast brings out all customs and usages, differing from those of Islam, in their essential foulness.

CHAPTER XI.

ABOUT THE BEGINNING OF IDOL-WORSHIP, AND A DESCRIPTION OF THE INDIVIDUAL IDOLS.

Origin of idol-worship in the nature of man.

It is well known that the popular mind leans towards the sensible world, and has an aversion to the world of abstract thought which is only understood by highly educated people, of whom in every time and every place there are only few. And as common people will only acquiesce in pictorial representations, many of the leaders of religious communities have so far deviated from the right path as to give such imagery in their books and houses of worship, like the Jews and Christians, and, more than all, the Manichæans. These words of mine would at once receive a sufficient illustration if, for example, a picture of the Prophet were made, or of Mekka and the Ka'ba, and were shown to an uneducated man or woman. Their joy in looking at the thing would bring them to kiss the picture, to rub their cheeks against it, and to roll themselves in the dust before it, as if they were seeing not the picture, but the original, and were in this way, as if they were present in the holy places, performing the rites of pilgrimage, the great and the small ones.

This is the cause which leads to the manufacture of idols, monuments in honour of certain much venerated persons, prophets, sages, angels, destined to keep alive their memory when they are absent or dead, to create for them a lasting place of grateful veneration in the hearts of men when they die. But when much time passes by after the setting up of the monument, generations and centuries, its origin is forgotten, it becomes a matter of custom, and its veneration a rule for general practice. This being deeply rooted in the nature of man, the legislators of antiquity tried to influence them from this weak point of theirs. Therefore they made the veneration of pictures and similar monuments obligatory on them, as is recounted in historic records, both for the times before and after the Deluge. Some people even pretend to know that all mankind, before God sent them his prophets, were one large idolatrous body. Page 54.

Story of Romulus and Remus.

The followers of the Thora fix the beginning of idolatry in the days of Serûgh, the great-grandfather of Abraham. The Romans have, regarding this question, the following tradition:—Romulus and Romanus (!), the two brothers from the country of the Franks, on having ascended the throne, built the city of Rome. Then Romulus killed his brother, and the consequence was a long succession of intestine troubles and wars. Finally, Romulus humiliated himself, and then he dreamt that there would only be peace on condition that he placed his brother on the throne. Now he got a golden image made of him, placed it at his side, and henceforward he used to say, "*We* (not *I*) have ordered thus and thus," which since has become the general use of kings. Thereupon the troubles subsided. He founded a feast and a play to amuse and to gain over those who bore him ill-will on account of the murder of his brother. Besides, he erected a monument to the sun, consisting of four images on four horses, the green one for the earth, the blue for the water, the red for the fire, and the white for the air. This monument is still in Rome in our days.

Idol-worship as restricted to the low classes of people.

Since, however, here we have to explain the system and the theories of the Hindus on the subject, we shall now mention their ludicrous views; but we declare at once that they are held only by the common uneducated people. For those who march on the path to liberation, or those who study philosophy and theology, and who desire abstract truth which they call *sâra*, are entirely free from worshipping anything but God alone, and would never dream of worshipping an image manufactured to represent him. A tradition illustrative of this is that which Śaunaka told the king Parîksha in these words:—

Story of King Ambarîsha and Indra.

There was once a king called Ambarîsha, who had obtained an empire as large as he had wished for. But afterwards he came to like it no longer; he retired from the world, and exclusively occupied himself with worshipping and praising God for a long time. Finally, God appeared to him in the shape of Indra, the prince of the angels, riding on an elephant. He spoke to the king: "Demand whatever you like, and I will give it you."

The king answered: "I rejoice in seeing thee, and I am thankful for the good fortune and help thou hast given; but I do not demand anything from thee, but only from him who created thee."

Indra said: "The object of worship is to receive a noble reward. Realise, therefore, your object, and accept the reward from him from whom hitherto you have obtained your wishes, and do not pick and choose, saying, 'Not from thee, but from another.'"

The king answered: "The earth has fallen to my lot, but I do not care for all that is in it. The object of my worship is to see the Lord, and that thou canst not give me. Why, therefore, should I demand the fulfilment of my desire from thee?"

Indra said: "The whole world and whoever is upon it are obedient to me. Who are you that you dare to oppose me?"

The king answered: "I, too, hear and obey, but I worship *him* from whom thou hast received this power, who is the lord of the universe, who has protected thee against the attacks of the two kings, Bali and Hiraṇyâksha. Therefore let me do as *I* like, and turn away from me with my farewell greeting."

Indra said: "If you will absolutely oppose me, I will kill you and annihilate you."

The king answered: "People say that happiness is envied, but not so misfortune. He who retires from the world is envied by the angels, and therefore they will try to lead him astray. I am one of those who have retired from the world and entirely devoted themselves to worship, and I shall not give it up as long as
age 55. I live. I do not know myself to be guilty of a crime for which I should deserve to be killed by thee. If thou killest me without any offence on my part, it is thy concern. What dost thou want from me? If my thoughts are entirely devoted to God, and nothing else is blended with them, thou art not able to do me any harm. Sufficient for me is the worship with which I am occupied, and now I return to it."

As the king now went on worshipping, the Lord appeared to him in the shape of a man of the grey lotus colour, riding on a bird called Garuḍa, holding in one of the four hands the *śaṅkha*, a sea-shell which people blow when riding on elephants; in the second hand the *cakra*, a round, cutting, orbicular weapon, which cuts everything it hits right through; in the third an amulet, and in the fourth *padma*, *i.e.* the red lotus. When the king saw him, he shuddered from reverence, prostrated himself and uttered many praises. The Lord quieted his terrified mind and promised him that he should obtain everything he wished for. The king spoke: "I had obtained an empire which nobody disputed with me; I was in conditions of life not troubled by sorrow or sickness. It was as if the whole world belonged to me. But then I turned away from it, after I had understood that the good of the world is really bad in the end. I do not wish for anything except what I now have. The only thing I now wish for is to be liberated from this fetter."

The Lord spoke: "That you will obtain by keeping aloof from the world, by being alone, by uninterrupted meditation, and by restraining your senses to yourself."

The king spoke: "Supposing that I am able to do so through that sanctity which the Lord has deigned to bestow upon me, how should any other man be able to do so? for man wants eating and clothing, which connects him with the world. How is he to think of anything else?"

The Lord spoke: "Occupy yourself with your empire in as straightforward and prudent a way as possible: turn your thoughts upon me when you are engaged in civilising the world and protecting its inhabitants, in giving alms, and in everything you do. And if you are overpowered by human forgetfulness, make to yourself an image like that in which you see me; offer to it perfumes and flowers, and make it a memorial of me, so that you may not forget me. If you are in sorrow, think of me; if you speak, speak in my name; if you act, act for me."

The king spoke: "Now I know what I have to do in general, but honour me further by instructing me in the details."

The Lord spoke: "That I have done already. I have inspired your judge Vasishṭha with all that is required. Therefore rely upon him in all questions."

Then the figure disappeared from his sight. The king returned into his residence and did as he had been ordered.

From that time, the Hindus say, people make idols, some with four hands like the appearance we have described, others with two hands, as the story and description require, and conformably to the being which is to be represented.

Nârada and the voice from the fire.

Another story of theirs is the following:—Brahman had a son called Nârada, who had no other desire but that of seeing the Lord. It was his custom, when he walked about, to hold a stick. If he threw it down, it became a serpent, and he was able to do miracles with it. He never went without it. One day being engrossed in meditation on the object of his hopes, he saw a fire from afar. He went towards it, and then a voice spoke to him out of the fire: "What you demand and wish is impossible. You cannot see me save thus." When he looked in that direction, he saw a fiery appearance in something like human shape. Henceforward it has been the custom to erect idols of certain shapes.

Page 56.

The idol of Multân called Âditya.

A famous idol of theirs was that of Multân, dedicated to the sun, and therefore called *Âditya*. It was of wood and covered with red Cordovan leather; in its two eyes were two red rubies. It is said to have been made in the last Kṛitayuga. Suppose that it was made in the very end of Kṛitayuga, the time which has since elapsed amounts to 216,432 years. When Muhammad Ibn Alḳâsim Ibn Almunabbih conquered Multân, he inquired how the town had become so very flourishing and so many treasures had there been accumulated, and then he found out that this idol was the cause, for there came pilgrims from all sides to visit it. Therefore he thought it best to have the idol where it was, but he hung a piece of cow's-flesh on its neck by way of mockery. On the same place a mosque was built. When then the Ḳarmatians occupied Multân, Jalam Ibn Shaibân, the usurper, broke the idol into pieces and killed its priests. He made his mansion, which was a castle built of brick on an elevated place, the mosque instead of the old mosque, which he ordered to be shut from hatred against anything that had been done under the dynasty of the Caliphs of the house of 'Umayya. When afterwards the blessed Prince Maḥmûd swept away their rule from those countries, he made again the old mosque the place of the Friday-worship, and the second one was left to decay. At present it is only a barn-floor, where bunches of Ḥinnâ (*Lawsonia inermis*) are bound together.

If we now subtract from the above-mentioned number of years the hundreds, tens, and units, *i.e.* the 432 years, as a kind of arbitrary equivalent for the sum of about 100 years, by which the rise of the Ḳarmatians preceded our time, we get as the remainder 216,000 years for the time of the end of the Kṛitayuga, and about the epoch of the era of the Hijra. How, then, could wood have lasted such a length of time, and particularly in a place where the air and the soil are rather wet? God knows best!

The idol of Tâneshar called Cakrasvâmin.

The city of Tâneshar is highly venerated by the Hindus. The idol of that place is called *Cakrasvâmin*, *i.e.* the owner of the *cakra*, a weapon which we have already described (page 114). It is of bronze, and is nearly the size of a man. It is now lying in the hippodrome in Ghazna, together with the *Lord of Somanâth*, which is a representation of the *penis* of Mahâdeva, called *Linga*. Of Somanâth we shall hereafter speak in the proper place. This Cakrasvâmin is said to have been made in the time of Bhârata as a memorial of wars connected with this name.

The idol Śârada in Kashmîr.

In Inner Kashmîr, about two or three days' journey from the capital in the direction towards the mountains of Bolor, there is a wooden idol called *Śârada*, which is much venerated and frequented by pilgrims.

Quotation from the Saṁhitâ of Varâhamihira.

We shall now communicate a whole chapter from the book *Saṁhitâ* relating to the construction of idols, which will help the student thoroughly to comprehend the present subject.

Varâhamihira says: "If the figure is made to represent Râma the son of Daśaratha, or Bali the son of Virocana, give it the height of 120 digits," *i.e.* of *idol* *digits*, which must be reduced by one-tenth to become *common digits*, in this case 108.

"To the idol of Vishṇu give eight hands, or four, or two, and on the left side under the breast give him the figure of the woman Śrî. If you give him eight hands, place in the right hands a sword, a club of gold or iron, an arrow, and make the fourth hand as if it were drawing water; in the left hands give him a shield, a bow, a Page 57. *cakra*, and a conch.

"If you give him four hands, omit the bow and the arrow, the sword and shield.

"If you give him two hands, let the right hand be drawing water, the left holding a conch.

"If the figure is to represent Baladeva, the brother of Nârâyaṇa, put earrings into his ears, and give him eyes of a drunken man.

"If you make both figures, Nârâyaṇa and Baladeva, join with them their sister *Bhagavatî* (Durgâ = Ekânanśâ), her left hand resting on her hip a little away from the side, and her right hand holding a lotus.

"If you make her four-handed, place in the right hands a rosary and a hand drawing water; in the left hands, a book and a lotus.

"If you make her eight-handed, place in the left hands the *kamaṇḍalu*, *i.e.* a pot, a lotus, bow and book; in the right hands, a rosary, a mirror, an arrow, and a water-drawing hand.

"If the figure is to represent Sâmba, the son of Vishṇu, put only a club in his right hand. If it is to represent Pradyumna, the son of Vishṇu, place in his right hand an arrow, in his left hand a bow. And if you make their two wives, place in their right hand a sword, in the left a buckler.

"The idol of Brahman has four faces towards the four sides, and is seated on a lotus.

"The idol of Skanda, the son of Mahâdeva, is a boy riding on a peacock, his hand holding a *śakti*, a weapon like a double-edged sword, which has in the middle a pestle like that of a mortar.

"The idol Indra holds in its hand a weapon called *vajra* of diamond. It has a similar handle to the *śakti*, but on each side it has two swords which join at the handle. On his front place a third eye, and make him ride on a white elephant with four tusks.

"Likewise make on the front of the idol of Mahâdeva a third eye right above, on his head a crescent, in his hand a weapon called *śûla*, similar to the club but with three branches, and a sword; and let his left hand hold his wife Gaurî, the daughter of Himavant, whom he presses to his bosom from the side.

"To the idol Jina, *i.e.* Buddha, give a face and limbs as beautiful as possible, make the lines in the palms of his hands and feet like a lotus, and represent him seated on a lotus; give him grey hair, and represent him with a placid expression, as if he were the father of creation.

"If you make Arhant, the figure of another body of Buddha, represent him as a naked youth with a fine face, beautiful, whose hands reach down to the knees, with the figure of Śrî, his wife, under the left breast.

"The idol of Revanta, the son of the sun, rides on a horse like a huntsman.

"The idol of Yima, the angel of death, rides on a buffalo, and holds a club in his hand.

"The idol of Kubera, the treasurer, wears a crown, has a big stomach and wide hips, and is riding on a man.

"The idol of the sun has a red face like the pith of the red lotus, beams like a diamond, has protruding limbs, rings in the ears, the neck adorned with pearls which hang down over the breast, wears a crown of several compartments, holds in his hands two lotuses, and is clad in the dress of the Northerners which reaches down to the ankle.

"If you represent the Seven Mothers, represent several Page 58.
of them together in one figure, Brahmâṇî with four faces

towards the four directions, Kaumârî with six faces, Vaishṇavî with four hands, Vârâhî with a hog's head on a human body, Indrâṇî with many eyes and a club in her hand, Bhagavatî (Durgâ) sitting as people generally sit, Câmuṇḍâ ugly, with protruding teeth and a slim waist. Further join with them the sons of Mahâdeva, Kshetrapâla with bristling hair, a sour face, and an ugly figure, but Vinâyaka with an elephant's head on a human body, with four hands, as we have heretofore described."

The worshippers of these idols kill sheep and buffaloes with axes (*kuṭâra*), that they may nourish themselves with their blood. All idols are constructed according to certain measures determined by *idol-fingers* for every single limb, but sometimes they differ regarding the measure of a limb. If the artist keeps the right measure and does not make anything too large nor too small, he is free from sin, and is sure that the being which he represented will not visit him with any mishap. "If he makes the idol one cubit high and together with the throne two cubits, he will obtain health and wealth. If he makes it higher still, he will be praised.

"But he must know that making the idol too large, especially that of the Sun, will hurt the ruler, and making it too small will hurt the artist. If he gives it a thin belly, this helps and furthers the famine in the country; if he gives it a lean belly, this ruins property.

"If the hand of the artist slips so as to produce something like a wound, he will have a wound in his own body which will kill him.

"If it is not completely even on both sides, so that the one shoulder is higher than the other, his wife will perish.

"If he turns the eye upward, he will be blind for lifetime; if he turns it downward, he will have many troubles and sorrows."

If the statue is made of some precious stone, it is better than if it were made of wood, and wood is better than clay. "The benefits of a statue of precious stone will be common to all the men and women of the empire. A golden statue will bring power to him who erected it, a statue of silver will bring him renown, one of bronze will bring him an increase of his rule, one of stone the acquisition of landed property."

The Hindus honour their idols on account of those who erected them, not on account of the material of which they are made. We have already mentioned that the idol of Multân was of wood. *E.g.* the *linga* which Râma erected when he had finished the war with the demons was of sand, which he had heaped up with his own hand. But then it became petrified all at once, since the astrologically correct moment for the erecting of the monument fell before the moment when the workmen had finished the cutting of the stone monument which Râma originally had ordered. Regarding the building of the temple and its peristyle, the cutting of the trees of four different kinds, the astrological determination of the favourable moment for the erection, the celebration of the rites due on such an occasion, regarding all this Râma gave very long and tedious instructions. Further, he ordered that servants and priests to minister to the idols should be nominated from different classes of the people. "To the idol of Vishṇu are devoted the class called Bhâgavata; to the idol of the Sun, the Maga, *i.e.* the Magians; to the idol of Mahâdeva, a class of saints, anchorites with long hair, who cover their skin with ashes, hang on their persons the bones of dead people, and swim in the pools. The Brâhmaṇa are devoted to the Eight Mothers, the Shamanians to Buddha, to Arhant the class called *Nagna*. On the whole, to each idol certain people are devoted who constructed it, for those know best how to serve it." Page 59.

Quotations from *Gîtâ* showing that God is not to be confounded with the idols.

Our object in mentioning all this mad raving was to teach the reader the accurate description of an idol, if he happens to see one, and to illustrate what we have said before, that such idols are erected only for uneducated low-class people of little understanding; that the Hindus never made an idol of any supernatural being, much less of God; and, lastly, to show how the crowd is kept in thraldom by all kinds of priestly tricks and deceits. Therefore the book *Gîtâ* says: "Many people try to approach me in their aspirations through something which is different from me; they try to insinuate themselves into my favour by giving alms, praise, and prayer to something besides me. I, however, confirm and help them in all these doings of theirs, and make them attain the object of their wishes, because I am able to dispense with them."

In the same book Vâsudeva speaks to Arjuna: "Do you not see that most of those who wish for something address themselves in offering and worshipping to the several classes of *spiritual beings*, and to the sun, moon, and other celestial bodies? If now God does not disappoint their hopes, though he in no way stands in need of their worship, if he even gives them more than they asked for, and if he gives them their wishes in such a way as though they were receiving them from that to which they had addressed their prayers—viz. the idol—they will proceed to worship those whom they address, because they have not learned to know him, whilst *he*, by admitting this kind of intermediation, carries their affairs to the desired end. But that which is obtained by desires and intermediation is not lasting, since it is only as much as is deserved for any particular merit. Only that is lasting which is obtained from God alone, when people are disgusted with old age, death, and birth (and desire to be delivered therefrom by *Mokska*)."

This is what Vâsudeva says. When the ignorant crowd get a piece of good luck by accident or something at which they had aimed, and when with this some of the preconcerted tricks of the priests are brought into connection, the darkness in which they live increases vastly, not their intelligence. They will rush to those *figures* of idols, maltreating their own figures before them by shedding their own blood and mutilating their own bodies.

The ancient Greeks, also, considered the idols as mediators between themselves and the *First Cause*, and worshipped them under the names of the stars and the highest substances. For they described the First Cause, not with positive, but only with negative predicates, since they considered it too high to be described by human qualities, and since they wanted to describe it as free from any imperfection. Therefore they could not address it in worship.

When the heathen Arabs had imported into their country idols from Syria, they also worshipped them, hoping that they would intercede for them with God.

Plato says in the fourth chapter of the *Book of Laws:* "It is necessary to any one who gives perfect honours (to the gods) that he should take trouble with the *mystery* of the gods and Sakînât, and that he should not make special idols masters over the ancestral gods. Further, it is the greatest duty to give honours as much as possible to the parents while they live."

By *mystery* Plato means a special kind of *devotion.* The word is much used among the Ṣâbians of Ḥarrân, the dualistic Manichæans, and the theologians of the Hindus.

Galenus says in the book *De Indole Animæ:* "At the time of the Emperor Commodus, between 500–510 years after Alexander, two men went to an idol-merchant and bargained with him for an idol of Hermes. Page 60. The one wanted to erect it in a temple as a memorial of Hermes, the other wanted to erect it on a tomb as a memorial of the deceased. However, they could not settle the business with the merchant, and so they postponed it until the following day. The idol-merchant dreamt the following night that the idol addressed him and spoke to him: 'O excellent man! I am thy work. I have received through the work of thy hands a figure which is thought to be the figure of a star. Now I am no longer a stone, as people called me heretofore; I am now known as Mercury. At present it stands in thy hands to make me either a memorial of something imperishable or of something that has perished already.'"

There is a treatise of Aristotle in which he answers certain questions of the Brahmiṇs which Alexander had sent him. There he says: "If you maintain that some Greeks have fabled that the idols speak, that the people offer to them and think them to be spiritual beings, of all this we have no knowledge, and we cannot give a sentence on a subject we do not know." In these words he rises high above the class of fools and uneducated people, and he indicates by them that he does not occupy himself with such things. It is evident that the first cause of idolatry was the desire of commemorating the dead and of consoling the living; but on this basis it has developed, and has finally become a foul and pernicious abuse.

The former view, that idols are only memorials, was also held by the Caliph Muʿâwiya regarding the idols of Sicily. When, in the summer of A.H. 53, Sicily was conquered, and the conquerors sent him golden idols adorned with crowns and diamonds which had been captured there, he ordered them to be sent to Sind, that they should be sold there to the princes of the country; for he thought it best to sell them as objects costing sums of so-and-so many denars, not having the slightest scruple on account of their being objects of abominable idolatry, but simply considering the matter from a political, not from a religious point of view.

CHAPTER XII.

ON THE VEDA, THE PURÂṆAS, AND OTHER KINDS OF THEIR NATIONAL LITERATURE.

Sundry notes relating to the Veda.

VEDA means knowledge of that which was before unknown. It is a religious system which, according to the Hindus, comes from God, and was promulgated by the mouth of Brahman. The Brahmins recite the Veda without understanding its meaning, and in the same way they learn it by heart, the one receiving it from the other. Only few of them learn its explanation, and still less is the number of those who master the contents of the Veda and their interpretation to such a degree as to be able to hold a theological disputation.

The Brahmins teach the Veda to the Kshatriyas. The latter learn it, but are not allowed to teach it, not even to a Brahmin. The Vaiśya and Śûdra are not allowed to hear it, much less to pronounce and recite it. If such a thing can be proved against one of them, the Brahmins drag him before the magistrate, and he is punished by having his tongue cut off.

The Veda contains commandments and prohibitions, detailed statements about reward and punishment intended to encourage and to deter; but most of it contains hymns of praise, and treats of the various kinds of sacrifices to the fire, which are so numerous and difficult that you could hardly count them.

The Veda transmitted by memory.

They do not allow the Veda to be committed to writing, because it is recited according to certain modulations, and they therefore avoid the use of the pen, since it is liable to cause some error, and may occasion an addition or a defect in the written text. In consequence it has happened that they have several times forgotten the Veda and lost it. For they maintain that the following passage occurs in the conversations between God and Brahman relating to the beginning of all things, according to the report of Śaunaka who had received it from the planet Venus: "You will forget the Veda at the time when the earth will be submerged; it will then go down to the depths of the earth, and none but the fish will be able to bring it out again. Therefore I shall send the fish, and it will deliver the Veda into your hands. And I shall send the boar to raise the earth with its tusks and to bring it out of the water."

Page 61.

Further, the Hindus maintain that the Veda, together with all the rites of their religion and country, had been obliterated in the last Dvâpara-yuga, a period of time of which we shall speak in the proper place, until it was renewed by Vyâsa, the son of Parâśara.

The *Vishṇu Purâṇa* says: "At the beginning of each Manvantara period there will be created anew a lord of a period whose children will rule over the whole earth, and a prince who will be the head of the world, and angels to whom men will bring fire-offerings, and the *Great Bear*, who will renew the Veda which is lost at the end of each period."

Vasukra commits the Veda to writing.

This is the reason why, not long before our time, Vasukra, a native of Kashmîr, a famous Brahmin, has of his own account undertaken the task of explaining the Veda and committing it to writing. He has taken on himself a task from which everybody else would have recoiled, but he carried it out because he was afraid that the Veda might be forgotten and entirely vanish out of the memories of men, since he observed that the characters of men grew worse and worse, and that they did not care much for virtue, nor even for duty.

There are certain passages in the Veda which, as they maintain, must not be recited within dwellings, since they fear that they would cause an abortion both to women and the cattle. Therefore they step out into the open field to recite them there. There is hardly a single verse free from such and similar minatory injunctions.

As we have already mentioned, the books of the Hindus are metrical compositions like the Rajaz poems of the Arabs. Most of them are composed in a metre called *śloka*. The reason of this has already been explained. Galenus also prefers metrical composition, and says in his book Κατὰ γένη: "The single signs which denote the weights of medicines become corrupt by being copied; they are also corrupted by the wanton mischief of some envious person. Therefore it is quite right that the books of Damocrates on medicines should be preferred to others, and that they should gain fame and praise, since they are written in a Greek metre. If all books were written in this way it would be the best;" the fact being that a prose text is much more exposed to corruption than a metrical one.

The Veda, however, is not composed in this common metre, śloka, but in another. Some Hindus say that no one could compose anything in the same metre. However, their scholars maintain that this is possible indeed, but that they refrain from trying it merely from veneration for the Veda.

The four pupils of Vyâsa and the four Vedas.

According to their tradition, Vyâsa divided it into four parts: *Ṛigveda*, *Yajurveda*, *Sâmaveda*, and *Atharvaṇaveda*.

Vyâsa had four *śishya*, *i.e.* pupils. He taught a separate Veda to each of them, and made him carry it in his memory. They are enumerated in the same order as the four parts of the Veda: *Paila*, *Vaiśampâyana*, *Jaimini*, *Sumantu*.

On the Ṛigveda.

Each of the four parts has a peculiar kind of recitation. The first is Ṛigveda, consisting of metrical compositions called *ṛic*, which are of different lengths. It is called Ṛigveda as being the totality of the *ṛic*. It treats of the sacrifices to the fire, and is recited in three different ways. First, in a uniform manner of reading, just as every other book is read. Secondly, in such a way that a pause is made after every single word. Thirdly, in a method which is the most meritorious, and for which plenty of reward in heaven is promised. First you read a short passage, each word of which is distinctly pronounced; then you repeat it together with a part of that which has not yet been recited. Next you recite the added portion alone, and then you repeat it together with the next part of that which has not yet been recited, &c., &c. Continuing to do so till the end, you will have read the whole text twice.

Page 62.

On the Yajurveda.

The Yajurveda is composed of *kâṇḍin*. The word is a derivative noun, and means *the totality of the kâṇḍin*. The difference between this and the Ṛigveda is that it may be read as a text connected by the rules of Saṁdhi, which is not allowed in the case of Ṛigveda. The one as well as the other treats of works connected with the fire and the sacrifices.

I have heard the following story about the reason why the Ṛigveda cannot be recited as a text connected by the rules of Saṁdhi:—

The story of Yâjnavalkya.

Yâjnavalkya stayed with his master, and his master had a Brahmin friend who wanted to make a journey. Therefore he asked the master to send somebody to his house to perform there during his absence the rites to *Homa*, *i.e.* to his fire, and to prevent it from being extinguished. Now the master sent his pupils to the house of his friend one after the other. So it came to be the turn of Yâjnavalkya, who was beautiful to look at and handsomely dressed. When he began the work which he was sent for, in a place where the wife of the absent man was present, she conceived an aversion to his fine attire, and Yâjnavalkya became aware of it, though she concealed it. On having finished, he took the water to sprinkle it over the head of the woman, for this holds with them the place of the blowing after an incantation, since blowing is disliked by them and considered as something impure. Then the woman said, "Sprinkle it over this column." So he did, and at once the column became green. Now the woman repented having missed the blessing of his pious action; therefore on the following day she went to the master, asking him to send her the same pupil whom he had sent the day before. Yâjnavalkya, however, declined to go except in his turn. No urging had any effect upon him; he did not mind the wrath of his master, but simply said, "Take away from me all that you have taught me." And scarcely had he spoken the word, when on a sudden he had forgotten all he knew before. Now he turned to the Sun and asked him to teach him the Veda. The Sun said, "How is that possible, as I must perpetually wander, and you are incapable of doing the same?" But then Yâjnavalkya clung to the chariot of the Sun and began to learn the Veda from him; but he was compelled to interrupt the recitation here and there on account of the irregularity of the motion of the chariot.

Sâmaveda and Âtharvaṇaveda.

The Sâmaveda treats of the sacrifices, commandments, and prohibitions. It is recited in a tone like a chant, and hence its name is derived, because *sâman* means *the sweetness of recitation.* The cause of this kind of recital is, that Nârâyaṇa, when he appeared on earth in the shape of Vâmana, and came to the king Bali, changed himself into a Brahman and began to recite the Sâmaveda with a touching melody, by which he exhilarated the king, in consequence of which there happened to him the well-known story.

The Âtharvaṇaveda is as a text connected by the rules of Saṁdhi. It does not consist of the same compositions as the Ṛig and Yajur Vedas, but of a third kind called *bhara*. It is recited according to a melody with a nasal tone. This Veda is less in favour with the Hindus than the others. It likewise treats of the sacrifices to the fire, and contains injunctions regarding the dead and what is to be done with them.

List of the Purâṇas.

Page 63.

As to the Purâṇas, we first mention that the word means *first, eternal*. There are eighteen Purâṇas, most of them called by the names of animals, human or angelic beings, because they contain stories about them, or because the contents of the book refer in some way to them, or because the book consists of answers which the creature whose name forms the title of the book has given to certain questions.

The Purâṇas are of human origin, composed by the so-called Ṛishis. In the following I give a list of their names, as I have heard them, and committed them to writing from dictation:—

1. *Âdi-purâṇa*, *i.e.* the first.
2. *Matsya-purâṇa*, *i.e.* the fish.
3. *Kûrma-purâṇa*, *i.e.* the tortoise.
4. *Varâha-purâṇa*, *i.e.* the boar.
5. *Narasiṁha-purâṇa*, *i.e.* a human being with a lion's head.
6. *Vâmana-purâṇa*, *i.e.* the dwarf.
7. *Vâyu-purâṇa*, *i.e.* the wind.
8. *Nanda-purâṇa*, *i.e.* a servant of Mahâdeva.
9. *Skanda-purâṇa*, *i.e.* a son of Mahâdeva.
10. *Âditya-purâṇa*, *i.e.* the sun.
11. *Soma-purâṇa*, *i.e.* the moon.
12. *Sâmba-purâṇa*, *i.e.* the son of Vishṇu.
13. *Brahmâṇḍa-purâṇa*, *i.e.* heaven.
14. *Mârkandeya-purâṇa*, *i.e.* a great Ṛishi.
15. *Târkshya-purâṇa*, *i.e.* the bird Garuḍa.
16. *Vishṇu-purâṇa*, *i.e.* Nârâyaṇa.
17. *Brahma-purâṇa*, *i.e.* the nature charged with the preservation of the world.
18. *Bhavishya-purâṇa*, *i.e.* future things.

Of all this literature I have only seen portions of the Matsya, Âditya, and Vâyu Purâṇas.

Another somewhat different list of the Purâṇas has been read to me from the *Vishṇu-Purâṇa*. I give it here *in extenso*, as in all questions resting on tradition it is the duty of an author to give those traditions as completely as possible :—

1. *Brahma.*
2. *Padma, i.e.* the red lotus.
3. *Vishṇu.*
4. *S'iva, i.e.* Mahâdeva.
5. *Bhâgavata, i.e.* Vâsudeva.
6. *Nârada, i.e.* the son of Brahma.
7. *Mârkaṇḍeya.*
8. *Agni, i.e.* the fire.
9. *Bhavishya, i.e.* the future.
10. *Brahmavaivarta, i.e.* the wind.
11. *Liṅga, i.e.* an image of the *αἰδοῖα* of Mahâdeva.
12. *Varâha.*
13. *Skanda.*
14. *Vâmana.*
15. *Kûrma.*
16. *Matsya, i.e.* the fish.
17. *Garuḍa, i.e.* the bird on which Vishṇu rides.
18. *Brahmâṇḍa.*

These are the names of the Purâṇas according to the *Vishṇu-Purâṇa*.

A list Smriti books.

The book *Smriti* is derived from the Veda. It contains commandments and prohibitions, and is composed by the following twenty sons of Brahman :—

1. Âpastamba.
2. Parâśara.
3. Śâtâtapa.
4. Saṁvarta.
5. Daksha.
6. Vasishṭha.
7. Aṅgiras.
8. Yama.
9. Vishṇu.
10. Manu.
11. Yâjnavalkya.
12. Atri.
13. Hârîta.
14. Likhita.
15. Śaṅkha.
16. Gautama.
17. Vṛihaspati.
18. Kâtyâyana.
19. Vyâsa.
20. Uśanas.

Besides, the Hindus have books about the jurisprudence of their religion, on theosophy, on ascetics, on the process of becoming god and seeking liberation from the world, as, *e.g.* the book composed by Gauda the anchorite, which goes by his name; the book *Sâṁkhya*, composed by Kapila, on divine subjects; the book of *Patañjali*, on the search for liberation and for the union of the soul with the object of its meditation; the book *Nyâyabhâshâ*, composed by Kapila, on the Veda and its interpretation, also showing that it has been created, and distinguishing within the Veda between such injunctions as are obligatory only in certain cases, and those which are obligatory in general; further, the book *Mîmâṁsâ*, composed by Jaimini, on the same subject; the book *Laukâyata*, composed by Bṛihaspati, treating of the subject that in all investigations we must exclusively rely upon the apperception of the senses; the book *Agastyamata*, composed by Agastya, treating of the subject that in all investigations we must use the apperception of the senses as well as tradition; and the book *Vishṇu-dharma*. The word *dharma* means *reward*, but in general it is used for *religion;* so that this title means *The religion of God*, who in this case is understood to be Nârâyaṇa. Further, there are the books of the six pupils of Vyâsa, viz. *Devala*, *Śukra*, *Bhârgava*, *Vṛihaspati*, *Yâjnavalkya*, and *Manu*. The Hindus have numerous books about all the branches of science. How could anybody know the titles of all of them, more especially if he is not a Hindu, but a foreigner?

Page 64.

Mahâbhârata.

Besides, they have a book which they hold in such veneration that they firmly assert that everything which occurs in other books is found also in this book, but not all which occurs in this book is found in other books. It is called *Bhârata*, and composed by Vyâsa the son of Parâśara at the time of the great war between the children of Pâṇḍu and those of Kuru. The title itself gives an indication of those times. The book has 100,000 Ślokas in eighteen parts, each of which is called *Parvan*. Here we give the list of them:—

1. *Sabhâ-parva*, *i.e.* the king's dwelling.
2. *Araṇya*, *i.e.* going out into the open field, meaning the exodus of the children of Pâṇḍu.
3. *Virâṭa*, *i.e.* the name of a king in whose realm they dwelt during the time of their concealment.
4. *Udyoga*, *i.e.* the preparing for battle.
5. *Bhîshma*.
6. *Droṇa* the Brahmin.
7. *Karṇa* the son of the Sun.
8. *Śalya* the brother of *Duryodhana*, some of the greatest heroes who did the fighting, one *always* coming forward after his predecessor had been killed.
9. *Gadâ*, *i.e.* the club.
10. *Sauptika*, *i.e.* the killing of the sleepers, when Aśvatthâman the son of Droṇa attacked the city of Pañcâla during the night and killed the inhabitants.
11. *Jalapradânika*, *i.e.* the successive drawing of water for the dead, after people have washed off the impurity caused by the touching of the dead.
12. *Strî*, *i.e.* the lamentations of the women.
13. *Śânti*, containing 24,000 Ślokas on eradicating hatred from the heart, in four parts:
    (1.) *Râjadharma*, on the reward of the kings.
    (2.) *Dânadharma*, on the reward for almsgiving.
    (3.) *Âpaddharma*, on the reward of those who are in need and trouble.
    (4.) *Mokshadharma*, on the reward of him who is liberated from the world.
14. *Aśvamedha*, *i.e.* the sacrifice of the horse which is sent out together with an army to wander through the world. Then they proclaim in public that it belongs to the king of the world, and that he who does not agree thereto is to come forward to fight. The Brahmans follow the horse, and celebrate sacrifices to the fire in those places where the horse drops its dung.
15. *Mausala*, *i.e.* the fighting of the Yâdavas, the tribe of Vâsudeva, among themselves.
16. *Âśramavâsa*, *i.e.* leaving one's own country.
17. *Prasthâna*, *i.e.* quitting the realm to seek liberation.
18. *Svargârohaṇa*, *i.e.* journeying towards Paradise.

These eighteen parts are followed by another one which is called *Harivaṁśa-Parvan*, which contains the traditions relating to Vâsudeva.

In this book there occur passages which, like riddles, admit of manifold interpretations. As to the reason of Page 65.

this the Hindus relate the following story:—Vyâsa asked Brahman to procure him somebody who might write for him the *Bhârata* from his dictation. Now he intrusted with this task his son Vinâyaka, who is represented as an idol with an elephant's head, and made it obligatory on him never to cease from writing. At the same time Vyâsa made it obligatory on him to write only that which he understood. Therefore Vyâsa, in the course of his dictation, dictated such sentences as compelled the writer to ponder over them, and thereby Vyâsa gained time for resting awhile.

CHAPTER XIII.

THEIR GRAMMATICAL AND METRICAL LITERATURE.

List of books on grammar.

THE two sciences of grammar and metrics are auxiliary to the other sciences. Of the two, the former, grammar, holds the first place in their estimate, called *vyâkaraṇa*, *i.e.* the law of the correctness of their speech and etymological rules, by means of which they acquire an eloquent and classical style both in writing and reading. We Muslims cannot learn anything of it, since it is a branch coming from a root which is not within our grasp—I mean the language itself. That which I have been told as to titles of books on this science is the following:—

1. *Aindra*, attributed to Indra, the head of the angels.
2. *Cândra*, composed by Candra, one of the red-robe-wearing sect, the followers of Buddha.
3. *S'âkaṭa*, so called by the name of its author. His tribe, too, is called by a name derived from the same word, viz. *S'âkaṭâyana*.
4. *Pâṇini*, so called from its author.
5. *Kâtantra*, composed by Śarvavarman.
6. *S'aśidevavṛitti*, composed by Śaśideva.
7. *Durgavivṛitti*.
8. *S'ishyahitâvṛitti*, composed by Ugrabhûti.

Shâh Ânandapâla and his master Ugrabhûti.

I have been told that the last-mentioned author was the teacher and instructor of Shâh Ânandapâla, the son of Jayapâla, who ruled in our time. After having composed the book he sent it to Kashmîr, but the people there did not adopt it, being in such things haughtily conservative. Now he complained of this to the Shâh, and the Shâh, in accordance with the duty of a pupil towards his master, promised him to make him attain his wish. So he gave orders to send 200,000 *dirham* and presents of a similar value to Kashmîr, to be distributed among those who studied the book of his master. The consequence was that they all rushed upon the book, and would not copy any other grammar but this one, showing themselves in the baseness of their avarice. The book became the fashion and highly prized.

Tale relating to the origin of grammar.

Of the origin of grammar they give the following account:—One of their kings, called Samalvâhana, *i.e.* in the classical language, Sâtavâhana, was one day in a pond playing with his wives, when he said to one of them "*Mâudakaṁ dehi*," i.e. *do not sprinkle the water on me*. The woman, however, understood it as if he had said *modakaṁ dehi*, i.e. *bring sweetmeats*. So she went away and brought him sweetmeats. And when the king disapproved of her doing so, she gave him an angry reply, and used coarse language towards him. Now he was deeply offended, and, in consequence, as is their custom, he abstained from all food, and concealed himself in some corner until he was called upon by a sage, who consoled him, promising him that he would teach people grammar and the inflexions of the language. Thereupon the sage went off to Mahâdeva, praying, praising, and fasting devoutly. Mahâdeva appeared to him, and communicated to him some few rules, the like of which Abul'aswad Addu'alî has given for the Arabic language. The god also promised to assist him in the further development of this science. Then the sage returned to the king and taught it to him. This was the beginning of the science of grammar.

The predilection of the Hindus for metrical compositions.

Grammar is followed by another science, called *chandas, i.e.* the metrical form of poetry, corresponding to our metrics—a science indispensable to them, since all their books are in verse. By composing their books in metres they intend to facilitate their being learned

Page 66.

by heart, and to prevent people in all questions of science ever recurring to a *written* text, save in a case of bare necessity. For they think that the mind of man sympathises with everything in which there is symmetry and order, and has an aversion to everything in which there is no order. Therefore most Hindus are passionately fond of their verses, and always desirous of reciting them, even if they do not understand the meaning of the words, and the audience will snap their fingers in token of joy and applause. They do not want prose compositions, although it is much easier to understand them.

Most of their books are composed in *Śloka*, in which I am now exercising myself, being occupied in composing for the Hindus a translation of the books of Euclid and of the Almagest, and dictating to them a treatise on the construction of the astrolabe, being simply guided herein by the desire of spreading science. If the Hindus happen to get some book which does not yet exist among them, they set at work to change it into *Ślokas*, which are rather unintelligible, since the metrical form entails a constrained, affected style, which will become apparent when we shall speak of their method of expressing numbers. And if the verses are not sufficiently affected, their authors meet with frowning faces, as having committed something like mere prose, and then they will feel extremely unhappy. God will do me justice in what I say of them.

Books on metrics.

The first who invented this art were Pingala and جلت (? *C L T*). The books on the subject are numerous. The most famous of them is the book *Gaisita* (? G—AI—S—T), so called from its author, famous to such a degree that even the whole science of metrics has been called by this name. Other books are that of Mṛigalâñchana, that of Pingala, and that of اولياند (? Û (Au)—L—Y—Â—N—D). I, however, have not seen any of these books, nor do I know much of the chapter of the *Brahma-siddhânta* which treats of metrical calculations, and therefore I have no claim to a thorough knowledge of the laws of their metrics. Nevertheless, I do not think it right to pass by a subject of which I have only a smattering, and I shall not postpone speaking of it until I shall have thoroughly mastered it.

On the meaning of the technical terms *laghu* and *guru*.

In counting the syllables (*gaṇachandas*) they use similar figures to those used by Alkhalîl Ibn Aḥmad and our metricians to denote the *consonant without vowel* and the *consonant with vowel*, viz. these two signs, | and >, the former of which is called *laghu, i.e.* light; the latter, *guru, i.e.* heavy. In measuring (*mâtrâchandas*), the *guru* is reckoned double of a *laghu*, and its place may be filled by two *laghu*.

Further, they have a syllable which they call long (*dîrgha*), the measure or prosody of which is equal to that of a *guru*. This, I think, is a syllable with a long vowel (like *kâ, kî, kû*). Here, however, I must confess that up to the present moment I have not been able to gain a clear idea of the nature of both *laghu* and *guru*, so as to be able to illustrate them by similar elements in Arabic. However, I am inclined to think that *laghu* does *not* mean a *consonant without vowel*, nor *guru* a *consonant with vowel*, but that, on the contrary, *laghu* means a consonant with a short vowel (e.g. *ka, ki, ku*), and *guru* means the same with a vowelless consonant (e.g. *kat, kit, kut*), like an element in Arabic metrics called *Sabab* (*i.e.* — or ⏑⏑, a long syllable the place of which may be taken by two short ones). That which makes me doubt as to the first-mentioned definition of *laghu* is this circumstance, that the Hindus use *many laghu* one after the other in an uninterrupted succession. The Arabs are not capable of pronouncing two vowelless consonants one after the other, but in other languages this is possible. The Persian metricians, for instance, call such a consonant *moved by a light vowel* (*i.e.* pronounced with a sound like the Hebrew Schwa). But, in any case, if such consonants are more than three in number, they are most difficult, nay, even impossible to pronounce; whilst, on the other hand, there is not the slightest difficulty in pronouncing an uninterrupted series of short syllables consisting of a consonant with a short vowel, as when you say in Arabic, "*Badanuka kamathali ṣifatika wafamuka bisaʿati shafatika*" (*i.e.* Thy body is like thy description, and thy mouth depends upon the width of thy lip). Further, although it is difficult to pronounce a vowelless consonant at the beginning of a word, most nouns of the Hindus begin, if not exactly with vowelless consonants, still with such consonants as have only a Schwa-like vowel-sound to follow them. If such a consonant stands at the beginning of a verse, they drop it in counting, since the law of the *guru* demands that in it the vowelless consonant shall not *precede* but *follow* the vowel (*ka-t*, *ki-t*, *ku-t*).

Page 67.

Definition of *mâtrâ*.

Further, as our people have composed out of the *feet* (افاعيل) certain schemes or types, according to which verses are constructed, and have invented signs to denote the component parts of a foot, *i.e.* the consonant *with* and *without* a vowel, in like manner also the Hindus use certain names to denote the feet which are composed of *laghu* and *guru*, either the former preceding and the latter following or *vice versâ*, in such a way, however, that the *measure* must always be the same, whilst the *number* of syllables may vary. By these names they denote a certain conventional prosodic unity (*i.e.* certain *feet*). By *measure*, I mean that *laghu* is reckoned=one *mâtrâ*, *i.e.* measure, and *guru*=two *mâtrâ*. If they represent a foot in writing, they only express the *measure* of the syllables, not their number, as, *e.g.* (in Arabic) a double consonant (*kka*) is counted as a consonant *without* vowel *plus* a consonant *with* vowel, and a consonant followed by Tanwín (*kun*) is counted as a consonant with a vowel *plus* a consonant without vowel, whilst in writing both are represented as one and the same thing (*i.e.* by the sign of the consonant in question).

Names of *laghu* and *guru*.

Taken alone by themselves, *laghu* and *guru* are called by various names: the former, *la*, *kali*, *rûpa*, *câmara*, and *graha*; the latter, *ga*, *nîvra*, and a *half aṁśaka*. The latter name shows that a complete *aṁśaka* is equal to two *guru* or their equivalent. These names they have invented simply to facilitate the versification of their metrical books. For this purpose they have invented so many names, that one may fit into the metre if others will not.

The single *feet*.

The feet arising out of combinations of *laghu* and *guru* are the following:—

Twofold both in number and measure is the foot | |, *i.e.* two syllables and two *mâtrâ*.

Twofold in number, not in measure, are the feet, | < and < |; in measure they are = three *mâtrâ* | | | (but, in number, only two syllables).

The second foot < | (a trochee) is called *kṛittikâ*.

The quaternary feet are in each book called by different names:

< < *paksha*, *i.e.* the half month.
| | < *jvalana*, *i.e.* the fire.
| < | *madhya* (? *madhu*).
< | | *parvata*, *i.e.* the mountain, also called *hâra* and *rasa*.
| | | | *ghana*, *i.e.* the cube.

The feet consisting of five *mâtrâ* have manifold forms; those of them which have special names are the following:—

| < < *hastin*, *i.e.* the elephant.
< | < *kâma*, *i.e.* the wish.
< < | (? lacuna).
| | | < *kusuma*.

A foot consisting of six *mâtrâ* is < < <.

Some people call these feet by the names of the chess figures, viz.:

jvalana = the elephant.
madhya = the tower.
parvata = the pawn.
ghana = the horse.

On the arrangement of the feet. Quotation from Haribhaṭṭa.

In a lexicographical work to which the author هروّد (? Haribhaṭṭa) has given his own name, the feet composed of three *laghu* or *guru* are called by single consonants, which in the following diagram are written on their left:—

Diagram.

m	< < <	sixfold (*i.e.* containing six *mâtrâ*).
y	| < <	*hastin.*
r	< | <	*kâma.*
t	< < |	(? lacuna).
s	| | <	*jvalana.*
j	| < |	*madhya.*
bh	< | |	*parvata.*
n	| | |	threefold (*i.e.* containing three *mâtrâ*).

By means of these signs the author teaches how to construct these eight feet by an inductive method (a kind of algebraic permutation), saying:

"Place one of the two kinds (*guru* and *laghu*) in the first line unmixed (that would be < < <, if we begin with a *guru*). Then mix it with the second kind, and place one of this at the beginning of the second line, whilst the two other elements are of the first kind (|< <). Then place this element of admixture in the middle of the third line (<|<), and lastly at the end of the fourth line (< <|). Then you have finished the first half.

Page 68.

"Further, place the second kind in the lowest line, unmixed (| | |), and mix up with the line above it one of the first kind, placing it at the beginning of the line (< | |), then in the middle of the next following line (| < |), and lastly at the end of the next following line (| | <). Then the second half is finished, and all the possible combinations of three *mâtra* have been exhausted."

1. < < <	First half.	5. | | <	Second half.
2. | < <		6. | < |	
3. < | <		7. < | |	
4. < < |		8. | | |	

This system of composition or permutation is correct, but his calculation showing how to find that place which every single foot occupies in this series of permutations is not in accordance with it. For he says:

"Place the numeral 2 to denote each element of a foot (*i.e.* both *guru* and *laghu*), once for all, so that every foot is represented by 2, 2, 2. Multiply the left (number) by the middle, and the product by the right one. If this *multiplier* (*i.e.* this number of the right side) is a *laghu*, then leave the product as it is; but if it is a *guru*, subtract *one* from the product."

The author exemplifies this with the sixth foot, *i.e.* | < |. He multiplies 2 by 2, and from the product (4) he subtracts 1. The remaining 3 he multiplies by the third 2, and he gets the product of 6.

This, however, is not correct for most of the feet, and I am rather inclined to believe that the text of the manuscript is corrupt.

The proper order of the feet would accordingly be the following:

	I.	II.	III.		I.	II.	III.
1.	<	<	<	5.	<	<	|
2.	|	<	<	6.	|	<	|
3.	<	|	<	7.	<	|	|
4.	|	|	<	8.	|	|	|

The *mixture* of the first line (No. I.) is such that one kind always follows the other. In the *second* line (No. II.) two of one kind are followed by two of the other; and in the third line (No. III.) four of one kind are followed by four of the other.

Then the author of the above-mentioned calculation goes on to say: "If the first element of the foot is a *guru*, subtract *one* before you multiply. If the multiplier is a *guru*, subtract one from the product. Thus you find the place which a foot occupies in this order."

On the *pádas.* As the Arabic verse is divided into two halves or hemistichs by the *árûḍ*, *i.e.* the last foot of the first hemistich, and the *ḍarb, i.e.* the last foot of the second hemistich, in like manner the verses of the Hindus are divided into two halves, each of which is called *foot* (*pâda*). The Greeks, too, call them *feet* (*lacuna*),—those words which are composed of it, συλλάβη, and the consonants *with* or *without* vowels, with long, short, or doubtful vowels.

On the metre Âryâ.

The verse is divided into three, or more commonly into four *pâda*. Sometimes they add a fifth *pâda* in the middle of the verse. The *pâdas* have no rhyme, but there is a kind of metre, in which the 1 and 2 *pâdas* end with the same consonant or syllable as if rhyming on it, and also the *pâdas* 3 and 4 end with the same consonant or syllable. This kind is called *Âryâ*. At the end of the *pâda* a *laghu* may become a *guru*, though in general this metre ends with a *laghu*.

Page 69.

The different poetical works of the Hindus contain a great number of metres. In the metre of 5 *pâda*, the fifth *pâda* is placed between *pâdas* 3 and 4. The names of the metres differ according to the number of syllables, and also according to the verses which follow. For they do not like all the verses of a long poem to belong to one and the same metre. They use many metres in the same poem, in order that it should appear like an embroidered piece of silk.

The construction of the four *pâdas* in the four-*pâda* metre is the following:—

PÂDA I.	< <	paksha = 1 aṁśaka.	< <	paksha.	PÂDA III.
	< | |	parvata.	< | |	parvata.	
	| | <	jvalana.	< <	paksha.	
PÂDA II.	< <	paksha.	< <	paksha.	PÂDA IV.
	| | <	jvalana.	| | <	jvalana.	
	| < |	madhya.	| < |	madhya.	
	< | |	parvata.	< | |	parvata.	
	< <	paksha.	| | <	jvalana.	

This is a representation of a species of their metres, called *Skandha*, containing four *pâda*. It consists of two halves, and each half has eight *aṁśaka*.

Of the single *aṁśaka*, the 1st, 3d, and 5th can never be a *madhya*, *i.e.* <|, and the 6th must always be either a *madhya* or a *ghana*. If this condition is adhered to, the other *aṁśakas* may be anything at all, just as accident or the fancy of the poet wills it. However, the metre must always be complete, neither more nor less. Therefore, observing the rules as to the formation of certain *aṁśakas* in the single *pâdas*, we may represent the four *pâdas* in the following manner:—

Pâda I. < < < | | | | <.
Pâda II. < < | | < | < | < | | < <.
Pâda III. < < < | < <.
Page 70. Pâda IV. < < |< < | < | < | | | | <.

According to this pattern the verse is composed.

Arab and Hindu notation of a metre.

If you represent an Arabic metre by these signs of the Hindus, you will find that they mean something entirely different from what the Arabic signs mean which denote a consonant *with* a short vowel and a consonant *without* a vowel. (The Arabic sign | means a consonant without a vowel; the Hindu sign | means a short syllable; the Arabic sign o means a consonant followed by a short vowel; the Hindu sign < means a long syllable.) As an example, we give a representation of the regular complete *Khafîf* metre, representing each foot by derivations of the root فعل.

Metrum Khafîf.

(1.) فَاعِلَاتُنْ مُسْتَفْعِلُنْ فَاعِلَاتُنْ,
represented by derivations of the root فعل.

(2.) |0|00|0 |00|0|0 |0|00|0,
represented by Arabic signs.

(3.) < < | < < | < < < < | <,
represented by the signs of the Hindus.

We give the latter signs in an inverted order, since the Hindus read from the left to the right.

I have already once pleaded as my excuse, and do so here a second time, that my slender knowledge of this science does not enable me to give the reader a complete insight into the subject. Still I take the greatest pains with it, though I am well aware that it is only very little I can give.

On the metre *Vṛitta*.

The name *Vṛitta* applies to each four-*pâda* metre in which the signs of both the prosody and the number of the syllables are like each other, according to a certain correspondence of the *pâdas* among themselves, so that if you know one *pâda*, you know also the other ones, for they are like it. Further, there is a law that a *pâda* cannot have less than four syllables, since a *pâda* with less does not occur in the Veda. For the same reason the smallest number of the syllables of a *pâda* is four, the largest twenty-six. In consequence, there are twenty-three varieties of the *Vṛitta* metre, which we shall here enumerate:—

1. The *pâda* has four *heavy* syllables (*guru*), and here you cannot put two *laghu* in the place of one *guru*.
2. The nature of the second kind of the *pâda* is not clear to me, so I omit it.
3. This *pâda* is built of
   ghana + *paksha*.
   | | | | < <
4. = 2 *guru* + 2 *laghu* + 3 *guru*.
   < < | | < < <
   It would be better to describe this *pâda* as = *paksha* + *jvalana* + *paksha*.
5. = 2 *kṛittikâ* + *jvalana* + *paksha*.
   < | < | | | <   < <

Page 71.

6. = *ghana* + *madhya* + *paksha*.
   | | | | | < | < <
7. = *ghana* + *parvata* + *jvalana*.
   | | | | < | | | | <

8. = *kâma*, *kusuma*, *jvalana*, *guru*.
<|< |||< ||< <

9. = *paksha*, *hastin*, *jvalana*, *madhya*, 2 *guru*.
<< |<< ||< |<| <<

10. = *paksha*, *parvata*, *jvalana*, *madhya*, *paksha*.
<< <|| ||< |<| <<

11. = *paksha*, *madhya*, 2 *jvalana*, *hastin*.
<< |<| ||< ||< |<<

12. = *ghana*, *jvalana*, *paksha*, 2 *hastin*.
|||| ||< << |<< |<<

13. = *parvata*, *kâma*, *kusuma*, *madhya*, *jvalana*
<|| <|< |||< |<| ||<

14. = *hastin*, *paksha*, *parvata*, *kusuma*, *parvata*, *laghu*, *guru*.
|<< << <|| |||< <|| | <

15. = 2 *paksha*, *parvata*, *kusuma*, 2 *kâma*, *guru*.
<<<< <|| |||< <|< <|< <

16. = *paksha*, *parvata*, *kâma*, *kusuma*, *paksha*, *laghu*, *guru*.
<< <|| <|< |||< << | <

17. = 2 *paksha*, *parvata*, *ghana*, *jvalana*, *paksha*, *kusuma*.
<< << <|| |||| ||< << |||<

18. = 2 *paksha*, *parvata*, *ghana*, *jvalana*, 2 *kâma*, *guru*.
<< << <|| |||| ||< <|< <|< <

19. = *guru*, 2 *paksha*, *parvata*, *ghana*, *jvalana*, 2 *kâma*, *guru*.
< << << <|| |||| ||< <|< <|< <

20. = 4 *paksha*, *jvalana*, *madhya*, *paksha*, 2 *madhya*, *guru*.
<<<<<<<< ||< |<| << |<| |<| <

21. = 4 *paksha*, 3 *jvalana*, 2 *madhya*, *guru*.
<<<<<<<< ||< ||v ||< |<| |<| <

22. = 4 *paksha*, *kusuma*, *madhya*, *jvalana*, 2 *madhya*, *guru*.
<<<<<<<< |||< |<| ||< |<| |<| <

23. = 8 *guru*, 10 *laghu*, *kâma*, *jvalana*, *laghu*, *guru*.
<<<<<<<< |||||||||| <|< ||< | <

We have given such a lengthy account, though it be only of scanty use, in order that the reader may see for himself the example of an accumulation of *laghus*, which shows that *laghu* means *a consonant followed by a short vowel*, not a consonant without a vowel. Further, he will thereby learn the way in which they represent a metre and the method of their scanning a verse. Lastly, he will learn that Alkhalîl Ibn Aḥmad exclusively drew from his own genius when he invented the Arabic metrics, though, possibly, he may have heard, as some people think, that the Hindus use certain metres in their poetry. If we here take so much trouble with Indian metrics, we do it for the purpose of fixing the laws of the Śloka, since most of their books are composed in it.

Theory of the Śloka.

The *Śloka* belongs to the four-*pâda* metres. Each *pâda* has eight syllables, which are different in all four *pâdas*. The last syllable of each of the four *pâdas* must be the same, viz. a *guru*. Further, the fifth syllable in each *pâda* must always be *laghu*, the sixth syllable *guru*. The seventh syllable must be *laghu* in the second and fourth *pâda*, *guru* in the first and third *pâdas*. The other syllables are entirely dependent upon accident or the writer's fancy.

Quotation from Brahmagupta.

In order to show in what way the Hindus use arithmetic in their metrical system, we give in the following a quotation from Brahmagupta: "The first kind of poetry is *gâyatrî*, a metre consisting of two *pâdas*. If we now suppose that the number of the syllables of this metre may be 24, and that the smallest number of the syllables of one *pâda* is 4, we describe the two *pâdas* by 4 + 4, representing their smallest possible number of syllables. As, however, their largest possible number is 24, we add the difference between these 4 + 4 and 24, *i.e.* 16, to the right-side number, and get 4 + 20. If the metre had three *pâdas*, it would be represented by 4 + 4 + 16. The right-side *pâda* is always distinguished from the others and called by a separate name; but the preceding *pâdas* also are connected, so as to form one whole, and likewise called by a separate name. If the metre had four *pâdas*, it would be represented by 4 + 4 + 4 + 12.

"If however, the poet does not use the *pâdas* of 4, *i.e.* the smallest possible number of syllables, and if we want to know the number of combinations of the 24 syllables which may occur in a two-*pâda* metre, we write 4 to the left and 20 to the right; we add 1 to 4, again 1 to the sum, &c.; we subtract 1 from 20, again 1 from the remainder, &c.; and this we continue until we get both the same numbers with which we commenced, the small number in the line which commenced with the greater number, and the greater number in the line which commenced with the small number. See the following scheme:—

4	20
5	19
6	18
7	17
8	16
9	15
10	14
11	13
12	12
13	11
14	10
15	9
16	8
17	7
18	6
19	5
20	4

The number of these combinations is 17, *i.e.* the difference between 4 and 20 *plus* 1.

"As regards the three-*pâda* metre with the presupposed number of syllables, *i.e.* 24, its first species is that in which all three *pâdas* have the smallest possible number of syllables, *i.e.* 4 + 4 + 16.

"The right-side number and the middle number we write down as we have done with the *pâdas* of the two-*pâda* metre, and we make with them the same calculation as we have done above. Besides, we add the left-side number in a separate column, but do not make it undergo any changes. See the following scheme:—

4	4	16
4	5	15
4	6	14
4	7	13
4	8	12
4	9	11
4	10	10
4	11	9
4	12	8
4	13	7
4	14	6
4	15	5
4	16	4

"This gives the number of 13 permutations, but by changing the places of the numbers forwards and backwards in the following method, the number may be increased sixfold, *i.e.* to 78:—

"I. The right-side number keeps its place; the two other numbers exchange their places, so that the middle number stands at the left side; the left-side number occupies the middle:—

I.

4	4	16
5	4	15
6	4	14
7	4	13 &c.

"II.–III. The right-side number is placed in the middle between the other two numbers, which first keep their original places, and then exchange them with each other:—

II.

4	16	4
4	15	5
4	14	6
4	13	7 &c.

III.

4	16	4
5	15	4
6	14	4
7	13	4 &c.

"IV.–V. The right-side number is placed to the left, and the other two numbers first keep their original places, and then exchange them with each other:—

IV.

16	4	4
15	4	5
14	4	6
13	4	7 &c.

V.

16	4	4
15	5	4
14	6	4
13	7	4 &c.

"Because, further, the numbers of the syllables of a *pâda* rise like the square of 2, for after 4 follows 8, we may represent the syllables of the three *pâdas* in this way: 8+8+8 (=4+4+16). However, their arithmetical peculiarities follow another rule. The four-*pâda* metre follows the analogy of the three-*pâda* metre."

Of the above-mentioned treatise of Brahmagupta I have only seen a single leaf: it contains, no doubt, important elements of arithmetic. God affords help and sustains by his mercy, *i.e.* I hope one day to learn those things. As far as I can guess with regard to the literature of the Greeks, they used in their poetry similar *feet* to the Hindus; for Galenus says in his book κατὰ γένη: "The medicine prepared with saliva discovered by Menecrates has been described by Damocrates in a poem composed in a metre consisting of three parts." Page 73.

CHAPTER XIV.

HINDU LITERATURE IN THE OTHER SCIENCES, ASTRONOMY, ASTROLOGY, ETC.

Times unfavourable to the progress of science.

THE number of sciences is great, and it may be still greater if the public mind is directed towards them at such times as they are in the ascendancy and in general favour with all, when people not only honour science itself, but also its representatives. To do this is, in the first instance, the duty of those who rule over them, of kings and princes. For they alone could free the minds of scholars from the daily anxieties for the necessities of life, and stimulate their energies to earn more fame and favour, the yearning for which is the pith and marrow of human nature.

The present times, however, are not of this kind. They are the very opposite, and therefore it is quite impossible that a new science or any new kind of research should arise in our days. What we have of sciences is nothing but the scanty remains of bygone better times.

If a science or an idea has once conquered the whole earth, every nation appropriates part of it. So do also the Hindus. Their belief about the cyclical revolutions of times is nothing very special, but is simply in accordance with the results of scientific observation.

On the Siddhântas.

The science of astronomy is the most famous among them, since the affairs of their religion are in various ways connected with it. If a man wants to gain the title of an astronomer, he must not only know scientific or mathematical astronomy, but also astrology. The book known among Muslims as *Sindhind* is called by them *Siddhânta*, i.e. *straight*, not crooked nor changing. By this name they call every standard book on astronomy, even such books as, according to our opinion, do not come up to the mark of our so-called *Zîj*, *i.e.* handbooks of mathematical astronomy. They have five Siddhântas:—

I. *Sûrya-siddhânta*, *i.e.* the Siddhânta of the sun, composed by Lâṭa.

II. *Vasishṭha-siddhânta*, so called from one of the stars of the Great Bear, composed by Vishṇucandra.

III. *Pulisa-siddhânta*, so called from Paulisa, the Greek, from the city of Saintra, which I suppose to be Alexandria, composed by Pulisa.

IV. *Romaka-siddhânta*, so called from the Rûm, *i.e.* the subjects of the Roman Empire, composed by Śrîsheṇa.

V. *Brahma-siddhânta*, so called from Brahman, composed by Brahmagupta, the son of Jishṇu, from the town of Bhillamâla between Multân and Anhilwâra, 16 *yojana* from the latter place (?).

The authors of these books draw from one and the same source, the Book *Paithâmaha*, so called from *the first father*, *i.e.* Brahman.

Varâhamihira has composed an astronomical handbook of small compass called *Pañca-siddhântikâ*, which name ought to mean that it contains the pith and marrow of the preceding five Siddhântas. But this is not the case, nor is it so much better than they as to be called the most correct one of the five. So the name does not indicate anything but the fact that the number of Siddhântas is five.

Brahmagupta says: "Many of the Siddhântas are Sûrya, others Indu, Pulisa, Romaka, Vasishṭha, and Yavana, *i.e.* the Greeks; and though the Siddhântas are many, they differ only in words, not in the subject-matter. He who studies them properly will find that they agree with each other."

Up to the present time I have not been able to procure any of these books save those of Pulisa and of Brahmagupta. I have commenced translating them, but have not yet finished my work. Meanwhile I shall give here a table of contents of the *Brahma-siddhânta*, which in any case will be useful and instructive. Page 74.

Contents of the *Brahma-siddhânta*.

Contents of the twenty-four chapters of the *Brahma-siddhânta*—

1. On the nature of the globe and the figure of heaven and earth.

2. On the revolutions of the planets; on the calculation of time, *i.e.* how to find the time for different longitudes and latitudes; how to find the mean places of the planets; how to find the sine of an arc.

3. On the correction of the places of the planets.

4. On three problems: how to find the shadow, the bygone portion of the day and the *ascendens*, and how to derive one from the other.

5. On the planets becoming visible when they leave the rays of the sun, and their becoming invisible when entering them.

6. On the first appearance of the moon, and about her two cusps.

7. On the lunar eclipse.

8. On the solar eclipse.

9. On the shadow of the moon.

10. On the meeting and conjunction of the planets.

11. On the latitudes of the planets.

12. A critical investigation for the purpose of distinguishing between correct and corrupt passages in the texts of astronomical treatises and handbooks.

13. On arithmetic; on plane measure and cognate subjects.

14. Scientific calculation of the mean places of the planets.

15. Scientific calculation of the correction of the places of the planets.

16. Scientific calculation of the three problems (v. chap. 4).

17. On the deflection of eclipses.

18. Scientific calculation of the appearance of the new moon and her two cusps.

19. On *Kuṭṭaka*, *i.e.* the pounding of a thing. The pounding of oil-producing substances is here compared with *the most minute and detailed research.* This chapter treats of algebra and related subjects, and besides it contains other valuable remarks of a more or less arithmetical nature.

20. On the shadow.

21. On the calculation of the measures of poetry and on metrics.

22. On cycles and instruments of observation.

23. On time and the four measures of time, the *solar*, the *civil*, the *lunar*, and the *sidereal.*

24. About numeral notation in the metrical books of this kind.

These, now, are twenty-four chapters, according to his own statement, but there is a twenty-fifth one, called *Dhyâna-graha-adhyâya*, in which he tries to solve the problems by speculation, not by mathematical calculation. I have not enumerated it in this list, because the pretensions which he brings forward in this chapter are repudiated by mathematics. I am rather inclined to think that that which he produces is meant to be the *ratio metaphysica* of all astronomical methods, otherwise how could any problem of this science be solved by anything save by mathematics?

On the literature of Tantras and Karaṇas.

Such books as do not reach the standard of a Siddhânta are mostly called *Tantra* or *Karaṇa.* The former means *ruling under a governor*, the latter means *following*, *i.e.* following behind the Siddhânta. Under *governors* they understand the *Âcâryas*, *i.e.* the sages, anchorites, the followers of Brahman.

There are two famous *Tantras* by *Âryabhaṭa* and *Balabhadra*, besides the *Rasâyana-tantra* by *Bhânuyaśas* (?). About what Rasâyana means we shall give a separate chapter (chap. xvii.).

As for *Karaṇas*, there is one (*lacuna*) called by his name, besides the *Karaṇa-khaṇḍa-khâdyaka* by Brahmagupta. The last word, *khaṇḍa*, means a kind of their sweetmeats. With regard to the reason why he gave his book this title, I have been told the following:—

Sugrîva, the Buddhist, had composed an astronomical handbook which he called *Dadhi-sâgara*, *i.e.* the sea of sour-milk; and a pupil of his composed a book of the same kind which he called *Kûra-babayâ* (?), *i.e.* a mountain of rice. Afterwards he composed another book which he called *Lavaṇa-mushṭi*, *i.e.* a handful of salt. Therefore Brahmagupta called his book the *Sweetmeat—khâdyaka*—in order that all kinds of victuals (sour-milk, rice, salt, &c.) should occur in the titles of the books on this science.

The contents of the book *Karaṇa-khaṇḍa-khâdyaka* represent the doctrine of Âryabhaṭa. Therefore Brahmagupta afterwards composed a second book, which he called *Uttara-khaṇḍa-khâdyaka*, *i.e.* the explanation of the *Khaṇḍa-khâdyaka*. And this book is again followed by another one called *Khaṇḍa-khâdyaka-tippâ* (*sic*), of which I do not know whether it is composed by Brahmagupta or somebody else. It explains the reasons and the nature of the calculations employed in the *Khaṇḍa-khâdyaka*. I suppose it is a work of Balabhadra's. Page 75.

Further, there is an astronomical handbook composed by Vijayanandin, the commentator, in the city of Benares, entitled *Karaṇa-tilaka*, *i.e.* the blaze on the front of the Karaṇas; another one by Vitteśvara the son of Bhadatta (? Mihdatta), of the city of Nâgarapura, called *Karaṇa-sâra*, *i.e.* that which has been derived from the Karaṇa; another one, by Bhâṇuyaśas (?), is called *Karaṇa-para-tilaka*, which shows, as I am told, how the corrected places of the stars are derived from one another.

There is a book by Utpala the Kashmirian called *Râhunrâkaraṇa* (?), *i.e.* breaking the Karaṇas; and another called *Karaṇa-pâta*, *i.e.* killing the Karaṇas. Besides there is a book called *Karaṇa-cûḍâmaṇi* of which I do not know the author.

There are more books of the same kind with other titles, *e.g.* the great *Mânasa*, composed by Manu, and the commentary by Utpala; the small *Mânasa*, an epitome of the former by Puñcala (?), from the southern country; *Daśagîtikâ*, by Âryabhaṭa; *Âryâshṭaśata*, by the same; *Lokânanda*, so called from the name of the author; *Bhaṭṭilâ* (?), so called from its author, the Brahman Bhaṭṭila. The books of this kind are nearly innumerable.

On astrological literature, the so-called Saṁhitâs.

As for astrological literature, each one of the following authors has composed a so-called *Saṃhitâ*, viz.:—

Mâṇḍavya.
Parâśara.
Garga.
Brahman.
Balabhadra.
Divyatattva.
Varâhamihira.

Saṃhitâ means *that which is collected*, books containing something of everything, *e.g.* forewarnings relating to a journey derived from meteorological occurrences; prophecies regarding the fate of dynasties; the knowledge of lucky and unlucky things; prophesying from the lines of the hand; interpretation of dreams, and taking auguries from the flight or cries of birds. For Hindu scholars believe in such things. It is the custom of their astronomers to propound in their Saṁhitâs also the whole science of meteorology and cosmology.

The Jâtakas, i.e. books on nativities

Each one of the following authors has composed a book, *Jâtaka*, *i.e.* book of nativities, viz.:—

Parâśara.
Satya.
Maṇittha.
Jîvaśarman.
Mau, the Greek.

Varâhamihira has composed two Jâtakas, a small and a large one. The latter of these has been explained by Balabhadra, and the former I have translated into Arabic. Further, the Hindus have a large book on the science of the astrology of nativities called *Sârâvalî*, *i.e.* the chosen one, similar to the *Vazîdaj* (= Persian *guzîda* ?), composed by Kalyâṇa-Varman, who gained high credit for his scientific works. But there is another book still larger than this, which comprehends the whole of astrological sciences, called *Yavana*, *i.e.* belonging to the Greeks.

Of Varâhamihira there are several small books, *e.g.* *Shaṭ-pañcâśikâ*, fifty-six chapters on astrology; *Horâ-pañca-hotṛiya* (?), on the same subject.

Travelling is treated of in the book *Yogayâtrâ* and the book *Tikanî(?)-yâtrâ*, marriage and marrying in the book *Vivâha-paṭala*, architecture in the book (*lacuna*).

The art of taking auguries from the flight or cries of birds, and of the foretelling by means of piercing a needle into a book, is propounded in the work called *Srudhava* (? śrotavya), which exists in three different copies. Mahâdeva is said to be the author of the first, Vimalabuddhi the author of the second, and Baṅgâla the author of the third. Similar subjects are treated in the book *Gûḍhâmana* (?), *i.e.* the knowledge of the unknown, composed by Buddha, the originator of the sect of the red robe-wearers, the Shamanians; and in the book *Praśna Gûḍhâmana* (?), *i.e.* questions of the science of the unknown, composed by Utpala.

Besides, there are Hindu scholars of whom we know the names, but not the title of any book of theirs, viz. :— Page 76.

Pradyumna.
Saṅgahila (Śṛiṅkhala ?).
Divâkara.
Parêśvara.
Sârasvata.
Pîruvâna (?).
Devakîrtti.
Prithûdaka-svâmin.

Medical literature. Medicine belongs to the same class of sciences as astronomy, but there is this difference, that the latter stands in close relation to the religion of the Hindus. They have a book called by the name of its author, *i.e. Caraka*, which they consider as the best of their whole literature on medicine. According to their belief, Caraka was a Ṛishi in the last Dvâpara-yuga, when his name was *Agniveśa*, but afterwards he was called *Caraka*, *i.e.* the intelligent one, after the first elements of medicine had been laid down by certain Ṛishis, the children of *Sûtra*. These latter had received them from Indra, Indra from Aśvin, one of the two physicians of the Devas, and Aśvin had received them from Prajâpati, *i.e.* Brahman, *the first father*. This book has been translated into Arabic for the princes of the house of the Barmecides.

On Pañcatantra.

The Hindus cultivate numerous other branches of science and literature, and have a nearly boundless literature. I, however, could not comprehend it with my knowledge. I wish I could translate the book *Pañcatantra*, known among us as the book of Kalîla and Dimna. It is far spread in various languages, in Persian, Hindî, and Arabic—in translations of people who are not free from the suspicion of having altered the text. For instance, 'Abdallâh Ibn Almuḳaffa' has added in his Arabic version the chapter about Barzôya, with the intention of raising doubts in the minds of people of feeble religious belief, and to gain and prepare them for the propagation of the doctrines of the Manichæans. And if he is open to suspicion in so far as he has added something to the text which he had simply to translate, he is hardly free from suspicion in his capacity as translator.

CHAPTER XV.

NOTES ON HINDU METROLOGY, INTENDED TO FACILITATE THE UNDERSTANDING OF ALL KINDS OF MEASUREMENTS WHICH OCCUR IN THIS BOOK.

The Hindu system of weights.

COUNTING is innate to man. The measure of a thing becomes known by its being compared with another thing which belongs to the same species and is assumed as a unit by general consent. Thereby the difference between the object and this standard becomes known.

By weighing, people determine the amount of gravity of heavy bodies, when the tongue of the scales stands at right angles on the horizontal plane. Hindus want the scales very little, because their *dirhams* are determined by number, not by weight, and their fractions, too, are simply counted as so-and-so many *fulûs*. The coinage of both *dirhams* and *fulûs* is different according to towns and districts. They weigh gold with the scales only when it is in its natural state or such as has been worked, *e.g.* for ornaments, but not coined. They use as a weight of gold the *suvarṇa* = $1\frac{1}{3}$ *tola*. They use the *tola* as frequently as we use the *mithḳâl*. According to what I have been able to learn from them, it corresponds to three of our *dirhams*, of which 10 equal 7 *mithḳâl*.

Therefore 1 *tola* = $2\frac{1}{10}$ of our *mithḳâl*.

The greatest fraction of a *tola* is $\frac{1}{12}$, called *mâsha*. Therefore 16 *mâsha* = 1 *suvarṇa*.

Further,

1 *mâsha* = 4 *anḍî* (*eraṇḍa*), *i.e.* the seed of a tree called *Gaura*.
1 *anḍî* = 4 *yava*.
1 *yava* = 6 *kalâ*.
1 *kalâ* = 4 *pâda*.
1 *pâda* = 4 *mdrî* (?).

Arranged differently we have—

1 *suvarṇa* = 16 *mâsha* = 64 *anḍî* = 256 *yava* = 1600 *kalâ* = 6400 *pâda* = 25,600 *mdrî* (?).

Six *mâshas* are called 1 *draṅkshaṇa*. If you ask them about this weight, they will tell you that 2 *draṅkshaṇa* = 1 *mithḳâl*. But this is a mistake; for 1 *mithḳâl* = $5\frac{5}{7}$ *mâsha*. The relation between a *draṅkshaṇa* and a *mithḳâl* is as 20 to 21, and therefore 1 *draṅkshaṇa* = $1\frac{1}{20}$ *mithḳâl*. If, therefore, a man gives the answer which we have just mentioned, he seems to have in mind the notion of a *mithḳâl* as a weight which does not much differ from a *draṅkshaṇa*; but by doubling the amount, saying 2 *draṅkshaṇas* instead of 1, he entirely spoils the comparison.

Since the unit of measure is not a natural unit, but a conventional one assumed by general consent, it admits of both practical and imaginary division. Its subdivisions or fractions are different in different places at one and the same time, and at different periods in one and the same country. Their names, too, are different according to places and times; changes which are produced either by the organic development of languages or by accident. **Page 77.**

A man from the neighbourhood of Somanâth told me that their *mithḳâl* is equal to ours; that

1 *mithḳâl* = 8 *ruvu*.
1 *ruvu* = 2 *pâli*.
1 *pâli* = 16 *yava*, *i.e.* barley-corn.

Accordingly 1 *mithḳâl* = 8 *ruvu* = 16 *pâli* = 256 *yava*.

This comparison shows that the man was mistaken in comparing the two *mithkâls;* that what he called *mithkâls* is in reality the *tola*, and that he calls the *mâsha* by a different name, viz. *ruvu.*

Varâhamihira on weights.

If the Hindus wish to be particularly painstaking in these things, they give the following scale, based on the measurements which Varâhamihira prescribes for the construction of idols:—

1 *reṇu* or particle of dust = 1 *raja.*
8 *raja* = 1 *bâlâgra, i.e.* the end of a hair.
8 *bâlâgra* = 1 *likhyâ, i.e.* the egg of a louse.
8 *likhyâ* = 1 *yûkâ, i.e.* a louse.
8 *yûkâ* = 1 *yava, i.e.* a barley-corn.

Hence, Varâhamihira goes on to enumerate the measures for distances. His measures of weight are the same as those which we have already mentioned. He says:

4 *yava* = 1 *anḍî.*
4 *anḍî* = 1 *mâsha.*
16 *mâsha* = 1 *suvarṇa, i.e.* gold.
4 *suvarṇa* = 1 *pala.*

The measures of dry substances are the following:—

4 *pala* = 1 *kuḍava.*
4 *kuḍava* = 1 *prastha.*
4 *prastha* = 1 *âḍhaka.*

The measures of liquid substances are the following:—

8 *pala* = 1 *kuḍava.*
8 *kuḍava* = 1 *prastha.*
4 *prastha* = 1 *aḍhaka.*
4 *âḍhaka* = 1 *droṇa.*

Weights according to the book *Caraka.*

The following weights occur in the book *Caraka.* I give them here according to the Arabic translation, as I have not received them from the Hindus *vivâ voce.* The Arabic copy seems to be corrupt, like all other books of this kind which I know. Such corruption must of necessity occur in our Arabic writing, more particularly at a period like ours, when people care so little about the correctness of what they copy. "Âtreya says :

6 particles of dust = 1 *marîci*.
6 *marîci* = 1 mustard-seed (*râjikâ*).
8 mustard-seeds = 1 red rice-corn.
2 red rice-corns = 1 pea.
2 peas = 1 *anḍî*.

And 1 *anḍî* is equal to $\frac{1}{8}$ *dânak*, according to the scale by which 7 *dânak* are equal to one *dirham*. Further:

4 *anḍî* = 1 *mâsha*.
8 *mâsha* = 1 *caṇa* (?).
2 *caṇa* = 1 *karsha* or *suvarṇa* of the weight of 2 *dirhams*.
4 *suvarṇa* = 1 *pala*.
4 *pala* = 1 *kuḍava*.
4 *kuḍava* = 1 *prastha*.
4 *prastha* = 1 *âḍhaka*.
4 *âḍhaka* = 1 *droṇa*.
2 *droṇa* = 1 *śûrpa*.
2 *śûrpa* = 1 *janâ* (?)."

The weight *pala* is much used in all the business dealings of the Hindus, but it is different for different wares and in different provinces. According to some, 1 *pala* = $\frac{1}{15}$ *manâ*; according to others, 1 *pala* = 14 *mithḳâl*; but the *manâ* is not equal to 210 *mithḳâl*. According to others, 1 *pala* = 16 *mithḳâl*, but the *manâ* is not equal to 240 *mithḳâl*. According to others, 1 *pala* = 15 *dirham*, but the *manâ* is not equal to 225 *dirham*. In reality, however, the relation between the *pala* and the *manâ* is different.

Further, Âtreya says: "1 *âḍhaka* = 64 *pala* = 128 *dirham* = 1 *raṭl*. But if the *anḍî* is equal to $\frac{1}{8}$ *dânak*, one *suvarṇa* contains 64 *anḍî*, and then a *dirham* has 32 *anḍî*, which, as each *anḍî* is equal to $\frac{1}{8}$ *dânak*, are equal to 4 *dânak*. The double amount of it is 1$\frac{1}{3}$ *dirham*" (*sic*). Page 78.

Such are the results when people, instead of translating, indulge in wild conjecture and mingle together different theories in an uncritical manner.

As regards the first theory, resting on the assumption of one *suvarṇa* being equal to three of our *dirhams*, people in general agree in this—that

1 *suvarṇa* = $\frac{1}{4}$ *pala*.
1 *pala* = 12 *dirham*.
1 *pala* = $\frac{1}{15}$ *manâ*.
1 *manâ* = 180 *dirham*.

This leads me to think that 1 *suvarṇa* is equal to 3 of our *mithḳâl*, not to 3 of our *dirham*.

Various authors on weights.

Varâhamihira says in another place of his Saṁhitâ: "Make a round vase of the diameter and height of one yard, and then expose it to the rain until it ceases. All the water that has been collected in it of the weight of 200 *dirham* is, if taken fourfold, equal to 1 *âḍhaka*."

This, however, is only an approximate statement, because, as we have above mentioned in his own words, 1 *âḍhaka* is equal to 768 either *dirham*, as *they* say, or *mithḳâl*, as *I* suppose.

Śrîpâla relates, on the authority of Varâhamihira, that 50 *pala* = 256 *dirham* = 1 *âḍhaka*. But he is mistaken, for here the number 256 does not mean *dirhams*, but the number of the *suvarṇa* contained in one *âḍhaka*. And the number of *pala* contained in 1 *âḍhaka* is 64, not 50.

As I have been told, Jîvaśarman gives the following detailed account of these weights:

4 *pala* = 1 *kuḍava*.
4 *kuḍava* = 1 *prastha*.
4 *prastha* = 1 *âḍhaka*.
4 *âḍhaka* = 1 *droṇa*.
20 *droṇa* = 1 *khârî*.

The reader must know that 16 *mâsha* are 1 *suvarṇa*, but in weighing wheat or barley they reckon 4 *suvarṇa* = 1 *pala*, and in weighing water and oil they reckon 8 *suvarṇa* = 1 *pala*.

The Hindu balance.

The balances with which the Hindus weigh things are χαριστίωνες, of which the weights are immovable, whilst the scales move on certain marks and lines.

Therefore the balance is called *tulâ.* The first lines mean the units of the weight from 1 to 5, and farther on to 10; the following lines mean the tenths, 10, 20, 30, &c. With regard to the cause of this arrangement they relate the following saying of Vâsudeva:—

"I will not kill Śiśupâla, the son of my aunt, if he has not committed a crime, but will pardon him *until ten*, and then I shall call him to account."

We shall relate this story on a later opportunity.

Alfazârî uses in his astronomical handbook the word *pala* for *day-minutes* (*i.e.* sixtieth parts of a day). I have not found this use anywhere in Hindu literature, but they use the word to denote *a correction.* in a mathematical sense.

The Hindus have a weight called *bhâra,* which is mentioned in the books about the conquest of Sindh. It is equal to 2000 *pala;* for they explain it by 100 × 20 *pala,* and as nearly equal to the weight of an ox.

This is all I have lighted on as regards Hindu weights.

Dry measures.

By measuring (with dry measures) people determine the body and the bulk of a thing, if it fills up a certain measure which has been gauged as containing a certain quantity of it, it being understood that the way in which the things are laid out in the measure, the way in which their surface is determined, and the way in which, on the whole, they are arranged within the measure, are in every case identical. If two objects which are to be weighed belong to the same species, they then prove to be equal, not only in bulk, but also in weight; but if they do not belong to the same species, their bodily extent is equal, but not their weight.

Page 79.

They have a measure called *bîsî* (? *sibî*), which is mentioned by every man from Kanauj and Somanâth. According to the people of Kanauj—

4 *bîsî* = 1 *prastha.*
¼ *bîsî* = 1 *kuḍava.*

According to the people of Somanâth—

16 *bisî* = 1 *puntî.*
12 *pantî* = 1 *moru.*

According to another theory—

12 *bîsî* = 1 *kalasî.*
¼ *bîsî* = 1 *mâna.*

From the same source I learnt that a *mâna* of wheat is nearly equal to 5 *manâ*. Therefore 1 *bîsî* (?) is equal to 20 *manâ*. The *bîsî* corresponds to the Khwârizmian measure *sukhkh*, according to old style, whilst the *kalaśî* corresponds to the Khwârizmian *ghûr*, for 1 *ghûr* = 12 *sukhkh.*

Measures of distances.

Mensuration is the determination of distances by lines and of superficies by planes. A plane ought to be measured by part of a plane, but the mensuration by means of lines effects the same purpose, as lines determine the limits of planes. When, in quoting Varâhamihira, we had come so far as to determine the weight of a barley-corn (p. 162), we made a digression into an exposition of weights, where we used his authority about gravity, and now we shall return to him and consult him about distances. He says—

8 barley-corns put together = 1 *aṅgula, i.e.* finger.
4 fingers = 1 *râma* (?), *i.e.* the fist.
24 fingers = 1 *haṭṭha, i.e.* yard, also called *dastu.*
4 yards = 1 *dhanu, i.e.* arc = a fathom.
40 arcs = 1 *nalva.*
25 *nalva* = 1 *krośa.*

Hence it follows that 1 *kroh* = 4000 yards; and as our mile has just so many yards, 1 mile = 1 *kroh.* Pulisa the Greek also mentions in his Siddhânta that 1 *kroh* = 4000 yards.

The *yard* is equal to 2 *miḳyâs* or 24 fingers; for the Hindus determine the *śaṅku, i.e. miḳyâs*, by idol-fingers. They do not call the twelfth part of a *miḳyâs* a *finger* in general, as *we* do, but their *miḳyâs* is always a *span.* The span, *i.e.* the distance between the ends of the thumb and the small finger at their widest possible stretching, is called *vitasti* and also *kishku*.

The distance between the ends of the fourth or ring-finger and the thumb, both being stretched out, is called *gokarṇa*.

The distance between the ends of the index-finger and of the thumb is called *karabha*, and is reckoned as equal to two-thirds of a span.

The distance between the tops of the middle finger and of the thumb is called *tâla*. The Hindus maintain that the height of a man is eight times his *tâla*, whether he be tall or small; as people say with regard to the foot, that it is one-seventh of the height of a man.

Regarding the construction of idols, the book *Saṁhitâ* says :—

"The breadth of the palm has been determined as 6, the length as 7; the length of the middle finger as 5, that of the fourth finger as the same; that of the index-finger as the same *minus* $\frac{1}{6}$ (*i.e.* $4\frac{1}{6}$); that of the small finger as the same *minus* $\frac{1}{3}$ (*i.e.* $3\frac{1}{3}$); that of the thumb as equal to two-thirds of the length of the middle finger (*i.e.* $3\frac{1}{3}$), so that the two last fingers are of equal length."

Page 80.

By the measurements and numbers of this passage, the author means *idol-fingers*.

The relation between *yojana*, mile, and *farsakh*.

After the measure of the *krośa* has been fixed and found to be equal to our *mile*, the reader must learn that they have a measure of distances, called *yojana*, which is equal to 8 miles or to 32,000 yards. Perhaps somebody might believe that 1 *kroh* is = $\frac{1}{4}$ *farsakh*, and maintain that the *farsakhs* of the Hindûs are 16,000 yards long. But such is not the case. On the contrary, 1 *kroh* = $\frac{1}{2}$ *yojana*. In the terms of this measure, Alfazârî has determined the circumference of the earth in his astronomical handbook. He calls it *jûn*, in the plural *'ajwân*.

Relation between

The elements of the calculations of the Hindus on the circumference of the circle rest on the assumption circumference and diameter.

that it is *thrice its diameter.* So the *Matsya-Purâṇa* says, after it has mentioned the diameters of the sun and moon in *yojanas:* "The circumference is thrice the diameter."

The *Âditya-Purâṇa* says, after it has mentioned the breadth of the *Dvîpas, i.e.* the islands and of their surrounding seas: "The circumference is thrice the diameter."

The same occurs also in the *Vâyu-Purâṇa.* In later times, however, Hindus have become aware of the fraction following after the three wholes. According to Brahmagupta, the circumference is $3\frac{1}{7}$ times the diameter; but he finds this number by a method peculiar to himself. He says: "As the root of 10 is nearly $3\frac{1}{7}$, the relation between the diameter and its circumference is like the relation between 1 and the root of 10." Then he multiplies the diameter by itself, the product by 10, and of this product he takes the root. Then the circumference is *solid, i.e.* consists of integers, in the same way as the root of ten. This calculation, however, makes the fraction larger than it really is. Archimedes defined it to be something between $\frac{10}{70}$ and $\frac{11}{70}$. Brahmagupta relates with regard to Âryabhaṭa, criticising him, that he fixed the circumference as 3393; that he fixed the diameter in one place as 1080, in another place as 1050. According to the first statement, the relation between diameter and circumference would be like $1 : 3\frac{17}{120}$. This fraction ($\frac{17}{120}$) is by $\frac{1}{17}$ smaller than $\frac{1}{7}$. However, as regards the second statement, it contains no doubt a blunder in the text, not of the author; for according to the text, the relation would be like $1 : 3\frac{1}{4}$ and something over.

Pulisa employs this relation in his calculations in the proportion of $1 : 3\frac{177}{1250}$.

This fraction is here by so much smaller than one-seventh as it is according to Âryabhaṭa, *i.e.* by $\frac{1}{17}$.

The same relation is derived from the old theory, which Ya'kûb Ibn Ṭârik mentions in his book, *Compositio Sphærarum*, on the authority of his Hindu informant, viz. that the circumference of the zodiac is 1,256,640,000 *yojana*, and that its diameter is 400,000,000 *yojana*.

These numbers presuppose the relation between circumference and diameter to be as $1 : 3 \frac{56,640,000}{400,000,000}$. These two numbers may be reduced by the common divisor of 360,000. Thereby we get 177 as numerator and 1250 as denominator. And this is the fraction $(\frac{177}{1250})$ which Pulisa has adopted.

CHAPTER XVI.

NOTES ON THE WRITING OF THE HINDUS, ON THEIR ARITHMETIC AND RELATED SUBJECTS, AND ON CERTAIN STRANGE MANNERS AND CUSTOMS OF THEIRS.

Page 81.

On various kinds of writing material.

THE tongue communicates the thought of the speaker to the hearer. Its action has therefore, as it were, a momentary life only, and it would have been impossible to deliver by oral tradition the accounts of the events of the past to later generations, more particularly if they are separated from them by long periods of time. This has become possible only by a new discovery of the human mind, by the art of writing, which spreads news over space as the winds spread, and over time as the spirits of the deceased spread. Praise therefore be unto Him who has arranged creation and created everything for the best!

The Hindus are not in the habit of writing on hides, like the Greeks in ancient times. Socrates, on being asked why he did not compose books, gave this reply: "I do not transfer knowledge from the living hearts of men to the *dead* hides of sheep." Muslims, too, used in the early times of Islam to write on hides, *e.g.* the treaty between the Prophet and the Jews of Khaibar and his letter to Kisrâ. The copies of the Koran were written on the hides of gazelles, as are still nowadays the copies of the Thora. There occurs this passage in the Koran (Sûra vi. 91): "They make it *karâṭîs*," *i.e.* τομάρια. The *kirṭâs* (or *charta*) is made in Egypt, being cut out of the papyrus stalk. Written on this material, the orders of the Khalifs went out into all the world until shortly before our time. Papyrus has this advantage over vellum, that you can neither rub out nor change anything on it, because thereby it would be destroyed. It was in China that paper was first manufactured. Chinese prisoners introduced the fabrication of paper into Samarḳand, and thereupon it was made in various places, so as to meet the existing want.

The Hindus have in the south of their country a slender tree like the date and cocoa-nut palms, bearing edible fruits and leaves of the length of one yard, and as broad as three fingers one put beside the other. They call these leaves *târî* (*tâla* or *tâṛ* = *Borassus flabelliformis*), and write on them. They bind a book of these leaves together by a cord on which they are arranged, the cord going through all the leaves by a hole in the middle of each.

In Central and Northern India people use the bark of the *tûz* tree, one kind of which is used as a cover for bows. It is called *bhûrja*. They take a piece one yard long and as broad as the outstretched fingers of the hand, or somewhat less, and prepare it in various ways. They oil and polish it so as to make it hard and smooth, and then they write on it. The proper order of the single leaves is marked by numbers. The whole book is wrapped up in a piece of cloth and fastened between two tablets of the same size. Such a book is called *pûthî* (cf. *pusta*, *pustaka*). Their letters, and whatever else they have to write, they write on the bark of the *tûz* tree.

On the Hindu alphabet.

As to the writing or alphabet of the Hindus, we have already mentioned that it once had been lost and forgotten ; that nobody cared for it, and that in consequence people became illiterate, sunken into gross ignorance, and entirely estranged from science. But then Vyâsa, the son of Parâśara, rediscovered their alphabet of fifty letters by an inspiration of God. A letter is called *akshara*.

Some people say that originally the number of their letters was less, and that it increased only by degrees. This is possible, or I should even say necessary. As for the Greek alphabet, a certain *Asîdhas* (*sic*) had formed sixteen characters to perpetuate science about the time when the Israelites ruled over Egypt. Thereupon *Kîmush* (*sic*) and *Agenon* (*sic*) brought them to the Greeks. By adding four new signs they obtained an alphabet of twenty letters. Later on, about the time when Socrates was poisoned, Simonides added four Page 8 other signs, and so the Athenians at last had a complete alphabet of twenty-four letters, which happened during the reign of Artaxerxes, the son of Darius, the son of Artaxerxes, the son of Cyrus, according to the chronographers of the West.

The great number of the letters of the Hindu alphabet is explained, firstly, by the fact that they express every letter by a separate sign if it is followed by a vowel or a diphthong or a *hamza* (*visarga*), or a small extension of the sound beyond the measure of the vowel; and, secondly, by the fact that they have consonants which are not found together in any other language, though they may be found scattered through different languages—sounds of such a nature that *our* tongues, not being familiar with them, can scarcely pronounce them, and that *our* ears are frequently not able to distinguish between many a cognate pair of them.

The Hindus write from the left to the right like the Greeks. They do not write on the basis of a line, above which the heads of the letters rise whilst their tails go down below, as in Arabic writing. On the contrary, their ground-line is above, a straight line above every single character, and from this line the letter hangs down and is written under it. Any sign *above* the line is nothing but a grammatical mark to denote the pronunciation of the character above which it stands.

On the local alphabets of the Hindus.

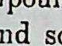
The most generally known alphabet is called *Siddhamâtṛikâ*, which is by some considered as originating from Kashmîr, for the people of Kashmîr use it. But it is also used in Varânaṣî. This town and Kashmîr are the high schools of Hindu sciences. The same writing is used in Madhyadeśa, *i.e.* the middle country, the country all around Kanauj, which is also called Âryâvarta.

In Mâlava there is another alphabet called *Nâgara*, which differs from the former only in the shape of the characters.

Next comes an alphabet called *Ardhanâgarî*, *i.e. half-nâgara*, so called because it is compounded of the former two. It is used in Bhâtiya and some parts of Sindh.

Other alphabets are the *Malwârî*, used in Malwashau, in Southern Sind, towards the sea-coast; the *Saindhava*, used in Bahmanwâ or Almanṣûra; the *Karnâṭa*, used in Karnâṭadeśa, whence those troops come which in the armies are known as *Kannara*; the *Aṇdhrî*, used in Andhradeśa; the *Dirwarî* (*Drâviḍî*), used in Dirwaradeśa (Draviḍadeśa); the *Lârî*, used in Lâradeśa (Lâṭadeśa); the *Gaurî* (*Gauḍî*), used in Pûrvadeśa, *i.e.* the Eastern country; the *Bhaikshukî*, used in Uduṇpûr in Pûrvadeśa. This last is the writing of Buddha.

On the word Om.

The Hindus begin their books with *Om*, the word of creation, as we begin them with "In the name of God." The figure of the word *om* is . This figure does not consist of letters; it is simply an image invented to represent this word, which people use, believing that it will bring them a blessing, and meaning thereby a confession of the unity of God. Similar to this is the manner in which the Jews write the name of God, viz. by three Hebrew *yods*. In the Thora the word is written *YHVH* and pronounced

Adonai; sometimes they also say *Yah.* The word *Adonai,* which they pronounce, is not expressed in writing.

heir
eral
s.

The Hindus do not use the letters of their alphabet for numerical notation, as we use the Arabic letters in the order of the Hebrew alphabet. As in different parts of India the letters have different shapes, the numeral signs, too, which are called *aṅka,* differ. The numeral signs which *we* use are derived from the finest forms of the Hindu signs. Signs and figures are of no use if people do not know what they mean, but the people of Kashmîr mark the single leaves of their books with figures which look like drawings or like the Chinese characters, the meaning of which can only be learned by a very long practice. However, they do not use them when reckoning in the sand.

Page 83.

In arithmetic all nations agree that all the *orders* of numbers (*e.g.* one, ten, hundred, thousand) stand in a certain relation to the ten; that each order is the tenth part of the following and the tenfold of the preceding. I have studied the names of the *orders* of the numbers in various languages with all kinds of people with whom I have been in contact, and have found that no nation goes beyond the thousand. The Arabs, too, stop with the thousand, which is certainly the most correct and the most natural thing to do. I have written a separate treatise on this subject.

Those, however, who go beyond the thousand in their numeral system are the Ḥindus, at least in their arithmetical technical terms, which have been either freely invented or derived according to certain etymologies, whilst in others both methods are blended together. They extend the names of the *orders* of numbers until the 18th *order* for religious reasons, the mathematicians being assisted by the grammarians with all kinds of etymologies.

The 18th *order* is called *Parârdha, i.e.* the half of heaven, or, more accurately, *the half of that which is above.* For if the Hindus construct periods of time out of Kalpas, the unit of this *order* is *a day of God* (*i.e.* a half *nychthemeron*). And as we do not know any body larger than heaven, half of it (*parârdha*), as *a half of the greatest body*, has been compared with *a half of the greatest day.* By doubling it, by uniting night to day, we get the *whole* of the greatest day. There can be no doubt that the name *Parârdha* is accounted for in this way, and that *parâr* means *the whole of heaven.*

The eighteen orders of numeration.

The following are the names of the eighteen *orders* of numbers :—

1. *Ekaṁ.*
2. *Daśaṁ.*
3. *Śataṁ.*
4. *Sahasraṁ.*
5. *Ayuta.*
6. *Laksha.*
7. *Prayuta.*
8. *Koṭi.*
9. *Nyarbuda.*
10. *Padma.*
11. *Kharva.*
12. *Nikharva.*
13. *Mahâpadma.*
14. *Śaṅku.*
15. *Samudra.*
16. *Madhya.*
17. *Antya.*
18. *Parârdha.*

I shall now mention some of their differences of opinion relating to this system.

Variations occurring in the eighteen orders.

Some Hindus maintain *that there is a 19th order beyond the Parârdha, called Bhûri, and that this is the limit of reckoning.* But in reality *reckoning* is unlimited ; it has only a technical limit, which is conventionally adopted as the last of the *orders* of numbers. By the word *reckoning* in the sentence above they seem to mean *nomenclature*, as if they meant to say that the language has no *name* for any reckoning beyond the 19th *order*. It is known that the unit of this *order*, *i.e.* one *bhûri*, is equal to one-fifth of the *greatest day*, but on this subject they have no tradition. In their tradition there are only traces of combinations of the *greatest day*, as we shall hereafter explain. Therefore this 19th order is an addition of an artificial and hyper-accurate nature.

Page 84. According to others, the limit of reckoning is *koṭi*; and starting from *koṭi* the succession of the *orders* of numbers would be *koṭi*, thousands, hundreds, tenths; for the number of Devas is expressed in *kôṭis*. According to their belief there are thirty-three *kotis* of Devas, eleven of which belong to each of the three beings, Brahman, Narâyaṇa, and Mahâdeva.

The names of the *orders* beyond that of the 18th have been invented by the grammarians, as we have said already (p. 174).

Further, we observe that the popular name of the 5th *order* is *Daśa sahasra*, that of the 7th *order*, *Daśa laksha*; for the two names which we have mentioned in the list above (*Ayuta Prayuta*) are rarely used.

The book of Âryabhaṭa of Kusumapura gives the following names of the *orders* from the ten till 10 *koṭi*:—

Ayutaṁ.
Niyutaṁ.
Prayutaṁ.

Koṭi padma.
Parapadma.

Further, it is noteworthy that some people establish a kind of etymological relationship between the different names; so they call the 6th *order Niyuta*, according to the analogy of the 5th, which is called *Ayuta*. Further, they call the 8th *order Arbuda*, according to the analogy of the 9th, which is called *Nyarbuda*.

There is a similar relation between *Nikharva* and *Kharva*, the names of the 12th and 11th *orders*, and between *Śaṅku* and *Mahâśaṅku*, the names of the 13th and 14th *orders*. According to this analogy *Mahâpadma* ought to follow immediately after *Padma*, but this latter is the name of the 10th, the former the name of the 13th *order*.

These are differences of theirs which can be traced back to certain reasons; but besides, there are many differences without any reason, which simply arise from people dictating these names without observing any fixed order, or from the fact that they hate to avow their ignorance by a frank *I do not know*,—a word which is difficult to them in any connection whatsoever.

The *Pulisa-siddhânta* gives the following list of the *orders* of the numbers :—

4. *Sahasraṁ.*
5. *Ayutaṁ.*
6. *Niyutaṁ.*
7. *Prayutaṁ.*
8. *Koṭi.*
9. *Arbudaṁ.*
10. *Kharva.*

The following *orders*, from the 11th till the 18th, are the same as those of the above-mentioned list.

Numeral notation.

The Hindus use the numeral signs in arithmetic in the same way as we do. I have composed a treatise showing how far, possibly, the Hindus are ahead of us in this subject. We have already explained that the Hindus compose their books in Ślokas. If, now, they wish, in their astronomical handbooks, to express some numbers of the various *orders*, they express them by words used to denote certain numbers either in one *order* alone or at the same time in two *orders* (*e.g.* a word meaning either 20 or both 20 and 200). For each number they have appropriated quite a great quantity of words. Hence, if one word does not suit the metre, you may easily exchange it for a synonym which suits. Brahmagupta says: "If you want to write *one*, express it by everything which is unique, as *the earth, the moon; two* by everything which is double, as, *e.g. black* and *white; three* by everything which is threefold; the *nought* by *heaven*, the *twelve* by the names of the sun."

I have united in the following table all the expressions for the numbers which I used to hear from them; for the knowledge of these things is most essential for deciphering their astronomical handbooks.

Whenever I shall come to know all the meanings of these words, I will add them, if God permits! Page

0 = *śûnya* and *kha*, both meaning *point*.
gagana, *i.e.* heaven.
viyat, *i.e.* heaven.
âkâśa, *i.e.* heaven.
ambara, *i.e.* heaven.
abhra, *i.e.* heaven.

1 = *âdi*, *i.e.* the beginning.
śaśin.
indu.
śîtâ.
urvarâ, *dharaṇî*.
pitâmaha, *i.e.* the first father.
candra, *i.e.* the moon.
śîtâṁśu, *i.e.* the moon.
rûpa.
raśmi.

2 = *yama*.
aśvin.
ravicandra.
locana, *i.e.* the two eyes.
akshi.
dasra.
yamala.
paksha, *i.e.* the two halves of a month.
netra, *i.e.* the two eyes.

3 = *trikâla*, *i.e.* the three parts of time.
trijagat.
trayaṁ.
pâvaka, *vaiśvânara*, *dahana*, *tapana*, *hutâśana*, *jvalana*, *agni*, *i.e.* fire.
[*triguṇa*,] *i.e.* the three first forces.
loka, *i.e.* the worlds, earth, heaven and hell.
trikaṭu.

4 = *veda*, *i.e.* their sacred code, because it has four parts.
samudra, *sâgara*, *i.e.* the sea.
abdhi.
dadhi.
diś, *i.e.* the four cardinal points.
jalâśaya.
kṛita. Page

5 = *śara*.
artha.
indriya, *i.e.* the five senses.
sâyaka.
إِخَوْن
vâṇa.
bhûta.
ishu.
Pâṇḍava, *i.e.* the five royal brothers.
pattrin, *mârgaṇa*.

6 = *rasa*.
aṅga.
shaṭ.
العرم (?) *i.e.* the year.
ṛitu (?).
mâsârdhaṁ.

7 = *aga*.
mahîdhara.
parvata, *i.e.* the mountains.
saptan.
naga, *i.e.* the mountains.
adri.
muni.

8 = *vasu*, *ashṭa*.
dhî, *maṅgala*.
gaja, *nâga*.
dantin.

9 = *go*, *chidra*.
nanda, *pavana*.
randhra, *antara*.
navan = 9. Page

10 = *diś, khendu.*
âśâ, Râvaṇa-śiras.
11 = *Rudra*, the destroyer of the world.
Mahâdeva, i.e. the prince of the angels.
îśvara.
akshauhiṇî, i.e. the army Kuru had.
12 = *sûrya,* because there are twelve suns.
âditya.
arka, i.e. the sun.
mâsa, bhânu.
sahaśrâṁśu.
13 = *viśva.*
14 = *manu,* the lords of the fourteen *manvantaras.*
15 = *tithi, i.e.* the lunar days in each half month.
16 = *ashṭi, nṛipa, bhûpa.*
17 = *atyashṭi.*
18 = *dhṛiti.* Page 88.
19 = *atidhṛiti.*
20 = *nakha, kṛiti.*
21 = *utkṛiti.*
22 =
23 =
24 =
25 = *tattva, i.e.* the twenty-five things, through the knowledge of which liberation is obtained.

As far as I have seen and heard of the Hindus, they do not usually go beyond twenty-five with this kind of numerical notation.

Strange manners and customs of the Hindus. Page 89.

We shall now speak of certain strange manners and customs of the Hindus. The strangeness of a thing evidently rests on the fact that it occurs but rarely, and that we seldom have the opportunity of witnessing it. If such strangeness reaches a high degree, the thing becomes a curiosity, or even something like a miracle, which is no longer in accordance with the ordinary laws of nature, and which seems chimerical as long as it has not been witnessed. Many Hindu customs differ from those of our country and of our time to such a degree as to appear to us simply monstrous. One might almost think that they had intentionally changed them into the opposite, for *our* customs do not resemble theirs, but are the very reverse; and if ever a custom of *theirs* resembles one of *ours*, it has certainly just the opposite meaning.

They do not cut any of the hair of the body. Originally they went naked in consequence of the heat, and by not cutting the hair of the head they intended to prevent sunstroke.

They divide the moustache into single plaits in order to preserve it. As regards their not cutting the hair of the genitals, they try to make people believe that the cutting of it incites to lust and increases carnal desire. Therefore such of them as feel a strong desire for cohabitation never cut the hair of the genitals.

They let the nails grow long, glorying in their idleness, since they do not use them for any business or work, but only, while living a *dolce far niente* life, they scratch their heads with them and examine the hair for lice.

The Hindus eat singly, one by one, on a tablecloth of dung. They do not make use of the remainder of a meal, and the plates from which they have eaten are thrown away if they are earthen.

They have red teeth in consequence of chewing arecanuts with betel-leaves and chalk.

They drink wine before having eaten anything, then they take their meal. They sip the stall of cows, but they do not eat their meat.

They beat the cymbals with a stick.

They use turbans for trousers. Those who want little dress are content to dress in a rag of two fingers' breadth, which they bind over their loins with two cords; but those who like much dress, wear trousers lined with so much cotton as would suffice to make a number of counterpanes and saddle-rugs. These trousers have no (visible) openings, and they are so huge that the feet are not visible. The string by which the trousers are fastened is at the back.

Their *ṣidâr* (a piece of dress covering the head and the upper part of breast and neck) is similar to the trousers, being also fastened at the back by buttons.

The lappets of the *kurṭakas* (short shirts from the shoulders to the middle of the body with sleeves, a female dress) have slashes both on the right and left sides.

They keep the shoes tight till they begin to put them on. They are turned down from the calf before walking (?).

In washing they begin with the feet, and then wash the face. They wash themselves before cohabiting with their wives.

Cœunt stantes velut palus vitis, dum mulieres ab imo sursum moventur velut occupatæ in arando, maritus vero plane otiosus manet.

On festive days they besmear their bodies with dung instead of perfumes.

The men wear articles of female dress; they use cosmetics, wear earrings, arm-rings, golden seal-rings on the ring-finger as well as on the toes of the feet.

Miseret eos catamiti et viri qui rebus venereis frui non potest pushaṇḍila *dicti, qui penem bucca devorans semen elicit sorbendum.*

In cacando faciem vertunt versus murum retegentes pudenda ut videantur a prætereuntibus.

Sacra faciunt virilibus liṅga *dictis, quæ est imago veretri Mahadevæ.*

They ride without a saddle, but if they put on a saddle, they mount the horse from its right side. In travelling they like to have somebody riding behind them.

They fasten the *kuṭhâra, i.e.* the dagger, at the waist on the right side.

They wear a girdle called *yajnopavîta*, passing from the left shoulder to the right side of the waist.

In all consultations and emergencies they take the advice of the women. Page 90.

When a child is born people show particular attention to the man, not to the woman.

Of two children they give the preference to the younger, particularly in the eastern parts of the country;

for they maintain that the elder owes his birth to predominant lust, whilst the younger owes his origin to mature reflection and a calm proceeding.

In shaking hands they grasp the hand of a man from the convex side.

They do not ask permission to enter a house, but when they leave it they ask permission to do so.

In their meetings they sit cross-legged.

They spit out and blow their noses without any respect for the elder ones present, and they crack their lice before them. They consider the *crepitus ventris* as a good omen, sneezing as a bad omen.

They consider as unclean the weaver, but as clean the cupper and the flayer, who kills dying animals for money either by drowning or by burning.

They use black tablets for the children in the schools, and write upon them along the long side, not the broad side, writing with a white material from the left to the right. One would think that the author of the following verses had meant the Hindus:—

> "How many a writer uses paper as black as charcoal,
> Whilst his pen writes on it with white colour.
> By writing he places a bright day in a dark night,
> Weaving like a weaver, but without adding a woof."

They write the title of a book at the end of it, not at the beginning.

They magnify the nouns of their language by giving them the feminine gender, as the Arabs magnify them by the diminutive form.

If one of them hands over a thing to another, he expects that it should be thrown to him as we throw a thing to the dogs.

If two men play at *Nard* (backgammon), a third one throws the dice between them.

They like the juice which flows over the cheeks of the rutting elephant, which in reality has the most horrid smell.

On the Indian chess.

In playing chess they move the elephant straight on, not to the other sides, one square at a time, like the pawn, and to the four corners also one square at a time, like the queen (*firzân*). They say that these five squares (*i.e.* the one straight forward and the others at the corners) are the places occupied by the trunk and the four feet of the elephant.

They play chess—four persons at a time—with a pair of dice. Their arrangement of the figures on the chess-board is the following:—

Tower (*rukh*).	Horse.	Elephant.	King.			Pawn.	Tower.
Pawn.	Pawn.	Pawn.	Pawn.			Pawn.	Horse.
						Pawn.	Elephant.
						Pawn.	King.
King.	Pawn.						
Elephant.	Pawn.						
Horse.	Pawn.			Pawn.	Pawn.	Pawn.	Pawn.
Tower.	Pawn.			King.	Elephant.	Horse.	Tower.

As this kind of chess is not known among us, I shall here explain what I know of it.

The four persons playing together sit so as to form a square round a chess-board, and throw the two dice alternately. Of the numbers of the dice the five and Page 91. six are blank (*i.e.* do not count as such). In that case, if the dice show five or six, the player takes one instead of the five, and four instead of the six, because the figures of these two numerals are drawn in the following manner:—

6 5
4 3 2 1

so as to exhibit a certain likeness of form to 4 and 1, viz. in the Indian signs.

The name *Shâh* or *king* applies here to the *queen* (*firzân*).

Each number of the dice causes a move of one of the figures.

The 1 moves either the pawn or the king. Their moves are the same as in the common chess. The king may be taken, but is not required to leave his place.

The 2 moves the tower (*rukh*). It moves to the third square in the direction of the diagonal, as the elephant moves in *our* chess.

The 3 moves the horse. Its move is the generally known one to the third square in oblique direction.

The 4 moves the elephant. It moves in a straight line, as the tower does in our chess, unless it be prevented from moving on. If this is the case, as sometimes happens, one of the dice removes the obstacle, and enables it to move on. Its smallest move is one square, the greatest fifteen squares, because the dice sometimes show two 4, or two 6, or a 4 and a 6. In consequence of one of these numbers, the elephant moves along the whole side of the margin on the chessboard; in consequence of the other number, it moves along the other side on the other margin of the board, in case there is no impediment in its way. In consequence of these two numbers, the elephant, in the course of his moves, occupies the two ends of the diagonal.

The pieces have certain values, according to which the player gets his share of the stake, for the pieces are taken and pass into the hands of the player. The value of the king is 5, that of the elephant 4, of the horse 3, of the tower 2, and of the pawn 1. He who takes a king gets 5. For two kings he gets 10, for three kings 15, if the winner is no longer in possession of his own king. But if he has still his own king, and takes all three kings, he gets 54, a number which represents a progression based on general consent, not on an algebraic principle.

The innate perversity of the Hindu character.

If the Hindus claim to differ from us, and to be something better than we, as we on our side, of course, do *vice versâ*, we might settle the question by an experiment to be made with their boys. I never knew a Hindu boy who had only recently come into Muhammadan territory who was not thoroughly versed in the manners and customs of the people, but at the same time he would place the shoes before his master in a wrong order, the right one to the left foot, and *vice versâ*; he would, in folding, turn his master's garments inside out, and spread the carpets so that the under part is uppermost, and more of the kind. All of which is a consequence of the innate perversity of the Hindu nature.

Customs of the heathen Arabs.

However, I must not reproach the Hindus only with their heathen practices, for the heathen Arabs too committed crimes and obscenities. They cohabited with menstruating and pregnant women; several men agreed to cohabit with the same woman in the same period of menstruation; they adopted the children of others, of their guests, of the lover of their daughter, not to mention that in some kinds of their worship they whistled on their fingers and clapped with their hands, and that they ate unclean and dead animals. Islam has abolished all those things among the Arabs, as it has also abolished them in those parts of India the people of which have become Muḥammadans. Thanks be unto God!

CHAPTER XVII.

ON HINDU SCIENCES WHICH PREY ON THE IGNORANCE OF PEOPLE.

We understand by witchcraft, making by some kind of delusion a thing appear to the senses as something different from what it is in reality. Taken in this sense, it is far spread among people. Understood, however, as common people understand it, as the producing of something which is impossible, it is a thing which does not lie within the limits of reality. For as that which is impossible cannot be produced, the whole affair is nothing but a gross deception. Therefore witchcraft in this sense has nothing whatever to do with science.

On alchemy among the Hindus in general.

Page 92.

One of the species of witchcraft is alchemy, though it is generally not called by this name. But if a man takes a bit of cotton and makes it appear as a bit of gold, what would you call this but a piece of witchcraft? It is quite the same as if he were to take a bit of silver and make it appear as gold, only with this difference, that the latter is a generally-known process, *i.e.* the gilding of silver, the former is not.

The Hindus do not pay particular attention to alchemy, but no nation is entirely free from it, and one nation has more bias for it than another, which must not be construed as proving intelligence or ignorance; for we find that many intelligent people are entirely given to alchemy, whilst ignorant people ridicule the art and its adepts. Those intelligent people, though boisterously exulting over their make-believe science, are not to be blamed for occupying themselves with alchemy, for their motive is simply excessive eagerness for acquiring fortune and for avoiding misfortune. Once a sage was asked why scholars always flock to the doors of the rich, whilst the rich are not inclined to call at the doors of scholars. "The scholars," he answered, "are well aware of the use of money, but the rich are ignorant of the nobility of science." On the other hand, ignorant people are not to be praised, although they behave quite quietly, simply because they abstain from alchemy, for their motives are objectionable ones, rather practical results of innate ignorance and stupidity than anything else.

The adepts in this art try to keep it concealed, and shrink back from intercourse with those who do not belong to them. Therefore I have not been able to learn from the Hindus which methods they follow in this science, and what element they principally use, whether a mineral or an animal or a vegetable one. I only heard them speaking of the process of *sublimation*, of *calcination*, of *analysis*, and of the *waxing of talc*, which they call in their language *tâlaka*, and so I guess that they incline towards the mineralogical method of alchemy.

The science of Rasâyana.

They have a science similar to alchemy which is quite peculiar to them. They call it *Rasâyana*, a word composed with *rasa*, *i.e.* gold. It means an art which is restricted to certain operations, drugs, and compound medicines, most of which are taken from plants. Its principles restore the health of those who were ill beyond hope, and give back youth to fading old age, so that people become again what they were in the age near puberty; white hair becomes black again, the keenness of the senses is restored as well as the capacity for juvenile agility, and even for cohabitation, and the life of people in this world is even extended to a long period. And why not? Have we not already mentioned on the authority of Patañjali (v. p. 88) that one of the methods leading to liberation is *Rasâyana?* What man would hear this, being inclined to take it for truth, and not dart off into foolish joy and not honour the master of such a wonderful art by popping the choicest bit of his meal into his mouth?

Nâgârjuna, the author of a book on Rasâyana.

A famous representative of this art was Nâgârjuna, a native of the fort Daihak, near Somanâth. He excelled in it, and composed a book which contains the substance of the whole literature on this subject, and is very rare. He lived nearly a hundred years before our time.

Page 93.

The alchemist Vyâḍi in the time of King Vikramâditya.

In the time of the King Vikramâditya, of whose era we shall speak hereafter, there lived in the city of Ûjain a man of the name of Vyâḍi, who had turned his whole attention to this science, and had ruined on account of it both his life and property, but all his zeal did not even avail him so much as to help him to things which, under ordinary circumstances, are easily obtained. Becoming restricted in his means, he conceived a disgust to that which had been the object of all his exertions, and sat down on the bank of a river sighing, sorrowful, and despairing. He held in his hand his *pharmacopœia*, from which he used to take the prescriptions for his medicines, but now he began to throw one leaf of it after the other into the water. A harlot happened to sit on the bank of the same river farther down, who, on seeing the leaves pass by, gathered them, and fished up some relating to *Rasâyana.* Vyâḍi did not notice her till all the leaves of his book had gone. Then the woman came to him, asking why he had done so with his book, whereupon he answered, "Because I have derived no advantage from it. I have not obtained what I ought to have obtained; for *its* sake I have become bankrupt after having had great treasures, and now I am miserable after having so long been in the hope of obtaining happiness." The harlot spoke: "Do not give up a pursuit in which you have spent your life; do not despair of the possibility of a thing which all sages before you have shown to be true. Perhaps the obstacle which prevents you from realising your plans is only of an accidental nature, which may perhaps be removed by an accident. I have much solid cash. It is all yours that you may spend it on the realisation of your plans." Thereupon Vyâḍi resumed his work.

Nâgârjuna, the author of a book on Rasâyana.

Page 95.

The alchemist Vyâḍi in the time of King Vikramâditya.

However, books of this kind are written in an enigmatic style. So he happened to misunderstand a word in the prescription of a medicine, which meant *oil* and *human blood*, both being required for it. It was written *raktâmala*, and he thought it meant *red myrobalanon*. When he used the medicine it had no effect whatsoever. Now he began to concoct the various drugs, but the flame touched his head and dried up his brain. Therefore he oiled himself with oil, pouring it in great quantity over his skull. One day he rose to step away from the fireplace for some business or other, but as there happened to be a peg projecting from the roof right above his head, he knocked his head against it, and the blood began to flow. On account of the pain which he felt, he looked downward, and in consequence some drops of blood mixed with oil dropped from the upper part of his skull into the caldron without his noticing it. When, then, the concocting process was finished and he and his wife besmeared themselves with the concoction in order to try it, they both flew up into the air. Vikramâditya on hearing of this affair left his castle, and proceeded to the market-place in order to see them with his own eyes. Then the man shouted to him, "Open thy mouth for my saliva." The king, however, being disgusted, did not do it, and so the saliva fell down near the door, and immediately the threshold was filled with gold.

Vyâḍi and the woman flew to any place they liked. He has composed famous books on this science. People say that both man and wife are still alive.

Story about the piece of silver in the door of the Government-house in Dhâra.

A similar tale is the following:—In the city of Dhâra, the capital of Mâlava, which is in our days ruled by Bhojadeva, there lies in the door of the Government-house an oblong piece of pure silver, in which the outlines of the limbs of a man are visible. Its origin is accounted for by the following story:—Once in olden times a man went to a king of theirs, bringing him a *Rasâyana*, the use of which would make him immortal, victorious, invincible, and capable of doing everything he desired. He asked the king to come alone to the place of their meeting, and the king gave orders to keep in readiness all the man required.

Page 94.

The man began to boil the oil for several days, until at last it acquired consistency. Then he spoke to the king: "Spring into it and I shall finish the process." But the king, terrified at what he saw, had not the courage to dive into it. The man, on perceiving his cowardice, spoke to him: "If you have not sufficient courage, and will not do it for yourself, will you allow me myself to do it?" Whereupon the king answered, "Do as you like." Now he produced several packets of drugs, and instructed him that when such and such symptoms should appear, he should throw upon him this or that packet. Then the man stepped forward to the caldron and threw himself into it, and at once he was dissolved and reduced into pulp. Now the king proceeded according to his instruction, but when he had nearly finished the process, and there remained only one packet that was not yet thrown into the mass, he began to be anxious, and to think what might happen to his realm, in case the man should return to life as an *immortal, victorious, invincible* person, as has above been mentioned. And so he thought it preferable not to throw the last packet into the mass. The consequence was that the caldron became cold, and the dissolved man became consolidated in the shape of the said piece of silver.

The Hindus tell a tale about Vallabha, the king of the city of Vallabhî, whose era we have mentioned in the proper chapter.

Story of the fruit-seller Raṅka and the king Vallabha.

A man of the rank of a *Siddha* asked a herdsman with reference to a plant called *Thohar*, of the species of the *Lactaria*, from which milk flows when they are torn off, whether he had ever seen *Lactaria* from which blood flows instead of milk. When the herdsman declared he had, he gave him some drink-money that he should show it to him, which he did. When the man now saw the plant, he set fire to it, and threw the dog of the herdsman into the flame. Enraged thereby, the herdsman caught the man, and did with him the same as he had done to his dog. Then he waited till the fire was extinguished, and found both the man and the dog, but turned into gold. He took the dog with him, but left the man on the spot.

Now some peasant happened to find it. He cut off a finger, and went to a fruit-seller who was called *Raṅka*, i.e. *the poor*, because he was an utter pauper, and evidently near bankruptcy. After the peasant had bought from him what he wanted, he returned to the golden man, and then he found that in the place where the cut off finger had been, a new finger had grown. He cut it off a second time, and bought again from the same fruit-seller all that he wanted. But when the fruit-seller asked him whence he had the finger, he was stupid enough to tell him. So Raṅka went out to the body of the Siddha, and brought it on a carriage to his house. He stayed in his old abode, but managed by degrees to buy the whole town. The king Vallabha desired to own the same town, and asked him to cede it to him for money, but Raṅka declined. Being however afraid of the king's resentment, he fled to the lord of Almanṣûra, made him presents of money, and asked him to help him by a naval force. The lord of Almanṣûra complied with his desire, and assisted him. So he made a night-attack upon the king Vallabha, and killed him and his people, and destroyed his town. People say that still in our time there are such traces left in that country as are found in places which were destroyed by an unexpected night-attack.

The greediness of the ignorant Hindu princes for gold-making does not know any limit. If any one of them wanted to carry out a scheme of gold-making, and people advised him to kill a number of fine little children, the monster would not refrain from such a crime; he would throw them into the fire. If this precious science of Rasâyana were banished to the utmost limits of the world, where it is unattainable to anybody, it would be the best.

An Eranian tradition. Page 95.

According to the Eranian tradition, Isfandiyâd is said to have spoken when dying: "Kâûs had been given the power and the miraculous things mentioned in the Book of the Law. Finally he went to the mountain Ḳâf as a decrepit man, bent down by old age, but he returned thence as a lively youth of well-proportioned figure and full of force, having made the clouds his carriage, as God allowed him."

On the bird Garuḍa.

As regards charms and incantations, the Hindus have a firm belief in them, and they, as a rule, are much inclined towards them. The book which treats of those things is considered as a work of Garuḍa, a bird on which Nârâyaṇa rode. Some people describe this bird in such a way as to indicate a Ṣifrid-bird and its doings. It is an enemy of fish, catching them. As a rule, animals have by nature an aversion to their opponents, and try to beware of them; here, however, there is an exception to this rule. For when this bird flutters above the water and swims on it, the fish rise from the deep to the surface, and make it easy to him to catch them, as if he had bound them by his spell. Others describe it with such characteristics as might indicate a stork. The *Vâyu Purâṇa* attributes to it a pale colour. On the whole, Garuḍa comes nearer to a stork than to a Ṣifrid, as the stork is by nature, like Garuḍa, a destroyer of snakes.

The effect of charms on the bite of serpents.

Most of their charms are intended for those who have been bitten by serpents. Their excessive confidence in them is shown by this, which I heard a man say, that he had seen a dead man who had died from the bite of a serpent, but after the charm had been applied he had been restored to life, and remained alive, moving about like all others.

Another man I heard as he told the following story: "He had seen a man who had died from the bite of a serpent. A charm was applied, and in consequence he rose, spoke, made his will, showed where he had deposited his treasures, and gave all necessary information about them. But when he inhaled the smell of a dish, he fell down dead, life being completely extinct."

It is a Hindu custom that when a man has been bitten by a venomous serpent, and they have no charmer at hand, they bind the bitten man on a bundle of reeds, and place on him a leaf on which is written a blessing for that person who will accidentally light upon him, and save him by a charm from destruction.

I, for my part, do not know what I am to say about these things, since I do not believe in them. Once a man who had very little belief in reality, and much less in the tricks of jugglers, told me that he had been poisoned, and that people had sent him some Hindus possessing the knowledge of charms. They sang their charms before him, and this had a quieting effect upon him, and soon he felt that he became better and better, whilst they were drawing lines in the air with their hands and with twigs.

Hunting practices. I myself have witnessed that in hunting gazelles they caught them with the hand. One Hindu even went so far as to assert that he, without catching the gazelle, would drive it before him and lead it straight into the kitchen. This, however, rests, as I believe I have found out, simply on the device of slowly and constantly accustoming the animals to one and the same melody. Our people, too, practise the same when hunting the ibex, which is more wild even than the gazelle. When they see the animals resting, they begin to walk round them in a circle, singing one and the same melody so long until the animals are accustomed to it. Then they make the circle more and more narrow, till at last they come near enough to shoot at the animals which lie there in perfect rest.

The shooters of Ḳaṭâ-birds have a custom of beating copper-vessels during the night with one and the same kind of beat, and they manage to catch them with the hand. If, however, the beat is changed, the birds fly off in all directions.

All these things are peculiar customs which have nothing whatsoever to do with charms. Sometimes the Hindus are considered as sorcerers because of their playing with balls on raised beams or on tight ropes, but tricks of this kind are common to all nations. **Page 96.**

CHAPTER XVIII.

VARIOUS NOTES ON THEIR COUNTRY, THEIR RIVERS, AND THEIR OCEAN. ITINERARIES OF THE DISTANCES BETWEEN THEIR SEVERAL KINGDOMS, AND BETWEEN THE BOUNDARIES OF THEIR COUNTRY.

The inhabitable world and the ocean.

THE reader is to imagine the inhabitable world, ἡ οἰκουμένη, as lying in the northern half of the earth, and more accurately in one-half of this half—*i.e.* in one of the quarters of the earth. It is surrounded by a sea, which both in west and east is called *the comprehending one;* the Greeks call its western part near their country ὠκεανός. This sea separates the inhabitable world from whatever continents or inhabitable islands there may be beyond it, both towards west and east; for it is not navigable on account of the darkness of the air and the thickness of the water, because there is no more any road to be traced, and because the risk is enormous, whilst the profit is nothing. Therefore people of olden times have fixed marks both on the sea and its shores which are intended to deter from entering it.

The inhabitable world does not reach the north on account of the cold, except in certain places where it penetrates into the north in the shape, as it were, of tongues and bays. In the south it reaches as far as the coast of the ocean, which in west and east is connected with the *comprehending ocean.* This southern ocean is navigable. It does not form the utmost southern limit of the inhabitable world. On the contrary, the latter stretches still more southward in the shape of large and small islands which fill the ocean. In this southern region land and water dispute with each other their position, so that in one place the continent protrudes into the sea, whilst in another the sea penetrates deeply into the continent.

The continent protrudes far into the sea in the western half of the earth, and extends its shores far into the south. On the plains of this continent live the western negroes, whence the slaves are brought; and there are the Mountains of the Moon, and on them are the sources of the Nile. On its coast, and the islands before the coast, live the various tribes of the Zanj. There are several bays or gulfs which penetrate into the continent on this western half of the earth—the bay of Berberâ, that of Klysma (the Red Sea), and that of Persia (the Persian Gulf); and between these gulfs the western continent protrudes more or less into the ocean.

In the eastern half of the earth the sea penetrates as deeply into the northern continent as the continent in the western half protrudes into the southern sea, and in many places it has formed bays and estuaries which run far into the continent—bays being parts of the sea, estuaries being the outlets of rivers towards the sea. This sea is mostly called from some island in it or from the coast which borders it. Here, however, we are concerned only with that part of the sea which is bordered by the continent of India, and therefore is called the *Indian Ocean.*

The orographic system of Asia and Europe.

As to the orographic configuration of the inhabitable world, imagine a range of towering mountains like the vertebræ of a pine stretching through the middle latitude of the earth, and in longitude from east to west, passing through China, Tibet, the country of the Turks, Kâbul, Badhakhshân, Ṭokhâristân, Bâmiyân, Elghôr, Khurâsân, Media, Âdharbaijân, Armenia, the Roman

Empire, the country of the Franks, and of the Jalâlika (Gallicians). Long as this range is, it has also a considerable breadth, and, besides, many windings which enclose inhabited plains watered by streams which descend from the mountains both towards north and south. One of these plains is India, limited in the south by the above-mentioned Indian Ocean, and on all three other sides by the lofty mountains, the waters of which flow down to it. But if you have seen the soil of India with your own eyes and meditate on its nature—if you consider the rounded stones found in the earth however deeply you dig, stones that are huge near the mountains and where the rivers have a violent current; stones that are of smaller size at greater distance from the mountains, and where the streams flow more slowly; stones that appear pulverised in the shape of sand where the streams begin to stagnate near their mouths and near the sea—if you consider all this, you could scarcely help thinking that India has once been a sea which by degrees has been filled up by the alluvium of the streams.

Page 97.

India, a recent alluvial formation.

First orientation regarding Madhyadeśa, Kanoj, Mâhûra, and Tânêshar.

The middle of India is the country round Kanoj (Kanauj), which they call *Madhyadeśa*, *i.e.* the middle of the realms. It is the middle or centre from a geographical point of view, in so far as it lies half way between the sea and the mountains, in the midst between the hot and the cold provinces, and also between the eastern and western frontiers of India. But it is a political centre too, because in former times it was the residence of their most famous heroes and kings.

The country of Sindh lies to the west of Kanoj. In marching from our country to Sindh we start from the country of Nîmrôz, *i.e.* the country of Sijistân, whilst marching to *Hind* or India proper we start from the side of Kâbul. This, however, is not the only possible road. You may march into India from all sides, supposing that you can remove the obstacles in the way.

In the mountains which form the frontier of India towards the west there are tribes of the Hindus, or of people near akin to them—rebellious savage races—which extend as far as the farthermost frontiers of the Hindu race.

Kanoj lies to the west of the Ganges, a very large town, but most of it is now in ruins and desolate since the capital has been transferred thence to the city of Bârî, east of the Ganges. Between the two towns there is a distance of three to four days' marches.

As Kanoj (*Kanyâkubja*) has become famous by the children of Pâṇḍu, the city of Mâhûra (*Mathurâ*) has become famous by Vâsudeva. It lies east of the river Jaun (*Yamunâ*). The distance between Mâhûra and Kanoj is 28 *farsakh*.

Tânêshar (*Sthânêśvara*) lies between the two rivers to the north both of Kanoj and Mâhûra, at a distance of nearly 80 *farsakh* from Kanoj, and nearly 50 *farsakh* from Mâhûra.

The river Ganges rises in the mountains which have already been mentioned. Its source is called *Gaṅgâdvâra*. Most of the other rivers of the country also rise in the same mountains, as we have already mentioned in the proper place.

Hindu method of determining distances.

As for the distances between the various parts of India, those who have not themselves actually seen them must rely upon tradition; but unfortunately it is of such a nature that already Ptolemy incessantly complains of its transmitters and their bias towards story-telling. Fortunately I have found out a certain rule by which to control their lies. The Hindus frequently estimate the burden an ox could bear at 2000 and 3000 *manâ* (which is infinitely more than an ox could carry *at once*). In consequence they are compelled to let the caravan make the same march to and fro during many days—in fact, so long until the ox has carried the whole load assigned to it from one end of the route to the other, and then they reckon as the distance between the two places *a march of such a number of days* as the caravan has altogether spent in marching to and fro. It is only with the greatest exertion and caution that we can to some extent correct the statements of the Hindus. However, we could not make up our mind to suppress that which we know on account of that which we do not know. We ask the reader's pardon where there is anything wrong, and now we continue.

From Kanoj to the Tree of Prayâga (Allahabad) and to the eastern coast. Page 98.

A man marching from Kanoj to the south between the two rivers Jaun and Ganges passes the following well-known places:—*Jajjamau*, 12 *farsakh* from Kanoj, each *farsakh* being equal to four miles or one *kurôh; Abhâpûrî*, 8 *farsakh; Kuraha*, 8 *farsakh; Barhamshil*, 8 *farsakh;* the *Tree of Prayâga*, 12 *farsakh*, the place where the water of the Jaun joins the Ganges, where the Hindus torment themselves with various kinds of tortures, which are described in the books about religious sects. The distance from Prayâga to the place where the Ganges flows into the sea is 12 *farsakh* (*sic*).

Other tracts of country extend from the Tree of Prayâga southward towards the coast. *Arku-tîrtha*, 12 *farsakh* from Prayâga; the realm *Uwaryahâr*, 40 *farsakh; Ûrdabîshau* on the coast, 50 *farsakh.*

Thence along the coast towards the east there are countries which are now under the sway of *Jaur;* first *Daraur*, 40 *farsakh* from *Ûrdabîshau; Kânjî*, 30 *farsakh; Malaya*, 40 *farsakh; Kûnk*, 30 *farsakh*, which is the last of Jaur's possessions in this direction.

From Bârî to the mouth of the Ganges.

Marching from Bârî along the Ganges on its eastern side, you pass the following stations:—*Ajodaha* (Ayodhyâ, Oudh), 25 *farsakh* from Bârî; the famous *Banârasî*, 20 *farsakh.*

Thence changing the direction, and marching eastward instead of southward, you come to *Sharwâr*, 35 *farsakh* from Banârasî; *Pâṭaliputra*, 20 *farsakh; Mungîrî*, 15 *farsakh; Janpa*, 30 *farsakh; Dûgumpûr*, 50 *farsakh; Gangâsâyara*, 30 *farsakh*, where the Ganges flows into the sea.

Kanoj through Nepal to Bhôteshar.

Marching from Kanoj towards the east, you come to *Bârî*, 10 *farsakh; Dûgum*, 45 *farsakh;* the empire of *Shilahat*, 10 *farsakh;* the town *Bihat*, 12 *farsakh*. Farther on the country to the right is called *Tilwat*, the inhabitants *Tarû*, people of very black colour and flat-nosed like the Turks. Thence you come to the mountains of Kâmrû, which stretch away as far as the sea.

Opposite Tilwat the country to the left is the realm of Naipâl. A man who had travelled in those countries gave me the following report:—"When in Tanwat, he left the easterly direction and turned to the left. He marched to Naipâl, a distance of 20 *farsakh*, most of which was ascending country. From Naipâl he came to Bhôteshar in thirty days, a distance of nearly 80 *farsakh*, in which there is more ascending than descending country. And there is a water which is several times crossed on bridges consisting of planks tied with cords to two canes, which stretch from rock to rock, and are fastened to milestones constructed on either side. People carry the burdens on their shoulders over such a bridge, whilst below, at a depth of 100 yards, the water foams as white as snow, threatening to shatter the rocks. On the other side of the bridges, the burdens are transported on the back of goats. My reporter told me that he had there seen gazelles with four eyes; that this was not an accidental misformation of nature, but that the whole species was of this nature.

"Bhôteshar is the first frontier of Tibet. There the language changes as well as the costumes and the anthropological character of the people. Thence the distance to the top of the highest peak is 20 *farsakh*. From the height of this mountain, India appears as a black expanse below the mist, the mountains lying below this peak like small hills, and Tibet and China appear as red. The descent towards Tibet and China is less than one *farsakh.*"

From Kanoj to Banavâs.

Page 99.

Marching from Kanoj towards the south-east, on the western side of the Ganges, you come to the realm of *Jajâhûtî*, 30 *farsakh* from Kanoj. The capital of the country is *Kajûrâha*. Between this town and Kanoj there are two of the most famous fortresses of India, Gwâliyar (Gwalioṛ) and Kâlanjar. *Dahâla* [—*farsakh*], a country the capital of which is Tiaurî, and the ruler of which is now Gangeya.

The realm of *Kannakara*, 20 *farsakh*. *Apsûr*, *Banavâs*, on the sea-coast.

From Kanoj to Bazâna.

Marching from Kanoj towards the south-west, you come to *Âsî*, 18 *farsakh* from Kanoj; *Sahanyâ*, 17 *farsakh; Jandrâ*, 18 *farsakh; Râjaurî*, 15 *farsakh; Bazâna*, the capital of Guzarat, 20 *farsakh.* This town is called *Nârâyan* by our people. After it had fallen into decay the inhabitants migrated to another place called Jadûra (?).

From Mâhûra to Dhâr.

The distance between Mâhûra and Kanoj is the same as that between Kanoj and Bazâna, viz. 28 *farsakh.* If a man travels from Mâhûra to Ûjain, he passes through villages which are only five *farsakh* and less distant from each other. At the end of a march of 35 *farsakh*, he comes to a large village called *Dûdahî;* thence to *Bâmahûr*, 17 *farsakh* from Dûdahi; *Bhâilsân*, 5 *farsakh*, a place most famous among the Hindus. The name of the town is identical with that of the idol worshipped there. Thence to *Ardîn*, 9 *farsakh.* The idol worshipped there is called *Mahakâla*. *Dhâr*, 7 *farsakh.*

From Bazâna to Mandagir.

Marching from Bazâna southward, you come to *Maiwâr*, 25 *farsakh* from Bazâna. This is a kingdom the capital of which is *Jattaraur*. From this town to Mâlavâ and its capital, *Dhâr*, the distance is 20 *farsakh.* The city of Ûjain lies 7 *farsakh* to the east of *Dhâr*.

From Ûjain to Bhâilasân, which likewise belongs to Mâlavâ, the distance is 10 *farsakh.*

Marching from Dhâr southward, you come to *Bhûmihara*, 20 *farsakh* from Dhâr; *Kand*, 20 *farsakh; Namâvur*, on the banks of the Narmadâ (Nerbudda), 10 *farsakh; Alîspûr*, 20 *farsakh; Mandagir*, on the banks of the river Gôdâvar, 60 *farsakh*.

From Dhâr to Tâna.

Again marching from Dhâr southward, you come to the valley of *Namiyya*, 7 *farsakh* from Dhâr; *Mahratta-Dêsh*, 18 *farsakh;* the province of *Kunkan*, and its capital, Tâna, on the sea-coast, 25 *farsakh*.

Notes about various animals of India.

People relate that in the plains of Kunkan, called *Dânak*, there lives an animal called *sharava* (Skr. *śarabha*). It has four feet, but also on the back it has something like four feet directed upwards. It has a small proboscis, but two big horns with which it attacks the elephant and cleaves it in two. It has the shape of a buffalo, but is larger than a *gaṇḍa* (rhinoceros). According to popular tales, it sometimes rams some animal with its horns, raises it or part of it towards its back, so that it comes to lie between its upper feet. There it becomes a putrid mass of worms, which work their way into the back of the animal. In consequence it continually rubs itself against the trees, and finally it perishes. Of the same animal people relate that sometimes, when hearing the thunder, it takes it to be the voice of some animal. Immediately it proceeds to attack this imaginary foe; in pursuing him it climbs up to the top of the mountain-peaks, and thence leaps towards him. Of course, it plunges into the depth and is dashed to pieces.

The *gaṇḍa* exists in large numbers in India, more particularly about the Ganges. It is of the build of a buffalo, has a black scaly skin, and dewlaps hanging down under the chin. It has three yellow hoofs on each foot, the biggest one forward, the others on both sides. The tail is not long; the eyes lie low, farther down the cheek than is the case with all other animals. On the top of the nose there is a single horn which is

Page 100. bent upwards. The Brahmins have the privilege of eating the flesh of the *gaṇḍa*. I have myself witnessed how an elephant coming across a young *gaṇḍa* was attacked by it. The *gaṇḍa* wounded with its horn a forefoot of the elephant, and threw it down on its face.

I thought that the *gaṇḍa* was the rhinoceros (or *karkadann*), but a man who had visited Sufâla, in the country of the Negroes, told me that the *kark*, which the Negroes call *impîlâ*, the horn of which furnishes the material for the handles of our knives, comes nearer this description than the rhinoceros. It has various colours. On the skull it has a conical horn, broad at the root, but not very high. The shaft of the horn (lit. its arrow) is black inside, and white everywhere else. On the front it has a second and longer horn of the same description, which becomes erect as soon as the animal wants to ram with it. It sharpens this horn against the rocks, so that it cuts and pierces. It has hoofs, and a hairy tail like the tail of an ass.

There are crocodiles in the rivers of India as in the Nile, a fact which led simple Aljâḥiz, in his ignorance of the courses of the rivers and the configuration of the ocean, to think that the river of Muhrân (the river Sindh) was a branch of the Nile. Besides, there are other marvellous animals in the rivers of India of the crocodile tribe, *makara*, curious kinds of fishes, and an animal like a leather-bag, which appears to the ships and plays in swimming. It is called *burlû* (porpoise ?). I suppose it to be the dolphin or a kind of dolphin. People say that it has a hole on the head for taking breath like the dolphin.

In the rivers of Southern India there is an animal called by various names, *grâha*, *jalatantu*, and *tanduâ*. It is thin, but very long. People say it spies and lies in wait for those who enter the water and stand in it, whether men or animals, and at once attacks them. First it circles round the prey at some distance, until its length comes to an end. Then it draws itself together, and winds itself like a knot round the feet of the prey, which is thus thrown off its legs and perishes. A man who had seen the animal told me that it has the head of a dog, and a tail to which there are attached many long tentacles, which it winds round the prey, in case the latter is not weary enough. By means of these feelers it drags the prey towards the tail itself, and when once firmly encircled by the tail the animal is lost.

After this digression we return to our subject.

From Bazâna to Somanâth.

Marching from Bazâna towards the south-west, you come to *Anhilvâra*, 60 *farsakh* from Bazâna; *Somanâth*, on the sea-coast, 50 *farsakh*.

From Anhilvâra to Loharânî.

Marching from Anhilvâra southward, you come to *Lârdêsh*, to the two capitals of the country, *Bihrôj* and *Rihanjûr*, 42 *farsakh* from Anhilvâra. Both are on the sea-coast to the east of Tâna.

Marching from Bazâna towards the west, you come to *Mûltân*, 50 *farsakh* from Bazâna; *Bhâtî*, 15 *farsakh*.

Marching from Bhâtî towards the south-west, you come to *Arôr*, 15 *farsakh* from Bhâtî, a township between two arms of the Sindh River; *Bamhanwâ Almanṣûra*, 20 *farsakh*; *Lôharânî*, at the mouth of the Sindh River, 30 *farsakh*.

From Kanoj to Kashmir.

Marching from Kanoj towards the north-north-west, you come to *Shirshâraha*, 50 *farsakh* from Kanoj; *Pinjaur*, 18 *farsakh*, situated on the mountains, whilst opposite it in the plain there lies the city of Tânêshar; *Dahmâla*, the capital of Jâlandhar, at the foot of the mountains, 18 *farsakh*; *Ballâwar*, 10 *farsakh*; thence marching westward, you come to *Ladda*, 13 *farsakh*; the fortress *Râjagirî*, 8 *farsakh*; thence marching northward, you come to *Kashmîr*, 25 *farsakh*.

From Kan to Ghazna. Page 101.

Marching from Kanoj towards the west, you come to *Diyâmau*, 10 *farsakh* from Kanoj; *Kutî*, 10 *farsakh*; *Ânâr*, 10 *farsakh*; *Mîrat*, 10 *farsakh*; *Pânipat*, 10 *farsakh*. Between the latter two places flows the river *Jaun*; *Kawītal*, 10 *farsakh*; *Sunnâm*, 10 *farsakh*.

Thence marching towards the north-west, you come to *Âdittahaur*, 9 *farsakh*; *Jajjanîr*, 6 *farsakh*; *Mandahûkûr*, the capital of Lauhâwur, east of the river Irâwa, 8 *farsakh*; the river *Candrâha*, 12 *farsakh*; the river *Jailam*, west of the river Biyatta, 8 *farsakh*; *Waihind*, the capital of Ḳandhâr, west of the river Sindh, 20 *farsakh*; *Purshâwar*, 14 *farsakh*; *Dunpûr*, 15 *farsakh*; *Kâbul*, 12 *farsakh*; *Ghazna*, 17 *farsakh*.

Notes about Kashmîr.

Kashmîr lies on a plateau surrounded by high inaccessible mountains. The south and east of the country belong to the Hindus, the west to various kings, the Bolar-Shâh and the Shugnân-Shâh, and the more remote parts up to the frontiers of Badhakhshân, to the Wakhân-Shâh. The north and part of the east of the country belong to the Turks of Khoten and Tibet. The distance from the peak of Bhôteshar to Kashmîr through Tibet amounts to nearly 300 *farsakh*.

The inhabitants of Kashmîr are pedestrians, they have no riding animals nor elephants. The noble among them ride in palankins called *katt*, carried on the shoulders of men. They are particularly anxious about the natural strength of their country, and therefore take always much care to keep a strong hold upon the entrances and roads leading into it. In consequence it is very difficult to have any commerce with them. In former times they used to allow one or two foreigners to enter their country, particularly Jews, but at present they do not allow any Hindu whom they do not know personally to enter, much less other people.

The best known entrance to Kashmîr is from the town Babrahân, half way between the rivers Sindh and Jailam. Thence to the bridge over the river, where the water of the Kusnârî is joined by that of the Mahwî, both of which come from the mountains of Shamîlân, and fall into the Jailam, the distance is 8 *farsakh*.

Thence you reach in five days the beginning of the ravine whence the river Jailam comes; at the other end of this ravine is the watch-station *Dvâr*, on both sides of the river Jailam. Thence, leaving the ravine, you enter the plain, and reach in two more days Addishtân, the capital of Kashmîr, passing on the road the village Ûshkârâ, which lies on both sides of the valley, in the same manner as Baramûlâ.

The city of Kashmîr covers a space of four *farsakh*, being built along both banks of the river Jailam, which are connected with each other by bridges and ferry-boats. The Jailam rises in the mountains Haramakôt, where also the Ganges rises, cold, impenetrable regions where the snow never melts nor disappears. Behind them there is *Mahâcîn, i.e.* Great China. When the Jailam has left the mountains, and has flowed two days' journey, it passes through Addishtân. Four *farsakh* farther on it enters a swamp of one square *farsakh*. The people have their plantations on the borders of this swamp, and on such parts of it as they manage to reclaim. Leaving this swamp, the Jailam passes the town Ûshkârâ, and then enters the above-mentioned ravine.

The upper course of the Sindh river and the north and north-west frontiers of India.

The river Sindh rises in the mountains Unang in the territory of the Turks, which you can reach in the following way:—Leaving the ravine by which you enter Kashmîr and entering the plateau, then you have for a march of two more days on your left the mountains of Bolor and Shamîlân, Turkish tribes who are called *Bhattavaryân*. Their king has the title Bhatta-Shâh. Their towns are Gilgit, Aswira, and Shiltâs, and their language is the Turkish. Kashmîr suffers much from their inroads. Marching on the left side of the river, you always pass through cultivated ground and reach the capital; marching on the right side, you pass through villages, one close to the other, south of the capital, and thence you reach the mountain Kulârjak,

Page 102

which is like a cupola, similar to the mountain Dunbâwand. The snow there never melts. It is always visible from the region of Tâkeshar and Lauhâwar (Lahore). The distance between this peak and the plateau of Kashmîr is two *farsakh*. The fortress Râjâgirî lies south of it, and the fortress Lahûr west of it, the two strongest places I have ever seen. The town Râjâwarî is three *farsakh* distant from the peak. This is the farthest place to which our merchants trade, and beyond which they never pass.

This is the frontier of India from the north.

In the western frontier mountains of India there live various tribes of the Afghans, and extend up to the neighbourhood of the Sindh Valley.

The western and southern frontiers of India.

The southern frontier of India is formed by the ocean. The coast of India begins with Tîz, the capital of Makrân, and extends thence in a south-eastern direction towards the region of Al-daibal, over a distance of 40 *farsakh*. Between the two places lies the Gulf of Tûrân. A gulf is like an angle or a winding line of water penetrating from the ocean into the continent, and is dangerous for navigation, specially on account of ebb and flood. An estuary is something similar to a gulf, but is not formed by the ocean's penetrating into the continent. It is formed by an expanse of flowing water, which there is changed into standing water and is connected with the ocean. These estuaries, too, are dangerous for the ships, because the water is sweet and does not bear heavy bodies as well as salt water does.

After the above-mentioned gulf follow the small Munha, the great Munha, then the Bawârij, *i.e.* the pirates of Kacch and Sômanâth. They are thus called because they commit their robberies on sea in ships called *bîra*. The places on the coast are :—*Tawalleshar*, 50 *farsakh* from Daibal; *Lôharânî*, 12 *farsakh*; *Baga*, 12 *farsakh*; *Kacch*, where the *mukl*-tree grows, and *Bârôi*, 6 *farsakh*; *Sômanâth*, 14 *farsakh*; *Kanbâyat*, 30 *farsakh; Asawil*, 2 days; *Bihrôj*, 30 *farsakh* (?); *Sandân*, 50 *farsakh; Sûbâra*, 6 *farsakh; Tâna*, 5 *farsakh*.

Thence the coast-line comes to the country *Lârân*, in which lies the city of *Jîmûr*, then to *Vallabha, Kânjî, Darvad*. Next follows a great bay in which *Singaldîb* lies, *i.e.* the island Sarandîb (Ceylon). Round the bay lies the city of *Panjayâvar* (*sic*). When this city had fallen into ruins, the king, Jaur, built instead of it, on the coast towards the west, a new city which he called *Padnâr*.

The next place on the coast is *Ûmmalnâra*, then *Râmsher* (Râmeshar ?) opposite Sarandîb; the distance of the sea between them is 12 *farsakh*. The distance from Panjayâvar to Râmsher is 40 *farsakh*, that between Râmsher and *Setubandha* 2 *farsakh*. Setubandha means *bridge of the ocean*. It is the dike of Râma, the son of Daśaratha, which he built from the continent to the castle Laṅkâ. At present it consists of isolated mountains between which the ocean flows. Sixteen *farsakh* from Setubandha towards the east is *Kihkind*, the mountains of the monkeys. Every day the king of the monkeys comes out of the thicket together with his hosts, and settles down in particular seats prepared for them. The inhabitants of that region prepare for them cooked rice, and bring it to them on leaves. After having eaten it they return into the thicket, but in case they are neglected, this would be the ruin of the country, as they are not only numerous, but also savage and aggressive. According to the popular belief, they are a race of men changed into monkeys on account of the help which they had afforded to Râma when making war against the demons; he is believed to have bequeathed those villages to them as a legacy. When a man happens to fall in with them, and he recites to them the poetry of Râma and pronounces the incantations of Râma, they will quietly listen to him; they will even lead on the right path him who has gone astray and give him meat and drink. At all events, thus the matter stands according to popular belief. If there is any truth in this, the effect must be produced by the melody, the like of which we have already mentioned in connection with the hunting of gazelles (v. p. 195).

Page 103.

Islands in the Indian and Chinese Seas.

The eastern islands in this ocean, which are nearer to China than to India, are the islands of the *Zâbaj*, called by the Hindus *Suvarṇa-dvîpa*, *i.e.* the gold islands. The western islands in this ocean are those of the Zanj (Negroes), and those in the middle are the islands *Ramn* and the Dîva islands (Malediva, Laccadiva), to which belong also the Ḳumair islands. It is peculiar to the Dîva islands that they rise slowly; first, there appears a sandy tract above the surface of the ocean; it rises more and more and extends in all directions, till at last it becomes a firm soil, whilst at the same time another island falls into decay and melts away, finally is submerged and disappears in the ocean. As soon as the inhabitants become aware of this process, they search for a new island of increasing fertility, transport there their cocoa-nut palms, date palms, cereals, and household goods, and emigrate to it. These islands are, according to their products, divided into two classes, the *Dîva-kûdha, i.e.* the Dîva of the kauri-shells, because there they gather kauri-shells from the branches of the cocoa-nut palms which they plant in the sea, and *Dîva-kanbâr, i.e.* the Dîva of the cords twisted from cocoanut fibres, and used for fastening together the planks of the ships.

The island of *Alwâḳwâḳ* belongs to the Ḳumair islands. *Ḳumair* is not, as common people believe, the name of a tree which produces screaming human heads instead of fruits, but the name of a people the colour of whom is whitish. They are of short stature and of a build like that of the Turks. They practise the religion of the Hindus, and have the custom of piercing their ears. Some of the inhabitants of the *Wâḳwâḳ* island are of black colour. In our countries there is a great demand for them as slaves. People fetch from thence the black ebony-wood; it is the pith of a tree, the other parts of which are thrown away, whilst the kinds of wood called *mulamma'* and *shauḥaṭ* and the yellow sandal-wood are brought from the country of the Zanj (Negroes).

In former times there were pearl-banks in the bay of Sarandîb (Ceylon), but at present they have been abandoned. Since the Sarandîb pearls have disappeared, other pearls have been found at Sufâla in the country of the Zanj, so that people say the pearls of Sarandîb have migrated to Sufâla.

On the rainfall in India.

India has the tropical rains in summer, which is called *varshakâla*, and these rains are the more copious and last the longer the more northward the situation of a province of India is, and the less it is intersected by ranges of mountains. The people of Mûltân used to tell me that they have no *varshakâla*, but the more northern provinces nearer the mountains have the *varshakâla*. In Bhâtal and Indravêdi it begins with the month Âshâḍha, and it rains continually for four months as though water-buckets were poured out. In provinces still farther northward, round the mountains of Kashmîr up to the peak of *Jûdarî* between Dunpûr and Barshâwar, copious rain falls during two and a half months, beginning with the month Śrâvaṇa. However, on the other side of this peak there is no rainfall; for the clouds in the north are very heavy, and do not rise much above the surface. When, then, they reach the mountains, the mountain-sides strike against them, and the clouds are pressed like olives or grapes, in consequence of which the rain pours down, and the clouds never pass beyond the mountains. Therefore Kashmîr has no *varshakâla*, but continual snowfall during two and a half months, beginning with Mâgha, and shortly after the middle of Caitra continual rain sets in for a few days, melting the snow and cleansing the earth. This rule seldom has an exception; however, a certain amount of extraordinary meteorological occurrences is peculiar to every province of India.

CHAPTER XIX.

ON THE NAMES OF THE PLANETS, THE SIGNS OF THE ZODIAC, THE LUNAR STATIONS, AND RELATED SUBJECTS.

We have already mentioned, near the beginning of the book, that the language of the Hindus is extremely rich in nouns, both original and derivative, so that in some instances they call *one* thing by a multitude of different names. So I have heard them saying that they have a thousand names all meaning *sun*; and, no doubt, each planet has quite as many, or nearly as many names, since they could not do with less (for the purposes of versification). **Page 104.**

The names of the days of the week.

The names of the week-days are the best known names of the planets connected with the word *bâra*, which follows after the planet's name, as in Persian the word *shambih* follows after the number of the week-day (*dûshambih*, *sihshambih*, &c.). So they say—

Âditya bâra, *i.e.* Sunday.
Soma bâra, *i.e.* Monday.
Maṅgala bâra, *i.e.* Tuesday.
Budha bâra, *i.e.* Wednesday.
Bṛihaspati bâra, *i.e.* Thursday.
Śukra bâra, *i.e.* Friday.
Śanaiścara bâra, *i.e.* Saturday.

And thus they go on counting, beginning anew with Sunday, Monday, &c.

On the Domini dierum.

Muslim astronomers call the planets the *lords of the days*, and, in counting the *hours* of the day, they begin with the *dominus* of the day, and then count the planets in the order from above to below. For instance, the sun is the *dominus* of the first day, and at the same time the *dominus* of its first hour. The second hour is ruled by the planet of the sphere next under the sphere of the sun, *i.e.* Venus. The third hour is ruled by Mercury, and the fourth by the moon. Therewith the descending from the sun to the *æther*, *i.e.* the atmosphere of the earth, has an end, and in counting they return to Saturn. According to this system, the *dominus* of the twenty-fifth hour is the moon, and this is the first hour of Monday. So the moon is not only the *dominus* of the first hour of Monday, but also the *dominus* of the whole day.

On ὧραι καιρικαί and ὧραι ἰσημεριναί.

In all this there is only one difference between our system and that of the Hindus, viz. that *we* use the ὧραι καιρικαί, so that the thirteenth planet, counted from the *dominus diei*, is the *dominus* of the succeeding night. This is the third planet if you count in an opposite direction, *i.e.* ascending from the lower planet-spheres to the higher. On the contrary, the Hindus make the *dominus diei* the *dominus* of the whole νυχθήμερον, so that day and night follow each other without having each a separate *dominus*. This, at all events, is the practice of the people at large.

Sometimes, however, their chronological method make me think that the ὧραι καιρικαί were not entirely unknown to them. They call the hour *hora*, and by the same name they call the half of a zodiacal sign in the calculation of the *nímbahra*. The following calculation of the *dominus horæ* is derived from one of their astronomical handbooks :—

"Divide the distance between the sun and the degree of the *ascendens* measured by equal degrees, by 15, and add to the quotient 1, dropping a fraction if there be any. This sum is then counted off from the *dominus diei*, according to the succession of the planets from above to below." (The planet you arrive at in the end is the *dominus* of the hour in question.) This calculation is more of a nature to make us think of ὧραι καιρικαί as having been used, than of ὧραι ἰσημεριναί.

Order of the planets and their notation.

It is a custom of the Hindus to enumerate the planets in the order of the week-days. They will persist in using it in their astronomical handbooks, as well as in other books, and they decline to use any other order, though it be much more correct.

The Greeks mark the planets with figures, to fix thereby their limits on the *astrolabe* in an easily intelligible manner, images which are not letters of the alphabet. The Hindus use a similar system of abridgement; however, *their* figures are not images invented for the purpose, but the initial characters of the names of the planets, *e.g.* *â* = *Âditya*, or the sun; *c* = *Candra*, or the moon; *b* = *Budha*, or Mercury.

The following table exhibits the commonest names of the seven planets :—

Page 105.

The Planets.	Their Names in the Indian Language.
Sun . .	Âditya, sûrya, bhânu, arka, divâkara, ravi, bibatâ (?), heli.
Moon .	Soma, candra, indu, himagu, śîtaraśmi, himaraśmi, śîtâṁśu, śîtadîdhiti, himamayûkha.
Mars . .	Maṅgala, bhaumya, kuja, âra, vakra, âvaneya, mâheya, krûrâkshi (?), rakta.
Mercury	Budha, saumya, câandra, jña, bodhana, vitta (?), hemna.
Jupiter .	Vṛihaspati, guru, jîva, devejya, devapurohita, devamantrin, aṅgiras, sûri, devapitâ.
Venus .	Śukra, bhṛigu, sita, bhârgava, âsbati (?), dânavaguru, bhṛiguputra, âsphujit (?).
Saturn .	Śanaiścara, manda, asita, koṇa, âdityaputra, saura, ârki, sûryaputra.

On the twelve suns.

The multiplicity of *names* of the sun as exhibited in the previous table was the cause which led the theologians to assume also a multiplicity of *suns*, so that according to them there are twelve suns, each of which rises in a particular month. The book *Vishṇu-dharma* says: "Vishṇu, *i.e.* Nârâyaṇa, who is without beginning in time and without end, divided himself for the angels into twelve parts, which became sons to Kaśyapa. These are the suns rising in the single months." Those, however, who do not believe that the multiplicity of names is the source of this theory of twelve suns, point out that the other planets also have many names, but each only one body, and that, besides, the names of the sun are not only twelve, but many more. The names are derived from words with generic meanings, *e.g.* *Âditya, i.e. the beginning,* because the sun is the beginning of the whole. *Savitṛi* means every being which has a progeny, and since all progeny in the world originates with the sun, he is called *Savitṛi*. Further, the sun is called *Ravi*, because he dries wet substances. The juice in the plants is called *rasa*, and he who takes it out of them is called *ravi*.

Names of the moon. Page 106.

The moon too, the companion of the sun, has many names, *e.g.* *Soma*, because she is *lucky*, and everything lucky is called *somagraha*, whilst all that is unlucky is called *pâpagraha*. Further, *Niśeśa, i.e.* lord of the night, *Nakshatranâtha, i.e.* lord of the lunar stations, *Dvijeśvara, i.e.* lord of the Brahmins, *Śîtâṁśu, i.e.* having a cold ray, because the moon's globe is *watery*, which is a blessing to the earth. When the solar ray meets the moon, the ray becomes as cool as the moon herself, then, being reflected, it illuminates the darkness, makes the night cool and extinguishes any hurtful kind of combustion wrought by the sun. Similarly the moon is also called *Candra*, which means the *left eye of Nârâyaṇa,* as the sun is his right eye.

The names of the months.

The following table exhibits the names of the months Disturbances and differences in lists of these names proceed from the causes which we shall mention (v. p. 228) when speaking of the enumeration of the different earths.

The Months.	Their Suns according to the *Vishṇu-dharma*.	The Meaning of these Names according to the *Vishṇu-dharma*.	The Suns according to the *Âditya-purana*.	Vernacular Names.
Caitra	Vishṇu	Moving about in heaven, not resting	Aṁśumant	Ravi.
Vaiśâkha	Aryaman	Punishing and beating the rebels. In consequence they do not oppose him, from fear	Savitṛi	Vishṇu.
Jyaishṭha	Vivasvant	He looks at the whole in general, not in detail	Bhânu	Dhâtṛi.
Âshâḍha	Aṁśu	Having rays	Vivasvant	Vidhâtṛi.
Śrâvaṇa	Parjanya	Affording help like the rain	Vishṇu	Aryaman.
Bhâdrapada	Varuṇa	He prepares the whole	Indra	Bhaga.
Âśvayuja	Indra	Companion and lord	Dhâtṛi	Savitṛi.
Kârttika	Dhâtṛi	He gives benefits to men and rules them	Bhaga	Pûshan.
Mârgaśîrsha	Mitra	Beloved by the world	Pûshan	Tvashṭṛi.
Pausha	Pûshan	Nourishment, for he nourishes men	Mitra	Arka.
Mâgha	Bhaga	Lovely, desired by the universe	Varuṇa	Divâkara.
Phâlguna	Tvashṭṛi	He provides the whole with good	Aryaman	Aṁśu.

Page 107.

The names of the months derived from those of the lunar mansions.

People think, with regard to the order of the names of suns as given by the *Vishṇu-dharma*, that it is correct and undisturbed; for Vâsudeva has a separate name in each month, and his worshippers begin the months with Mârgaśîrsha, in which his name is *Keśava*. If you count his names one after the other, you find that one which he has in the month Caitra, Vishṇu, in accordance with the tradition of the *Vishṇu-dharma*.

The names of the months are related to those of the lunar stations. As two or three stations belong to each month, the name of the month is derived from one of them. We have in the following table written these particular stations with red ink (in this translation with an asterisk), in order to point out their relationship with the names of the months.

If Jupiter shines in some lunar station, the month to which this station belongs is considered as *the dominant of the year*, and the whole year is called by the name of this month.

If the names of the month given in the following table differ in some respects from those used heretofore, the reader must know that the names which we have hitherto used are the vernacular or vulgar ones, whilst those given in this table are the classical:—

The Months.		The Lunar Stations.	The Months.		The Lunar Stations.
Kârttika	3	Kṛittikâ.*	Vaiśâkha	16	Viśâkhâ.*
	4	Rohiṇî.		17	Anurâdhâ.
Mârgaśîrsha	5	Mṛigaśîrsha.*	Jyaishṭha	18	Jyeshṭhâ.*
	6	Ârdrâ.		19	Mûla.
Pausha	7	Punarvasu.	Âshâḍha	20	Pûrvâshâḍhâ *
	8	Pushya.*		21	Uttarâshâḍhâ.
Mâgha	9	Âślêsha.	S'râvaṇa	22	S'ravaṇa.*
	10	Maghâ.*		23	Dhanishta.
Phâlguna	11	Pûrva-phalgunî.*	Bhâdrapadâ	24	S'atabhishaj.
	12	Uttara-phalgunî.		25	Pûrva-bhadrapadâ.*
	13	Hasta.		26	Uttara-bhâdrapadâ.
Caitra.	14	Citrâ.*	Âśvayuja	27	Revatî.
	15	Svâtî.		1	Aśvinî.*
				2	Bharaṇî.

The signs of the zodiac have names corresponding to the images which they represent, and which are the same among the Hindus as among all other nations. The third sign is called *Mithuna*, which means a pair consisting of a boy and a girl; in fact, the same as *the Twins*, the well-known image of this sign.

On the names of the signs of the Zodiac. Page 108.

Varâhamihira says in the larger book of nativities that the word applies to a man holding a lyre and a club, which makes me think that he identified Mithuna with Orion (*Aljabbâr*). And this is the opinion of common people in general, to such a degree that the station is known as *Aljauzâ* (instead of *the Twins*), though Aljauzâ does not belong to the image of this sign.

The same author explains the image of the sixth sign as *a ship, and in its hand an ear of corn.* I am inclined to think that in our manuscript there is a lacuna in this place, for *a ship* has no *hand.* The Hindus call this sign *Kanyâ*, *i.e.* the virgin girl, and perhaps the passage in question ran originally thus: "*A virgin in a ship holding an ear of corn in her hand.*" This is the lunar station *Alsimâk Al'a'zal* (*Spiça*). The word *ship* makes one think that the author meant the lunar station *Al'awwâ* (β, η, γ, δ, ϵ, Virginis), for the stars of Al'awwâ form a line, the end of which is a curve (like the keel of a ship).

The image of the seventh sign he declares to be *fire.* It is called *Tulâ* = balance.

Of the tenth sign Varâhamihira says that it has the face of a goat, whilst the remainder is a *makara* (hippopotamus). However, after having compared the sign with a *makara*, he might have saved himself the trouble of attributing to it the face of a goat. Only the Greeks require the latter description, because they consider the sign as composed of two animals, as a goat in the part above the breast and as a fish in the lower part. But the aquatic animal called *makara*, as people describe it, does not require to be explained as a composition of two animals.

The image of the eleventh sign he calls a bucket, and the name, *Kumbha*, corresponds to this statement. However, they sometimes enumerate this sign or part of it among *the human figures*, this proves that they, following the example of the Greeks, see in it *Aquarius*.

The image of the twelfth sign he describes as the figure of two fishes, although the name of the sign in all languages signifies only one fish.

Besides the well-known names, Varâhamihira mentions also certain Indian names of the signs which are not generally known. We have united both kinds in the following table :—

The Zodiacal Signs.	Their Common Names.	Names which are not generally known.	The Zodiacal Signs.	Their Common Names.	Names which are not generally known.
0	Mesha.	Kriya.	6	Tulâ.	Jûga.
1	Vṛishan.	Tâmbiru.	7	Vṛiścika.	Kaurba.
2	Mithuna.	Jituma.	8	Dhanu.	Taukshika.
3	Karkaṭa.	Kulîra.	9	Makara.	Agokîru.
4	Siṁha.	Liyaya.	10	Kumbah.	Udruvaga.
5	Kanyâ.	Pârtîna.	11	Mîna.	Anta, *also* Jitu.

It is the custom of the Hindus in enumerating the zodiacal signs not to begin with 0 for *Aries* and 1 for *Taurus*, but to begin with 1 for *Aries* and 2 for *Taurus*, &c., so that *Pisces* are No. 12.

CHAPTER XX.

ON THE BRAHMÂṆḌA.

The egg of Brahman, its coming forth from the water

Page 109.

BRAHMÂṆḌA means *the egg of Brahman*, and applies in reality to the whole of heaven (αἰθήρ), on account of its being round, and of the particular kind of its motion. It applies even to the whole world, in so far as it is divided into an upper and an under part. When they enumerate the heavens, they call the sum of them Brahmâṇḍa. The Hindus, however, are devoid of training in astronomy, and have no correct astronomical notions. In consequence, they believe that the earth is at rest, more particularly as they, when describing the bliss of paradise as something like worldly happiness, make the earth the dwelling-place of the different classes of gods, angels, &c., to whom they attribute locomotion and the direction from the upper worlds to the lower.

According to the enigmatic expressions of their tradition, the water was before every other thing, and it filled the space of the whole world. This was, as I understand them, at the beginning of the day of the soul (*purushâhorâtra*, p. 332), and the beginning of formation and combination. Further, they say the water was rolling and foaming. Then something white came forth from the water, of which the Creator created the egg of Brahman. Now, according to some, the egg broke; Brahman came forth from it, the one half became the heaven, the other the earth, and the broken bits between the two halves became the rains. If they said *moun-*

tains instead of *rains*, the matter would be somewhat more plausible. According to others, God spoke to Brahman: "I create an egg, which I make for thy dwelling in it." He had created it of the above mentioned foam of the water, but when the water sank and was absorbed, the egg broke into two halves.

Greek parallel: Asclepius.

Similar opinions were held by the ancient Greeks regarding Asclepius, the inventor of the medical art; for, according to Galenus, they represent him as holding an egg in his hand, whereby they mean to indicate that the world is round, the egg an image of the universe, and that the whole world needs the medical art. Asclepius does not hold a lower position in the belief of the Greeks than Brahman in the belief of the Hindus, for they say that he is a divine power, and that his name is derived from his action, *i.e.* protecting against dryness, which means death, because death occurs when dryness and cold are prevalent. As for his natural origin, they call him the son of Apollo, the son of Phlegyas (?), and the son of Kronos, *i.e.* the planet Saturn. By this system of affiliation they mean to attribute to him the force of a threefold god.

Water the first element of creation. The egg of Brahman broken in two halves.

The theory of the Hindus, that the water existed before all creation, rests on this, that it is the cause of the cohesion of the atoms of everything, the cause of the growing of everything, and of the duration of life in every animated being. Thus the water is an instrument in the hand of the Creator when he wants to create something out of matter. A similar idea is propounded by the Koran xi. 9: "And his (God's) *throne was on the water*." Whether you explain it in an external way as an individual body called by this name, and which God orders us to venerate, or whether you give it the intrinsic meaning of *realm*, *i.e.* God's realm, or the like, in any case the meaning is this, that at that time beside God there was nothing but the water and his throne. If this our book were not restricted to the ideas of one single nation, we should produce from the belief of the nations who lived in ancient times in and round Babel ideas similar to the egg of Brahman, and even more stupid and unmeaning than that.

The theory of the division of the egg into two halves proves that its originator was the contrary of a scientific man, one who did not know that the heaven comprehends the earth, as the shell of the egg of Brahman comprehends its yolk. He imagined the earth to be below and the heaven in only one of the six directions from the earth, *i.e.* above it. If he had known the truth, he might have spared himself the theory of the breaking of the egg. However, he wished by his theory to describe one half of the egg as spread out for the earth, and the other half as placed upon it for a cupola, trying to outvie Ptolemy in the planispheric representation of a globe, but without success.

Page 110.

Quotation from Plato's *Timæus.*

There have always been similar fancies afloat, which everybody interprets as best suits his religion and philosophy. So Plato says in his *Timæus* something like the Brahmâṇḍa: "The Creator cut a straight thread into halves. With each of them he described a circle, so that the two circles met in two places, and one of them he divided into seven parts." In these words he hints, as is his custom, at the original two motions of the universe (from east to west in the diurnal rotation, and from west to east in the precession of the equinoxes), and at the globes of the planets.

Quotation from Brahmagupta.

Brahmagupta says in the first chapter of the *Brahmasiddhânta*, where he enumerates the heavens, placing the moon in the nearest heaven, the other planets in the following ones, and Saturn in the seventh: "The fixed stars are in the eighth heaven, and this has been created round in order to last for ever, that in it the pious may be rewarded, the wicked be punished, since there is nothing behind it." He indicates in this chapter that the heavens are identical with the spheres, and he gives them in an order which differs from that of the traditional literature of their creed, as we shall show hereafter in the proper place. He indicates, too, that the *round* can only be slowly influenced from without. He evinces his knowledge of the Aristotelic notions regarding the round form and the rotating motion, and that there is no body in existence behind the spheres.

If it is of this description, evidently Brahmâṇḍa is the totality of the spheres, *i.e.* the αἰθήρ, in fact, the universe, for retribution in another life takes place, according to the ideas of the Hindus, within it.

Quotation from the *Siddhânta* of Pulisa.

Pulisa says in his *Siddhânta:* "The totality of the world is the sum of earth, water, fire, wind, and heaven. The latter was created behind the darkness. It appears to the eyes as blue, because it is not reached by the rays of the sun and not illuminated by them like the watery non-igneous globes, *i.e.* the bodies of the planet and the moon. When the rays of the sun fall upon these and the shadow of the earth does not reach them, their darkness disappears and their figures become visible in the night. The light-giver is only one, all the others receive the light from him." In this chapter Pulisa speaks of the utmost limit that can be reached, and calls it *heaven*. He places it *in darkness*, since he says that it exists in a place which is not reached by the rays of the sun. The question as to the blue-grey colour of heaven which is perceived by the eye is of too great an extent to be touched upon here.

Quotations from Brahmagupta, Vasishṭha, Balabhadra, and Aryabhaṭa.

Brahmagupta says in the above-mentioned chapter: "Multiply the cycles of the moon, *i.e.* 57,753,300,000, by the number of the *yojana* of her sphere, *i.e.* 324,000, and you get as the product 18,712,069,200,000,000, *i.e.* the number of the *yojana* of the sphere of the zodiac." Of the *yojana* as a measure of distance we have already spoken in the chapter on metrology (ch. xv. p. 167). We give the just-mentioned calculation of Brahmagupta, simply reproducing his words without any responsibility of our own, for he has not explained on what reason it rests. Vasishṭha says that the Brahmâṇḍa comprehends the spheres, and the just-mentioned numbers are the measure of the Brahmâṇḍa, since the sphere of the zodiac is connected with it. The commentor Balabhadra says: "We do not consider these numbers as a measure of heaven, for we cannot define its greatness, but we consider them as the utmost limit to which the human power of vision can penetrate. There is no possibility of human perception reaching above it; but the other spheres differ from each other in greatness and smallness, so as to be visible in various degrees." The followers of Âryabhaṭa say: "It is sufficient for us to know the space which is reached by the solar rays. We do not want the space which is not reached by the solar rays, though it be in itself of an enormous extent. That which is not reached by the rays is not reached by the perception of the senses, and that which is not reached by perception is not knowable." Page 111.

Criticisms on the different theories. The question of the ninth sphere.

Let us now examine the bearing of the words of these authors. The words of Vasishṭha prove that the Brahmâṇḍa is a globe comprehending the eighth or so called zodiacal sphere, in which the fixed stars are placed, and that the two spheres touch each other. Now we on our own part were already obliged to assume an eighth sphere, but there is no reason why we should suppose a ninth one.

On this head the opinions of people are divided. Some hold the existence of a ninth sphere to be a necessity on account of the rotation from east to west, in so far as it moves in this direction and compels everything which it comprehends to move in the same direction. Others assume the ninth sphere on account of the same motion, but suppose that it by itself is motionless.

The tendency of the representatives of the former theory is perfectly clear. However, Aristotle has proved that each moving body is brought into motion by something moving which is not within itself. So also this ninth sphere would presuppose a *mover* outside itself. What, however, should prevent this *mover* from putting the eight spheres into motion without the intermediation of a ninth sphere?

Aristotle, Ptolemy, Johannes Grammaticus.

As regards the representatives of the second view, one might almost think that they had a knowledge of the words of Aristotle which we have quoted, and that they knew that the first mover is motionless, for they represent the ninth sphere as motionless and as the source of the east to west rotation. However, Aristotle has also proved that the first mover is not a body, whilst he must be a body, if they describe him as a globe, as a sphere, and as comprehending something else within itself and motionless.

Thus the theory of the ninth sphere is proved to be an impossibility. To the same effect are the words of Ptolemy in the preface of his *Almagest:* "The first cause of the first motion of the universe, if we consider the motion by itself, is according to our opinion an invisible and motionless god, and the study of this subject we call *a divine one.* We perceive his action in the highest heights of the world, but as an altogether different one from the action of those substances which can be perceived by the senses."

These are the words of Ptolemy on the first *mover*, without any indication of the ninth sphere. But the latter is mentioned by Johannes Grammaticus in his refutation of Proclus, where he says: "Plato did not know a ninth, starless sphere." And, according to Johannes, it was this, *i.e.* the negation of the ninth sphere, which Ptolemy meant to say.

Finally, there are other people who maintain that behind the last limit of motion there is an infinite resting body or an infinite *vacuum*, or something which they declare to be neither a *vacuum* nor a *plenum*. These theories, however, have no connection whatsoever with our subject.

Balabhadra gives us the impression of holding the same opinion as those who think that heaven or the heavens are a compact body holding in equilibrium all heavy bodies and carrying them, and that it is above the spheres. To Balabhadra it is just as easy to prefer tradition to eyesight, as it is difficult to us to prefer doubt to a clear proof.

The truth is entirely with the followers of Âryabhaṭa who give us the impression of really being men of great scientific attainments. It is perfectly evident that Brahmâṇḍa means the *αἰθήρ*, together with all products of creation in it.

CHAPTER XXI.

DESCRIPTION OF EARTH AND HEAVEN ACCORDING TO THE RELIGIOUS VIEWS OF THE HINDUS, BASED UPON THEIR TRADITIONAL LITERATURE.

On the seven earths. Page 112.

THE people of whom we have spoken in the preceding chapter think that the earths are seven like seven covers one above the other, and the upper one they divide into seven parts, differing from our astronomers, who divide it into κλίματα, and from the Persians, who divide it into *Kishvar*. We shall afterwards give a clear explanation of their theories derived from the first authorities of their religious law, to expose the matter to fair criticism. If something in it appears strange to us, so as to require a commentary, or if we perceive some coincidence with others, even if both parties missed the mark, we shall simply put the case before the reader, not with the intention of attacking or reviling the Hindus, but solely in order to sharpen the minds of those who study these theories.

Differences in the sequence of the earths explained as resulting from the copiousness of the language.

They do not differ among themselves as to the number of earths nor as to the number of the parts of the upper earth, but they differ regarding their names and the order of these names. I am inclined to derive this difference from the great verbosity of their language, for they call one and the same thing by a multitude of names. For instance, they call the sun by a thousand different names according to their own statement, just as the Arabs call the lion by nearly as many. Some of these names are original, while others are derived from the changing conditions of his life or his actions and faculties. The Hindus and their like boast of this copiousness, whilst in reality it is one of the greatest faults of the language. For it is the task of language to give a name to everything in creation and to its effects, a name based on general consent, so that everybody, when hearing this name pronounced by another man, understands what he means. If therefore one and the same name or word means a variety of things, it betrays a defect of the language and compels the hearer to ask the speaker what he means by the word. And thus the word in question must be dropped in order to be replaced either by a similar one of a sufficiently clear meaning, or by an epithet describing what is really meant. If one and the same thing is called by many names, and this is not occasioned by the fact that every tribe or class of people uses a separate one of them, and if, in fact, one single name would be sufficient, all the other names save this one are to be classified as mere nonsense, as a means of keeping people in the dark, and throwing an air of mystery about the subject. And in any case this copiousness offers painful difficulties to those who want to learn the whole of the language, for it is entirely useless, and only results in a sheer waste of time.

Frequently it has crossed my mind that the authors of books and the transmitters of tradition have an aversion to mentioning the earths in a definite arrangement, and limit themselves to mentioning their names, or that the copyists of the books have arbitrarily altered the text. For those men who explained and translated the text to me were well versed in the language, and were not known as persons who would commit a wanton fraud.

The earths according to the *Âditya-Purâṇa*.

The following table exhibits the names of the earths, as far as I know them. We rely chiefly on that list, which has been taken from the *Âditya-purâṇa*, because it follows a certain rule, combining every single earth and heaven with a single member of the members of the sun. The heavens are combined with the members from the skull to the womb, the earths with the members from the navel to the foot. This mode of comparison illustrates their sequence and preserves it from confusion :—

Page 113.

The Number of the Earths.	*Âditya-Purâṇa.*		*Vishṇu-Purâṇa.*	*Vâyu-Purâṇa.*		Vernacular Names.
	What Members of the Sun they Represent.	Their Names.		Their Names.	Their Epithets.	
I.	The navel.	Tâla.	Atala.	Âbhâstala.	Kṛishna-bhûmi, the dark earth.	Amśu (?)
II.	The thighs.	Sutâla.	Vitala.	Ilâ (?)	S'ukla-bhûmi, the bright earth.	Ambaratâla.
III.	The knees.	Pâtâla.	Nitala.	Nitala.	Rakta-bhûmi, the red earth.	S'arkara (?) (Sakkaru).
IV.	Under the knees.	Âśâla (?)	Gabhastimat.	Gabhastala.	Pîta-bhûmi, the yellow earth.	Gabhastimat.
V.	The calves.	Viśâla (?)	Mahâkhya (?)	Mahâtala.	Pâshâṇa-bhûmi, the earth of marble.	Mahâtala.
VI.	The ankles.	Mṛittâla.	Sutala.	Sutala.	S'ilâtala, the earth of brick.	Sutâla.
VII.	The feet.	Rasâtala.	Jâgara (?)	Pâtala.	Suvarṇa-varṇa, the gold-coloured earth.	Rasâtala.

THE SPIRITUAL BEINGS LIVING ON THE SEVEN EARTHS ACCORDING TO THE VÂYU-PURÂṆA.

Page 114.

Of the Dânavas—Namuci, Śaṅkukarṇa, Kabandha (?), Nishkukâda (?), Śûladanta, Lohita, Kaliṅga, Śvâpada; and the master of the serpents—Dhanañjaya, Kâliya.

Of the Daityas—Surakshas, Mahâjambha, Hayagrîva, Kṛishṇa, Janarta (?), Śaṅkhâkhsha, Gomukha; and of the Râkshasa—Nîla, Megha, Krathanaka, Mahoshṇisha, Kambala, Aśvatara, Takshaka.

Of the Dânavas—Rada (?), Anuhlâda, Agnimukha, Târakâksha, Triśira, Śiśumâra; and of the Râkshasa—Cyavana, Nanda, Viśâla. And there are many cities in this world.

Of the Daityas—Kâlanemi, Gajakarṇa, Uñjara (?); and of the Râkshasa—Sumâli, Muñja, Vṛikavaktra, and the large birds called Garuḍa.

Of the Daityas—Virocana, Jayanta (?), Agnîjihva, Hiraṇyâksha; and of the Râkshasa—Vidyujjihva, Mahâmegha; the serpent Karmâra, Svastikajaya.

Of the Daityas—Kesari; and of the Râkshasa—Ûrdhvakuja (?), Śataśirsha, *i.e.* having a hundred heads, a friend of Indra; Vâsuki, a serpent.

The king Bali; and of the Daitya Mucukunda. In this world there are many houses for the Râkshasa, and Vishṇu resides there, and Śesha, the master of the serpents.

On the seven heavens. Quotations from Johannes Grammaticus, Plato, and Aristotle.

After the earths follow the heavens, consisting of seven stories, one above the other. They are called *loka*, which means "*gathering-place*." In a similar manner also the Greeks considered the heavens as gathering-places. So Johannes Grammaticus says in his refutation of Proclus: "Some philosophers thought that the sphere called γαλαξίας, i.e. *milk*, by which they mean the milky way, is a dwelling-place for rational souls." The poet Homer says: "Thou hast made the pure heaven an eternal dwelling-place for the gods. The winds do not shake it, the rains do not wet it, and the snow does not destroy it. For in it there is resplendent clearness without any covering cloud."

Plato says: "God spoke to the seven planets: You are the gods of the gods, and I am the father of the actions; I am he who made you so that no dissolution

Page 115.

is possible; for anything bound, though capable of being loosened, is not exposed to destruction, as long as its order is good."

Aristotle says in his letter to Alexander: "The world is the order of the whole creation. That which is above the world, and surrounds it on the sides, is the dwelling-place of the gods. Heaven is full of the gods to which we give the name of stars." In another place of the same book he says, "The earth is bounded by the water, the water by the air, the air by the fire, the fire by the αἰθήρ. Therefore the highest place is the dwelling-place of the gods, and the lowest, the home of the aquatic animals."

There is a similar passage in the *Vâyu-Purâṇa* to this effect, that the earth is held in its grasp by the water, the water by the pure fire, the fire by the wind, the wind by heaven, and heaven by its lord.

The names of the *lokas* do not differ like those of the earths. There is a difference of opinion only regarding their order. We exhibit the names of the *lokas* in a table similar to the former (p. 230).

The Number of the Heavens.	What members of the Sun they represent according to the *Âditya-Purâṇa*.	Their Names according to the *Âditya, Vâyu* and *Vishṇu Purâṇas.*
I.	The stomach.	Bhûrloka.
II.	The breast.	Bhuvarloka.
III.	The mouth.	Svarloka.
IV.	The eyebrow.	Maharloka.
V.	The forehead.	Janaloka.
VI.	Above the forehead.	Tapoloka.
VII.	The skull.	Satyaloka.

Criticisms on the commentator of Patañjali. Page 116.

This theory of the earths is the same with all Hindus, except alone the commentator of the book of Patañjali. He had heard that the *Pitaras*, or *fathers*, had their gathering-place in the sphere of the moon, a tradition built on the theories of the astronomers. In consequence he made the lunar sphere the first heaven, whilst he ought to have identified it with *Bhûrloka*. And because by this method he had one heaven too many, he dropped the *Svarloka*, the place of reward.

The same author differs besides in another point. As the seventh heaven, Satyaloka, is in the Purâṇas also called *Brahmaloka*, he placed the Brahmaloka above the Satyaloka, whilst it would have been much more reasonable to think that in this case one and the same thing is called by two different names. He ought to have omitted the Brahmaloka, to have identified Pitṛiloka with Bhûrloka, and not to have left out the Svarloka.

So much about the seven earths and the seven heavens. We shall now speak of the division of the surface of the uppermost earth and of related subjects.

The system of Dvîpas and *seas*.

Dîp (*dvîpa*) is the Indian word for *island*. Hence the words *Sangaladîp* (Siṃhaladvîpa), which we call Serendîb, and the *Dîbajât* (Maledives, Laccadives). The latter are numerous islands, which become, so to speak, decrepit, are dissolved and flattened, and finally disappear below the water, whilst at the same time other formations of the same kind begin to appear above the water like a streak of sand which continually grows and rises and extends. The inhabitants of the former island leave their homes, settle on the new one and colonise it.

According to the religious traditions of the Hindus, the earth on which we live is round and surrounded by a sea. On the sea lies an earth like a collar, and on this earth lies again a round sea like a collar. The number of dry collars, called *islands*, is seven, and likewise that of the seas. The size of both *dvîpas* and seas rises in such a progression that each *dvîpa* is the double of the preceding *dvîpa*, each sea the double of the preceding sea, *i.e.* in the progression of the powers of two. If the middle earth is reckoned as one, the size of all seven earths represented as collars is 127. If the sea surrounding the middle earth is counted as one, the size of all seven seas represented as collars is 127. The total size of both earths and seas is 254.

The size of the Dvîpas and seas, according to the commentator of Patañjali and the Vâyu-Purâṇa.

The commentator of the book of Patañjali has adopted as the size of the middle earth 100,000 *yojana*. Accordingly, the size of all the earths would be 12,700,000 *yojana*. Further he adopts as the size of the sea which surrounds the middle earth 200,000 *yojana*. Accordingly, the size of all the seas would be 25,400,000 *yojana*, and the total size of all the earths and seas 38,100,000 *yojana*. However, the author himself has not made these additions. Therefore we cannot compare his numbers with ours. But the *Vâyu-Purâṇa* says that the diameter of the totality of earths and seas is 37,900,000 *yojana*, a number which does not agree with the above-mentioned sum of 38,100,000 *yojana*. It cannot be accounted for, unless we suppose that the number of earths is only six, and that the progression begins with the number 4 instead of 2. Such a number of seas (*i.e.* 6) may possibly be explained in this way, that the seventh one has been dropped, because the author only wanted to find the size of the continents, which induced him to leave the last surrounding sea out of the calculation. But if he once mentions the continents he must also mention all the seas which surround them. Why he has commenced the progression with 4 instead of 2, I cannot account for by any of the principles of the calculation as they have been laid down.

Each *dvîpa* and sea has a separate name. As far as we know them, we place them before the reader in the following table, and hope that the reader will excuse us for so doing.

Page 117.

The number of the Dvîpas and Seas.	Matsya-Purâṇa.		The Commentator of Patañjali—Vishṇu-Purâṇa.		Vernacular Names.	
	Dvîpas.	Seas.	Dvîpas.	Seas.	Dvîpas.	Seas.
I.	Jambu-dvîpa.	Lavaṇa, *i.e.* salt.	Jambu, the name of a tree.	Kshâra, *i.e.* salt.	Jambu.	Lavaṇa-samudra.
II.	Śâka-dvîpa.	Kshîrodaka, *i.e.* milk.	Plaksha, the name of a tree.	Ikshu, *i.e.* sugar-cane.	Śâka.	Ikshu.
III.	Kuśa-dvîpa.	Ghṛitamaṇḍa, *i.e.* butter.	Śâlmali, the name of a tree.	Surâ, *i.e.* wine.	Kuśa.	Surâ.
IV.	Krauñca-dvîpa	Dadhimaṇḍa, *i.e.* thick milk.	Kuśa, the name of a plant.	Sarpis, *i.e.* butter.	Krauñca.	Sarpis.
V.	Śâlmali-dvîpa.	Surâ, *i.e.* rice-wine.	Krauñca, the hosts.	Dadhi, *i.e.* sour-milk.	Śâlmali.	Dadhisâgara.
VI.	Gomeda-dvîpa	Ikshurasoda, *i.e.* the juice of sugar-cane.	Śâka, the name of a tree.	Kshîra, *i.e.* milk.	Gomeda.	Kshîra.
VII.	Pushkara-dvîpa.	Svádûdaka, *i.e.* sweet water.	Pushkara, the name of a tree.	Svâdûdaka, *i.e.* sweet water.	Pushkara.	Pânîya.

Page 118.

The differences of the traditions as exhibited by this table cannot be accounted for in any rational way. They can hardly have sprung from any other source but from arbitrary, accidental changes of the enumeration. The most appropriate of these traditions is that of the *Matsya-Purâṇa*, because it enumerates the dvîpas and seas one after the other according to a fixed order, a sea surrounding an island, an island surrounding a sea, the enumeration proceeding from the centre to the periphery.

We shall now in this place record some related subjects, though it would perhaps be more correct to treat of them in some other part of the book.

Quotation from the commentator of Patañjali.

The commentator of the book of Patañjali, wishing to determine the dimension of the world, begins from below and says: "The dimension of the *darkness* is one *koṭi* and 85 *laksha* yojana, *i.e.* 18,000,000 *yojana*.

"Then follows *Naraka*, *i.e.* the hells, of the dimension of 13 *koṭi* and 12 *laksha*, *i.e.* 131,200,000 *yojana*.

"Then follows darkness, of one *laksha*, *i.e.* 100,000 *yojana*.

"Above it lies the earth *Vajra*, so called on account of its hardness, because the word means *a diamond*, and *the molten thunder-bolt*, of 34,000 *yojana*.

"Above it lies the middle earth *Garbha*, of 60,000 *yojana*.

"Above it lies *the golden earth*, of 30,000 *yojana*.

"Above this the seven earths, each of 10,000 *yojana*, which makes the sum of 70,000 *yojana*. The upper one of them is that which contains the *dvîpas* and the seas.

"Behind the sweet-water sea lies *Lokâloka*, which means a *not-gathering-place*, *i.e.* a place without civilisation and inhabitants.

"Thereupon follows the gold-earth of one *Koṭi*, *i.e.* 10,000,000 *yojana*; above it the *Pitṛiloka* of 6,134,000 *yojana*.

"The totality of the seven *lokas*, which is called *Brah*-

mâṇḍa, has the dimension of 15 *koṭi*, *i.e.* 150,000,000 *yojana*. And above this is the darkness *tamas*, similar to the lowest darkness, of 18,500,000 *yojana*."

We on our part found it already troublesome to enumerate all the seven seas, together with the seven earths, and now this author thinks he can make the subject more easy and pleasant to us by inventing some more earths below those already enumerated by ourselves!

The *Vishṇu-Purâṇa*, when treating of similar subjects, says: "There is a serpent under the seventh lowest earth, which is called *Śeshâkhya*, worshipped among the spiritual beings. It is also called *Ananta*. It has a thousand heads, and bears the earths without being molested by their heavy weight. These earths, one stored above the other, are gifted with good things and happiness, adorned with jewels, illuminated by their own rays, not by those of sun and moon. The latter two luminaries do not rise in them. Therefore their temperature is always equal, they have everlasting fragrant flowers, blossoms of trees and fruits; their inhabitants have no notion of time, since they do not become aware of any motions by counting them. Their dimension is 70,000 *yojana*, the dimensions of each being 10,000. Nârada, the Ṛishi, went down in order to see them, and to acquaint himself with the two kinds of beings which inhabit them, the *Daitya* and *Dânava*. When he then found the bliss of paradise to be rather insignificant in comparison with that of these earths, he returned to the angels, giving his report to them, and rousing their admiration by his description."

Further, the following passage: "Behind the sweet-water sea lies the gold earth, the double of the totality of the *dvîpas* and seas; but not inhabited by men nor by demons. Behind it lies *Lokâloka*, a mountain of the height of 10,000 *yojana*, and of the same breadth. Its whole dimension is 50 *koṭi*, *i.e.* 500,000,000 *yojana*." Page 119.

The totality of all this is in the Hindu language sometimes called *dhâtṛi*, *i.e. holding all things*, and sometimes *vidhâtṛi*, *i.e. letting loose all things.* It is also called *the dwelling-place of every living being*, and by various other names, which differ as people differ in their opinions about the *vacuum*. Those who believe in the *vacuum* make it the cause why all bodies are attracted towards it, whilst those who deny the *vacuum* declare that it is not the cause of the attraction.

Then the author of the *Vishṇu-Purâṇa* returns to the *Lokas* and says: "Everything which a foot can tread upon and a ship sail in, is *Bhûrloka*." This seems to be an indication of the surface of the uppermost earth. The air, which is between the earth and the sun, in which the Siddhas, the Munis, and the Gandharvas, the musicians, wander to and fro, is the *Bhuvarloka*. The whole of these three earths is called *the three pṛithivî*. That which is above them is *Vyâsa-maṇḍala*, *i.e.* the realm of Vyâsa. The distance between the earth and sun is 100,000 *yojana*, that between the sun and the moon is the same. The distance between the moon and Mercury is two *lakshas*, *i.e.* 200,000 *yojana*, that between Mercury and Venus is the same. The distances between Venus and Mars, Mars and Jupiter, Jupiter and Saturn, are equal, each being 200,000 *yojana*. The distance between Saturn and the Great Bear is 100,000 *yojana*, and that from the Great Bear to the pole is 1000 *yojana*. Above it is *Maharloka*, at a distance of 20 millions of *yojana*; above it, the *Jinaloka*, at a distance of 80 millions; above it, *Pitṛiloka*, at a distance f 480 millions; above it, *Satyaloka*."

This sum, however, is more than thrice the sum which we have mentioned on the authority of the commentator of the book of Patañjali, *i.e.* 150,000 *yojana*. But such is the custom of the copyists and scribes in every nation, and I cannot declare the students of the Purâṇas to be free from it, for they are not men of exact learning.

CHAPTER XXII.

TRADITIONS RELATING TO THE POLE.

The origin of the south pole, and the story of Somadatta.

THE pole, in the language of the Hindus, is called *dhruva*, and the axis *śalâka*. The Hindus, with the exception of their astronomers, speak always only of *one* pole, the reason of which is their belief in *the dome of heaven*, as we have heretofore explained. According to *Vâyu-Purâṇa*, heaven revolves round the pole like a potter's wheel, and the pole revolves round itself, without changing its own place. This revolution is finished in 30 *muhûrta, i.e.* in one *nychthemeron.*

Regarding the south pole, I have heard from them only one story or tradition, viz. the following. They had once a king called Somadatta, who by his noble deeds had deserved paradise; but he did not like the idea of his body being torn away from his soul when he should depart into the other world. Now he called on the Ṛishi Vasishṭha, and told to him that he loved his body, and did not wish to be separated from it; but the Ṛishi informed him that it was impossible to take along with oneself the material body from this world into paradise. Thereupon he laid his desire before the children of Vasishṭha; however, these spat in his face, scoffed at him, and changed him into a *caṇḍâla* with ear-rings in both ears, and clad in a *kurṭak* (*i.e.* a short shirt worn by the women round the shoulders, reaching down to the middle of the body). When he came in this condition to the Ṛishi, Viśvâmitra, the latter found him to be a disgusting spectacle, and asked him what

Page 120.

was the reason of his appearing so, whereupon Somadatta informed him, and told him the whole story. Now Viśvâmitra became very angry on his account; he ordered the Brahmans into his presence in order to perform a great sacrifice, among those also the children of Vasishṭha, and he spoke to them: "I wish to make a new world, and a new paradise for this pious king, that there he may obtain the fulfilment of his wish." Thereupon he began to make the pole and the Great Bear in the south, but then Indra, the ruler, and the spiritual beings began to fear him. They went to him, humbled themselves before him, and asked him to desist from the work he had commenced on this condition, that they would carry Somadatta *with his body*, just as it was, into paradise. This they did, and in consequence the Ṛishi desisted from making a second world, but that which he had already made up to that moment remained.

It is well known that the north pole with us is called the Great Bear, the south pole Canopus. But some of our people (Muslims) who do not rise above the uneducated mass, maintain that in the south of heaven too there is a Great Bear of the same shape as the northern, which revolves round the southern pole.

Śrîpâla on the star Śûla. Aljaihânî on the fever-star. Brahmagupta on the Śiśumâra.

Such a thing would not be impossible nor even strange, if the report about it came from a trustworthy man, who had made long sea-voyages. Certainly in southern regions stars are seen which we do not know in our latitudes. So Śrîpâla says that the people of Multân see in summer time a red star a little below the meridian of Canopus, which they call *Śûla*, *i.e. the beam of crucifixion*, and that the Hindus consider it as unlucky. Therefore, when the moon stands in the station Pûrvabhadrapada, the Hindus do not travel towards the south, because this star stands in the south.

Aljaihânî relates, in his Book of Routes, that on the island Langabâlûs there is a large star visible, known as the *fever-star*. It appears in winter about morning dawn in the east as high as a date-palm tree, having an oblong shape, composed of the tail of the Small Bear and his back, and of some small stars situated there; it is called *the axe of the mill*. Brahmagupta mentions it in connection with *the Fish*. The Hindus tell rather ludicrous tales when speaking of the figure in which they represent this group of stars, viz. the figure of a four-footed aquatic animal, which they call *Śakvara* and also *Śiśumâra*. I suppose that the latter animal is the great lizard, for in Persia it is called *Susmâr*, which sounds much like the Indian *Śiśumâra*. Of this kind of animals there is also an aquatic species, similar to the crocodile and the skink. One of those tales is the following.

The story of Dhruva.

When Brahman wanted to create mankind, he divided himself into two halves, of which the right one was called *Virâj*, the left one *Manu*. The latter one is the being from whom the period of time called *Manvantara* has received its name. Manu had two sons, Priyavrata and Uttânapâda, the bow-legged king. The latter had a son called *Dhruva*, who was slighted by one of the wives of his father. On account of this, he was presented with the power to turn round all the stars as he pleased. He appeared in the Manvantara of Svayambhuva, the first of all Manvantaras, and he has for ever remained in his place.

Quotations from *Vâyu-Purâṇa* and *Vishṇu-Dharma*.

The *Vâyu-Purâṇa* says: "The wind drives the stars round the pole, which are bound to it by ties invisible to man. They move round like the beam in the olive-press, for its bottom is, as it were, standing still, whilst its end is moving round.

The *Vishṇu-Dharma* says: "Vajra, one of the children of Balabhadra, the brother of Nârâyaṇa, asked the Ṛishi Mârkaṇḍeya as to the pole, upon which he answered: When God created the world, it was dark and desert.

Page 121.

Thereupon he made the globe of the sun shining, and the globes of the stars watery, receiving the light of the sun from that side of his which he turns towards them. Fourteen of these stars he placed round the pole in the shape of a *śiśumâra*, which drive the other stars round the pole. One of them, north of the pole, on the uppermost chin, is Uttânapâda, on the lowest chin Yajna, on the head Dharma, on the breast Nârâyaṇa, on the two hands towards the east the two stars Aśvinî the physicians, on the two feet Varuṇa, and Aryaman towards the west, on the penis Samwatsara, on the back Mitra, on the tail Agni, Mahendra, Marici, and Kaśyapa."

The pole itself is Vishṇu, the ruler of the inhabitants of paradise; he is, further, the time rising, growing, getting old, and vanishing.

Further, the *Vishṇu-Dharma* says: "If a man reads this and knows it accurately, God pardons to him the sins of that day, and fourteen years will be added to his life, the length of which has been fixed beforehand."

How simple those people are! Among us there are scholars who know between 1020 to 1030 stars. Should those men breathe and receive life from God only on account of their knowledge of stars?

All the stars revolve, whatever may be the position of the pole with regard to them.

If I had found a Hindu able to point out to me with his finger the single stars, I should have been able to identify them with the star-figures known among Greeks and Arabs, or with stars in the neighbourhood in case they did not belong to any of these figures.

CHAPTER XXIII.

ON MOUNT MERU ACCORDING TO THE BELIEF OF THE AUTHORS OF THE PURÂṆAS AND OF OTHERS.

Brahmagupta on the earth and Mount Meru.

WE begin with the description of this mountain, since it is the centre of the Dvîpas and seas, and, at the same time, the centre of Jambûdvîpa. Brahmagupta says: "Manifold are the opinions of people relating to the description of the earth and to Mount Meru, particularly among those who study the Purâṇas and the religious literature. Some describe this mountain as rising above the surface of the earth to an excessive height. It is situated under the pole, and the stars revolve round its foot, so that rising and setting depends upon Meru. It is called Meru because of its having the faculty of doing this, and because it depends alone upon the influence of its head that sun and moon become visible. The day of the angels who inhabit Meru lasts six months, and their night also six months."

Brahmagupta quotes the following passage from the book of *Jina*, *i.e.* Buddha: "Mount Meru is quadrangular, not round."

Balabhadra on the same subject.

The commentator Balabhadra says: "Some people say that the earth is flat, and that Mount Meru is an illuminating, light-giving body. However, if such were the case, the planets would not revolve round the horizon of the inhabitants of Meru, and if it were shining it would be visible because of its height, as the pole above it is visible. According to some, Meru consists of gold; according to others it consists of jewels. Âryabhaṭa thinks that it has not absolute height, but only the height of *one yojana*, and that it is round, not quadrangular, the realm of the angels; that it is invisible, although shining, because it is very distant from

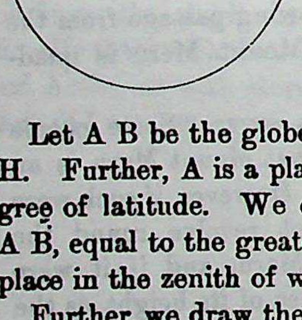
Page 122.

the inhabited earth, being situated entirely in the high north, in the cold zone, in the centre of a desert called *Nandana-vana*. However, if it were of a great height, it would not be possible on the 66th degree of latitude for the whole Tropic of Cancer to be visible, and for the sun to revolve on it, being always visible without ever disappearing."

The author criticises Balabhadra.

All that Balabhadra produces is foolish both in words and matter, and I cannot find why he felt himself called upon to write a commentary if he had nothing better to say.

If he tries to refute the theory of the flatness of the earth by the planets revolving round the horizon of Meru, this argument would go nearer proving the theory than refuting it. For if the earth were a flat expanse, and everything high on earth were parallel to the perpendicular height of Meru, there would be no change of horizon, and the same horizon would be the equinox for all places on earth.



The statements of Âryabhaṭa examined by the author.

On the words of Âryabhaṭa as quoted by Balabhadra we make the following remarks.

Let A B be the globe of the earth round the centre H. Further, A is a place on the earth in the 66th degree of latitude. We cut off from the circle the arc A B, equal to the greatest declination. Then B is the place in the zenith of which the pole stands.

Further, we draw the line A C touching the globe in the point A. This line lies in the plane of the horizon as far as the human eye reaches round the earth.

We join the points A and H with each other, and draw the line H B C, so that it is met in C by the line A C. Further, we let fall the perpendicular A T on H C. Now, it is evident that—

A T is the sine of the greatest declination ;
T B the versed sine of the greatest declination ;
T H the sine of the complement of the greatest declination.

And as we here occupy ourselves with Âryabhaṭa, we shall, according to his system, change the sines in *kardajât*. Accordingly—

A T = 1397.
T H = 3140.
B T = 298.

Because the angle H A C is a right angle, we have the equation—

H T : T A = T A : T C.

And the square of A T is 1,951,609. If we divide it by T H, we get as quotient 622.

The difference between this number and T B is 324, which is B C. And the relation of B C to B H, the latter being *sinus totus* = 3438, is the same as the relation of the number of *yojanas* of B C to the *yojanas* of B H. The latter number is, according to Âryabhaṭa, 800. If it is multiplied by the just-mentioned difference of 324 we get the sum of 259,200. And if we divide this number by the *sinus totus* we get 75 as quotient, which is the number of *yojanas* of B C, equal to 600 *miles* or 200 *farsakh*.

If the perpendicular of a mountain is 200 *farsakh*, the ascent will be nearly the double. Whether Mount Meru has such a height or not, nothing of it can be visible in the 66th degree of latitude, and it would not cover anything of the Tropic of Cancer at all (so as to intercept from it the light of the sun). And if for those latitudes (66° and 23°) Meru is under the horizon, it is also under the horizon for all places of less latitude. If you compare Meru with a luminous body like the sun, you know that the sun sets and disappears under the earth. Indeed Meru may be compared with the earth. Page 123. It is not invisible to us because of its being far away in the cold zone, but because it lies below the horizon, because the earth is a globe, and everything heavy is attracted towards its centre.

Âryabhaṭa further tries to prove that Mount Meru has only a moderate height by the fact that the Tropic of Cancer is visible in places the latitude of which is equal to the complement of the greatest declination. We must remark that this argument is not valid, for we know the conditions of the lines of latitude and other lines in those countries only through ratiocination, not from eyesight nor from tradition, because they are uninhabited and their roads are impassable.

If a man has come from those parts to Âryabhaṭa and told him that the Tropic of Cancer is visible in that latitude, we may meet this by stating that a man has also come to *us* from the same region telling us that one part of it is there invisible. The only thing which covers the Tropic of Cancer is this mountain Meru. If Meru did not exist, the whole tropic would be visible. Who, now, has been able to make out which of the two reports deserves most credit?

In the book of Âryabhaṭa of Kusumapura we read that the mountain Meru is in Himavant, the cold zone, not higher than a *yojana*. In the translation, however, it has been rendered so as to express that it is not higher than Himavant by more than a *yojana*.

This author is not identical with the elder Âryabhaṭa, but he belongs to his followers, for he quotes him and follows his example. I do not know which of these two namesakes is meant by Balabhadra.

In general, what we know of the conditions of the place of this mountain we know only by ratiocination. About the mountain itself they have many traditions. Some give it the height of one *yojana*, others more; some consider it as quadrangular, others as an octagon. We shall now lay before the reader what the Ṛishis teach regarding this mountain.

Matsya-Purâṇa on Mount Meru and the mountains of the earth.

The *Matsya-Purâṇa* says: "It is golden and shining like fire which is not dulled by smoke. It has four different colours on its four sides. The colour of the eastern side is white like the colour of the Brahmins, that of the northern is red like that of the Kshatriya, that of the southern is yellow like the colour of the Vaiśya, and that of the western is black like the colour of the Śûdra. It is 86,000 *yojana* high, and 16,000 of these *yojana* lie within the earth. Each of its four sides has 34,000 *yojana*. There are rivers of sweet water running in it, and beautiful golden houses inhabited by the spiritual beings, the Deva, by their singers the Gandharva, and their harlots the Apsaras. Also Asuras, Daityas, and Râkshasas are living in it. Round the mountain lies the pond Mânasa, and around it to all four sides are the *Lokapâla, i.e.* the guardians of the world and its inhabitants. Mount Meru has seven *knots, i.e.* great mountains, the names of which are Mahendra, Malaya, Sahya, Śuktibâm (?), Ṛikshabâm (?), Vindhya, Pâriyâtra. The small mountains are nearly innumerable; they are those which are inhabited by mankind.

"The great mountains round Meru are the following: *Himavant*, always covered with snow, inhabited by the Râkshasa, Piśâca, and Yaksha. *Hemakûṭa*, the golden, inhabited by the Gandharva and Apsaras. *Nishadha*, inhabited by the Nâga or snakes, which have the following seven princes: Ananta, Vâsuki, Takshaka, Karkoṭaka, Mahâpadma, Kambala, Aśvatara. *Nîla*, peacock-like, of many colours, inhabited by the Siddha and Brahmarshi, the anchorites. The mountain Page 124

Śveta, inhabited by the Daitya and Dânava. The mountain *Śṛiṅgavant*, inhabited by the Pitaras, the fathers and grandfathers of the Deva. Not far to the north of this mountain there are mountain-passes full of jewels and of trees which remain during a whole kalpa. And in the centre of these mountains is Ilâvṛita, the highest of all. The whole is called *Purushaparvata*. The region between the Himavant and the Śṛiṅgavant is called Kailâsa, the play-ground of the Râkshasa and Apsaras."

Quotations from the *Vishṇu*, *Vâyu*, and *Âditya Purâṇas*.

The *Vishṇu-Purâṇa* says: "The great mountains of the middle earth are Śrî-parvata, Malaya-parvata, Mâlyavant, Vindhya, Trikûṭa, Tripurântika, and Kailâsa. Their inhabitants drink the water of the rivers, and live in eternal bliss."

The *Vâyu-Purâṇa* contains similar statements about the four sides and the height of Meru as the hitherto quoted Purâṇas. Besides, it says that on each side of it there is a quadrangular mountain, in the east the Mâlyavant, in the north Ânîla, in the west the Gandhamâdana, and in the south the Nishadha.

The *Âditya-Purâṇa* gives the same statement about the size of each of its four sides which we have quoted from the *Matsya-Purâṇa*, but I have not found in it a statement about the height of Meru. According to this Purâṇa, its east side is of gold, the west of silver, the south of rubies, the north of different jewels.

The commentator of Patañjali on the same subject.

The extravagant notions of the dimensions of Meru would be impossible if they had not the same extravagant notions regarding the earth; and if there is no limit fixed to guesswork, guesswork may without any hindrance develop into lying. For instance, the commentator of the book of Patañjali not only makes Meru quadrangular, but even oblong. The length of one side he fixes at 15 *koṭi*, *i.e.* 150,000,000 *yojana*, whilst he fixes the length of the other three sides only at the third of this, *i.e.* 5 *koṭi*. Regarding the four sides of

Meru, he says that on the east are the mountain Mâlava and the ocean, and between them the kingdoms called Bhaḍrâśva. On the north are Nîla, Sîta, Śriṅgâdri, and the ocean, and between them the kingdoms Ramyaka, Hiraṇmaya, and Kuru. On the west are the mountain Gandhamâdana and the ocean, and between them the kingdom Ketumâla. On the south are Mrâvarta (?), Nishadha, Hemakûṭa, Himagiri, and the ocean, and between them the kingdoms Bhâratavârsha, Kiṁpurusha, and Harivarsha.

Buddhistic views.

This is all I could find of Hindu traditions regarding Meru; and as I have never found a Buddhistic book, and never knew a Buddhist from whom I might have learned their theories on this subject, all I relate of them I can only relate on the authority of Alêrânshahrî, though, according to my mind, his report has no claim to scientific exactness, nor is it the report of a man who has a scientific knowledge of the subject. According to him, the Buddhists believe that Meru lies between four worlds in the four cardinal directions; that it is square at the bottom and round at the top; that it has the length of 80,000 *yojana*, one half of which rises into heaven, whilst the other half goes down into the earth. That side which is next to our world consists of blue sapphires, which is the reason why heaven appears to us blue; the other sides are of rubies, yellow and white gems. Thus Meru is the centre of the earth.

Page 125.

The mountain *Ḳâf*, as it is called by our common people, is with the Hindus the Lokâloka. They maintain that the sun revolves from Lokâloka towards Meru, and that he illuminates only its inner northern side.

A tradition of the Zoroastrians of Sogdiana.

Similar views are held by the Zoroastrians of Sogdiana, viz. that the mountain Ardiyâ surrounds the world; that outside of it is *khôm*, similar to the pupil of the eye, in which there is something of everything, and that behind it there is a *vacuum*. In the centre of the world is the mountain *Girnagar*, between our κλίμα and the six other κλίματα, the throne of heaven. Between each two there is burning sand, on which no foot could stand. The spheres revolve in the *climata* like *mills*, but in ours they revolve in an inclined course, because our *clima*, that one inhabited by mankind, is the uppermost.

CHAPTER XXIV.

TRADITIONS OF THE PURÂṆAS REGARDING EACH OF THE SEVEN DVÎPAS.

Description of the Dvîpas according to the *Matsya* and *Vishṇu Purâṇas*.

We must ask the reader not to take any offence if he finds all the words and meanings which occur in the present chapter to be totally different from anything corresponding in Arabic. As for the difference of words, it is easily accounted for by the difference of languages in general; and as regards the difference of the meanings, we mention them only either in order to draw attention to an idea which might seem acceptable even to a Muslim, or to point out the irrational nature of a thing which has no foundation in itself.

1. Jambû-Dvîpa.

We have already spoken of the central Dvîpa when describing the environs of the mountain in its centre. It is called Jambû-Dvîpa, from a tree growing in it, the branches of which extend over a space of 100 *yojana*. In a later chapter, devoted to the description of the inhabitable world and its division, we shall finish the description of Jambû-Dvîpa. Next, however, we shall describe the other Dvîpas which surround it, following, as regards the order of the names, the authority of *Matsya-Purâṇa*, for the above-mentioned reason (v. p. 236). But before entering into this subject we shall here insert a tradition of the *Vâyu-Purâṇa* regarding the central Dvîpa (Jambû-Dvîpa).

The inhabitants of Madhyadeśa, according to *Vâyu-Purâṇa*.

According to this source, "there are two kinds of inhabitants in Madhyadeśa. First the *Kiṁpurusha*. Their men are known as the gold-coloured ones, their women as *sureṇu*. They live a long life without ever being ill. They never commit a sin, and do not know envy. Their food is a juice which they express from the dates of the palm trees, called *madya* (?). The second kind are the *Haripurusha*, having the colour of silver. They live 11,000 years, are beardless, and their food is sugar-cane." Since they are described as beardless and silver-coloured, one might be inclined to take them for Turks; but the fact of their eating dates and sugar-cane compels us to see in them a more southern nation. But where do we find people of the colour of gold or silver? We know only of the colour of burnt silver, which occurs, *e.g.* among the Zanj, who lead a life without sorrow and envy, as they do not possess anything which gives birth to these passions. They live no doubt longer than we, but only a little longer, and by no means twice as long. The Zanj are so uncivilised that they have no notion of a natural death. If a man dies a natural death, they think he was poisoned. Every death is suspicious with them, if a man has not been killed by a weapon. Likewise it is regarded with suspicion by them, if a man is touched by the breath of a consumptive person.

2. Śâka-Dvîpa.

We shall now describe *Śâka-Dvîpa*. It has, according to the *Matsya-Purâṇa*, seven great rivers, one of which equals the Ganges in purity. In the first ocean there are seven mountains adorned with jewels, some of which are inhabited by Devas, others by demons. One of them is a golden, lofty mountain, whence the clouds rise which bring us the rain. Another contains all the medicines. Indra, the ruler, takes from it the rain. **Page 126.** Another one is called Soma. Regarding this mountain they relate the following story:—

The story of Kadrû and Vinatâ. Garuda liberates his mother by means of the Amṛita.

Kaśyapa had two wives, Kadrû, the mother of the snakes, and Vinatâ, the mother of the birds. Both lived in a plain where there was a grey horse. However, the mother of the snakes maintained that the horse was brown. Now they made the covenant that she who was wrong should become the slave of the other, but they postponed the decision till the following day. In the following night the mother of the snakes sent her black children to the horse, to wind themselves round it and to conceal its colour. In consequence the mother of the birds became her slave for a time.

The latter, Vinatâ, had two children, Anûru, the guardian of the tower of the sun, which is drawn by the horses, and Garuḍa. The latter spoke to his mother: "Demand from the children nourished at your breast what may restore you to liberty." This she did. People also spoke to her of the ambrosia (amṛita), which is with the Devas. Thereupon Garuḍa flew to the Devas and demanded it from them, and they fulfilled his wish. For Amṛita is one of those things peculiar to them, and if somebody else gets it, he lives as long as the Devas. He humbled himself before them in order to obtain the Amṛita, for the purpose of freeing therewith his mother, at the same time promising to bring it back afterwards. They had pity upon him, and gave it him. Thereupon Garuḍa went to the mountain Soma, in which the Devas were living. Garuḍa gave the Amṛita to the Devas, and thereby freed his mother. Then he spoke to them: "Do not come near the Amṛita unless you have before bathed in the river Ganges." This they did, and left the Amṛita where it was. Meanwhile Garuḍa brought it back to the Devas, and obtained thereby a high rank in sanctity, so that he became the king of all the birds and the riding-bird of Vishṇu.

The inhabitants of Śâka-Dvîpa are pious, long-lived beings, who can dispense with the rule of kings, since they do not know envy nor ambition. Their lifetime, not capable of any change, is as long as a Tretayuga. The four colours are among them, *i.e.* the different castes, which do not intermarry nor mix with each other.

They live in eternal joy, without ever being sorry. According to *Vishṇu-Purâṇa*, the names of their castes are Âryaka, Kurura, Vivimśa (Vivaṁśa), and Bhâvin (?), and they worship Vâsudeva.

3. Kuśa-Dvîpa.

The third Dvîpa is Kuśa-Dvîpa. According to the *Matsya-Purâṇa* it has seven mountains containing jewels, fruit, flowers, odoriferous plants, and cereals. One of them, named Droṇa, contains famous medicines or drugs, particularly the *viśalyakaraṇa*, which heals every wound instantaneously, and *mṛitasaṁjîvan*, which restores the dead to life. Another one, called *hari*, is similar to a black cloud. On this mountain there is a fire called *Mahisha*, which has come out of the water, and will remain there till the destruction of the world; it is this very fire which will burn the world. Kuśa-Dvîpa has seven kingdoms and innumerable rivers flowing to the sea, which are then changed by Indra into rain. To the greatest rivers belong *Jaunu* (Yamunâ), which purifies from all sins. About the inhabitants of this Dvîpa, *Matsya-Purâṇa* does not give any information. According to *Vishṇu-Purâṇa* the inhabitants are pious, sinless people, every one of them living 10,000 years. They worship *Janârdana*, and the names of their castes are Damin, Śushmin, Sneha, and Mandeha.

4. Krauñca-Dvîpa.

The fourth, or Krauñca-Dvîpa, has, according to the *Matsya-Purâṇa*, mountains containing jewels, rivers which are branches of the Ganges, and kingdoms the people of which have a white colour and are pious and pure. According to *Vishṇu-Purâṇa* the people there live in one and the same place without any distinction among members of the community, but afterwards it says that the names of their castes are Pushkara, Pushkala, Dhanya, and Tishya (?). They worship Janârdana.

Page 127.

5. Śâlmala-Dvîpa.

The fifth, or Śâlmala-Dvîpa, has, according to the *Matsya-Purâṇa*, mountains and rivers. Its inhabitants are pure, long-lived, mild, and never angry. They never suffer from drought or dearth, for their food comes to them simply in answer to their wishes, without their sowing or toiling. They come into existence without being born; they are never ill nor sorry. They do not require the rule of kings, since they do not know the desire for property. They live contented and in safety; they always prefer that which is good and love virtue. The climate of this Dvîpa never alters in cold or heat, so they are not bound to protect themselves against either. They have no rain, but the water bubbles up for them out of the earth and drops down from the mountains. This is also the case in the following Dvîpas. The inhabitants are of one kind, without any distinction of caste. Every one lives 3000 years.

According to the *Vishṇu-Purâṇa* they have beautiful faces and worship *Bhagavat*. They bring offerings to the fire, and every one of them lives 10,000 years. The names of their castes are Kapila, Aruṇa, Pîta, and Kṛishṇa.

6. Gomeda-Dvîpa. The sixth, or Gomeda-Dvîpa, has, according to the *Matsya-Purâṇa*, two great mountains, the deep-black *Sumanas*, which encompasses the greatest part of the Dvîpa, and the *Kumuda*, of golden colour and very lofty; the latter one contains all medicines. This Dvîpa has two kingdoms.

According to *Vishṇu-Purâṇa* the inhabitants are pious and without sin and worship Vishṇu. The names of their castes are Mṛiga, Mâgadha, Mânasa, and Mandaga. The climate of this Dvîpa is so healthy and pleasant that the inhabitants of paradise now and then visit it on account of the fragrancy of its air.

7. Pushkara-Dvîpa. The seventh, or Pushkara-Dvîpa, has, according to the *Matsya-Purâṇa*, in its eastern part the mountain *Citraśâlâ*, i.e. having a variegated roof with horns of jewels. Its height is 34,000 *yojana*, and its circumference 25,000 *yojana*. In the west lies the mountain Mânasa, shining like the full moon; its height is 35,000 *yojana*. This mountain has a son who protects his father against the west. In the east of this Dvîpa are two kingdoms where every inhabitant lives 10,000 years. The water bubbles up for them out of the earth, and drops down from the mountains. They have no rain and no flowing river; they know neither summer nor winter. They are of one kind, without any distinction of caste. They never suffer from dearth, and do not get old. Everything they wish for comes to them, whilst they live quiet and happy without knowing anything else but virtue. It is as if they were in the suburb of paradise. All bliss is given to them; they live long and are without ambition. So there is no service, no rule, no sin, no envy, no opposition, no debating, no toiling in agriculture and diligence in trading.

According to the *Vishṇu-Purâṇa*, Pushkara-Dvîpa is so called from a large tree, which is also called *nyagrodha*. Under this tree is *Brahma-rûpa*, *i.e.* the figure of Brahman, worshipped by the Deva and Dânava. The inhabitants are equal among each other, not claiming any superiority, whether they be human beings or beings associating with the Devas. In this Dvîpa there is only a single mountain, called *Mânasottama*, which rises in a round form on the round Dvîpa. From its top all the other Dvîpas are visible, for its height is 50,000 *yojana*, and the breadth the same.

CHAPTER XXV.

ON THE RIVERS OF INDIA, THEIR SOURCES AND COURSES.

Page 128. Quotation from *Vâyu-Purâṇa*.

The *Vâyu-Purâṇa* enumerates the rivers rising in the well-known great mountains which we have mentioned as the knots of Mount Meru (*vide* p. 247). To facilitate the study we exhibit them in the following table :—

The Great Knots.	Names of the Rivers which rise in them in Nagarasamvṛitta.
Mahendra .	Trisâgâ, Ṛishikulyâ, Ikshulâ, Tripavâ (?), Âyanâ (?), Lâṅgûlinî, Vaṁśavara.
Malaya . .	Kṛitamâlâ, Tâmravarṇâ, Pushpajâti, Utpalavatî (!).
Sahya . .	Godâvarî, Bhîmarathî, Kṛishṇa, Vaiṇyâ, Savañjulâ, Tuṅgabhadrâ, Suprayogâ, Pâjaya (?), Kâverî.
Śukti . .	Ṛishîka, Bâlûka (!), Kumârî, Mandavâhinî, Kirpa (!), Palâśinî.
Ṛiksha . .	Śona, Mahânada, Narmadâ, Surasa, Kirva (?), Mandâkinî, Daśârṇâ, Citrakûṭâ, Tamasâ, Pipyala, Śroṇî, Karamoda (?), Piśâbika (?), Citrapala, Mahâvegâ, Bañjulâ, Bâluvâhiṇî, Śuktimatî, Shakruṇâ (?), Tridivâ.
Vindhya .	Tâpî, Payoshṇî, Nirbindhyâ, Sirvâ (?), Nishadhâ, Vênvâ, Vaitaranî, Sini, Hâhu (!) Kumudvatî, Tobâ, Mahâgaurî, Durgâ, Antaśilâ.
Pâriyâtra .	Vedasmṛiti, Vedavatî, Vṛitraghnî (?) Parṇâśâ, Nandanâ, Saddânâ (?), Râmadî (?), Parâ, Carmaṇvatî, Lûpa (?), Vidiśâ.

The rivers of Europe and Asia rising in the Himalaya and its extensions to west and east.

The *Matsya-Purâṇa* and *Vâyu-Purâṇa* mention the rivers flowing in Jambû-Dvîpa, and say that they rise in the mountains of Himavant. In the following table we simply enumerate them, without following any particular principle of arrangement. The reader must imagine that the mountains form the boundaries of India. The northern mountains are the snowy Himavant. In their centre lies Kashmîr, and they are connected with the country of the Turks. This mountain region becomes colder and colder till the end of the inhabitable world and Mount Meru. Because this mountain has its chief extension in longitude, the rivers rising on its north side flow through the countries of the Turks, Tibetans, Khazars, and Slavonians, and fall into the Sea of Jurjân (the Caspian Sea), or the sea of Khwârizm (the Aral Sea), or the Sea Pontus (the Black Sea), or the northern Sea of the Slavonians (the Baltic); whilst the rivers rising on the southern slopes flow through India and fall into the great ocean, some reaching it single, others combined.

Page 129.

Rivers of India.

The rivers of India come either from the cold mountains in the north or from the eastern mountains, both of which in reality form one and the same chain, extending towards the east, and then turning towards the south until they reach the great ocean, where parts of it penetrate into the sea at the place called the *Dike of Râma*. Of course, these mountains differ very much in cold and heat.

We exhibit the names of the rivers in the following table:—

Sindh or the river of Vaihand.	Biyatta or Jailam.	Candrabhâgâ or Candrâha.	Biyâha to the west of Lahore.	Irâvatî to the east of Lahore.	S'atarudra or Shataldar.
Sarsat, flowing through the country Sarsat.	Jaun.	Gaṅgâ.	Sarayû or Sarwa.	Devikâ.	Kuhû.
Gomatî.	Dhutapâpâ.	Viśâlâ.	Bâhudâsa (!).	Kauśikî.	Niścîrâ.
Gaṇḍakî.	Lohitâ.	Dṛishadvatî.	Tâmrâ Aruṇâ.	Parṇâśâ.	Vedasmṛiti.
Vidâsinî.	Candanâ.	Kâwanâ.	Parâ.	Carmaṇvatî.	Vidiśâ.
Veṇumatî.	S'iprâ, rises in the Pâriyâtrâ and passes Ujain.	Karatoyâ.	Shmâhina.		

In the mountains bordering on the kingdom of Kâyabish, *i.e.* Kâbul, rises a river which is called *Ghorwand*, on account of its many branches. It is joined by several affluents :— Sindh river. Page 130.

1. The river of the pass of Ghûzak.
2. The river of the gorge of Panchîr, below the town of Parwân.
3, 4. The river Sharvat and the river Sâwa, which latter flows through the town of Lanbagâ, *i.e.* Lamghân; they join the Ghorvand at the fortress of Drûta.
5, 6. The rivers Nûr and Ḳîrâ.

Swelled by these affluents, the Ghorvand is a great river opposite the town of Purshâvar, being there called *the ford*, from a ford near the village of Mahanâra, on the eastern banks of the river, and it falls into the river Sindh near the castle of Bîtûr, below the capital of Alḳandahâr (Gandhara), *i.e.* Vaihand.

The river Biyatta, known as Jailam, from the city of

Rivers of the Panjâb.

this name on its western banks, and the river Candarâha join each other nearly fifty miles above Jahrâvar, and pass along west of Multân.

The river Biyâh flows east of Multân, and joins afterwards the Biyatta and Candarâha.

The river Irâva is joined by the river Kaj, which rises in Nagarkot in the mountains of Bhâtul. Thereupon follows as the fifth the river Shatladar (Satlej).

After these five rivers have united below Multân at a place called *Pañcanada, i.e.* the meeting-place of the five rivers, they form an enormous watercourse. In flood-times it sometimes swells to such a degree as to cover nearly a space of ten *farsakh,* and to rise above the tree of the plains, so that afterwards the rubbish carried by the floods is found in their highest branches like birds-nests.

The Muslims call the river, after it has passed the Sindhî city Aror, as a united stream, *the river of Mihrân.* Thus it extends, flowing straight on, becoming broader and broader, and gaining in purity of water, enclosing in its course places like islands, until it reaches Almanṣûra, situated between several of its arms, and flows into the ocean at two places, near the city Loharânî, and more eastward in the province of Kacch at a place called *Sindhu-sâgara,* i.e. *the Sindh Sea.*

Eranian tradition.

As the name *union of the five rivers* occurs in this part of the world (in Panjâb), we observe that a similar name is used also to the north of the above-mentioned mountain chains, for the rivers which flow thence towards the north, after having united near Tirmidh and having formed the river of Balkh, are called *the union of the seven rivers.* The Zoroastrians of Sogdiana have confounded these two things; for they say that the whole of the seven rivers is *Sindh,* and its upper course *Barîdîsh.* A man descending on it sees the sinking of the sun on his right side if he turns his face towards the west, as we see it here on our left side (*sic*).

Various rivers of India. The river Sarsati falls into the sea at the distance of a bowshot east of Somanâth.

The river Jaun joins the Ganges below Kanoj, which lies west of it. The united stream falls into the great ocean near Gaṅgâsâgara.

Between the mouths of the rivers Sarsati and Ganges is the mouth of the river Narmadâ, which descends from the eastern mountains, takes its course in a southwestern direction, and falls into the sea near the town Bahroj, nearly sixty *yojana* east of Somanâth.

Behind the Ganges flow the rivers Rahab and Kawînî, which join the river Sarwa near the city of Bârî.

The Hindus believe that the Ganges in ancient times flowed in Paradise, and we shall relate at a subsequent opportunity how it happened to come down upon earth.

Quotation from *Matsya-Purâṇa*. Page 131. The *Matsya-Purâṇa* says: "After the Ganges had settled on earth, it divided itself into seven arms, the middle of which is the main stream, known as the Ganges. Three flowed eastward, Nalinî, Hrâdinî, and Pâvanî, and three westward, Sîtâ, Cakshu, and Sindhu.

The river Sîta rises in the Himavant, and flows through these countries: Salila, Karstuba, Cîna, Varvara, Yavasa (?), Baha, Pushkara, Kulata, Maṅgala, Kavara, and Saṅgavanta (?); then it falls into the western ocean.

South of Sîta flows the river Cakshuś, which irrigates the countries Cîna, Maru, Kâlika (?), Dhûlika (?), Tukhâra, Barbara, Kâca (?), Palhava, and Bârwancat.

The river Sindh flows through the countries Sindhu, Darada, Zindutunda (?), Gândhâra, Rûrasa (?), Krûra (?), Śivapaura, Indramaru, Sabâtî (?), Saindhava, Kubata, Bahîmarvara, Mara, Mrûṇa, and Sukûrda.

The river Ganges, which is the middle and main stream, flows through the Gandharva, the musicians, Kiṁnara, Yakshas, Râkshasa, Vidyâdhara, Uraga, *i.e.* those who creep on their breasts, the serpents, Kalâpagrama, *i.e.* the city of the most virtuous, Kiṁpurusha, Khasa (?), the mountaineers, Kirâta, Pulinda, the hunters in the plains, robbers, Kuru, Bharata, Pañcâla, Kaushaka (?), Mâtsya, Magadha, Brahmottara, and Tâmalipta. These are the good and bad beings through whose territories the Ganges flows. Afterwards it enters into branches of the mountain Vindhya, where the elephants live, and then it falls into the southern ocean.

Of the eastern Ganges arms, the Hrâdinî flows through the countries Nishaba, Ûpakâna, Dhîvara, Prishaka, Nîlamukha, Kîkara, Ushṭrakarṇa, *i.e.* people whose lips are turned like their ears, Kirâta, Kalîdara, Vivarṇa, *i.e.* the colourless people, so called on account of their intense blackness, Kushikâna, and Svargabhûmi, *i.e.* a country like Paradise. Finally it falls into the eastern ocean.

The river Pâvanî gives water to the Kupatha (?), who are far from sin, Indradyumnasaras, *i.e.* the cisterns of the king Indradyumna, Kharapatha, Bîtra, and Saṅkupatha. It flows through the steppe Udyânamarûra, through the country of the Kuśaprâvaraṇa, and Indradvîpa, and afterwards it falls into the salt sea.

The river Nalinî flows through Tâmara, Haṁsamârga, Samûhuka, and Pûrṇa. All these are pious people who abstain from evil. Then it flows through the midst of mountains and passes by the Karṇaprâvaraṇa, *i.e.* people whose ears fall down on their shoulders, Aśvamukha, *i.e.* people with horse-faces, Parvatamaru, mountainous steppes, and Rûmîmaṇḍala. Finally it flows into the ocean.

Vishṇu-Purâṇa.

The *Vishṇu-Purâṇa* mentions that the great rivers of the middle earth which flow into the ocean are Anutapata, Shikhi, Dipâpa, Tridiva, Karma, Amṛita and Sukṛita.

CHAPTER XXVI.

ON THE SHAPE OF HEAVEN AND EARTH ACCORDING TO THE HINDU ASTRONOMERS.

Page 132.

THIS and similar questions have received at the hands of the Hindus a treatment and solution totally different from that which they have received among us Muslims. The sentences of the Koran on these and other subjects necessary for man to know are not such as to require a strained interpretation in order to become positive certainties in the minds of the hearers, and the same may be said regarding the holy codes revealed before the Koran. The sentences of the Koran on the subjects necessary for man to know are in perfect harmony with the other religious codes, and at the same time they are perfectly clear, without any ambiguity. Besides, the Koran does not contain questions which have for ever been subjects of controversy, nor such questions the solution of which has always been despaired of, *e.g.* questions similar to certain puzzles of chronology.

The Koran, a certain and clear basis of all research.

Islam was already in its earliest times exposed to the machinations of people who were opposed to it in the bottom of their heart, people who preached Islam with sectarian tendencies, and who read to simple-minded audiences out of their Koran-copies passages of which not a single word was ever *created* (*i.e.* revealed) by God. But people believed them and copied these things on their authority, beguiled by their hypocrisy; nay, they disregarded the true form of the book which they had had until then, because the vulgar mind is

Islam falsified: I. By a Judaistic party.

always inclined to any kind of delusion. Thus the pure tradition of Islam has been rendered confused by this Judaistic party.

II. By the dualists.

Islam encountered a second mishap at the hands of the Zindîḳs, the followers of Mânî, like Ibn Almuḳaffaʻ, ʻAbd-alkarîm Ibn ʻAbî-alʻaujâʼ, and others, who, being the fathers of criticism, and declaring one thing as *just*, another as *admissible*, &c., raised doubts in weak-minded people as to the One and First, *i.e.* the Unique and Eternal God, and directed their sympathies towards dualism. At the same time they presented the biography of Mânî to the people in such a beautiful garb that they were gained over to his side. Now this man did not confine himself to the trash of his sectarian theology, but also proclaimed his views about the form of the world, as may be seen from his books, which were intended for deliberate deception. His opinions were far-spread. Together with the inventions of the above-mentioned Judaistic party, they formed a religious system which was declared to be *the Islam*, but with which God has nothing whatever to do.. Whoso opposes it and firmly adheres to the orthodox faith in conformity with the Koran is stigmatised by them as an infidel and heretic and condemned to death, and they will not allow him to hear the word of the Koran. All these acts of theirs are more impious than even the words of Pharaoh, "I am your highest lord" (Sura, 79, 24), and "I do not know of any god for you save myself" (Sura, 28, 38). If party spirit of this kind will go on and rule for a long time, we may easily decline from the straight path of honour and duty. We, however, take our refuge with God, who renders firm the foot of every one who seeks *Him*, and who seeks the truth about Him.

Veneration of the Hindus for their astronomers.

The religious books of the Hindus and their codes of tradition, the Purâṇas, contain sentences about the shape of the world which stand in direct opposition to scientific truth as known to their astronomers. By these books people are guided in fulfilling the rites of their religion, and by means of them the great mass of the nation have been wheedled into a predilection for astronomical calculation and astrological predictions and warnings. The consequence is, that they show much affection to their astronomers, declaring that they are excellent men, that it is a good omen to meet them, and firmly believing that all of them come into Paradise and none into hell. For this the astronomers requite them by accepting their popular notions as truth, by conforming themselves to them, however far from truth most of them may be, and by presenting them with such spiritual stuff as they stand in need of. This is the reason why the two theories, the vulgar and the scientific, have become intermingled in the course of time, why the doctrines of the astronomers have been disturbed and confused, in particular the doctrines of those authors—and they are the majority—who simply copy their predecessors, who take the bases of their science from tradition and do not make them the objects of independent scientific research.

Astronomers admit popular notions into their doctrines.

General observations on the rotundity of the earth, on Meru and Vadavâmukha.

Page 133.

We shall now explain the views of Hindu astronomers regarding the present subject, viz. the shape of heaven and earth. According to them, heaven as well as the whole world is round, and the earth has a globular shape, the northern half being dry land, the southern half being covered with water. The dimension of the earth is larger according to them than it is according to the Greeks and modern observations, and in their calculations to find this dimension they have entirely given up any mention of the traditional seas and *Dvîpas*, and of the enormous sums of *yojana* attributed to each of them. The astronomers follow the theologians in everything which does not encroach upon their science, *e.g.* they adopt the theory of Mount Meru being under the north pole, and that of the island

Vaḍavâmukha lying under the south pole. Now, it is entirely irrelevant whether Meru is there or not, as it is only required for the explanation of the particular mill-like rotation, which is necessitated by the fact that to each spot on the plane of the earth corresponds a spot in the sky as its zenith. Also the fable of the southern island Vaḍavâmukha does no harm to their science, although it is possible, nay, even likely, that each pair of quarters of the earth forms a coherent, uninterrupted unity, the one as a continent, the other as an ocean (and that in reality there is no such island under the south pole). Such a disposition of the earth is required by the law of gravitation, for according to them the earth is in the centre of the universe, and everything heavy gravitates towards it. Evidently on account of this law of gravitation they consider heaven, too, as having a globular shape.

We shall now exhibit the opinions of the Hindu astronomers on this subject according to our translation of their works. In case, however, one word or other in our translation should be used in a meaning different from that which it generally has in our sciences, we ask the reader to consider only the original meaning of the word (not the technical one), for this only is meant.

Quotation from the *Siddhânta* of Pulisa.

Pulisa says in his *Siddhânta:* "Paulisa the Greek says somewhere that the earth has *a globular shape*, whilst in another place he says that it has *the shape of a cover* (*i.e.* of a flat plane). And in both sentences he is right; for the plane or surface of the earth is *round*, and its diameter is a straight line. That he, however, only believed in the globular shape of the earth, may be proved by many passages of his work. Besides, all scholars agree on this head, as Varâhamihira, Âryabhaṭa, Deva, Śrîsheṇa, Vishṇucandra, and Brahman. If the earth were not round, it would not be girded with the latitudes of the different places on earth, day and night would not be different in winter and summer, and the conditions of the planets and of their rotations would be quite different from what they are.

"The position of the earth is central. Half of it is clay, half water. Mount Meru is in the dry half, the home of the Deva, the angels, and above it is the pole. In the other half, which is covered by water, lies Vaḍavâmukha, under the south pole, a continent like an island, inhabited by the Daitya and Nâga, relatives of the Deva on Meru. Therefore it is also called Daityântara.

"The line which divides the two earth-halves, the dry and the wet, from each other, is called *Niraksha, i.e. having no latitude*, being identical with our equator. In the four cardinal directions with relation to this line there are four great cities:—

Yamakoṭi, in the east.
Laṅkâ, in the south.
Romaka, in the west.
Siddhapura, in the north.

"The earth is fastened on the two poles, and held by the axis. When the sun rises over the line which passes both through Meru and Laṅkâ, that moment is noon to Yamakoṭi, midnight to the Greeks, and evening to Siddhapura."

In the same manner things are represented by Âryabhaṭa.

Quotation from the *Brahmasiddhânta* of Brahmagupta.

Brahmagupta, the son of Jishṇu, a native of Bhillamâla, says in his *Brahmasiddhânta:* "Many are the sayings of people about the shape of the earth, specially among those who study the Purâṇas and the religious books. Some say that it is level like a mirror, others say that it is hollow like a bowl. Others maintain that it is level like a mirror, inclosed by a sea, this sea being inclosed by an earth, this earth being inclosed by a sea, &c., all of them being round like collars. Each sea or earth has the double size of that which it incloses. The outside earth is sixty-four times as large as the central earth, and the sea inclosing the outside earth is

Page 134.

sixty-four times as large as the sea inclosing the central earth. Several circumstances, however, compel us to attribute globular shape both to the earth and heaven, viz. the fact that the stars rise and set in different places at different times, so that, *e.g.* a man in Yamakoṭi observes one identical star rising above the western horizon, whilst a man in Rûm at the same time observes it rising above the eastern horizon. Another argument to the same effect is this, that a man on Meru observes one identical star above the horizon in the zenith of Laṅkâ, the country of the demons, whilst a man in Laṅkâ at the same time observes it above his head. Besides, all astronomical calculations are not correct unless we assume the globular figure of heaven and earth. Therefore we must declare that heaven is a globe, because we observe in it all the characteristics of a globe, and the observation of these characteristics of the world would not be correct unless in reality it were a globe. Now, it is evident that all the other theories about the world are futile."

Quotations from various astronomers.

Âryabhaṭa inquires into the nature of the world, and says that it consists of earth, water, fire, and wind, and that each of these elements is round.

Likewise Vasishṭha and Lâṭa say that the five elements, viz. earth, water, fire, wind, and heaven, are round.

Varâhamihira says that all things which are perceived by the senses, are witnesses in favour of the globular shape of the earth, and refute the possibility of its having another shape.

Âryabhaṭa, Pulisa, Vasishṭha, and Lâṭa agree in this, that when it is noon in Yamakoṭi, it is midnight in Rûm, beginning of the day in Laṅkâ, and beginning of the night in Siddhapura, which is not possible if the world is not round. Likewise the periodicity of the eclipses can only be explained by the world's being round.

Lâṭa says: "On each place of the earth only one-half of the globe of heaven is seen. The more northern our latitude is, the more Meru and the pole rise above the horizon; as they sink down below the horizon, the more southern is our latitude. The equator sinks down from the zenith of places, the greater their latitude is both in north and south. A man who is north of the equator only sees the north pole, whilst the south pole is invisible to him, and *vice versâ*."

Considerations regarding the rotundity of the earth, the balance of gravity between the northern and southern halves, and the attraction of gravitation.

These are the words of Hindu astronomers regarding the globular shape of heaven and earth, and what is between them, and regarding the fact that the earth, situated in the centre of the globe, is only of a small size in comparison with the visible part of heaven. These thoughts are the elements of astronomy as contained in the first chapter of Ptolemy's *Almagest*, and of similar books, though they are not worked out in that scientific form in which we are accustomed to give them,

(*Lacuna*,)

for the earth is more heavy than the water, and the water is fluid like the air. The globular form must be to the earth a physical necessity, as long as it does not, by the order of God, take another form. Therefore the earth could not move towards the north, nor the water move towards the south, and in consequence one whole half is not *terra firma*, nor the other half water, unless we suppose that the *terra firma* half be hollow. As far as our observation, based on induction, goes, the *terra firma* must be in one of the two northern quarters, and therefore we guess that the same is the case on the adjacent quarter. We admit the possibility of the existence of the island Vaḍavâmukha, but we do not maintain it, since all we know of it and of Meru is exclusively based on tradition.

Page 135.

The equatorial line does not, in the quarter of the earth known to us, represent a boundary between *terra* *firma* and the ocean. For in certain places the continent protrudes far into the ocean, so as to pass beyond the equator, *e.g.* the plains of the negroes in the west, which protrude far towards the south, even beyond the *mountains of the moon* and the sources of the Nile, in fact, into regions which we do not exactly know. For that continent is desert and impassable, and likewise the sea behind Sufâla of the Zanj is unnavigable. No ship which ventured to go there has ever returned to relate what it had witnessed.

Also a great part of India above the province of Sindh deeply protrudes far towards the south, and seems even to pass beyond the equator.

In the midst between both lie Arabia and Yemen, but they do not go so far south as to cross the equator.

Further, as the *terra firma* stretches far out into the ocean, thus the ocean too penetrates into *terra firma*, breaking into it in various places, and forming bays and gulfs. For instance, the sea extends as a tongue along the west side of Arabia as far as the neighbourhood of Central Syria. It is narrowest near Ḳulzum, whence it is also called *the Sea of Ḳulzum*.

Another and still larger arm of the sea exists east of Arabia, the so-called *Persian Sea*. Between India and China, also, the sea forms a great curve towards the north.

Hence it is evident that the coast-line of these countries does not correspond to the equator, nor keep an invariable distance from it,.

(*Lacuna*,)

and the explanation relating to the four cities will follow in its proper place.

The difference of the times which has been remarked is one of the results of the rotundity of the earth, and of its occupying the centre of the globe. And if they attribute to the earth, though it be round, inhabitants—for cities cannot be imagined without inhabitants—the existence of men on earth is accounted for by the attraction of everything heavy towards its centre, *i.e.* the middle of the world.

Quotations from the *Vâyu* and *Matsya Purâṇas*.

Much to the same effect are the expressions of *Vâyu-Purâṇa*, viz. that noon in Amarâvatî is sunrise in Vaivasvata, midnight in Sukhâ, and sunset in Vibhâ.

Similar, also, are the expressions of *Matsya-Purâṇa*, for this book explains that east of Meru lies the city Amarâvatîpura, the residence of Indra, the ruler, and his wife; south of Meru, the city Saṁyamanîpura, the residence of Yama, the son of the Sun, where he punishes and requites mankind; west of Meru, the city Sukhâpura, the residence of Varuṇa, *i.e.* the water; and north of Meru, the city Vibhâvarîpura, belonging to the Môon. Sun and planets revolve round Meru. When the sun has his noon position in Amarâvatîpura, it is the beginning of the day in Saṁyamanîpura, midnight in Sukhâ, and the beginning of the night in Vibhâvarîpura. And when the sun has his noon position in Saṁyamanîpura, he rises over Sukhâpura, sets over Amaravatîpura, and has his midnight position with relation to Vibhavarîpura.

Page 136.

A note of the author on the passage from the *Matsya-Purâṇa*.

If the author of the *Matsya-Purâṇa* says that the sun revolves round Meru, he means a mill-like rotation round those who inhabit Meru, who, in consequence of this nature of the rotation, do not know east nor west. The sun does not rise for the inhabitants of Meru in one particular place, but in various places. By the word *east* the author means the zenith of one city, and by *west* the zenith of another. Possibly those four cities of the *Matsya-Purâṇa* are identical with those mentioned by the astronomers. But the author has not mentioned how far they are distant from Meru. What we have besides related as notions of the Hindus is perfectly correct and borne out by scientific methods; however, they are wont never to speak of the pole unless they mention in the same breath also the mountain Meru.

Brahmagupta and Varâhamihira on the law of gravitation.

In the definition of what is *low* the Hindus agree with us, viz. that it is *the centre of the world*, but their expressions on this head are subtle, more particularly as this is one of the great questions which is only handled by the most eminent of their scholars.

So Brahmagupta says: "Scholars have declared that the globe of the earth is in the midst of heaven, and that Mount Meru, the home of the Devas, as well as Vaḍavâmukha below, is the home of their opponents; the Daitya and Dânava belong to it. But this *below* is according to them only a relative one. Disregarding this, we say that the earth on all its sides is the same; all people on earth stand upright, and all heavy things fall down to the earth by a law of nature, for it is the nature of the earth to attract and to keep things, as it is the nature of water to flow, that of fire to burn, and that of the wind to set in motion. If a thing wants to go deeper down than the earth, let it try. The earth is the only *low* thing, and seeds always return to it, in whatever direction you may throw them away, and never rise upwards from the earth."

Varâhamihira says: "Mountains, seas, rivers, trees, cities, men, and angels, all are around the globe of the earth. And if Yamakoṭi and Rûm are opposite to each other, one could not say that the one is *low* in its relation to the other, since the *low* does not exist. How could one say of one place of the earth that it is *low*, as it is in every particular identical with any other place on earth, and one place could as little *fall* as any other. Every one speaks to himself with regard to his own self, '*I* am *above* and the others are *below*,' whilst all of them are around the globe like the blossoms springing on the branches of a Kadamba-tree. They encircle it on all sides, but each individual blossom has the same position as the other, neither the one hanging downward nor the other standing upright. For the earth attracts that which is upon her, for it is the *below* towards all directions, and heaven is the *above* towards all directions."

As the reader will observe, these theories of the

Hindus are based on the correct knowledge of the laws of nature, but, at the same time, they practise a little deceit upon their traditionalists and theologians. So Balabhadra the commentator says: "It is the most correct of the opinions of people, many and different as they are, that the earth and Meru and the zodiacal sphere are round. And the Âpta (?)-purâṇa-kâra, *i.e.* the faithful followers of the Purâṇa, say: 'The earth is like the back of a tortoise; it is not round from below.' They are perfectly right, because the earth is in the midst of the water, and that which appears above the water has the shape of a tortoise-back; and the sea around the earth is not navigable. The fact of the earth being round is proved by eyesight."

Quotations from Balabhadra, and the author's criticisms on them.

Page 137.

Here the reader must notice how Balabhadra declares the theory of the theologians as to the rotundity of the back to be true. He gives himself the air of not knowing that they deny that the womb, *i.e.* the other half of the globe, is round, and he busies himself with a traditional element (as to the earth being like the back of a tortoise), which, in reality, has no connection with the subject.

Further, Balabhadra says: "Human eyesight reaches to a point distant from the earth and its rotundity the 96th part of 5000 *yojana*, *i.e.* 52 *yojana* (exactly $52\frac{1}{12}$). Therefore man does not observe its rotundity, and hence the discrepancy of opinions on the subject."

Those pious men (the Âpta (?)-purâṇa-kâra) do not deny the rotundity of the back of the earth; nay, they maintain it by comparing the earth to the back of a tortoise. Only Balabhadra makes them deny it (by the words, "the earth is not round from below," *supra*), since he understood their words as meaning that the water surrounds the earth. That which rises above the water may either be globular or a plain rising above the water like an inverted drum, *i.e* like a segment of a round pilaster.

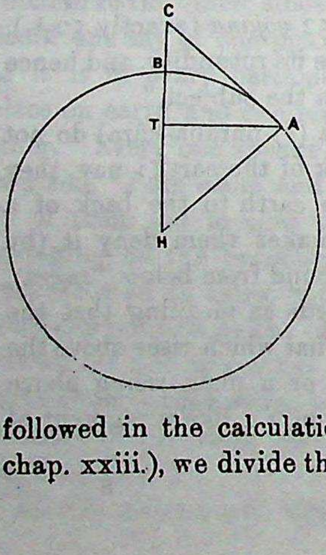
Further, the remark of Balabhadra (v. p. 273), that man, on account of the smallness of his stature, cannot observe the rotundity of the earth, is not true; because even if the human stature were as tall as the plumb-line of the highest mountain, if he were to make his observation only from one single point without going to other places, and without reasoning about the observations made at the different places, even such a height would be of no avail to him, and he would not be able to perceive the rotundity of the earth and its nature.

What, however, is the connection of this remark with the popular theory? If he had concluded from analogy that that side of the earth which is opposed to the *round* one—I mean the lower half—was also round, and if he then had given his theory about the extent of the power of human vision as a result of reflection, not as a result of the perception of the senses, his theory would seem to have a certain foundation.

Calculation on the extent of human vision on the earth.

With regard to Balabhadra's definition of the extent which may be reached by the human eye, we propose the following calculation:—

Let A B round the centre H represent the globe of the earth. B is the standing-point of the observer; his stature is B C. Further, we draw the line C A, so that it touches the earth.



Now it is evident that the field of vision is B A, which we suppose to be equal to $\frac{1}{96}$ of the circle, *i.e.* $3\frac{3}{4}$ degrees, if we divide the circle into 360 degrees.

According to the method followed in the calculation of the mountain Meru (in chap. xxiii.), we divide the square of T A, *i.e.* 50,625, by

H T, *i.e.* 3431′. So we get as quotient T C = 0° 14′ 45″; and B C, the stature of the observer, is 0° 7′ 45″.

Our calculation is based on this, that H B, the *sinus totus*, is 3438′. However, the radius of the earth is, according to the circumference which we have mentioned, 795° 27′ 16″ (*yojana*). If we measure B C by this measure, it is = 1 *yojana*, 6 *krośa*, 1035 yards (= 57,035 yards). If we suppose B C to be equal to four yards, it stands in the same relation to A T, according to the measure of the sine, as 57,035, *i.e.* the yards which we have found as the measure of the stature, to A T according to the measure of the sine, *i.e.* 225. If we now calculate the sine, we find it to be 0° 0′ 1″ 3‴, and its arc has the same measure. However, each degree of the rotundity of the earth represents the measure of 13 *yojana*, 7 *krośa*, and 333⅓ yards (*sic*). Therefore the field of vision on the earth is 291⅔ yards (*sic*). Page 138.

(*For an explanation of this calculation see the notes.*)

The source of this calculation of Balabhadra's is the *Pulisa-siddhânta*, which divides the arc of the quarter of a circle into 24 *kardajât*. He says: "If anybody asks for the reason of this, he must know that each of these *kardajât* is $\frac{1}{96}$ of the circle = 225 minutes (= 3¾ degrees). And if we reckon its sine, we find it also to be = 225 minutes." This shows us that the sines are equal to their arcs in parts which are smaller than this *kardaja*. And because the *sinus totus*, according to Pulisa and Âryabhaṭa, has the relation of the diameter to the circle of 360 degrees, this arithmetical equality brought Balabhadra to think that the arc was perpendicular; and any expanse in which no convexity protrudes preventing the vision from passing, and which is not too small to be seen, is visible.

This, however, is a gross mistake; for the arc is never perpendicular, and the sine, however small it be, never equals the arc. This is admissible only for such degrees as are supposed for the convenience of calculation, but it is never and nowhere true for the degrees of the earth.

The axis of the earth according to Pulisa.

If Pulisa says (v. p. 267) that the earth is held by an axis, he does not mean thereby that in reality there exists such an axis, and that but for it the earth would fall. How could he say such a thing, since he is of opinion that there are four inhabited cities around the world, which is explained by the fact that everything heavy falls from all sides down towards the earth? However, Pulisa holds this view, that the motion of the peripheric parts is the reason why the central parts are motionless, and that the motion of a globe presupposes two poles, and one line connecting them, which in the idea is the axis. It is as if he meant to say, that the motion of heaven keeps the earth in its place, making it the natural place for the earth, outside of which it could never be. And this place lies on the midst of the axis of motion. For the other diameters of the globe may also be imagined to be axes, since ἐν δυνάμει they are all axes, and if the earth were not in the midst of an axis, there might be axes which did not pass through the earth. Hence one may say metaphorically that the earth is supported by the axes.

Whether the earth moves or is at rest, according to Brahmagupta and the author.

As regards the resting of the earth, one of the elementary problems of astronomy, which offers many and great difficulties, this, too, is a dogma with the Hindu astronomers. Brahmagupta says in the *Brahmasiddhânta:* "Some people maintain that the *first* motion (from east to west) does not lie in the meridian, but belongs to the earth. But Varâhamihira refutes them by saying: 'If that were the case, a bird would not return to its nest as soon as it had flown away from it towards the west.' And, in fact, it is precisely as Varâhamihira says." Page 139.

Brahmagupta says in another place of the same book: "The followers of Âryabhaṭa maintain that the earth is moving and heaven resting. People have tried to refute them by saying that, if such were the case, stones and trees would fall from the earth."

But Brahmagupta does not agree with them, and says that that would not necessarily follow from their theory, apparently because he thought that all heavy things are attracted towards the centre of the earth. He says: "On the contrary, if that were the case, *the earth would not vie in keeping an even and uniform pace with the minutes of heaven, the prâṇas of the times.*"

There seems to be some confusion in this chapter, perhaps by the fault of the translator. For the *minutes of heaven* are 21,600, and are called *prâṇa*, *i.e.* breaths, because according to them each minute of the meridian revolves in *the time of an ordinary human breath.*

Supposing this to be true, and that the earth makes a complete rotation eastward in so many breaths as heaven does according to his (Brahmagupta's) view, we cannot see what should prevent the earth from keeping an even and uniform pace with heaven.

Besides, the rotation of the earth does in no way impair the value of astronomy, as all appearances of an astronomic character can quite as well be explained according to this theory as to the other. There are, however, other reasons which make it impossible. This question is most difficult to solve. The most prominent of both modern and ancient astronomers have deeply studied the question of the moving of the earth, and tried to refute it. We, too, have composed a book on the subject called *Miftâḥ-'ilm-alhai'a* (*Key of Astronomy*), in which we think we have surpassed our predecessors, if not in the words, at all events in the matter.

CHAPTER XXVII.

ON THE FIRST TWO MOTIONS OF THE UNIVERSE (THAT FROM EAST TO WEST ACCORDING TO ANCIENT ASTRONOMERS AND THE PRECESSION OF THE EQUINOXES), BOTH ACCORDING TO HINDU ASTRONOMERS AND THE AUTHORS OF THE PURÂṆAS.

THE astronomers of the Hindus hold on this subject mostly the same views as ourselves. We shall give quotations from them, but shall at once confess that that which we are able to give is very scanty indeed.

Quotation on the subject from Pulisa.

Pulisa says: "The wind makes the sphere of the fixed stars revolve; the two poles keep it in its place, and its motion appears to the inhabitants of Mount Meru as a motion from the left to the right; to the inhabitants of Vaḍavâmukha as one from the right to the left."

In another place he says: "If anybody asks for the direction of the motion of the stars which we see rising in the east and rotating towards the west until they set, let him know that the motion which *we* see as a westward motion appears different according to the places which the spectators occupy. The inhabitants of Mount Meru see it as a motion from the left to the right, whilst the inhabitants of Vaḍavâmukha see it as the opposite, as a motion from the right to the left. The inhabitants of the equator see it exclusively as a westward motion, and the inhabitants of the parts of the earth between the poles and the equator see it more or less depressed, as their places have more or less northern or southern latitude. The whole of this motion is caused by the wind, which makes the spheres revolve, and compels the planets and the other stars to rise in the east and to set in the west. This, however, is only an *accidens*. As for the *essentia rei*, the motions of the heavenly bodies are directed towards the east, from *Alsharaṭân* towards *Albuṭain*, the latter lying east of the former. But if the inquirer does not know the lunar stations, and is not capable of procuring for himself by their help an idea of this eastward motion, let him observe the moon herself, how she moves away from the sun once and a second time; how she then comes near him, till she finally joins him. This will give him an idea of the *second* motion."

Page 140.

Quotations from Brahmagupta and Balabhadra.

Brahmagupta says: "The sphere has been created as moving with the greatest rapidity possible about two poles without ever slackening, and the stars have been created where there is no *Baṭn-ḥût* nor *Sharaṭân*, *i.e.* on the frontier between them, which is the vernal equinox."

Balabhadra, the commentator, says: "The whole world hangs on two poles, and moves in a circular motion, which begins with a *kalpa* and ends with a *kalpa*. But people must not therefore say that the world, on account of the continuity of its motion, is without beginning and without end."

Brahmagupta says: "The place without latitude (*Niraksha*), divided into sixty *ghaṭikâ*, is the horizon for the inhabitants of Meru. There east is west; and behind that place (beyond the equator) towards the south is Vaḍavâmukha and the ocean which surrounds it. When the spheres and the stars revolve, the meridian becomes an horizon common to the Devas (in the north) and the Daityas (in the south), which they see together. But the direction of the motion appears to them as different. The motion which the angels see as a motion to the right, the Daityas see as one to the left, and *vice versâ*, just as a man who has a thing on his right side, looking into the water, sees it on his left. The cause of this uniform motion which never increases nor decreases is a wind, but it is not the common wind which we feel and hear; for this is lulled, and roused, and varies, whilst *that* wind never slackens."

In another place Brahmagupta says: "The wind makes all the fixed stars and the planets revolve towards the west in one and the same revolution; but the planets move also in a slow pace towards the east, like a dust-atom moving on a potter's-wheel in a direction opposite to that in which the wheel is revolving. That motion of this atom which is visible is identical with the motion which drives the wheel round, whilst its individual motion is not perceived. In this view Lâṭa, Âryabhaṭa, and Vasishṭha agree, but some people think that the earth moves while the sun is resting. That motion which mankind conceives as a motion from east to west, the angels (Deva) conceive as a motion from left to right, the Daityas as one from right to left."

Criticisms of the author. The wind as the motor of the sphere.

This is all I have read in Indian books on the subject.

Their speaking of the wind as the *motor* (*supra*) has, I think, only the purpose of bringing the subject near to the understanding of people and to facilitate its study; for people see with their own eyes that the wind, when blowing against instruments with wings and toys of this kind, puts them into motion. But as soon as they come to speak of the *first mover* (God), they at once give up any comparison with the natural wind, which in all its phases is determined by certain causes. For though it puts things into motion, the *moving* is not its essence; and besides, it cannot move without being in contact with something, because the wind is a body, and is acted upon by external influences or means, its motion being commensurate with their force.

Their saying that the wind does not rest, simply means that the moving power works perpetually, and does not imply rest and motion such as are proper to bodies. Further, their saying that it does *not slacken* means that it is free from all kinds of accidents; for *slackening* and *weakening* only occur in such bodies or beings which are composed of elements of conflicting qualities. Page 141.

On the two poles *keeping* the sphere.

The expression that the two poles *keep* the sphere of the fixed stars (p. 278) means that they keep or preserve it in its normal state of motion, not that they keep or preserve it from falling down. There is a story of an ancient Greek who thought that once upon a time the Milky Way had been a road of the sun, and that afterwards he had left it. Such a thing would mean that the motions ceased to be normal, and to something like this the expression of *the poles keeping the sphere of the fixed stars* may be referred.

On the relative nature of time.

The phrase of Balabhadra about *the ending of the motion* (that it ends with a *kalpa*, &c., p. 279) means that everything which exists and may be determined arithmetically has no doubt an end, for two reasons: *first*, because it has a beginning, for every number consists of *one* and its reduplications, whilst the *one* itself exists before all of them; and, *secondly*, because part of it exists in the present moment of time, for if days and nights increase in number through the continuation of existence, they must necessarily have a beginning whence they started. If a man maintains that *time* does not exist in the sphere (as one of its immanent qualities), and thinks that day and night have only a *relative* existence, exist only *in relation* to the earth and its inhabitants, that if, *e.g.*, the earth were taken away out of the midst of the world, also night and day would cease to exist as well as the possibility of measuring elements composed of days, he would thereby impose upon Balabhadra the necessity of a digression, and compel him to prove the cause, not of the *first*, but of the *second* motion. The latter cause is the cycles of the planets, which have only a relation to *the sphere*, not to *the earth*. These cycles Balabhadra indicates by the word *kalpa* (v. p. 279), since it comprehends them all, and since all of them begin with its beginning.

The meridian divided into sixty *ghatikâ*.

If Brahmagupta says of the meridian that it is divided into sixty parts (v. p. 279), it is as if any one of us should say, the meridian is divided into twenty-four parts; for the meridian is a medium for measuring and counting time. Its revolution lasts twenty-four hours, or, as the Hindus will have it, sixty *ghaṭikâ* (or *ghaṛî*). This is the reason why they have reckoned the risings of the zodiacal signs in *ghaṭikâ*, not in *times of the meridian* (360 degrees).

On the fixed stars.

If, further, Brahmagupta says that the wind causes the fixed stars and the planets to revolve, if he besides, in particular, attributes a slow eastward motion to the planets (p. 280), he gives the reader to understand that the fixed stars have no such motion, or else he would have said that they, too, have the same slow eastward motion as the planets, not differing from them save in size and in the variation which they exhibit in the retrograde motion. Some people relate that the ancients originally did not understand their (the fixed stars') motions until, in long periods of time, they became aware of them. This opinion is confirmed by the fact that Brahmagupta's book does not, among the various cycles, mention the cycles of the fixed stars, and that he makes their appearing and disappearing depend upon invariable degrees of the sun.

The direction of the heavenly motion, as seen from different points of the earth.

If Brahmagupta maintains (p. 278) that to the inhabitants of the equator the *first motion* is not a motion to the right and left, the reader must bear in mind the following. A man dwelling under either of the two poles, to whatever direction he turns, has always the moving heavenly bodies *before* himself, and as they move in one direction, they must necessarily first stand opposite one of his hands, and then, moving on, come to stand opposite his other hand. The direction of this motion appears to the inhabitants of the two poles just the very contrary, like the image of a thing in the water or a mirror, where its directions seem to be exchanged. If the image of a man is reflected by the water or a mirror, he appears as a different man standing opposite to the spectator, his right side opposite to Page 142. the left of the spectator, and his left side opposite to the right of the spectator.

Likewise the inhabitants of places of northern latitude have the revolving heavenly bodies *before* themselves towards the south, and the inhabitants of places of southern latitude have them *before* themselves towards the north. To them the motion appears the same as to the inhabitants of Meru and Vaḍavâmukha. But as regards those living on the equator, the heavenly bodies revolve nearly *above their heads*, so they cannot have them *before* themselves in any direction. In reality, however, they deviate a little from the equator, and in consequence the people there have a uniform motion before themselves on two sides, the motion of the northern heavenly bodies from right to left, and that of the southern bodies from left to right. So they unite in their persons the faculty of the inhabitants of the two poles (viz. of seeing the heavenly bodies moving in different directions), and it depends entirely upon their will, if they want to see the stars move from the right to the left or *vice versâ*.

It is the line passing through the zenith of a man standing on the equator which Brahmagupta means when he says that it is divided into sixty parts (v. p. 279).

The authors of the Purâṇas represent heaven as a dome or cupola standing on earth and resting, and the stars as beings which wander individually from east to west. How could these men have any idea of the *second* motion? And if they really had such an idea, how could an opponent of the same class of men concede the possibility that one and the same thing individually moves in two different directions?

We shall here communicate what we know of their theories, although we are aware that the reader will not derive any profit from them, since they are simply useless.

Quotation from the *Matsya-Purâṇa*.

The *Matsya-Purâṇa* says: "The sun and the stars pass along southward as rapidly as an arrow revolving round Meru. The sun revolves round something like a beam, the end of which is burning when its revolution is very rapid. The sun does not really disappear (during the night); he is then invisible only to some people, to some of the inhabitants of the four cities on the four sides of Meru. He revolves round Meru, starting from the north side of Mount Lokâloka; he does not pass beyond Lokâloka, nor illuminate its south side. He is invisible during the night, because he is so far away. Man can see him at a distance of 1000 *yojana*, but when he is so far away, a small object sufficiently near to the eye can render him invisible to the spectator.

"When the sun stands in the zenith of Pushkara-Dvîpa, he moves along the distance of one-thirtieth part of the earth in three-fifths of an hour. In so much time he traverses 21 *laksha* and 50,000 *yojana*, *i.e.* 2,150,000 *yojana*. Then he turns to the north, and the distance he traverses becomes thrice as large. In consequence, the day becomes long. The distance which the sun traverses in a southern day is 9 *koṭi* and 10,045 *yojana*. When he then returns to the north and revolves round *Kshîra*, *i.e.* the Milky Way, his daily march is 1 *koṭi* and 21 *laksha yojana*."

Criticisms of the author on the theory of the *Matsya-Purâṇa.*

Now we ask the reader to consider how confused these expressions are. If the author of the *Matsya-Purâṇa* says "the stars pass as rapidly as an arrow," &c., we take this for a hyperbole intended for uneducated people; but we must state that the arrow-like motion of the stars is not peculiar to the south to the exclusion of the north. There are limits both in the north and south whence the sun returns, and the time of the sun's passing from the southern limit to the northern is equal to the time of his passing from the northern limit to the southern. Therefore his motion *northward* has the same right of being described as *as rapid as an arrow.* Herein, however, lies a hint of the theological opinion of the author regarding the north pole, for he thinks the north is the *above* and the south the *below.* Hence the stars glide down to the south like children on a see-saw plank.

Page 143.

If, however, the author hereby means *the second motion*, whilst in reality it is the *first*, we must state that the stars in the *second motion* do not revolve round Meru, and that the plane of this motion is inclined towards the horizon of Meru by one-twelfth of the circle.

Further, how far-fetched is this simile in which he connects the motion of the sun with a burning beam! If we held the opinion that the sun moves as an uninterrupted round collar, his simile would be useful in so far as it refutes such an opinion. But as we consider the sun as a body, as it were, standing in heaven, his simile is meaningless. And if he simply means to say that the sun describes a round circle, his comparing the sun to a *burning beam* is quite superfluous, because a stone tied to the end of a cord describes a similar circle if it is made to revolve round the head (there being no necessity for describing it as burning).

That the sun rises over some people and sets over others, as he describes it, is true; but here, too, he is not free from his theological opinions. This is shown by his mention of the mountain Lokâloka and his remark that the rays of the sun fall on it, on its *human* or north side, not on its *wild* or south side.

Further, the sun is not hidden during the night on account of his great distance, but because he is covered by something—by the earth according to us, by Mount Meru according to the author of the *Matsya-Purâṇa.* He imagines that the sun marches round Meru, whilst we are on one of its sides. In consequence we are in a varying distance from the sun's path. That this is originally his opinion is confirmed by the later following remarks. That the sun is invisible during the night has nothing whatever to do with his distance from us.

The numbers which the author of the *Matsya-Purâṇa* mentions I hold to be corrupt, as they are not borne out by any calculation. He represents the path of the sun in the north as threefold that in the south, and makes this the cause of the difference of the length of the day. Whilst in reality the sum of day and night is always identical, and day and night in north and south stand in a constant relation to each other, it seems necessary that we should refer his remarks to a latitude where the summer-day is 45 *ghaṭikâ,* the winter-day 15 *ghaṭikâ* long.

Further, his remark that the sun hastens in the north (marches there more rapidly than in the south), requires to be proved. The places of northern latitude have meridians not very distant from each other, because of their being near to the pole, whilst the meridians become more distant from each other the nearer they are to the equator. If, now, the sun hastens in traversing a smaller distance, he wants less time than for traversing the greater distance, more especially if on this greater distance his march is slackening. In reality the opposite is the case.

By his phrase *when the sun revolves above Pushkaradvîpa* (p. 284) is meant the line of the winter solstice.

According to him, on this line the day must be longer than in any other place, whether it be the summer solstice or another. All this is unintelligible.

Quotation from the *Vâyu-Purâna.*

Similar notions are also found in the *Vâyu-Purâṇa*, viz. "that the day in the south is twelve *muhûrta*, in the north eighteen, and that the sun between south and north has a declination of 17,221 *yojana* in 183 days, *i.e.* $94(\frac{19}{183})$ *yojana* for each day."

One *muhûrta* is equal to four-fifths of an hour (=48 minutes). The sentence of the *Vâyu-Purâṇa* applies to a latitude where the longest day is $14\frac{2}{5}$ hours.

Page 144.

As regards the numbers of the *yojanas* mentioned by the *Vâyu-Purâṇa*, the author means evidently the *portio* of the double declination of the sphere. According to him, the declination is twenty-four degrees; therefore the *yojanas* of the whole sphere would be $129,157\frac{1}{2}$. And the days in which the sun traverses the double declination are half the solar year, no regard being had to the fractions of days, which are nearly five-eighths of a day.

Further, the *Vâyu-Purâṇa* says "that the sun in the north marches slowly during the day and rapidly during the night, and in the south *vice versâ*. Therefore the day is long in the north, even as much as eighteen *muhûrta*." This is merely the language of a person who has not the slightest knowledge of the eastern motion of the sun, and is not able to measure a day's arc by observation.

Quotation from the *Vishṇu-Dharma.*

The *Vishṇu-Dharma* says: "The orbit of the Great Bear lies under the pole; under it the orbit of Saturn; then that of Jupiter; next Mars, the Sun, Venus, Mercury, and the Moon. They rotate towards the east like a mill, in a uniform kind of motion which is peculiar to each star, some of them moving rapidly, others slowly. Death and life repeat themselves on them from eternity thousands of times."

If you examine this statement according to scientific principles, you will find that it is confused. Conceding that the Great Bear is *under* the pole and that the place of the pole is absolute height, the Great Bear lies *below* the zenith of the inhabitants of Meru. In this statement he is right, but he is mistaken with regard to the planets. For the word *below* is, according to him, to be understood so as to mean a greater or smaller distance from the earth; and thus taken, his statement (regarding the distances of the planets from the earth) is not correct, unless we suppose that Saturn has, of all planets, the greatest declination from the equator, the next greatest Jupiter, then Mars, the Sun, Venus, &c., and that at the same time this amount of their declination is a constant one. This, however, does not correspond to reality.

If we take the sum total of the whole statement of the *Vishṇu-Dharma*, the author is right in so far as the fixed stars are higher than the planets, but he is wrong in so far as the pole is not higher than the fixed stars.

The mill-like rotation of the planets is the *first motion* towards the west, not the *second motion* indicated by the author. According to him, the planets are the spirits of individuals who have gained exaltation by their merits, and who have returned to it after the end of their life in a human shape. According to my opinion, the author uses a number in the words *thousands of times* (p. 287), *either* because he wanted to intimate that their existence is an existence in our meaning of the term, an evolution out of the δύναμις into the πρᾶξις (hence something finite, subject to numeration or determination by measure), or because he meant to indicate that some of those spirits obtain *moksha*, others not. Hence their number is liable to a *more* or *less*, and everything of this description is of a finite nature.

CHAPTER XXVIII.

ON THE DEFINITION OF THE TEN DIRECTIONS.

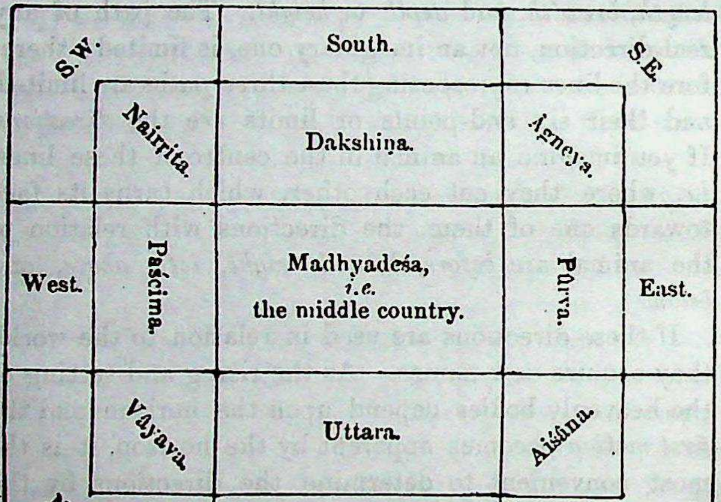
THE extension of bodies in space is in three directions: *length*, *breadth*, and *depth* or *height*. The path of any real direction, not an imaginary one, is limited; therefore the lines representing these three paths are limited, and their six end-points or limits are the *directions*. If you imagine an animal in the centre of these lines, *i.e.* where they cut each other, which turns its face towards one of them, the directions with relation to the animal are *before*, *behind*, *right*, *left*, *above*, and *below*.

If these directions are used in relation to the world, they acquire new names. As the rising and setting of the heavenly bodies depend upon the horizon and the *first motion* becomes apparent by the horizon, it is the most convenient to determine the directions by the horizon. The four directions, *east*, *west*, *north*, *south* (corresponding to before, behind, left, and right), are generally known, but the directions which lie between each two of these are less known. These make eight directions, and, together with *above* and *below*, which do not need any further explanation, ten directions. Page 145.

The Greeks determined the directions by the rising and setting places of the zodiacal signs, brought them into relation to the winds, and so obtained sixteen directions.

Also the Arabs determined the directions by the blowing-points of the winds. Any wind blowing between two cardinal winds they called in general *Nakbâ*. Only in rare cases they are called by special names of their own.

The Hindus, in giving names to the directions, have not taken any notice of the blowing of a wind; they simply call the four cardinal directions, as well as the secondary directions between them, by separate names. So they have eight directions in the horizontal plane, as exhibited by the following diagram:—


S.W.
South.
S.E.
Nairrita.
Dakshiṇa.
Âgneya.
West.
Paścima.
Madhyadeśa,
i.e.
the middle country.
Pûrva.
East.
Vâyava.
Uttara.
Aiśâna.
N.W.
North.
N.E.

Besides there are two directions more for the two poles of the horizontal plane, the *above* and *below*, the former being called *Upari*, the second *Adhas* and *Tala*.

These directions, and those in use among other nations, are based on general consent. Since the horizon is divided by innumerable circles, the directions also proceeding from its centre are innumerable. The two ends of every possible diameter may be considered as *before* and *behind*, and therefore the two ends of the diameter cutting the former at right angles (and lying in the same plane) are *right* and *left*.

The Hindus can never speak of anything, be it an object of the intellect or of imagination, without representing it as a personification, an individual. They at once marry him, make him celebrate marriage, make his wife become pregnant and give birth to something. So, too, in this case. The *Vishṇu-Dharma* relates that *Atri*, the star who rules the stars of the Great Bear, married *the directions*, represented as *one* person, though they are eight in number, and that from her the moon was born.

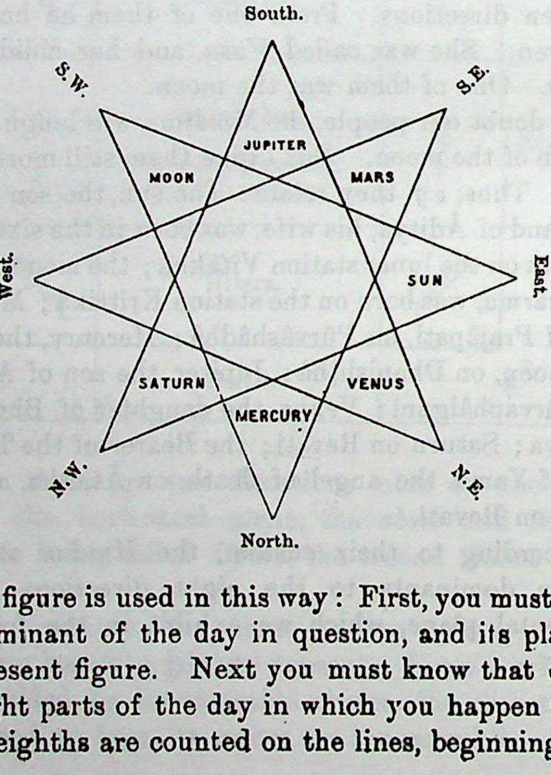
Another author relates: Dakska, *i.e.* Prajâpati, married Dharma, *i.e. the reward*, to ten of his daughters, *i.e.* the ten directions. From one of them he had many children. She was called *Vasu*, and her children the *Vasus*. One of them was the moon.

No doubt our people, the Muslims, will laugh at such a birth of the moon. But I give them still more of this stuff. Thus, *e.g.* they relate: The sun, the son of Kaśyapa and of Âditya, his wife, was born in the sixth Manvantara on the lunar station Viśâkhâ; the moon, the son of Dharma, was born on the station Kṛittikâ; Mars, the son of Prajâpati, on Pûrvâshâḍhâ; Mercury, the son of the moon, on Dhanishṭhâ; Jupiter, the son of Aṅgiras, on Pûrvaphâlgunî; Venus, the daughter of Bhṛigu, on Pushya; Saturn on Revatî; the Bearer of the Tail, the son of Yama, the angel of death, on Âślesha, and the Head on Revatî. Page 146.

According to their custom, the Hindus attribute certain dominants to the eight directions in the horizontal plane, which we exhibit in the following table:—

Their Dominants.	The Directions.	Their Dominants.	The Directions.
Indra . . .	East.	Varuṇa . .	West.
The Fire . .	S.E.	Vâyu . . .	N.W.
Yama . . .	South.	Kuru . . .	North.
Pṛithu . .	S.W.	Mahâdeva .	N.E.

The Hindus construct a figure of these eight directions, called *Râhucakra, i.e.* the figure of the Head, by means of which they try to gain an omen or prophecy for hazard-playing. It is the following diagram :—


South.
S.W.
S.E.
JUPITER
MOON
MARS
West.
SUN
East.
SATURN
VENUS
MERCURY
N.W.
N.E.
North.

The figure is used in this way : First, you must know the dominant of the day in question, and its place in the present figure. Next you must know that one of the eight parts of the day in which you happen to be. These eighths are counted on the lines, beginning with the dominant of the day, in uninterrupted succession from east to south and west. Thus you find the dominant of the eighth in question. If, *e.g.*, you want to know the fifth eighth of Thursday whilst Jupiter is the *dominus diei* in the south, and the line proceeding from the south terminates in north-west, we find that the dominant of the first eighth is Jupiter, that of the second is Saturn, that of the third the sun, that of the fourth the moon, and that of the fifth Mercury in the north. In this way you go on counting the eighths through the day and the night till the end of the νυχθήμερον. When thus the direction of the eighth of the day in which you are has been found, it is considered by them as Râhu; and when sitting down to play, you must place yourself so that you have this direction at your back. Then you will win, according to their belief. It is no affair of the reader to despise a man who, on account of such an omen, in a variety of games stakes all his chances on one cast of the dice. Suffice it to leave to him the responsibility of his dice-playing.

Page 147.

CHAPTER XXIX.

DEFINITION OF THE INHABITABLE EARTH ACCORDING TO THE HINDUS.

The Rishi Bhuvanakośa on the inhabitable world.

In the book of the Ṛishi Bhuvanakośa we read that the inhabitable world stretches from Himavant towards the south, and is called *Bharata-varsha*, so called from a man, Bharata, who ruled over them and provided for them. The inhabitants of this οἰκουμένη are those to whom alone reward and punishment in another life are destined. It is divided into nine parts, called *Nava-khaṇḍa-prathama*, *i.e.* the primary nine parts. Between each two parts there is a sea, which they traverse from one *khaṇḍa* to the other. The breadth of the inhabitable world from north to south is 1000 *yojana*.

By Himavant the author means the northern mountains, where the world, in consequence of the cold, ceases to be inhabitable. So all civilisation must of necessity be south of these mountains.

His words, that the inhabitants are subject to *reward and punishment*, indicate that there are other people *not* subject to it. These beings he must either raise from the degree of man to that of angels, who, in consequence of the simplicity of the elements they are composed of and of the purity of their nature, never disobey a divine order, being always willing to worship; or he must degrade them to the degree of irrational animals. According to him, therefore, there are no human beings outside the οἰκουμένη (*i.e. Bharata-varsha*).

Bharatavarsha is not India alone, as Hindus think, according to whom *their* country is the world, and their race the only race of mankind; for India is not traversed by an ocean separating one *khaṇḍa* from the other. Further, they do not identify these *khaṇḍa* with the *dvîpas,* for the author says that on those seas people pass from one shore to the other. Further, it follows from his statement that all the inhabitants of the earth and the Hindus are subject to reward and punishment, that they are one great religious community.

The nine parts are called *Prathama, i.e. primary* ones, because they also divide India alone into nine parts. So the division of the οἰκουμένη is a *primary* one, but the division of Bharatavarsha a *secondary* one. Besides, there is still a third division into nine parts, as their astrologers divide each country into nine parts when they try to find the lucky and unlucky places in it.

Quotation from *Vâyu-Purâṇa.*

We find a similar tradition in the *Vâyu-Purâṇa,* viz. that "the centre of Jambu-dvîpa is called Bharatavarsha, which means those *who acquire something and nourish themselves.* With them there are the four *yuga.* They are subject to reward and punishment; and Himavant lies to the north of the country. It is divided into nine parts, and between them there are navigable seas. Its length is 9000 *yojana,* its breadth 1000; and because the country is also called Samnâra (?), each ruler who rules it is called Samnâra (?). The shape of its nine parts is as follows."

Then the author begins to describe the mountains in the *khaṇḍa* between the east and north, and the rivers which rise there, but he does not go beyond this description. Thereby he gives us to understand that, according to his opinion, this *khaṇḍa* is the οἰκουμένη. But he contradicts himself in another place, where he

Page 148.

says that Jambu-dvîpa is the centre among the *Nava-khaṇḍa-prathama*, and the others lie towards the eight directions. There are angels on them, men, animals, and plants. By these words he seems to mean the *dvîpas.*

If the breadth of the *οἰκουμένη* is 1000 *yojana*, its length must be nearly 2800.

Further, the *Vâyu-Purâṇa* mentions the cities and countries which lie in each direction. We shall exhibit them in tables, together with similar information from other sources, for this method renders the study of the subject easier than any other.

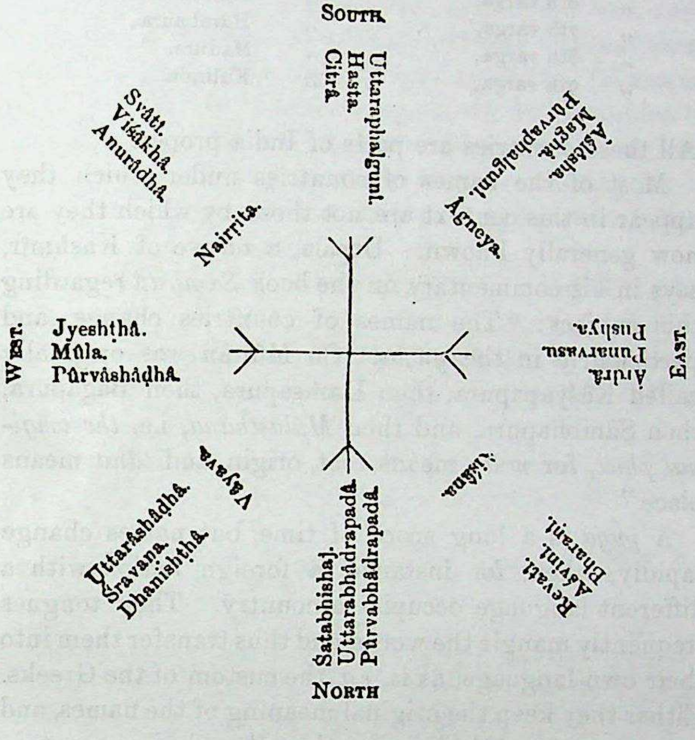
Here follows a diagram representing the division of Bharatavarsha into nine parts.

Nâgadvîpa.	South. Gabhastimat.	Tâmravarṇa.
West. Saumya.	Indradvîpa or Madhyadêśa, *i.e.* the middle country.	Kaśerumat. East.
Gândharva.	North.	Nagarasaṁvṛitta.

On the figure *Kûrma-cakra.*

We have already heretofore mentioned that that part of the earth in which the *οἰκουμένη* lies resembles a tortoise, because its borders are round, because it rises above the water and is surrounded by the water, and because it has a globular convexity on its surface. However, there is a possibility that the origin of the name is this, that their astronomers and astrologers divide the directions according to the lunar stations.

Therefore the country, too, is divided according to the lunar stations, and the figure which represents this division is similar to a tortoise. Therefore it is called *Kûrma-cakra, i.e.* the tortoise-circle or the tortoise-shape. The following diagram is from the *Saṁhitâ* of Varâhamihira.


South
Uttaraphalgunî.
Hasta.
Citrâ.
Âślesha.
Maghâ.
Pûrvaphalgunî.
Âgneya.
Pushya.
Punarvasu.
Ârdrâ.
East.
Aiśâna.
Revatî.
Aśvinî.
Bharanî.
Satabhishaj.
Uttarabhâdrapadâ.
Pûrvabhâdrapadâ.
North
Vâyava.
Uttarâshâḍhâ.
Śravana.
Dhanishṭhâ.
West.
Jyeshṭhâ.
Mûla.
Pûrvâshâḍhâ.
Nairrita.
Svâtî.
Viśâkhâ.
Anurâdhâ.

Varâhamihira calls each of the *Nava-khaṇḍa* a *varga*. He says: "By them (the *vargas*) Bharatavarsha, *i.e.* half of the world, is divided into nine parts, the central one, the eastern, &c." Then he passes to the south, and thus round the whole horizon. That he understands by Bharatavarsha India alone is indicated by his saying that each *varga* has a region, the king of

Page 149. The division of Bharatavarsha according to Varâhamihira.

which is killed when some mishap befalls it. So belong

To the	1st or central varga,	the region	Pañcâla.
,,	2d varga, . .	,,	Magadha.
,,	3d varga, . .	,,	Kaliṅga.
,,	4th varga, . .	,,	Avanti, *i.e.* Ujain.
,,	5th varga, . .	,,	Ananta.
,,	6th varga, . .	,,	Sindhu and Sauvîra.
,,	7th varga, . .	,,	Hârahaura.
,,	8th varga, . .	,,	Madura.
,,	9th varga, . .	,,	Kulinda.

All these countries are parts of India proper.

On the change of geographical names.

Most of the names of countries under which they appear in this context are not those by which they are now generally known. Utpala, a native of Kashmîr, says in his commentary on the book *Saṁhitâ* regarding this subject: "The names of countries change, and particularly in the *yugas*. So Mûltân was originally called Kâśyapapura, then Haṁsapura, then Bagapura, then Sâmbhapura, and then *Mûlasthâna*, i.e. *the original place*, for *mûla* means root, origin, and *tâna* means place."

A *yuga* is a long space of time, but names change rapidly, when, for instance, a foreign nation with a different language occupies a country. Their tongues frequently mangle the words, and thus transfer them into their own language, as is, *e.g.* the custom of the Greeks. Either they keep the original meaning of the names, and try a sort of translation, but then they undergo certain changes. So the city of Shâsh, which has its name from the Turkish language, where it is called Tâsh-kand, *i.e.* *stone-city*, is called *stone-tower* in the book γεωγραφία. In this way new names spring up as translations of older ones. Or, secondly, the barbarians adopt and keep the local names, but with such sounds and in such forms as are adapted to their tongues, as the Arabs do in Arabising foreign names, which become disfigured in their mouth: *e.g.* *Bûshang* they call in their books *Fûsanj*, and *Sakilkand* they call in their revenue-books *Fârfaza* (*sic*). However, what is more curious and strange is this, that sometimes one and the same language changes in the mouth of the same people who speak it, in consequence of which strange and uncouth forms of words spring up, not intelligible save to him who discards every rule of the language. And such changes are brought about in a few years, without there being any stringent cause or necessity for it. Of course, in all of this the Hindus are actuated by the desire to have as many names as possible, and to practise on them the rules and arts of their etymology, and they glory in the enormous copiousness of their language which they obtain by such means.

The following names of countries, which we have taken from the *Vâyu-Purâṇa*, are arranged according to the four directions, whilst the names taken from the *Saṁhitâ* are arranged according to the eight directions. All these names are of that kind which we have here described (*i.e.* they are not the names now in general use). We exhibit them in the following tables:—

The single countries of the middle realm, according to the Vâyu-Purâṇa. Page 150.

Kuru, Pâñcâla, Sâlva, Jaṅgala, Śûrasena, Bhadrakâra (!), Bodha, Patheśvara, Vatsa, Kisadya, Kulya, Kuntala, Kâśi, Kośala, Arthayâshava (?), Puhliṅga (!), Mashaka (!), Vṛika.

The people in the east:—

Andhra, Vâka, Mudrakaraka (?), Prâtragira (?), Vahirgira, Prathanga (?), Vaṅgeya, Mâlava (!), Mâlavartika, Prâgjyotisha, Muṇḍa, Âbika (?), Tâmraliptika, Mâla, Magadha, Govinda (Gonanda?).

The people in the south:—

Pâṇḍya, Kerala, Caulya, Kulya, Setuka, Mûshika, Rumana (?), Vanavâsika, Mahârâshtra, Mâhisha, Ka-

Page 151. liṅga, Abhîra, Îshîka, Âṭavya, Śavara (?), Pulindra, Vindhyamûli, Vaidarbha, Daṇḍaka, Mûlika (!), Asmaka, Naitika (!), Bhogavardhana, Kuntala, Andhra, Udbhira, Nalaka, Alika, Dâkshinâtya, Vaideśa, Sûrpâkâraka, Kolavana, Durga, Tillîta (?), Puleya, Krâla (!), Rûpaka, Tâmasa, Tarûpana (?), Karaskara, Nâsikya, Uttaranarmada, Bhânukacchra (?), Maheya, Sâraswata (?), Kacchîya, Surâshtra, Anartta, Hudvuda (?).

The people in the west:—

Malada (?), Karûsha, Mekala, Utkala, Uttamarṇa,
Baśârṇa (?), Bhoja, Kishkinda, Kosala, Traipura, Vaidika,
Tharpura (?), Tumbura, Shattumâna (?), Padha, Kar-
Page 152. ṇaprâvaraṇa (!), Hûna, Darva, Hûhaka (!), Trigartta,
Mâlava, Kirâta, Tâmara.

The people in the north:—

Vâhlîka (!), Vâḍha, Vâna (?), Âbhîra, Kalatoyaka, Aparânta (?), Pahlava, Carmakhaṇḍika, Gândhâra, Yavana, Sindhu, Sauvîra, *i.e.* Multân and Jahrâwâr, Madhra (?), Śaka, Drihâla (?), Litta (Kulinda), Malla (?), Kodara (?), Âtreya, Bharadva, Jâṅgala, Daseruka (!), Lampâka, Tâlakûna (?), Sûlika, Jâgara.

The names of the countries for the tortoise-figure, as taken from the Saṁhitâ of Varâhamihira.

I. The names of the countries in the centre of the realm:—

Bhadra, Ari, Meda, Mâṇḍavya, Sâlvanî, Pojjihâna,
Maru, Vatsa, Ghosha, the valley of the Yamunâ, Sâras-
vata, Matsya, Mâthura, Kopa, Jyotisha, Dharmâraṇya,
Śûrasena, Gauragrîva, Uddehika near Bazâna, Pâṇḍu,
Page 153. Guḍa = Tânêshar, Aśvattha, Pañcâla, Sâketa, Kaṇka,
Kuru = Tânêshar, Kâlkoṭi, Kukura, Pariyâtra, Audum-
bara, Kapishṭhala, Gaja.

II. The names of the countries in the east:—

Añjana, Vṛishabadhvaja, Padma-Tulya (*sic*), Vyâghramukha, *i.e.* people with tiger-faces, Suhma, Karvaṭa, Candrapura, Śûrpakarṇa, *i.e.* people with ears like sieves, Khasha, Mâgadha, Mount Śibira, Mithilâ, Samataṭa, Oḍra, Aśvavadana, i.e. people with horse-faces, Dantura, i.e. people with long teeth, Prâgjyotisha, Lohitya, Krîra-samudra (*sic*), i.e. the milk-sea, Purushâda, Udayagiri, i.e. the mountain of sunrise, Bhadra, Gauraka, Pauṇḍra, Utkala, Kâśi, Mekala, Ambashṭha, Ekapada, i.e. the one-footed people, Tâmaliptikâ, Kausalaka, Vardhamâna.

III. The names of the countries of the south-east (*Âgneya*):—

Kosala, Kaliṅga, Vaṅga, Upavaṅga, Jaṭhara, Aṅga, Saulika, Vidarbha, Vatsa, Andhra, Colika (?), Ûrdhvakarṇa, i.e. people whose ears are directed upwards, Vṛisha, Nâlikera, Carmadvîpa, the mountain Vindhya, Tripurî, Śmaśrudhara, Hemakûṭya, Vyâlagrîva, i.e. Page 154.
people whose bosoms are snakes, Mahâgrîva, i.e. people who have wide bosoms, Kishkindha, the country of the monkeys, Kaṇḍakasthala, Nishâda, Râshṭra, Dâśârṇa, Purika, Nagnaparṇa, Śavara.

IV. The names of the countries in the south:—

Laṅkâ, i.e. the cupola of the earth, Kâlâjina, Sairîkîrṇa (?), Tâlikaṭa, Girnagara, Malaya, Dardura, Mahendra, Mâlindya, Bharukaccha, Kankaṭa, Taṅkaṇa, Vanavâsi on the coast, Śibika, Phaṇikâra, Koṅkana near the sea, Âbhîra, Âkara, Veṇâ a river, Avanti, i.e. the city of Ujain, Daśapura, Gonarda, Keralaka, Karṇâṭa, Mahâṭavi, Citrakûṭa, Nâsikya, Kollagiri, Cola, Krauñcadvîpa, Jaṭâdhara, Kauverya, Ṛishyamûka, Vaiḍûrya, Śaṅkha, Mukta, Atri, Vâricara, Jarmapaṭṭana (*sic*), Dvipa, Gaṇarâjya, Kṛishṇavaiḍûrya, Śibika, Sûryâdri, Kuśumanaga, Tumbavana, Kârmaṇeyaka, Yâmyodadhi, Page 155.
Tâpasâśrama, Ṛishika, Kâñcî, Marucîpaṭṭana, Dîvârśa (!), Siṅhala, Ṛishabha, Baladevapaṭṭana, Daṇḍakâvaṇa, Timiṅgilâśana (?), Bhadra, Kaccha, Kuñjaradarî, Tâmraparṇa.

V. The names of the countries in the south-west (*Nairṛita*):—

Kâmboja, Sindhu, Sauvîra, *i.e.* Multan and Jahrâvâr, Vaḍavâmukha, Âravâmbashṭha, Kapila, Pâraśava, *i.e.* the Persians, Sûdra, Barbara, Kirâta, Khaṇḍa, Kravya, Âbhîra, Cañcûka, Hemagiri, Sindhu, Kâlaka, Raivataka, Surâshṭra, Bâdara, Dramiḍa, Mahârṇava, Nârîmukha, *i.e.* men with women's faces, *i.e.* the Turks, Ânarta, Pheṇagiri, Yavana, *i.e.* the Greeks, Mâraka, Karṇaprâvaraṇa.

VI. The names of the countries in the west :—

Maṇimân, Meghavân, Vanaugha, Astagiri, *i.e.* the country of sunset, Aparântaka, Śântika, Haihaya, Praśastâdri, Vokkâṇa, Pañcanada, *i.e.* the union of the five rivers, Maṭhara, Pârata, Târakruti (?), Jṛinga, Vaiśya, Kanaka, Śaka, Mleccha, *i.e.* the Arabs.

VII. The names of the countries in the north-west (*Vâyava*) :—

Mâṇḍavya, Tukhâra, Tâlahala, Madra, Aśmaka, Kulûtalahaḍa, Strîrâjya, *i.e.* women amongst whom no man Page 156. dwells longer than half a year, Nṛisiṁhavana, *i.e.* people with lion-faces, Khastha, *i.e.* people who are born from the trees, hanging on them by the navel-strings, Venumatî (?), *i.e.* Tirmidh, Phalgulu, Guruhâ, Marukucca, Carmaraṅga, *i.e.* people with coloured skins, Ekavilocana, *i.e.* the one-eyed men, Sûlika, Dîrghagrîva, *i.e.* people with long bosoms, which means with long necks, Dîrghamukha, *i.e.* people with long faces, Dîrghakeśa, *i.e.* people with long hair.

VIII. The names of the countries in the north :—

Kailâsa, Himavant, Vasumant, Giri, Dhanushman (!), *i.e.* the people with bows, Krauñca, Meru, Kurava, Uttarakurava, Kshudramîna, Kaikaya, Vasâti, Yâmuna, *i.e.* a kind of Greeks, Bhogaprastha, Ârjunâyana, Agnîtya, Âdarśa, Antardvîpa, Trigarta, Turagânana, *i.e.* people with horse-faces, Śvamukha, *i.e.* people with dog-faces, Keśadhara, Capiṭanâsika, *i.e.* flat-noses, Dâsera, Kavâṭadhâna, Śaradhâna, Takshaśila, *i.e.* Mârîkala, Pushkalâvatî, *i.e.* Pûkala, Kailâvata, Kaṇṭhadhâna, Ambara, Madraka, Mâlava, Paurava, Kacchâra, Daṇḍa, Piṅgalaka, Mânahala, Hûṇa, Kohala, Śâtaka, Mâṇḍavya, Bhûtapura, Gândhâra, Yaśovati, Hematâla, Râjanya, Khajara, Yaudheya, Dâsameya, Śyâmâka, Kshemadhûrta (?).

IX. The names of the countries in the north-east (*Aiśâna*):—

Meru, Kanashṭharâjya, Paśupâla, Kîra, Kaśmîra, Abhi, Śârada, Taṅgaṇa, Kulûta, Sairindha, Râshṭra, Brahmapura, Dârva, Dâmara, Vanarâjya, Kirâta, Cîna, Kauṇinda, Bhalla, Palola, Jaṭâsura, Kunaṭha, Khasha, Ghosha, Kucika, Ekacaraṇa, *i.e.* the one-footed people, Anuviśva, Suvarṇabhûmi, *i.e.* the gold land, Arvasudhana (*sic*), Nandavishṭha, Paurava, Ciranivasana, Trinetra, *i.e.* people with three eyes, Puñjâdri, Gandharva. Page 157.

On Romaka, Yamakoṭi, and Siddhapura.

Hindu astronomers determine the longitude of the inhabitable world by Laṅkâ, which lies in its centre on the equator, whilst Yamakoṭi lies on its east, Romaka on its west, and Siddhapura on that part of the equator which is diametrically opposed to Laṅkâ. Their remarks on the rising and setting of the heavenly bodies show that Yamakoṭi and Rûm are distant from each other by half a circle. It seems that they assign the countries of the West (*i.e.* North Africa) to Rûm or the Roman Empire, because the Rûm or Byzantine Greeks occupy the opposite shores of the same sea (the Mediterranean); for the Roman Empire has much northern latitude and penetrates high into the north. No part of it stretches far southward, and, of course, nowhere does it reach the equator, as the Hindus say with regard to Romaka.

We shall here speak no more of Laṅkâ (as we are going to treat of it in a separate chapter). Yamakoṭi is, according to Ya'ḳûb and Alfazârî, the country where is the city *Târa* within a sea. I have not found the slightest trace of this name in Indian literature. As *koṭi* means *castle* and Yama is the angel of death, the word reminds me of Kangdiz, which, according to the Persians, had been built by Kaikâ'ûs or Jam in the most remote east, behind the sea. Kaikhusrau traversed the sea to Kangdiz when following the traces of Afrâsiâb the Turk, and there he went at the time of his anchorite life and expatriation. For *diz* means in Persian *castle*, as *koṭi* in the Indian language. Abû-Maʻshar of Balkh has based his geographical canon on Kangdiz as the 0° of longitude or first meridian.

How the Hindus came to suppose the existence of Siddhapura I do not know, for they believe, like ourselves, that behind the inhabited half-circle there is nothing but unnavigable seas.

The meridian of Ujain the first meridian.

Page 158.

In what way the Hindus determine the latitude of a place has not come to our knowledge. That the longitude of the inhabitable world is a half-circle is a far-spread theory among their astronomers; they differ (from Western astronomers) only as to the point which is to be its beginning. If we explain the theory of the Hindus as far as we understand it, their beginning of longitude is Ujain, which they consider as the eastern limit of one quarter (of the οἰκουμένη), whilst the limit of the second quarter lies in the west at some distance from the end of civilisation, as we shall hereafter explain in the chapter about the difference of the longitudes of two places.

Other first meridians used by Western astronomers.

The theory of the Western astronomers on this point is a double one. Some adopt as the beginning of longitude the shore of the (Atlantic) ocean, and they extend the first quarter thence as far as the environs of Balkh. Now, according to this theory, things have been united which have no connection with each other. So Shapûrḳân and Ujain are placed on the same meridian. A theory which so little corresponds to reality is quite valueless. Others adopt the *Islands of the Happy Ones* as the beginning of longitude, and the quarter of the οἰκουμένη they extend thence as far as the neighbourhood of Jurjân and Nîshâpûr. Both these theories are totally different from that of the Hindus. This subject, however, shall be more accurately investigated in a subsequent chapter (p. 311).

If I, by the grace of God, shall live long enough, I shall devote a special treatise to the longitude of Nîshâpûr, where this subject shall be thoroughly inquired into.

CHAPTER XXX.

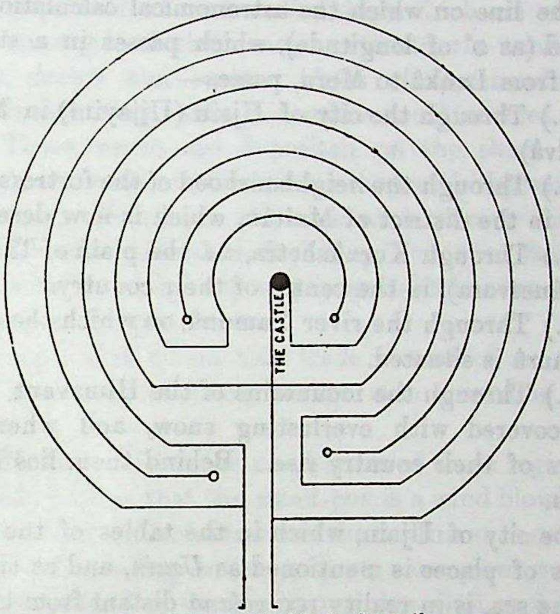
ON LAṄKÂ, OR THE CUPOLA OF THE EARTH.

On the meaning of the term *cupola of the earth*.

THE midst of the inhabitable world, of its longitudinal extension from east to west on the equator, is by the astronomers (of the Muslims) called the *cupola of the earth*, and the *great* circle which passes through the pole and this point of the equator is called the *meridian of the cupola*. We must, however, observe that whatever may be the natural form of the earth, there is no place on it which to the exclusion of others deserves the name of a *cupola*; that this term is only a metaphorical one to denote a point from which the two ends of the inhabitable world in east and west are equidistant, comparable to the top of a cupola or a tent, as all things hanging down from this top (tent-ropes or walls) have the same length, and their lower ends the same distances therefrom. But the Hindus never call this point by a term that in our language must be interpreted by *cupola*; they only say that Laṅkâ is between the two ends of the inhabitable world and without latitude. There Râvaṇa, the demon, fortified himself when he had carried off the wife of Râma, the son of Daśaratha. His labyrinthine fortress is called ثنكت برو (?), whilst in our (Muslim) countries it is called *Yâvana-koṭi*, which has frequently been explained as Rome.

The story of Râma.

The following is the plan of the labyrinthine fortress:—



Door of the road leading to the castle.

Page 159.

Râma attacked Râvaṇa after having crossed the ocean on a dyke of the length of 100 *yojana*, which he had constructed from a mountain in a place called *Setubandha*, *i.e.* bridge of the ocean, east of Ceylon. He fought with him and killed him, and Râma's brother killed the brother of Râvaṇa, as is described in the story of Râma and Râmâyana. Thereupon he broke the dyke in ten different places by arrow-shots.

On the island of Laṅkâ.

According to the Hindus, Laṅkâ is the castle of the demons. It is 30 *yojana* above the earth, *i.e.* 80 *farsakh*. Its length from east to west is 100 *yojana*; its breadth from north to south is the same as the height (*i.e.* thirty).

It is on account of Laṅkâ and the island of Vaḍavâmukha that the Hindus consider the south as foreboding evil. In no work of piety do they direct themselves southward or walk southward. The south occurs only in connection with impious actions.

The first meridian.

The line on which the astronomical calculations are based (as 0° of longitude), which passes in a straight line from Laṅkâ to Meru, passes—

(1.) Through the city of Ujain (Ujjayinî) in Mâlava (Mâlvâ).

(2.) Through the neighbourhood of the fortress Rohitaka in the district of Multân, which is now deserted.

(3.) Through Kurukshetra, *i.e.* the plain of Tâneshar (Sthâneśvara), in the centre of their country.

(4.) Through the river Yamunâ, on which the city of Mathurâ is situated.

(5.) Through the mountains of the Himavant, which are covered with everlasting snow, and where the rivers of their country rise. Behind them lies Mount Meru.

The situation of Ujain.

The city of Ujain, which in the tables of the longitudes of places is mentioned as *Uzain*, and as situated on the sea, is in reality 100 *yojana* distant from the sea. Some undiscriminating Muslim astronomer has uttered the opinion that Ujain lies on the meridian of Al-shabûrḳân in Al-jûzajân; but such is not the case, for it lies by many degrees of the equator more to the east than Al-shabûrḳân. There is some confusion about the longitude of Ujain, particularly among such (Muslim) astronomers as mix up with each other the different opinions about the first degree of longitude both in east and west, and are unable to distinguish them properly.

The author's conjecture about Laṅkâ and Langabâlûs.

No sailor who has traversed the ocean round the place which is ascribed to Laṅkâ, and has travelled in that direction, has ever given such an account of it as tallies with the traditions of the Hindus or resembles them. In fact, there is no tradition which makes the thing appear to us more possible (than it is according to the reports of the Hindus). The name Laṅkâ, however, makes me think of something entirely different, viz. that the clove is called *lavang*, because it is imported from a country called *Langa*. According to the uniform report of all sailors, the ships which are sent to this country land their cargo in boats, viz. ancient Western *denars* and various kinds of merchandise, striped Indian cloth, salt, and other usual articles of trade. These wares are deposited on the shore on leather sheets, each of which is marked with the name of its owner. Thereupon the merchants retire to their ships. On the following day they find the sheets covered with cloves by way of payment, little or much, as the natives happen to own.

The people with whom this trade is carried on are demons according to some, savage men according to others.

A certain wind as the cause of small-pox.

The Hindus who are the neighbours of those regions (of Laṅkâ) believe that the small-pox is a wind blowing from the island of Laṅkâ towards the continent to carry off souls. According to one report, some men warn people beforehand of the blowing of this wind, and can exactly tell at what times it will reach the different parts of the country. After the small-pox has broken out, they recognise from certain signs whether it is virulent or not. Against the virulent small-pox they use a method of treatment by which they destroy only one single limb of the body, but do not kill. They use as medicine cloves, which they give to the patient to drink, together with gold-dust; and, besides, the males tie the cloves, which are similar to date-kernels, to their necks. If these precautions are taken, perhaps nine people out of ten will be proof against this malady. **Page 160.**

All this makes me think that the Laṅkâ which the Hindus mention is identical with the clove-country Langa, though their descriptions do not tally. However, there is no communication kept up with the latter, for people say that when perchance a merchant is left behind on this island, there is no more trace found of him. And this my conjecture is strengthened by the fact that, according to the book of Râma and Râmâyana, behind the well-known country of Sindh there are cannibals. And, on the other hand, it is well known among all seamen that cannibalism is the cause of the savagery and bestiality of the inhabitants of the island of Langabâlûs.

CHAPTER XXXI.

ON THAT DIFFERENCE OF VARIOUS PLACES WHICH WE CALL THE DIFFERENCE OF LONGITUDE.

On the Hindu method of determining longitude.

He who aims at accuracy in this subject must try to determine the distance between the spheres of the meridians of the two places in question. Muslim astronomers reckon by *equatorial times* corresponding to the distance between the two meridians, and begin to count from one (the western one) of the two places. The sum of equatorial minutes which they find is called *the difference between the two longitudes*; for they consider as the *longitude* of each place the distance of its meridian from *the great circle* passing through the pole of the equator, which has been chosen as the limit of the οἰκουμένη, and for this first meridian they have chosen the *western* (not the eastern) limit of the οἰκουμένη. It is all the same whether these *equatorial times*, whatsoever their number for each meridian may be, are reckoned as 360th parts of a circle, or as its 60th parts, so as to correspond to the *day-minutes*, or as *farsakh* or *yojana*.

The Hindus employ in this subject methods which do not rest on the same principle as ours. They are totally different; and howsoever different they are, it is perfectly clear that none of them hits the right mark. As we (Muslims) note for each place its *longitude*, the Hindus note the number of *yojanas* of its distance from the meridian of Ujain. And the more to the west the position of a place is, the greater is the number of *yojanas ;* the more to the east it is, the smaller is this number. They call it *deśântara,* i.e. *the difference between the places.* Further, they multiply the *deśântara* by the mean daily motion of *the planet* (the sun), and divide the product by 4800. Then the quotient represents that amount of the motion of the star which corresponds to the number of *yojana* in question, *i.e.* that which must be added to the mean place of the sun, as it has been found for moon or midnight of Ujain, if you want to find the longitude of the place in question.

On the circumference of the earth.

The number which they use as divisor (4800) is the number of the *yojanas* of the circumference of the earth, for the difference between the spheres of the meridians of the two places stands in the same relation to the whole circumference of the earth as the mean motion of the planet (sun) from one place to the other to its whole daily rotation round the earth.

If the circumference of the earth is 4800 *yojanas*, the diameter is nearly 1527; but Pulisa reckons it as 1600, Brahmagupta as 1581 *yojanas*, each of which is equal to eight miles. The same value is given in the astronomical handbook *Al-arkand* as 1050. This number; however, is, according to Ibn Ṭâriḳ, the radius, whilst the diameter is 2100 *yojanas*, each *yojana* being reckoned as equal to four miles, and the circumference is stated as $6596\frac{9}{25}$ *yojanas.*

Page 161.
Quotations from the *Khaṇḍakhâdyaka* and the *Karaṇa-tilaka.*

Brahmagupta uses 4800 as the number of *yojanas* of the earth's circumference in his canon *Khaṇḍakhâdyaka*, but in the amended edition he uses, instead of this, the *corrected* circumference, agreeing with Pulisa. The correction he propounds is this, that he multiplies the *yojanas* of the earth's circumference by the *sines* of the complement of the latitude of the place, and divides the product by the *sinus totus ;* then the quotient is the *corrected* circumference of the earth, or the number of *yojanas* of the parallel circle of the place in question. Sometimes this number is called *the collar of the meri-*

dian. Hereby people are frequently misled to think that the 4800 *yojanas* are the *corrected* circumference for the city of Ujain. If we calculate it (according to Brahmagupta's correction), we find the latitude of Ujain to be 16¼ degrees, whilst in reality it is 24 degrees.

The author of the canon *Karaṇa-tilaka* makes this correction in the following way. He multiplies the diameter of the earth by 12 and divides the product by the equinoctial shadow of the place. The gnomon stands in the same relation to this shadow as the radius of the parallel circle of the place to the sine of the latitude of the place, not to the *sinus totus.* Evidently the author of this method thinks that we have here the same kind of equation as that which the Hindus call *vyastatrairâśika,* i.e. *the places with the retrograde motion.* An example of it is the following.

The equation *vyastatrairâśika.*

If the price of a harlot of 15 years be, *e.g.* 10 denars, how much will it be when she is 40 years old?

The method is this, that you multiply the first number by the second (15 × 10 = 150), and divide the product by the third number (150 : 40 = 3¾). Then the quotient or fourth number is her price when she has become old, viz. 3¾ denars.

Now the author of the *Karaṇa-tilaka,* after having found that the straight shadow *increases* with the latitude, whilst the diameter of the circle *decreases,* thought, according to the analogy of the just mentioned calculation, that between this increase and decrease there is a certain *ratio.* Therefore he maintains that the diameter of the circle *decreases, i.e.* becomes gradually smaller than the diameter of the earth, at the same rate as the straight shadow *increases.* Thereupon he calculates the corrected circumference from the corrected diameter.

After having thus found the longitudinal difference between two places, he observes a lunar eclipse, and fixes in day-minutes the difference between the time of its appearance in the two places. Pulisa multiplies these day-minutes by the circumference of the earth, and divides the product by 60, viz. the minutes (or 60th parts) of the daily revolution. The quotient, then, is the number of the *yojanas* of the distance between the two places.

This calculation is correct. The result refers to the *great circle* on which Laṅkâ lies.

Brahmagupta calculates in the same manner, save that he multiplies by 4800. The other details have already been mentioned.

Calculation of the *deśântara* according to Alfazârî.

As far as this, one clearly recognises what the Hindu astronomers aim at, be their method correct or faulty. However, we cannot say the same of their calculation of the *deśântara* from the latitudes of two different places, which is reported by Alfazârî in his canon in the following manner:—

"Add together the squares of the sines of the latitudes of the two places, and take the root of the sum. This root is the *portio*.

"Further, square the difference of these two sines and add it to the *portio*. Multiply the sum by 8 and divide the product by 377. The quotient, then, is the distance between the two places, that is to say, according to a rough calculation.

"Further, multiply the difference between the two latitudes by the *yojanas* of the circumference of the earth and divide the product by 360."

Evidently this latter calculation is nothing but the transferring of the difference between the two latitudes from the measure of degrees and minutes to the measure of *yojanas*. Then he proceeds:—

"Now the square of the quotient is subtracted from the square of the roughly calculated *distance*, and of the remainder you take the root, which represents the *straight yojanas*."

Page 162.

Evidently the latter number represents the distance between the spheres of the *meridians* of the two places on the circle of latitude, whilst the *roughly calculated* number is the distance between the two places in longitude.

The author criticises this method.

This method of calculation is found in the astronomical handbooks of the Hindus in conformity with the account of Alfazârî, save in one particular. The here-mentioned *portio* is the *root* of the difference between the squares of the sines of the two latitudes, not *the sum* of the squares of the sines of the two latitudes.

But whatever this method may be, it does not hit the right mark. We have fully explained it in several of our publications specially devoted to this subject, and there we have shown that it is impossible to determine the distance between two places and the difference of longitude between them by means of their latitudes alone, and that only in case one of these two things is known (the distance between two places or the difference between the longitudes of them), by this and by means of the two latitudes, the third value can be found.

Another calculation of the *deśântara*.

Based on the same principle, the following calculation has been found, there being no indication by whom it was invented :—

"Multiply the *yojanas* of the distance between two places by 9, and divide the product by (*lacuna*); the root of the difference between its square and the square of the difference of the two latitudes. Divide this number by 6. Then you get as quotient the number of day-minutes of the difference of the two longitudes."

It is clear that the author of this calculation first takes the distance (between the two places), then he reduces it to the measure of the circumference of the circle. However, if we invert the calculation and reduce the parts (or degrees) of the great circle to *yojanas* according to his method, we get the number 3200, *i.e.* 100 *yojanas* less than we have given on the authority of

Al-arkand (v. p. 312). The double of it, 6400, comes near the number mentioned by Ibn Ṭârik (*i.e.* 6596$\frac{9}{25}$, v. p. 312), being only about 200 *yojanas* smaller.

We shall now give the latitudes of some places, as we hold them to be correct.

A criticism of Âryabhaṭa of Kusumapura on the meridian of Ujain.

All canons of the Hindus agree in this that the line connecting Laṅkâ with Meru divides the οἰκουμένη lengthways in two halves, and that it passes through the city of Ujain, the fortress of Rohitaka, the river Yamunâ, the plain of Tâneshar, and the Cold Mountains. The longitudes of the places are measured by their distance from this line. On this head I know of no difference between them except the following passage in the book of Âryabhaṭa of Kusumapura:—

"People say that Kurukshetra, *i.e.* the plain of Tâneshar, lies on the line which connects Laṅkâ with Meru and passes through Ujain. So they report on the authority of Pulisa. But he was much too intelligent not to have known the subject better. The times of the eclipses prove that statement to be erroneous, and Pṛithusvâmin maintains that the difference between the longitudes of Kurukshetra and Ujain is 120 *yojanas*."

These are the words of Âryabhaṭa.

On the latitude of Ujain.

Ya'ḳûb Ibn Ṭârik says in his book entitled *The Composition of the Spheres*, that the latitude of Ujain is 4$\frac{3}{5}$ degrees, but he does not say whether it lies in the north or the south. Besides, he states it, on the authority of the book *Al-Arkand*, to be 4$\frac{2}{5}$ degrees. We, however, have found a totally different latitude of Ujain in the same book in a calculation relating to the distance between Ujain and Almanṣûra, which the author calls Brahmaṇavâṭa, *i.e.* Bamhanwâ, viz. latitude of Ujain, 22° 29′; latitude of Almanṣûra, 24° 1′.

According to the same book, the straight shadow in Lohâniyye, *i.e.* Loharânî, is 5$\frac{3}{5}$ digits.

On the other hand, however, all the canons of the Hindus agree in this, that the latitude of Ujain is 24 degrees, and that the sun culminates over it at the time of the summer solstice.

Balabhadra, the commentator, gives as the latitude of Kanoj 26° 35′; as that of Tâneshar, 30° 12′. Page 163.

The learned Abû-Aḥmad, the son of Catlaghtagîn, calculated the latitude of the city of Karlî (?), and found it to be 28° 0′, that of Tâneshar 27′, and both places to be distant from each other by three days' marches. What the cause of this difference is I do not know.

According to the book *Karaṇa-sâra*, the latitude of Kashmîr is 34° 9′, and the straight shadow there $8\frac{7}{60}$ digits.

I myself have found the latitude of the fortress Lauhûr to be 34° 10′. The distance from Lauhûr to the capital of Kashmîr is 56 miles, half the way being rugged country, the other half plain. What other latitudes I have been able to observe myself, I shall enumerate in this place:—

Ghazna	33° 35′
Kâbul	33° 47′
Kandî, the guard-station of the prince	33° 55′
Dunpûr	34° 20′
Lamghân	34° 43′
Purshâvar	34° 44′
Waihand	34° 30′
Jailam	33° 20′
The fortress Nandna	32° 0′

The distance between the latter place and Multân is nearly 200 miles.

Sâlkot	32° 58′
Mandakkakor	31° 50′
Multân	29° 40′

If the latitudes of places are known, and the distances between them have been measured, the difference between their longitudes also may be found according to the methods explained in the books to which we have referred the reader.

We ourselves have (in our travels) in their country not passed beyond the places which we have mentioned, nor have we learned any more longitudes and latitudes (of places in India) from their literature. It is God alone who helps us to reach our objects!

CHAPTER XXXII.

ON THE NOTIONS OF DURATION AND TIME IN GENERAL, AND ON THE CREATION OF THE WORLD AND ITS DESTRUCTION.

On the notion of time according to Alrâzî and other philosophers.

ACCORDING to the relation of Muḥammad Ibn Zakariyyâ Alrâzî, the most ancient philosophers of the Greeks thought that the following five things existed from all eternity, *the creator*, *the universal soul*, *the first ὕλη*, *space in the abstract*, and *time in the abstract*. On these things Alrâzî has founded that theory of his, which is at the bottom of his whole philosophy. Further, he distinguishes between *time* and *duration* in so far as *number* applies to the former, not to the latter; for a thing which can be numbered is finite, whilst duration is infinite. Similarly, philosophers have explained *time* as duration with a beginning and an end, and *eternity* as duration without beginning and end.

According to Alrâzî, those five things are *necessary postulates* of the actually existing world. For that which the senses perceive in it is the ὕλη acquiring shape by means of combination. Besides, the ὕλη occupies some place, and therefore we must admit the existence of *space*. The changes apparent in the world of sense compel us to assume the existence of time, for some of them are earlier, others later, and the *before* and the *afterwards*, the earlier and the later, and the simultaneous can only be perceived by means of the notion of time, which is a necessary postulate of the existing world.

Further, there are *living beings* in the existing world. Therefore we must assume the existence of *the soul*. Among these living beings there are *intelligent* ones, capable of carrying the arts to the highest perfection; and this compels us to assume the existence of a Creator, who is wise and intelligent, who establishes and arranges everything in the best possible manner, and inspires people with the force of intelligence for the purpose of liberation.

On the other hand, some sophists consider eternity and time as one and the same thing, and declare the motion which serves to measure time alone to be finite.

Another one declares eternity to be the circular motion. No doubt this motion is indissolubly connected with that being which *moves* by it, and which is of the most sublime nature, since it lasts for ever. Thereupon he rises in his argumentation from the moving being to its mover, and from the moving mover to the first mover who is motionless.

This kind of research is very subtle and obscure. But for this, the opinions would not differ to such an extent that some people declare that there is no time at all, while others declare that time is an independent substance. According to Alexander of Aphrodisias, Aristotle gives in his book φυσικὴ ἀκρόασις the following argumentation: "Everything moving is moved by a mover;" and Galenus says on the same subject that he could not understand the notion of time, much less prove it.

Page 164.

The notions of Hindu philosophers on time.

The theory of the Hindus on this subject is rather poor in thought and very little developed. Varâhamihira says in the opening of his book *Saṁhitâ*, when speaking of that which existed from all eternity: "It has been said in the ancient books that the first primeval thing was darkness, which is not identical with the black colour, but a kind of non-existence like the state of a sleeping person. Then God created this world for Brahman as a cupola for him. He made it to consist of two parts, a higher and a lower one, and placed the sun and moon in it." Kapila declares: "God has always existed, and with him the world, with all its substances and bodies. He, however, is a cause to the world, and rises by the subtlety of his nature above the gross nature of the world." Kumbhaka says: "The primeval one is *Mahâbhûta*, *i.e.* the compound of the five elements. Some declare that the primeval thing is *time*, others *nature*, and still others maintain that the director is *karman*, *i.e.* action."

In the book *Vishṇu-Dharma*, Vajra speaks to Mârkaṇḍeya: "Explain to me the times;" whereupon the latter answers: "Duration is *âtmapurusha*," *i.e. a breath*, and *purusha*, which means *the lord of the universe.* Thereupon, he commenced explaining to him the divisions of time and their dominants, just as we have propounded these things in detail in the proper chapters (chap. xxxiii. *et seq.*).

The Hindus have divided duration into two periods, a period of *motion*, which has been determined as *time*, and a period of *rest*, which can be determined only in an imaginary way according to the analogy of that which has first been determined, the period of motion. The Hindus hold the eternity of the Creator to be *determinable*, not *measurable*, since it is infinite. We, however, cannot refrain from remarking that it is extremely difficult to imagine a thing which is *determinable* but not *measurable*, and that the whole idea is very far-fetched. We shall here communicate so much as will suffice for the reader of the opinions of the Hindus on this subject, as far as we know them.

The Day of Brahman a period of creation, the Night of

The common notion of the Hindus regarding creation is a popular one, for, as we have already mentioned, they believe matter to be eternal. Therefore, they do

Brahman a period of non-creation

not, by the word *creation*, understand *a formation of something out of nothing*. They mean by creation only the working with a piece of clay, working out various combinations and figures in it, and making such arrangements with it as will lead to certain ends and aims which are potentially in it. For this reason they attribute the creation to angels and demons, nay, even to human beings, who create either because they carry out some legal obligation which afterwards proves beneficial for the creation, or because they intend to allay their passions after having become envious and ambitious. So, for instance, they relate that Viśvâmitra, the Ṛishi, created the buffaloes for this purpose, that mankind should enjoy all the good and useful things which they afford. All this reminds one of the words of Plato in the book *Timæus:* "The θεοί, *i.e.* the gods, who, according to an order of their father, carried out the creation of man, took an immortal soul and made it the beginning; thereupon they fashioned like a turner a mortal body upon it."

Here in this context we meet with a duration of time which Muslim authors, following the example of the Hindus, call *the years of the world*. People think that at their beginnings and endings creation and destruction take place as kinds of new formations. This, however, is not the belief of the people at large. According to them, this duration is a day of Brahman and a consecutive night of Brahman; for Brahman is intrusted with creating. Further, the coming into existence is a motion in that which grows out of something different from itself, and the most apparent of the causes of this motion are the meteoric motors, *i.e.* the stars. These, however, will never exercise regular influences on the world below them unless they move and change their shapes in every direction (= their *aspects*). Therefore the coming into existence is limited to the *day of Brahman*, because in it only, as the

Hindus believe, the stars are moving and their spheres revolving according to their pre-established order, and in consequence the process of coming into existence is developed on the surface of the earth without any interruption. Page 165.

On the contrary, during *the night of Brahman* the spheres rest from their motions, and all the stars, as well as their apsides and nodes, stand still in one particular place.

In consequence all the affairs of the earth are in one and the same unchanging condition, therefore the coming into existence has ceased, because he who makes things come into existence rests. So both the processes of acting and of being acted upon are suspended; the elements rest from entering into new metamorphoses and combinations, as they rest now in (*lacuna; perhaps:* the night), and they prepare themselves to belong to new beings, which will come into existence on the following day of Brahman.

In this way existence circulates during *the life of Brahman*, a subject which we shall propound in its proper place.

Critical remark of the author.

According to these notions of the Hindus, creation and destruction only refer to the surface of the earth. By such a creation, not one piece of clay comes into existence which did not exist before, and by such a destruction not one piece of clay which exists ceases to exist. It is quite impossible that the Hindus should have the notion of a creation as long as they believe that *matter* existed from all eternity.

Brahman's waking and sleeping.

The Hindus represent to their common people the two *durations* here mentioned, the day of Brahman and the night of Brahman, as his *waking* and *sleeping*; and we do not disapprove of these terms, as they denote something which has a beginning and end. Further, the whole of *the life of Brahman*, consisting of a succession of motion and rest in the world during such a period, is considered as applying only to existence, not to non-existence, since during it the piece of clay exists and; besides, also its shape. The *life of Brahman* is only a *day* for that being who is above him, *i.e.* Purusha (*cf.* chap. xxxv.). When he dies all compounds are dissolved during his *night*, and in consequence of the annihilation of the compounds, that also is suspended which kept him (Brahman) within the laws of nature. This, then, is the rest of Purusha, and of all that is under his control (*lit.* and of his vehicles).

Vulgar and scientific notions on the sleep of Brahman.

When common people describe these things, they make the night of Brahman follow after the night of Purusha ; and as Purusha is the name for a man, they attribute to him sleeping and waking. They derive destruction from his snoring, in consequence of which all things that hang together break asunder, and everything standing is drowned in the sweat of his forehead. And more of the like they produce, things which the mind declines to accept and the ear refuses to hear.

Therefore the educated Hindus do not share these opinions (regarding the waking and sleeping of Brahman), for they know the real nature of sleep. They know that the body, a compound of antipathetic *humores*, requires sleep for the purpose of resting, and for this purpose that all which nature requires, after being wasted, should be duly replaced. So, in consequence of the constant dissolution, the body requires food in order to replace that which had been lost by emaciation. Further, it requires cohabitation for the purpose of perpetuating the species by the body, as without cohabitation the species would die out. Besides, the body requires other things, evil ones, but necessary, while simple substances can dispense with them, as also He can who is above them, like to whom there is nothing.

Notions regarding the end of the world.

Further, the Hindus maintain that the world will perish in consequence of the conjunction of the twelve suns, which appear one after the other in the different months, ruining the earth by burning and calcining it, and by withering and drying up all moist substances. Further, the world perishes in consequence of the union of the four rains which now come down in the different seasons of the year; that which has been calcined attracts the water and is thereby dissolved. Lastly, the world perishes by the cessation of light and by the prevalence of darkness and non-existence. By all this the world will be dissolved into atoms and be scattered.

The *Matsya-Purâṇa* says that the fire which burns the world has come out of the water; that until then it dwelt on Mount Mahisha in the Kusha-Dvîpa, and was called by the name of this mountain.

Page 166.

The *Vishṇu-Purâṇa* says that "Maharloka lies above the pole, and that the duration of the stay there is one *kalpa*. When the three worlds burn, the fire and smoke injure the inhabitants, and then they rise and emigrate to Janaloka, the dwelling-place of the sons of Brahman, who preceded creation, viz. Sanaka, Sananda, Sanandanâda (?), Asuras, Kapila, Voḍhu, and Pañćaśikha."

Abû-Ma'shar uses Indian theories.

The context of these passages makes it clear that this destruction of the world takes place at the end of a *kalpa*, and hence is derived the theory of Abû-Ma'shar that a deluge takes place at the conjunction of the planets, because, in fact, they stand in conjunction at the end of each *caturyuga* and at the beginning of each *kaliyuga*. If this conjunction is not a complete one, the deluge, too, will evidently not attain the highest degree of its destructive power. The farther we advance in the investigation of these subjects, the more light will be shed on all ideas of this kind, and the better the reader will understand all words and terms occurring in this context.

Buddhist notions from Alêrân-shahrî.

Alêrânshahrî records a tradition, as representing the belief of the Buddhists, which much resembles the silly tales just mentioned. On the sides of Mount Meru there are four worlds, which are alternately civilised or desert. A world becomes desert when it is overpowered by the fire, in consequence of the rising of seven suns, one after the other, over it, when the water of the fountains dries up, and the burning fire becomes so strong as to penetrate into the world. A world becomes civilised when the fire leaves it and migrates to another world; after it has left, a strong wind rises in the world, drives the clouds, and makes them rain, so that the world becomes like an ocean. Out of its foam shells are produced, with which the souls are connected, and out of these human beings originate when the water has sunk into the ground. Some Buddhists think that a man comes by accident from the perishing world to the growing world. Since he feels unhappy on account of his being alone, out of his thought there arises a spouse, and from this couple generation commences.

CHAPTER XXXIII.

ON THE VARIOUS KINDS OF THE DAY OR NYCHTHEMERON, AND ON DAY AND NIGHT IN PARTICULAR.

Definition of day and night.

ACCORDING to the general usage of Muslims, Hindus, and others, a *day* or nychthemeron means the duration of one revolution of the sun in a rotation of the universe, in which he starts from the one half of a *great circle* and returns to the same. Apparently it is divided into two halves: the *day* (*i.e.* the time of the sun's being visible to the inhabitants of a certain place on earth), and the *night* (*i.e.* the time of his being invisible to them). His being visible and being invisible are relative facts, which differ as the horizons differ. It is well known that the horizon of the equator, which the Hindus call *the country without latitude*, cuts the circles parallel to the meridian in two halves. In consequence, day and night are always equal there. However, the horizons which cut the parallel circles without passing through their pole divide them into two unequal halves, the more so the smaller the parallel circles are. In consequence, there day and night are unequal, except at the times of the two equinoxes, when on the whole earth, except Merû and Vaḍavâmukha, day and night are equal. Then all the places north and south of the line share in this peculiarity of the line, but only at this time, not at any other.

Manushyâhorâtra.

The beginning of the day is the sun's rising above the horizon, the beginning of the night his disappearing below it. The Hindus consider the day as the first, the

Page 167. night as the second, part of the nychthemeron. Therefore they call the former *Sâvana*, *i.e.* a day depending on the rising of the sun. Besides, they call it *Manushyâhorâtra*, *i.e.* a human day, because, in fact, the great mass of their people do not know any other kind of day but this. Now, assuming the *Sâvana* to be known to the reader, we shall in the following use it as a standard and gauge, in order thereby to determine all the other kinds of days.

Day of the fathers. After *the human day* follows *Pitṛîṇâm ahorâtra*, *i.e.* the nychthemeron of the forefathers, whose spirits, according to the belief of the Hindus, dwell in the sphere of the moon. Its day and night depend upon light and darkness, not upon the rising and setting in relation to a certain horizon. When the moon stands in the highest parts of the sphere with reference to them, this is a day to them; and when it stands in the lowest parts, it is night to them. Evidently their moon is the time of *conjunction* or full moon, and their midnight is *opposition* or new moon. Therefore the nychthemeron of the forefathers is a complete lunar month, the day beginning at the time of half-moon, when the light on the moon's body begins to increase, and the night beginning at the time of half-moon, when her light begins to wane. This follows of necessity from the just-mentioned determination of the noon and midnight of the nychthemeron of the forefathers. Besides, it may be brought near to the reader by a comparison, as the bright half of the light on the moon's body may be compared to the rising of half of the globe of the sun over the horizon, and the other half's setting below the horizon. The day of this nychthemeron extends from the last quarter of a month to the first quarter of the succeeding month; the night from the first to the second quarter of one identical month. The totality of these two halves is the nychthemeron of the forefathers.

Thus the subject is explained by the author of *Vishṇu-Dharma* both at large and in detail, but afterwards he treats it a second time with very little understanding, and identifies *the day of the forefathers* with the *black* half of the month from opposition to conjunction, and their night with its *white* half, whilst the correct statement is that which we have just mentioned. This view is also confirmed by their custom of offering gifts of food to the forefathers on the day of conjunction, for they explain noon to be the time of taking food. For this reason they offer food to the forefathers at the same time when they themselves take it.

Day of the Devas.

Next follows the *Divyâhorâtra, i.e.* the nychthemeron of the angels. It is known that the horizon of the greatest latitude, *i.e.* that of 90 degrees, where the pole stands in the zenith, is the equator, not exactly, but approximately, because it is a little below the visible horizon for that place on earth which is occupied by Mount Meru; for its top and slopes the horizon in question and the equator may be absolutely identical, although the visible horizon lies a little below it (*i.e.* farther south). Further, it is evident that the zodiac is divided into two halves by being intersected by the equator, the one half lying above the equator (*i.e.* north of it), the second half below it. As long as the sun marches in the signs of northern declination it revolves like a mill, since the diurnal arcs which he describes are parallel to the horizon, as in the case of the sundials. For those who live under the north pole the sun appears above the horizon, therefore they have day, whilst for those living under the south pole the sun is concealed below the horizon, and therefore they have night. When, then, the sun migrates to the southern signs, he revolves like a mill below the horizon (*i.e.* south of the equator); hence it is night to the people living under the north pole and day to those living under the south pole.

Page 168.

The dwellings of the *Devaka*, *i.e.* the spiritual beings, are under the two poles; therefore this kind of day is called by their name, *i.e.* the nychthemeron *of the Deva*.

Âryabhaṭa of Kusumapura says that the Deva see one half of the solar year, the Dânava the other; that the Pitáras see one half of the lunar month, human beings the other. So one revolution of the sun in the zodiac affords day and night both to the Deva and Dânava, and their totality is a nychthemeron.

In consequence our year is identical with the nychthemeron of the Deva. In it, however, day and night are not equal (as in the nychthemeron of the forefathers), because the sun moves slowly in the half of the northern declination about its apogee, by which the day becomes a little longer. However, this difference is not equal to the difference between the visible horizon and the real one, for this cannot be observed on the globe of the sun. Besides, according to Hindu notions, the inhabitants of those places are raised above the surface of the earth, dwelling on Mount Meru. Whoever holds this view holds regarding the height of Meru the same opinions as those we have described in the proper place (in chap. xxiii.). In consequence of this height of Mount Meru, its horizon must fall a little lower (*i.e.* more southward than the equator), and in consequence the rate of the day's being longer than the night is lessened (as then the sun does not entirely reach his northern apogee, where he makes the longest days). If this were anything else but simply a religious tradition of the Hindus, besides being one regarding which even they do not agree among themselves, we should try to find, by astronomical calculation, the amount of this depression of the horizon of Mount Meru below the equator, but as there is no use in this subject (Mount Meru being simply an invention), we drop it.

Some uneducated Hindu heard people speak of the day of such a nychthemeron in the north, and of its night in the south. In connection with these elements he determined the two parts of the year by the two halves of the zodiac, the one which ascends from the winter solstice, called the northern, and the one which descends from the summer solstice, called the southern. Then he identified the day of this nychthemeron with the ascending half, and its night with the descending half. All of which he has eternised in his books.

Not much better is what the author of the *Vishṇu-Dharma* says:—"The half beginning with Capricornus is the day of the *Asura*, *i.e.* the Dânavas, and their night begins with the sign of Cancer." Previously he had said: "The half beginning with Aries is the day of the Deva." This author acted without any understanding of the subject, for he simply confounds the two poles with each other (for according to this theory the half of the sun's revolution, beginning with Capricornus or the winter solstice, would be the day of the beings under the north pole or the Devas, not that of the beings under the south pole or Asuras, and the revolution of the sun beginning with Cancer or the summer solstice would be the day of the Asuras, not their night). If this author had really understood the sentence, and had known astronomy, he would have come to other conclusions.

Day of Brahman.

Next follows the *Brahmâhorâtra*, *i.e.* the nychthemeron of Brahman. It is not derived from light and darkness (as that of the forefathers), nor from the appearing or disappearing of a heavenly body (like that of the Devas), but from the physical nature of created things, in consequence of which they *move* in the day and *rest* in the night. The length of the nychthemeron of Brahman is 8,640,000,000 of our years. During one half of it, *i.e.* during the day, the æther, with all that is in it, is moving, the earth is producing, and the changes of existence and destruction are constantly going on upon the surface of the earth. During the other half, *i.e.* the night, there occurs the opposite of everything which occurs in the day; the earth is not changing, because those things which produce the changes are resting and all motions are stopped, as nature rests in the night and in the winter, and concentrates itself, preparing for a new existence in the day and in the summer. Page 169.

Each day of Brahman is a *kalpa*, as also each night, and a *kalpa* is that space of time which Muslim authors call *the year of the Sindhind.*

Day of Purusha.

Lastly follows the *Purushâhorâtra*, *i.e.* the nychthemeron of the All-soul, which is also called *Mahâkalpa*, *i.e.* the greatest *kalpa*. The Hindus only use it for the purpose of determining duration in general by something like a notion of time, but do not specify it as day and night. I almost feel inclined to think that the day of this nychthemeron means the duration of the soul's being connected with the ὕλη, whilst the night means the duration of their being separated from each other, and of the resting of the souls (from the fatigue of being mixed up with the ὕλη), and that that condition which necessitates the soul's being connected with the ὕλη or its being separated from the ὕλη reaches its periodical end at the end of this nychthemeron. The *Vishṇu-Dharma* says: "The life of Brahman is the day of Purusha, and the night of Purusha has the same length."

The Hindus agree in assigning to the life of Brahman a hundred of *his* years. The number of *our* years which corresponds to *one* of his years betrays itself to be a multiplication of 360 with the number of our years, which correspond to one nychthemeron of his. We have already mentioned (p. 331) the length of the nychthemeron of Brahman. Now the length of *a year of Brahman* is 3,110,400,000,000 of our years (*i.e.*

360 × 8,640,000,000). A hundred years of the same kind, reckoned in *our* years, are represented by the same number increased by two ciphers, so that you get in the whole ten ciphers, viz. 311,040,000,000,000. This space of time is a *day* of Purusha; therefore his nychthemeron is double of it, viz. 622,080,000,000,000 of *our* years.

Parârdha-kalpa.

According to the *Pulisa-Siddhânta*, the life of Brahman is a day of Purusha. However, it has also been mentioned that a day of Purusha is a *parârdhakalpa*. Other Hindus say that *parârdhakalpa* is the *day of kha*, *i.e.* the point, by which they mean the *first cause*, on which all existence depends. The *kalpa* occupies the eighteenth place in the scale of the degrees of the numbers (see p. 175). It is called *parârdha*, which means *the half of heaven*. Now, the double of this would be the *whole* of heaven and the whole nychthemeron. Therefore *kha* is represented by the number 864, followed by twenty-four ciphers, this number representing *our* years (*cf.* p. 331).

These terms must, on the whole, be rather considered as a philosophical means of conveying an abstract notion of time than as mathematical values composed of the various kinds of numbers, for they are derived from the processes of combination and dissolution, of procreation and destruction.

CHAPTER XXXIV.

ON THE DIVISION OF THE NYCHTHEMERON INTO MINOR PARTICLES OF TIME.

Ghaṭî. THE Hindus are foolishly painstaking in inventing the most minute particles of time, but their efforts have not resulted in a universally adopted and uniform system. On the contrary, you hardly ever meet with two books or two men representing the subject identically. In the first instance, the nychthemeron is divided into sixty minutes or *ghaṭî*. We read in the book *Srûdhava* by Utpala the Kashmîrian: "If you bore in a piece of wood a cylindrical hole of twelve fingers' diameter and six fingers' height, it contains three *manâ* water. If you bore in the bottom of this hole another hole as large as six plaited hairs of the hair of a young woman, not of an old one nor of a child, the three *manâ* of water will flow out through this hole in one *ghaṭî*."

Cashaka. Each minute is divided into sixty seconds, called *cashaka* or *cakhaka*, and also *vighaṭikâ*.

Prâṇa. Page 170. Each second is divided into six parts or *prâṇa*, *i.e.* breath. The above-mentioned book, *Srûdhava*, explains the *prâṇa* in the following manner: "It is the breath of a sleeping person who sleeps a normal sleep, and not like a man who is ill, who suffers from retention of the urine, who is hungry, or has eaten too much, whose mind is occupied with some sorrow or pain; for the breath of a sleeping person varies according to the conditions of his soul, which originate either from desire or fear, according to the conditions of his body, depending upon the emptiness or fulness of his stomach, and according to various accidents disturbing the kind of *humor* which is considered the most desirable."

It is all the same whether we determine the *prâṇa* according to this rule (one nychthemeron = 21,600 *prâṇa*), or if we divide each *ghaṭî* into 360 parts (60 × 360 = 21,600), or each degree of the sphere into sixty parts (360 × 60 = 21,600).

Vinâḍî.

As far as this all Hindus agree with each other in the matter, though they use different terms. So, for instance, Brahmagupta calls the *cashaka* or seconds *vinâḍî*, likewise Âryabhaṭa of Kusumapura. Besides the latter calls the minutes *nâḍî*. Both, however, did not use particles of time smaller than the *prâṇa*, which correspond to the minutes of the sphere (60 × 360). For Pulisa says: "*The minutes of the sphere*, which are 21,600, resemble the normal breaths of man at the time of the equinoxes, and when man is in perfect health. During one breathing of man the sphere revolves as far as one minute."

Kshaṇâ.

Other people insert between minute and second a third measure, called *kshaṇa*, which is equal to one-fourth of a minute (or fifteen seconds). Each *kshaṇa* is divided into fifteen *kalâ*, each of which is equal to one-sixtieth of a minute, and this is the *cashaka*, only called by another name.

Nimesha, lava, truṭi.

Among the lower orders of these fractions of time there occur three names which are always mentioned in the same sequence. The largest is the *nimesha*, *i.e.* the time during which the eye, in the normal state of things, is open between two consecutive looks. The *lava* is the mean, and the *truṭi* the smallest part of time, the latter word meaning the cracking of the forefinger against the inside of the thumb, which is with them a gesture expressive of astonishment or admiration. The relation between these three measures varies very much. According to many of the Hindus—

2 *truṭi* = 1 *lava*.
2 *lava* = 1 *nimesha*.

Further, they differ as to the relation between the *nimesha* and the next higher order of fractions of time, for according to some the latter (*kâshṭhâ*) contains fifteen, according to others thirty *nimesha*. Others, again, divide each of these three measures into eighths, so that—

8 *truṭi* = 1 *lava*.
8 *lava* = 1 *nimesha*.
8 *nimesha* = 1 *kâshṭhâ* (?).

The latter system is used in the book *Srûdhava*, and has also been adopted by *Ś M Y* (?), one of their learned astronomers. He makes this division still more subtle by adding a further measure, smaller than the *truṭi*, which is called *aṇu*, and eight of which are one *truṭi*.

Kâshṭhâ, kalâ. The next higher orders, parts of time larger than the *nimesha*, are *kâshṭhâ* and *kalâ*. We have said already (p. 335) that with some Hindus *kalâ* is only another name for *cashaka*, and is considered as equal to thirty *kâshṭhâ*. Further—

1 *kâshṭhâ* = 15 *nimesha*.
1 *nimesha* = 2 *lava*.
1 *lava* = 2 *truṭi*.

Others reckon thus—

1 *kalâ* = $\frac{1}{16}$th minute of the nychthemeron = 30 *kâshṭhâ*.
1 *kâshṭhâ* = 30 *nimesha*.

And the further fractions such as those just mentioned.

Lastly, others reckon thus—

1 *cashaka* = 6 *nimesha*.
1 *nimesha* = 3 *lava*.

Here ends the tradition of Utpala.

According to the *Vâyu-Purâṇa*—

1 *muhûrta* = 30 *kalâ*.
1 *kalâ* = 30 *kâshṭhâ*.
1 *kâshṭhâ* = 15 *nimesha*.

The smaller fractions are disregarded by the *Vâyu-Purâṇa*.

We have no means of settling the question as to which of these systems is the most authentic one. Therefore it is the best for us to adhere to the theory of Utpala and *Ś M Y* (?), *i.e.* to divide all measures of time smaller than a *prâṇa* by eight— Page 171

1 *prâṇa* = 8 *nimesha*.
1 *nimesha* = 8 *lava*.
1 *lava* = 8 *truṭi*.
1 *truṭi* = 8 *aṇu*.

The whole system is represented in the following table:—

The names of the measures of time.	How many times the smaller one is contained in the larger one.	How many of it are contained in one day.
Ghaṭî, Nâḍî	60	60
Kshaṇa	4	240
Cashaka, Vinâḍî, Kalâ	15	3600
Prâṇa	6	21,600
Nimesha	8	172,800
Lava	8	1,382,400
Truṭi	8	11,059,200
Aṇu	8	88,473,600

Prahara. The Hindus have also a popular kind of division of the nychthemeron into eight *prahara*, *i.e.* changes of the watch, and in some parts of their country they have clepsydræ regulated according to the *ghaṭî*, by which the times of the eight watches are determined. After a watch which lasts seven and a half *ghaṭî* has elapsed, they beat the drum and blow a winding shell called *śankha*, in Persian *spêd-muhra*. I have seen this in the town of *Purshûr*. Pious people have bequeathed for these clepsydræ, and for their administration, legacies and fixed incomes.

Muhûrta. Further, the day is divided into thirty *muhûrta*, but this division is not free from a certain obscurity; for sometimes you think that the *muhûrtas* have always the same length, since they compare them either with the *ghaṭî*, and say that two *ghaṭî* are one *muhûrta*, or with the *watches*, and say that one *watch* is three and three-quarters *muhûrta*. Here the *muhûrtas* are treated as if they were *horæ æquinoctiales* (*i.e.* so and so many *equal* parts of the nychthemeron). However, the number of such hours of a day or of a night differs on every degree of latitude, and this makes us think that the length of a *muhûrta* during the day is different from its length during the *night* (for if four watches or fifteen *muhûrta* represent a day or a night, the *muhûrtas* cannot be of the same length in the day and in the night, except at the times of the equinoxes).

On the other hand, the way in which the Hindus count the dominants of the *muhûrtas* makes us more inclined to the opposite opinion, that, in fact, the *muhûrtas* are of different length, for in the case of day and night they simply attribute to each of them fifteen dominants. Here the *muhûrtas* are treated like the *horæ obliquæ temporales* (*i.e.* twelve equal parts of the day and twelve equal parts of the night, which differ as day and night differ).

The latter opinion is confirmed by a calculation of the Hindus which enables them to find the number of the *muhûrtas* (which have elapsed of the day) by means of the digits which the shadow of a person at the time measures. From the latter number you subtract the digits of the shadow of the person at noon, and the remaining number you look out in the middle column of the following diagram, which we have taken from some of their metrical compositions. The corresponding field of the upper or lower columns shows the number of *muhûrtas* which you wanted to find.

The *muhûrtas* which have elapsed *before* noon. . . .	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	
How many digits the shadow in question is larger than the noon-shadow . . .	96	60	12	6	5	3	2	0
The *muhûrtas* which have elapsed *after* noon . . .	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	

Whether the length of a *muhûrta* is variable or invariable. Page 172.

The commentator of the *Siddhânta*, Pulisa, comments on the latter opinion, and blames those who in general declare *one muhûrta* to be equal to *two ghaṭî*, saying that the number of the *ghaṭî* of the nychthemeron varies in the different parts of the year, whilst the number of its *muhûrtas* does not vary. But in another place he contradicts himself, where he reasons about the measure of the *muhûrta*. He fixes one *muhûrta* as equal to 720 *prâṇa* or *breaths*, one breath being composed of two things: the *apâna* or the inhaling, and the *prâṇa* or the exhaling of breath. Two other terms of the same meaning are *niḥśvâsa* and *avaśvâsa*. However, if one thing is mentioned, the other is tacitly included and understood; as, for instance, if you speak of *days*, you include the nights, meaning to express days *and* nights. Accordingly a *muhûrta* is 360 *apâna* and 360 *prâṇa*.

In the same manner, when speaking of the measure of a *ghaṭî*, he only mentions the one species of breath, connoting the other, for he explains it in general as equal to 360 breaths (instead of 180 *apâna* and 180 *prâṇa*).

If now the *muhûrta* is measured by *breaths*, it is dependent upon the *ghaṭî* and the *horæ æquinoctiales* as the gauges of its measure. But this is exactly the contrary of what Pulisa intends, for he argues against his opponents who maintain that a day has fifteen *muhûrtas* only, if he who counts them dwells on the equator or somewhere else, but at the time of the equinoxes. Pulisa observes that the *abhijit* coincides with noon and the beginning of the second half of the day; that, therefore, if the number of the *muhûrtas* of the day varied, the number of the *muhûrta* called *abhijit* and denoting noon would vary too (*i.e.* it would not always be called the eighth *muhûrta* of the day).

Vyâsa says that the birth of Yudhishṭhira took place *in the white half, at noon*, at the eighth *muhûrta*. If an opponent means to infer from this that it was the day of an equinox, we answer by referring him to the statement of Mârkaṇḍeya, viz. that the birth took place at full moon in the month Jyaishṭha, a time of the year which is far distant from an equinox.

Further, Vyâsa says that the birth of Yudhishṭhira took place *at the abhijit, when the youth of the night was gone*, at midnight, *at the eighth* (*muhûrta*) *of the black half*, in the month of Bhâdrapada. This date, too, is far distant from an equinox.

Story of Śiśupâla.

Vasishṭha relates that Vâsudeva killed Śiśupâla, the son of the daughter of Kaṁsa, at the *abhijit*. The Hindus tell the following story of Śiśupâla. He had been born with four hands, and one day his mother heard a voice from above saying, "When that person who will kill him touches him, his two superfluous hands will fall off. Thereupon they put the child to the bosom of each of those who were present, and when it came to be touched by Vâsudeva, the two hands fell off, as had been prophesied. Now the aunt spoke to him, "Assuredly you will one day kill my child;" whereupon Vâsudeva, who was still a child, answered, "I shall not do that except he deserve it for some crime committed intentionally, and I shall not call him to account until his misdeeds exceed *ten*."

Some time afterwards Yudhishṭhira was occupied with preparing a sacrifice to the fire in the presence of the most famous personages. He consulted Vyâsa as to the rank of the guests present and the honours due to the president of such an assembly, consisting in the presentation of water and roses in a cup, and Vyâsa advised him to make Vâsudeva the president. In this assembly also Śiśupâla, his cousin, was present, and now he began to rage, maintaining that he had a better claim to such an honour than Vâsudeva. He boasted much and went even so far as to abuse the parent of Vâsudeva. The latter called the present company to witness as to his bad behaviour, and let him do as he liked. However, when the affair lasted too long, and passed beyond the number of *ten* (*muhûrtas*), Vâsudeva took the cup and threw it at him, as people throw with the *cakra*, and cut off his head. This is the story of Śiśupâla.

Criticisms on Pulisa.

He who wants to prove the above-mentioned theory (like Pulisa, viz. that the *muhûrtas* are thirty equal parts of the nychthemeron), will not succeed unless he prove that the *abhijit* falls together with noon and with the middle of the eighth *muhûrta* (so that the day consists of twice seven and a half equal *muhûrtas*, and likewise the night). As long as he does not prove this, the *muhûrtas* differ in length as days and nights, though just in India only very little, and it is possible that in times distant from the equinoxes noon falls either at the beginning or at the end of the eighth *muhûrta*, or within it.

How little exact is the learning of the author (Pulisa) who meant to prove this, is evident from the fact that among his arguments he produces a tradition from Garga to this effect, that at the *abhijit* of the equator Page 173. there is no shadow; for, in the first instance, it is not true save at the two days of the equinoxes; and, secondly, if it were true, it would not have anything to do with the subject he tries to prove (as the question of the different length of day and night and their divisions does not refer to the equator, where day and night always equal each other, but only to southern or northern latitudes of the earth).

Dominants of the *muhûrtas*. We represent the dominants of the single *muhûrtas* in the following table:—

The number of the Muhûrtas.	The dominants of the Muhûrtas in the day.	The dominants of the Muhûrtas in the night.
1.	Śiva, *i.e.* Mahâdeva.	Rudra, *i.e.* Mahâdeva.
2.	Bhujaga, *i.e.* the snake.	Aja, *i.e.* the lord of all cloven-footed animals.
3.	Mitra.	Ahirbudhnya, the lord of Uttarabhadrapadâ.
4.	Pitṛi.	Pûshan, the lord of Revatî.
5.	Vasu.	Dasra, the lord of Aśvinî.
6.	Âpas, *i.e.* the water.	Antaka, *i.e.* the angel of death.
7.	Viśva.	Agni, *i.e.* the fire.
8.	Viriñcya, *i.e.* Brahman.	Dhâtṛi, *i.e.* Brahma the preserver.
9.	Keśvara (?), *i.e.* Mahâdeva.	Soma, the lord of Mṛigaśîrsha.
10.	Indrâgnî.	Guru, *i.e.* Jupiter.
11.	Indra, the prince.	Hari, *i.e.* Nârâyaṇa.
12.	Niśâkara, *i.e.* the moon.	Ravi, *i.e.* the sun.
13.	Varuṇa, *i.e.* the lord of the clouds.	Yama, the angel of death.
14.	Aryaman.	Tvashṭṛi, the lord of Citrâ.
15.	Bhâgeya (?).	Anila, *i.e.* the wind.

On the hours in Hindu astrology.

Nobody in India uses *the hours* except the astrologers, for they speak of the *dominants of the hours*, and, in consequence, also of *dominants of the nychthemera*. The dominant of the nychthemeron is at the same time the dominant of the night, for they do not separately establish a dominant for the day, and the night is, in this connection, never mentioned. They arrange the order of the dominants according to the *horæ temporales*.

They call the hour *horâ*, and this name seems to indicate that in reality they use the *horæ obliquæ temporales;* for the Hindus call the *media signorum* (the centres of the signs of the zodiac) *horâ*, which we Muslims call *nímbahr* (cf. chap. lxxx.). The reason is this, that in each day and each night always six signs rise above the horizon. If, therefore, the hour is called by the name of the centre of a sign, each day and each night has twelve hours, and in consequence the hours used in the theory of the dominants of the hours are *horæ obliquæ temporales*, as they are used in our country and are inscribed on the astrolabes on account of these dominants. Page 174.

This opinion is confirmed by the following sentence of Vijayanandin in the *Karaṇa-tilaka*, i.e. *the first of the canons*. After having explained the rule how to find the dominant of the year and of the month, he says: "To find the *horâdhipati*, add the signs which have risen since the morning to the degree of the horoscope, the whole being reckoned in minutes, and divide the sum by 900. The quotient you get count off from the dominant of the nychthemeron, counting the planetary spheres from above to below. The dominant of a day you arrive at, is at the same time the dominant of the hour." He ought to have said, "To the quotient you get add one, and count off the sum from the dominant of the nychthemeron." If he had said, "Reckon the equatorial degrees which have risen," &c., the calculation would have resulted in *horæ æquinoctiales*.

Names of the twenty-four horâs.

The Hindus give certain names to the *horæ obliquæ*, which we have united in the following table. We think they are taken from the book *Śrûdhava*.

The number of the Horâs.	Names of the Horâs in the day.	Whether favourable or unlucky.	Their names in the night.	Whether favourable or unlucky.
1.	Raudra.	Unlucky.	Kâlârâtri.	Unlucky.
2.	Saumya.	Lucky.	Rodhinî.	Lucky.
3.	Karâla.	Unlucky.	Vairahma (?).	Lucky.
4.	Sattra.	Lucky.	Trâsanîya.	Unlucky.
5.	Vega.	Lucky.	Gûhanîya (?).	Lucky.
6.	Viśâla.	Lucky.	Mâyâ.	Unlucky.
7.	Mṛityusâra.	Unlucky.	Damarîya (?).	Lucky.
8.	Śubha.	Lucky.	Jîvaharaṇî.	Unlucky.
9.	Kroḍa.	Lucky.	Śoshiṇî.	Unlucky.
10.	Caṇḍâla.	Lucky.	Vṛishnî.	Lucky.
11.	Kṛittikâ.	Lucky.	Dâharîya (?).	The most unlucky of all.
12.	Amṛita.	Lucky.	Cântima (?).	Lucky.

What time is under the influence of the serpent Kulika.

Page 175.

The book *Vishṇu-Dharma* mentions, among the *nâgas* or serpents, a serpent called *Nâga Kulika*. Certain portions of the hours of the planets stand under its influence. They are unlucky, and everything which is eaten during them hurts and is of no use for anything. Sick people who treat themselves with poisonous medicines do not recover, but die and perish. During these times no incantation is of any avail against the bite of a snake, for the incantation consists in the mention of the Garuḍa, and in those inauspicious times the stork himself cannot help in any way, much less the mention of his name.

These times are represented in the following table where the planetary hour is reckoned as consisting of 150 parts.

The Dominants of the Hours.	Sun.	Moon.	Mars.	Mercury.	Jupiter.	Venus.	Saturn.
Number of the 150 parts of the hour before the beginning of the time of Kulika . .	67	71	0	0	17	144	86
Number of the parts during which the influence of Kulika lasts.	16	8	37	2	$2\frac{1}{2}$	6	64

CHAPTER XXXV.

ON THE DIFFERENT KINDS OF MONTHS AND YEARS.

Definition of the lunar month.

THE *natural* month is the period of the moon's synodical revolution. We call it physical because it develops in the same way as all natural phenomena, rising out of a certain beginning like non-existence, increasing by degrees, and growing, standing still when the climax is attained, then descending, waning away and decreasing, till at last they return to the non-existence whence they came. In the same manner the light develops on the body of the moon, since she appears after the moonless nights as a crescent, then as a young moon (after the third night), and as full moon, and thereafter returns through the same stages to the last night, which is like non-existence, at all events with reference to human senses. It is well known to everybody why the moon continues for some length of time in the moonless nights, but it is not equally known, not even to educated people, why she continues some time as full moon. They must learn how small the body of the moon is in comparison with that of the sun, that in consequence the enlightened portion by far exceeds the dark one, and that this is one of the causes why the moon must necessarily appear as full moon for some length of time.

Effects of moonlight.

That the moon has certain effects on moist substances, that they are apparently subject to her influences, that, for instance, increase and decrease in ebb and flow develop periodically and parallel with the moon's phases, all this is well known to the inhabitants of sea-shores and seafaring people. Likewise physicians are well aware that she affects the *humores* of sick people, and that the fever-days revolve parallel with the moon's course. Physical scholars know that the life of animals and plants depends upon the moon, and experimentalists know that she influences marrow and brain, eggs and the sediments of wine in casks and jugs, that she excites the minds of people who sleep in full moonlight, and that she affects (?) linen clothes which are exposed to it. Peasants know how the moon acts upon fields of cucumbers, melons, cotton, &c., and even make the times for the various kinds of sowing, planting, and grafting, and for the covering of the cattle depend upon the course of the moon. Lastly, astronomers know that meteorologic occurrences depend upon the various phases through which the moon passes in her revolutions. Page 176.

This is the month, and twelve of them are in technical language called *a lunar year*.

Solar month.

The natural year is the period of a revolution of the sun in the ecliptic. We call it the *natural*, because it comprehends all the stages in the process of generation which revolve through the four seasons of the year. In the course of it, the rays of the sun as passing through a window-glass and the shadows of the sun-dials reassume the same size, position, and direction in which, or from which, they commenced. This is the year, and is called *the solar one*, in antithesis to the *lunar* year. As the lunar month is the twelfth part of the lunar year, the twelfth part of the solar year is a solar month in theory, the calculation being based on the mean rotation of the sun. If, however, the calculation is based on his varying rotation, a solar month is the period of his staying in one sign of the zodiac.

These are the well-known two kinds of months and years.

On luni-solar calculation.

The Hindus call the conjunction *amâvâsyâ*, the opposition *pûrṇimâ*, and the two quarters ATVH (?). Some of them use the lunar year with lunar months and days, whilst others use the lunar year but solar months, beginning with 0 degree of each zodiacal sign. The sun's entering a sign is called *saṅkrânti*. This luni-solar calculation is, however, only an approximative one. If they constantly used it, they would soon feel induced to adopt the solar year itself and solar months. In using this mixed system they had only this advantage, that they could dispense with intercalation.

Beginning of the lunar month.

Those who use lunar months begin the month with conjunction or new moon, and this method is *the canonical* one, whilst the others begin it with the opposition or full moon. I have heard people say that Varâhamihira does the latter, but I have not yet been able to ascertain this from his books. The latter method is forbidden. Still it seems as if it were rather old, because the *Veda* says: "Men say the moon has become complete, and by her becoming complete also the month has become complete. Thus they speak because they do not know me nor the interpretation of me, for the Creator of the world commenced creating with the white half, not with the black half." But possibly these words are only a saying of men (not really a sentence taken from the *Veda*).

The month counted as two halves.

The numeration of the days of the month begins with the new moon and the first lunar day is called *BRBA*, and again enumeration begins with full moon (*i.e.* they count twice fifteen days, beginning with new moon and full moon). Each two days which are equidistant from new moon or full moon have the same name (or number). In them, light and darkness on the body of the moon are in corresponding phases of increasing and waning, and the hours of the rising of the moon in one day correspond to the hours of her setting in the other.

For the purpose of finding these times they use the following calculation:—

Multiply the elapsed lunar days of the month, if they are less than 15, or, in case they are more, the difference between them and 15, by the number of the *ghaṭîs* of the night in question. Add 2 to the product, and divide the sum by 15. Then the quotient represents the number of *ghaṭîs* and minor fractions of time between the first night, and *either* the setting of the moon in the night in question, one of the nights of *the white half*, or the rising of the moon in the night in question, one of the nights of *the black half*.

This calculation is based on the fact that the space of time between the first night and the rising or setting of the moon in some following night of the same lunation varies by two minutes (*ghaṭî*), and that the nights vary, lasting either a little longer or a little shorter than thirty minutes. If, therefore, you count thirty minutes for each nychthemeron, and you divide the product by half the number of the minutes, you get two minutes for each nychthemeron. As these two minutes, however, agree with the difference of the nights, they multiplied the number of nychthemera by the measure of the night, *i.e.* the number of its *ghaṭîs* (see above, ll. 6, 7), whilst it would have been more accurate to multiply by the half of the sum of the *ghaṭîs* of the night in question and of the first night of the lunation. It is useless to add the two minutes, for they represent the moment when the crescent of the moon first becomes visible, but if this moment were adopted as the beginning of the month, the two minutes would be transferred to the conjunction. Page 177.

Various kinds of months.

As months are composed of days, there are as many kinds of months as there are kinds of days. Each month has thirty days. We shall here use the *civil* day (*Sâvana*, v. chap. xxxiii.) as a standard.

In agreement with the Hindu calculation of the revolutions of sun and moon in a *kalpa*, *a lunar month* $=29\frac{189005}{356222}$ nychthemera. You find this number by dividing the sum of the days of the *kalpa* by the number of its lunar months. The number of the lunar months of a *kalpa* represents the difference between the revolutions of sun and moon in it, viz. 53,433,300,000.

A month has 30 lunar days, for this number is canonical, as the number of 360 is canonical for the number of days of a year. The *solar month* has 30 solar days and $30\frac{1,362,987}{3,110,400}$ civil days.

The month of the fathers is equal to 30 of our months, and has $885\frac{163,410}{178,111}$ civil days.

The month of the angels is equal to 30 years, and has $10,957\frac{241}{320}$ civil days.

The month of Brahman is equal to 60 *kalpas*, and has 94,674,987,000,000 civil days.

The month of Purusha is equal to 2,160,000 *kalpas*, and has 3,408,299,532,000,000,000 civil days.

The month of Kha has
9,497,498,700,000,000,000,000,000,000,000 civil days.

Various kinds of years.

By multiplying each of these months by twelve, we get the number of days of the corresponding year.

The *lunar* year has $354\frac{65,364}{178,111}$ civil days.

The *solar* year has $365\frac{827}{3200}$ civil days.

The *year of the fathers* has 360 lunar months, or $10,631\frac{1699}{178,111}$ civil days.

The *year of the angels* has 360 of our years, or $131,493\frac{3}{80}$ civil days.

The *year of Brahman* has 720 *kalpas*, or
1,136,099,844,000,000 civil days.

The *year of Purusha* has 25,920,000 *kalpas*, or
40,899,594,384,000,000,000 civil days.

The *year of Kha* has
113,609,984,400,000,000,000,000,000,000,000 civil days.

The latter number is mentioned by the Hindus, although it is written in their books that there is no combination of numbers beyond the *day of Purusha*, for

The day of Purusha.

it is the first and the last, and is without a beginning in the past and without an end in the future. The other kinds of days, of which months and years (those of the fathers, the angels, and Brahman) are composed, refer to beings who stand *under* Purusha in the order of beings, and whose duration is defined by certain limits of time. The *day of Purusha* is simply an abstraction of the Hindu mind to denote that which is above the soul (*âtman*), for they make no distinction between *purusha* and *âtman* except in the order or sequence in which they enumerate them. They speak of Purusha in terms resembling those of the Ṣûfîs, viz. the *he* is not the first, and is not something else. It is quite possible **Page 178.** in imagination to extend the idea of duration from the existing present moment towards both sides, *i.e.* towards the past which no longer exists, and towards the future which possibly will exist, and to measure duration; and if some part of it admits of being determined by days, imagination also admits reduplications of it in the guise of months and years. In all this it is the intention of the Hindus that we should refer the years invented by them to certain periods of life, beginning with the coming into existence, and ending with destruction and death. However, God the Creator is sublime beyond either, and also the simple substances (air, fire, earth, water) do not know coming into existence nor destruction (in periodical returns). Therefore we stop with the day of Purusha, and do not think it necessary to use still larger periods of time.

A tradition relating to the years of the Great Bear and the pole.

Things which do not rest on intrinsic necessity offer a wide field for difference of opinion and arbitrary systematising, so as easily to become the source of numerous theories. Some of them may be developed according to a certain order and rule, whilst others are devoid of such. In the latter class I reckon the following theory, but unfortunately I have forgotten from what source it has come to me: "33,000 human years are one year of the Great Bear; 36,000 human years are one year of Brahman, and 99,000 human years are one year of the pole." However, as regards the year of Brahman, we remember that Vâsudeva speaks to Arjuna on the battlefield between the two ranks: "The day of Brahman is two *kalpas;*" and in the *Brahmasiddhânta* there is a tradition from Vyâsa, the son of Parâśara, and from the book *Smṛiti*, that *kalpa* is a day of Devaka, *i.e.* Brahman, and also a night of his. In consequence the there-mentioned theory is evidently wrong (one year of Brahman being infinitely longer than 36,000 years). Further, 36,000 years are the period of one revolution of the fixed stars in the ecliptic, since they pass one degree in 100 years, and the Great Bear belongs to them. However, in their traditional literature the Hindus separate the Great Bear from the fixed stars, and attribute to it a distance from the earth which differs from the real distance, and therefore they describe it by qualities and conditions which in reality do not belong to it. If the author of that theory meant by the year of the Great Bear one revolution of it, we do not see why it should revolve so much more rapidly than the other fixed stars (for, in that case, the diameter of its course would be much larger than that of the others), nor why it should form an exception to the laws of nature (according to which all fixed stars revolve at the same distance from the earth and in the same time); and the pole has no revolution which might be considered as a year of it. From all this I conclude that the author of the theory was a man entirely devoid of scientific education, and one of the foremost in the series of fools who simply invented those years for the benefit of people who worship the Great Bear and the pole. He had to invent a vast number of years, for the more outrageous it was, the more impression it would make.

CHAPTER XXXVI.

ON THE FOUR MEASURES OF TIME CALLED MÂNA.

Mâna and *pramâna* mean *measure*. The four kinds of measures are mentioned by Ya'ḳûb Ibn Ṭâriḳ in his book *Compositio Sphærarum*, but he did not know them thoroughly, and, besides, the names are misspelled, if this is not the fault of the copyists.

They are—

Saura-mâna, *i.e.* the solar measure.

Sâvana-mâna, *i.e.* the measure depending upon *the rising* (*civil* measure).

Candra-mâna, *i.e.* the lunar measure.

Nakshatra-mâna, *i.e.* the lunar-station measure (*sidereal* measure).

There are days of all four kinds of measure, days of an individual nature, which, when compared with other days, show a certain difference of measure. However, the number 360 is common to all of them (360 days of each class being a year). The civil days are used as a gauge to determine thereby the other days.

Measurement of the four different kinds of years and days.

As regards the *saura-mâna*, it is known that the solar year has $365\frac{827}{3200}$ civil days. Dividing this sum by 360, or multiplying it by 10 seconds ($= \frac{1}{360}$ day), you get as the measure of the *solar* day $1\frac{5609}{384,000}$ civil day.

Page 179.

According to the *Vishṇu-Dharma*, this is the time of the sun's passing his *bhukti*.

The *civil* day, based on the *sâvana-mâna*, is here used as the unit of a day, for the purpose of measuring thereby the other kinds of days.

The *lunar* day, based on the *candra mâna*, is called *tithi*. Dividing the lunar year by 360 or the lunar month by 30, you get as the measure of the *lunar* day $\frac{15,016,051}{11,558,320}$ civil days (*wrong*: read $\frac{10,519,443}{10,686,660}$ civil day).

According to the *Vishṇu-Dharma*, this is the time during which the moon is visible when she is far distant from the sun.

Nakshatra-mâna is the period of the moon's passing through her twenty-seven stations, viz. $27\frac{11,259}{35,002}$ days. This number is the quotient which you get by dividing the days of a *kalpa* by the number of the revolutions of the moon in a *kalpa*. Dividing it by 27, you get as the time of the moon's passing one station $1\frac{417}{35,002}$ civil days. Multiplying the same number by 12, as we have done with the lunar month, we get $327\frac{15,051}{17,501}$ civil days as the time of the moon's passing twelve times through all her stations. Dividing the first number by 30, we get as the measure of the sidereal day $\frac{318,771}{350,020}$ civil days.

According to the *Vishṇu-Dharma*, the sidereal month has only twenty-seven days, whilst the months of the other measures have thirty days; and if a year is composed of these days, it has $327\frac{15,051}{17,501}$ days (see above). Evidently there is a fault in the text of *Vishṇu-Dharma*, as the month is reckoned too short.

What use is made of the *saura-mâna*, *candra-mâna*, and *sâvana-mâna*.

The *saura-mâna* is used in the computation of the years which compose the *kalpa* and the four *yugas* in the *caturyugas*, of the years of the nativities, of the equinoxes and solstices, of the sixth parts of the year or the seasons, and of the difference between day and night in the nychthemeron. All these things are computed in solar years, months, and days.

The *candra-mâna* is used in the computation of the eleven *karaṇa* (v. chap. lxxviii.), in the determination of the leap month, in the computation of the sum of days of the *ûnarâtra* (v. chap. li.), and of new moon and full moon for lunar and solar eclipses (v. chap. lix.).

In all these things the Hindus use lunar years, months, and days, which are called *tithi*.

The *sâvana-mâna* is used in the calculation of the *vâra*, *i.e.* the days of the week, of the *ahargaṇa*, *i.e.* the sum of the days of an era (v. chap. li.); in determining the days of marriage and fasting (v. chap. lxxv.); the *sûtaka*, *i.e.* the days of childbed (v. chap. lxix.); the days of the uncleanness of the houses and the vessels of the dead (v. chap. lxxii.); the *cikitsâ*, *i.e.* certain months and years in which Hindu medical science prescribes the taking certain medicines; further in determining the *prâyaścitta*, *i.e.* the days of the expiations which the Brahmans make obligatory for those who have committed some sin, times during which they are obliged to fast and to besmear themselves with butter and dung (v. chap. lxxi.). All these things are determined according to *sâvana-mâna*.

On the contrary, they do not determine anything by the *nakshatra-mâna*, since it is comprehended in the *candra-mâna*.

Every measure of time which any class of people may choose by general consent to call a day, may be considered as a *mâna*. Some such days have already been mentioned in a preceding chapter (v. chap. xxxiii.). However, the four *mânas par excellence* are those to the explanation of which we have limited the present chapter.

CHAPTER XXXVII.

ON THE PARTS OF THE MONTH AND THE YEAR.

Uttarâyaṇa and dakshinâyana.

As the year is one revolution of the sun in the ecliptic, it is divided in the same way as the ecliptic. The latter is divided into two halves, depending upon the two solstitial points. Correspondingly the year is divided into two halves, each of which is called *ayana*.

Page 180.

When the sun leaves the point of the winter solstice, he begins to move towards the north pole. Therefore this part of the year, which is nearly one half, is referred to the north and called *uttarâyaṇa, i.e.* the period of the sun's marching through six zodiacal signs beginning with *Caper*. In consequence, this half of the ecliptic is called *makarâdi,* i.e. *having Caper as beginning.*

When the sun leaves the point of the summer solstice he begins to move towards the south pole; therefore this second half is referred to the south and called *dakshinâyana, i.e.* the period of the sun's marching through six zodiacal signs beginning with *Cancer*. In consequence, this half of the ecliptic is called *karkâdi,* i.e. *having Cancer as beginning.*

Uneducated people use only these two divisions or year-halves, because the matter of the two solstices is clear to them from the observation of their senses.

Uttarakûla and dakshakûla.

Further, the ecliptic is divided into two halves, according to its declination from the equator, and this division is a more scientific one, less known to the people at large than the former, because it rests on calculation and speculation. Each half is called *kûla*.

That which has northern declination is called *uttarakûla* or *meshâdi*, i.e. *having Aries as beginning;* that which has southern declination is called *dakshakûla* or *tulâdi*, i.e. *having Libra as beginning.*

The seasons.

Further, the ecliptic is by both these divisions divided into four parts, and the periods during which the sun traverses them are called the *seasons of the year*—spring, summer, autumn, and winter. Accordingly, the zodiacal signs are distributed over the seasons. However, the Hindus do not divide the year into four, but into six parts, and call these six parts *ṛitu*. Each *ṛitu* comprehends two solar months, *i.e.* the period of the sun's marching through two consecutive zodiacal signs. Their names and dominants are represented, according to the most widespread theory, in the following diagram.

I have been told that in the region of Somanâth people divide the year into three parts, each consisting of four months, the first being *varshakâla*, beginning with the month Âshâḍha; the second, *śîtakala*, *i.e.* the winter; and the third, *ushnakâla*, *i.e.* the summer.

Uttarâyana, belonging to the Devas or Angels.	The Zodiacal Signs of the Ritu.	Capricornus and Amphora.	Pisces and Aries.	Taurus and Gemini.
	Their name.	S'iśira.	Vasanta or Kusumâkara.	Grishma or Nidâgha.
	Their dominants.	Nârada.	Agni the Fire.	Indra the Ruler.

Scorpio and Sagittarius.	Virgo and Libra.	Cancer and Leo.	The Zodiacal Signs of the Ṛitu.	Dakshinâyana, belonging to the Pitaras or Fathers.
Hemanta.	S'arad.	Varshakâla.	Their names.	
Vaishṇava.	Prajâpati.	Viśvedevâḥ.	Their dominants.	

Page 181.

I am inclined to think that the Hindus divide the ecliptic by such an opening of the circle which divides the circumference of a circle into six parts, a measure which is equal to the radius, beginning with the two solstitial points, and that therefore they use sixth parts of the ecliptic. If this is really the case, we must not forget that we, too, sometimes divide the ecliptic, beginning with the two solstitial points, at other times beginning with the equinoctial points, and that we use the division of the ecliptic in twelfth parts side by side with that in fourth parts.

The dominants of the single halves of months.

The months are divided into halves from new moon to full moon, and from full moon to new moon. The *Vishṇu-Dharma* mentions the dominants of the halves of the months, as we give them in the following table:—

The Names of the months.	The dominants of the *Bright* half of each month.	The dominants of the *Black* half of each month.
Caitra	Twashṭri	Yâmya.
Vaiśâkha	Indrâgnî	Âgneya.
Jyaishṭha	Śukra	Raudra.
Âshâḍha	Viśvedevâḥ	Sârpa.
Śrâvaṇa	Vishṇu	Pitrya.
Bhâdrapada	Âja	Sânta.
Âśvayuja	Âśana (?)	Maitra.
Kârttika	Agni	Śakra.
Mârgaśîrsha	Saumya	Nirṛiti.
Pausha	Jîva	Vishṇu.
Mâgha	Pitrya	Varuṇa.
Phâlguna	Bhaga	Pûshan.

CHAPTER XXXVIII.

ON THE VARIOUS MEASURES OF TIME COMPOSED OF DAYS, THE LIFE OF BRAHMAN INCLUDED.

Page 182.

Recapitulation of the single measures of time.

THE day is called *dimas* (*dimasu*), in classical language *divasa*, the night *râtrî*, and the nychthemeron *ahorâtra*. The month is called *mâsa* and its half *paksha*. The first or *white* half is called *śuklapaksha*, because the first parts of its nights have moonlight at times when people do not yet sleep, when the light on the moon's body increases and the dark portion decreases. The other or *black* half is called *kṛishṇapaksha*, because the first parts of its nights are moonless, whilst other parts have moonlight, but only then when people sleep. They are the nights when the light on the body of the moon wanes, whilst the dark part increases.

The sum of two months is a *ṛitu*, but this is only an approximative definition, for the month which has two *paksha* is a lunar month, whilst that one the double of which is a *ṛitu* is a solar month.

Six *ṛitu* are a year of mankind, a solar year, which is called *barh* or *barkh* or *barsh*, the three sounds *h*, *kh*, and *sh* being much confounded in the mouth of the Hindus (Skr. *varsha*).

Three hundred and sixty years of mankind are one year of the angels, called *dibba-barh* (*divya-varsha*), and 12,000 years of the angels are unanimously reckoned as one *caturyuga*. There is a difference of opinion only regarding the four parts of the *caturyuga* and regarding the multiplications of it which form a *manvantara* and a *kalpa*. This subject will be fully explained in the proper place (v. chaps. xli. and xliv.).

Two *kalpas* are a day of Brahman. It is the same if we say two *kalpas* or 28 *manvantaras*, for 360 days of Brahman are a year of Brahman, *i.e.* 720 *kalpas* or 10,080 *manvantaras*.

Further, they say that the life of Brahman is 100 of his years, *i.e.* 72,000 *kalpas* or 1,008,000 *manvantaras*.

In the present book we do not go beyond this limit. The book *Vishṇu-Dharma* has a tradition from Mârkaṇḍeya, who answers a question of Vajra in these words: "*Kalpa* is the day of Brahman, and the same is a night of his. Therefore 720 *kalpas* are a year of his, and his life has 100 such years. These 100 years are one day of Purusha, and the same is a night of his. How many Brahmans, however, have already preceded Purusha, none knows but he who can count the sand of the Ganges or the drops of the rain."

CHAPTER XXXIX.

ON MEASURES OF TIME WHICH ARE LARGER THAN THE LIFE OF BRAHMAN.

Want of system regarding the greatest measures of time.

ALL that is devoid of order or contradicts the rules laid down in the preceding parts of this book is repulsive to our nature and disagreeable to our ear. But the Hindus are people who mention a number of names, all—as they maintain—referring to the One, the First, or to some one behind him who is only hinted at. When they come to a chapter like this, they repeat the same names as denoting a multitude of beings, measuring out lives for them and inventing huge numbers, The latter is all they want; they indulge in it most freely, and numbers are patient, standing as you place them. Besides, there is not a single subject on which the Hindus themselves agree among each other, and this prevents us on our part adopting the use of it. On the contrary, they disagree on these imaginary measures of time to the same extent as on the divisions of the day which are less than a *prâṇa* (v. chap. xxxiv.).

Page 183. The greatest measures of time determined by *kalpas*.

The book *Srúdhava* by Utpala says that "a *manvantara* is the life of Indra the ruler, and 28 *manvantaras* are one day of Pitâmaha, *i.e.* Brahman. His life is 100 years, or one day of Keśava. The life of the latter is 100 years, or one day of Mahâdeva. The life of the latter is 100 years, or one day of Îśvara, who is near to the Supreme Being. His life is 100 years, or one day of Sadâśiva. The life of the latter is 100 years, or one day of Virañcana, the Eternal, who will last for ever, even when the preceding five beings perish."

We have already mentioned that the life of Brahman is as long as 72,000 *kalpas*. All numbers which we shall here mention are *kalpas*.

If the life of Brahman is a day of Keśava, his year, consisting of three hundred and sixty days, has 25,920,000 *kalpas*; and his life, 2,592,000,000 *kalpas*. The latter is 1 day of Mahâdeva; his life, therefore, 93,312,000,000,000 *kalpas*. The latter is 1 day of Îśvara; therefore his life 3,359,232,000,000,000,000 *kalpas*. The latter is 1 day of Sadâśiva; therefore his life 120,932,352,000,000,000,000,000 *kalpas*. The latter is one day of Virañcana, of which the *parârdhakalpa* is only relatively a very small part (v. p. 175).

The same determined by *trutis*.

Whatever may be the nature of these calculations, apparently the day and the *centennium* are the elements out of which the whole from beginning to end has been constructed. Others, however, build their system on the small particles of the day which we have previously mentioned (in chap. xxxiv.). In consequence, these people differ among themselves regarding that which they compose, as they differ regarding the particles out of which they compose. We shall here give one system of this kind as invented by those who use the following metrologic system:—

1 *ghaṭi* = 16 *kalâ*.
1 *kalâ* = 30 *kâshṭhâ*.
1 *kâshṭhâ* = 30 *nimesha*.
1 *nimesha* = 2 *lava*.
1 *lava* = 2 *truṭi*.

The reason of this division is, as they maintain, the fact that the day of Śiva is composed out of similar particles; for the life of Brahman is one *ghaṭî* of Hari, *i.e.* Vâsudeva. The life of the latter is 100 years, or one *kalâ* of Rudra, *i.e.* Mahâdeva; the life of the latter is 100 years, or one *kâshṭhâ* of Îśvara; the life of the latter is 100 years, or one *nimesha* of Sadâśiva; the life of the latter is 100 years, or one *lava* of Śakti; the life of the latter is 100 years, or one *truṭi* of Śiva.

If, now, the life of Brahman is
72,000 *kalpas*,
the life of Nârâyaṇa is
155,520,000,000 *kalpas*;
the life of Rudra,
5,374,771,200,000,000,000;
the life of Îśvara,
5,572,562,780,160,000,000,000,000,000;
the life of Sadâśiva,
173,328,992,714,096,640,000,000,000,000,000,000,000;
the life of Śakti,
10,782,449,978,758,523,781,120,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000.
The latter number represents one *truṭi*.

If you compose a day out of it according to the above-mentioned system, it has 37,264,147,126,589,458,187, 550,720,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000,000 *kalpas*. The latter number is one day of Śiva, whom they describe as the eternal one, who is exempt from being procreated and from procreating, free from all qualities and attributes which may be applied to created things. The last-mentioned number represents fifty-six orders of number (*i.e.* units, tens, hundreds, thousands, &c. &c.); but if those dreamers had more assiduously studied arithmetic, they would not have invented such outrageous numbers. God takes care that their trees do not grow into heaven.

CHAPTER XL.

ON THE SAṀDHI, THE INTERVAL BETWEEN TWO PERIODS OF TIME, FORMING THE CONNECTING LINK BETWEEN THEM.

Page 184. **Explanation of the two *saṁdhis*.**

THE original *saṁdhi* is the interval between day and night, *i.e.* morning-dawn, called *saṁdhi udaya, i.e.* the *saṁdhi* of the rising, and evening dawn, called *saṁdhi astamana, i.e.* the *saṁdhi* of the setting. The Hindus require them for a religious reason, for the Brahmans wash themselves during them, and also at noon in the midst between them for dinner, whence an uninitiated person might infer that there is still a third *saṁdhi*. However, none who knows the subject properly will count more than two *saṁdhis*.

The Purâṇas relate the following story of King Hiraṇyakaśipu, of the class of the Daitya :—

Story of King Hiraṇyakaśipu and his son Prahlâda.

By practising devotion for a long period, he had earned the claim that any prayer of his should be granted. He asked for *eternal* life, but only *long* life was granted to him, for eternity is a quality of the Creator alone. Not having obtained the realisation of this wish, he desired that his death should not be effected by the hand of a human being, angel, or demon, and that it should not take place on earth nor in heaven, neither in the night nor in the day. By such clauses he meant to avoid death, which is unavoidable by man. His wish was granted to him.

This wish reminds one of the wish of the devil that he should be allowed to live till the day of resurrection, because on that day all beings would rise from death. However, he did not attain his object, as it was only conceded to him to live till the day of the well-known time, of which it has been said that it is the last of the days of trouble.

The king had a son called Prahlâda, whom he intrusted to a teacher when he grew up. One day the king ordered him into his presence to learn what he was studying. Now the boy recited to him a poem, the meaning of which was that only Vishṇu exists, whilst everything else is illusion. This went much against the opinions of his father, who hated Vishṇu, and therefore he ordered the boy to be intrusted to another master, and that he should learn to distinguish a friend from an enemy. Thereupon he waited a certain time, and then examined him again, when the boy answered, "I have learned what you have ordered, but I do not want it, for I am in friendship alike with everything, not in enmity with anything." Now his father became angry and ordered him to be poisoned. The boy took the poison in the name of God and thought of Vishṇu, and lo! it did not hurt him. His father said, "Do you know witchcraft and incantations?" The boy answered, "No, but the God who has created me and given me to thee watches over me." Now the wrath of the king increased, and he gave orders to throw him into the deep sea. But the sea threw him out again, and he returned to his place. Then he was thrown before the king into a huge blazing fire, but it did not hurt him. Standing in the flame, he began to converse with his father on God and his power. When the boy by chance said that Vishṇu is in every place, his father said, "Is he also in this column of the portico?" The boy said, "Yes." Then his father jumped against the column and beat it, whereupon Narasiṁha came forth from it, a human figure with a lion's head, therefore neither a human being, nor an angel, nor a demon. Now the king and his people began to fight with Narasiṁha, who let them do so, for it was daytime. But when it was towards evening and they were in the *saṁdhi* or twilight, therefore neither in the day nor in the night, then Narasiṁha caught the king, raised him into the air, and killed him there; therefore not on earth nor in heaven. The prince was taken out of the fire and ruled in his place.

Saṁdhi **used in astrology. Varâhamihira quoted.**

Hindu astrologers require the two *saṁdhi*, because then some of the zodiacal signs exercise the most powerful influence, as we shall explain hereafter in the proper place. They make use of them in a rather superficial way, simply reckoning the time of each *saṁdhi* as one *muhûrta* = two *ghaṭî* = 48 minutes. However, Varâhamihira, excellent astronomer as he is, always only used day and night, and did not allow himself to follow the opinion of the crowd regarding the *saṁdhi*. He explained the *saṁdhi* as that which it really is, viz. as the moment when the centre of the body of the sun stands exactly over the horizontal circle, and this moment he establishes to be the time of the greatest power of certain zodiacal signs.

Page 185.

On the *saṁdhi* of the year-half and its combination with the precession of the equinoxes. Other kinds of *saṁdhi*.

Besides the two *saṁdhi* of the natural day, astronomers and other people assume still other *saṁdhis*, which do not rest on a law of nature nor on observation, but simply on some hypothesis. So they attribute a *saṁdhi* to each *ayana*, *i.e.* to each of the year-halves in which the sun ascends and descends (v. chap. xxxvii.), a *saṁdhi* of seven days before its real beginning. On this subject I have an idea which is certainly possible, and even rather likely, viz. that this theory is of recent origin, not of ancient date, and that it has been brought forward about 1300 of Alexander (= A.D. 989), when the Hindus found out that the real solstice precedes the solstice of their calculation. For Puñjala, the author of the *Small Mânasa*, says that in the year 854 of the Sakakâla the real solstice preceded his calculation by 6° 50′, and that this difference will increase in future by one minute every year.

These are the words of a man who either was himself a most careful practical observer, or who examined the observations of former astronomers which he had at his disposal, and thereby found out the amount of the annual difference. No doubt, also, other people have perceived the same or a similar difference by means of the calculation of the noon-shadows. Therefore (as this observation was already much known) Utpala of Kashmîr has taken this theory from Puñjala.

This conjecture of mine is confirmed by the fact that the Hindus prefix the *saṁdhis* of the solstices to each of the six seasons of the year, in consequence of which they begin already with the twenty-third degree of the next preceding signs.

The Hindus assume a *saṁdhi*, too, between the different *yugas* and between the *manvantaras;* but as the bases of this theory are hypothetical, so everything else derived from them is hypothetical. We shall give a sufficient explanation of these things in the proper place.

CHAPTER XLI.

DEFINITION OF THE TERMS "KALPA" AND "CATURYUGA," AND AN EXPLICATION OF THE ONE BY THE OTHER.

On the measure of a *caturyuga* and a *kalpa*.

TWELVE thousand Divya-years, the length of which has already been explained (v. chap. xxxv.), are one *caturyuga*, and 1000 *caturyugas* are one *kalpa*, a period at the beginning and end of which there is a conjunction of the seven planets and their apsides and nodes in 0° of Aries. The days of the *kalpa* are called the *kalpa-ahargaṇa*, for *âh* means *day*, and *argana* means *the sum*. Since they are *civil days* derived from the *rising* of the sun, they are also called *days of the earth*, for *rising* presupposes an horizon, and an horizon is one of the necessary attributes of the earth.

By the same name, *kalpa-ahargaṇa*, people also call the sum of days of any era up to a certain date.

Our Muslim authors call the days of the kalpa *the days of the Sind-hind* or *the days of the world*, counting them as 1,577,916,450,000 days (*sâvana* or civil days), or 4,320,000,000 solar years, or 4,452,775,000 lunar years. The same sum of days converted into years of 360 civil days is equal to 4,383,101,250 of them, and to 12,000,000 *divya-years*.

The Âditya-Purâṇa says: "*Kalpana* is composed of *kal*, which means the existence of the species in the world, and *pana*, which means their destruction and disappearance. The sum of this existing and perishing is a *kalpa*."

Brahmagupta says: "Since the planets and mankind in the world came into existence at the beginning of the day of Brahman, and since they both perish at the end of it, we must adopt this day of their existence as a *kalpa*, not another period."

Page 186.

In another place he says: "A thousand *caturyuga* are one day of *Devaka, i.e.* Brahman, and a night of his is of the same length. Therefore his day is equal to 2000 *caturyuga*.

In the same way Vyâsa the son of Parâśara says: "He who believes that 1000 *caturyugas* are a day and 1000 *caturyugas* a night, knows Brahman."

Relation between *manvantara* and *kalpa*.

Within the space of a *kalpa* 71 *caturyugas* are equal to 1 *manu*, i.e. *manvantara*, or Manu-period, and 14 *manus* are equal to 1 *kalpa*. Multiplying 71 by 14, you get 994 *caturyugas* as the period of 14 *manvantaras*, and a remainder of 6 *caturyugas* till the end of the *kalpa*.

If we, however, divide these 6 *caturyugas* by 15, in order to find the *saṁdhi* both at the beginning and end of each of the 14 *manvantaras*, the number of the *saṁdhis* being by 1 larger than that of the *manvantaras*, the quotient is $\frac{2}{5}$ths. If we now insert $\frac{2}{5}$ *caturyuga* between each two consecutive *manvantaras*, and add the same amount both at the beginning of the first and the end of the last *manvantaras*, the fraction of $\frac{2}{5}$ disappears at the end of 15 *manvantaras* ($\frac{2}{5} \times 15 = 6$). The fractions at the beginning and end of the *kalpa* represent the *saṁdhi, i.e.* a common link. A *kalpa*, including its *saṁdhi*, has 1000 *caturyugas*, as we have said in the first part of this chapter.

Conditions of the beginning of a *kalpa*.

The single parts of a *kalpa* stand in a constant relation to each other, one bearing witness regarding the other. For it commences with the vernal equinox, a Sunday, the conjunction of the planets, their apsides and nodes, which takes place there where there is neither Revatî nor Aśvinî, *i.e.* between them, at the beginning of the month Caitra, and in the moment of the sun's rising over Laṅkâ. When there occurs an irregularity with one of these conditions, all the others become confused and are no longer valid.

We have already mentioned the number of the days and the years of a *kalpa*. Accordingly a *caturyuga*, as $\frac{1}{1000}$th of a *kalpa*, has 1,577,916,450 days and 4,320,000 years. The numbers show the relation between a *kalpa* and a *caturyuga*, and show further how to determine the one by the other.

All we have said in this chapter rests on the theory of Brahmagupta and on the arguments by which he supports it.

Theories of Aryabhaṭa the elder, Pulisa, and Âryabhaṭa the younger.

Âryabhaṭa the elder and Pulisa compose the *manvantara* from 72 *caturyugas*, and the *kalpa* from 14 *manvantaras*, without inserting anywhere a *saṁdhi*. Therefore, according to them, a *kalpa* has 1008 *caturyugas*; further, 12,096,000 *divya years*, or 4,354,560,000 human years.

According to Pulisa, a *caturyuga* has 1,577,917,800 *civil* days. According to him, therefore, the sum of the days of a *kalpa* would be 1,590,541,142,400. These are the numbers which he uses in his book.

I have not been able to find anything of the books of Âryabhaṭa. All I know of him I know through the quotations from him given by Brahmagupta. The latter says in a treatise called *Critical Research on the Basis of the Canons*, that according to Âryabhaṭa the sum of the days of a *caturyuga* is 1,577,917,500, *i.e.* 300 days less than according to Pulisa. Therefore Âryabhaṭa would give to a *kalpa* 1,590,540,840,000 days.

According to Âryabhaṭa and Pulisa, the *kalpa* and *caturyuga* begin with midnight which follows after the day the beginning of which is the beginning of the *kalpa*, according to Brahmagupta.

Âryabhaṭa of Kusumapura, who belongs to the school of the elder Âryabhaṭa, says in a small book of his on
Page 187. *Al-ntf* (?), that "1008 *caturyugas* are one day of Brah-

man. The first half of 504 *caturyugas* is called *utsarpiṇī*, during which the sun is ascending, and the second half is called *avasarpiṇī*, during which the sun is descending. The midst of this period is called *sama*, *i.e.* equality, for it is the midst of the day, and the two ends are called *durtama* (?)."

This is so far correct, as the comparison between day and *kalpa* goes, but the remark about the sun's ascending and descending is not correct. If he meant the sun who makes *our* day, it was his duty to explain of what kind that ascending and descending of the sun is; but if he meant a sun who specially belongs to the day of Brahman, it was his duty to show or to describe him to us. I almost think that the author meant by these two expressions the progressive, increasing development of things during the first half of this period, and the retrograde, decreasing development in the second half.

CHAPTER XLII.

ON THE DIVISION OF THE CATURYUGA INTO YUGAS, AND THE DIFFERENT OPINIONS REGARDING THE LATTER.

The single parts of a *caturyuga* according to *Vishṇu-Dharma* and Brahmagupta.

THE author of the *Vishṇu-Dharma* says: "Twelve hundred *divya years* are one *yuga*, called *tishya*. The double of it is a *dvâpara*, the triple a *tretâ*, the quadruple a *kṛita*, and all four *yugas* together are one *caturyuga*, *i.e.* the four *yugas* or *sums*.

"Seventy-one *caturyugas* are one *manvantara*, and 14 *manvantaras*, together with a *saṁdhi* of the duration of one *kṛitayuga* between each two of them, are one *kalpa*. Two *kalpas* are a nychthemeron of Brahman, and his life is a hundred years, or one day of Purusha, the first man, of whom neither beginning nor end is known."

This is what Varuṇa, the lord of the water, communicated to Râma, the son of Daśaratha, in primeval times, since he knew these things thoroughly. The same information has also been given by Bhârgava, *i.e.* Mârkaṇḍeya, who had such a perfect knowledge of time that he easily mastered every number. He is to the Hindus like the angel of death, who kills them with his seat, being *aprati-dhṛishya* (irresistible).

Brahmagupta says: "The book *Smṛiti* mentions that 4000 *devaka years* are one *kṛitayuga*, but together with a *saṁdhi* of 400 years and a *saṁdhyâṁśa* of 400 years, a *kṛitayuga* has 4800 *devaka years*.

"Three thousand years are one *tretâyuga*, but together with a *saṁdhi* and a *saṁdhyâṁśa*, each of 300 years, a *tretâyuga* has 3600 years.

"Two thousand years are a *dvâpara*, but together with a *saṁdhi* and a *saṁdhyâṁśa*, each of 200 years, a *dvâpara* has 2400 years.

"A thousand years are one *kali*, but together with a *saṁdhi* and a *saṁdhyâṁśa*, each of 100 years, a *kaliyuga* has 1200 years."

This is what Brahmagupta quotes from the book *Smṛiti*.

Duration of the single *yugas*.

"*Divya years* are changed into human years by being multiplied by 360. Accordingly the four *yugas* have the following sums of human years:—

A *kṛitayuga* has	1,440,000 years,		
besides	144,000	,,	*saṁdhi*,
and	144,000	,,	*saṁdhyâṁśa*.
Sum total	1,728,000 years = one *kṛitayuga*.		
A *tretâyuga* has	1,080,000 years,		
besides	108,000	,,	*saṁdhi*,
and	108,000	,,	*saṁdhyâṁśa*.
Sum total	1,296,000 years = one *tretâyuga*.		
A *dvâpara* has	720,000 years,		
besides	72,000	,,	*saṁdhi*,
and	72,000	,,	*saṁdhyâṁśa*.
Sum total	864,000 years = one *dvâpara*.		
A *kali* has	360,000 years,		
besides	36,000	,,	*saṁdhi*,
and	36,000	,,	*saṁdhyâṁśa*.
Sum total	432,000 years = one *kaliyuga*.		

Page 188.

"The sum of the *kṛita* and *tretâ* is 3,024,000 years, and the sum of the *kṛita*, *tretâ*, and *dvâpara* is 3,888,000 years."

Âryabhaṭa and Paulisa quoted by Brahmagupta.

Further, Brahmagupta says that "Âryabhaṭa considers the four *yugas* as the four equal parts of a *caturyuga*. Thus he differs from the doctrine of the book *Smṛiti*, just mentioned, and he who differs from us is an opponent." On the other hand, Brahmagupta praises Paulisa for what he does, since he does not differ from the book *Smṛiti*; for he subtracts 1200 from the 4800 years of the *kṛitayuga*, and diminishes the remainder still more and more, so as to get *yugas* which correspond with those of the *Smṛiti*, but *yugas* without *saṁdhi* and *saṁdhyâṁśa*. As regards the Greeks, we may notice that they have nothing like the tradition of the *Smṛiti*, for they do not measure time by *yugas*, *manvantaras*, or *kalpas*.

So far the quotation from Brahmagupta.

As is well known, there is no difference of opinion on the sum of the years of a complete *caturyuga*. Therefore, according to Âryabhaṭa, the *kaliyuga* has 3000 *divya* years or 1,080,000 human years. Each two *yugas* has 6000 *divya* years or 2,160,000 human years. Each three *yugas* has 9000 *divya* years or 3,240,000 human years.

The rule of Paulisa.

There is a tradition that Paulisa in his *Siddhânta* specifies various new rules for the computation of these numbers, some of which may be accepted, whilst others are to be rejected. So in the rule for the computation of the *yugas* he puts 48 as the basis and subtracts one-fourth of it, so as to get 36. Then he again subtracts 12, for this number is his *basis* of subtraction, so as to get 24, and subtracting the same number a third time, he gets 12. These 12 he multiplies by 100, and the product represents the number of *divya* years of the *yugas*.

Criticism thereon.

If he had made the number 60 the basis, for most things may be determined by it, and had made one-fifth of it the basis of subtraction, or if he had subtracted from 60 consecutive fractions of the remaining number, first $\frac{1}{5} = 12$, from the remainder $\frac{1}{4} = 12$, from the remainder $\frac{1}{3} = 12$, and from the remainder $\frac{1}{2} = 12$, he would have obtained the same result which he has found by his method ($60 - \frac{1}{6} = 48, - \frac{1}{4} = 36, - \frac{1}{3} = 24, - \frac{1}{2} = 12$).

It is possible that Paulisa simply mentions this method as one among others, and that it is not that one in particular which he himself adopted. A translation of his whole work into Arabic has not hitherto yet been undertaken, because in his mathematical problems there is an evident religious and theological tendency.

Pulisa calculates how much of the life of Brahman has elapsed before the present *kalpa*.

Pulisa deviates from the rule which he himself gives when he wants to compute how many of our years have elapsed of the life of Brahman before the present *kalpa*. Up to the time of his writing, eight years five months and four days of a new *kalpa* had elapsed. He counts 6068 *kalpas*. As, according to him, a *kalpa* has 1008 *caturyugas*, he multiplies this number by 1008 and gets 6,116,544 *caturyugas*. These he changes into *yugas* by multiplying them by 4, and he gets 24,466,176 *yugas*. As a *yuga*, according to him, has 1,080,000 years, he multiplies the number of *yugas* by 1,080,000, and gets as the product 26,423,470,080,000, *i.e.* the number of years which have elapsed of the life of Brahman before the present *kalpa*. Page 189.

Criticisms on this calculation.

Perhaps it will seem strange to the followers of Brahmagupta that he (Pulisa) has not changed the *caturyugas* into exact *yugas*, but simply changed them into fourth parts (by dividing them by 4), and multiplied these fourth parts by the number of years of a single fourth part.

Now, we do not ask him what is the use of representing the *caturyugas* as fourth parts, inasmuch as they have no fraction which, in this manner, must be reduced to wholes. The multiplication of the whole *caturyugas* by the years of one complete *caturyuga*, *i.e.* 4,320,000, would have been sufficiently lengthy. We, however, say that he would be correct in doing so if he had not been influenced by the wish of bringing the elapsed years of the present *kalpa* into relation with the last-mentioned number, and multiplied the complete elapsed *manvantaras* by 72 in agreement with his theory; further, if he had not multiplied the product by the years of a *caturyuga*, which gives the product of 1,866,240,000 years, and, moreover, had not multiplied the number of the complete *caturyugas* which have elapsed of the current *manvantara* by the years of a single *caturyuga*, which gives the product of 116,640,000 years. Of the current *caturyuga* there have elapsed three *yugas*, *i.e.* according to him, 3,240,000 years. The latter number represents three-fourths of the years of a *caturyuga*. He uses the same number when computing the week-day of a date by means of the number of the days of the here-mentioned number of years. If he believed in the above-mentioned rule, he would use it where it is required, and he would reckon the three *yugas* as nine-tenths of a *caturyuga*.

Brahmagupta's harsh criticisms on Aryabhaṭa.

Now, it is evident that that which Brahmagupta relates on his authority, and with which he himself agrees, is entirely unfounded; but he is blind to this from sheer hatred of Âryabhaṭa, whom he abuses excessively. And in this respect Âryabhaṭa and Pulisa are the same to him. I take for witness the passage of Brahmagupta where he says that Âryabhaṭa has subtracted something from the cycles of the *Caput Draconis* and of the *apsis* of the moon, and thereby rendered confused the computation of the eclipse. He is rude enough to compare Âryabhaṭa to a worm which, eating the wood, by chance describes certain characters in it, without understanding them and without intending to draw them. "He, however, who knows these things thoroughly stands opposite to Âryabhaṭa, Śrîshena, and Vishṇucandra like the lion against gazelles. They are not capable of letting him see their faces." In such offensive terms he attacks Âryabhaṭa and maltreats him.

Different lengths of the solar year.

We have already mentioned (v. chap. xli.) how many civil days (*sâvana*) a *caturyuga* has according to the three scholars. Pulisa gives it 1350 days more than Brahmagupta, but the number of years of a *caturyuga* is the same according to both. Therefore, evidently Pulisa gives the solar year more days than Brahmagupta. To judge from the report of Brahmagupta, Âryabhaṭa gives a *caturyuga* 300 days less than Pulisa, and 1050 more than Brahmagupta. Accordingly, Âryabhata must reckon the solar year longer than Brahmagupta and shorter than Pulisa.

CHAPTER XLIII.

A DESCRIPTION OF THE FOUR YUGAS, AND OF ALL THAT IS EXPECTED TO TAKE PLACE AT THE END OF THE FOURTH YUGA.

THE ancient Greeks held regarding the earth various opinions, of which we shall relate one for the sake of an example.

On natural cataclysms.

Page 190.

The disasters which from time to time befal the earth, both from above and from below, differ in quality and quantity. Frequently it has experienced one so incommensurable in quality or in quantity, or in both together, that there was no remedy against it, and that no flight or caution was of any avail. The catastrophe comes on like a deluge or an earthquake, bringing destruction either by the breaking in of the surface, or by drowning with water which breaks forth, or by burning with hot stones and ashes that are thrown out, by thunderstorms, by landslips, and typhoons; further, by contagious and other diseases, by pestilence, and more of the like. Thereby a large region is stripped of its inhabitants; but when after a while, after the disaster and its consequences have passed away, the country begins to recover and to show new signs of life, then different people flock there together like wild animals, who formerly were dwelling in hiding-holes and on the tops of the mountains. They become civilised by assisting each other against common foes, wild beasts or men, and furthering each other in the hope for a life in safety and joy. Thus they increase to great numbers; but then ambition, circling round them with the wings of wrath and envy, begins to disturb the serene bliss of their life.

Sometimes a nation of such a kind derives its pedigree from a person who first settled in the place or distinguished himself by something or other, so that he alone continues to live in the recollection of the succeeding generations, whilst all others beside him are forgotten. Plato mentions in the *Book of Laws* Zeus, *i.e.* Jupiter, as the forefather of the Greeks, and to Zeus is traced back the pedigree of Hippocrates, which is mentioned in the last chapters added at the end of the book. We must, however, observe that the pedigree contains only very few generations, not more than fourteen. It is the following:—Hippokrates—Gnosidikos—Nebros—Sostratos — Theodoros — Kleomyttades — Krisamis — Dardanas—Sostratos—ابلوسوس (?)—Hippolochos—Podaleirios — Machaon—Asclepios—Apollo—Zeus—Kronos, *i.e.* Saturn.

Pedigree of Hippocrates.

Hindu notions regarding the four ages or *yugas*.

The Hindus have similar traditions regarding the Caturyuga, for according to them, at the beginning of it, *i.e.* at the beginning of Kṛitayuga, there was happiness and safety, fertility and abundance, health and force, ample knowledge and a great number of Brahmans. The good is complete in this age, like four-fourths of a whole, and life lasted 4000 years alike for all beings during this whole space of time.

Thereupon things began to decrease and to be mixed with opposite elements to such a degree, that at the beginning of Tretâyuga the good was thrice as much as the invading bad, and that bliss was three-quarters of the whole. There were a greater number of Kshatriyas than of Brahmans, and life had the same length as in the preceding age. So it is represented by the *Vishṇu-Dharma*, whilst analogy requires that it should be shorter by the same amount than bliss is smaller, *i.e.* by one-fourth. In this age, when offering to the fire, they begin to kill animals and to tear off plants, practices which before were unknown.

Thus the evil increases till, at the beginning of Dvâpara, evil and good exist in equal proportions, and likewise bliss and misfortune. The climates begin to differ, there is much killing going on, and the religions become different. Life becomes shorter, and lasts only 400 years, according to the *Vishṇu-Dharma*. At the beginning of Tishya, *i.e.* Kaliyuga, evil is thrice as much as the remaining good.

The Hindus have several well-known traditions of events which are said to have occurred in the Tretâ and Dvâpara *yugas*, *e.g.* the story of Râma, who killed Ravaṇa; that of Paraśurâma the Brahman, who killed every Kshatriya he laid hold upon, revenging on them the death of his father. They think that he lives in heaven, that he has already twenty-one times appeared on earth, and that he will again appear. Further, the story of the war of the children of Pâṇḍu with those of Kuru. Page 191

In the Kaliyuga evil increases, till at last it results in the destruction of all good. At that time the inhabitants of the earth perish, and a new race rises out of those who are scattered through the mountains and hide themselves in caves, uniting for the purpose of worshipping and flying from the horrid, demoniac human race. Therefore this age is called *Kritayuga*, which means "Being ready for going away after having finished the work."

Description of the Kaliyuga.

In the story of Śaunaka which Venus received from Brahman, God speaks to him in the following words: "When the Kaliyuga comes, I send Buddhodana, the son of Śuddhodana the pious, to spread the good in the creation. But then the *Muḥammira*, *i.e.* the red-wearing ones, who derive their origin from him, will change everything that he has brought, and the dignity of the Brahmans will be gone to such a degree that a Śûdra, their servant, will be impudent towards them, and that a Śûdra and Caṇḍâla will share with them the presents and offerings. Men will entirely be occupied with gathering wealth by crimes, with hoarding up, not refraining from committing horrid and sinful crimes. All this will result in a rebellion of the small ones against the great ones, of the children against their parents, of the servants against their masters. The castes will be in uproar against each other, the genealogies will become confused, the four castes will be abolished, and there will be many religions and sects. Many books will be composed, and the communities which formerly were united will on account of them be dissolved into single individuals. The temples will be destroyed and the schools will lie waste. Justice will be gone, and the kings will not know anything but oppression and spoliation, robbing and destroying, as if they wanted to devour the people, foolishly indulging in far-reaching hopes, and not considering how short life is in comparison with the sins (for which they have to atone). The more the mind of people is depraved, the more will pestilential diseases be prevalent. Lastly, people maintain that most of the astrological rules obtained in that age are void and false.

Saying of Mânî.

These ideas have been adopted by Mânî, for he says: "Know ye that the affairs of the world have been changed and altered; also priesthood has been changed since the σφαῖραι of heaven, *i.e.* the spheres, have been changed, and the priest can no longer acquire such a knowledge of the stars in the circle of a sphere as their fathers were able to acquire. They lead mankind astray by fraud. What they prophesy may by chance happen, but frequently it does not happen."

Description of the Kṛitayuga according to *Vishṇu-Dharma*.

The description of these things in the *Vishṇu-Dharma* is much more copious than we have given it. People will be ignorant of what is reward and punishment; they will deny that the angels have absolute knowledge. Their lives will be of different length, and none of them will know how long it is. The one will die as an embryo, the other as a baby or child. The pious will be torn away and will not have a long life, but he who does evil and denies religion will live longer. Śûdras will be kings, and will be like rapacious wolves, robbing the others of all that pleases them. The doings of the Brahmans will be of the same kind, but the majority will be Śûdras and brigands. The laws of the Brahmans will be abolished. People will point with their fingers at those who worry themselves with the practice of frugality and poverty as a curiosity, will despise them, and will wonder at a man worshipping Vishṇu; for all of them have become of the same (wicked) character. Therefore any wish will soon be granted, little merit receive great reward, and honour and dignity be obtained by little worship and service. Page 192.

But finally, at the end of the *yuga*, when the evil will have reached its highest pitch, there will come forward Garga, the son of J-Ś-V (?) the Brahman, *i.e.* Kali, after whom this *yuga* is called, gifted with an irresistible force, and more skilled in the use of any weapon than any other. Then he draws his sword to make good all that has become bad; he cleans the surface of the earth of the impurity of people and clears the earth of them. He collects the pure and pious ones for the purpose of procreation. Then the Kṛitayuga lies far behind them, and the time and the world return to purity, and to absolute good and to bliss.

This is the nature of the *yugas* as they circle round through the Caturyuga.

The origin of medicine according to the book *Caraka*.

The book *Caraka*, as quoted by 'Alî Ibn Zain of Ṭabaristan, says: "In primeval times the earth was always fertile and healthy, and the elements or *mahâbhûta* were equally mixed. Men lived with each other in harmony and love, without any lust and ambition, hatred and envy, without anything that makes soul and body ill. But then came envy, and lust followed.

Driven by lust, they strove to hoard up, which was difficult to some, easy to others. All kinds of thoughts, labours, and cares followed, and resulted in war, deceit, and lying. The hearts of men were hardened, the natures were altered and became exposed to diseases, which seized hold of men and made them neglect the worship of God and the furtherance of science. Ignorance became deeply rooted, and the calamity became great. Then the pious met before their anchorite Kṛiśa (?) the son of Âtreya, and deliberated; whereupon the sage ascended the mountain and threw himself on the earth. Thereafter God taught him the science of medicine."

Quotation from Aratus.

All this much resembles the traditions of the Greeks, which we have related (in another place). For Aratus says in his Φαινόμενα, and in his intimations referring to the seventh zodiacal sign: "Look under the feet of the Herdsman, *i.e. Al'awwâ,* among the northern figures, and you see the Virgin coming with a blooming ear of corn in her hand, *i.e. Alsimâk Al'a'zal.* She belongs either to the star-race, which are said to be the forefathers of the ancient stars, or she was procreated by another race which we do not know. People say that in primeval times she lived among mankind, but only among women, not visible to men, being called *Justice.* She used to unite the aged men and those who stood in the market-places and in the streets, and exhorted them with a loud voice to adhere to the truth. She presented mankind with innumerable wealth and bestowed rights upon them. At that time the earth was called *golden.* None of its inhabitants knew pernicious hypocrisy in deed or word, and there was no objectionable schism among them. They lived a quiet life, and did not yet navigate the sea in ships. The cows afforded the necessary sustenance.

"Afterwards, when the golden race had expired and the silver race come on, Virgo mixed with them, but without being happy, and concealed herself in the mountains, having no longer intercourse with the women as formerly. Then she went to the large towns, warned their inhabitants, scolded them for their evil doings, and blamed them for ruining the race which the *golden fathers* had left behind. She foretold them that there would come a race still worse than they, and that wars, bloodshed, and other great disasters would follow. Page 193.

"After having finished, she disappeared into the mountains till the silver race expired and a bronze race came up. People invented the sword, the doer of evil; they tasted of the meat of cows, the first who did it. By all this their neighbourhood became odious to Justice, and she flew away to the sphere."

A scholion on Aratus.

The commentator of the book of Aratus says: "This Virgin is the daughter of Zeus. She spoke to the people on the public places and streets, and at that time they were obedient to their rulers, not knowing the bad nor discord. Without any altercation or envy they lived from agriculture, and did not travel on sea for the sake of commerce nor for the lust of plunder. Their nature was as pure as gold.

"But when they gave up these manners and no longer adhered to truth, Justice no longer had intercourse with them, but she observed them, dwelling in the mountains. When, however, she came to their meetings, though unwillingly, she threatened them, for they listened in silence to her words, and therefore she no longer appeared to those who called her, as she had formerly done.

"When, then, after the silver race, the bronze race came up, when wars followed each other and the evil spread in the world, she started off, for she wanted on no account to stay with them, and hated them, and went towards the sphere.

"There are many traditions regarding this Justice.

According to some, she is Demeter, because she has the ear of corn; according to others, she is Τύχη."

This is what Aratus says.

Quotation from the Laws of Plato.

The following occurs in the third book of the Laws of Plato:—

"The Athenian said: 'There have been deluges, diseases, disasters on earth, from which none has been saved but herdsmen and mountaineers, as the remnants of a race not practised in deceit and in the love of power.'

"The Knossian said: 'At the beginning men loved each other sincerely, feeling lonely in the desert of the world, and because the world had sufficient room for all of them, and did not compel them to any exertion. There was no poverty among them, no possession, no contract. There was no greed among them, and neither silver nor gold. There were no rich people among them and no poor. If we found any of their books, they would afford us numerous proofs for all this.'"

CHAPTER XLIV.

ON THE MANVANTARAS.

The single *manvantaras*, their Indras, and the children of Indra.

As 72,000 *kalpas* are reckoned as the life of Brahman, the *manvantara, i.e.* period of Manu, is reckoned as the life of Indra, whose rule ends with the end of the period. His post is occupied by another Indra, who then rules the world in the new *manvantara*. Brahmagupta says: "If a man maintains that there is no *saṁdhi* between two *manvantaras*, and reckons each *manvantara* as 71 *caturyugas*, he will find that the *kalpa* is too short by six *caturyugas*, and the *minus* below 1000 (*i.e.* in 994) is not better than the *plus* above 1000 (*i.e.* in 1008, according to Âryabhaṭa). Both numbers, however, differ from the book *Smṛiti*."

Further he says: "Âryabhaṭa mentions in two books of his, the one of which is called *Daśagîtikâ*, the other *Âryâśtaśata*, that each *manvantara* is equal to 72 *caturyugas*. Accordingly he reckons a *kalpa* at 1008 *caturyugas* (14 × 72)."

In the book *Vishṇu-Dharma* Mârkaṇḍeya gives to Vajra the following answer: "Purusha is the lord of the universe; the lord of the *kalpa* is Brahman, the lord of the world; but the lord of the *manvantara* is Manu. There are fourteen Manus, from whom the kings of the earth, ruling at the beginning of each *manvantara*, descended."

Page 194.

We have united their names in the following table:—

The Number of the Manvantaras.	The Names of the Manvantaras according to the Vishṇu-Purâṇa.	Their Names according to the Vishṇu-Dharma.	Their Names taken from other Sources.	The Names of Indra according to the Vishṇu-Purâṇa.	The Names of the children of Manu, the kings of the earth who ruled at the beginning of each period, according to the Vishṇu-Purâṇa.
1	Svâyambhuva	Svâyambhuva	Svâyambhuva	Manu, as the ruler of the first manvantara, is Indra, who has nothing in common with any other being.	
2	Svârocisha	Svârociya	Svârocisha	Vipaścit	The first of the children of Manu, Caitraka (?)
3	Auttami	Auttami	Auttami	Suśânti	Sudivya (?)
4	Stâmasa (?)	Stâmasa	Utâmasa (?)	Śikhin	Nara, Khyâti, Śântahaya, Jânujaṅgha.
5	Raivata	Raivata	Raivata	Autata (?)	Balabandhu, Susaṁbhâvya, Satyaka, Sindhu (?), Rebha (?)
6	Câkshusha	Cakshukha	Câkshusha	Manojava	Puru, Muru, Śatadyumna, Pramukha (?)
7	Vaivasvata	Vaivasvata	Vaivasvata	Purandara	Ikshvâku, Nabasa (?), Dhṛishṇa, Śaryâti.
8	Sâvarṇi	Sâvarṇi	These five are called Sâvarṇi Sâvarṇi	Bali, the imprisoned king	Virajas, Aścârvari, Nirmogha.
9	Daksha	Vishṇu-Dharma	Brahmaputra	Mahâvirya	Dhṛitaketu, Nirâmaya, Pañcahasta.
10	Brahmasâvarṇi	Dharmaputra	Vishṇuputra	Śânti	Sukshetra, Uttamaujas, Bhûrisheṇa.
11	Dharmasâvarṇi	Rudraputra	Rudraputra	Vṛisha	Sarvatraga, Devânika, Sudharmâtman (?)
12	Rudraputra	Dakshaputra	Dakshaputra	Ṛitadhâman	Devata (?), Vânupadevaś-ca, Devaśreshṭha.
13	Raucya	Raibhya (?)	Raibhya (?)	Divaspati	Citrasena, Vicitra-âdyâ (!)
14	Bhautya	Bhautya	Bhûmi (?)	Śuci	Urur, Gabhira, Budhnya-âdyâ (!)

Page 195. The tradition of *Vishṇu-Purâṇa* relating to the manvantaras.

The difference which the reader perceives in the enumeration of the future *manvantaras* beyond the seventh one, arises, as I think, from the same cause whence the difference in the names of the *Dvîpas* is derived (v. pp. 235, 236), viz. from the fact that the people care more for the *names* than for the *order* in which they are handed down to posterity. We may here rely on the tradition of the *Vishṇu-Purâṇa*, for in this book their number, their names and descriptions, are given in such a way that renders it necessary to us to consider also the *order* in which it gives them as trustworthy. But we have refrained from communicating these things in this place, since they offer only very little use.

The same book relates that King Maitreya, a Kshatriya, asked Parâśara, the father of Vyâsa, about the past and the future *manvantaras*. Thereupon the latter mentions the name by which each Manu is known, the same names which our table exhibits. According to the same book, the children of each Manu will rule the earth, and it mentions the first of them, the names of whom we have given in the table. According to the same source, the Manus of the second, third, fourth, and fifth *manvantaras* will be of the race of *Priyavrata*, an anchorite, who stood in such favour with Vishṇu, that he honoured his children by raising them to this distinction.

CHAPTER XLV.

ON THE CONSTELLATION OF THE GREAT BEAR.

A tradition relating to Arundhatî, the wife of Vasishṭha.

THE Great Bear is in the Indian language called *Saptarshayas*, i.e. *the Seven Ṛishis*. They are said to have been anchorites who nourished themselves only with what it is allowable to eat, and with them there was a pious woman, *Al-suhâ* (*Ursa Major*, star 80 by ζ). They plucked off the stalks of the lotus from the ponds to eat of them. Meanwhile came *The Law* (*Dharma?*) and concealed her from them. Every one of them felt ashamed of the other, and they swore oaths which were approved of by *Dharma*. In order to honour them, *Dharma* raised them to that place where they are now seen (*sic*).

Quotation from Varâhamihira.

We have already mentioned that the books of the Hindus are composed in metres, and therefore the authors indulge in comparisons and *epitheta ornantia*, such as are admired by their countrymen. Of the same kind is a description of the Great Bear in the *Saṁhitâ* of Varâhamihira, where it occurs before the astrological prognostics derived from this constellation. We give the passage according to our translation:[1]—

"The northern region is adorned with these stars, as a beautiful woman is adorned with a collar of pearls strung together, and a necklace of white lotus flowers, a handsomely arranged one. Thus adorned, they are like maidens who dance and revolve round the pole as the pole orders them. And I say, on the authority of

---

[1] *Saṁhitâ*, chap. xiii. v. 1–6.

Garga, the ancient, the primeval one, that the Great Bear stood in Maghâ, the tenth lunar station, when Yudhishṭhira ruled the earth, and the Śakakâla was 2526 years after this. The Great Bear remains in each lunar station 600 years, and it rises in the north-east. He (of the Seven Ṛishis) who then rules the east is Marîci; west of him is Vasishṭha, then Aṅgiras, Atri, Pulastya, Pulaha, Kratu, and near Vasishṭha there is a chaste woman called Arundhatî."

As these names are sometimes confounded with each other, we shall try to identify them with the corresponding stars in the Great Bear:—

Marîci	is the	27th	star	of this	constellation.
Vasishṭha	,,	26th	,,	,,	,,
Aṅgiras	,,	25th	,,	,,	,,
Atri	,,	18th	,,	,,	,,
Kratu	,,	16th	,,	,,	,,
Pulaha	,,	17th	,,	,,	,,
Pulastya	,,	19th	,,	,,	,,

Criticisms on Garga.

These stars occupy in our time, *i.e.* in the 952nd year of the Śakakâla, the space between $1\frac{1}{3}^\circ$ of Leo and $13\frac{1}{2}^\circ$ of Spica (Virgo). According to the peculiar motion of the fixed stars, as we know it, the same stars occupied at the time of Yudhishṭhira the space between $8\frac{2}{3}^\circ$ Gemini and $20\frac{5}{6}^\circ$ of Cancer.

Page 196.

According to the motion of the fixed stars, as adopted by the ancient astronomers and Ptolemy, these stars occupied at that time the space between $26\frac{1}{2}^\circ$ of Gemini and $8\frac{2}{3}^\circ$ of Leo, and the here-mentioned lunar station (Maghâ) occupied the space between 0–800 minutes in Leo.

Therefore it would be much more suitable *in the present time* to represent the Seven Ṛishis as standing in Maghâ than in the time of Yudhishṭhira. And if the Hindus identify Maghâ with the *Heart of the Lion*, we can only say that this constellation at that time stood in the first degrees of Cancer.

The words of Garga are without any foundation; they only show how little he knew of that which every one must know who wants to fix the places of the stars, either by eyesight or by means of astronomical observation on certain degrees of the signs of the zodiac.

Note from a Kashmirian almanac.

I have read in the almanacs for the year 951 of the Śakakâla which came from Kashmîr the statement that the Seven Ṛishis stand since seventy-seven years in the lunar station Anurâdhâ. This station occupies the space between $3\frac{1}{3}^\circ$ and the end of $16\frac{2}{3}^\circ$ of Scorpio. However, the Seven Ṛishis precede this place by about a whole zodiacal sign and 20 degrees, *i.e.* by $1\frac{2}{3}$ signs (v. p. 390). But what man would be able to learn all the different theories of the Hindus, if he does not dwell among them!

Examination of the statements regarding the position of the Great Bear.

Let us now first suppose that Garga is right, that he has not stated the precise place in Maghâ which the Seven Ṛishis occupy, and let us suppose that this place was 0° of Maghâ, which would correspond to 0° of Leo for our time. Further, between the time of Yudhishṭhira and the present year, *i.e.* the year 1340 of Alexander, there is an interval of 3479 years. And lastly, let us suppose that Varâhamihira is right in saying that the Seven Ṛishis dwell 600 years in each lunar station. Accordingly, they ought in the present year to stand in 17° 18′ of Libra, which is identical with 10° 38′ of Svâtî. However, if we suppose that they stood in the midst of Maghâ (not in the beginning), they ought at present to stand in 3° 58′ of Viśâkhâ. And if we suppose that they stood *in the end* of Maghâ, they ought at present to stand in 10° 38′ of Viśâkhâ.

Hence it is evident that the statement of the Kashmirian calendar does not agree with the statement in the *Saṁhitâ*. Likewise, if we adopt the rule of the said calendar regarding the precession of the equinoxes, and reckon with this measure backward, we do by no means arrive at Maghâ as the lunar station in which the Seven Rishis stood in the time of Yudhishṭhira.

Hitherto we used to think that *in our time* the revolution of the fixed stars is more rapid than *in former times*, and we tried to account for this by peculiarities of the shape of the celestial sphere. According to us, they move one degree in 66 solar years. Therefore Varâhamihira highly astonishes us, for, according to him, the rate of this motion would be one degree in forty-five years, *i.e.* much more rapid than at present, whilst *his* time precedes ours only by 525 years.

Rule of the Karaṇasâra to find the position of the Great Bear at any time.

The author of the canon *Karaṇasâra* gives the following rule for the computation of the motion of the Great Bear, and of the place which, at any given time, it occupies:—

"Subtract 821 from the Śakakâla. The remainder is the *basis*, *i.e.* the number of years above 4000 which have elapsed since the beginning of the Kaliyuga.

"Multiply the basis by 47, and add 68,000 to the product. Divide the sum by 10,000. The quotient represents the zodiacal signs and fractions of them, *i.e.* the position of the Great Bear which was sought."

The addition of 68,000, prescribed in this rule, must be the original position of the Great Bear at the beginning of the *basis*, multiplied by 10,000. If we divide 68,000 by 10,000, we get the quotient $6\frac{4}{5}$, *i.e.* six zodiacal signs and twenty-four degrees of a seventh sign.

It is evident that if we divide the 10,000 by 47, the Great Bear has wandered through one zodiacal sign in 212 years, 9 months, and 6 days, according to solar time. Accordingly it wanders through one degree of a sign in 7 years, 1 month, and 3 days, and through one lunar station in 94 years, 6 months, and 20 days.

Now there is a great difference between the values of Varâhamihira and those of Vitteśvara, if there is not a fault in the tradition. If we, by way of an example, make such a computation for the present year (1030 A.D.), we get 9° 17′ in the lunar station Anurâdhâ as the position of the Great Bear.

The people of Kashmîr believed that the Great Bear wanders through a lunar station in 100 years. Therefore the above-mentioned calendar says that of the present *centennium* of the motion of the Great Bear there is still a remainder of twenty-three years.

Theological opinions mixed up with astronomy.

Mistakes and confusion such as we have here laid open arise, in the first place, from the want of the necessary skill in astronomical researches, and secondly, from the way of the Hindus of mixing up scientific questions with religious traditions. For the theologians believe that the Seven Ṛishis stand higher than the fixed stars, and they maintain that in each *manvantara* there will appear a new Manu, whose children will destroy the earth; but the rule will be renewed by Indra, as also the different classes of the angels and the Seven Ṛishis. The angels are necessary, for mankind must offer sacrifices to them and must bring to the fire the shares for them; and the Seven Ṛishis are necessary, because they must renew the Veda, for it perishes at the end of each *manvantara*.

Page 197.

The Seven Ṛishis in the different *manvantaras*.

Our information on this subject we take from the *Vishṇu-Purâṇa*. From the same source we have taken the names of the Seven Ṛishis in each *manvantara*, as exhibited by the following table:—

Numbers of the Manvantaras.	The Seven Ṛishis, *i.e.* the Banât-Na'sh, or the Stars of the Great Bear in the Manvantaras.						
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
1		In this Manvantara there was neither Indra nor the Seven Ṛishis, but only Manu.					
2	Ûrjastambha	Prâṇa	Datta	Niṛishabha	Niśvara	Ścorvarî (?)	Vâṁśca (!)
3	The Children of Vasishṭha.						
4	Jyoti	Dhâman	Pṛithu	Kâvya	Caitra and Agni	Varaka	Pîvara
5	Hiraṇyaroman	Vedaśrî	Rûrdhwa-bâhu (!)	Apara (!)	Vedabâhu	Subâhu	Parjanya
6	Sumedhas	Virajas	Havishmat	Madhu	Atinâman	Sahishṇu	Carshayaḥ (!)
7	Vasishṭha	Kaśyapa	Atri	Jamadagni	Gautama	Viśvâmitra	Bharadvâja
8	Dîptimat	Gâlava	Kṛipa	Aśvatthâman the son of Droṇa	Parâśara	Vyâsa the son of Parâśara	Ṛishyaśriṅga
9	Savana	Dyutimat	Havya	Vasu	Medhâdhṛiti	Jyotishmat	Satya
10	Havishmat	Sukṛiti	Satya	Apâṁmûrti	Nâbhâga	Apratimaujas	Sukshetra
11	Niśćara	Agnîdhra	Vapushmat	Vishṇu	Âruṇi	Havishmant	Nagha
12	Tapasvin	Sutaya	Tapomûrti	Taporati	Tapodhṛiti	Dyuti	Iśćânyaḥ (!)
13	Nirmoha	Tattvadarśîca	Nishprakampa	Nirutsuka	Dhṛitimant	Vyaya	Sutapas
14	Agniba	Śuci	Śukra or Venus	Mâgadha	Agnîdhra	Yuktasta	Jita

CHAPTER XLVI.

ON NÂRÂYAṆA, HIS APPEARANCE AT DIFFERENT TIMES, AND HIS NAMES.

Page 198.

On the nature of Nârâyaṇa.

NÂRÂYAṆA is according to the Hindus a supernatural power, which does not on principle try to bring about the good by the good, nor the bad by the bad, but to prevent the evil and destruction by whatever means happen to be available. For this force the good exists prior to the bad, but if the good does not properly develop nor is available, it uses the bad, this being unavoidable. In so doing, it may be compared to a rider who has got into the midst of a cornfield. When he then comes back to his senses, and wants to avoid evil-doing and to get out of the mischief he has committed, he has no other means but that of turning his horse back and riding out on the same road on which he has entered the field, though in going out he will do as much mischief as he has done in entering, and even more. But there is no other possibility of making amends save this.

The Hindus do not distinguish between this force and the *First Cause* of their philosophy. Its dwelling in the world is of such a nature that people compare it to a material existence, an appearance in body and colour, since they cannot conceive any other kind of appearance.

Besides other times, Nârâyaṇa has appeared at the end of the first *manvantara*, to take away the rule of the worlds from Vâlakhilya (?), who had given it the name, and wanted to take it into his own hands. Nârâyaṇa came and handed it over to Śatakratu, the performer of a hundred sacrifices, and made him Indra.

Story of Bali, the son of Virocana.

Another time he appeared at the end of the sixth *manvantara*, when he killed the King Bali, the son of Virocana, who ruled the whole world and had Venus as his vazîr. On having heard from his mother that the time of his father had been much better than *his* time, since it was nearer the *kṛitayuga*, when people enjoyed more profound bliss and did not know any fatigue, he became ambitious and desirous of vying with his father. Therefore he commenced doing works of piety, giving presents, distributing money, and performing sacrifices, which earn the rule of paradise and earth for him who finishes a hundred of them. When he was near this term, or had nearly finished the ninety-ninth sacrifice, the angels began to feel uneasy and to fear for their dignity, knowing that the tribute which men bring them would cease if they stood no longer in need of them. Now they united and went to Nârâyaṇa, asking him to help them. He granted their wish, and descended to the earth in the shape of Vâmana, *i.e.* a man whose hands and feet are too short in comparison with his body, and in consequence his figure is thought to be hideous.

Nârâyaṇa came to the King Bali whilst he was offering, his Brahmans standing round the fires, and Venus, his vazîr, standing before him. The treasure-houses had been opened and the precious stones had been thrown out in heaps, to be given as presents and alms. Now Vâmana commenced to recite the Veda like the Brahmans from that part which is now called *Sâmaveda*, in a melancholy, impressive kind of melody, persuading the king to grant him liberally what he would wish and demand. Upon this Venus spoke stealthily to him: "This is Nârâyaṇa. He has come to rob thee of thy rule." But the king was so excited that he did not mind the words of Venus, and asked Vâmana what was his desire. Thereupon Vâmana said, "As much as four paces of thy realm, that I may live there." The king answered, "Choose what you wish, and how you wish it;" and according to Hindu custom, he ordered water to be brought to pour it over his hands as a sign of the confirmation of the order he had given. Now Venus, because of her love to the king, brought in the jug, but had corked the spout, so that no water should flow out of it, whilst she closed the hole in the cork with the *kuśa* grass of her ring-finger. But Venus had only one eye; she missed the hole, and now the water flowed out. In consequence, Vâmana made a pace towards east, another towards west, and a third towards above as far as Svarloka. As for the fourth pace, there was no more space in the world; he made, by the fourth pace, the king a slave, putting his foot between his shoulders as a sign of making him a slave. He made him sink down into the earth as far as Pâtâla, the lowest of the low. He took the worlds away from him, and handed the rule over to Puraṁdara.

Page 199.

Quotation from *Vishnu-Purâṇa.*

The following occurs in the *Vishṇu-Purâṇa*:—

"The King Maitreya asked Parâśara about the *yugas*. So the latter answered: 'They exist for the purpose that Vishṇu should occupy himself with something in them. In the Kṛitayuga he comes in the shape of Kapila alone, for the purpose of spreading wisdom; in Tretâyuga, in the shape of Râma alone, for the purpose of spreading fortitude, to conquer the bad, and to preserve the three worlds by force and the prevalence of virtuous action; in Dvâpara, in the shape of Vyâsa, to divide the Veda into four parts, and to derive many branches from it. In the end of Dvâpara he appears in the shape of Vâsudeva to destroy the giants; in the Kaliyuga, in the shape of Kali, the son of *J-sh-v* (?) the Brahman, to kill all, and to make the cycle of the *yugas* commence anew. That is his (Vishṇu's) occupation.'"

In another passage of the same book we read: "Vishṇu, *i.e.* another name for Nârâyaṇa, comes at the end of each *dvâpara* to divide the Veda into four parts, because men are feeble and unable to observe the whole of it. In his face he resembles Vyâsa."

Enumeration of the Vyâsas of the seventh *manvantara*.

We exhibit his names in the following table, though they vary in different sources, enumerating the Vyâsas who have appeared in the *caturyugas* of the present or seventh *manvantara* which have elapsed:—

1	Svayaṁbhû	16	Dhanaṁjaya
2	Prajâpati	17	Kṛitaṁjaya
3	Uśanas	18	Riṇajyeshṭha (?)
4	Bṛihaspati	19	Bharadvâja
5	Savitṛi	20	Gautama
6	Mṛityu	21	Uttama
7	Indra	22	Haryâtman
8	Vasishṭha	23	Veda-vyâsa
9	Sârasvata	24	Vâjaśravas
10	Tridhâman	25	Somaśushma
11	Trivṛisha	26	Bhârgava
12	Bharadvâja	27	Vâlmîki
13	Antariksha	28	Krishna
14	Vapra (?)	29	Aśvatthâman the son of Droṇa
15	Trayyâruṇa		

Kṛishṇa Dvaipâyana is Vyâsa the son of Parâśara. The twenty-ninth Vyâsa has not yet come, but will appear in future.

Quotation from *Vishṇu-Dharma*.

The book *Vishṇu-Dharma* says: "The names of Hari, *i.e.* Nârâyaṇa, differ in the *yugas*. They are the following: Vâsudeva, Saṁkarshaṇa, Pradyumna, and Aniruddha."

I suppose that the author has not here preserved the proper sequence, for Vâsudeva belongs to the end of the four *yugas*.

The same book says: "Also his colours differ in the *yugas*. In the Kṛitayuga he is white, in the Tretâyuga red, in the Dvâpara yellow, the latter is the first phase of his being embodied in human shape, and in the Kaliyuga he is black."

These colours are something like *the three primary forces* of their philosophy, for they maintain that *Satya* is transparent white, *Rajas* red, and *Tamas* black. We shall in a later part of this book give a description of his last appearance in the world. Page 200.

CHAPTER XLVII.

ON VÂSUDEVA AND THE WARS OF THE BHÂRATA.

Analogies of the course of nature to the history of mankind.

The life of the world depends upon sowing and procreating. Both processes increase in the course of time, and this increase is unlimited, whilst the world is limited.

When a class of plants or animals does not increase any more in its structure, and its peculiar kind is established as *a species* of its own, when each individual of it does not simply come into existence once and perish, but besides procreates a being like itself or several together, and not only once but several times, then this will as a single species of plants or animals occupy the earth and spread itself and its kind over as much territory as it can find.

The agriculturist selects his corn, letting grow as much as he requires, and tearing out the remainder. The forester leaves those branches which he perceives to be excellent, whilst he cuts away all others. The bees kill those of their kind who only eat, but do not work in their beehive.

Nature proceeds in a similar way; however, it does not distinguish, for its action is under all circumstances one and the same. It allows the leaves and fruit of the trees to perish, thus preventing them from realising that result which they are intended to produce in the economy of nature. It removes them so as to make room for others.

If thus the earth is ruined, or is near to be ruined, by having too many inhabitants, its ruler—for it has a ruler, and his all-embracing care is apparent in every single particle of it—sends it a messenger for the purpose of reducing the too great number and of cutting away all that is evil.

Story of the birth of Vâsudeva.

A messenger of this kind is, according to the belief of the Hindus, Vâsudeva, who was sent the last time in human shape, being called Vâsudeva. It was a time when the giants were numerous on earth and the earth was full of their oppression; it tottered, being hardly able to bear the whole number of them, and it trembled from the vehemence of their treading. Then there was born a child in the city of Mathurâ to Vâsudeva by the sister of Kaṁsa, at that time ruler of the town. They were a Jatt family, cattle-owners, low Śûdra people. Kaṁsa had learned, by a voice which he heard at the wedding of his sister, that he would perish at the hands of her child; therefore he appointed people who were to bring him every child of hers as soon as she gave birth to it, and he killed all her children, both male and female. Finally, she gave birth to Balabhadra, and Yaśodâ, the wife of the herdsman Nanda, took the child to herself, and managed to keep it concealed from the spies of Kaṁsa. Thereupon she became pregnant an eighth time, and gave birth to *Vâsudeva* in a rainy night of the eighth day of the black half of the month Bhâdrapada, whilst the moon was ascending in the station Rohiṇî. As the guards had fallen into deep sleep and neglected the watch, the father stole the child and brought it to *Nandakula*, *i.e.* the stable of the cows of Nanda, the husband of Yaśodâ, near Mathurâ, but separated from this place by the river Yamunâ. Vâsudeva exchanged the child for a daughter of Nanda, which happened to be born at the moment when Vâsudeva arrived with the boy. He brought this female child to the guards instead of his son. Kaṁsa, the ruler, wanted to kill the child, but she flew up into the air and disappeared.

Vâsudeva grew up under the care of his foster-mother Yaśodâ without her knowing that he had been exchanged for her daughter, but Kaṁsa got some inkling of the matter. Now he tried to get the child into his power by cunning plans, but all of them turned out against him. Lastly, Kaṁsa demanded from his parents that they should send him (Vâsudeva) to wrestle in his (Kaṁsa's) presence. Now Vâsudeva began to behave overbearingly towards everybody. On the road he had already roused the wrath of his aunt by hurting a serpent which had been appointed to watch over the lotus flowers of a pond, for he had drawn a cord through its nostrils like a bridle. Further, he had killed his fuller, because the latter had refused to lend him clothes for the wrestling. He had robbed the girl who accompanied him of the sandal-wood with which she was ordered to anoint the wrestlers. Lastly, he had killed the rutting elephant which was provided for the purpose of killing him before the door of Kaṁsa. All this heightened the wrath of Kaṁsa to such a degree, that his bile burst, and he died on the spot. Then Vâsudeva, his sister's son, ruled in his stead.

Page 201.

The names of Vâsudeva in the different months.

Vâsudeva has a special name in each month. His followers begin the months with Mârgaśîrsha, and each month they begin with the eleventh day, because on this day Vâsudeva appeared.

The following table contains the names of Vâsudeva in the months:—

The Months.	The Names of Vâsudeva.	The Months.	The Names of Vâsudeva.
Mârgaśîrsha	Keśava	Jyaishṭha	Trivikrama
Pausha	Nârâyaṇa	Âshâḍha	Vâmana
Mâgha	Mâdhava	Śrâvaṇa	Śrîdhara
Phâlguna	Govinda	Bhâdrapada	Hṛishîkeśa
Caitra	Vishṇu	Âśvayuja	Padmanâbhi
Vaiśâkha	Madhusûdana	Kârttika	Dâmodara

Continuation of the story of Vâsudeva.

Now the brother-in-law of the deceased Kaṁsa became angry, went rapidly to Mathurâ, took possession of the realm of Vâsudeva, and banished him to the ocean. Then there appeared near the coast a golden castle called Barodâ, and Vâsudeva made it his residence.

The children of Kaurava (*i.e.* Dhṛitarâshṭra) had the charge of their cousins (the children of Pâṇḍu). Dhṛitarâshṭra received them and played dice with them, the last stake being their whole property. They lost more and more, until he laid upon them the obligation of expatriation for more than ten years, and of concealment in the remotest part of the country, where nobody knew them. If they did not keep this engagement they would be bound to return into banishment for a like number of years. This engagement was carried out, but finally came the time of their coming forward for battle. Now each party began to assemble their whole number and to sue for allies, till at last nearly innumerable hosts had gathered in the plain of Tâneshar. There were eighteen *akshauhiṇî*. Each party tried to gain Vâsudeva as ally, whereupon he offered either himself or his brother Balabhadra together with an army. But the children of Pâṇḍu preferred him. They were five men—Yudhishṭhira, their leader, Arjuna, the bravest of them, Sahadeva, Bhîmasena, and Nakula. They had seven *akshauhiṇî*, whilst their enemies were much stronger. But for the cunning devices of Vâsudeva and his teaching them whereby they might gain victory, they would have been in a less favourable situation than their enemies. But now they conquered; all those hosts were destroyed, and none remained except the five brothers. Thereafter Vâsudeva returned to his residence and died, together with his family, who were called Yâdava. Also the five brothers died before the year had reached its end, at the end of those wars.

End of Vâsudeva and of the five Pâṇḍu brothers.

Vâsudeva had concerted with Arjuna the arrangement that they would consider the quivering of the left arm or left eye as a mysterious intimation that there was something happening to him. At that time there lived a pious Ṛishi called Durvâsas. Now the brothers and relations of Vâsudeva were a rather malicious, inconsiderate set of people. One of them hid under his coat a new frying-pan, went to the anchorite, and asked him what would be the result of his pregnancy, jeering at the pious man. The latter said, "In thy belly there is something which will be the cause of thy death and that of thy whole clan." When Vâsudeva heard this he became sorry, because he knew that these words would be fulfilled. He gave orders that the pan should be filed away and be thrown into the water. This was done. There was only a small part of it left, which the artisan who had done the filing considered as insignificant. Therefore he threw it, as it was, into the water. A fish devoured it; the fish was caught, and the fisherman found it in its belly. He thought it would be a good tip for his arrow.

Page 202.

When the predestined time came, Vâsudeva rested on the coast under the shadow of a tree, one of his feet being crossed over the other; the fisherman took him for a gazelle, shot at him, and hit his right foot. This wound became the cause of the death of Vâsudeva. At the same time the left side of Arjuna began to quiver, and then his arm. Now his brother Sahadeva gave orders that he should never any more embrace anybody, that he might not be bereft of his strength (?). Arjuna went to Vâsudeva, but could not embrace him on account of the state in which he was. Vâsudeva ordered his bow to be brought, and handed it over to Arjuna, who tried his strength at it. Vâsudeva ordered him to burn his body and the bodies of his relations when they had died, and to bring away his wives from the castle, and then he died.

Out of the filings or bits of iron which had fallen off when the pan was filed a *bardî* bush had grown. To this there came the Yâdavas, who tied together some bundles of its twigs to sit upon. Whilst they were drinking there arose a quarrel between them; they beat each other with the *bardî* bundles, and killed each other. All this happened near the mouth of the river Sarsati, where it flows into the sea, near the situation of Somanâth.

Arjuna had done all he had been ordered by Vâsudeva. When he brought away the women, they were suddenly attacked by robbers. When, now, Arjuna was no longer able to bend his bow, he felt that his strength was going. He whirled the bow in a circle above his head, and all who stood under the bow were saved, while the others were seized by the robbers. Now Arjuna and his brothers saw that life was no more of any use to them, therefore they emigrated to the north and entered the mountains, the snow of which never melts. The cold killed them one after the other, till at last only Yudhishṭhira remained. He obtained the distinction of being admitted to paradise, but before that he was to pass through hell in consequence of the sole lie which he had spoken in his life, at the request of his brothers and of Vâsudeva. These were the words which he had spoken within hearing of the Brahman Droṇa: "Aśvatthâman the elephant, has died." He had made a pause between *Aśvatthâman* and *the elephant*, by which he had led Droṇa to believe that he meant *his son*. Yudhishṭhira spoke to the angels: "If this must be, may my intercession be accepted on behalf of the people in hell; may they be freed from it." After this desire of his had been granted, he went into paradise.

CHAPTER XLVIII.

AN EXPLANATION OF THE MEASURE OF AN AKSHAUHIṆÎ.

Each	*akshauhiṇî*	has	10 *anîkinî*.
,,	*anîkinî*	,,	3 *camû*.
,,	*camû*	,,	3 *pṛitanâ*.
,,	*pṛitanâ*	,,	3 *vâhinî*.
,,	*vâhinî*	,,	3 *gaṇa*.
,,	*gaṇa*	,,	3 *gulma*.
,,	*gulma*	,,	3 *senâmukha*.
,,	*senâmukha*	,,	3 *patti*.
,,	*patti*	,,	1 *ratha*.

In chess, the latter is called *rukh*, whilst the Greeks call it *chariot of war*. It was invented by *Mankalus* (Myrtilos ?) in Athens, and the Athenians maintain that they were the first who rode on chariots of war. However, before that time they had already been invented by Aphrodisios (*sic*) the Hindu, when he ruled over Egypt, about 900 years after the deluge. They were drawn by two horses.

The following is a tale of the Greeks: Hephæstos loved Athene and desired to possess her, but she refused him, preferring to remain a virgin. Now he concealed himself in the country of Athens, and intended to seize her by force, but she pierced him with a spear and then he let her go. From a drop of his blood, which had dropped to the earth, there grew Erichthonios. He Page 203. arrived on a chariot like the tower of the sun, the holder of the reins riding together with him. Similar to this are the customs of the hippodrome, as they exist in our time, the running and driving with carriages in the race.

A *ratha* comprehends besides, one elephant, three riders, and five footmen.

All these orders and divisions are necessary for the preparation for battle, for pitching camp and breaking up camp.

An *akshauhiṇî* has 21,870 chariots, 21,870 elephants, 65,610 riders, 109,350 footmen.

To each chariot there belong four horses and their conductor, the master of the chariot, armed with arrows, his two companions armed with spears, a guard who protects the master from behind, and a cartwright.

On each elephant there sits its conductor, and behind him the vice-conductor, a man who has to goad the elephant behind the chair, the master, armed with arrows, in the chair, and together with him his two spear-throwing companions and his jester, *hauhava* (?), who on other occasions runs before him.

Accordingly the number of people who ride on chariots and elephants is 284,323 (*sic*). The number of those who ride on horses is 87,480. The number of elephants in an *akshauhiṇî* is 21,870; the number of chariots, too, is 21,870; the number of horses is 153,090; the number of men, 459,283.

The sum-total of the living beings of one *akshauhiṇî*, elephants, horses, and men, is 634,243; the same number for eighteen *akshauhiṇî* is 11,416,374, viz. 393,660 elephants, 2,755,620 horses, 8,267,094 men.

This is an explanation of the *akshauhiṇî*, and of its single parts.

END OF VOL. I.

ALBERUNI'S INDIA

VOLUME II

ALBÊRÛNÎ'S INDIA.

CHAPTER XLIX.

A SUMMARY DESCRIPTION OF THE ERAS.

Page 203. Enumeration of some of the eras of the Hindus.

THE eras serve to fix certain moments of time which are mentioned in some historical or astronomical connection. The Hindus do not consider it wearisome to reckon with huge numbers, but rather enjoy it. Still, in practical use, they are compelled to replace them by smaller (more handy) ones.

Of their eras we mention—

1. The beginning of the existence of Brahman.
2. The beginning of the day of the present nychthemeron of Brahman, *i.e.* the beginning of the *kalpa*.
3. The beginning of the seventh *manvantara*, in which we are now.
4. The beginning of the twenty-eighth *caturyuga*, in which we are now.
5. The beginning of the fourth *yuga* of the present *caturyuga*, called *kalikâla*, *i.e.* the time of Kali. The whole *yuga* is called after him, though, accurately speaking, *his* time falls only in the last part of the *yuga*. Notwithstanding, the Hindus mean by *kalikâla* the beginning of the *kaliyuga*.
6. *Pâṇḍava-kâla*, *i.e.* the time of the life and the wars of Bhârata.

All these eras vie with each other in antiquity, the one going back to a still more remote beginning than the other, and the sums of years which they afford go beyond hundreds, thousands, and higher orders of numbers. Therefore not only astronomers, but also other people, think it wearisome and unpractical to use them.

The author adopts the year 400 of Yazdajird as a test-year.

In order to give an idea of these eras, we shall use as a first gauge or point of comparison that Hindu year the great bulk of which coincides with the *year 400 of Yazdajird*. This number consists only of hundreds, not of units and tens, and by this peculiarity it is distinguished from all other years that might possibly be chosen. Besides, it is a memorable time; for the breaking of the strongest pillar of the religion, the decease of the pattern of a prince, Maḥmûd, the lion of the world, the wonder of his time—may God have mercy upon him!—took place only a short time, less than a year, before it. The Hindu year precedes the Naurôz or new year's day of this year only by twelve days, and the death of the prince occurred precisely ten complete Persian months before it.

Page 204.

Now, presupposing this our gauge as known, we shall compute the years for this point of junction, which is the beginning of the corresponding Hindu year, for the end of all years which come into question coincides with it, and the Naurôz of the year 400 of Yazdajird falls only a little later (viz. twelve days).

How much of the life of Brahman has elapsed according to the *Vishṇu-Dharma*.

The book *Vishṇu-Dharma* says: "Vajra asked Mârkaṇḍeya how much of the life of Brahman had elapsed; whereupon the sage answered: 'That which has elapsed is 8 years, 5 months, 4 days, 6 *manvantaras*, 7 *saṁdhi*, 27 *caturyugas*, and 3 *yugas* of the twenty-eighth *caturyuga*, and 10 *divya-years* up to the time of the *aśvamedha* which thou hast offered.' He who knows the details of this statement and comprehends them duly is a *sage* man, and *the sage* is he who serves the only Lord and strives to reach the neighbourhood of his place, which is called *Paramapada*."

Presupposing this statement to be known, and referring the reader to our explanation of the various measures of time which we have given in former chapters, we offer the following analysis.

Of the life of Brahman there have elapsed before our gauge 26,215,73,2948,132 of our years. Of the nychthemeron of Brahman, *i.e.* of the *kalpa of the day*, there have elapsed 1,972,948,132, and of the seventh *manvantara* 120,532,132.

The latter is also the date of the imprisoning of the King Bali, for it happened in the first *caturyuga* of the seventh *manvantara*.

In all chronological dates which we have mentioned already and shall still mention, we only reckon with *complete* years, for the Hindus are in the habit of disregarding *fractions* of a year.

The time of Râma according to *Vishṇu Dharma*.

Further, the *Vishṇu-Dharma* says: "Mârkaṇḍeya says, in answer to a question of Vajra: 'I have already lived as long as 6 *kalpas* and 6 *manvantaras* of the seventh *kalpa*, 23 *tretâyugas* of the seventh *manvantara*. In the twenty-fourth *tretâyuga* Râma killed Râvaṇa, and Lakshmaṇa, the brother of Râma, killed Kumbhakarṇa, the brother of Râvaṇa. The two subjugated all the Râkshasas. At that time Vâlmîki, the Ṛishi, composed the story of Râma and Râmâyaṇa and eternalised it in his books. It was I who told it to Yudhishṭhira, the son of Pâṇḍu, in the forest of Kâmyakavana.'"

The author of the *Vishṇu-Dharma* reckons here with *tretâyugas*, first, because the events which he mentions occurred in a certain *tretâyuga*, and secondly, because it is more convenient to reckon with a simple unit than with such a unit as requires to be explained by reference to its single quarters. Besides, the latter part of the *tretâyuga* is a more suitable time for the events mentioned than its beginning, because it is so much nearer to the age of evil-doing (v. i. pp. 379, 380). No doubt, the date of Râma and Râmâyaṇa is known among the

Hindus, but I for my part have not been able to ascertain it.

Twenty-three *caturyugas* are 99,360,000 years, and, together with the time from the beginning of a *caturyuga* till the end of the *tretâyuga*, 102,384,000 years.

If we subtract this number of years from the number of years of the seventh *manvantara* that have elapsed before our gauge-year, viz. 120,532,132 (v. p. 3), we get the remainder of 18,148,132 years, *i.e.* so many years before our gauge-year at the conjectural date of Râma; and this may suffice, as long as it is not supported by a trustworthy tradition. The here-mentioned year corresponds to the 3,892,132d year of the 28th *caturyuga*.

How much time has elapsed before 0 of the present *kalpa*, according to Pulisa and Brahmagupta.

All these computations rest on the measures adopted by Brahmagupta. He and Pulisa agree in this, that the number of *kalpas* which have elapsed of the life of Brahman before the present *kalpa* is 6068 (equal to 8 years, 5 months, 4 days of Brahman). But they differ from each other in converting this number into *caturyugas*. According to Pulisa, it is equal to 6,116,544; according to Brahmagupta, only to 6,068,000 *caturyugas*. Therefore, if we adopt the system of Pulisa, reckoning 1 *manvantara* as 72 *caturyugas* without *saṁdhi*, 1 *kalpa* as 1008 *caturyugas*, and each *yuga* as the fourth part of a *caturyuga*, that which has elapsed of the life of Brahman before our gauge-year is the sum of 26,425,456,204,132 (!) years, and of the *kalpa* there have elapsed 1,986,124,132 years, of the *manvantara* 119,884,132 years, and of the *caturyuga* 3,244,132 years. **Page 205.**

How much time has elapsed of the current *kaliyuga*.

Regarding the time which has elapsed since the beginning of the *kaliyuga*, there exists no difference amounting to whole years. According to both Brahmagupta and Pulisa, of the *kaliyuga* there have elapsed before our gauge-year 4132 years, and between the wars of Bhârata and our gauge-year there have elapsed 3479 years. The year 4132 before the gauge-year is the epoch of the *kalikâla*, and the year 3479 before the gauge-year is the epoch of the *Pâṇḍavakâla*.

The era Kâlayavana.

The Hindus have an era called *Kâlayavana*, regarding which I have not been able to obtain full information. They place its epoch in the end of the last *dvâparayuga*. The here-mentioned Yavana (JMN) severely oppressed both their country and their religion.

To date by the here-mentioned eras requires in any case vast numbers, since their epochs go back to a most remote antiquity. For this reason people have given up using them, and have adopted instead the eras of—

(1.) *Śrî Harsha.*
(2.) *Vikramâditya.*
(3.) *Śaka.*
(4.) *Valabha*, and
(5.) *Gupta.*

Era of Śrî Harsha.

The Hindus believe regarding Śrî Harsha that he used to examine the soil in order to see what of hidden treasures was in its interior, as far down as the seventh earth; that, in fact, he found such treasures; and that, in consequence, he could dispense with oppressing his subjects (by taxes, &c.). His era is used in Mathurâ and the country of Kanoj. Between Śrî Harsha and Vikramâditya there is an interval of 400 years, as I have been told by some of the inhabitants of that region. However in the Kashmîrian calendar I have read that Śrî Harsha was 664 years later than Vikramâditya. In face of this discrepancy I am in perfect uncertainty, which to the present moment has not yet been cleared up by any trustworthy information.

Era of Vikramâditya.

Those who use the era of Vikramâditya live in the southern and western parts of India. It is used in the following way: 342 are multiplied by 3, which gives the product 1026. To this number you add the years which have elapsed of the current *shashṭyabda* or sexagesimal *samvatsara*, and the sum is the corresponding year of the era of Vikramâditya. In the book *Srûdhava* by Mahâdeva I find as his name *Candrabîja*.

As regards this method of calculation, we must first say that it is rather awkward and unnatural, for if they began with 1026 as the basis of the calculation, as they begin—without any apparent necessity—with 342, this would serve the same purpose. And, secondly, admitting that the method is correct as long as there is only *one shashṭyabda* in the date, how are we to reckon if there is a number of *shashṭyabdas?*

The Śakakâla.

The epoch of the era of Śaka or Śakakâla falls 135 years later than that of Vikramâditya. The here-mentioned Śaka tyrannised over their country between the river Sindh and the ocean, after he had made Âryavarta in the midst of this realm his dwelling-place. He interdicted the Hindus from considering and representing themselves as anything but Śakas. Some maintain that he was a Śûdra from the city of Almanṣûra; others maintain that he was not a Hindu at all, and that he had come to India from the west. The Hindus had much to suffer from him, till at last they received help from the east, when Vikramâditya marched against him, put him to flight and killed him in the region of Karûr, between Multân and the castle of Lônî. Now this date became famous, as people rejoiced in the news of the death of the tyrant, and was used as the epoch of an era, especially by the astronomers. They honour the conqueror by adding Śrî to his name, so as to say Srî Vikramâditya. Since there is a long interval between the era which is called the era of Vikramâditya (v. p. 5) and the killing of Śaka, we think that that Vikramâditya from whom the era has got its name is not identical with that one who killed Śaka, but only a namesake of his.

Era of Valabha. **Page 206.**

The era of Valabha is called so from Valabha, the ruler of the town Valabhî, nearly 30 *yojanas* south of Anhilvâra. The epoch of this era falls 241 years later than the epoch of the Śaka era. People use it in this way. They first put down the year of the Śakakâla, and then subtract from it the cube of 6 and the square of 5 (216 + 25 = 241). The remainder is the year of the Valabha era. The history of Valabha is given in its proper place (cf. chap. xvii.).

Guptakâla.

As regards the Guptakâla, people say that the Guptas were wicked powerful people, and that when they ceased to exist this date was used as the epoch of an era. It seems that Valabha was the last of them, because the epoch of the era of the Guptas falls, like that of the Valabha era, 241 years later than the Śakakâla.

Era of the astronomers.

The *era of the astronomers* begins 587 years later than the Śakakâla. On this era is based the canon *Khaṇḍakhâdyaka* by Brahmagupta, which among Muhammadans is known as *Al-arkand*.

Comparison of the epochs of the Indian eras with the test-year.

Now, the year 400 of Yazdajird, which we have chosen as a gauge, corresponds to the following years of the Indian eras :—

(1) To the year 1488 of the era of Śrî Harsha,
(2) To the year 1088 of the era of Vikramâditya,
(3) To the year 953 of the Śakakâla,
(4) To the year 712 of the Valabha era, which is identical with the Guptakâla,
(5) To the year 366 of the era of the canon *Khaṇḍakhâdyaka*,
(6) To the year 526 of the era of the canon *Pañcasiddhântikâ* by Varâhamihira,
(7) To the year 132 of the era of the canon *Karaṇasâra*; and
(8) To the year 65 of the era of the canon *Karaṇatilaka*.

The eras of the here-mentioned *canones* are such as the authors of them considered the most suitable to be used as cardinal points in astronomical and other calculations, whence calculation may conveniently extend forward or backward. Perhaps the epochs of these eras fall within the time when the authors in question themselves lived, but it is also possible that they fall within a time anterior to their lifetime.

On the popular mode of dating by *centennia* or *samvatsaras*.

Common people in India date by the years of a *centennium*, which they call *samvatsara*. If a *centennium* is finished, they drop it, and simply begin to date by a new one. This era is called *lokakâla*, *i.e.* the era of the nation at large. But of this era people give such totally different accounts, that I have no means of making out the truth. In a similar manner they also differ among themselves regarding the beginning of the year. On the latter subject I shall communicate what I have heard myself, hoping meanwhile that one day we shall be able to discover a rule in this apparent confusion.

Different beginnings of the year.

Those who use the Śaka era, the astronomers, begin the year with the month Caitra, whilst the inhabitants of Ḳanîr, which is conterminous with Kashmîr, begin it with the month Bhâdrapada. The same people count our gauge-year (400 Yazdajird) as the eighty-fourth year of an era of theirs.

All the people who inhabit the country between Bardarî and Mârîgala begin the year with the month Kârttika, and they count the gauge-year as the 110th year of an era of theirs. The author of the Kashmirian calendar maintains that the latter year corresponds to the sixth year of a new *centennium*, and this, indeed, is the usage of the people of Kashmîr.

The people living in the country Nîrahara, behind Mârîgala, as far as the utmost frontiers of Tâḳeshar and Lohâvar, begin the year with the month Mârgaśîrsha, and reckon our gauge-year as the 108th year of their era. The people of *Lanbaga, i.e.* Lamghân, follow their example. I have been told by people of Multân that this system is peculiar to the people of Sindh and Kanoj, and that they used to begin the year with the new moon of Mârgaśîrsha, but that the people of Multân only a few years ago had given up this system, and had adopted the system of the people of Kashmîr, and followed their example in beginning the year with the new moon of Caitra.

Popular mode of dating in use among the Hindus, and criticisms thereon.

I have already before excused myself on account of the imperfection of the information given in this chapter. For we cannot offer a strictly scientific account of the eras to which it is devoted, simply because in them we have to reckon with periods of time far exceeding a *centennium*, (and because all tradition of events farther back than a hundred years is confused (v. p. 8).) So I have myself seen the roundabout way in which they compute the year of the destruction of Somanâth in the year of the Hijra 416, or 947 Śakakâla. First, they write down the number 242, then under it 606, then under this 99. The sum of these numbers is 947, or the year of the Śakakâla.

Now I am inclined to think that the 242 years have elapsed before the beginning of their centennial system, and that they have adopted the latter together with the Guptakâla; further, that the number 606 represents complete *samvatsaras* or centennials, each of which they must reckon as 101 years; lastly, that the 99 years represent that time which has elapsed of the current *centennium*. **Page 207.**

That this, indeed, is the nature of the calculation is confirmed by a leaf of a canon composed by Durlabha of Multân, which I have found by chance. Here the author says: "First write 848 and add to it the *laukikakâla, i.e.* the era of the people, and the sum is the Śakakâla."

If we write the first year of the Śakakâla corresponding to our gauge-year, viz. 953, and subtract 848 from it, the remainder, 105, is the year of the *laukika-kâla*, whilst the destruction of Somanâth falls in the ninety-eighth year of the *centennium* or *laukika-kâla*.

Durlabha says, besides, that the year begins with the month Mârgaśîrsha, but that the astronomers of Multân begin it with Caitra.

Origin of the dynasty of the Shâhs of Kâbul.

The Hindus had kings residing in Kâbul, Turks who were said to be of Tibetan origin. The first of them, Barhatakîn, came into the country and entered a cave in Kâbul, which none could enter except by creeping on hands and knees. The cave had water, and besides he deposited their victuals for a certain number of days. It is still known in our time, and is called *Var*. People who consider the name of Barhatakîn as a good omen enter the cave and bring out some of its water with great trouble.

Certain troops of peasants were working before the door of the cave. Tricks of this kind can only be carried out and become notorious, if their author has made a secret arrangement with somebody else—in fact, with confederates. Now these had induced persons to work there continually day and night in turns, so that the place was never empty of people.

Some days after he had entered the cave, he began to creep out of it in the presence of the people, who looked on him as a new-born baby. He wore Turkish dress, a short tunic open in front, a high hat, boots and arms. Now people honoured him as a being of miraculous origin, who had been destined to be king, and in fact he brought those countries under his sway and ruled them under the title of a *shâhiya of Kâbul*. The rule remained among his descendants for generations, the number of which is said to be about sixty.

Unfortunately the Hindus do not pay much attention to the historical order of things, they are very careless in relating the chronological succession of their kings, and when they are pressed for information and are at a loss, not knowing what to say, they invariably take to tale-telling. But for this, we should communicate to the reader the traditions which we have received from some people among them. I have been told that the pedigree of this royal family, written on silk, exists in the fortress *Nagarkot*, and I much desired to make myself acquainted with it, but the thing was impossible for various reasons.

The story of Kanik.

One of this series of kings was Kanik, the same who is said to have built the *vihâra* (Buddhistic monastery) of Purushâvar. It is called, after him, *Kanik-caitya*. People relate that the king of Kanoj had presented to him, among other gifts, a gorgeous and most singular piece of cloth. Now Kanik wanted to have dresses made out of it for himself, but his tailor had not the courage to make them, for he said, "There is (in the embroidery) the figure of a human foot, and whatever trouble I may take, the foot will always lie between the shoulders." And that means the same as we have already mentioned in the story of Bali, the son of Virocana (*i.e.* a sign of subjugation, cf. i. p. 397). Now Kanik felt convinced that the ruler of Kanoj had thereby intended to vilify and disgrace him, and in hot haste he set out with his troops marching against him.

When the *râî* heard this, he was greatly perplexed, for he had no power to resist Kanik. Therefore he consulted his Vazîr, and the latter said: "You have roused a man who was quiet before, and have done unbecoming things. Now cut off my nose and lips, let me be mutilated, that I may find a cunning device; for there is no possibility of an open resistance." The *râî* did with him as he had proposed, and then he went off to the frontiers of the realm.

There he was found by the hostile army, was recognised and brought before Kanik, who asked what was the matter with him. The Vazîr said: "I tried to dissuade *him* from opposing you, and sincerely advised him to be obedient to you. He, however, conceived a suspicion against me and ordered me to be mutilated. Since then he has gone, of his own accord, to a place which a man can only reach by a very long journey when he marches on the high road, but which he may easily reach by undergoing the trouble of crossing an intervening desert, supposing that he can carry with himself water for so and so many days." Thereupon Kanik answered: "The latter is easily done." He ordered water to be carried along, and engaged the Vazîr to show him the road. The Vazîr marched before the king and led him into a boundless desert. After the number of days had elapsed and the road did not come to an end, the king asked the Vazîr what was now to be done. Then the Vazîr said: "No blame attaches to me that I tried to save my master and to destroy his enemy. The nearest road leading out of this desert is that on which you have come. Now do with me as you like, for none will leave this desert alive."

Then Kanik got on his horse and rode round a depression in the soil. In the centre of it he thrust his spear into the earth, and lo! water poured from it in sufficient quantity for the army to drink from and to draw from for the march back. Upon this the Vazîr said: "I had not directed my cunning scheme against powerful angels, but against feeble men. As things stand thus, accept my intercession for the prince, my benefactor, and pardon him." Kanik answered: "I
Page 208. march back from this place. Thy wish is granted to thee. Thy master has already received what is due to him." Kanik returned out of the desert, and the Vazîr went back to his master, the *râî* of Kanoj. There he

found that on the same day when Kanik had thrust his spear into the earth, both the hands and feet had fallen off the body of the *râî*.

End of the Tibetan dynasty, and origin of the Brahman dynasty.

The last king of this race was *Lagatûrmân*, and his Vazír was Kallar, a Brahman. The latter had been fortunate, in so far as he had found by accident hidden treasures, which gave him much influence and power. In consequence, the last king of this Tibetan house, after it had held the royal power for so long a period, let it by degrees slip from his hands. Besides, Lagatûrmân had bad manners and a worse behaviour, on account of which people complained of him greatly to the Vazîr. Now the Vazîr put him in chains and imprisoned him for correction, but then he himself found ruling sweet, his riches enabled him to carry out his plans, and so he occupied the royal throne. After him ruled the Brahman kings Sâmand (Sâmanta), Kamalû, Bhîm (Bhîma), Jaipâl (Jayapâla), Ânandapâla, Tarojanapâla (Trilocanapâla). The latter was killed A.H. 412 (A.D. 1021), and his son Bhîmapâla five years later (A.D. 1026).

This Hindu Shâhiya dynasty is now extinct, and of the whole house there is no longer the slightest remnant in existence. We must say that, in all their grandeur, they never slackened in the ardent desire of doing that which is good and right, that they were men of noble sentiment and noble bearing. I admire the following passage in a letter of Ânandapâla, which he wrote to the prince Maḥmûd, when the relations between them were already strained to the utmost: "I have learned that the Turks have rebelled against you and are spreading in Khurâsân. If you wish, I shall come to you with 5000 horsemen, 10,000 foot-soldiers, and 100 elephants, or, if you wish, I shall send you my son with double the number. In acting thus, I do not speculate on the impression which this will make on you. I have been conquered by *you*, and therefore I do not wish that another man should conquer you."

The same prince cherished the bitterest hatred against the Muhammadans from the time when his son was made a prisoner, whilst his son Tarojanapâla (Trilocanapâla) was the very opposite of his father.

CHAPTER L.

HOW MANY STAR-CYCLES THERE ARE BOTH IN A "KALPA" AND IN A "CATURYUGA."

It is one of the conditions of a *kalpa* that in it the planets, with their apsides and nodes, must unite in 0° of Aries, *i.e.* in the point of the vernal equinox. Therefore each planet makes within a *kalpa* a certain number of complete revolutions or cycles.

The tradition of Alfazârî and Ya'kûb Ibu Târik.

These star-cycles as known through *the canon* of Alfazârî and Ya'ḳûb Ibn Ṭâriḳ, were derived from a Hindu who came to Bagdad as a member of the political mission which Sindh sent to the Khalif Almanṣûr, A.H. 154 (= A.D. 771). If we compare these secondary statements with the primary statements of the Hindus, we discover discrepancies, the cause of which is not known to me. Is their origin due to the translation of Alfazârî and Ya'ḳub? or to the dictation of that Hindu? or to the fact that afterwards these computations have been corrected by Brahmagupta, or some one else? For, certainly, any scholar who becomes aware of mistakes in astronomical computations and takes an interest in the subject, will endeavour to correct them, as, *e.g.* Muḥammad Ibn Isḥâḳ of Sarakhs has done. For he had discovered in the computation of Saturn a falling back behind real time (*i.e.*, that Saturn, according to this computation, revolved slower than it did in reality). Now he assiduously studied the subject, till at last he was convinced that his fault did not originate

Muhammad Ibn Ishâk of Sarakhs.

from the *equation* (*i.e.* from the correction of the places of the stars, the computation of their mean places). Then he added to the cycles of Saturn one cycle more, and compared his calculation with the actual motion of the planet, till at last he found the calculation of the cycles completely to agree with astronomical observation. In accordance with this correction he states the star-cycles in his *canon*.

Âryabhaṭa quoted by Brahmagupta.

Brahmagupta relates a different theory regarding the cycles of the apsides and nodes of the moon, on the authority of Âryabhaṭa. We quote this from Brahmagupta, for we could not read it in the original work of Âryabhaṭa, but only in a quotation in the work of Brahmagupta.

Number of the rotations of the planets in a *kalpa*. Page 203.

The following table contains all these traditions, which will facilitate the study of them, if God will!

The planets.	Number of their revolutions in a Kalpa.	Number of the revolutions of their apsides.	Number of the revolutions of their nodes.
Sun	4,320,000,000	480	Has no node.
Moon. Brahmagupta	57,753,300,000	488,105,858	232,311,168
Moon. The translation of Alfazârî			232,312,138
Moon. Âryabhaṭa		488,219,000	232,316,000
Moon. The anomalistic revolution of the moon according to Brahmagupta		57,265,194,142	The anomalistic revolution of the moon is here treated as if it were the apsis, being the difference between the motion of the moon and that of the apsis. (See the *notes*.)
Mars	2,296,828,522	292	267
Mercury	17,936,998,984	332	521
Jupiter	364,226,455	855	63
Venus	7,022,389,492	653	893
Saturn. Brahmagupta	146,567,298	41	584
Saturn. The translation of Alfazârî	146,569,284		
Saturn. The correction of Alsarakhsî	146,569,238		
The fixed stars	120,000 according to the translation of Alfazârî.		

Cycles of the planets in a *caturyuga* and *kaliyuga*.

The computation of these cycles rests on the mean motion of the planets. As a *caturyuga* is, according to Brahmagupta, the one-thousandth part of a *kalpa*, we have only to divide these cycles by 1000, and the quotient is the number of the star-cycles in one *caturyuga*.

Likewise, if we divide the cycles of the table by 10,000, the quotient is the number of the star-cycles in a *kaliyuga*, for this is one-tenth of a *caturyuga*. The fractions which may occur in those quotients are raised to wholes, to *caturyugas* or *kaliyugas*, by being multiplied by a number equal to the denominator of the fraction.

The following table represents the star-cycles specially in a *caturyuga* and *kaliyuga*, not those in a *manvantara*. Although the *manvantaras* are nothing but multiplications of whole *caturyugas*, still it is difficult to reckon with them on account of the *saṁdhi* which is attached both to the beginning and to the end of them.

Page 210.

The names of the planets.	Their revolutions in a Caturyuga.	Their revolutions in a Kaliyuga.
Sun	4,320,000	432,000
His apsis	$0\frac{12}{25}$	$0\frac{60}{1250}$
Moon	57,753,300	5,775,330
Her apsis Brahmagupta	$488,105\frac{429}{500}$	$48,810\frac{2929}{5000}$
Âryabhaṭa	488,219	$48,821\frac{9}{10}$
Her anomalistic revolution	$57,265,194\frac{71}{500}$	$5,726,519\frac{2071}{5000}$
Her node Brahmagupta	$232,311\frac{21}{125}$	$23,231\frac{292}{2500}$
The translation of Alfazârî	$232,312\frac{69}{500}$	$23,231\frac{1069}{5000}$
Âryabhaṭa	232,316	$23,231\frac{3}{5}$
Mars	$2,296,828\frac{261}{500}$	$229,682\frac{4261}{5000}$
His apsis	$0\frac{73}{250}$	$0\frac{73}{2500}$
His node	$0\frac{267}{1000}$	$0\frac{267}{10000}$
Mercury	$17,936,998\frac{123}{125}$	$1,793,699\frac{1123}{1250}$
His apsis	$0\frac{83}{250}$	$0\frac{83}{2500}$
His node	$0\frac{521}{1000}$	$0\frac{521}{10000}$
Jupiter	$364,226\frac{91}{200}$	$36,422\frac{1291}{2000}$
His apsis	$0\frac{171}{200}$	$0\frac{171}{2000}$
His node	$0\frac{63}{1000}$	$0\frac{63}{10000}$

The names of the planets.	Their revolutions in a Caturyuga.	Their revolutions in a Kaliyuga.
Venus	$7,022,389\frac{123}{250}$	$702,238\frac{2373}{2500}$
Her apsis	$0\frac{653}{1000}$	$0\frac{653}{10000}$
Her node	$0\frac{893}{1000}$	$0\frac{893}{10000}$
Saturn	$146,567\frac{149}{500}$	$14,656\frac{3649}{5000}$
His apsis	$0\frac{41}{1000}$	$0\frac{41}{10000}$
His node	$0\frac{73}{125}$	$0\frac{73}{1250}$
Saturn: The translation of Alfazârî	$146,569\frac{71}{250}$	$14,656\frac{2321}{2500}$
Saturn: The correction of Alsarakhsî	$146,569\frac{119}{500}$	$14,656\frac{4619}{5000}$
The fixed stars	120	12

Page 211.
Star-cycles of a *kalpa* and *caturyuga*, according to Pulisa.

After we have stated how many of the star-cycles of a *kalpa* fall in a *caturyuga* and in a *kaliyuga*, according to Brahmagupta, we shall now derive from the number of star-cycles of a *caturyuga* according to Pulisa the number of star-cycles of a *kalpa*, first reckoning a *kalpa* = 1000 *caturyugas*, and, secondly, reckoning it as 1008 *caturyugas*. These numbers are contained in the following table :—

The Yugas according to Pulisa.

The names of the planets.	Number of their revolutions in a Caturyuga.	Number of their revolutions in a Kalpa of 1000 Caturyugas.	Number of their revolutions in a Kalpa of 1008 Caturyugas.
Sun	4,320,000	4,320,000,000	4,354,560,000
Moon	57,753,336	57,753,336,000	58,215,362,688
Her apsis	488,219	488,219,000	492,124,752
Her node	232,226	232,226,000	234,083,808
Mars	2,296,824	2,296,824,000	2,315,198,592
Mercury	17,937,000	17,937,000,000	18,080,496,000
Jupiter	364,220	364,220,000	367,133,760
Venus	7,022,388	7,022,388,000	7,078,567,104
Saturn	146,564	146,564,000	147,736,512

Transformation of the word Âryabhaṭa among the Arabs.

We meet in this context with a curious circumstance. Evidently Alfazârî and Ya'ḳûb sometimes heard from their Hindu master expressions to this effect, that his calculation of the star-cycles was that of *the great Siddhânta, whilst Âryabhaṭa reckoned with one-thousandth* *part of it.* They apparently did not understand him properly, and imagined that *âryabhata* (Arab. *ârjabhad*) meant *a thousandth part.* The Hindus pronounce the *ḍ* of this word something between a *d* and an *r*. So the consonant became changed to an *r*, and people wrote *ârjabhar*. Afterwards it was still more mutilated, the first *r* being changed to a *z*, and so people wrote *ázjabhar*. If the word in this garb wanders back to the Hindus, they will not recognise it.

Star-cycles according to Abû-alḥasan of Al'ahwâz.

Further, Abû-alḥasan of Al'ahwâz mentions the revolutions of the planets in *the years of al-arjabhar*, *i.e.* in *caturyugas*. I shall represent them in the table such as I have found them, for I guess that they are directly derived from the dictation of that Hindu. Possibly, therefore, they give us the theory of Âryabhaṭa. Some of these numbers agree with the star-cycles in a *caturyuga*, which we have mentioned on the authority of Brahmagupta; others differ from them, and agree with the theory of Pulisa; and a third class of numbers differs from those of both Brahmagupta and Pulisa, as the examination of the whole table will show.

Page 212.

The names of the planets.	Their Yugas as parts of a Caturyuga according to Abû-alḥasan Al'ahwâz.
Sun	4,320,000
Moon	57,753,336
Her apsis . .	488,219
Her node . .	232,226
Mars	2,296,828
Mercury . . .	17,937,020
Jupiter . . .	364,224
Venus	7,022,388
Saturn . . .	146,564

CHAPTER LI.

AN EXPLANATION OF THE TERMS "ADHIMÂSA," "ÛNARÂTRA," AND THE "AHARGANAS," AS REPRESENTING DIFFERENT SUMS OF DAYS.

On the leap month.

THE months of the Hindus are lunar, their years solar; therefore their new year's day must in each solar year fall by so much earlier as the lunar year is shorter than the solar (roughly speaking, by eleven days). If this precession makes up one complete month, they act in the same way as the Jews, who make the year a leap year of thirteen months by reckoning the month Adar twice, and in a similar way to the heathen Arabs, who in a so-called *annus procrastinationis* postponed the new year's day, thereby extending the preceding year to the duration of thirteen months.

The Hindus call the year in which a month is repeated in the common language *malamâsa. Mala* means the dirt that clings to the hand. As such dirt is thrown away, thus the leap month is thrown away out of the calculation, and the number of the months of a year remains twelve. However, in the literature the leap month is called *adhimâsa.*

That month is repeated within which (it being considered as a solar month) two lunar months finish. If the end of the lunar month coincides with the beginning of the solar month, if, in fact, the former ends before any part of the latter has elapsed, this month is repeated, because the end of the lunar month, although it has not yet run into the new solar month, still does no longer form part of the preceding month.

If a month is repeated, the first time it has its ordinary name, whilst the second time they add before the name the word *durâ* to distinguish between them. If, *e.g.* the month Âshâḍha is repeated, the first is called Âshâḍha, the second *Durâshâḍha*. The first month is that which is disregarded in the calculation. The Hindus consider it as unlucky, and do not celebrate any of the festivals in it which they celebrate in the other months. The most unlucky time in this month is that day on which the lunation reaches its end.

Page 213.

Quotation from the *Vishṇu-Dharma*.

The author of the *Vishṇu-Dharma* says: "*Candra* (*mâna*) is smaller than *sâvana*, *i.e.* the lunar year is smaller than the civil year, by six days, *i.e.* *ûnarâtra*. *Ûna* means *decrease*, *deficiency*. *Saura* is greater than *candra* by eleven days, which gives in two years and seven months the supernumerary *adhimâsa* month. This whole month is unlucky, and nothing must be done in it."

This is a rough description of the matter. We shall now describe it accurately.

The lunar year has 360 lunar days, the solar year has $371\frac{31}{480}$ lunar days. This difference sums up to the thirty days of an *adhimâsa* in the course of $976\frac{4176}{47799}$ lunar days, *i.e.* in 32 months, or in 2 years, 8 months, 16 days, *plus* the fraction: $\frac{4176}{47799}$ lunar day, which is nearly = 5 minutes, 15 seconds.

Quotation from the *Veda*.

As the religious reason of this theory of intercalation the Hindus mention a passage of the *Veda*, which they have read to us, to the following tenor: "If the day of conjunction, *i.e.* the first lunar day of the month, passes without the sun's marching from one zodiacal sign to the other, and if this takes place on the following day, the preceding month falls out of the calculation."

Criticisms thereon.

The meaning of this passage is not correct, and the fault must have risen with the man who recited and translated the passage to me. For a month has thirty lunar days, and a twelfth part of the solar year has $30\frac{5311}{5760}$ lunar days. This fraction, reckoned in day-minutes, is equal to $55^{\mathrm{i}}\ 19^{\mathrm{ii}}\ 22^{\mathrm{iii}}\ 30^{\mathrm{iv}}$. If we now, for example, suppose a conjunction or new moon to take place at 0° of a zodiacal sign, we add this fraction to the time of the conjunction, and thereby we find the times of the sun's entering the signs successively. As now the difference between a lunar and a solar month is only a fraction of a day, the sun's entering a new sign may naturally take place on any of the days of the month. It may even happen that the sun enters two consecutive signs on the same month-day (*e.g.* on the second or third of two consecutive months). This is the case if in one month the sun enters a sign before $4^{\mathrm{i}}\ 40^{\mathrm{ii}}\ 37^{\mathrm{iii}}\ 30^{\mathrm{iv}}$ have elapsed of it; for the next following entering a sign falls later by $55^{\mathrm{i}}\ 19^{\mathrm{ii}}\ 23^{\mathrm{iii}}\ 30^{\mathrm{iv}}$, and both these fractions (*i.e.* less than $4^{\mathrm{i}}\ 40^{\mathrm{ii}}\ 37^{\mathrm{iii}}\ 30^{\mathrm{iv}}$ *plus* the last-mentioned fraction) added together are not sufficient to make up one complete day. Therefore the quotation from the *Veda* is not correct.

Proposed explanation of the Vedic passage.

I suppose, however, that it may have the following correct meaning:—If a month elapses in which the sun does not march from one sign to another, this month is disregarded in the calculation. For if the sun enters a sign on the 29th of a month, when at least $4^{\mathrm{i}}\ 40^{\mathrm{ii}}\ 37^{\mathrm{iii}}\ 30^{\mathrm{iv}}$ have elapsed of it, this entering takes place before the beginning of the succeeding month, and therefore the latter month is without an entering of the sun into a new sign, because the next following entering falls on the first of the next but one or third month. If you compute the consecutive enterings, beginning with a conjunction taking place in 0° of a certain sign, you Page 214. find that in the thirty-third month the sun enters a new sign at $30^{\mathrm{i}}\ 20^{\mathrm{ii}}$ of the twenty-ninth day, and that he enters the next following sign at $25^{\mathrm{i}}\ 39^{\mathrm{ii}}\ 22^{\mathrm{iii}}\ 30^{\mathrm{iv}}$ of the first day of the thirty-fifth month.

Hence also becomes evident why this month, which is disregarded in the calculation, is considered as unlucky. The reason is that the month misses just that moment which is particularly adapted to earn in it a heavenly reward, viz. the moment of the sun's entering a new sign.

As regards *adhimâsa*, the word means *the first month*, for AD means *beginning* (*i.e. âdi*). In the books of Ya'ḳûb Ibn Ṭâriḳ and of Alfazârî this name is written *padamâsa*. *Pada* (in the orig. *P–Dh*) means *end*, and it is possible that the Hindus call the leap month by both names; but the reader must be aware that these two authors frequently misspell or disfigure the Indian words, and that there is no reliance on their tradition. I only mention this because Pulisa explains the latter of the *two* months, which are called by the same name, as the supernumerary one.

Explanation of the terms *universal* or *partial* months and days.

The month, as the time from one conjunction to the following, is one revolution of the moon, which revolves through the ecliptic, but in a course distant from that of the sun. This is the difference between the motions of the two heavenly luminaries, whilst the direction in which they move is the same. If we subtract the revolutions of the sun, *i.e.* the solar cycles of a *kalpa*, from its lunar cycles, the remainder shows how many more lunar months a *kalpa* has than solar months. All months or days which we reckon as parts of whole *kalpas* we call here *universal*, and all months or days which we reckon as parts of a part of a *kalpa*, *e.g.* of a *caturyuga*, we call *partial*, for the purpose of simplifying the terminology.

Universal *adhimâsa* months.

The year has twelve solar months, and likewise twelve lunar months. The lunar year is complete with twelve months, whilst the solar year, in consequence of the difference of the two year kinds, has, with the addition of the *adhimâsa*, thirteen months. Now evidently the difference between the universal solar and lunar months is represented by these supernumerary months, by which a single year is extended to thirteen months. These, therefore, are the *universal adhimâsa* months.

The *universal* solar months of a *kalpa* are 51,840,000,000; the *universal* lunar months of a *kalpa* are 53,433,300,000. The difference between them or the *adhimâsa* months is 1,593,300,000.

Multiplying each of these numbers by 30, we get days, viz. solar days of a *kalpa*, 1,555,200,000,000; lunar days, 1,602,999,000,000; the days of the *adhimâsa* months, 47,799,000,000.

In order to reduce these numbers to smaller ones we divide them by a common divisor, viz. 9,000,000. Thus we get as the sum of the days of the solar months 172,800; as the sum of the days of the lunar months, 178,111; and as the sum of the days of the *adhimâsa* months, 5311.

How many solar, lunar, and civil days are required for the formation of an *adhimâsa* month.

If we further divide the *universal solar*, *civil*, and *lunar* days of a *kalpa*, each kind of them separately, by the *universal adhimâsa* months, the quotient represents the number of days within which a whole *adhimâsa* month sums up, viz. in $976\frac{464}{5311}$ solar days, in $1006\frac{464}{5311}$ lunar days, and in $990\frac{3663}{10622}$ civil days.

This whole computation rests on the measures

The latter method applied to the gauge-year.

till the moment of the gauge-date are 1,972,948,132. We write down this number in three different places. The upper number we multiply by ten, by which it gets a cipher more at the right side. The middle number we multiply by 2481 and get the product 4,894,884,315,492. The lower number we multiply by 7739, and get the product 15,268,645,593,548. The latter two numbers we divide by 9600; thereby we get for the *middle* number as quotient 509,883,782 and a remainder of 8292, and for the lower number a quotient of 1,590,483,915 and a remainder of 9548. The sum of these two remainders is 17,840. This fraction (*i.e.* $\frac{17,840}{9600}$) is reckoned as one whole. Thereby the sum of the numbers in all three places is raised to 21,829,849,018, *i.e. adhimâsa* days, *plus* $\frac{103}{120}$ day of the current *adhimâsa* day (*i.e.* which is now in course of summing up).

Page 222.

Reducing these days to months, we get 727,661,633 months and a remainder of twenty-eight days, which is called *Sh-D-D*. This is the interval between the beginning of the month Caitra, which is not omitted in the series of months, and the moment of the vernal equinox.

Further, adding the quotient which we have got for the middle number to the years of the *kalpa*, we get the sum of 2,482,831,914. Dividing this number by 7, we get the remainder 3. Therefore the sun has, in the year in question, entered Aries on a Tuesday.

Explanatory note to the latter method.

The two numbers which are used as multiplicators for the numbers in the middle and lower places are to be explained in the following manner:—

Dividing the *civil* days of a *kalpa* by the solar cycles of a *kalpa*, we get as quotient the number of days which compose a year, *i.e.* $365\frac{1,116,450,000}{4,320,000,000}$. Reducing this fraction by the common divisor of 450,000, we get $365\frac{2481}{9600}$. The fraction may be further reduced by being divided by 3, but people leave it as it is, in order that this fraction and the other fractions which occur in the further course of this computation should have the same denominator.

Dividing the universal *ûnarâtra* days by the solar years of a *kalpa*, the quotient is the number of *ûnarâtra* days which belong to a solar year, viz. $5\frac{3,482,550,000}{4,320,000,000}$ days. Reducing this fraction by the common divisor of 450,000, we get $5\frac{7739}{9600}$ days. The fraction may further be reduced by being divided by 3.

The measures of solar and lunar years are about 360 days, as are also the *civil* years of sun and moon, the one being a little larger, the other a little shorter. The one of these measures, the lunar year, is used in this computation, whilst the other measure, the solar year, is sought for. The sum of the two quotients (of the middle and lower number) is the difference between the two kinds of years. The upper number is multiplied by the sum of the complete days, and the middle and lower numbers are multiplied by each of the two fractions.

Simplification of the same method.

If we want to abbreviate the computation, and do not, like the Hindus, wish to find the mean motions of sun and moon, we add the two multiplicators of the middle and lower numbers together. This gives the sum of 10,220.

To this sum we add, for the upper place, the product of the divisor × 10 = 96,000, and we get $\frac{106,220}{9600}$. Reducing this fraction by the half, we get $\frac{5311}{480}$.

In this chapter (p. 27) we have already explained that by multiplying the days by 5311, and dividing the product by 172,800, we get the number of the *adhimâsas*. If we now multiply the number of years instead of the days, the product is $\frac{1}{360}$ of the product which we should get when multiplying by the number of days. If we, therefore, want to have the same quotient which we get by the first division, we must divide by $\frac{1}{360}$ of the divisor by which we divided in the first case, viz. 480 (for 360 × 480 = 172,800).

Page 223.

A second method for finding the *adhimâsa*, according to Pulisa.

Similar to this method is that one prescribed by Pulisa: "Write down the number of the partial months in two different places. In the one place multiply it by 1111, and divide the product by 67,500. Subtract the quotient from the number in the other place, and divide the remainder by 32. The quotient is the number of the *adhimâsa* months, and the fraction in the quotient, if there is one, represents that part of an *adhimâsa* month which is in course of formation. Multiplying this amount by 30, and dividing the product by 32, the quotient represents the days and day-fractions of the current *adhimâsa* month."

The rationale of this method is the following:—

Explication of the method of Pulisa.

If you divide the solar months of a *caturyuga* by the *adhimâsa* months of a *caturyuga*, in accordance with the theory of Pulisa, you get as quotient $32\frac{35,552}{66,389}$. If you divide the months by this number, you get the complete *adhimâsa* months of the past portion of the *caturyuga* or *kalpa*. Pulisa, however, wanted to divide by wholes alone, without any fractions. Therefore he had to subtract something from the dividendum, as has already been explained in a similar case (p. 36). We have found, in applying the computation to our gauge-year, as the fraction of the divisor, $\frac{35,552}{2,160,000}$, which may be reduced by being divided by 32. Thereby we get $\frac{1111}{67,500}$.

Pulisa has, in this calculation, reckoned by the solar days into which a date is resolved, instead of by months.

Further quotation from Pulisa.

For he says: "You write this number of days in two different places. In the one place you multiply it by 271 and divide the product by 4,050,000. The quotient you subtract from the number in the other place and divide the remainder by 976. The quotient is the number of *adhimâsa* months, days, and day-fractions."

Further he says: "The reason of this is, that by dividing the days of a *caturyuga* by the *adhimâsa* months, you get as quotient 976 days and a remainder of 104,064. The common divisor for this number and for the divisor is 384. Reducing the fraction thereby, we get $\frac{271}{2,050,000}$ days."

Criticisms on the passage from Pulisa.

Here, however, I suspect either the copyist or the translator, for Pulisa was too good a scholar to commit similar blunders. The matter is this:—

Those days which are divided by the *adhimâsa* months are of necessity *solar* days. The quotient contains wholes and fractions, as has been stated. Both denominator and numerator have as common divisor the number 24. Reducing the fraction thereby, we get $\frac{4336}{66,389}$.

If we apply this rule to the months, and reduce the number of *adhimâsa* months to fractions, we get 47,800,000 as denominator. A divisor common to both this denominator and its numerator is 16. Reducing the fraction thereby, we get $\frac{271}{2,800,000}$.

If we now multiply the number which Pulisa adopts as divisor by the just-mentioned common divisor, *i.e.* 384, we get the product 1,555,200,000, viz. solar days in a *caturyuga*. But it is quite impossible that this number should, in this part of the calculation, be used as a divisor. If we want to base this method on the rules of Brahmagupta, dividing the universal solar months by the *adhimâsa* months, the result will be, according to the method employed by him, double the amount of the *adhimâsa*.

Method for the computation of the ûnarâtra days.

Further, a similar method may be used for the computation of the *ûnarâtra* days.

Write down the partial lunar days in two different places. In the one place, multiply the number by 50,663, and divide the product by 3,562,220. Subtract the quotient from the number in the other place, and divide the remainder by 63 without any fraction.

Page 224. In the further very lengthy speculations of the

Hindus there is no use at all, especially as they require the *avama*, *i.e.* the remainder of the partial *ûnarâtra*, for the remainders which we get by the two divisions have two different denominators.

Rule how to construct a chronological date from a certain given number of days. The converse of the *ahargaṇa*.

He who is perfectly acquainted with the preceding rules of resolution will also be able to carry out the opposite function, the composition, if a certain amount of past days of a *kalpa* or *caturyuga* be given. To make sure, however, we shall now repeat the necessary rules.

If we want to find the years, the days being given, the latter must necessarily be *civil* days, *i.e.* the difference between the lunar days and the *ûnarâtra* days. This difference (*i.e.* the *civil* days) stands in the same relation to their *ûnarâtra* as the difference between the universal lunar days and the universal *ûnarâtra* days, viz. 1,577,916,450,000, to the universal *ûnarâtra* days. The latter number (*i.e.* 1,577,916,450,000) is represented by 3,506,481. If we multiply the given days by 55,739, and divide the product by 3,506,481, the quotient represents the partial *ûnarâtra* days. Adding hereto the civil days, we get the number of lunar days, viz. the sum of the partial solar and the partial *adhimâsa* days. These lunar days stand in the same relation to the *adhimâsa* days which belong to them as the sum of the universal solar and *adhimâsa* days, viz. 160,299,900,000, to the universal *adhimâsa* days, which number (*i.e.* 160,299,900,000) is represented by the number 178,111.

If you, further, multiply the partial lunar days by 5311, and divide the product by 178,111, the quotient is the number of the partial *adhimâsa* days. Subtracting them from the lunar days, the remainder is the number of solar days. Thereupon you reduce the days to months by dividing them by 30, and the months to years by dividing them by 12. This is what we want to find.

E.g. the partial civil days which have elapsed up to

Application of the rule to the gauge-year.

our gauge-year are 720,635,951,963. This number is given, and what we want to find is, how many Indian years and months are equal to this sum of days.

First, we multiply the number by 55,739, and divide the product by 3,506,481. The quotient is 11,455,224,575 *ûnarâtra* days.

We add this number to the civil days. The sum is 732,091,176,538 lunar days. We multiply them by 5311, and divide the product by 178,111. The quotient is the number of *adhimâsa* days, viz. 21,829,849,018.

We subtract them from the lunar days and get the remainder of 710,261,327,520, *i.e.* partial solar days. We divide these by 30 and get the quotient of 23,675,377,584, *i.e.* solar months. Dividing them by 12, we get Indian years, viz. 1,972,948,132, the same number of years of which our gauge-date consists, as we have already mentioned in a previous passage.

Rule for the same purpose given by Ya'kûb Ibn Târik.

Ya'kûb Ibn Târik has a note to the same effect: "Multiply the given civil days by the universal lunar days and divide the product by the universal civil days. Write down the quotient in two different places. In the one place multiply the number by the universal *adhimâsa* days and divide the product by the universal lunar days. The quotient gives the *adhimâsa* months. Multiply them by 30 and subtract the product from the number in the other place. The remainder is the number of partial solar days. You further reduce them to months and years."

Explanation of the latter method.

The rationale of this calculation is the following:— We have already mentioned that the given number of days are the difference between the lunar days and their *ûnarâtra*, as the universal civil days are the difference between the universal lunar days and their universal *ûnarâtra*. These two measures stand in a constant relation to each other. Therefore we get the partial lunar days which are marked in two different places. Now, these are equal to the sum of the solar

Page 223.

and *adhimâsa* days, as the general lunar days are equal to the sum of universal solar days and universal *adhimâsa* days. Therefore the partial and the universal *adhimâsa* days stand in the same relation to each other as the two numbers written in two different places, there being no difference, whether they both mean months or days.

Ya'ḳûb's method for the computation of the partial *ûnarâtra* days.

The following rule of Ya'ḳûb for the computation of the partial *ûnarâtra* days by means of the partial *adhimasa* months is found in all the manuscripts of his book:—

"The past *adhimâsa*, together with the fractions of the current *adhimâsa*, are multiplied by the universal *ûnarâtra* days, and the product is divided by the universal solar months. The quotient is added to the *adhimâsa*. The sum is the number of the past *ûnarâtras*."

Criticism hereon.

This rule does not, as I think, show that its author knew the subject thoroughly, nor that he had much confidence either in analogy or experiment. For the *adhimâsa* months which have passed of the *caturyuga* up to our gauge-date are, according to the theory of Pulisa, 1,196,525$\frac{44837}{45000}$. Multiplying this number by the *ûnarâtra* of the *caturyuga*, we get the product 30,011,600,068,426$\frac{51}{125}$. Dividing this number by the solar months, we get the quotient 578,927. Adding this to the *adhimâsa*, we get the sum 1,775.452: And this is not what we wanted to find. On the contrary, the number of *ûnarâtra* days is 18.835.700. Nor is the product of the multiplication of this number by 30 that which we wanted to find. On the contrary, it is 53,263,560. Both numbers are far away from the truth.

CHAPTER LIII.

ON THE AHARGAṆA, OR THE RESOLUTION OF YEARS INTO MONTHS, ACCORDING TO SPECIAL RULES WHICH ARE ADOPTED IN THE CALENDARS FOR CERTAIN DATES OR MOMENTS OF TIME.

Method of *ahargaṇa* as applied to special dates.

NOT all the eras which in the calendars are resolved into days have epochs falling at such moments of time when just an *adhimâsa* or *ûnarâtra* happens to be complete. Therefore the authors of the calendars require for the calculation of *adhimâsa* and *ûnarâtra* certain numbers which either must be added or subtracted if the calculation is to proceed in good order. We shall communicate to the reader whatever of these rules we happened to learn by the study of their calendars or astronomical handbooks.

First, we mention the rule of the *Khaṇḍakhâdyaka*, because this calendar is the best known of all, and preferred by the astronomers to all others.

Method of the Khaṇḍakhâdyaka.

Brahmagupta says: "Take the year of the *Śakakâla*, subtract therefrom 587, multiply the remainder by 12, and add to the product the complete months which have elapsed of the year in question. Multiply the sum by 30, and add to the product the days which have elapsed of the current month. The sum represents the partial solar days.

"Write down this number in three different places. Add 5 both to the middle and lower numbers, and divide the lowest one by 14,945. Subtract the quotient from the middle number, and disregard the remainder which you have got by the division. Divide the middle number by 976. The quotient is the number of complete *adhimâsa* months, and the remainder is that which has elapsed of the current *adhimâsa* month.

"Multiply these months by 30, and add the product to the upper number. The sum is the number of the partial lunar days. Let them stand in the upper place, and write the same number in the middle place. Multiply it by 11, and add thereto 497. Write this sum in the lower place. Then divide the sum by 111,573. Subtract the quotient from the middle number, and disregard the remainder (which you get by the division). Further, divide the middle number by 703, and the quotient represents the *ûnarâtra* days, the remainder the *avamas*. Subtract the *ûnarâtra* days from the upper number. The remainder is the number of civil days." Page 226.

This is the *ahargaṇa* of the *Khaṇḍakhâdyaka*. Dividing the number by 7, the remainder indicates the weekday on which the date in question falls.

Application of this method to the gauge-year.

We exemplify this rule in the case of our gauge-year. The corresponding year of the *Śakakâla* is 953. We subtract therefrom 587, and get the remainder 366. We multiply it by the product of 12 × 30, since the date is without months and days. The product is 131.760, *i.e.* solar days.

We write down this number in three different places. We add 5 to the middle and lower numbers, whereby we get 131,765 in both places. We divide the lower number by 14,945. The quotient is 8, which we subtract from the middle number, and here we get the remainder 131,757. Then we disregard the remainder in which the division has resulted.

Further, we divide the middle number by 976. The quotient 134 represents the number of months. There is besides a remainder of $\frac{973}{976}$. Multiplying the months by 30, we get the product 4020, which we add to the solar days. Thereby we get lunar days, viz. 135,780. We write down this number below the three numbers, multiply it by 11, and add 497 to the product. Thus we get the sum 1,494,077. We write this number below the four numbers, and divide it by 111,573. The quotient is 13, and the remainder, *i.e.* 43,628, is disregarded. We subtract the quotient from the middle number. Thus we get the remainder, 1,494,064. We divide it by 703. The quotient is 2125, and the remainder, *i.e. avama*, is $\frac{189}{703}$. We subtract the quotient from the lunar days, and get the remainder 133,655. These are the civil days which we want to find. Dividing them by 7, we get 4 as remainder. Therefore the 1st of the month Caitra of the gauge-year falls on a Wednesday.

The epoch of the era of Yazdajird precedes the epoch of this era (v. era nr. 5, p. 7) by 11,968 days. Therefore the sum of the days of the era of Yazdajird up to our gauge-date is 145,623 days. Dividing them by the Persian year and months, we get as the corresponding Persian date *the year of Yazdajird* 399, *the* 18*th Isfandârmadh*. Before the *adhimâsa* month becomes complete with 30 days, there must still elapse five *ghaṭî*, *i.e.* two hours. In consequence, the year is a leap year, and Caitra is the month which is reckoned twice in it.

Method of the Arabic book *Al-arkand*. The following is the method of the canon or calendar *Al-arkand*, according to a bad translation: "If you want to know the *Arkand*, i.e. *ahargaṇa*, take 90, multiply it by 6, add to the product 8, and the years of the realm of Sindh, *i.e.* the time till the month Ṣafar, A.H. 117, which corresponds to the Caitra of the year 109. Subtract therefrom 587, and the remainder represents the years of the *Shakh*.

An easier method is the following: "Take the complete years of the *Aera Yazdagirdi*, and subtract therefrom 33. The remainder represents the years of the *Shakh*. Or you may also begin with the original ninety years of the *Arkand.* Multiply them by 6, and add 14 to the product. Add to the sum the years of the *Aera Yazdajirdi,* and subtract therefrom 587. The remainder represents the years of the *Shakh.*"

Critical notes on the latter method.

I believe that the here-mentioned *Shakh* is identical with *Śaka.* However, the result of this calculation does not lead us to the *Śaka era,* but to the *Gupta era,* which here is resolved into days. If the author of the *Arkand* began with 90, multiplied them by 6, added thereto 8, which would give 548, and did not change this number by an increase of years, the matter would come to the same result, and would be more easy and simple.

The first of the month Ṣafar, which the author of the latter method mentions, coincides with the eighth Daimâh of the year 103 of Yazdajird. Therefore he makes the month Caitra depend upon the new moon of Daimâh. However, the Persian months have since that time been in advance of real time, because the day-quarters (after the 365 complete days) have no longer been intercalated. According to the author, the era of the realm of Sindh which he mentions must precede the era of Yazdajird by six years. Accordingly, the years of this era for our gauge-year would be 405. These together with the years of the Arkand, with which the author begins, viz. 548, represent the sum of 953 years as the year of the *Śakakâla.* By the subtraction of that amount which the author has mentioned, it is changed into the corresponding year of the *Guptakâla.*

Page 227.

The other details of this method of resolution or *ahargaṇa* are identical with those of the method of the *Khaṇḍakhâdyaka,* as we have described it. Sometimes you find in a manuscript such a reading as prescribes the division by 1000 instead of by 976, but this is simply a mistake of the manuscripts, as such a method is without any foundation.

Next follows the method of Vijayanandin in his

Method of the canon *Karaṇatilaka*.

canon called *Karaṇatilaka:* "Take the years of the Śakakâla, subtract therefrom 888, multiply the remainder by 12, and add to the product the complete months of the current year which have elapsed. Write down the sum in two different places. Multiply the one number by 900, add 661 to the product, and divide the sum by 29,282. The quotient represents *adhimâsa* months. Add it to the number in the second place, multiply the sum by 30, and add to the product the days which have elapsed of the current month. The sum represents the lunar days. Write down this number in two different places. Multiply the one number by 3300, add to the product 64,106, divide the sum by 210,902. The quotient represents the *ûnarâtra* days, and the remainder the *avamas*. Subtract the *ûnarâtra* days from the lunar days. The remainder is the *ahargaṇa*, being reckoned from midnight as the beginning."

Application of this method to the gauge-year.

We exemplify this method in the use of our gauge-year. We subtract from the corresponding year of the Śakakâla (953) 888, and there remains 65. This number of years is equal to 780 months. We write down this number in two different places. In the one place we multiply it by 900, add thereto 661, and divide the product by 29,282. The quotient gives $23\frac{29175}{29282}$ *adhimâsa* months.

The multiplicator is 30. By being multiplied by it, the months are changed into days. The product, however, is again multiplied by 30. The divisor is the product of the multiplication of 976 *plus* the following fraction by 30, the effect of which is that both numbers belong to the same kind (*i.e.* that both represent days). Further, we add the resulting number of months to those months which we have previously found. By multiplying the sum by 30, we get the product of 24,060 (*read* 24,090), *i.e.* lunar days.

We write them down in two different places. The one number we multiply by 3300 and get the product

79,398,000 (*read* 79,497,000). Adding thereto 64,106 (*read* 69,601), we get the sum 79,462,104 (*read* 79,566,601). By dividing it by 210,902, we get the quotient 376 (*read* 307), *i.e. ûnarâtra* days, and a remainder of $\frac{162952}{210902}$ (*read* $\frac{56547}{210902}$), *i.e.* the *avamas.* We subtract the *ûnarâtra* days from the lunar days, written in the second place, and the remainder is the *civil ahargaṇa, i.e.* the sum of the civil days, viz. 23,684 (*read* 23,713).

Method of the *Pañca-Siddhântikâ.*

The method of the *Pañca-Siddhântikâ* of Varâhamihira is the following: "Take the years of the *Śakakâla,* subtract therefrom 427. Change the remainder into months by multiplying it by 12. Write down that number in two different places. Multiply the one number by 7 and divide the product by 228. The quotient is the number of *adhimâsa* months. Add them to the number written down in the second place, multiply the sum by 30, and add to the product the days which have elapsed of the current month. Write down the sum in two different places. Multiply the lower number by 11, add to the product 514, and divide the sum by 703. Subtract the quotient from the number written in the upper place. The remainder you get is the number of the civil days." Page 228.

This, Varâhamihira says, is the method of the Siddhânta of the Greeks.

Application of this method to the gauge-year.

We exemplify this method in one of our gauge-years. From the years of the Śakakâla we subtract 427. The remainder, *i.e.* 526 years, is equal to 6312 months. The corresponding number of *adhimâsa* months is 193 and a remainder of $\frac{15}{19}$. The sum of these months together with the other months is 6505, which are equal to 195,150 lunar days.

The additions which occur in this method are required on account of the fractions of time which adhere to the epoch of the era in question. The multiplication by 7 is for the purpose of reducing the number to seventh parts.

The divisor is the number of sevenths of the time of one *adhimâsa*, which he reckons as 32 months, 17 days, 8 *ghaṭî*, and about 34 *cashaka*.

Further, we write down the lunar days in two different places. The lower number we multiply by 11, and add to the product 514. The sum is 2,147,164. Dividing it by 703, we get the quotient 3054, *i.e.* the *ûnarâtra* days, and a remainder of $\frac{202}{703}$. We subtract the days from the number in the second place, and get the remainder 192,096, *i.e.* the civil days of the date on which we base the chronological computations of this book.

The theory of Varâhamihira comes very near that of Brahmagupta; for here the fraction at the end of the number of the *adhimâsa* days of the gauge-date is $\frac{15}{16}$, whilst in the calculations which we have made, starting from the beginning of the *kalpa*, we found it to be $\frac{103}{120}$, which is nearly equal to $\frac{15}{17}$ (*cf.* p. 29).

Method of the Arabic canon *Al-harḳan*.

In a Muhammadan canon or calendar called *the canon Al-harḳan* we find the same method of calculation, but applied to and starting from another era, the epoch of which must fall 40,081 (days) after that of the era of Yazdajird. According to this book, the beginning of the Indian year falls on Sunday the 21st of Daimâh of the year 110 of Yazdajird. The method may be tested in the following manner:—

"Take seventy-two years, change them into months by multiplying them by 12, which gives the product 864. Add thereto the months which have elapsed between the 1st of Shaʿbân of the year 197, and the 1st of the month in which you happen to be. Write down the sum in two different places. Multiply the lower number by 7 and divide the product by 228. Add the quotient to the upper number and multiply the sum by 30. Add to the product the number of days which have elapsed of the month in which you are. Write down this number in two different places.

Add 38 to the lower number and multiply the sum by 11. Divide the product by 703, and subtract the quotient from the upper number. The remainder in the upper place is the number of the civil days, and the remainder in the lower place is the number of the *avamas*. Add 1 to the number of days and divide the sum by 7. The remainder shows the day of the week on which the date in question falls."

This method would be correct if the months of the seventy-two years with which the calculation begins were lunar. However, they are solar months, in which nearly twenty-seven months must be intercalated, so that these seventy-two years are more than 864 months.

Application of the method to the gauge-date.

We shall again exemplify this method in the case of our gauge-date, *i.e.* the beginning of Rabîʻ I., A.H. 422. Between the above-mentioned 1st of Shaʻbân and the latter date there have elapsed 2695 months. Adding these to the number of months adopted by the author of the method (864), you get the sum of 3559 months. Write down this number in two places. Multiply the one by 7, and divide the product by 228. The quotient represents the *adhimâsa* months, viz. 109. **Page 229.** Add them to the number in the other place, and you get the sum 3668. Multiply it by 30, and you get the product 110,040. Write down this number in two different places. Add to the lower number 38, and you get 110,078. Multiply it by 11 and divide the product by 703. The quotient is 1722 and a remainder of 292, *i.e.* the *avamas*. Subtract the quotient from the upper number, and the remainder, 108,318, represents the civil days.

Emendation of the method.

This method is to be amended in the following way: You must know that between the epoch of the era here used and the first of Shaʻbân, here adopted as a date, there have elapsed 25,958 days, *i.e.* 876 Arabic months, or seventy-three years and two months. If we further add to this number the months which have elapsed between that 1st Sha'bân and the 1st Rabî' I. of the gauge-year, we get the sum of 3571, and, together with the *adhimâsa* months, 3680 months, *i.e.* 110,400 days. The corresponding number of *ûnarâtra* days is 1727, and a remainder of 319 *avamas*. Subtracting these days, we get the remainder 108,673. If we now subtract 1 and divide the remainder by 7, the computation is correct, for the remainder is 4, *i.e.* the day of the gauge-date is a Wednesday, as has above (p. 48) been stated.

Method of Durlabha of Multân.

The method of Durlabha, a native of Multân, is the following :—He takes 848 years and adds thereto the Laukika-kâla. The sum is the Śakakâla. He subtracts therefrom 854, and changes the remainder of years into months. He writes them down together with the past months of the current year in three different places. The lower number he multiplies by 77, and divides the product by 69,120. The quotient he subtracts from the middle number, doubles the remainder, and adds thereto 29. The sum he divides by 65, so as to get *adhimâsa* months. He adds them to the upper number and multiplies the sum by 30. He writes down the product together with the past days of the current month in two different places. He multiplies the lower number by 11 and adds to the product 686. The sum he writes underneath. He divides it by 403,963, and adds the quotient to the middle number. He divides the sum by 703. The quotient represents the *ûnarâtra* days. He subtracts them from the upper number. The remainder is the civil *ahargaṇa*, *i.e.* the sum of the civil days of the date in question.

We have already in a former place mentioned the outlines of this method. After the author, Durlabha, had adopted it for a particular date, he made some additions, whilst the bulk of it is unchanged. However, the Karaṇasâra forbids introducing any innovations which in the method of *ahargaṇa* deviate to some other process. Unfortunately that which we possess of the book is badly translated. What we are able to quote from it is the following:—

He subtracts 821 from the years of the Śakakâla. The remainder is the *basis*. This would be the year 132 for our gauge-year. He writes down this number in three different places. He multiplies the first number by 132 degrees. The product gives the number 17,424 for our gauge-date. He multiplies the second number by 46 minutes, and gets the product 6072. He multiplies the third number by 34, and gets the product 4488. He divides it by 50, and the quotient represents minutes, seconds, &c., viz. 89′ 46″. Then he adds to the sum of degrees in the upper place 112, changing the seconds to minutes, the minutes to degrees, the degrees to circles. Thus he gets 48 circles 358° 41′ 46″. This is the mean place of the moon when the sun enters Aries.

Further, he divides the degrees of the mean place of the moon by 12. The quotient represents days. The remainder of the division he multiplies by 60, and adds thereto the minutes of the mean place of the moon. He divides the sum by 12, and the quotient represents Page 23
ghaṭîs and minor portions of time. Thus we get 27° 23′ 29″, *i.e.* *adhimâsa* days. No doubt this number represents the past portion of the *adhimâsa* month, which is at present in the course of formation.

The author, in regard to the manner in which the measure of the *adhimâsa* month is found, makes the following remark:—

He divides the lunar number which we have mentioned, viz. 132° 46′ 34″, by 12. Thereby he gets as the *portio anni* 11° 3′ 52′ 50‴, and as the *portio mensis* 0° 55′ 19″ 24‴ 10^{iv}. By means of the latter *portio* he computes the duration of the time in which 30 days sum up as 2 years, 8 months. 16 days, 4 *ghaṭî*, 45 *cashaka.* Then he multiplies the *basis* by 29 and gets the product 3828. He adds thereto 20, and divides the sum by 36. The quotient represents the *ûnarâtra* days, viz. $106\frac{8}{9}$.

However, as I have not been able to find the proper explanation of this method, I simply give it as I find it, but I must remark that the amount of *ûnarâtra* days which corresponds to a single *adhimâsa* month is $15\frac{7887}{10822}$.

CHAPTER LIV.

ON THE COMPUTATION OF THE MEAN PLACES OF THE PLANETS.

General method for the determination of the mean place of a planet at any given time.

IF we know the number of cycles of the planets in a *kalpa* or *caturyuga*, and further know how many cycles have elapsed at a certain moment of time, we also know that the sum-total of the days of the *kalpa* or *caturyuga* stands in the same relation to the sum-total of the cycles as the past days of the *kalpa* or *caturyuga* to the corresponding amount of planetary cycles. The most generally used method is this :—

The past days of the *kalpa* or *caturyuga* are multiplied by the cycles of the planet, or of its apsis, or of its node which it describes in a *kalpa* or *caturyuga*. The product is divided by the sum-total of the days of the *kalpa* or *caturyuga* accordingly as you reckon by the one or the other. The quotient represents complete cycles. These, however, because not wanted, are disregarded.

The remainder which you get by the division is multiplied by 12, and the product is divided by the sum-total of the days of either *kalpa* or *caturyuga* by which we have already once divided. The quotient represents signs of the ecliptic. The remainder of this division is multiplied by 30, and the product divided by the same divisor. The quotient represents degrees. The remainder of this division is multiplied by 60, and is divided by the same divisor. The quotient represents minutes.

This kind of computation may be continued if we want to have seconds and minor values. The quotient represents the place of that planet according to its mean motion, or the place of that apsis or that node which we wanted to find.

Method of Pulisa for the same purpose.

The same is also mentioned by Pulisa, but his method differs, as follows:—"After having found the complete cycles which have elapsed at a certain moment of time, he divides the remainder by 131,493,150. The quotient represents the mean signs of the ecliptic.

"The remainder is divided by 4,383,105. The quotient represents degrees. The fourfold of the remainder is divided by 292,207. The quotient represents minutes. The remainder is multiplied by 60 and the product divided by the last-mentioned divisor. The quotient represents seconds.

"This calculation may be continued, so as to give third parts, fourth parts, and minor values. The quotient thus found is the mean place of the planet which we want to find."

Explanatory notes thereon.

The fact is that Pulisa was obliged to multiply the remainder of the cycles by 12, and to divide the product by the days of a *caturyuga*, because his whole computation is based on the *caturyuga*. But instead of doing this, he divided by the quotient which you get if you divide the number of days of a *caturyuga* by 12. This quotient is the first number he mentions, viz. 131,493,150.

Further, he was obliged to multiply the remainder of the signs of the ecliptic by 30, and to divide the product by the first divisor; but instead of doing this, he divided by the quotient which you get if you divide the first number by 30. This quotient is the second number, viz. 4,383,105.

According to the same analogy, he wanted to divide the remainder of the degrees by the quotient which you get if you divide the second number by 60. However, making this division, he got as quotient 73,051 and a remainder of $\frac{3}{4}$. Therefore he multiplied the whole by 4, in order that the fractions should be raised to wholes. For the same reason he also multiplies the following remainder by 4; but when he did not get wholes, as has been indicated, he returned to multiplying by 60. Page 231.

If we apply this method to a *kalpa* according to the theory of Brahmagupta, the first number, by which the remainder of the cycles is divided, is 131,493,037,500. The second number, by which the remainder of the signs of the ecliptic is divided, is 4,383,101,250. The third number, by which the remainder of the degrees is divided, is 73,051,687. In the remainder which we get by this division there is the fraction of $\frac{1}{2}$. Therefore we take the double of the number, viz. 146,103,375, and we divide by it the double of the remainder of minutes.

Brahmagupta applies this method to the *kaliyuga* in order to get smaller numbers.

Brahmagupta, however, does not reckon by the *kalpa* and *caturyuga*, on account of the enormous sums of their days, but prefers to them the *kaliyuga*, in order to facilitate the calculation. Applying the preceding method of *ahargaṇa* to the precise date of the *kaliyuga*, we multiply its sum of days by the star-cycles of a *kalpa*. To the product we add the *basis*, *i.e.* the remaining cycles which the planet had at the beginning of the *kaliyuga*. We divide the sum by the civil days of the *kaliyuga*, viz. 157,791,645. The quotient represents the complete cycles of the planet, which are disregarded.

The remainder we compute in the above-described manner, and thereby we find the mean place of the planet.

The here-mentioned *bases* are the following for the single planets:—

For Mars, 4,308,768,000.
For Mercury, 4,288,896,000.
For Jupiter, 4,313,520,000.
For Venus, 4,304,448,000.
For Saturn, 4,305,312,000.
For the Sun's apsis, 933,120,000.
For the Moon's apsis, 1,505,952,000.
For the ascending node, 1,838,592,000 (v. the notes).

At the same moment, *i.e.* at the beginning of the *kaliyuga*, sun and moon stood according to their mean motion in 0° of Aries, and there was neither a *plus* nor a *minus* consisting of an *adhimâsa* month or of *ûnarâtra* days.

Methods of the *Khaṇḍakhâdyaka*, *Karaṇatilaka*, and *Karanasâra*

In the above-mentioned *canones* or calendars we find the following method :—"The *ahargaṇa*, *i.e.* the sum of the days of the date, is, for each planet respectively, multiplied by a certain number, and the product is divided by another number. The quotient represents complete cycles and fractions of cycles, according to mean motion. Sometimes the computation becomes perfect simply by this multiplication and division. Sometimes, in order to get a perfect result, you are compelled once more to divide by a certain number the days of the date, either such as they are, or multiplied by some number. The quotient must then be combined with the result obtained in the first place.

Sometimes, too, certain numbers are adopted, as *e.g.* the *basis*, which must either be added or subtracted for this purpose, in order that the mean motion at the beginning of the era should be computed as beginning with 0° of *Aries.* This is the method of the books *Khaṇḍakhâdyaka* and *Karaṇatilaka*. However, the author of the *Karaṇasâra* computes the mean places of the planets for the vernal equinox, and reckons the *ahargaṇa* from this moment. But these methods are very subtle, and are so numerous, that none of them has obtained any particular authority. Therefore we refrain from reproducing them, as this would detain us too long and be of no use.

The other methods of the computation of the mean places of the planets and similar calculations have nothing to do with the subject of the present book.

CHAPTER LV.

ON THE ORDER OF THE PLANETS, THEIR DISTANCES AND SIZES.

Traditional view on the sun being below the moon.

WHEN speaking of the *lokas*, we have already given a quotation from the *Vishṇu-Purâṇa* and from the commentary of Patañjali, according to which the place of the sun is in the order of the planets below that of the moon. This is the traditional view of the Hindus. Compare in particular the following passage of the *Matsya-Purâṇa* :—

"The distance of heaven from the earth is equal to the radius of the earth. The sun is the lowest of all planets. Above him there is the moon, and above the moon are the lunar stations and their stars. Above them is Mercury, then follow Venus, Mars, Jupiter, Saturn, the Great Bear, and above it the pole. The pole is connected with the heaven. The stars cannot be counted by man. Those who impugn this view maintain that the moon at conjunction becomes hidden by the sun, as the light of the lamp becomes invisible in the light of the sun, and she becomes more visible the more she moves away from the sun."

We shall now give some quotations from the books of this school relating to the sun, the moon, and the stars, and we shall combine herewith the views of the astronomers, although of the latter we have only a very slender knowledge.

Popular notions of astronomy.

Page 232.

The *Vâyu-Purâṇa* says: "The sun has globular shape, fiery nature, and 1000 rays, by which he attracts

Quotations from *Vâyu-Purâna*.

the water; 400 of these are for the rain, 300 for the snow, and 300 for the air."

In another passage it says: "Some of them (*i.e.* the rays) are for this purpose, that the *devas* should live in bliss; others for the purpose that men should live in comfort, whilst others are destined for the fathers."

In another passage the author of the *Vâyu-Purâṇa* divides the rays of the sun over the six seasons of the year, saying: "The sun illuminates the earth in that third of the year which commences with 0° of Pisces by 300 rays; he causes rain in the following third by 400 rays, and he causes cold and snow in the remaining third by 300 rays."

Another passage of the same book runs as follows: "The rays of the sun and the wind raise the water from the sea to the sun. Now, if the water dropped down from the sun, it would be hot. Therefore the sun hands the water over to the moon, that it should drop down from the moon cold, and thus refresh the world."

Another passage: "The heat of the sun and his light are one-fourth of the heat and the light of the fire. In the north, the sun falls into the water during the night; therefore he becomes red."

Another passage: "In the beginning there were the earth, water, wind, and heaven. Then Brahman perceived sparks under the earth. He brought them forth and divided them into three parts. One third of them is the common fire, which requires wood and is extinguished by water. Another third is the sun, and the last third is the lightning. In the animals, too, there is fire, which cannot be extinguished by water. The sun attracts the water, the lightning shines through the rain, but the fire in the animals is distributed over the moist substances by which they nourish themselves."

The Hindus seem to believe that the heavenly bodies nourish themselves by the vapours, which also Aristotle mentions as the theory of certain people. Thus the author of the *Vishṇu-Dharma* explains that "the sun nourishes the moon and the stars. If the sun did not exist, there would not be a star, nor angel, nor man."

On the nature of the stars.

Quotation from the *Vishṇu-Dharma*.

The Hindus believe regarding the bodies of all the stars that they have a globular shape, a watery essence, and that they do not shine, whilst the sun aloft is of fiery essence, self-shining, and *per accidens* illuminates other stars when they stand opposite to him. They reckon, according to eyesight, among the stars also such luminous bodies as in reality are not stars, but the lights into which those men have been metamorphosed who have received eternal reward from God, and reside in the height of heaven on thrones of crystal. The *Vishṇu-Dharma* says: "The stars are watery, and the rays of the sun illuminate them in the night. Those who by their pious deeds have obtained a place in the height sit there on their thrones, and, when shining, they are reckoned among the stars."

All the stars are called *târa*, which word is derived from *taraṇa*, *i.e.* the passage. The idea is that those saints have *passed* through the wicked world and have reached bliss, and that the stars *pass* through heaven in a circular motion. The word *nakshatra* is limited to the stars of the lunar stations. As, however, all of these are called *fixed stars*, the word *nakshatra* also applies to all the fixed stars; for it means *not increasing and not decreasing*. I for my part am inclined to think that this increasing and decreasing refers to their number and to the distances of the one from the other, but the author of the last-mentioned book (*Vishṇu-Dharma*) combines it with their light. For he adds, "as the moon increases and decreases."

Further, there is a passage in the same book where Mârkaṇḍeya says: "The stars which do not perish before the end of the *kalpa* are equal to a *nikharva*, *i.e.* 100,000,000,000. The number of those which fall down before the end of a *kalpa* is unknown. Only he can know it who dwells in the height during a *kalpa*."

Vajra spoke: "O Mârkaṇḍeya, thou hast lived during six *kalpas*. This is thy seventh *kalpa*. Therefore why dost thou not know them?"

He answered: "If they always remained in the same condition, not changing as long as they exist, I should not be ignorant of them. However, they perpetually raise some pious man and bring another down to the earth. Therefore I do not keep them in my memory."

On the diameters of the planets.

Regarding the diameters of sun and moon and their shadows the *Matsya-Purâṇa* says: "The diameter of the body of the sun is 9000 *yojanas*; the diameter of the moon is the double of it, and the apsis is as much as the two together."

The same occurs in the *Vâyu-Purâṇa*, except that it says with regard to the apsis that it is equal to the sun when it is with the sun, and that it is equal to the moon when it is with the moon.

Another author says: "The apsis is 50,000 *yojanas*."

Regarding the diameters of the planets the *Matsya-Purâṇa* says: "The circumference of Venus is one-sixteenth of the circumference of the moon, that of Jupiter three-fourths of the circumference of Venus, that of Saturn or Mars three-fourths of that of Jupiter, that of Mercury three-fourths of that of Mars."

Page 233.

The same statement is also found in the *Vâyu-Purâṇa*.

On the circumference of the fixed stars.

The same two books fix the circumference of the great fixed stars as equal to that of Mercury. The next smaller class have a circumference of 500 *yojanas*, the following classes 400, 300, and 200. But there are no fixed stars with a smaller circumference than 150 *yojanas*.

Thus the *Vâyu-Purâṇa*. But the *Matsya-Purâṇa* says: "The next following classes have a circumference of 400, 300, 200, and 100 *yojanas*. But there is no fixed star with less circumference than a half *yojana*."

The latter statement, however, looks suspicious to me, and is perhaps a fault in the manuscript.

The author of *Vishṇu-Dharma* says, relating the words of Mârkaṇḍeya: "*Abhijit*, the Falling Eagle; *Ârdrâ*, the Sirius Yemenicus; *Rohiṇî*, or Aldabarân; *Punarvasu*, *i.e.* the Two Heads of the Twins; *Pushya*, *Revatî*, *Agastya* or Canopus, the Great Bear, the master of *Vâyu*, the master of *Ahirbudhnya*, and the master of *Vasishṭha*, each of these stars has a circumference of five *yojanas*. All the other stars have each only a circumference of four *yojanas*. I do not know those stars, the distance of which is not measurable. They have a circumference between four *yojanas* and two *kuroh*, *i.e.* two miles. Those which have less circumference than two *kuroh* are not seen by men, but only by the *devas*."

The Hindus have the following theory regarding the magnitude of the stars, which is not traced back to any known authority: "The diameters of the sun and moon are each 67 *yojanas*; that of the apsis is 100; that of Venus 10, of Jupiter 9, of Saturn 8, of Mars 7, of Mercury 7."

Views of the Hindu astronomers on the same subjects.

This is all we have been able to learn of the confused notions of the Hindus regarding these subjects. We shall now pass on to the views of the Hindu astronomers with whom we agree regarding the order of the planets and other topics, viz. that the sun is the middle of the planets, Saturn and the moon their two ends, and that the fixed stars are above the planets. Some of these things have already been mentioned in the preceding chapters.

Quotation from the *Saṁhitâ* of Varâhamihira, chap. iv. 1–3.

Varâhamihira says in the book *Saṁhitâ*: "The moon is always below the sun, who throws his rays upon her, and lits up the one half of her body, whilst the other half remains dark and shadowy like a pot which you place in the sunshine. The one half which faces the sun is lit up, whilst the other half which does not face it remains dark. The moon is watery in her essence, therefore the rays which fall on her are reflected, as they are reflected from the water and the mirror towards the wall. If the moon is in conjunction with the sun, the white part of her turns towards the sun, the black part towards us. Then the white part sinks downward towards us slowly, as the sun marches away from the moon."

Every educated man among the Hindu theologians, and much more so among their astronomers, believes indeed that the moon is below the sun, and even below all the planets.

Ya'kûb Ibn Târiḳ on the distances of the stars.

The only Hindu traditions we have regarding the distances of the stars are those mentioned by Ya'ḳûb Ibn Ṭâriḳ in his book, *The Composition of the Spheres*, and he had drawn his information from the well-known Hindu scholar who, A.H. 161, accompanied an embassy to Bagdâd. First, he gives a metrological statement: "A finger is equal to six barleycorns which are put one by the side of the other. An arm (yard) is equal to twenty-four fingers. A *farsakh* is equal to 16,000 yards."

Here, however, we must observe that the Hindus do not know the *farsakh*, that it is, as we have already explained, equal to one half a *yojana*.

Further, Ya'ḳûb says: "The diameter of the earth is 2100 *farsakh*, its circumference $6596\frac{9}{25}$ *farsakh*."

On this basis he has computed the distances of the planets as we exhibit them in the following table.

Pulisa and Brahmagupta on the same subject.

However, this statement regarding the size of the earth is by no means generally agreed to by all the Hindus. So, *e.g.* Pulisa reckons its diameter as 1600 *yojanas*, and its circumference as $5026\frac{14}{15}$ *yojanas*, whilst Brahmagupta reckons the former as 1581 *yojanas*, and the latter as 5000 *yojanas*.

If we double these numbers, they ought to be equal to the numbers of Ya'ḳûb; but this is not the case. Now the yard and the mile are respectively identical according to the measurement both of us and of the Hindus. According to our computation the radius of the earth is 3184 miles. Reckoning, according to the custom of our country, 1 *farsakh* = 3 miles, we get 6728 *farsakh*; and reckoning 1 *farsakh* = 16,000 yards, as is mentioned by Page 234. Ya'ḳûb, we get 5046 *farsakh*. Reckoning 1 *yojana* = 32,000 yards, we get 2523 *yojanas*.

Distances of the planets from the centre of the earth, and their diameters, according to Yakûb Ibn Târik.

The following table is borrowed from the book of Ya'ḳûb Ibn Ṭâriḳ:—

The planets.	Their distances from the centre of the earth, and their diameters.	The conventional measures of the distances, differing according to time and place, reckoned in *farsakh*, 1 *farsakh* = 16,000 yards.	Their constant measures, based on the radius of the earth = 1.
	Radius of the earth .	1,050	1
Moon.	The smallest distance .	37,500	$35\frac{5}{7}$
	The middle distance .	48,500	$46\frac{4}{21}$
	The greatest distance .	59,000	$56\frac{4}{21}$
	Diameter of the moon	5,000	$4\frac{16}{21}$
Mercury.	The smallest distance .	64,000	$60\frac{20}{21}$
	The middle distance .	164,000	$156\frac{4}{21}$
	The greatest distance .	264,000	$251\frac{3}{7}$
	Diameter of Mercury	5,000	$4\frac{16}{21}$
Venus.	The smallest distance .	269,000	$256\frac{4}{21}$
	The middle distance .	709,500	$675\frac{5}{7}$
	The greatest distance .	1,150,000	$1,095\frac{5}{21}$
	Diameter of Venus .	20,000	$19\frac{1}{21}$
Sun.	The smallest distance .	1,170,000	$1,114\frac{2}{7}$
	The middle distance .	1,690,000	$1,609\frac{11}{21}$
	The greatest distance .	2,210,000	$2,104\frac{16}{21}$
	Diameter of the Sun .	20,000	$19\frac{1}{21}$
Mars.	The smallest distance .	2,230,000	$2,123\frac{17}{21}$
	The middle distance .	5,315,000	$5,061\frac{19}{21}$
	The greatest distance .	8,400,000	8,000
	Diameter of Mars .	20,000	$19\frac{1}{21}$
Jupiter.	The smallest distance .	8,420,000	$8,019\frac{1}{21}$
	The middle distance .	11,410,000	$10,866\frac{2}{3}$
	The greatest distance .	14,400,000	$13,714\frac{2}{7}$
	Diameter of Jupiter .	20,000	$19\frac{1}{21}$
Saturn.	The smallest distance .	14,420,000	$13,733\frac{1}{3}$
	The middle distance .	16,220,000	$15,447\frac{13}{21}$
	The greatest distance .	18,020,000	$17,161\frac{19}{21}$
	Diameter of Saturn .	20,000	$19\frac{1}{21}$
Zodiacus.	The radius of the outside	20,000,000	$19,047\frac{13}{21}$
	The radius of the inside	19,962,000	$1,866\frac{2}{3}$ (*sic*)
	Its circumference from the outside . .	125,664,000	

Page 235.

This theory differs from that on which Ptolemy has based his computation of the distances of the planets in the *Kitâb-almanshûrât*, and in which he has been followed both by the ancient and the modern astronomers. It is their principle that the greatest distance of a planet is equal to its smallest distance from the next higher planet, and that between the two globes there is not a space void of action.

Ptolemy on the distances of the planets. Page 236.

According to this theory, there is between the two globes a space not occupied by either of them, in which there is something like an axis around which the rotation takes place. It seems that they attributed to the æther a certain gravity, in consequence of which they felt the necessity of adopting something which *keeps* or *holds* the inner globe (the planet) in the midst of the outer globe (the æther).

On occultation and the parallax.

It is well known among all astronomers that there is no possibility of distinguishing between the higher and the lower one of two planets except by means of the *occultation* or the increase of the *parallax*. However, the occultation occurs only very seldom, and only the parallax of a single planet, viz. the moon, can be observed. Now the Hindus believe that the motions are equal, but the distances different. The reason why the higher planet moves more slowly than the lower is the greater extension of its sphere (or orbit); and the reason why the lower planet moves more rapidly is that its sphere or orbit is less extended. Thus, *e.g.* one minute in the sphere of Saturn is equal to 262 minutes in the sphere of the moon. Therefore the times in which Saturn and the moon traverse the same space are different, whilst their motions are equal.

I have never found a Hindu treatise on this subject, but only numbers relating thereto scattered in various books—numbers which are corrupt. Somebody objected to Pulisa that he reckoned the circumference of the sphere of each planet as 21,600, and its radius as 3438, whilst Varâhamihira reckoned the sun's distance from the earth as 2,598,900, and the distance of the fixed stars as 321,362,683. Thereupon Pulisa replied that the former numbers were minutes, the latter *yojanas;* whilst in another passage he says that the distance of the fixed stars from the earth is sixty times larger than the distance of the sun. Accordingly he ought to have reckoned the distance of the fixed stars as 155,934,000.

Hindu method for the computation of the distances of the planets.

The Hindu method of the computation of the distances of the planets which we have above mentioned is based on a principle which is unknown to me in the present stage of my knowledge, and as long as I have no facility in translating the books of the Hindus. The principle is this, that the extension of a minute in the orbit of the moon is equal to fifteen *yojanas.* The nature of this principle is not cleared up by the commentaries of Balabhadra, whatsoever trouble he takes. For he says: "People have tried to fix by observation the time of the moon's passing through the horizon, *i.e.* the time between the shining of the first part of her body and the rising of the whole, or the time between the beginning of her setting and the completion of the act of setting. People have found this process to last thirty-two minutes of the circumference of the sphere." However, if it is difficult to fix by observation the degrees, it is much more so to fix the minutes.

Quotations from Balabhadra.

Further, the Hindus have tried to determine by observation the *yojanas* of the diameter of the moon, and have found them to be 480. If you divide them by the minutes of her body, the quotient is 15 *yojanas,* as corresponding to one minute. If you multiply it by the minutes of the circumference, you get the product 324,000. This is the measure of the sphere of the moon which she traverses in each rotation. If you multiply this number by the cycles of the moon in a *kalpa* or *caturyuga,* the product is the distance which the moon traverses in either of them. According to Brahmagupta, this is in a *kalpa* 18,712,069,200,000,000 *yojanas*. Brahmagupta calls this number *the yojanas of the ecliptic*.

Evidently if you divide this number by the cycles of each planet in a *kalpa*, the quotient represents the *yojanas* of one rotation. However, the motion of the planets is, according to the Hindus, as we have already mentioned, in every distance one and the same. Therefore the quotient represents the measure of the path of the sphere of the planet in question.

As further, according to Brahmagupta, the relation of the diameter to the circumference is nearly equal to that of 12,959 : 40,980, you multiply the measure of the path of the sphere of the planet by 12,959, and divide the product by 81,960. The quotient is the radius, or the distance of the planet from the centre of the earth.

The radii of the planets, or their distances from the centre of the earth, computed according to Brahmagupta.

We have made this computation for all the planets according to the theory of Brahmagupta, and present the results to the reader in the following table :—

Page 237.

The planets.	The circumference of the sphere of each planet, reckoned in *yojanas*.	Their radii, which are identical with their distances from the earth's centre, reckoned in *yojanas*.
Moon . . .	324,000	51,229
Mercury . . .	1,043,210 [illegible]	164,947
Venus . . .	2,664,629 [illegible]	421,315
Sun . . .	$4,331,497\frac{1}{2}$	684,869
Mars . . .	8,146,916 [illegible]	1,288,139
Jupiter . . .	51,374,821 [illegible]	8,123,064
Saturn . . .	127,668,787 [illegible]	20,186,186
The Fixed Stars, their distance from the earth's centre being sixty times the distance of the sun from the same . .	259,889,850	41,092,140

The same computation according to the theory of Pulisa.

As Pulisa reckons by *caturyugas*, not by *kalpas*, he multiplies the distance of the path of the sphere of the moon by the lunar cycles of a *caturyuga*, and gets the product 18,712,080,864,000 *yojanas*, which he calls *the yojanas of heaven.* It is the distance which the moon traverses in each *caturyuga*.

Pulisa reckons the relation of the diameter to the circumference as 1250 : 3927. Now, if you multiply the circumference of each planetary sphere by 625 and divide the product by 3927, the quotient is the distance of the planet from the earth's centre. We have made the same computation as the last one according to the view of Pulisa, and present the results in the following table. In computing the radii we have disregarded the fractions smaller than $\frac{1}{2}$, and have reduced larger fractions to wholes. We have, however, not taken the same liberty in the calculation of the circumferences, but have calculated with the utmost accuracy, because they are required in the computations of the revolutions. For if you divide the *yojanas of heaven* in a *kalpa* or *caturyuga* by the civil days of the one or the other, you get the quotient 11,858 *plus* a remainder, which is $\frac{25,498}{35,419}$ according to Brahmagupta, and $\frac{209,554}{292,207}$ according to Pulisa. This is the distance which the moon every day traverses, and as the motion of all planets is the same, it is the distance which every planet in a day traverses. It stands in the same relation to the *yojanas* of the circumference of its sphere as its motion, which we want to find, to the circumference, the latter being divided into 360 equal parts. If you therefore multiply the path common to all the planets by 360 and divide the product by the *yojanas* of the circumference of the planet in question, the quotient represents its mean daily motion.

Page 238.

The planets.	The circumferences of the spheres of the planets, reckoned in *yojanas*.	The distances of the planets from the earth's centre, reckoned in *yojanas*.
Moon	324,000	51,566
Mercury . . .	$1,043,211\frac{573}{1093}$	166,033
Venus	$2,664,632\frac{90232}{585199}$	424,089
Sun	$4,331,500\frac{1}{6}$	690,295 (*sic*)
Mars	$8,146,937\frac{18163}{95701}$	1,296,624 (!)
Jupiter . . .	$51,375,764\frac{4996}{18211}$	8,176,689 (!)
Saturn . . .	$127,671,739\frac{27301}{36641}$	20,319.542 (!)
The Fixed Stars, the sun's distance from the earth's centre being $\frac{1}{60}$th of theirs	259,890,012	41,417,700 (*sic*)

The diameters of the planets. Page 239.

As, now, the minutes of the diameter of the moon stand in the same relation to the minutes of her circumference, *i.e.* 21,600, as the number of *yojanas* of the diameter, *i.e.* 480, to the *yojanas* of the circumference of the whole sphere, exactly the same method of calculation has been applied to the minutes of the diameter of the sun, which we have found to be equal to 6522 *yojanas* according to Brahmagupta, and equal to 6480 according to Pulisa. Since Pulisa reckons the minutes of the body of the moon as 32, *i.e.* a power of 2, he divides this number in order to get the minutes of the bodies of the planets by 2, till he at last gets 1. Thus he attributes to the body of Venus $\frac{1}{2}$ of 32 minutes, *i.e.* 16; to that of Jupiter $\frac{1}{4}$ of 32 minutes, *i.e.* 8; to that of Mercury $\frac{1}{8}$ of 32 minutes, *i.e.* 4; to that of Saturn $\frac{1}{16}$ of 32 minutes, *i.e.* 2; to that of Mars $\frac{1}{32}$ of 32 minutes, *i.e.* 1.

This precise order seems to have taken his fancy, or he would not have overlooked the fact that the diameter of Venus is, according to observation, not equal to the radius of the moon, nor Mars equal to $\frac{1}{16}$th of Venus.

Method for the computation of the bodies of sun and moon at any given time.

The following is the method of the computation of the bodies of sun and moon at every time, based on their distances from the earth, *i.e.* the true diameter of its orbit, which is found in the computations of the corrections of sun and moon. AB is the diameter of the body of the sun, CD is the diameter of the earth, CDH is the cone of the shadow, HL is its elevation. Further, draw CR parallel to DB. Then is AR the difference between AB and CD, and the normal line CT is the middle distance of the sun, *i.e.* the radius of its orbit derived from *the yojanas of heaven* (v. p. 72). From this the true distance of the sun always differs, sometimes being larger, sometimes smaller. We draw CK, which is of course determined by the parts of the *sine*. It stands in the same relation to CT, this being the *sinus totus* (=radius), as the *yojanas* of CK to the *yojanas* of CT. Hereby the measure of the diameter is reduced to *yojanas*.

The *yojanas* of AB stand in the same relation to the *yojanas* of TC as the minutes of AB to the minutes of TC, the latter being the *sinus totus*. Thereby AB becomes known and determined by the minutes of the sphere, because the *sinus totus* is determined by the measure of the circumference. For this reason Pulisa says: "Multiply the *yojanas* of the radius of the sphere of the sun or the moon by the true distance, and divide the product by the *sinus totus*. By the quotient you get for the sun, divide 22,278,240, and by the quotient you get for the moon, divide 1,650,240. The quotient then represents the minutes of the diameter of the body of either sun or moon."

Quotations from Pulisa, Brahmagupta, and Balabhadra.

The last-mentioned two numbers are products of the multiplication of the *yojanas* of the diameters of sun and moon by 3438, which is the number of the minutes of the *sinus totus*.

Likewise Brahmagupta says: "Multiply the *yojanas* of sun or moon by 3416, *i.e.* the minutes of the *sinus totus*, and divide the product by the *yojanas* of the radius of the sphere of sun or moon." But the latter rule of division is not correct, because, according to it, the measure of the body would not vary (v. p. 74). Therefore the commentator Balabhadra holds the same opinion as Pulisa, viz. that the divisor in this division should be the true distance reduced (to the measure of *yojanas*).

Brahmagupta's method for the computation of the diameter of the shadow.

Brahmagupta gives the following rule for the computation of the diameter of the shadow, which in our *canones* is called *the measure of the sphere of the dragon's head and tail*: "Subtract the *yojanas* of the diameter of the earth, *i.e.* 1581, from the *yojanas* of the diameter of the sun, *i.e.* 6522. There remains 4941, which is kept in memory to be used as divisor. It is represented in the figure by AR. Further multiply the diameter of the earth, which is the double *sinus totus*, by the *yojanas* of the true distance of the sun, which is found by the correction of the sun. Divide the product by the divisor kept in memory. The quotient is the true distance of the shadow's end.

"Evidently the two triangles ARC and CDH are similar to each other. However, the normal line CT does not vary in size, whilst in consequence of the true distance the *appearance* of AB varies, though its size is constantly the same. Now let *this* distance be CK. Draw the lines AJ and RV parallel to each other, and JKV parallel to AB. Then the latter is equal to the divisor kept in memory.

"Draw the line JCM. Then M is the head of the cone of the shadow for that time. The relation of JV, the divisor kept in memory, to KC, the true distance, is the same as that of CD, the diameter of the earth, to ML, which he (Brahmagupta) calls a true distance (of the shadow's end), and it is determined by the minutes of the *sine* (the earth's radius being the *sinus totus*). For KC——" Page 240.

Lacuna in the manuscript copy of Brahmagupta.

Now, however, I suspect that in the following something has fallen out in the manuscript, for the author continues: "Then multiply it (*i.e.* the quotient of CK, by the divisor kept in memory) by the diameter of the earth. The product is the distance between the earth's centre and the end of the shadow. Subtract therefrom the true distance of the moon and multiply the remainder by the diameter of the earth. Divide the product by the true distance of the shadow's end. The quotient is the diameter of the shadow in the sphere of the moon. Further, we suppose the true distance of the moon to be LS, and FN is a part of the lunar sphere, the radius of which is LS. Since we have found LM as determined by the minutes of the *sine*, it stands in the same relation to CD, this being the double *sinus totus*, as MS, measured in minutes of the *sine*, to XZ, measured in minutes of the sine."

Here I suppose Brahmagupta wished to reduce LM, the true distance of the shadow's end, to *yojanas*, which is done by multiplying it by the *yojanas* of the diameter of the earth, and by dividing the product by the double *sinus totus*. The mentioning of this division has fallen out in the manuscript; for without it the multiplication of the corrected distance of the shadow's end by the diameter of the earth is perfectly superfluous, and in no way required by the computation.

Further: "If the number of *yojanas* of LM is known, LS, which is the true distance, must also be reduced to *yojanas*, for the purpose that MS should be determined by the same measure. The measure of the diameter of te shadow which is thus found represents *yojanas*.

Further, Brahmagupta says: "Then multiply the shadow which has been found by the *sinus totus*, and divide the product by the true distance of the moon. The quotient represents the minutes of the shadow which we wanted to find."

Criticisms on Brahmagupta's method.

However, if the shadow which he has found were determined by *yojanas*, he ought to have multiplied it by the double *sinus totus*, and to have divided the product by the *yojanas* of the diameter of the earth, in order to find the minutes of the shadow. But as he has not done so, this shows that, in his computation, he limited himself to determining the true diameter in minutes, without reducing it to *yojanas*.

The author uses the true (*sphuṭa*) diameter without its having been reduced to *yojanas*. Thus he finds that the shadow in the circle, the radius of which is LS, is the true diameter, and this is required for the computation of the circle, the radius of which is the *sinus totus*. The relation of ZX, which he has already found, to SL, the true distance, is the same as the relation of ZX in the measure which is sought to SL, this being the *sinus totus*. On the basis of this equation the reduction (to *yojanas*) must be made.

Another method of Brahmagupta's for computing the shadow.

In another passage Brahmagupta says: "The diameter of the earth is 1581, the diameter of the moon 480, the diameter of the sun 6522, the diameter of the shadow 1581. Subtract the *yojanas* of the earth from the *yojanas* of the sun, there remains 4941. Multiply this remainder by the *yojanas* of the true distance of the moon, and divide the product by the *yojanas* of the true distance of the sun. Subtract the quotient you get from 1581, and the remainder is the measure of the shadow in the sphere of the moon. Multiply it by 3416, and divide the product by the *yojanas* of *the middle radius of the sphere of the moon*. The quotient represents the minutes of the diameter of the shadow.

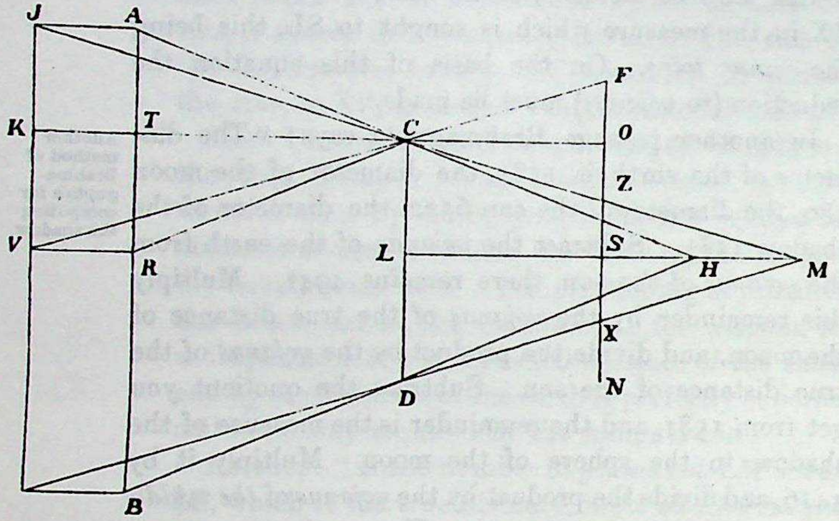
"Evidently if the *yojanas* of the diameter of the earth are subtracted from the *yojanas* of the diameter of the sun, the remainder is AR, *i.e.* JV. Draw the line VCF and let fall the normal line KC on O. Then the relation of the surplus JV to KC, the true distance of the sun, is the same as the relation of ZF to OC, the true distance of the moon. It is indifferent whether these two *mean* diameters are reduced (to *yojanas*) or not, for ZF is, in this case, found as determined by the measure of *yojanas*.

"Draw XN as equal to OF. Then ON is necessarily equal to the diameter of CD, and its sought-for part is ZX. The number which is thus found must be subtracted from the diameter of the earth, and the remainder will be ZX."

The author criticises the corrupt state of his manuscript of Brahmagupta.

Page 241.

For such mistakes as occur in this computation, the author, Brahmagupta, is not to be held responsible, but we rather suspect that the fault lies with the manuscript. We, however, cannot go beyond the text we have at our disposal, as we do not know how it may be in a correct copy.



The measure of the shadow adopted by Brahmagupta, from which he orders the reader to subtract, cannot be a *mean* one, for a *mean* measure stands in the midst, between too little and too much. Further, we cannot imagine that this measure should be the greatest of the measures of the shadow, including the *plus* (?); for ZF, which is the *minus*, is the base of a triangle, of which the one side, FC, cuts SL in the direction of the sun, not in the direction of the end of the shadow. Therefore ZF has nothing whatsoever to do with the shadow (conjectural rendering).

Lastly, there is the possibility that the *minus* belongs to the diameter of the moon. In that case the relation of ZX, which has been determined in *yojanas*, to SL, the *yojanas* of the true distance of the moon, is the same as the relation of ZX reckoned in minutes to SL, this being the *sinus totus* (conjectural rendering).

By this method is found what Brahmagupta wants to find, quite correctly, without the division by the mean radius of the sphere of the moon, which is derived from the *yojanas of the sphere of heaven* (v. p. 72). (For the last three passages *vide* Notes.)

The computation of the diameters of sun and moon according to other sources.

The methods of the computation of the diameters of sun and moon, as given by the Hindu *canones*, such as the *Khaṇḍakhâdyaka* and *Karaṇasâra*, are the same as are found in the canon of Alkhwârizmî. Also the computation of the diameter of the shadow in the *Khaṇḍakhâdyaka* is similar to that one given by Alkhwârizmî, whilst the *Karaṇasara* has the following method:—"Multiply the *bhukti* of the moon by 4 and the *bhukti* of the sun by 13. Divide the difference between the two products by 30, and the quotient is the diameter of the shadow."

Diameter of the sun and of the shadow according to the *Karaṇatilaka*.

The *Karaṇatilaka* gives the following method for the computation of the diameter of the sun:—"Divide the *bhukti* of the sun by 2, and write down the half in two different places. In the one place divide it by 10, and add the quotient to the number in the second place. The sum is the number of minutes of the diameter of the sun."

In the computation of the diameter of the moon, he first takes the *bhukti* of the moon, adds thereto $\frac{1}{80}$th of it, and divides the number by 25. The quotient is the number of the minutes of the moon's diameter.

In the computation of the diameter of the shadow, he multiplies the *bhukti* of the sun by 3, and from the product he subtracts $\frac{1}{24}$th of it. The remainder he subtracts from the *bhukti* of the moon, and the double of the remainder he divides by 15. The quotient is the number of the minutes of the dragon's head and tail.

If we would indulge in further quotations from the *canones* of the Hindus, we should entirely get away from Page 242. the subject of the present book. Therefore we restrict ourselves to quote from them only subjects more or less connected with the special subject of this book, which either are noteworthy for their strangeness, or which are unknown among our people (the Muslims) and in our (the Muslim) countries.

CHAPTER LVI.

ON THE STATIONS OF THE MOON.

On the twenty-seven lunar stations.

The Hindus use the lunar stations exactly in the same way as the zodiacal signs. As the ecliptic is, by the zodiacal signs, divided into twelve equal parts, so, by the lunar stations, it is divided into twenty-seven equal parts. Each station occupies $13\frac{1}{3}$ degrees, or 800 minutes of the ecliptic. The planets enter into them and leave them again, and wander to and fro through their northern and southern latitudes. The astrologers attribute to each station a special nature, the quality of foreboding events, and other particular characteristic traits, in the same way as they attribute them to the zodiacal signs.

Lunar stations of the Arabs.

The number 27 rests on the fact that the moon passes through the whole ecliptic in $27\frac{1}{3}$ days, in which number the fraction of $\frac{1}{3}$ may be disregarded. In a similar way, the Arabs determine their lunar stations as beginning with the moon's first becoming visible in the west till her ceasing to be visible in the east. Herein they use the following method:—

Add to the circumference the amount of the revolution of the sun in a lunar month. Subtract from the sum the march of the moon for the two days called *almiḥâḳ* (*i.e.* the 28th and 29th days of a lunation). Divide the remainder by the march of the moon for one day. The quotient is 27 and a little more than $\frac{2}{3}$, which fraction must be counted as a whole day.

However, the Arabs are illiterate people, who can neither write nor reckon. They only rely upon numbers and eyesight. They have no other medium of research than eyesight, and are not able to determine the lunar stations without the fixed stars in them. If the Hindus want to describe the single stations, they agree with the Arabs regarding certain stars, whilst regarding others they differ from them. On the whole, the Arabs keep near to the moon's path, and use, in describing the stations, only those fixed stars with which the moon either stands in conjunction at certain times, or through the immediate neighbourhood of which she passes.

Whether the Hindus have twenty-seven or twenty-eight lunar stations.

The Hindus do not strictly follow the same line, but also take into account the various positions of one star with reference to the other, *e.g.* one star's standing in opposition or in the zenith of another. Besides, they reckon also the Falling Eagle among the stations, so as to get 28.

It is this which has led our astronomers and the authors of *'anwâ* books astray; for they say that the Hindus have twenty-eight lunar stations, but that they leave out one which is always covered by the rays of the sun. Perhaps they may have heard that the Hindus call that station in which the moon is, the *burning one;* that station which it has just left, *the left one after the embrace;* and that station in which she will enter next, *the smoking one.* Some of our Muslim authors have maintained that the Hindus leave out the station *Al-zubânâ*, and account for it by declaring that the moon's path is *burning* in the end of Libra and the beginning of Scorpio.

All this is derived from one and the same source, viz. their opinion that the Hindus have twenty-eight stations, and that under certain circumstances they drop one. Whilst just the very opposite is the case; they have twenty-seven stations, and under certain circumstances add one.

A Vedic tradition from Brahmagupta.

Brahmagupta says that in the book of the *Veda* there is a tradition, derived from the inhabitants of Mount Meru, to this effect, that they see two suns, two moons, and fifty-four lunar stations, and that they have double the amount of days of ours. Then he tries to refute this theory by the argument that we do not see the fish (*sic*) of the pole revolve twice in a day, but only once. I for my part have no means of arraying this erroneous sentence in a reasonable shape.

Method for computing the place of any given degree of a lunar station.

The proper method for the computation of the place of a star or of a certain degree of a lunar station is this :—

Take its distance from 0° Aries in minutes, and divide them by 800. The quotient represents whole stations preceding that station in which the star in question stands.

Then remains to be found the particular place within the station in question. Now, either star or degree is simply determined according to the 800 parts of the station, and reduced by a common denominator, or the degrees are reduced to minutes, or they are multiplied by 60 and the product is divided by 800, in which case the quotient represents that part of the station which the moon has in that moment already traversed, if the station is reckoned as $\frac{1}{800}$.

These methods of computation suit as well the moon as the planets and other stars. The following, however, applies exclusively to the moon :—The product of the multiplication of the remainder (*i.e.* the portion of the incomplete lunar station) by 60 is divided by the *bhukti* of the moon. The quotient shows how much of the lunar *nakshatra* day has elapsed.

Table of the lunar stations taken from the *Khaṇḍa-khâdyaka.*

The Hindus are very little informed regarding the fixed stars. I never came across any one of them who knew the single stars of the lunar stations from eyesight, and was able to point them out to me with his fingers. I have taken the greatest pains to investigate this subject, and to settle most of it by all sorts of comparisons, and have recorded the results of my research in a treatise *on the determination of the lunar stations.* Of their theories on this subject I shall mention as much as I think suitable in the present context. But before that I shall give the positions of the stations in longitude and latitude and their numbers, according to the canon *Khaṇḍakhâdyaka,* facilitating the study of the subject by comprehending all details in the following table :—

Page 243.

The number of the lunar stations.	The names of the lunar stations.	The number of their stars.	Longitude.			Latitude.		Whether northern or southern latitude.	Notes on the stars of which the lunar stations consist.
			Zodiacal signs.	Degrees.	Minutes.	Parts.	Minutes.		
1	Aśvinî . .	2	0	8	0	10	0	Northern	Alsharatân.
2	Bharaṇî . .	3	0	20	0	12	0	Northern	Albutain.
3	Kṛittikâ . .	6	1	7	28	5	0	Northern	Althurayyâ.
4	Rohiṇî . .	5	1	19	28	5	0	Southern	Aldabarân, together with the stars of the head of Taurus.
5	Mṛigaśîrsha .	3	2	3	0	5	0	Southern	Albaḳ'a.
6	Ârdrâ . . .	1	2	7	0	11	0	Southern	Unknown. Most likely identical with Canis Minor.
7	Punarvasu . .	2	3	3	0	6	0	Northern	Aldhirâ'.
8	Pushya . .	1	3	16	0	0	0	Without any latitude	Alnathra.
9	Âślesha . .	6	3	18	0	0	0	Southern	Unknown. Most likely identical with two stars of Cancer and four stars outside of it.
10	Maghâ . .	6	4	9	0	0	0	Without any latitude	Aljabha, together with two other stars.
11	Pûrvaphâlgunî .	2	4	27	0	12	0	Northern	Alzubra.
12	Uttaraphâlgunî .	2	5	5	0	13	0	Northern	Alṣarfa, together with the third star of Alḍafira.

Page 244.

13	Hasta . . .	5	5	20	0	11	0	Southern	Consists of the stars of the Crow.
14	Citrâ . . .	1	6	3	0	2	0	Southern	Alsimâk Al'a'zal.
15	Svâtî . . .	1	6	19	0	37	0	Northern	Alsimâk Alrâmiḥ.
16	Viśâkhâ . .	2	7	2	5	1	30	Southern	Unknown.
17	Anurâdhâ . .	4	7	14	5	3	0	Southern	The Crown, together with another star.
18	Jyeshṭhâ . .	3	7	19	5	4	0	Southern	The heart of Scorpio, together with the pericardium.
19	Mûla . . .	2	8	1	0	9	30	Southern	Alshaula.
20	Pûrvâshaḍhâ .	4	8	14	0	5	20	Southern	Alna'âm Alwârid.
21	Uttarâshâḍhâ .	4	8	20	0	5	0	Southern	Alna'âm Alṣâdir.
22 0	Abhijit . .	3	8	25	0	62	0	Northern	Alnasr Alwâkiʿ.
23 22	Śravaṇa . .	3	9	8	0	30	0	Northern	Alnasr Alṭâ'ir.
24 25	Dhanishṭhâ . .	5	9	20	0	36	0	Northern	Unknown. Most likely it is the Dolphin.
25 24	Śatabhishaj .	1	10	20	0	0	18	Southern	Unknown. Most likely identical with the upper part of the hip-joint of Aquarius.
26 25	Pûrvabhâdrapadâ	2	10	26	0	24	0	Northern	Unknown.
27 26	Uttarabhâdrapadâ	2	11	6	0	26	0	Northern	Most likely identical with the stars of Al'irs Al'a'zam.
28 27	Revatî . .	1	0	0	0	0	0	Without any latitude	Unknown. Most likely identical with some of the stars of the Cotton Thread between the Two Fishes.

The notions of the Hindus regarding the stars are not free from confusion. They are only little skilled in practical observation and calculation, and have no understanding of the motions of the fixed stars. So Varâhamihira says in his book *Saṁhitâ:* "In six stations, beginning with Revatî and ending with Mṛigaśiras, observation precedes calculation, so that the moon enters each one of them *earlier* according to eyesight than according to calculation.

On the precession of the equinoxes; quotation from Varâhamihira, chap iv. 7

"In twelve stations, beginning with Ârdrâ and ending with Anurâdhâ, the precession is equal to half a station, so that the moon is *in the midst* of a station according to observation, whilst she is in its first part according to calculation.

"In the nine stations, beginning with Jyeshṭhâ and ending with Uttarabhâdrapadâ, observation falls back behind calculation, so that the moon enters each of them according to observation, when, according to calculation, she leaves it in order to enter the following."

The author criticises Varâhamihira's statement.

My remark relating to the confused notions of the Hindus regarding the stars is confirmed, though this is perhaps not apparent to the Hindus themselves, *e.g.* by the note of Varâhamihira regarding *Alsharaṭân* = Aśvinî, one of the first-mentioned six stations; for he says that in it observation precedes calculation. Now the two stars of Aśvinî stand, in our time, in two-thirds of Aries (*i.e.* between 10°–20° Aries), and the time of Varâhamihira precedes our time by about 526 years. Therefore by whatever theory you may compute the motion of the fixed stars (or precession of the equinoxes), the Aśvinî did, in his time, certainly not stand in less than one-third of Aries (*i.e.* they had not come in the precession of the equinoxes farther than to 1°–10° Aries).

Supposing that, in *his* time, Aśvini really stood in this part of Aries or near it, as is mentioned in the *Khaṇḍakhâdyaka*, which gives the computation of sun and moon in a perfectly correct form, we must state that at that time there was not yet known what is now known, viz. the retrograde motion of the star by the distance of eight degrees. How, therefore, could, in his time, observation precede calculation, since the moon, when standing in conjunction with the two stars, had already traversed nearly two-thirds of the first station? According to the same analogy, also, the other statements of Varâhamihira may be examined.

Each station occupies the same space on the ecliptic.

The stations occupy a smaller or larger space according to their figures, *i.e.* their constellations, not they themselves, for all stations occupy the same space on the ecliptic. This fact does not seem to be known to the Hindus, although we have already related similar notions of theirs regarding the Great Bear. For Brahmagupta says in the *Uttara-khaṇḍakhâdyâka*, *i.e.* the emendation of the *Khaṇḍa-khâdyaka*:—

Quotation from Brahmagupta.

"The measure of some stations exceeds the measure of the mean daily motion of the moon by one half. Accordingly their measure is 19° 45′ 52″ 18‴. There are six stations, viz. Rohiṇî, Punarvasu, Uttaraphalgunî, Viśâkhâ, Uttarâshâḍhâ, Uttarabhâdrapadâ. These together occupy the space of 118° 35′ 13″ 48‴. Further six stations are short ones, each of them occupying less than the mean daily motion of the moon by one half. Accordingly their measure is 6° 35′ 17″ 26‴. These are Bharaṇî, Ârdrâ, Âśleshâ, Svâti, Jyeshṭhâ, Śatabhishaj. They together occupy the space of 39° 31′ 44″ 36‴. Of the remaining fifteen stations, each occupies as much as the mean daily motion. Accordingly it occupies the space of 13° 10′ 34″ 52‴. They together occupy the space of 197° 38′ 43″. These three groups of stations together occupy the space of 355° 45′ 41″ 24‴, the remainder of the complete circle 4° 14′ 18″ 36‴, and this is the space of *Abhijit*, *i.e.* the Falling Eagle, which is left out. I have tried to make the investigation of this subject acceptable to the student in my above-mentioned special treatise on the lunar stations (v. p. 83).

Quotation from Varâhamihira, *Saṁhitâ*, ch. iii. 1-3.

The scantiness of the knowledge of the Hindus regarding the motion of the fixed stars is sufficiently illustrated by the following passage from the *Saṁhitâ* of Varâhamihira:—"It has been mentioned in the books of the ancients that the summer solstice took place in the midst of Âśleshâ, and the winter solstice in Dhanishṭhâ. And this is correct for that time. Nowadays the summer solstice takes place in the beginning of Cancer, and the winter solstice in the beginning of Capricornus. Page 246. If any one doubts this, and maintains that it is as the ancients have said and not as *we* say, let him go out to some level country when he thinks that the summer solstice is near. Let him there draw a circle, and place in its centre some body which stands perpendicular on the plain. Let him mark the end of its shadow by some sign, and continue the line till it reaches the circumference of the circle either in east or west. Let him repeat the same at the same moment of the following day, and make the same observation. When he then finds that the end of the shadow deviates from the first sign towards the south, he must know that the sun has moved towards the north and has not yet reached its solstice. But if he finds that the end of the shadow deviates towards the north, he knows that the sun has already commenced to move southward and has already passed its solstice. If a man continues this kind of observations, and thereby finds the day of the solstice, he will find that our words are true."

The author on the precession of the equinoxes.

This passage shows that Varâhamihira had no knowledge of the motion of the fixed stars towards the east. He considers them, in agreement with the name, as *fixed*, immovable stars, and represents the solstice as moving towards the west. In consequence of this fancy, he has, in the matter of the lunar stations, confounded two things, between which we shall now properly distinguish, in order to remove doubt and to give the matter in a critically emended form.

In the order of the zodiacal signs we begin with that twelfth part of the ecliptic which lies north of the point of intersection of the equator and the ecliptic according to *the second motion*, *i.e.* the precession of the equinoxes. In that case, the summer solstice always occurs at the beginning of the fourth sign, the winter solstice at the beginning of the tenth sign.

In the order of the lunar stations we begin with that twenty-seventh part of the ecliptic which belongs to the first of the first zodiacal sign. In that case the summer solstice falls always on three-fourths of the seventh station (*i.e.* on 600′ of the station), and the winter solstice on one-fourth of the twenty-first station (*i.e.* on 200′ of the station). This order of things will remain the same as long as the world lasts.

If, now, the lunar stations are marked by certain constellations, and are called by names peculiar to these constellations, the stations wander round together with the constellations. The stars of the zodiacal signs and of the stations have, in bygone times, occupied earlier (*i.e.* more western) parts of the ecliptic. From them they have wandered into those which they occupy at present, and in future they will wander into other still more eastern parts of the ecliptic, so that in the course of time they will wander through the whole ecliptic.

According to the Hindus, the stars of the station Âśleshâ stand in 18° of Cancer. Therefore, according to the rate of the precession of the equinoxes adopted by the ancient astronomers, they stood 1800 years before our time in the 0° of the fourth sign, whilst the constellation of Cancer stood in the third sign, in which there was also the solstice. The solstice has kept its place, but the constellations have migrated, just the very opposite of what Varâhamihira has fancied.

CHAPTER LVII.

ON THE HELIACAL RISINGS OF THE STARS, AND ON THE CEREMONIES AND RITES WHICH THE HINDUS PRACTISE AT SUCH A MOMENT.

How far a star must be distant from the sun in order to become visible.

THE Hindu method for the computation of the heliacal risings of the stars and the young moon is, as we think, the same as is explained in the *canones* called *Sindhind*. They call the degrees of a star's distance from the sun which are thought necessary for its heliacal rising *kâlâṁśaka*. They are, according to the author of the *Ghurrat-alzîjât*, the following:—13° for Suhail, Alyamâniya, Alwâḳiʿ, Alʿayyûḳ, Alsimâkân, Ḳalb-alʿaḳrab; 20° for Albuṭain, Alhaḳʿa, Alnathra, Âśleshâ, Śatabhishaj, Revatî; 14° for the others.

Page 247.

Evidently the stars have, in this respect, been divided into three groups, the first of which seems to comprise the stars reckoned by the Greeks as stars of the first and second magnitude, the second the stars of the third and fourth magnitude, and the third the stars of the fifth and sixth magnitude.

Brahmagupta ought to have given this classification in his emendation of the *Khaṇḍakhâdyaka*, but he has not done so. He expresses himself in general phrases, and simply mentions 14° distance from the sun as necessary for the heliacal risings of all lunar stations.

Quotation from Vijayanandin.

Vijayanandin says: "Some stars are not covered by the rays nor impaired in their shining by the sun, viz. Alʿayyûḳ, Alsimâk, Alrâmiḥ, the two Eagles, Dhanishṭhâ, and Uttarabhâdrapadâ, because they have so much northern latitude, and because also the country (of the observer) has so much latitude. For in the more northern regions they are seen both at the beginning and end of one and the same night, and never disappear.

On the heliacal rising of Canopus.

They have particular methods for the computation of the heliacal rising of Agastya, *i.e.* Suhail or Canopus. They observe it first when the sun enters the station Hasta, and they lose it out of sight when he enters the station Rohiṇî. Pulisa says: "Take double the apsis of the sun. If it is equalled by the corrected place of the sun, this is the time of the heliacal setting of Agastya."

The apsis of the sun is, according to Pulisa, 2⅔ zodiacal signs. The double of it falls in 10° of Spica, which is the beginning of the station Hasta. Half the apsis falls on 10° of Taurus, which is the beginning of the station Rohiṇî.

Quotation from Brahmagupta.

Brahmagupta maintains the following in the emendation of the *Khaṇḍakhâdyaka*:—

"The position of Suhail is 27° Orion, its southern latitude 71 parts. The degrees of its distance from the sun necessary for its heliacal rising are 12.

"The position of Mṛigavyâdha, *i.e.* Sirius Yemenicus, is 26° Orion, its southern latitude 40 parts. The degrees of its distance from the sun necessary for its heliacal rising are 13. If you want to find the time of their risings, imagine the sun to be in the place of the star. That amount of the day which has already elapsed is the number of degrees of its distance from the sun necessary for its heliacal rising. Fix the *ascendens* on this particular place. When, then, the sun reaches the degree of this *ascendens*, the star first becomes visible.

"In order to find the time of the heliacal setting of a star, add to the degree of the star six complete zodiacal signs. Subtract from the sum the degrees of its distance from the sun necessary for its heliacal rising, and fix the *ascendens* on the remainder. When, then, the sun enters the degree of the *ascendens*, that is the time of its setting."

On the ceremonies practised at the heliacal rising of certain stars.

The book *Saṁhitâ* mentions certain sacrifices and ceremonies which are practised at the heliacal risings of various stars. We shall now record them, translating also that which is rather chaff than wheat, since we have made it obligatory on ourselves to give the quotations from the books of the Hindus complete and exactly as they are.

Quotation from Varâhamihira's *Saṁhitâ*, ch. xii. preface, and vv. 1–18, on Canopus-Agastya and the sacrifice to him.

Varâhamihira says: "When in the beginning the sun had risen, and in his revolution had come to stand in the zenith of the towering mountain Vindhya, the latter would not recognise his exalted position, and, actuated by haughtiness, moved towards him to hinder his march and to prevent his chariot from passing above it. The Vindhya rose even to the neighbourhood of Paradise and the dwellings of the Vidyâdharas, the spiritual beings. Now the latter hastened to it because it was pleasant and its gardens and meadows were lovely, and dwelt there in joy; their wives going to and fro, and their children playing with each other. When the wind blew against the white garments of their daughters, they flew like waving banners.

In its ravines the wild animals and the lions appear as dark black, in consequence of the multitude of the animals called *bhramara*, which cling to them, liking the dirt of their bodies when they rub each other with the soiled claws. When they attack the rutting elephants, the latter become raving. The monkeys and bears are seen climbing up to the horns of Vindhya and to its lofty peaks; as if by instinct, they took the direction towards heaven. The anchorites are seen at its water-places, satisfied with nourishing themselves by its fruits. The further glorious things of the Vindhya are innumerable.

Page 248.

When, now, Agastya, the son of Varuṇa (*i.e.* Suhail, the son of the water), had observed all these proceedings of the Vindhya, he offered to be his companion in his aspirations, and asked him to remain in his place until he (Agastya) should return and should have freed him (Vindhya) from the darkness which was on him.

V. 1.—Then Agastya turned towards the ocean, devouring its water, so that it disappeared. There appeared the lower parts of the mountain Vindhya, whilst the *makara* and the water animals were clinging to it. They scratched the mountain till they pierced it and dug mines in it, in which there remained gems and pearls.

V. 2.—The ocean became adorned by them, further by trees which grew up, though it (the water) was feeble, and by serpents rushing to and fro in windings on its surface.

V. 3.—The mountain has, in exchange for the wrong done to it by Suhail, received the ornament which it has acquired, whence the angels got tiaras and crowns made for themselves.

V. 4.—Likewise the ocean has, in exchange for the sinking down of its water into the depth, received the sparkling of the fishes when they move about in it, the appearance of jewels at its bottom, and the rushing to and fro of the serpents and snakes in the remainder of its water. When the fishes rise over it, and the conch-shells and pearl-oysters, you would take the ocean for ponds, the surface of their water being covered with the white lotus in the season of *śarad* and the season of autumn.

V. 5.—You could scarcely distinguish between this water and heaven, because the ocean is adorned with jewels as the heaven is adorned with stars; with many-headed serpents, resembling threads of rays which come from the sun; with crystal in it, resembling the body of the moon, and with a white mist, above which rise the clouds of heaven.

V. 6.—How should I not praise him who did this great deed, who pointed out to the angels the beauty of the crowns, and made the ocean and the mountain Vindhya a treasure-house for them!

V. 7.—That is Suhail, by whom the water becomes clean from earthly defilement, with which the purity of the heart of the pious man is commingled, clean, I say from that which overpowers him in the intercourse with the wicked.

V. 8.—Whenever Agastya rises and the water increases in the rivers and valleys during his time, you see the rivers offering to the moon all that is on the surface of their water, the various kinds of white and red lotus and the papyrus; all that swims in them, the ducks and the geese (pelicans?), as a sacrifice unto him, even as a young girl offers roses and presents when she enters them (the rivers).

V. 9.—We compare the standing of the pairs of red geese on the two shores, and the swimming to and fro of the white ducks in the midst while they sing, to the two lips of a beautiful woman, showing her teeth when she laughs for joy.

V. 10.—Nay, we compare the black lotus, standing between white lotus, and the dashing of the bees against it from desire of the fragrancy of its smell, with the black of her pupil within the white of the ring, moving coquettishly and amorously, being surrounded by the hair of the eyebrows.

V. 11.—When you then see the ponds, when the light of the moon has risen over them, when the moon illuminates their dim waters, and when the white lotus opens which was shut over the bees, you would think them the face of a beautiful woman, who looks with a black eye from a white eyeball.

V. 12.—When a stream of the torrents of Varshakâla has flown to them with serpents, poison, and the impurities, the rising of Suhail above them cleans them from defilement and saves them from injury.

V. 13.—As one moment's thinking of Suhail before the door of a man blots out his sins deserving of punishment, how much more effective will be the fluency of the tongue praising him, when the task is to do away with sin and to acquire heavenly reward! The former Ṛishis have mentioned what sacrifice is necessary when Suhail rises. I shall make a present to the kings by relating it, and shall make this relation a sacrifice unto Him. So I say: Page 249.

V. 14.—His rising takes place at the moment when some of the light of the sun appears from the east, and the darkness of night is gathered in the west. The beginning of his appearance is difficult to perceive, and not every one who looks at him understands it. Therefore ask the astronomer at that moment about the direction whence it rises.

V. 15, 16.—Towards this direction offer the sacrifice called *argha*, and spread on the earth what you happen to have, roses and fragrant flowers as they grow in the country. Put on them what you think fit, gold, garments, jewels of the sea, and offer incense, saffron, and sandalwood, musk and camphor, together with an ox and a cow, and many dishes and sweetmeats.

V. 17.—Know that he who does this during seven consecutive years with pious intention, strong belief, and confidence, possesses at the end of them the whole earth and the ocean which surrounds it on the four sides, if he is a Kshatriya.

V. 18.—If he is a Brahman, he obtains his wishes, learns the Veda, obtains a beautiful wife, and gets noble children from her. If he is a Vaiśya, he obtains much landed property and acquires a glorious lordship. If he is a Śûdra, he will obtain wealth. All of them obtain health and safety, the cessation of injuries, and the realisation of reward."

This is Varâhamihira's statement regarding the offering to Suhail. In the same book he gives also the rules regarding Rohiṇî:

Varâhamihira's *Saṁhitâ*, chap. xxiv. 1-37, on Rohiṇî.

"Garga, Vasishṭha, Kâśyapa, and Parâśara told their pupils that Mount Meru is built of planks of gold. Out of them there have risen trees with numerous sweet-smelling flowers and blossoms. The bees already surround them with a humming pleasant to hear, and the nymphs of the Devas wander there to and fro with exhilarating melodies, with pleasant instruments and everlasting joy. This mountain lies in the plain Nandanavana, the park of paradise. So they say. Jupiter was there at a time, and then Nârada the Rishi asked him regarding the prognostics of Rohiṇî, upon which Jupiter explained them to him. I shall here relate them as far as necessary.

V. 4.—Let a man in the black days of the month Âshâḍha observe if the moon reaches Rohiṇî. Let him seek to the north or east of the town a high spot. To this spot the Brahman must go who has the charge of the houses of the kings. He is to light there a fire and to draw a diagram of the various planets and lunar stations round it. He is to recite what is necessary for each one of them, and to give each its share of the roses, barley, and oil, and to make each planet propitious by throwing these things into the fire. Round the fire on all four sides there must be as much as possible of jewels and jugs filled with the sweetest water, and whatever else there happens to be at hand at the moment, fruits, drugs, branches of trees, and roots of plants. Further, he is to spread there grass which is cut with a sickle for his night-quarters. Then he is to take the different kinds of seeds and corns, to wash them with water, to put gold in the midst of them, and to deposit them in a jug. He is to place it towards a certain direction, and to prepare *Homa, i.e.* throwing barley and oil into the fire, at the same time reciting certain passages from the *Veda*, which refer to different directions, viz. Varuṇa-mantra, Vâyava-mantra, and Soma-mantra. Page 250.

He raises a *daṇḍa, i.e.* a long and high spear, from the top of which hang down two straps, the one as long as the spear, the other thrice as long. He must do all this before the moon reaches Rohiṇî, for this purpose, that when she reaches it, he should be ready to determine the times of the blowing of the wind as well as its directions. He learns this by means of the straps of the spear.

V. 10.—If the wind on that day blows from the centres of the four directions, it is considered propitious; if it blows from the directions between them, it is considered unlucky. If the wind remains steady in the same direction, powerful and without changing, this too is considered propitious. The time of its blowing is measured by the eight parts of the day, and each eighth part is considered as corresponding to the half of a month.

V. 11.—When the moon leaves the station Rohiṇî, you look at the seeds placed in a certain direction. That of them which sprouts will grow plentifully in that year.

V. 12.—When the moon comes near Rohiṇî, you must be on the look-out. If the sky is clear, not affected by any disturbance; if the wind is pure and does not cause a destructive commotion; if the melodies of the animals and birds are pleasant, this is considered propitious. We shall now consider the clouds.

V. 13, 14.—If they float like the branches of the valley (? *baṭn* ?), and out of them the flashes of lightning appear to the eye; if they open as opens the white lotus; if the lightning encircles the cloud like the rays of the sun; if the cloud has the colour of *stibium*, or of bees, or of saffron;

V. 15–19.—If the sky is covered with clouds, and out of them flashes the lightning like gold, if the rainbow shows its round form coloured with something like the red of evening twilight, and with colours like those of the garments of a bride; if the thunder roars like the screaming peacock, or the bird which cannot drink water except from falling rain, which then screams for joy, as the frogs enjoy the full water-places, so as to croak vehemently; if you see the sky raging like the raging of elephants and buffaloes in the thicket, in the various parts of which the fire is blazing; if the clouds move like the limbs of the elephants, if they shine like the shining of pearls, conch-shells, snow, and even as the moonbeams, as though the moon had lent the clouds her lustre and splendour;

V. 20.—All this indicates much rain and blessing by a rich growth.

V. 25.—At the time when the Brahman sits amidst the water-jugs, the falling of stars, the flashing of the lightning, thunderbolts, red glow in the sky, tornado, earthquake, the falling of hail, and the screaming of the wild animals, all these things are considered as unlucky.

V. 26.—If the water decreases in a jug on the north side, either by itself, or by a hole, or by dripping away, there will be no rain in the month Śrâvaṇa. If it decreases in a jug on the east side, there will be no rain in Bhâdrapada. If it decreases in a jug on the south side, there will be no rain in Âśvayuja; and if it decreases in a jug on the west side, there will be no rain in Kârttika. If there is no decrease of water in the jugs, the summer rain will be perfect.

V. 27.—From the jugs they also derive prognostics as to the different castes. The northern jug refers to the Brahman, the eastern to the Kshatriya, the southern to the Vaiśya, and the western to the Śûdra. If the names of people and certain circumstances are inscribed upon the jugs, all that happens to them if, *e.g.* they break or the water in them decreases, is considered as prognosticating something which concerns those persons or circumstances."

"The rules relating to the stations Svâtî and Śravaṇa are similar to those relating to Rohiṇî. When you are in the white days of the month Ashâḍha, when the moon stands in either of the two stations Ashâḍhâ, *i.e.* Pûrva-ashâḍhâ or Uttara-ashâḍhâ, select a spot as you have selected it for Rohiṇî, and take a balance of gold. That is the best. If it is of silver, it is middling. If it is not of silver, make it of wood called *khayar*, which seems to be the *khadira* tree (*i.e.* Acacia catechu), or of the head of an arrow with which already a man has been killed. The smallest measure for the length of its beam is a span. The longer it is, the better; the shorter it is, the less favourable.

Saṁhitâ, chap. xxv. v. 1, on Svâtî and Śravaṇa.

Page 251.

Saṁhitâ, chap. xxvi. v. 9.

V. 6.—A scale has four strings, each 10 digits long. Its two scales are of linen cloth of the size of 6 digits. Its two weights are of gold.

V. 7, 8.—Weigh by it equal quantities of each matter, water of the wells, of the ponds, and of the rivers, elephants' teeth, the hair of horses, pieces of gold with the names of kings written on them, and pieces of other metal over which the names of other people, or the names of animals, years, days, directions, or countries have been pronounced.

V. 1.—In weighing, turn towards the east; put the weight in the right scale, and the things which are to be weighed in the left. Recite over them and speak to the balance:

V. 2.—'Thou art correct; thou art Deva, and the wife of a Deva. Thou art Sarasvatî, the daughter of Brahman. Thou revealest the right and the truth. Thou art more correct than the soul of correctness.

V. 3.—Thou art like the sun and the planets in their wandering from east to west on one and the same road.

V. 4.—Through thee stands upright the order of the world, and in thee is united the truth and the correctness of all the angels and Brahmans.

V. 5.—Thou art the daughter of Brahman, and a man of thy house is Kaśyapa.'

V. 1.—This weighing must take place in the evening. Then put the things aside, and repeat their weighing the next morning. That which has increased in weight will flourish and thrive in that year; that which has decreased will be bad and go back.

This weighing, however, is not only to be done in Ashâḍhâ, but also in Rohiṇî and Svâtî.

V. 11.—If the year is a leap-year, and the weighing happens to take place in the repeated month, the weighing is in that year twice done.

V. 12.—If the prognostics are identical, what they forebode will happen. If they were not identical, observe the prognostics of Rohiṇî, for it is predominant."

CHAPTER LVIII.

HOW EBB AND FLOW FOLLOW EACH OTHER IN THE OCEAN.

Quotation from the *Matsya-Purâṇa*.

WITH regard to the cause why the water of the ocean always remains as it is, we quote the following passage from the *Matsya-Purâṇa*:—"At the beginning there were sixteen mountains, which had wings and could fly and rise up into the air. However, the rays of Indra, the ruler, burned their wings, so that they fell down, deprived of them, somewhere about the ocean, four of them in each point of the compass—in the east, Ṛishabba, Balâhaka, Cakra, Mainâka; in the north, Candra, Kaṅka, Droṇa, Suhma; in the west, Vakra, Vadhra, Nârada, Parvata; in the south, Jîmûta, Draviṇa, Mainâka; Mahâśaila (?). Between the third and the fourth of the eastern mountains there is the fire *Saṁvartaka*, which drinks the water of the ocean. But for this the ocean would fill up, since the rivers perpetually flow to it.

Story of King Aurva.

"This fire was the fire of one of their kings, called *Aurva*. He had inherited the realm from his father, who was killed while he was still an embryo. When he was born and grew up, and heard the history of his father, he became angry against the angels, and drew his sword to kill them, since they had neglected the guardianship of the world, notwithstanding mankind's worshipping them and notwithstanding their being in close contact with the world. Thereupon the angels humiliated themselves before him and tried to conciliate him, so that he ceased from his wrath. Then he spoke to them: 'But what am I to do with the fire of my wrath?' and they advised him to throw it into the ocean. It is this fire which absorbs the waters of the ocean. Others say: 'The water of the streams does not increase the ocean, because Indra, the ruler, takes up the ocean in the shape of the cloud, and sends it down as rains.'" Page 252.

The man in the moon. Again the *Matsya-Purâṇa* says: "The black part in the moon which is called *Śaśalaksha*, *i.e.* the hare's figure, is the image of the figures of the above-mentioned sixteen mountains reflected by the light of the moon on her body."

The *Vishṇu-Dharma* says: "The moon is called Śaśalaksha, for the globe of her body is watery, reflecting the figure of the earth as a mirror reflects. On the earth there are mountains and trees of different shapes, which are reflected in the moon as a hare's figure. It is also called *Mṛigalâñcana*, *i.e.* the figure of a gazelle, for certain people compare the black part on the moon's face to the figure of a gazelle."

Story of the leprosy of the moon. The lunar stations they declare to be the daughters of Prajâpati, to whom the moon is married. He was especially attached to Rohiṇî, and preferred her to the others. Now her sisters, urged by jealousy, complained of him to their father Prajâpati. The latter strove to keep peace among them, and admonished him, but without any success. Then he cursed the moon (*Lunus*), in consequence of which his face became leprous. Now the moon repented of his doing, and came penitent to Prajâpati, who spoke to him: "My word is one, and cannot be cancelled; however, I shall cover thy shame for the half of each month." Thereupon the moon spoke to Prajâpati: "But how shall the trace of the sin of the past be wiped off from me?" Prajâpati answered: "By erecting the shape of the *liṅga* of Mahâdeva as an object of thy worship." This he did. The *liṅga* he

The idol of Somanâth.

raised was the stone of Somanâth, for *soma* means the moon and *nâtha* means *master*, so that the whole word means *master of the moon*. The image was destroyed by the Prince Maḥmûd—may God be merciful to him!—A.H. 416. He ordered the upper part to be broken and the remainder to be transported to his residence, Ghaznîn, with all its coverings and trappings of gold, jewels, and embroidered garments. Part of it has been thrown into the hippodrome of the town, together with the *Cakrasvâmin*, an idol of bronze, that had been brought from Tâneshar. Another part of the idol from Somanâth lies before the door of the mosque of Ghaznîn, on which people rub their feet to clean them from dirt and wet.

Origin of the Liṅga.

The *liṅga* is an image of the penis of Mahâdeva. I have heard the following story regarding it:—"A Ṛishi, on seeing Mahâdeva with his wife, became suspicious of him, and cursed him that he should lose his penis. At once his penis dropped, and was as if wiped off. But afterwards the Ṛishi was in a position to establish the signs of his innocence and to confirm them by the necessary proofs. The suspicion which had troubled his mind was removed, and he spoke to him: 'Verily, I shall recompense thee by making the image of the limb which thou hast lost the object of worship for men, who thereby will find the road to God, and come near him.'"

The construction of the Liṅga according to Varâhamihira. *Brihatsaṁhitâ*, chap. lviii. 53.

Varâhamihira says about the construction of the *liṅga*: "After having chosen a faultless stone for it, take it as long as the image is intended to be. Divide it into three parts. The lowest part of it is quadrangular, as if it were a cube or quadrangular column. The middle part is octagonal, its surface being divided by four pilasters. The upper third is round, rounded off so as to resemble the gland of a penis.

V. 54.—In erecting the figure, place the quadrangular third within the earth, and for the octagonal third make a cover, which is called *piṇḍa*, quadrangular from without, but so as to fit also on the quadrangular third in the earth. The octagonal form of the inner side is to fit on to the middle third, which projects out of the earth. The round third alone remains without cover." Page 253.

Further he says:—

V. 55.—"If you make the round part too small or too thin, it will hurt the country and bring about evil among the inhabitants of the regions who have constructed it. If it does not go deep enough down into the earth, or if it projects too little out of the earth, this causes people to fall ill. When it is in the course of construction, and is struck by a peg, the ruler and his family will perish. If on the transport it is hit, and the blow leaves a trace on it, the artist will perish, and destruction and diseases will spread in that country." Chapter lx. v. 6.

The worship of the idol of Somanâth.

In the south-west of the Sindh country this idol is frequently met with in the houses destined for the worship of the Hindus, but Somanâth was the most famous of these places. Every day they brought there a jug of Ganges water and a basket of flowers from Kashmîr. They believed that the *liṅga* of Somanâth would cure persons of every inveterate illness and heal every desperate and incurable disease.

The reason why in particular Somanâth has become so famous is that it was a harbour for seafaring people, and a station for those who went to and fro between Sufâla in the country of the Zanj and China.

Popular belief about the cause of the tides.

Now as regards ebb and flow in the Indian Ocean, of which the former is called *bharṇa* (?), the latter *vuhara* (?), we state that, according to the notions of the common Hindus, there is a fire called *Vaḍavânala* in the ocean, which is always blazing. The flow is caused by the fire's drawing breath and its being blown up by the wind, and the ebb is caused by the fire's exhaling the breath and the cessation of its being blown up by the wind.

Mânî has come to a belief like this, after he had heard from the Hindus that there is a demon in the sea whose drawing breath and exhaling breath causes the flow and the ebb.

The educated Hindus determine the daily phases of the tides by the rising and setting of the moon, the monthly phases by the increase and waning of the moon; but the physical cause of both phenomena is not understood by them.

Origin of the sacredness of Somanâth.

It is flow and ebb to which Somanâth owes its name (*i.e.* master of the moon); for the stone (or *linga*) of Somanâth was originally erected on the coast, a little less than three miles west of the mouth of the river Sarsutî, east of the golden fortress Bârôi, which had appeared as a dwelling-place for Vâsudeva, not far from the place where he and his family were killed, and where they were burned. Each time when the moon rises and sets, the water of the ocean rises in the flood so as to cover the place in question. When, then, the moon reaches the meridian of noon and midnight, the water recedes in the ebb, and the place becomes again visible. Thus the moon was perpetually occupied in serving the idol and bathing it. Therefore the place was considered as sacred to the moon. The fortress which contained the idol and its treasures was not ancient, but was built only about a hundred years ago.

Quotation from the *Vishṇu-Purâṇa.*

The *Vishṇu-Purâṇa* says: "The greatest height of the water of the flow is 1500 digits." This statement seems rather exaggerated; for if the waves and the mean height of the ocean rose to between sixty to seventy yards, the shores and the bays would be more overflown than has ever been witnessed. Still this is not entirely improbable, as it is not in itself impossible on account of some law of nature.

The fact that the just-mentioned fortress is said to have appeared out of the ocean is not astonishing for that particular part of the ocean; for the Dîbajât islands (Maledives and Laccadives) originate in a similar manner, rising out of the ocean as sand-downs. They increase, and rise, and extend themselves, and remain in this condition for a certain time. Then they become decrepit as if from old age; the single parts become dissolved, no longer keep together, and disappear in the water as if melting away. The inhabitants of the islands quit that one which apparently dies away, and migrate to a young and fresh one which is about to rise above the ocean. They take their cocoanut palms along with them, colonise the new island, and dwell on it.

The golden fortress Bârôl. Parallel of the Maledives and Laccadives. Page 254.

That the fortress in question is called *golden* may only be a conventional epithet. Possibly, however, this object is to be taken literally, for the islands of the Zâbaj are called the *Gold Country* (*Suvarṇadvîpa*), because you obtain much gold as deposit if you wash only a little of the earth of that country.

CHAPTER LIX.

ON THE SOLAR AND LUNAR ECLIPSES.

It is perfectly known to the Hindu astronomers that the moon is eclipsed by the shadow of the earth, and the sun is eclipsed by the moon. Hereon they have based their computations in the astronomical handbooks and other works.

Varâhamihira says in the *Saṁhitâ*:—

Quotation from Varâhamihira's *Saṁhitâ*. ch. v.

V. 1.—"Some scholars maintain that the *Head* belonged to the Daityas, and that his mother was Siṃhikâ. After the angels had fetched the *amṛita* out of the ocean, they asked Vishṇu to distribute it among them. When he did so, the Head also came, resembling the angels in shape, and associated himself with them. When Vishṇu handed him a portion of the *amṛita*, he took and drank it. But then Vishṇu perceived who it was, hit him with his round *cakra*, and cut off his head However, the head remained alive on account of the *amṛita* in its mouth, whilst the body died, since it had not yet partaken of the *amṛita*, and the force of the latter had not yet spread through it. Then the Head, humbling itself, spoke: 'For what sin has this been done?' Thereupon he was recompensed by being raised to heaven and by being made one of its inhabitants.

V. 2.—Others say that the Head has a body like sun and moon, but that it is black and dark, and cannot therefore be seen in heaven. Brahman, the first father, ordered that he should never appear in heaven except at the time of an eclipse.

V. 3.—Others say that he has a head like that of a serpent, and a tail like that of a serpent, whilst others say that he has no other body besides the black colour which is seen."

After having finished the relation of these absurdities, Varâhamihira continues :—

V. 4.—"If the Head had a body, it would act by immediate contact, whilst we find that he eclipses from a distance, when between him and the moon there is an interval of six zodiacal signs. Besides, his motion does not increase nor decrease, so that we cannot imagine an eclipse to be caused by his body reaching the spot of the lunar eclipse.

V. 5.—And if a man commits himself to such a view, let him tell us for what purpose the cycles of the Head's rotation have been calculated, and what is the use of their being correct in consequence of the fact that his rotation is a regular one. If the Head is imagined to be a serpent with head and tail, why does it not eclipse from a distance less or more than six zodiacal signs?

V. 6.—His body is there present between head and tail; both hang together by means of the body. Still it does not eclipse sun nor moon nor the fixed stars of the lunar stations, there being an eclipse only if there are two heads opposed to each other.

V. 7.—If the latter were the case, and the moon rose, being eclipsed by one of the two, the sun would necessarily set, being eclipsed by the other. Likewise, Page 255. if the moon should set eclipsed, the sun would rise eclipsed. And nothing of the kind ever occurs.

V. 8.—As has been mentioned by scholars who enjoy the help of God, an eclipse of the moon is her entering the shadow of the earth, and an eclipse of the sun consists in this that the moon covers and hides the sun from us. Therefore the lunar eclipse will never revolve from the west nor the solar eclipse from the east.

V. 9.—A long shadow stretches away from the earth, in like manner as the shadow of a tree.

V. 10.—When the moon has only little latitude, standing in the seventh sign of its distance from the sun, and if it does not stand too far north or south, in that case the moon enters the shadow of the earth and is eclipsed thereby. The first contact takes place on the side of the eas'

V. 11.—When the sun is reached by the moon from the west, the moon covers the sun, as if a portion of a cloud covered him. The amount of the covering differs in different regions.

V. 12.—Because that which covers the moon is large, her light wanes when one-half of it is eclipsed; and because that which covers the sun is not large, the rays are powerful notwithstanding the eclipse.

V. 13.—The nature of the Head has nothing whatever to do with the lunar and solar eclipses. On this subject the scholars in their books agree."

After having described the nature of the two eclipses, as *he* understands them, he complains of those who do not know this, and says: "However, common people are always very loud in proclaiming the Head to be the cause of an eclipse, and they say, 'If the Head did not appear and did not bring about the eclipse, the Brahmans would not at that moment undergo an obligatory washing.'"

Varâhamihira says:—

V. 14.—"The reason of this is that the head humiliated itself after it had been cut off, and received from Brahman a portion of the offering which the Brahmans offer to the fire at the moment of an eclipse.

V. 15.—Therefore he is near the spot of the eclipse, searching for his portion. Therefore at that time people mention him frequently, and consider him as the cause of the eclipse, although he has nothing whatsoever to do with it; for the eclipse depends entirely upon the uniformity and the declination of the orbit of the moon."

Praise of Varâhamihira.

The latter words of Varâhamihira, who, in passages quoted previously, has already revealed himself to us as a man who accurately knows the shape of the world, are odd and surprising. However, he seems sometimes to side with the Brahmans, to whom he belonged, and from whom he could not separate himself. Still he does not deserve to be blamed, as, on the whole, his foot stands firmly on the basis of the truth, and he clearly speaks out the truth. Compare, *e.g.* his statement regarding the *Saṁdhi*, which we have mentioned above (v. i. 366).

Strictures on Brahmagupta's want of sincerity.

Would to God that all distinguished men followed his example! But look, for instance, at Brahmagupta, who is certainly the most distinguished of their astronomers. For as he was one of the Brahmans who read in their Purâṇas that the sun is lower than the moon, and who therefore require a head biting the sun in order that he should be eclipsed, he shirks the truth and lends his support to imposture, if he did not—and this we think by no means impossible—from intense disgust at them, speak as he spoke simply in order to mock them, or under the compulsion of some mental derangement, like a man whom death is about to rob of his consciousness. The words in question are found in the first chapter of his *Brahmasiddhânta*:—

Quotation from the *Brahmasiddhânta*.

"Some people think that the eclipse is not caused by the Head. This, however, is a foolish idea, for it is *he* in fact who eclipses, and the generality of the inhabitants of the world say that it is the Head who eclipses. The *Veda*, which is the word of God from the mouth of Brahman, says that the Head eclipses, likewise the book *Smṛiti*, composed by Manu, and the *Saṁhitâ*, composed by Garga the son of Brahman. On the contrary, Varâ-

Page 256.

hamihira, Śrîsheṇa, Àryabhaṭa, and Vishṇucandra maintain that the eclipse is not caused by the Head, but by the moon and the shadow of the earth, in direct opposition to all (to the generality of men), and from enmity against the just-mentioned dogma. For if the Head does not cause the eclipse, all the usages of the Brahmans which they practise at the moment of an eclipse, viz. their rubbing themselves with warm oil, and other works of prescribed worship, would be illusory and not be rewarded by heavenly bliss. If a man declares these things to be illusory, he stands outside of the generally acknowledged dogma, and that is not allowed. Manu says in the *Smṛiti*: 'When the Head keeps the sun or moon in eclipse, all waters on earth become pure, and in purity like the water of the Ganges.' The *Veda* says: 'The Head is the son of a woman of the daughters of the Daityas, called *Sainakâ*' (? Siṁhikâ ?). Therefore people practise the well-known works of piety, and therefore those authors must cease to oppose the generality, for everything which is in the *Veda*, *Smṛiti*, and *Saṁhitâ* is true."

If Brahmagupta, in this respect, is one of those of whom God says (*Koran*, Sûra xxvii. 14), "*They have denied our signs, although their hearts knew them clearly, from wickedness and haughtiness*," we shall not argue with him, but only whisper into his ear: If people must under circumstances give up opposing the religious codes (as seems to be your case), why then do you order people to be pious if you forget to be so yourself? Why do you, after having spoken such words, then begin to calculate the diameter of the moon in order to explain her eclipsing the sun, and the diameter of the shadow of the earth in order to explain its eclipsing the moon? Why do you compute both eclipses in agreement with the theory of those heretics, and not according to the views of those with whom you think it proper to agree? If the Brahmans are ordered to practise some act of worship or something else at the occurrence of an eclipse, the eclipse is only *the date* of these things, not *their cause.* Thus we Muslims are bound to say certain prayers, and prohibited from saying others, at certain times of the revolution of the sun and his light. These things are simply chronological dates for those acts, nothing more, for the sun has nothing whatever to do with our (Muslim) worship.

Brahmagupta says (ii. 110), "The generality thinks thus." If he thereby means the totality of the inhabitants of the inhabitable world, we can only say that he would be very little able to investigate *their* opinions either by exact research or by means of historical tradition. For India itself is, in comparison to the whole inhabitable world, only a small matter, and the number of those who differ from the Hindus, both in religion and law, is larger than the number of those who agree with them.

Possible excuses for Brahmagupta.

Or if Brahmagupta means *the generality of the Hindus,* we agree that the uneducated among them are much more numerous than the educated; but we also point out that in all our religious codes of divine revelation the uneducated crowd is blamed as being ignorant, always doubting, and ungrateful.

I, for my part, am inclined to the belief that that which made Brahmagupta speak the above-mentioned words (which involve a sin against conscience) was something of a calamitous fate, like that of Socrates, which had befallen him, notwithstanding the abundance of his knowledge and the sharpness of his intellect, and notwithstanding his extreme youth at the time. For he wrote the *Brahmasiddhânta* when he was only thirty years of age. If this indeed is his excuse, we accept it, and herewith drop the matter. Page 257.

As for the above-mentioned people (the Hindu theologians), from whom you must take care not to differ, how should they be able to understand the astronomical theory regarding the moon's eclipsing the sun, as they, in their Purâṇas, place the moon *above* the sun, and that which is higher cannot cover that which is lower in the sight of those who stand lower than both. Therefore they required some being which devours moon and sun, as the fish devours the bait, and causes them to appear in those shapes in which the eclipsed parts of them in reality appear. However, in each nation there are ignorant people, and leaders still more ignorant than they themselves, who (as the Koran, Sura xxix. 12, says) "*bear their own burdens and other burdens besides them*," and who think they can increase the light of their minds; the fact being that the masters are as ignorant as the pupils.

Quotations from Varâhamihira's *Saṁhitâ*, chap. v. 17, 16, 63.

Very odd is that which Varâhamihira relates of certain ancient writers, to whom we must pay no attention if we do not want to oppose them, viz. that they tried to prognosticate the occurrence of an eclipse by pouring a small amount of water together with the same amount of oil into a large vase with a flat bottom on the eighth of the lunar days. Then they examined the spots where the oil was united and dispersed. The united portion they considered as a prognostication for the beginning of the eclipse, the dispersed portion as a prognostication for its end.

Further, Varâhamihira says that somebody used to think that the conjunction of the planets is the cause of the eclipse (V. 16), whilst others tried to prognosticate an eclipse from unlucky phenomena, as, *e.g.* the falling of stars, comets, halo, darkness, hurricane, landslip, and earthquake. "These things," so he says, "are not always contemporary with an eclipse, nor are they its cause; the nature of an unlucky event is the only thing which these occurrences have in common with an eclipse. A reasonable explanation is totally different from such absurdities."

The same man, knowing only too well the character of his countrymen, who like to mix up peas with wolf's beans, pearls with dung, says, without quoting any authority for his words (V. 63): "If at the time of an eclipse a violent wind blows, the next eclipse will be six months later. If a star falls down, the next eclipse will be twelve months later. If the air is dusty, it will be eighteen months later. If there is an earthquake, it will be twenty-four months later. If the air is dark, it will be thirty months later. If hail falls, it will be thirty-six months later."

To such things silence is the only proper answer.

On the colours of the eclipses.

I shall not omit to mention that the different kinds of eclipses described in the canon of Alkhwârizmî, though correctly represented, do not agree with the results of actual observation. More correct is a similar view of the Hindus, viz. that the eclipse has the colour of smoke if it covers less than half the body of the moon; that it is coal-black if it completely covers one half of her; that it has a colour between black and red if the eclipse covers more than half of her body; and, lastly, that it is yellow-brown if it covers the whole body of the moon.

CHAPTER LX.

ON THE PARVAN.

Page 258. Explanation of the term *parvan*.

THE intervals between which an eclipse may happen and the number of their lunations are sufficiently demonstrated in the sixth chapter of Almagest. The Hindus call a period of time at the beginning and end of which there occur lunar eclipses, *parvan*. The following information on the subject is taken from the *Saṁhitâ*. Its author, Varâhamihira, says: "Each six months form a *parvan*, in which an eclipse may happen. These eclipses form a cycle of seven, each of which has a particular *dominant* and prognostics, as exhibited in the following table:—

Quotation from Varâhamihira's *Saṁhitâ*, chap. v. 19–23.

Number of the Parvans.	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
Dominants of the Parvans.	Brahman.	Śaśin, *i.e.* the Moon.	Indra, the Ruler.	Kubera, the Protector of the North.	Varuṇa, the Protector of the Water.	Agni, the Fire, also called Mitrâkhya.	Yama, the Angel of Death.
Their prognostics.	Favourable to the Brahmans; the cattle is thriving, the crops are flourishing, and there is general well-being and safety.	The same as in the first Parvan, but rain is scarce in it, and scholars are ill.	The kings become estranged from each other, safety declines, and the autumnal crops are ruined.	There is abundance and wealth; rich people ruin their property.	Not favourable to kings, but favourable to others; the crops are flourishing.	There is much water, fine crops, general well-being and safety; pestilence and mortality are declining.	Rain is scarce, the crops perish, and this leads to famine.

Rules for the computation of the *parvan* from the *Khandakhâdyaka*.

The computation of the *parvan* in which you happen to be is the following, according to the *Khaṇḍakhâdyaka*: "Write down the *ahargaṇa*, as computed according to this canon, in two places. Multiply the one by 50, and divide the product by 1296, reckoning a fraction, if it is not less than one-half, as a whole. Add to the quotient 1063. Add the sum to the number written in the second place, and divide the sum by 180. The quotient, as consisting of wholes, means the number of complete *parvans*. Divide it by 7, and the remainder under 7 which you get means the distance of the particular *parvan* from the first one, *i.e.* from that of Brahman. However, the remainder under 180 which you get by the division is the elapsed part of the *parvan* in which you are. You subtract it from 180. If the remainder is less than 15, a lunar eclipse is possible or necessary; if the remainder is larger, it is impossible. Therefore you must always by a similar method compute that time which has elapsed before the particular *parvan* in which you happen to be."

Page 259.

In another passage of the book we find the following rule: "Take the *kalpa-ahargaṇa*, *i.e.* the past portion of the days of a *kalpa*. Subtract therefrom 96,031, and write down the remainder in two different places. Subtract from the lower number 84, and divide the sum by 561. Subtract the quotient from the upper number and divide the remainder by 173. The quotient you disregard, but the remainder you divide by 7. The quotient gives *parvans*, beginning with *Brahmâdi*" (sic).

These two methods do not agree with each other. We are under the impression that in the second passage something has either fallen out or been changed by the copyists.

Quotation from Varâhamihira's *Saṁhitâ*, chap. v. 23*b*.

What Varâhamihira says of the astrological portents of the *parvans* does not well suit his deep learning. He says: "If in a certain *parvan* there is no eclipse, but there is one in the other cycle, there are no rains, and there will be much hunger and killing." If in this passage the translator has not made a blunder, we can only say that this description applies to each *parvan* preceding such a one in which there occurs an eclipse.

Stranger still is the following remark of his (V. 24): "If an eclipse occurs earlier than has been calculated, there is little rain and the sword is drawn. If it occurs later than has been calculated, there will be pestilence, and death, and destruction in the corn, the fruit, and flowers. (V. 25.) This is part of what I have found in the books of the ancients and transferred to this place. If a man properly knows how to calculate, it will not happen to him in his calculations that an eclipse falls too early or too late. If the sun is eclipsed and darkened outside a *parvan*, you must know that an angel called Tvashṭri has eclipsed him." Chap. iii. v. 6.

Similar to this is what he says in another passage: "If the turning to the north takes place before the sun enters the sign Capricornus, the south and the west will be ruined. If the turning to the south takes place before the sun enters Cancer, the east and the north will be ruined. If the turning coincides with the sun's entering the first degrees of these two signs, or takes place after it, happiness will be common to all four sides, and bliss in them will increase." Ibid. v. 4, 5.

Such sentences, understood as they seem intended to be understood, sound like the ravings of a madman, but perhaps there is an esoteric meaning concealed behind them which we do not know.

After this we must continue to speak of the *domini temporum*, for these two are of a cyclical nature, adding such materials as are related to them.

CHAPTER LXI.

ON THE DOMINANTS OF THE DIFFERENT MEASURES OF TIME IN BOTH RELIGIOUS AND ASTRONOMICAL RELATIONS, AND ON CONNECTED SUBJECTS.

Which of the different measures of time have dominants and which not.

DURATION, or time in general, only applies to the Creator as being *his* age, and not determinable by a beginning and an end. In fact, it is his eternity. They frequently call it *the soul*, i.e. *purusha*. But as regards common time, which is determinable by motion, the single parts of it apply to beings beside the Creator, and to natural phenomena beside *the soul*. Thus *kalpa* is always used in relation to Brahman, for it is his day and night, and his life is determined by it.

Page 260.

Each *manvantara* has a special dominant called *Manu*, who is described by special qualities, already mentioned in a former chapter. On the other hand, I have never heard anything of dominants of the *caturyugas* or *yugas*.

Varâhamihira says in the *Great Book of Nativities*: "*Abda*, *i.e.* the year, belongs to Saturn; *Ayana*, half a year, to the sun; *Ṛitu*, the sixth part of a year, to Mercury; *the month*, to Jupiter; *Paksha*, half a month, to Venus; *Vâsara*, the day, to Mars; *Muhûrta*, to the moon.'

In the same book he defines the sixth parts of the year in the following manner: "The first, beginning with the winter solstice, belongs to Saturn; the second, to Venus; the third, to Mars; the fourth, to the Moon; the fifth, to Mercury; the sixth, to Jupiter."

We have already, in former chapters, described the dominants of the hours, of the *muhûrtas*, of the halves of the lunar days, of the single days in the white and black halves of the month, of the *parvans* of the eclipses, and of the single *manvantaras*. What there is more of the same kind we shall give in this place.

Computation of the dominant of the year according to the *Khaṇḍakhâdyaka*.

In computing the *dominant of the year*, the Hindus use another method than the Western nations, who compute it, according to certain well-known rules, from the *ascendens* or horoscope of a year. The dominant of the year as well as the dominant of the month are the rulers of certain periodically recurring parts of time, and are by a certain calculation derived from the *dominants of the hours* and the *dominants of the days.*

If you want to find the dominant of the year, compute the sum of days of the date in question according to the rules of the canon *Khaṇḍakhâdyaka*, which is the most universally used among them. Subtract therefrom 2201, and divide the remainder by 360. Multiply the quotient by 3, and add to the product always 3. Divide the sum by 7. The remainder, a number under 7, you count off on the week-days, beginning with Sunday. The dominant of that day you come to is at the same time *the dominant of the year.* The remainders you get by the division are the days of his rule which have already elapsed. These, together with the days of his rule which have not yet elapsed, give the sum of 360.

It is the same whether we reckon as we have just explained, or add to the here-mentioned sum of days 319, instead of subtracting from it.

How to find the dominant of the month.

If you want to find the *dominant of the month*, subtract 71 from the sum of days of the date in question, and divide the remainder by 30. Double the quotient and add 1. The sum divide by 7, and the remainder count off on the week-days, beginning with Sunday. The dominant of the day you come to is at the same time the dominant of the month. The remainder you get by the division is that part of his rule which has already elapsed. This, together with that part of his rule which has not yet elapsed, gives the sum of 30 days.

It is the same whether you reckon as we have just explained, or add 19 to the days of the date, instead of subtracting from them, and then add 2 instead of 1 to the double of the sum.

It is useless here to speak of the dominant of the day, for you find it by dividing the sum of the days of a date by 7; or to speak of the dominant of the hour, for you find it by dividing the revolving sphere by 15. Those, however, who use the ὥραι καιρικαί divide by 15 the distance between the degree of the sun and the degree of the *ascendens*, it being measured by equal degrees.

Page 261.

Quotation from *Mahâdeva.*

The book *Srâdhava* of *Mahâdeva* says: "Each of the thirds of the day and night has a dominant. The dominant of the first third of day and night is Brahman, that of the second Vishṇu, and that of the third Rudra." This division is based on the order of the three primeval forces (*satva*, *rajas*, *tamas*).

The *Nâgas* in connection with the planets.

The Hindus have still another custom, viz. that of mentioning together with the dominant of the year one of the *Nâgas* or serpents, which have certain names as they are used in connection with one or other of the planets. We have united them in the following table:—

Table of the serpents.

The dominant of the year.	The names of the serpents which accompany the *Dominus Anni*, given in two different forms.	
Sun.	Suka (? Vâsuki),	Nanda.
Moon.	Pushkara,	Citrâṅgada.
Mars.	Piṇḍáraka, Bharma (?),	Takshaka.
Mercury.	Cabrahasta (?),	Karkoṭa.
Jupiter.	Elâpatra,	Padma.
Venus.	Karkoṭaka,	Mahâpadma.
Saturn.	Cakshabhadra (?),	Śaṅkha.

The dominants of the planets according to *Vishṇu-dharma.*

The Hindus combine the planets with the sun because they depend upon the sun, and the fixed stars with the moon because the stars of her stations belong to them. It is known among Hindu as well as Muslim astrologers that the planets exercise the rule over the zodiacal signs. Therefore they assume certain angelic beings as the dominants of the planets, who are exhibited in the following table, taken from the *Vishṇu-dharma* :—

Table of the dominants of the planets.

The planets and the two nodes.	Their dominants.
Sun.	Agni.
Moon.	Vyâna (?).
Mars.	*Kalmâsha* (?).
Mercury.	Vishṇu.
Jupiter.	Śukra.
Venus.	Gaurî.
Saturn.	Prajâpati.
The Head.	Gaṇapati (?).
The Tail.	Viśvakarman.

The dominants of the lunar stations.

The same book attributes also to the lunar stations as to the planets certain dominants, who are contained in the following table :—

Page 262.

The Lunar Stations.	Their dominants.
Kṛittikâ.	Agni.
Rohiṇî.	Keśvara.
Mṛigaśirsha.	Indu, *i.e.* the moon
Ârdrâ.	Rudra.
Punarvasu.	Aditi.
Pushya.	Guru, *i.e.* Jupiter.
Âśleshâ.	Sarpâs.
Maghâ.	Pitaras.
Pûrvaphalgunî.	Bhaga.
Uttaraphalgunî.	Aryaman.
Hasta.	Savitṛi, *i.e.* Savitâ.
Citrâ.	Tvashṭṛi.
Svâtî.	Vâyu.
Viśâkhâ.	Indrâgnî.

The Lunar Stations.	Their dominants.
Anurâdhâ.	Mitra.
Jyeshṭhâ.	Śakra.
Mûla.	Nirṛiti.
Pûrvâshâḍhâ.	Âpas.
Uttarâshâḍhâ.	Viśvê[devâs].
Abhijit.	Brahman.
Śravaṇa.	Vishṇu.
Dhanishtâ.	Vasavas.
Śatabhishaj.	Varuṇa.
Pûrvabhâdrapadâ.	[Aja ekapâd].
Uttarabhâdrapadâ.	Ahir budhnya.
Revatî.	Pûshan.
Aśvinî.	Aśvin (?).
Bharaṇî.	Yama.

CHAPTER LXII.

ON THE SIXTY YEARS-SAMVATSARA, ALSO CALLED "SHASHṬYABDA."

Page 263.

Explanation of the terms *samvatsara* and *shashṭyabda*.

THE word *samvatsara*, which means *the years*, is a technical term for cycles of years constructed on the basis of the revolutions of Jupiter and the sun, the heliacal rising of the former being reckoned as the beginning. It revolves in sixty years, and is therefore called *shashṭyabda, i.e.* sixty years.

A year is presided over by that month in which the heliacal rising of Jupiter occurs.

We have already mentioned that the names of the lunar stations are, by the names of the months, divided into groups, each month having a namesake in the corresponding group of stations. We have represented these things in a table, in order to facilitate the subject (v. i. 218). Knowing the station in which the heliacal rising of Jupiter occurs, and looking up this station in the just-mentioned table, you find at the left of it the name of the month which rules over the year in question. You bring the year in connection with the month, and say, *e.g. the year of Caitra, the year of Vaiśâkha*, &c. For each of these years there exist astrological rules which are well known in their literature.

How to find the lunar station of Jupiter's heliacal rising. Quotation from Varâhamihira's *Saṁhitâ*, chap. viii. 20, 21.

For the computation of the lunar station in which the heliacal rising of Jupiter occurs, Varâhamihira gives the following rule in his *Saṁhitâ*:—

"Take the Śakakâla, multiply it by 11, and multiply the product by 4. You may do this, or you may also multiply the Śakakâla by 44. Add 8589 to the product and divide the sum by 3750. The quotient represents years, months, days, &c.

"Add them to the Śakakâla, and divide the sum by 60. The quotient represents great sexagenarian *yugas*, *i.e.* complete *shashṭyabdas*, which, as not being necessary, are disregarded. Divide the remainder by 5, and the quotient represents small, complete five-year *yugas*. That which remains being less than one *yuga*, is called *samvatsara*, *i.e.* the year.

"V. 22.—Write down the latter number in two different places. Multiply the one by 9, and add to the product $\frac{1}{12}$ of the number in the other place. Take of the sum the fourth part, and this number represents complete lunar stations, its fractions representing part of the next following current station. Count off this number of the stations, beginning with Dhanishṭhâ. The station you arrive at is that one in which the heliacal rising of Jupiter takes place." Thereby you know the month of the years, as has above been explained.

Smaller cycles as contained in the cycle of sixty years.

The great *yugas* begin with the heliacal rising of Jupiter in the beginning of the station Dhanishṭhâ and the beginning of the month Mâgha. The small *yugas* have within the great ones a certain order, being divided into groups which comprehend certain numbers of years, and each of which has a special dominant. This division is represented by the following table.

If you know what number in the great *yuga* the year in question occupies, and you look up this number among the numbers of the years in the upper part of the table, you find under it, in the corresponding columns, both the name of the year and the name of its dominant.

Page 264.

The number of each year of the sixty-years cycle.	Numbers with the unit 1.	Numbers with the unit 6.	Numbers with the unit 2.	Numbers with the unit 7.	Numbers with the unit 3.	Numbers with the unit 8.	Numbers with the unit 4.	Numbers with the unit 9.	Numbers with the unit 5.	Numbers without a unit.
	1 11 21 31 41 51	6 16 26 36 46 56	2 12 22 32 42 52	7 17 27 37 47 57	3 13 23 33 43 53	8 18 28 38 48 58	4 14 24 34 44 54	9 19 29 39 49 59	5 15 25 35 45 55	10 20 30 40 50 60
The names which each dozen of years has in common.	Samvatsara.		Parivatsara.		Idâvatsara.		Anuvatsara.		Udvatsara.	
Their dominants.	Agni, *i.e.* the fire.		Arka, *i.e.* the sun.		Śitamayûkhamâlin, *i.e.* having a cold ray, viz. the moon.		Prajâpati, the father of the lunar stations.		Sailasutâpati, *i.e.* the husband of the daughter of the mountain, viz. Mahâdeva.	

The names of the single years of a *samvatsara*.

Further, every single one of the sixty years has a name of its own, and the *yugas*, too, have names which are the names of their dominants. All these names are exhibited in the following table.

This table is to be used in the same way as the preceding one, as you find the name of each year of the whole cycle (of sixty years) under the corresponding number. It would be a lengthy affair if we were to explain the meanings of the single names and their prognostics. All this is found in the book *Saṁhitâ.*

Page 265.

I.—Lustrum. Favourable. Its lord is Manu, *i.e.* Nârâyaṇa	1. Prabhava.	2. Vibhava.	3. Śukla.	4. Pramoda.	5. Prajâpati.
II.—Lustrum. Favourable. Its lord Surejya, *i.e.* Jupiter	6. Aṇgiras.	7. Śrîmukha.	8. Bhâva.	9. Yuvan.	10. Dhâtṛi.
III.—Lustrum. Favourable. Its lord Balabhit, *i.e.* Indra	11. Îśvara.	12. Bahudhânya.	13. Pramâthin.	14. Vikrama.	15. Visha. (Vṛishabha ?)
IV.—Lustrum. Favourable. Its lord Hutâśa, *i.e.* the fire	16. Citrabhânu.	17. Subhânu.	18. Pârthiva (?).	19. Târaṇa.	20. Vyaya.
V.—Lustrum. Indifferent. Its lord Tvashtṛi, the lord of the lunar station Citrâ . . .	21. Sarvajit.	22. Sarvadhârin.	23. Virodhin.	24. Vikṛita.	25. Khara.
VI.—Lustrum. Indifferent. Its lord Proshṭhapada, the lord of the lunar station Uttarabhâdrapadâ	26. Nandana.	27. Vijaya.	28. Jaya.	29. Manmatha.	30. Cadur (!).

Page 206.

VII.—Lustrum. Indifferent. Its lord Pitáras, *i.e.* the fathers	31. Hemalamba.	32. Vilambin.	33. Vikârin.	34. Śarvarî (?).	35. Plava.
VIII.—Lustrum. Indifferent. Its lord is Śiva, *i.e.* the creatures	36. Śokakṛit.	37. Śubhakṛit.	38. Krodhin.	39. Viśvâvasu.	40. Parâvasu.
IX.—Lustrum. Unlucky. Its lord Soma, *i.e.* the moon .	41. Plavaṅga.	42. Kîlaka.	43. Saumya.	44. Sâdhâraṇa.	45. Rodhakṛit.
X.—Lustrum. Unlucky. Its lord Śakrânala, *i.e.* Indra and the fire together	46. Paridhâvin.	47. Pramâdin	48. Vikrama.	49. Râkshasa.	50. Anala.
XI.—Lustrum. Unlucky. Its lord Aśvin, the lord of the lunar station Aśvinî . . .	51. Piṅgala.	52. Kâlayukta.	53. Siddhârtha.	54. Raudra.	55. Durmati.
XII.—Lustrum. Unlucky. Its lord Bhaga, the lord of the lunar station Pûrvaphalgunî . .	56. Dundubhi.	57. Aṅgâra.	58. Raktâksha (?).	59. Krodha.	60. Kshaya.

Page 267.

This is the method for the determination of the years of the *shashṭyabda*, as recorded in their books. However, I have seen Hindus who subtract 3 from the era of Vikramâditya, and divide the remainder by 60. The remainder they count off from the beginning of the great *yuga*. This method is not worth anything. By-the-bye, it is the same whether you reckon in the manner mentioned, or add 12 to the Śakakâla.

The *samvatsaras* of the people of Kanoj.

I have come across some people from the country of Kanoj who told me that, with them, the cycle of *samvatsaras* has 1248 years, each single one of the twelve *samvatsaras* having 104 years. According to this statement we must subtract 554 from the Śakakâla, and with the remainder compare the following diagram. In the corresponding column you see in which *samvatsara* the year in question lies, and how many years of the *samvatsara* have already elapsed:—

The years	1.	105.	209.	313.	417.	521.
Their names	Rukmâksha. (?)	Pilumant. (?)	Kadara.	Kâlavṛinta.	Naumand. (?)	Meru.
The years	625.	729.	833.	937.	1041.	1145.
Their names	Barbara.	Jambu.	Kṛiti.	Sarpa.	Hindhu.	Sindhu.

When I heard, among these pretended names of *samvatsaras*, names of nations, trees, and mountains, I conceived a suspicion of my reporters, more particularly as their chief business was indeed to practise hocus-pocus and deception (as jugglers ?); and a dyed beard proves its bearer to be a liar. I used great care in examining every single one of them, in repeating the same questions at different times, in a different order and context. But lo! what different answers did I get! God is all-wise!

CHAPTER LXIII.

ON THAT WHICH ESPECIALLY CONCERNS THE BRAHMANS, AND WHAT THEY ARE OBLIGED TO DO DURING THEIR WHOLE LIFE.

First period in the Brahman's life.

The life of the Brahman, after seven years of it have passed, is divided into four parts. The first part begins with the eighth year, when the Brahmans come to him to instruct him, to teach him his duties, and to enjoin him to adhere to them and to embrace them as long as he lives. Then they bind a girdle round his waist and invest him with a pair of *yajnopavîtas, i.e.* one strong cord consisting of nine single cords which are twisted together, and with a third *yajnopavîta*, a single one made from cloth. This girdle runs from the left shoulder to the right hip. Further, he is presented with a stick which he has to wear, and with a seal-ring of a certain grass, called *darbha*, which he wears on the ring-finger of the right hand. This seal-ring is also called *pavitra*. The object of his wearing the ring on the ring-finger of his right hand is this, that it should be a good omen and a blessing for all those who receive gifts from that hand. The obligation of wearing the ring is not quite so stringent as that of wearing the *yajnopavîta*, for from the latter he is not to separate himself under any circumstances whatever. If he takes it off while eating or fulfilling some want of nature, he thereby commits a sin which cannot be wiped off save by some work of expiation, fasting, or almsgiving.

Page 268.

This first period of the Brahman's life extends till the twenty-fifth year of his age, or, according to the *Vishṇu-Purâṇa*, till his forty-eighth year. His duty is to practise abstinence, to make the earth his bed, to begin with the learning of the Veda and of its explanation, of the science of theology and law, all this being taught to him by a master whom he serves day and night. He washes himself thrice a day, and performs a sacrifice to the fire both at the beginning and end of the day. After the sacrifice he worships his master. He fasts a day and he breaks fast a day, but he is never allowed to eat meat. He dwells in the house of the master, which he only leaves in order to ask for a gift and to beg in not more than five houses once a day, either at noon or in the evening. Whatever alms he receives he places before his master to choose from it what he likes. Then the master allows him to take the remainder. Thus the pupil nourishes himself from the remains of the dishes of his master. Further, he fetches the wood for the fire, wood of two kinds of trees, *palâśa* (*Butea frondosa*) and *darbha*, in order to perform the sacrifice; for the Hindus highly venerate the fire, and offer flowers to it. It is the same case with all other nations. They always thought that the sacrifice was accepted by the deity if the fire came down upon it, and no other worship has been able to draw them away from it, neither the worship of idols nor that of stars, cows, asses, or images. Therefore Bashshâr Ibn Burd says: "Since there is fire, it is worshipped."

Second period in the Brahman's life.

The second period of their life extends from the twenty-fifth year till the fiftieth, or, according to the *Vishṇu-Purâṇa*, till the seventieth. The master allows him to marry. He marries, establishes a household, and intends to have descendants, but he cohabits with his wife only once in a month after she has become clean of the menstruation. He is not allowed to marry a woman above twelve years of age. He gains his sustenance *either* by the fee he obtains for teaching Brahmans and Kshatriyas, not as a payment, but as a present, *or* by presents which he receives from some one because he performs for him the sacrifices to the fire, *or* by asking a gift from the kings and nobles, there being no importunate pressing on his part, and no unwillingness on the part of the giver. There is always a Brahman in the houses of those people, who there administers the affairs of religion and the works of piety. He is called *purohita.* Lastly, the Brahman lives from what he gathers on the earth or from the trees. He may try his fortune in the trade of clothes and betel-nuts, but it is preferable that he should not trade himself, and that a Vaiśya should do the business for him, because originally trade is forbidden on account of the deceiving and lying which are mixed up with it. Trading is permitted to him only in case of dire necessity, when he has no other means of sustenance. The Brahmans are not, like the other castes, bound to pay taxes and to perform services to the kings. Further, he is not allowed continually to busy himself with horses and cows, with the care for the cattle, nor with gaining by usury. The blue colour Page 269. is impure for him, so that if it touches his body, he is obliged to wash himself. Lastly, he must always beat the drum before the fire, and recite for it the prescribed holy texts.

The third period.

The third period of the life of the Brahman extends from the fiftieth year to the seventy-fifth, or, according to the *Vishṇu-Purâṇa,* till the ninetieth. He practises abstinence, leaves his household, and hands it as well as his wife over to his children, if the latter does not prefer to accompany him into the life in the wilderness. He dwells outside civilisation, and leads the same life again which he led in the first period. He does not take shelter under a roof, nor wear any other dress but some bark of a tree, simply sufficient to cover his loins. He sleeps on the earth without any bed, and only nourishes himself by fruit, vegetables, and roots. He lets the hair grow long, and does not anoint himself with oil.

The fourth period.

The fourth period extends till the end of life. He wears a red garment and holds a stick in his hand. He is always given to meditation; he strips the mind of friendship and enmity, and roots out desire, and lust, and wrath. He does not converse with anybody at all. When walking to a place of a particular merit, in order to gain a heavenly reward, he does not stop on the road in a village longer than a day, nor in a city longer than five days. If any one gives him something, he does not leave a remainder of it for the following day. He has no other business but that of caring for the path which leads to salvation, and for reaching *moksha*, whence there is no return to this world.

The duties of Brahmans in general.

The universal duties of the Brahman throughout his whole life are works of piety, giving alms and receiving them. For that which the Brahmans give reverts to the *pitaras* (is in reality a benefit to the *Fathers*). He must continually read, perform the sacrifices, take care of the fire which he lights, offer before it, worship it, and preserve it from being extinguished, that he may be burned by it after his death. It is called *homa*.

Every day he must wash himself thrice: at the *saṁdhi* of rising, *i.e.* morning dawn, at the *saṁdhi* of setting, *i.e.* evening twilight, and between them in the middle of the day. The first washing is on account of sleep, because the openings of the body have become lax during it. Washing is a cleansing from accidental impurity and a preparation for prayer.

Their prayer consists of praise, glorification, and prostration according to their peculiar manner, viz. prostrating themselves on the two thumbs, whilst the two palms of the hands are joined, and they turn their faces towards the sun. For the sun is their *kibla*, wherever he may be, except when in the south. For they do not perform any work of piety with the face turned southward; only when occupied with something evil and unlucky they turn themselves towards the south.

The time when the sun declines from the meridian (the afternoon) is well suited for acquiring in it a heavenly reward. Therefore at this time the Brahman must be clean.

The evening is the time of supper and of prayer. The Brahman may take his supper and pray without having previously washed himself. Therefore, evidently, the rule as to the third washing is not as stringent as that relating to the first and second washings.

A nightly washing is obligatory for the Brahman only at the times of eclipses, that he should be prepared to perform the rules and sacrifices prescribed for that occasion.

The Brahman, as long as he lives, eats only twice a day, at noon and at nightfall; and when he wants to take his meal, he begins by putting aside as much as
270. is sufficient for one or two men as alms, especially for strange Brahmans who happen to come at evening-time asking for something. To neglect *their* maintenance would be a great sin. Further, he puts something aside for the cattle, the birds, and the fire. Over the remainder he says prayers and eats it. The remainder of his dish he places outside his house, and does not any more come near it, as it is no longer allowable for him, being destined for the chance passer-by who wants it, be he a man, bird, dog, or something else.

The Brahman must have a water-vessel for himself. If another one uses it, it is broken. The same remark applies to his eating-instruments. I have seen Brahmans who allowed their relatives to eat with them from the same plate, but most of them disapprove of this.

He is obliged to dwell between the river Sindh in the north and the river Carmaṇvatî in the south. He is not allowed to cross either of these frontiers so as to enter the country of the Turks or of the Karṇâṭa. Further, he must live between the ocean in the east and west. People say that he is not allowed to stay in a country in which the grass which he wears on the ring-finger does not grow, nor the black-haired gazelles graze. This is a description for the whole country within the just-mentioned boundaries. If he passes beyond them he commits a sin.

In a country where not the whole spot in the house which is prepared for people to eat upon it is plastered with clay, where they, on the contrary, prepare a separate tablecloth for each person eating by pouring water over a spot and plastering it with the dung of cows, the shape of the Brahman's tablecloth must be square. Those who have the custom of preparing such tablecloths give the following as the cause of this custom·—The spot of eating is soiled by the eating. If the eating is finished, the spot is washed and plastered to become clean again. If, now, the soiled spot is not distinguished by a separate mark, you would suppose also the other spots to be soiled, since they are similar to and cannot be distinguished from each other.

Five vegetables are forbidden to them by the religious code:—Onions, garlic, a kind of gourd, the root of a plant like the carrots called *krncn* (?), and another vegetable which grows round their tanks called *nâlî*.

CHAPTER LXIV.

ON THE RITES AND CUSTOMS WHICH THE OTHER CASTES, BESIDES THE BRAHMANS, PRACTISE DURING THEIR LIFETIME.

Duties of the single castes.

THE Kshatriya reads the Veda and learns it, but does not teach it. He offers to the fire and acts according to the rules of the Purâṇas. In places where, as we have mentioned (v. p. 135), a tablecloth is prepared for eating, he makes it angular. He rules the people and defends them, for he is created for this task. He girds himself with a single cord of the threefold *yajnopavîta*, and a single other cord of cotton. This takes place after he has finished the twelfth year of his life.

It is the duty of the Vaiśya to practise agriculture and to cultivate the land, to tend the cattle and to remove the needs of the Brahmans. He is only allowed to gird himself with a single *yajnopavîta*, which is made of two cords.

The Śûdra is like a servant to the Brahman, taking care of his affairs and serving him. If, though being poor in the extreme, he still desires not to be without a *yajnopavîta*, he girds himself only with the linen one. Every action which is considered as the privilege of a Brahman, such as saying prayers, the recitation of the Veda, and offering sacrifices to the fire, is forbidden to him, to such a degree that when, *e.g.* a Śûdra or a Vaiśya is proved to have recited the Veda, he is accused by the Brahmans before the ruler, and the latter will order his tongue to be cut off. However, the meditation on God,

Page 271.

works of piety, and almsgiving are not forbidden to him.

Every man who takes to some occupation which is not allowed to his caste, as, *e.g.* a Brahman to trade, a Śûdra to agriculture, commits a sin or crime, which they consider only a little less than the crime of theft.

Story of King Râma, the *Caṇḍâla* and the Brahman.

The following is one of the traditions of the Hindus:—In the days of King Râma human life was very long, always of a well-defined and well-known length. Thus a child never died before its father. Then, however, it happened that the son of a Brahman died while the father was still alive. Now the Brahman brought his child to the door of the king and spoke to him: "This innovation has sprung up in thy days for no other reason but this, that there is something rotten in the state of the country, and because a certain Vazîr commits in thy realm what he commits." Then Râma began to inquire into the cause of this, and finally they pointed out to him a Caṇḍâla who took the greatest pains in performing worship and in self-torment. The king rode to him and found him on the banks of the Ganges, hanging on something with his head downward. The king bent his bow, shot at him, and pierced his bowels. Then he spoke: "That is it! I kill thee on account of a good action which thou art not allowed to do." When he returned home, he found the son of the Brahman, who had been deposited before his door, alive.

All other men except the Caṇḍâla, as far as they are not Hindus, are called *mleccha*, *i.e.* unclean, all those who kill men and slaughter animals and eat the flesh of cows.

Philosophic opinion about all things being equal.

All these things originate in the difference of the classes or castes, one set of people treating the others as fools. This apart, all men are equal to each other, as Vâsudeva says regarding him who seeks salvation: "In the judgment of the intelligent man, the Brahman and the Caṇḍâla are equal, the friend and the foe, the faithful and the deceitful, nay, even the serpent and the weasel. If to the eyes of intelligence all things are equal, to ignorance they appear as separated and different."

Vâsudeva speaks to Arjuṇa: "If the civilisation of the world is that which is intended, and if the direction of it cannot proceed without our fighting for the purpose of suppressing evil, it is the duty of us who are the intelligent to act and to fight, not in order to bring to an end that which is deficient within us, but because it is necessary for the purpose of healing what is ill and banishing destructive elements. Then the ignorant imitate us in acting, as the children imitate their elders, without their knowing the real aim and purport of actions. For their nature has an aversion to intellectual methods, and they use force only in order to act in accordance with the influences of lust and passion on their senses. In all this, the intelligent and educated man is directly the contrary of them."

CHAPTER LXV.

ON THE SACRIFICES.

Most of the Veda treats of the sacrifices to the fire, and describes each one of them. They are different in extent, so that certain of them can only be performed by the greatest of their kings. So, *e.g.* the *aśvamedha*. A mare is let freely to wander about in the country grazing, without anybody's hindering her. Soldiers follow her, drive her, and cry out before her: "She is the king of the world. He who does not agree, let him come forward." The Brahmans walk behind her and perform sacrifices to the fire where she casts dung. When she thus has wandered about through all parts of the world, she becomes food for the Brahmans and for him whose property she is.

Aśvamedha.

Page 272.

Further, the sacrifices differ in duration, so that only he could perform certain of them who lives a very long life; and such long lives do no longer occur in this our age. Therefore most of them have been abolished, and only few of them remain and are practised nowadays.

On fire-offerings in general.

According to the Hindus, the fire eats everything. Therefore it becomes defiled, if anything unclean is mixed up with it, as, *e.g.* water. Accordingly they are very punctilious regarding fire and water if they are in the hands of non-Hindus, because they are defiled by being touched by them.

That which the fire eats for its share, reverts to the Devas, because the fire comes out of their mouths.

What the Brahmans present to the fire to eat is oil and different cereals—wheat, barley, and rice—which they throw into the fire. Further, they recite the prescribed texts of the Veda in case they offer on their own behalf. However, if they offer in the name of somebody else, they do not recite anything.

Story of the fire becoming leprous from *Vishṇu-Dharma*.

The *Vishṇu-Dharma* mentions the following tradition:—Once upon a time there was a man of the class of the Daityas, powerful and brave, the ruler of a wide realm called Hiraṇyâksha. He had a daughter of the name of Dkîsh (?), who was always bent upon worship and trying herself by fasting and abstinence. Thereby she had earned as reward a place in heaven. She was married to Mahâdeva. When he, then, was alone with her and did with her according to the custom of the Devas, *i.e.* cohabiting very long and transferring the *semen* very slowly, the fire became aware of it and became jealous, fearing lest the two might procreate a fire similar to themselves. Therefore it determined to defile and to ruin them.

When Mahâdeva saw the fire, his forehead became covered with sweat from the violence of his wrath, so that some of it dropped down to the earth. The earth drank it, and became in consequence pregnant with Mars, *i.e. Skanda*, the commander of the army of the Devas.

Rudra, the destroyer, seized a drop of the *semen* of Mahâdeva and threw it away. It was scattered in the interior of the earth, and represents all atom-like substances (?).

The fire, however, became leprous, and felt so much ashamed and confounded that it plunged down into *pâtâla*, *i.e.* the lowest earth. As, now, the Devas missed the fire, they went out to search for it.

First, the frogs pointed it out to them. The fire, on seeing the Devas, left its place and concealed itself in the tree *aśvattha*, laying a curse on the frogs, that they should have a horrid croaking and be odious to all others.

Next, the parrots betrayed to the Devas the hiding-place of the fire. Thereupon the fire cursed them, that their tongues should be turned topsy-turvy, that their root should be where its tip ought to be. But the Devas spoke to them: "If your tongue is turned topsy-turvy, you shall speak in human dwellings and eat delicate things."

The fire fled from the *aśvattha* tree to the tree *śamî*. Thereupon the elephant gave a hint to the Devas regarding its hiding-place. Now it cursed the elephant that his tongue should be turned topsy-turvy. But then the Devas spoke to him: "If your tongue is turned topsy-turvy, you shall participate with man in his victuals and understand his speech."

At last they hit upon the fire, but the fire refused to stay with them because it was leprous. Now the Devas restored it to health, and freed it from the leprosy. The Devas brought back to them the fire with all honour and made it a mediator between themselves and mankind, receiving from the latter the shares which they offer to the Devas, and making these shares reach them.

CHAPTER LXVI.

ON PILGRIMAGE AND THE VISITING OF SACRED PLACES.

Page 273.

PILGRIMAGES are not obligatory to the Hindus, but facultative and meritorious. A man sets off to wander to some holy region, to some much venerated idol or to some of the holy rivers. He worships in them, worships the idol, makes presents to it, recites many hymns and prayers, fasts, and gives alms to the Brahmans, the priests, and others. He shaves the hair of his head and beard, and returns home.

The holy much venerated ponds are in the cold mountains round Meru. The following information regarding them is found in both the *Vâyu* and the *Matsya Purâṇas*:—

An extract on holy ponds from the *Vâyu* and *Matsya Purâṇas.*

"At the foot of Meru there is Arhata (?), a very great pond, described as shining like the moon. In it originates the river Zanba (? Jambu), which is very pure, flowing over the purest gold.

"Near the mountain Śveta there is the pond Uttaramânasa, and around it twelve other ponds, each of them like a lake. Thence come the two rivers Sâṇḍî (?) and Maddhyandâ (?), which flow to Kiṁpurusha.

"Near the mountain Nîla there is the pond *pyvd* (pitanda ?) adorned with lotuses.

"Near the mountain Nishadha there is the pond Vishṇupada, whence comes the river Sarasvatî, *i.e.* Sarsuti. Besides, the river Gandharvî comes from there.

"In the mountain Kailâsa there is the pond Manda, as large as a sea, whence comes the river Mandâkinî.

"North-east of Kailâsa there is the mountain Candraparvata, and at its foot the pond Âcûd (?), whence comes the river Âcûd.

"South-east of Kailâsa there is the mountain Lohita, and at its foot a pond called Lohita. Thence comes the river Lohitanadî.

"South of Kailâsa there is the mountain Sarayuśatî (?), and at its foot the pond Mânasa. Thence comes the river Sarayû.

"West of Kailâsa there is the mountain Aruṇa, always covered with snow, which cannot be ascended. At its foot is the pond Śailôdâ, whence comes the river Śailôdâ.

"North of Kailâsa there is the mountain Gaura (?), and at its foot the pond C-n-d-sara (?), *i.e.* having golden sand. Near this pond the King Bhagîratha led his anchorite life.

Story of Bhagîratha.

"His story is as follows:—A king of the Hindus called Sagara had 60,000 sons, all of them bad, mean fellows. Once they happened to lose a horse. They at once searched for it, and in searching they continually ran about so violently that in consequence the surface of the earth broke in. They found the horse in the interior of the earth standing before a man who was looking down with deep-sunken eyes. When they came near him he smote them with his look, in consequence of which they were burned on the spot and went to hell on account of their wicked actions.

"The collapsed part of the earth became a sea, the great ocean. A king of the descendants of that king, called Bhagîratha, on hearing the history of his ancestors, was much affected thereby. He went to the above-mentioned pond, the bottom of which was polished gold, and stayed there, fasting all day and worshipping during the nights. Finally, Mahâdeva asked him what he wanted; upon which he answered,

Page 284.

'I want the river Ganges which flows in Paradise,' knowing that to any one over whom its water flows all his sins are pardoned. Mahâdeva granted him his desire. However, the Milky Way was the bed of the Ganges, and the Ganges was very haughty, for nobody had ever been able to stand against it. Now Mahâdeva took the Ganges and put it on his head. When the Ganges could not move away, he became very angry and made a great uproar. However, Mahâdeva held him firmly, so that it was not possible for anybody to plunge into it. Then he took part of the Ganges and gave it to Bhagîratha, and this king made the middle one of its seven branches flow over the bones of his ancestors, whereby they became liberated from punishment. Therefore the Hindus throw the burned bones of their dead into the Ganges. The Ganges was also called by the name of that king who brought him to earth, *i.e.* Bhagîratha."

On the construction of holy ponds.

We have already quoted Hindu traditions to the effect that in the Dvîpas there are rivers as holy as the Ganges. In every place to which some particular holiness is ascribed, the Hindus construct ponds intended for the ablutions. In this they have attained to a very high degree of art, so that our people (the Muslims), when they see them, wonder at them, and are unable to describe them, much less to construct anything like them. They build them of great stones of an enormous bulk, joined to each other by sharp and strong cramp-irons, in the form of steps (or terraces) like so many ledges; and these terraces run all around the pond, reaching to a height of more than a man's stature. On the surface of the stones between two terraces they construct staircases rising like pinnacles. Thus the first steps or terraces are like roads (leading round the pond), and the pinnacles are steps (leading up and down). If ever so many people descend to the pond whilst others ascend, they do not meet each other, and the road is never blocked up, because there are so many terraces, and the ascending person can always turn aside to another terrace than that on which the descending people go. By this arrangement all troublesome thronging is avoided.

On single holy ponds.

In Multân there is a pond in which the Hindus worship by bathing themselves, if they are not prevented.

The *Saṁhitâ* of Varâhamihira relates that in Tâneshar there is a pond which the Hindus visit from afar to bathe in its water. Regarding the cause of this custom they relate the following:—The waters of all the other holy ponds visit this particular pond at the time of an eclipse. Therefore, if a man washes in it, it is as if he had washed in every single one of all of them. Then Varâhamihira continues: "People say, if it were not the head (apsis) which causes the eclipse of sun and moon, the other ponds would not visit this pond."

The ponds become particularly famous for holiness either because some important event has happened at them, or because there is some passage in the holy text or tradition which refers to them. We have already quoted words spoken by Śaunaka. Venus had related them to him on the authority of Brahman, to whom they had originally been addressed. In this text King Bali also is mentioned, and what he would do till the time when Nârâyaṇa would plunge him down to the lowest earth. In the same text occurs the following passage:—"I do that to him only for this purpose that the equality between men, which he desires to realise, shall be done away with, that men shall be different in their conditions of life, and that on this difference the order of the world is to be based; further, that people shall turn away from *his* worship and worship *me* and believe in *me*. The mutual assistance of civilised people presupposes a certain difference

On the inequality of created beings and the origin of patriotism. A tradition from Śaunaka

Page 275.

among them, in consequence of which the one requires the other. According to the same principle, God has created the world as containing many differences in itself. So the single countries differ from each other, one being cold, the other warm; one having good soil, water, and air, the other having bitter salt soil, dirty and bad smelling water, and unhealthy air. There are still more differences of this kind; in some cases advantages of all kinds being numerous, in others few. In some parts there are periodically returning physical disasters; in others they are entirely unknown. All these things induce civilised people carefully to select the places where they want to build towns.

That which makes people do these things is usage and custom. However, religious commands are much more powerful, and influence much more the nature of man than usages and customs. The bases of the latter are investigated, explored, and accordingly either kept or abandoned, whilst the bases of the religious commands are left as they are, not inquired into, adhered to by the majority simply on *trust*. They do not argue over them, as the inhabitants of some sterile region do not argue over it, since they are born in it and do not know anything else, for they love the country as their fatherland, and find it difficult to leave it. If, now, besides physical differences, the countries differ from each other also in law and religion, there is so much attachment to it in the hearts of those who live in them that it can never be rooted out."

On Benares as an asylum.

The Hindus have some places which are venerated for reasons connected with their law and religion, *e.g.* Benares (Bârânasî). For their anchorites wander to it and stay there for ever, as the dwellers of the Ka'ba stay for ever in Mekka. They want to live there to the end of their lives, that their reward after death should be the better for it. They say that a murderer is held responsible for his crime and punished with a punishment due to his guilt, except in case he enters the city of Benares, where he obtains pardon. Regarding the cause of the holiness of this asylum they relate the following story:—

"Brahman was in shape four-headed. Now there happened some quarrel between him and Śaṁkara, *i.e.* Mahâdeva, and the succeeding fight had this result, that one of the heads of Brahman was torn off. At that time it was the custom that the victor took the head of the slain adversary in his hand and let it hang down from his hand as an act of ignominy to the dead and as a sign of his own bravery. Further, a bridle was put into the mouth (?). Thus the head of Brahman was dishonoured by the hand of Mahâdeva, who took it always with him wherever he went and whatever he did. He never once separated himself from it when he entered the towns, till at last he came to Benares. After he had entered Benares the head dropped from his hand and disappeared."

On the holy ponds of Pûkara, Tâneshar, Mâhûra, Kashmîr, and Multân.

A similar place is Pûkara, the story of which is this: Brahman once was occupied in offering there to the fire, when a pig came out of the fire. Therefore they represent his image there as that of a pig. Outside the town, in three places, they have constructed ponds which stand in high veneration, and are places of worship.

Another place of the kind is Tâneshar, also called *Kurukshetra*, *i.e.* the land of Kuru, who was a peasant, a pious, holy man, who worked miracles by divine power. Therefore the country was called after him, and venerated for his sake. Besides, Tâneshar is the theatre of the exploits of Vâsudeva in the wars of Bhârata and of the destruction of the evil-doers. It is for this reason that people visit the place.

Mâhûra, too, is a holy place, crowded with Brahmans.

Page 276. It is venerated because Vâsudeva was there born and brought up, in a place in the neighbourhood called *Nandagola*.

Nowadays the Hindus also visit Kashmîr. Lastly, they used to visit Mûltân before its idol-temple was destroyed.

CHAPTER LXVII.

ON ALMS, AND HOW A MAN MUST SPEND WHAT HE EARNS.

It is obligatory with them every day to give alms as much as possible. They do not let money become a year or even a month old, for this would be a draft on an unknown future, of which a man does not know whether he reaches it or not.

With regard to that which he earns by the crops or from the cattle, he is bound first to pay to the ruler of the country the tax which attaches to the soil or the pasture-ground. Further, he pays him one-sixth of the income in recognition of the protection which he affords to the subjects, their property, and their families. The same obligation rests also on the common people, but they will always lie and cheat in the declarations about their property. Further, trading businesses, too, pay a tribute for the same reason. Only the Brahmans are exempt from all these taxes.

As to the way in which the remainder of the income, after the taxes have been deducted, is to be employed, there are different opinions. Some destine one-ninth of it for alms. For they divide it into three parts. One of them is kept in reserve to guarantee the heart against anxiety. The second is spent on trade to bring profit, and one-third of the third portion (*i.e.* one-ninth of the whole) is spent on alms, whilst the two other thirds are spent according to the same rule.

Others divide this income into four portions. One-fourth is destined for common expenses, the second for liberal works of a noble mind, the third for alms, and the fourth for being kept in reserve, *i.e.* not more of it than the common expenses for three years. If the quarter which is to be reserved exceeds this amount, only this amount is reserved, whilst the remainder is spent as alms.

Usury or taking percentages is forbidden. The sin which a man commits thereby corresponds to the amount by which the percentages have increased the capital stock. Only to the Śûdra is it allowed to take percentages, as long as his profit is not more than one-fiftieth of the capital (*i.e.* he is not to take more than two per cent.).

CHAPTER LXVIII.

ON WHAT IS ALLOWED AND FORBIDDEN IN EATING AND DRINKING.

ORIGINALLY killing in general was forbidden to them, as it is to the Christians and Manichæans. People, however, have the desire for meat, and will always fling aside every order to the contrary. Therefore the here-mentioned law applies in particular only to the Brahmans, because they are the guardians of the religion, and because it forbids them to give way to their lusts. The same rule applies to those members of the Christian clergy who are in rank above the bishops, viz. the metropolitans, the *catholici*, and the patriarchs, not to the lower grades, such as presbyter and deacon, except in the case that a man who holds one of these degrees is at the same time a monk.

List of animals lawful and unlawful to be eaten.

As matters stand thus, it is allowed to kill animals by means of strangulation, but only certain animals, others being excluded. The meat of such animals, the killing of which is allowed, is forbidden in case they die a sudden death. Animals the killing of which is allowed are sheep, goats, gazelles, hares, rhinoceroses (*gandha*), the buffaloes, fish, water and land birds, as sparrows, ring-doves, francolins, doves, peacocks, and other animals which are not loathsome to man nor noxious.

Page 277.

That which is forbidden are cows, horses, mules, asses, camels, elephants, tame poultry, crows, parrots, nightingales, all kinds of eggs and wine. The latter is allowed to the Śûdra. He may drink it, but dare not sell it, as he is not allowed to sell meat.

Why the meat of cows was forbidden.

Some Hindus say that in the time before Bhârata it was allowed to eat the meat of cows, and that there then existed sacrifices part of which was the killing of cows. After that time, however, it had been forbidden on account of the weakness of men, who were too weak to fulfil their duties, as also the Veda, which originally was only one, was afterwards divided into four parts, simply for the purpose of facilitating the study of it to men. This theory, however, is very little substantiated, as the prohibition of the meat of cows is not an alleviating and less strict measure, but, on the contrary, one which is more severe and more restrictive than the former law.

Other Hindus told me that the Brahmans used to suffer from the eating of cows' meat. For their country is hot, the inner parts of the bodies are cold, the natural warmth becomes feeble in them, and the power of digestion is so weak that they must strengthen it by eating the leaves of *betel* after dinner, and by chewing the betel-nut. The hot betel inflames the heat of the body, the chalk on the betel-leaves dries up everything wet, and the betel-nut acts as an astringent on the teeth, the gums, and the stomach. As this is the case, they forbade eating cows' meat, because it is essentially thick and cold.

I, for my part, am uncertain, and hesitate in the question of the origin of this custom between two different views.

(Lacuna in the manuscript.)

As for the economical reason, we must keep in mind that the cow is the animal which serves man in travelling by carrying his loads, in agriculture in the works of ploughing and sowing, in the household by the milk and the product made thereof. Further, man makes use of its dung, and in winter-time even of its breath.

Therefore it was forbidden to eat cows' meat; as also Alḥajjâj forbade it, when people complained to him that Babylonia became more and more desert.

That all things are equal from a philosophical point of view.

I have been told the following passage is from an Indian book: "All things are one, and whether allowed or forbidden, equal. They differ only in weakness and power. The wolf has the power to tear the sheep; therefore the sheep is the wolf's food, for the former cannot oppose the latter, and is his prey." I have found in Hindu books passages to the same effect. However, such views come to the intelligent man only by knowledge, when in it he has attained to such a degree that a Brahman and a Caṇḍâla are equal to him. If he is in this state, all other things also are equal to him, in so far as he abstains from them. It is the same if they are all allowed to him, for he can dispense with them, or if they are forbidden to him, for he does not desire them. As to those, however, who require these things, being in the yoke of ignorance, something is allowed to them, something forbidden, and thereby a wall is erected between the two kinds of things.

CHAPTER LXIX.

ON MATRIMONY, THE MENSTRUAL COURSES, EMBRYOS, AND CHILDBED.

Necessity of matrimony.

No nation can exist without a regular married life, for it prevents the uproar of passions abhorred by the cultivated mind, and it removes all those causes which excite the animal to a fury always leading to harm. Considering the life of the animals by pairs, how the one member of the pair helps the other, and how the lust of other animals of the same species is kept aloof from them, you cannot help declaring matrimony to be a necessary institution; whilst disorderly cohabitation or harlotry on the part of man is a shameful proceeding, that does not even attain to the standing of the development of animals, which in every other respect stand far below him.

Page 278.

Law of marriage.

Every nation has particular customs of marriage, and especially those who claim to have a religion and law of divine origin. The Hindus marry at a very young age; therefore the parents arrange the marriage for their sons. On that occasion the Brahmans perform the rites of the sacrifices, and they as well as others receive alms. The implements of the wedding rejoicings are brought forward. No gift is settled between them. The man gives only a present to the wife, as he thinks fit, and a marriage gift in advance, which he has no right to claim back, but the wife may give it back to him of her own will. Husband and wife can only be separated by death, as they have no divorce.

A man may marry one to four wives. He is not allowed to take more than four; but if one of his wives die, he may take another one to complete the legitimate number. However, he must not go beyond it.

The widow.

If a wife loses her husband by death, she cannot marry another man. She has only to choose between two things—either to remain a widow as long as she lives or to burn herself; and the latter eventuality is considered the preferable, because as a widow she is ill-treated as long as she lives. As regards the wives of the kings, they are in the habit of burning them, whether they wish it or not, by which they desire to prevent any of them by chance committing something unworthy of the illustrious husband. They make an exception only for women of advanced years and for those who have children; for the son is the responsible protector of his mother.

Forbidden degrees of marriage.

According to their marriage law it is better to marry a stranger than a relative. The more distant the relationship of a woman with regard to her husband the better. It is absolutely forbidden to marry related women both of the direct *descending* line, viz. a granddaughter or great-granddaughter, and of the direct *ascending* line, viz. a mother, grandmother, or great-grandmother. It is also forbidden to marry collateral relations, viz. a sister, a niece, a maternal or paternal aunt and their daughters, except in case the couple of relations who want to marry each other be removed from each other by five consecutive generations. In that case the prohibition is waived, but, notwithstanding, such a marriage is an object of dislike to them.

Number of wives.

Some Hindus think that the number of the wives depends upon the caste; that, accordingly, a Brahman may take four, a Kshatriya three, a Vaiśya two wives, and a Śûdra one. Every man of a caste may marry a woman of his own caste or one of the castes or caste below his; but nobody is allowed to marry a woman of a caste superior to his own.

Partus sequitur ventrem.

The child belongs to the caste of the mother, not to that of the father. Thus, *e.g.* if the wife of a Brahman is a Brahman, her child also is a Brahman; if she is a Śûdra, her child is a Śûdra. In our time, however, the Brahmans, although it is allowed to them, never marry any woman except one of their own caste.

Duration of the menstrual courses.

The longest duration of the menstrual courses which has been observed is sixteen days, but in reality they last only during the first four days, and then the husband is not allowed to cohabit with his wife, nor even to come near her in the house, because during this time she is impure. After the four days have elapsed and she has washed, she is pure again, and the husband may cohabit with her, even if the blood has not yet entirely disappeared; for this blood is not considered as that of the menstrual courses, but as the same substance-matter of which the embryos consist.

On pregnancy and childbed.

Page 279.

It is the duty (of the Brahman), if he wants to cohabit with a wife to get a child, to perform a sacrifice to the fire called *garbhâdhâna;* but he does not perform it, because it requires the presence of the woman, and therefore he feels ashamed to do so. In consequence he postpones the sacrifice and unites it with the next following one, which is due in the fourth month of the pregnancy, called *sîmaṁtonnayanam.* After the wife has given birth to the child, a third sacrifice is performed between the birth and the moment when the mother begins to nourish the child. It is called *jâtakarman.*

The child receives a name after the days of the childbed have elapsed. The sacrifice for the occasion of the name-giving is called *nâmakarman.*

As long as the woman is in childbed, she does not touch any vessel, and nothing is eaten in her house, nor does the Brahman light there a fire. These days are eight for the Brahman, twelve for the Kshatriya, fifteen for the Vaiśya, and thirty for the Śûdra. For the low-caste people which are not reckoned among any caste, no term is fixed.

The longest duration of the suckling of the child is three years, but there is no obligation in this matter. The sacrifice on the occasion of the first cutting of the child's hair is offered in the third, the perforation of the ear takes place in the seventh and eighth years.

On the causes of prostitution.

People think with regard to harlotry that it is allowed with them. Thus, when Kâbul was conquered by the Muslims and the Ispahbad of Kâbul adopted Islâm, he stipulated that he should not be bound to eat cows' meat nor to commit sodomy (which proves that he abhorred the one as much as the other). In reality, the matter is not as people think, but it is rather this, that the Hindus are not very severe in punishing whoredom. The fault, however, in this lies with the kings, not with the nation. But for this, no Brahman or priest would suffer in their idol-temples the women who sing, dance, and play. The kings make them an attraction for their cities, a bait of pleasure for their subjects, for no other but financial reasons. By the revenues which they derive from the business both as fines and taxes, they want to recover the expenses which their treasury has to spend on the army.

In a similar way the Buyide prince 'Aḍud-aldaula acted, who besides also had a second aim in view, viz. that of protecting his subjects against the passions of his unmarried soldiers.

CHAPTER LXX.

ON LAWSUITS.

On procedure.

THE judge demands from the suitor a document written against the accused person in a well-known writing which is thought suitable for writs of the kind, and in the document the well-established proof of the justice of his suit. In case there is no written document, the contest is settled by means of witnesses without a written document.

Number of witnesses.

The witnesses must not be less than four, but there may be more. Only in case the justice of the deposition of a witness is perfectly established and certain before the judge, he may admit it, and decide the question alone on the basis of the deposition of this sole witness. However, he does not admit prying about in secret, deriving arguments from mere signs or indications in public, concluding by analogy from one thing which seems established about another, and using all sorts of tricks to elicit the truth, as 'Iyâs Ibn Mu'âwiya used to do.

If the suitor is not able to prove his claim, the defendant must swear, but he may also tender the oath to the suitor by saying, "Swear thou that thy claim is true and I will give thee what thou claimest."

Different kinds of oaths and ordeals.

There are many kinds of the oath, in accordance with the value of the object of the claim. If the object is of no great importance, and the suitor agrees that the accused person shall swear, the latter simply swears before five learned Brahmans in the following words :

"If I lie, he shall have as recompense as much of my goods as is equal to the eightfold of the amount of his claim."

A higher sort of oath is this: The accused person is invited to drink the *bîsh* (*visha*?) called *brahmaṇa* (?). It is one of the worst kinds; but if he speaks the truth, the drink does not do him any harm.

A still higher sort of ordeal is this: They bring the Page 280. man to a deep and rapidly flowing river, or to a deep well with much water. Then he speaks to the water: "Since thou belongest to the pure angels, and knowest both what is secret and public, kill me if I lie, and preserve me if I speak the truth." Then five men take him between them and throw him into the water. If he has spoken the truth, he will not drown and die.

A still higher sort is the following: The judge sends both claimant and defendant to the temple of the most venerated idol of the town or realm. There the defendant has to fast during that day. On the following day he dresses in new garments, and posts himself together with the claimant in that temple. Then the priests pour water over the idol and give it him to drink. If he, then, has not spoken the truth, he at once vomits blood.

A still higher sort is the following: The defendant is placed on the scale of a balance, and is weighed; whereupon he is taken off the scale, and the scale is left as it is. Then he invokes as witnesses for the truth of his deposition the spiritual beings, the angels, the heavenly beings, one after the other, and all which he speaks he writes down on a piece of paper, and fastens it to his head. He is a second time placed in the scale of the balance. In case he has spoken the truth, he now weighs more than the first time.

There is also a still higher sort. It is the following: They take butter and sesame-oil in equal quantities, and boil them in a kettle. Then they throw a leaf into it, which by getting flaccid and burned is to them a sign of the boiling of the mixture. When the boiling is at its height, they throw a piece of gold into the kettle and order the defendant to fetch it out with his hand. If he has spoken the truth, he fetches it out.

The highest kind of ordeal is the following: They make a piece of iron so hot that it is near melting, and put it with a pair of tongs on the hand of the defendant, there being nothing between his hand and the iron save a broad leaf of some plant, and under it some few and scattered corns of rice in the husks. They order him to carry it seven paces, and then he may throw it to the ground.

CHAPTER LXXI.

ON PUNISHMENTS AND EXPIATIONS.

In this regard the manners and customs of the Hindus resemble those of the Christians, for they are, like those of the latter, based on the principles of virtue and abstinence from wickedness, such as never to kill under any circumstance whatsoever, to give to him who has stripped you of your coat also your shirt, to offer to him who has beaten your cheek the other cheek also, to bless your enemy and to pray for him. Upon my life, this is a noble philosophy; but the people of this world are not all philosophers. Most of them are ignorant and erring, who cannot be kept on the straight road save by the sword and the whip. And, indeed, ever since Constantine the Victorious became a Christian, both sword and whip have ever been employed, for without them it would be impossible to rule.

The Brahmans originally the rulers of the nation.

India has developed in a similar way. For the Hindus relate that originally the affairs of government and war were in the hands of the Brahmans, but the country became disorganised, since they ruled according to the philosophic principles of their religious codes, which proved impossible when opposed to the mischievous and perverse elements of the populace. They were even near losing also the administration of their religious affairs. Therefore they humiliated themselves before the lord of their religion. Whereupon Brahman intrusted them exclusively with the functions which they now have, whilst he intrusted the Kshatriyas with the

Page 281.

duties of ruling and fighting. Ever since the Brahmans live by asking and begging, and the penal code is exercised under the control of the kings, not under that of the scholars.

Law of murder

The law about murder is this: If the murderer is a Brahman, and the murdered person a member of another caste, he is only bound to do expiation consisting of fasting, prayers, and almsgiving.

If the murdered person is a Brahman, the Brahman murderer has to answer for it in a future life; for he is not allowed to do expiation, because expiation wipes off the sin from the sinner, whilst nothing can wipe off any of the mortal crimes from a Brahman, of which the greatest are: the murder of a Brahman, called *vajrabrahmahatyâ*; further, the killing of a cow, the drinking of wine, whoredom, especially with the wife of one's own father and teacher. However, the kings do not for any of these crimes kill a Brahman or Kshatriya, but they confiscate his property and banish him from their country.

If a man of a caste under those of the Brahman and Kshatriya kills a man of the same caste, he has to do expiation, but besides the kings inflict upon him a punishment in order to establish an example.

Law of theft.

The law of theft directs that the punishment of the thief should be in accordance with the value of the stolen object. Accordingly, sometimes a punishment of extreme or of middling severity is necessary, sometimes a course of correction and imposing a payment, sometimes only exposing to public shame and ridicule. If the object is very great, the kings blind a Brahman and mutilate him, cutting off his left hand and right foot, or the right hand and left foot, whilst they mutilate a Kshatriya without blinding him, and kill thieves of the other castes.

Punishment of an adulteress.

An adulteress is driven out of the house of the husband and banished.

I have repeatedly been told that when Hindu slaves

Hindu prisoners of war, how treated after returning to their country.

(in Muslim countries) escape and return to their country and religion, the Hindus order that they should fast by way of expiation, then they bury them in the dung, stale, and milk of cows for a certain number of days, till they get into a state of fermentation. Then they drag them out of the dirt and give them similar dirt to eat, and more of the like.

I have asked the Brahmans if this is true, but they deny it, and maintain that there is no expiation possible for such an individual, and that he is never allowed to return into those conditions of life in which he was before he was carried off as a prisoner. And how should that be possible? If a Brahman eats in the house of a Śûdra for sundry days, he is expelled from his caste and can never regain it.

CHAPTER LXXII.

ON INHERITANCE, AND WHAT CLAIM THE DECEASED PERSON HAS ON IT.

Law of inheritance.

THE chief rule of their law of inheritance is this, that the women do not inherit, except the daughter. She gets the fourth part of the share of a son, according to a passage in the book *Manu*. If she is not married, the money is spent on her till the time of her marriage, and her dowry is bought by means of her share. Afterwards she has no more income from the house of her father.

If a widow does not burn herself, but prefers to remain alive, the heir of her deceased husband has to provide her with nourishment and clothing as long as she lives.

The debts of the deceased must be paid by his heir, either out of his share or of the stock of his own property, no regard being had whether the deceased has left any property or not. Likewise he must bear the just-mentioned expenses for the widow in any case whatsoever.

As regards the rule about the male heirs, evidently the descendants, *i.e.* the son and grandson, have a nearer claim to the inheritance than the ascendants, *i.e.* the father and grandfather. Further, as regards the single relatives among the descendants as well as the ascendants, the nearer a man is related, the more claim he has on inheriting. Thus a son has a nearer claim than a grandson, a father than a grandfather. Page 282.

The collateral relations, as, *e.g.*, the brothers, have less claim, and inherit only in case there is nobody who has a better claim. Hence it is evident that the son of a daughter has more claim than the son of a sister, and that the son of a brother has more claim than either of them.

If there are several claimants of the same degree of relationship, as, *e.g.*, sons or brothers, they all get equal shares. A hermaphrodite is reckoned as a male being.

If the deceased leaves no heir, the inheritance falls to the treasury of the king, except in the case that the deceased person was a Brahman. In that case the king has no right to meddle with the inheritance, but it is exclusively spent on almsgiving.

Duties of the heir towards the deceased.

The duty of the heir towards the deceased in the first year consists in his giving sixteen banquets, where every guest in addition to his food receives alms also, viz. on the fifteenth and sixteenth days after death; further, once a month during the whole year. The banquet in the sixth month must be more rich and more liberal than the others. Further, on the last but one day of the year, which banquet is devoted to the deceased and his ancestors; and finally, on the last day of the year. With the end of the year the duties towards the deceased have been fulfilled.

If the heir is a son, he must during the whole year wear mourning dress; he must mourn and have no intercourse with women, if he is a legitimate child and of a good stock. Besides, you must know that nourishment is forbidden to the heirs for one single day in the first part of the mourning-year.

Besides the almsgiving at the just-mentioned sixteen banquets, the heirs must make, above the door of the house, something like a shelf projecting from the wall in the open air, on which they have every day to place a dish of something cooked and a vessel of water, till the end of ten days after the death. For possibly the spirit of the deceased has not yet found its rest, but moves still to and fro around the house, hungry and thirsty.

Parallel from Plato.

A similar view is indicated by Plato in *Phaedo*, where he speaks of the soul circling round the graves, because possibly it still retains some vestiges of the love for the body. Further he says: "People have said regarding the soul that it is its habit to combine something coherent out of the single limbs of the body, which is its dwelling in this as well as in the future world, when it leaves the body, and is by the death of the body separated from it."

On the tenth of the last-mentioned days, the heir spends, in the name of the deceased, much food and cold water. After the eleventh day, the heir sends every day sufficient food for a single person and a *dirham* to the house of the Brahman, and continues doing this during all the days of the mourning-year without any interruption until its end.

CHAPTER LXXIII.

ABOUT WHAT IS DUE TO THE BODIES OF THE DEAD AND OF THE LIVING (*i.e.* ABOUT BURYING AND SUICIDE).

Primitive burial-customs.

In the most ancient times the bodies of the dead were exposed to the air by being thrown on the fields without any covering; also sick people were exposed on the fields and in the mountains, and were left there. If they died there, they had the fate just mentioned; but if they recovered, they returned to their dwellings.

Page 283.

Thereupon there appeared a legislator who ordered people to expose their dead to the wind. In consequence they constructed roofed buildings with walls of rails, through which the wind blew, passing over the dead, as something similar is the case in the grave-towers of the Zoroastrians.

After they had practised this custom for a long time, Nârâyaṇa prescribed to them to hand the dead over to the fire, and ever since they are in the habit of burning them, so that nothing remains of them, and every defilement, dirt, and smell is annihilated at once, so as scarcely to leave any trace behind.

Greek parallels.

Nowadays the Slavonians, too, burn their dead, whilst the ancient Greeks seem to have had both customs, that of burning and that of burying. Socrates speaks in the book *Phaedo*, after Crito had asked him in what manner he wanted to be buried: "As you wish, when you make arrangements for me. I shall not flee from you." Then he spoke to those around him: "Give to Crito regarding myself the opposite guarantee of that which he has given to the judges regarding myself; for he guaranteed to them that I should stay, whilst you now must guarantee that I shall not stay after death. I shall go away, that the look of my body may be tolerable to Crito when it is *burned* or *buried*, that he may not be in agony, and not say: 'Socrates is carried away, or is burned or buried.' Thou, O Crito, be at ease about the burial of my body. Do as thou likest, and especially in accordance with the laws."

Galenus says in his commentary to the apothegms of Hippocrates: "It is generally known that Asclepius was raised to the angels in a column of fire, the like of which is also related with regard to Dionysos, Heracles, and others, who laboured for the benefit of mankind. People say that God did thus with them in order to destroy the mortal and earthly part of them by the fire, and afterwards to attract to himself the immortal part of them, and to raise their souls to heaven."

In these words, too, there is a reference to the burning as a Greek custom, but it seems to have been in use only for the great men among them.

In a similar way the Hindus express themselves. There is a point in man by which he is what he is. This point becomes free when the mixed elements of the body are dissolved and scattered by combustion.

Fire and the sunbeam as the nearest roads to God.

Regarding this return (of the immortal soul to God), the Hindus think that partly it is effected by the rays of the sun, the soul attaching itself to them and ascending with them, partly by the flame of the fire, which raises it (to God). Some Hindu used to pray that God would make his road to himself as a straight line, because this is the nearest road, and that there is no other road upwards save the fire or the ray.

Similar to this is the practice of the Ghuzz Turks with reference to a drowned person; for they place the body on a bier in the river, and make a cord hang down from his foot, throwing the end of the cord into the water. By means of this cord the spirit of the deceased is to raise himself for resurrection.

The belief of the Hindus on this head was confirmed by the words of Vâsudeva, which he spoke regarding the sign of him who is liberated from the fetters (of bodily existence). "His death takes place during *uttarâyana* (*i.e.* the northern revolution of the sun from the winter solstice to the summer solstice), during the white half of the month, *between lighted lamps*, *i.e.* between conjunction and opposition (new moon and full moon), in the seasons of winter and spring."

Quotation from Mânî.
Page 284.

A similar view is recognised in the following words of Mânî: "The other religious bodies blame us because we worship sun and moon, and represent them as an image. But they do not know their real natures; they do not know that sun and moon are our path, the door whence we march forth into the world of our existence (into heaven), as this has been declared by Jesus." So he maintains.

People relate that Buddha had ordered the bodies of the dead to be thrown into flowing water. Therefore his followers, the Shamanians, throw their dead into the rivers.

Hindu manner of burial.

According to the Hindus, the body of the dead has the claim upon his heirs that they are to wash, embalm, wrap it in a shroud, and then to burn it with as much sandal and other wood as they can get. Part of his burned bones are brought to the Ganges and thrown into it, that the Ganges should flow over them, as it has flowed over the burned bones of the children of Sagara, thereby forcing them from hell and bringing them into paradise. The remainder of the ashes is thrown into some brook of running water. On the spot where the body has been burned they raise a monument similar to a milestone, plastered with gypsum.

The bodies of children under three years are not burned.

Those who fulfil these duties towards the dead afterwards wash themselves as well as their dresses during two days, because they have become unclean by touching the dead.

Those who cannot afford to burn their dead will either throw them somewhere on the open field or into running water.

Modes of suicide.

Now as regards the right of the body of the living, the Hindus would not think of burning it save in the case of a widow who chooses to follow her husband, or in the case of those who are tired of their life, who are distressed over some incurable disease of their body, some irremovable bodily defect, or old age and infirmity. This, however, no man of distinction does, but only Vaiśyas and Śûdras, especially at those times which are prized as the most suitable for a man to acquire in them, for a future repetition of life, a better form and condition than that in which he happens to have been born and to live. Burning oneself is forbidden to Brahmans and Kshatriyas by a special law. Therefore these, if they want to kill themselves, do so at the time of an eclipse in some other manner, or they hire somebody to drown them in the Ganges, keeping them under water till they are dead.

The tree of Prayâga.

At the junction of the two rivers, Yamunâ and Ganges, there is a great tree called *Prayâga*, a tree of the species called *vaṭa*. It is peculiar to this kind of tree that its branches send forth two species of twigs, some directed upward, as is the case with all other trees, and others directed downward like roots, but without leaves. If such a twig enters into the soil, it is like a supporting column to the branch whence it has grown. Nature has arranged this on purpose, since the branches of this tree are of an enormous extent (and require to be supported). Here the Brahmans and Kshatriyas are in the habit of committing suicide by climbing up the tree and throwing themselves into the Ganges.

Greek parallels.

Johannes Grammaticus relates that certain people in ancient Greek heathendom, "whom I call the *worshippers of the devil*"—so he says—used to beat their limbs with swords, and to throw themselves into the fire, without feeling any pain therefrom.

As we have related this as a view of the Hindus not to commit suicide, so also Socrates speaks: "Likewise it does not become a man to kill himself before the gods give him a cause in the shape of some compulsion or *dire necessity*, like that in which we now are."

Further he says: "We human beings are, as it were, in a prison. It does not behove us to flee nor to free ourselves from it, because the gods take notice of us, since we, the human beings, are servants to them."

CHAPTER LXXIV.

ON FASTING, AND THE VARIOUS KINDS OF IT.

Fasting is with the Hindus voluntary and supererogatory. Fasting is abstaining from food for a certain length of time, which may be different in duration and in the manner in which it is carried out.

Page 285.

Various methods of fasting.

The ordinary middle process, by which all the conditions of fasting are realised, is this: A man determines the day on which he will fast, and keeps in mind the name of that being whose benevolence he wishes to gain thereby and for whose sake he will fast, be it a god, or an angel, or some other being. Then he proceeds, prepares (and takes) his food on the day before the fast-day at noon, cleans his teeth by rubbing, and fixes his thoughts on the fasting of the following day. From that moment he abstains from food. On the morning of the fast-day he again rubs his teeth, washes himself, and performs the duties of the day. He takes water in his hand, and sprinkles it into all four directions, he pronounces with his tongue the name of the deity for whom he fasts, and remains in this condition till the day after the fast-day. After the sun has risen, he is at liberty to break the fast at that moment if he likes, or, if he prefers, he may postpone it till noon.

This kind is called *upavâsa, i.e.* the fasting; for the not-eating from one noon to the following is called *ekanakta*, not fasting.

Another kind, called *kricchra*, is this: A man takes his food on some day at noon, and on the following day in the evening. On the third day he eats nothing except what by chance is given him without his asking for it. On the fourth day he fasts.

Another kind, called *parâka*, is this: A man takes his food at noon on three consecutive days. Then he transfers his eating-hour to the evening during three further consecutive days. Then he fasts uninterruptedly during three consecutive days without breaking fast.

Another kind, called *candrâyaṇa*, is this: A man fasts on the day of full moon; on the following day he takes only a mouthful, on the third day he takes double this amount, on the fourth day the threefold of it, &c. &c., going on thus till the day of new moon. On that day he fasts; on the following days he again diminishes his food by one mouthful a day, till he again fasts on the day of full moon.

Another kind, called *mâsavâsa* (*mâsopavâsa*), is this: A man uninterruptedly fasts all the days of a month without ever breaking fast.

Reward of the fasting in the single months.

The Hindus explain accurately what reward the latter fasting in every single month will bring to a man for a new life of his after he has died. They say:

If a man fasts all the days of Caitra, he obtains wealth and joy over the nobility of his children.

If he fasts Vaiśâkha, he will be a lord over his tribe and great in his army.

If he fasts Jyaishṭha, he will be a favourite of the women.

If he fasts Âshâḍha, he will obtain wealth.

If he fasts Śrâvaṇa, he obtains wisdom.

If he fasts Bhâdrapada, he obtains health and valour, riches and cattle.

If he fasts Âśvayuja, he will always be victorious over his enemies.

If he fasts Kârttika, he will be grand in the eyes of people and will obtain his wishes.

If he fasts Mârgaśîrsha, he will be born in the most beautiful and fertile country.

If he fasts Pausha, he obtains a high reputation.

If he fasts Mâgha, he obtains innumerable wealth.

If he fasts Phâlguna, he will be beloved.

He, however, who fasts during all the months of the year, only twelve times breaking the fast, will reside in paradise 10,000 years, and will thence return to life as the member of a noble, high, and respected family.

The book *Vishṇu-Dharma* relates that Maitreyî, the Page 286. wife of Yâjnavalkya, asked her husband what man is to do in order to save his children from calamities and bodily defects, upon which he answered: "If a man begins on the day Duvê, in the month Pausha, *i.e.* the second day of each of the two halves of the month, and fasts four consecutive days, washing himself on the first with water, on the second with sesame oil, on the third with galangale, and on the fourth with a mixture of various balms; if he further on each day gives alms and recites praises over the names of the angels; if he continue to do all this during each month till the end of the year, his children will in the following life be free from calamities and defects, and he will obtain what he wishes; for also *Dilîpa*, *Dushyanta*, and *Yayâti* obtained their wishes for having acted thus."

CHAPTER LXXV.

ON THE DETERMINATION OF THE FAST-DAYS.

The eighth and eleventh days of each half of a month are fast-days.

THE reader must know in general that the eighth and eleventh days of the white half of every month are fast-days, except in the case of the leap month, for it is disregarded, being considered unlucky.

The eleventh is specially holy to Vâsudeva, because on having taken possession of Mâhûra, the inhabitants of which formerly used to worship Indra one day in each month, he induced them to transfer this worship to the eleventh, that it should be performed in his name. As the people did so, Indra became angry and poured rains over them like deluges, in order to destroy both them and their cattle. Vâsudeva, however, raised a mountain by his hand and protected them thereby. The water collected round them, but not above them, and the image of Indra fled. The people commemorated this event by a monument on a mountain in the neighbourhood of Mâhûra. Therefore they fast on this day in the state of the most punctilious cleanness, and they stay awake all the night, considering this as an obligatory performance, though in reality it is not obligatory.

On single fast-days throughout the year.

The book *Vishṇu-Dharma* says: "When the moon is in Rohiṇî, the fourth of her stations, on the eighth day of the black half, it is a fast-day called *Jayantî*. Giving alms on this day is an expiation for all sins."

Evidently this condition of the fast-day does not in general apply to all months, but in particular only to Bhâdrapada, since Vâsudeva was born in this month and on this day, whilst the moon stood in the station Rohiṇî. The two conditions, viz. the moon's standing in Rohiṇî and that the day is the eighth of the black half, can happen only once in so and so many years, for various reasons, *e.g.* the intercalation of the year, and because the civil years do not keep pace with lunar time, either getting in advance of it or falling behind.

The same book says: "When the moon stands in Punarvasu, the seventh of her stations, on the eleventh day of the white half of the month, this is a fast-day, called *Atj* (? *Aṭṭâṭaja*). If a man does works of piety on this day, he will be enabled to obtain whatever he wishes, as has been the case with *Sagara*, *Kakutstha*, and *Dandahamâr* (?), who obtained royalty because they had done so.

The sixth day of Caitra is a fast-day holy to the sun.

In the month Âshâḍha, when the moon stands in Anurâdhâ, the seventeenth of her signs, there is a fast-day holy to Vâsudeva called *Devasînî* (?), *i.e.* Deva is sleeping, because it is the beginning of the four months during which Vâsudeva slept. Others add this condition, that the day must be the eleventh of the month.

It is evident that such a day does not occur in every year. The followers of Vâsudeva abstain on this day from meat, fish, sweetmeats, and cohabitation with the women, and take food only once a day. They make
Page 287 the earth their bed without any covering, and do not use a bedstead raised above the earth.

People say that these four months are the night of the angels, to which must be added a month at the beginning as evening twilight, and a month at the end as morning dawn. However, the sun stands then near 0° of Cancer, which is noon in the *day of the angels*, and I do not see in what way this moon is connected with the two Saṁdhis.

The day of full moon in the month Śrâvaṇa is a fast-day holy to Somanâtha.

When in the month Âśvayuja the moon stands in Alsharaṭân (the lunar station) and the sun is in Virgo, it is a fast-day.

The eighth of the same month is a fast-day holy to Bhagavatî. Fasting is broken when the moon rises.

The fifth day of Bhâdrapada is a fast-day holy to the sun, called *shaṭ*. They anoint the solar rays, and in particular those rays which enter through the windows, with various kinds of balsamic ointments, and place upon them odoriferous plants and flowers.

When in this month the moon stands in Rohiṇî, it is a fast-day for the birth of Vâsudeva. Others add, besides, the condition that the day must be the eighth of the black half. We have already pointed out that such a day does not occur in every year, but only in certain ones of a larger number of years.

When in the month Kârttika the moon stands in Revatî, the last of her stations, it is a fast-day in commemoration of the waking up of Vâsudeva. It is called *deotthînî*, *i.e.* the rising of the Deva. Others add, besides, the condition that it must be the eleventh of the white half. On that day they soil themselves with the dung of cows, and break fasting by feeding upon a mixture of cow's milk, urine, and dung. This day is the first of the five days which are called *Bhîshma pañcarâtri*. They fast during them in honour of Vâsudeva. On the second of them the Brahmans break fasting, after them the others.

On the sixth day of Pausha is a fasting in honour of the sun.

On the third day of Mâgha there is a fasting for the women, not for the men. It is called Gaur-t-r (*gaurî-tṛitîyâ ?*), and lasts the whole day and night. On the following morning they make presents to the nearest relatives of their husbands.

CHAPTER LXXVI.

ON THE FESTIVALS AND FESTIVE DAYS.

YÂTRÂ means travelling under auspicious circumstances. Therefore a feast is called *yâtrâ*. Most of the Hindu festivals are celebrated by women and children only.

The 2nd Caitra.

The 2nd of the month Caitra is a festival to the people of Kashmîr, called *Agdûs* (?), and celebrated on account of a victory gained by their king, Muttai, over the Turks. According to their account he ruled over the whole world. But this is exactly what they say of most of their kings. However, they are incautious enough to assign him to a time not much anterior to our time, which leads to their lie being found out. It is, of course, not impossible that a Hindu should rule (over a huge empire), as Greeks, Romans, Babylonians, and Persians have done, but all the times not much anterior to our own are well known. (If, therefore, such had been the case, we should know it.) Perhaps the here mentioned king ruled over the whole of India, and they know of no other country but India and of no other nations but themselves.

11th Caitra.

On the 11th there is a festival called *Hiṇdolî-caitra*, when they meet in the *devagṛiha*, or temple of Vâsudeva, and swing his image to and fro, as had been done with him when he was an infant in the cradle. They perform the same in their houses during the whole day and make merry.

Full moon's day.

On the full moon's day of Caitra there is a feast called *Bahand* (*vasanta?*), a festival for the women, when they put on their ornaments and demand presents from their husbands.

22nd Caitra.

The 22nd is a festival called *caitra-cashati*, a day of merriment holy to Bhagavatî, when people use to wash and to give alms.

3rd Vaiśâkha.
Page 288.

The 3rd Vaiśâkha is a festival for the women called *Gaur-t-r* (*gaurî-tṛitîyâ ?*), holy to Gaurî, the daughter of the mountain Himavant, the wife of Mahâdeva. They wash and dress gaily, they worship the image of Gaurî and light lamps before it, they offer perfumes, abstain from eating, and play with swings. On the following day they give alms and eat.

On the 10th Vaiśâkha all the Brahmans whom the kings have invited proceed forth to the open fields, and there they light great fires for the sacrifices during five days till full moon. They make the fires in sixteen different spots and in four different groups. In each group a Brahman performs the sacrifice, so that there are *four* performing priests as there are *four* Vedas. On the 16th they return home.

Vernal equinox.

In this month occurs the vernal equinox, called *vasanta*. They determine the day by calculation and make it a festival, when people invite the Brahmans.

1st Jyaishṭha.

On the 1st Jyaishṭha, or new moon's day, they celebrate a festival and throw the first-fruits of all seeds into the water in order to gain thereby a favourable prognostic.

Full moon's day.

The full moon's day of this month is a festival to the women, called *rûpa-panca* (?).

Ashâḍha.

All the days of the month Ashâḍha are devoted to alms-giving. It is also called *âhârî*. During this time the household is provided with new vessels.

15th Srâvaṇa.

On the full moon's day of Srâvaṇa they give banquets to the Brahmans.

8th Âśvayuja.

On the 8th Âśvayuja, when the moon stands in the nineteenth station, Mûla, begins the sucking of the sugar cane. It is a festival holy to *Mahânavamî*, the sister of Mahâdeva, when they offer the first-fruits of sugar and all other things to her image which is called Bhagavatî. They give much alms before it and kill kids. He who does not possess anything to offer, stands upright by the side of the idol, without ever sitting down, and will sometimes pounce upon whomsoever he meets and kill him.

15th Âśvayuja. On the 15th, when the moon stands in the last of her stations, Revatî, there is the festival *Puhâî* (?), when they wrangle with each other and play with the animals. It is holy to Vâsudeva, because his uncle Kaṁsa had ordered him into his presence for the purpose of wrangling.

16th Âśvayuja. On the 16th there is a festival, when they give alms to the Brahmans.

23rd Âśvayuja. On the 23rd is the festival Aśoka, also called *âhoî*, when the moon stands in the seventh station, Punarvasu. It is a day of merriment and of wrangling.

Bhâdrapadâ, new moon. In the month Bhâdrapadâ, when the moon stands in the tenth station, Maghâ, they celebrate a festival which they call *pitṛipaksha*, *i.e.* the half of the month of the Fathers, because the moon's entering this station falls near the time of new moon. They distribute alms during fifteen days in the name of the Fathers.

3rd Bhâdrapadâ. On the 3rd Bhâdrapadâ is the festival *Harbâlî* (?), for the women. It is their custom that a number of days before they sow all kinds of seeds in baskets, and they bring the baskets forward on this day after they have commenced growing. They throw roses and perfumes on them and play with each other during the whole night. On the following morning they bring them to the ponds, wash them, wash themselves, and give alms.

6th Bhâdrapadâ. On the 6th of this month, which is called *Gâihat* (?), when people give food to those who are in prison.

8th Bhâdrapadâ. On the 8th, when the moonlight has reached half of its development, they have a festival called *dhruva-*

griha (?); they wash themselves and eat well growing grain-fruit that their children should be healthy. The women celebrate this festival when they are pregnant and desire to have children.

The 11th Bhâdrapadâ is called *Parvatî* (?). This is the name of a thread which the priest makes from materials presented to him for the purpose. One part of it he dyes with crocus, the other he leaves as it is. He gives the thread the same length as the statue of Vâsudeva is high. Then he throws it over his neck, so that it hangs down to his feet. It is a much venerated festival. 11th Bhâdrapadâ. Page 289.

The 16th, the first day of the black half, is the first of seven days which are called *karâra* (?), when they adorn the children nicely and give a treat to them. They play with various animals. On the seventh day the men adorn themselves and celebrate a festival. And during the rest of the month they always adorn the children towards the end of the day, give alms to the Brahmans, and do works of piety. 16th Bhâdrapadâ.

When the moon stands in her fourth station, Rohiṇî, they call this time *Gûnâlahîd* (?), celebrating a festival during three days and making merry by playing with each other, from joy over the birth of Vâsudeva.

Jîvaśarman relates that the people of Kashmîr celebrate a festival on the 26th and 27th of this month, on account of certain pieces of wood called *gana* (?), which the water of the river Vitastâ (Jailam) carries, in those two days, through the capital, *Adhishṭhâna*. People maintain that it is Mahâdeva who sends them. It is peculiar to these pieces of wood, so they say, that nobody is able to seize them, however much he may desire it, that they always evade his grasp and move away. 26th, 27th Bhâdrapadâ.

However, the people of Kashmîr, with whom I have conversed on the subject, give a different statement as to the place and the time, and maintain that the thing occurs in a pond called *Kûdaishahr* (?), to the left of the source of the just-mentioned river (Vitastâ-Jailam), in the middle of the month Vaiśâkha. The latter version is the more likely, as about this time the waters begin to increase. The matter reminds one of the wood in the river of Jurjân, which appears at the time when the water swells in its source.

The same Jîvaśarman relates that in the country of Svât, opposite the district of *Kîrî* (?), there is a valley in which fifty-three streams unite. It is called *Tranjâi* (cf. Sindhi *trêvanjâha*). In those two days the water of this valley becomes white, in consequence of Mahâdeva's washing in it, as people believe.

1st Kârttika.

The 1st Kârttika, or new moon's day, when the sun marches in Libra, is called *Dîbâlî*. Then people bathe, dress festively, make presents to each other of betel-leaves and areca-nuts; they ride to the temples to give alms and play merrily with each other till noon. In the night they light a great number of lamps in every place so that the air is perfectly clear. The cause of this festival is that Lakshmî, the wife of Vâsudeva, once a year on this day liberates Bali, the son of Virocana, who is a prisoner in the seventh earth, and allows him to go out into the world. Therefore the festival is called *Balirâjya*, *i.e.* the principality of Bali. The Hindus maintain that this time was a time of luck in the Kṛitayuga, and they are happy because the feast-day in question resembles that time in the Kṛitayuga.

In the same month, when full moon is perfect, they give banquets and adorn their women during all the days of the black half.

3rd Mârgaśîrsha.

The 3rd Mârgaśîrsha, called *Guvâna-bâtrîj* (—— *tritîyâ ?*), is a feast of the women, sacred to Gaurî. They meet in the houses of the rich among them; they put several silver statues of the goddess on a throne, and perfume it and play with each other the whole day. On the following morning they give alms.

15th Mârgaśîrsha. Page 290.

On full moon's day of the same month there is another festival of the women.

Pausha.

On most of the days of the month Pausha they prepare great quantities of *pûhaval* (?), *i.e.* a sweet dish which they eat.

8th Pausha.

On the eighth day of the white half of Pausha, which is called *Ashṭaka*, they make gatherings of the Brahmans, present them with dishes prepared from the plant *Atriplex hortensis*, i.e. *sarmaḳ* in Arabic (=orache), and show attentions to them.

On the eighth day of the black half, which is called *Sâkârtam*, they eat turnips.

3rd Mâgha.

The 3rd Mâgha, called *Mâhatrîj* (*Mâgha-tṛitîyâ ?*), is a feast for the women, and sacred to Gaurî. They meet in the houses of the most prominent among them before the image of Gaurî, place before it various sorts of costly dresses, pleasant perfumes, and nice dishes. In each meeting-place they put 108 jugs full of water, and after the water has become cool, they wash with it four times at the four quarters of that night. On the following day they give alms, they give banquets and receive guests. The women's washing with cold water is common to all the days of this month.

29th Mâgha.

On the last day of this month, *i.e.* the 29th, when there is only a remainder of 3 day-minutes, *i.e.* 1⅕ hour, all the Hindus enter the water and duck under in it seven times.

15th Mâgha.

On the full moon's day of this month, called *câmâha* (?), they light lamps on all high places.

23rd Mâgha.

On the 23rd, which is called *mânsartaku*, and also *mâhâtan*, they receive guests and feed them on meat and large black peas.

8th Phâlguna.

On the 8th Phâlguna, called *pûrârtâku*, they prepare for the Brahmans various dishes from flour and butter.

15th Phâlguna.

The full moon's day of Phâlguna is a feast to the women, called *Odâd* (?), or also *dhola* (i.e. *dola*), when they make fire on places lower than those on which they make it on the festival *câmâha*, and they throw the fire out of the village.

16th Phâlguna.

On the following night, *i.e.* that of the 16th, called *Śivarâtri*, they worship Mahâdeva during the whole night; they remain awake, and do not lie down to sleep, and offer to him perfumes and flowers.

23rd Phâlguna.

On the 23rd, which is called *pûyattân* (?), they eat rice with butter and sugar.

A festival in Mûltân.

The Hindus of Mûltân have a festival which is called *Sâmbapurayâtrâ;* they celebrate it in honour of the sun, and worship him. It is determined in this way: They first take the *ahargaṇa*, according to the rules of Khaṇḍakhâdyaka, and subtract 98,040 therefrom. They divide the remainder by 365, and disregard the quotient. If the division does not give a remainder, the quotient is the date of the festival in question. If there is a remainder, it represents the days which have elapsed since the festival, and by subtracting these days from 365 you find the date of the same festival in the next following year.

CHAPTER LXXVII.

ON DAYS WHICH ARE HELD IN SPECIAL VENERATION, ON LUCKY AND UNLUCKY TIMES, AND ON SUCH TIMES AS ARE PARTICULARLY FAVOURABLE FOR ACQUIRING IN THEM BLISS IN HEAVEN.

THE single days enjoy different degrees of veneration according to certain qualities which they attribute to them. They distinguish, *e.g.*, the Sunday, because it is the day of the sun and the beginning of the week, as the Friday is distinguished in Islam.

The days of new moon and full moon.

To the distinguished days further belong *amâvâsyâ* and *pûrṇimâ*, *i.e.* the days of conjunction (new moon) and opposition (full moon), because they are the limits of the wane and the increase of the moonlight. In accordance with the belief of the Hindus regarding this increase and wane, the Brahmans sacrifice continually to the fire in order to earn heavenly reward. They let the portions of the angels accumulate, which are the offerings thrown into the fire at moonlight during the whole time from new moon to full moon. Then they begin distributing these portions over the angels in the time from full moon to new moon, till at the time of new moon nothing any more remains of them. We have already mentioned that new moon and full moon are noon and midnight of the nychthemeron of the Fathers. Therefore the uninterrupted almsgiving on these two days is always done in honour of the Fathers.

Page 291.

The four days on which the four *yugas* are said to have commenced.

Four other days are held in special veneration, because, according to the Hindus, with them the single *yugas* of the present *caturyuga* have commenced, viz. :—

The 3rd Vaiśâkha, called *kshairítâ* (?), on which the Kṛitayuga is believed to have commenced.

The 9th Kârttika, the beginning of the Tretâyuga.

The 15th Mâgha, the beginning of the Dvâparayuga.

The 13th of Âśvayuja, the beginning of the Kaliyuga.

According to my opinion, these days are festivals, sacred to the *yugas*, instituted for the purpose of almsgiving or for the performance of some rites and ceremonies, as, *e.g.*, the commemoration-days in the year of the Christians. However, we must deny that the four *yugas* could really have commenced on the days here mentioned.

Criticisms thereon.

With regard to the Kṛitayuga, the matter is perfectly clear, because its beginning is the beginning of the solar and lunar cycles, there being no fraction in the date, since it is, at the same time, the beginning of the *caturyuga*. It is the first of the month Caitra, at the same time the date of the vernal equinox, and on the same day also the other *yugas* commence. For, according to Brahmagupta, a *caturyuga* contains :—

Civil days	1,577,916,450
Solar months	51,840,000
Leap months	1,593,300
Lunar days	1.602,999,000
Ûnarâtra days	25,082,550

These are the elements on which the resolution of chronological dates into days, or the composition of them out of days, is based. All these numbers may be divided by 10, and the divisors are wholes without any fraction. Now the beginnings of the single *yugas* depend upon the beginning of the *caturyuga*.

According to Pulisa the *caturyuga* contains :—

Civil days	1,577,917,800
Solar months	51,840,000
Leap months	1,593.336
Lunar days	1,603,000,010
Ûnarâtra days	25,082,280

All these numbers may be divided by 4, and the divisors are wholly without any fraction. According to this computation, also, the beginnings of the single *yugas* are the same as the beginning of the *caturyuga*, *i.e.* the first of the month Caitra and the day of the vernal equinox. However, this day falls on different week-days.

Hence it is evident that their theory about the above-mentioned four days being the beginnings of the four *yugas*, is without any foundation at all; that they could never arrive at such a result unless by resorting to very artificial ways of interpretation.

The days called *puṇyakâla*.

The times which are specially favourable to earn a heavenly reward in them are called *puṇyakâla*. Balabhadra says in his commentary to the Khaṇḍakhâdyaka :—" If the *yogin*, *i.e.* the ascetic who understands the creator, who chooses the good and eschews the bad, continued his manner of life during one thousand years

Rule how find the *karaṇas*.

If you want to know the *karaṇas*, first determine the lunar days, and find out in what part of them the date in question falls, which is done in this way:—

Subtract the corrected place of the sun from the corrected place of the moon. The remainder is the distance between them. If it is less than six zodiacal signs, the date falls in the white half of the month; if it is more, it falls in the black half.

Reduce this number to minutes, and divide the product by 720. The quotient represents *tithis*, *i.e.* complete lunar days. If you get by the division a remainder, multiply it by 60 and divide the product by the mean *bhukti*. The quotient represents *ghaṭîs* and minor fractions, *i.e.* that portion of the current day which has already elapsed.

This is the method of the *canones* of the Hindus. The distance between the corrected places of sun and moon must be divided by the mean *bhukti*. This, however, is impossible for many of the days. Therefore they divide this distance by the difference between the daily revolutions of sun and moon, which they reckon for the moon as 13 degrees, for the sun as 1 degree.

It is a favourite method in rules of this kind, especially in Indian ones, to reckon by the mean motion of sun and moon. The mean motion of the sun is subtracted from the mean motion of the moon, and the remainder is divided by 732, which is the difference between their two middle *bhuktis*. The quotient then represents days and *ghaṭîs*.

Explanation of *bhukti*.

The word *buht* is of Indian origin. In the Indian language it is *bhukti* (=the daily motion of a planet). If the corrected motion is meant, it is called *bhukti sphuṭa*. If the mean motion is meant, it is called *bhukti madhyama*, and if the *buht* which renders equal is meant, it is called *bhuktyantara*, *i.e.* the difference between the two *bhuktis*.

Names of the lunar days of the half of a month.

The lunar days of the month have special names, which we exhibit in the following diagram. If you know the lunar day in which you are, you find, by the side of the number of the day, its name, and opposite it the *karaṇa* in which you are. If that which has elapsed of the current day is less than half a day, the *karaṇa* is a diurnal one; if that which has elapsed of it is more than half a day, it is a nocturnal one. This is the diagram :—

The white half.				The black half.				The *karaṇas* are common to both halves.	
The number of the days.	Their names.	The number of the days.	Their names.	The number of the days.	Their names.	The number of the days.	Their names.	In daytime.	In the night.
1	Amâvâsyâ.	0	0	0	0	0	0	Catushpada.	Nâga.
2	Barkhu.	0	0	0	0	0	0	Kinstughna.	Bava.
3	Biya.	10	Navin.	17	Barkhu.	24	Atîn.	Bâlava.	Kaulava.
4	Triya.	11	Dahîn.	18	Biya.	25	Navin.	Taitila.	Gara.
5	Caut.	12	Yâhî.	19	Triya.	26	Dahîn.	Baṇij.	Vishṭi.
6	Pancî.	13	Duvâhî.	20	Caut.	27	Yâhî.	Bava.	Bâlava.
7	Sat.	14	Trohî.	21	Pancî.	28	Duvâhî.	Kaulava.	Taitila
8	Satîn.	15	Caudahî.	22	Sat.	29	Trohî.	Gara.	Baṇij.
9	Atîn.	16	Pûrnimâ pancâhî.	23	Satîn.	0	0	Vishṭi.	Bava.
0	0	0	0	0	0	30	Caudahî.	Vishṭi.	Śakuni.

Table of *karaṇas* with their dominants and prognostics.

The Hindus attribute to some of the *karaṇas* dominants, as is their custom. Further they give rules showing what during each *karaṇa* must be done or not, rules which are similar to collections of astrological prognostics (as to lucky or unlucky days, &c.). If we give here a second diagram of the *karaṇas*, we thereby simply mean to confirm what we have said already, and to repeat a subject which is unknown among us. Thus it is rendered easy to learn the subject, because learning is the fruit of repetition.

Page 296.

THE FOUR FIXED *KARANAS*.

In which half of the month they fall.	Their names.	Their dominants.	The prognostics of the *karaṇas*, and for what thing each of them is favourable.
In the black half.	Śakuni.	Kali.	Favourable for the action of medicines, of drugs against the bite of serpents, of incantations, of learning, of council-holding, and of reciting holy texts before the idols.
In the white half.	Catushpada.	The zodiacal sign Taurus.	Favourable for placing a king on a throne, giving alms in the name of the Fathers, for making use of four-footed animals in agriculture.
	Nâga.	The snake.	Favourable for weddings, laying a foundation-stone, examining the state of snake-bitten persons, for frightening people and seizing them.
	Kinstughna.	The wind.	Ruins all actions and is favourable only for things connected with marriage, for the construction of parasols, the piercing of the ears, and for works of piety.

THE SEVEN MOVABLE *KARANAS.*

In which half of the month they fall.	Their names.	Their dominants.	The prognostics of the *karaṇas*, and for what thing each of them is favourable.
Both in the white and the black halves.	Bava.	Śukra.	When there is a *saṁkrânti* in this *karaṇa*, it is *sitting*, and the fruits will, during it, suffer some mishap. It is favourable for travelling, for beginning with things which are intended to last long, for cleaning oneself, for compounding the drugs which make the women fat, and for the sacrifices which the Brahmans offer to the fire.
	Bâlava.	Brahman.	When there is a *saṁkrânti* in it, it is *sitting*, not good for the fruits. It is favourable for the affairs of future life, and for acquiring a heavenly reward.
	Kaulava.	Mitra.	When there is a *saṁkrânti* in it, it is *standing*. All that is sown in it will prosper and drop with succulence. It is favourable for making friendships with people.
	Taitila.	Aryaman.	When there is a *saṁkrânti* in it, it is *stretched on the ground*. It indicates that the prices will sink, and is favourable for the kneading of aromatic unguents and the compounding of perfumes.
	Gara.	Parvata.	When there is a *saṁkrânti* in it, it is *stretched on the ground*. It indicates that the prices will be depressed, and is favourable for sowing and laying the foundation-stone of a building.
	Banij.	Śrî.	When there is a *saṁkrânti* in it, it is *standing*. All corn will prosper (*lacuna*), and is favourable for commerce.
	Vishṭi.	Marut.	When there is a *saṁkrânti* in it, it is *stretched on the ground*. It indicates that the prices will be insufficient. It is not favourable for anything save the crushing of the sugar-cane. It is considered as unlucky and is not good for travelling.

Rule for the computation of the *karaṇas.*

Page 297.

If you want to find the *karaṇas* by computation, subtract the corrected place of the sun from that of the moon, reduce the remainder to minutes and divide the number of them by 360. The quotient represents complete *karaṇas.*

What remains after the division is multiplied by 60, and divided by the *bhuktyantara.* The quotient represents how much has elapsed of the current *karaṇa.* Every unit of the number is equal to half a *ghaṭî.*

We now return to the complete *karaṇas.* If they are two or less, you are in the second *karaṇa.* In that case you add one to the number and count the sum off, beginning with *catushpada.*

If the number of *karaṇas* is 59, you are in *śakuni.*

If it is less than 59 and more than two, add one to them and divide the sum by seven. The remainder, if it is not more than seven, count off, beginning with the beginning of the cycle of the *movable karaṇas, i.e.* with *bava.* Thereby you will arrive at the name of the current *karaṇa* in which you happen to be.

The *karaṇas* as borrowed by Alkindî and other Arab authors.

Wishing to remind the reader of something relating to the *karaṇas* which he perhaps has forgotten, we must tell him that Alkindî and others like him have hit upon the system of the *karaṇas*, but one which was not sufficiently explained. They did not comprehend the method of those who use the *karaṇas.* At one time they trace them back to Indian, another time to Babylonian origin, declaring all the time that they are altered on purpose and corrupted by the inadvertence of the copyists. They have invented a calculation for them which proceeds in a better order than even the original method itself. But thereby the thing has become something totally different from what it originally was. Their method is this: they count half days, beginning with new moon. The first twelve hours they regard as belonging to the sun, as *burning, i.e.* unlucky, the next twelve hours as belonging to Venus, the following twelve hours as belonging to Mercury, and so on according to the order of the planets. Whenever the order returns to the sun, they call his twelve hours *the hours of Albist*, i.e. *vishṭi*.

However, the Hindus do not measure the *karaṇas* by civil, but by lunar days, nor do they begin with those *burning* hours following upon new moon. According to the calculation of Alkindî, people begin, after new moon, with Jupiter; in that case the periods of the sun are not *burning*. On the other hand, if they begin, according to the method of the Hindus, after new moon with the sun, the hours of *vishṭi* belong to Mercury. Therefore, each method, that of the Hindus and that of Alkindî, must be treated separately.

Because *vishṭi* recurs eight times in a month, and because the points of the compass are eight, we shall exhibit in the eight fields of the following table their ἀστρολογούμενα regarding the *karaṇas*, observations the like of which are made by all astrologers regarding the shapes of the planets and regarding those stars which rise in the single third parts of the zodiacal signs.

Page 298.

Their numbers.	In what part of the month they fall.	Names of the *vishṭis.*	The directions in which they rise.	DESCRIPTION OF THE SINGLE "VISHṬIS."	Their names according to the book *Srûdhava.*
I.	In the night of the 5th *tithi.*	...	East.	It has three eyes. The hair on its head is like growing sugar-cane. In one hand it has an iron hook, in the other a black serpent. It is strong and violent like running water. It has a long tongue. Its day is only good for war, and those actions in which there is deception and falsification.	Vadavâmukha.

Their numbers.	In what part of the month they fall.	Names of the *vishṭis*.	The directions in which they rise.	DESCRIPTION OF THE SINGLE "VISHṬIS."	Their names according to the book *Srîdhava*.
II.	In the day of the 9th *tithi*.	...	Aiśâna.	It is green, and has a sword in its hand. Its place is in the lightning, thundering, stormy, and cold cloud. Its time is favourable for tearing out fattening herbs, for drinking medicine, for commerce, and for casting gold in a mould.	Blv (?).
III.	In the night of the 12th *tithi*.	Ghora.	North.	It has a black face, thick lips, bushy eyebrows, long hair of the head. It is long, and rides during its day. In the hand it has a sword, it is intent upon devouring men, it emits fire from its mouth, and says *bâ bâ bâ*. Its time is only good for fighting, for killing miscreants, for curing ill people, and for fetching serpents out of their holes.	Ghora.
IV.	In the day of the 16th *tithi*.	...	Vâyava.	It has five faces and ten eyes. Its time is favourable for punishing rebels, for dividing the army into single corps. During it a man must not turn with his face towards the direction where it rises.	Krâla (?).
V.	In the night of the 19th *tithi*.	...	West.	It is like a smoky flame. It has three heads, in each three eyes turned upside down. Its hair is standing on end. It sits on the head of a human being, it screams like thunder. It is angry, devours men. It holds in one hand a knife, in the other an axe.	Jwâla (?)

Their numbers.	In what part of the month they fall.	Names of the *vishṭis*.	The directions in which they rise.	Description of the Single "Vishṭis."	Their names according to the *Siddhava.*
VI.	In the day of the 23d *tithi*.	...	Nairrita.	It is white, has three eyes, and rides on an elephant, which always remains the same. In the one hand he has a huge rock, in the other a *vajra* of iron, which it throws. It destroys the cattle over which it rises. He who makes war coming from the direction whence it rises will be victorious. A man must not turn with his face towards it when tearing out fattening herbs, digging out treasures, and trying to satisfy the wants of life.	
VII.	In the night of the 26th *tithi*.	...	South.	It has the colour of crystal. In one hand it holds a threefold *paraśvadha*, and in the other a rosary. It looks towards heaven, and says *hâ hâ hâ*. It rides on an ox. Its time is favourable for handing over the children to the schools, for concluding peace, giving alms, and works of piety.	Kâlarâtri.
VIII.	In the day of the 30th *tithi*.	...	Âgneya.	It is pistachio-coloured like a parrot. It looks like something globular, and has three eyes. In one hand it has a mace with an iron hook, in the other a sharp discus. It sits on its throne, frightening people, and saying *sâ sâ sâ*. Its time is not favourable for beginning anything. It is only good for doing service to relations and for house-work.	

CHAPTER LXXIX.

ON THE YOGAS.

Page 299.

THESE are times which the Hindus think to be most unlucky and during which they abstain from all action. They are numerous. We shall here mention them.

Explanation of *vyatîpâta* and *vaidhṛita*.

There are two *yogas* regarding which all Hindus agree, viz.:—

(1.) The moment when sun and moon together stand on two circles, which are, as it were, *seizing* each other, *i.e.* each pair of circles, the declinations of which, on one and the same side (of either solstice), are equal. This *yoga* is called *vyatîpâta*.

(2.) The moment when sun and moon stand together on two *equal* circles, *i.e.* each pair of circles, the declinations of which, on different sides (of either solstice), are equal. This is called *vaidhṛita*.

It is the *signum* of the former that in it the sum of the corrected places of sun and moon represents in any case the distance of six zodiacal signs from 0° of Aries, while it is the *signum* for the latter that the same sum represents the distance of twelve signs. If you compute the corrected places of sun and moon for a certain time and add them together, the sum is either of these *signa*, *i.e.* either of these two *yogas*.

If, however, the sum is less than the amount of the *signum* or larger, in that case the time of equality (*i.e.* the time when the sum is equal to either of the *signa*) is computed by means of the difference between this sum and the term in question, and by means of the sum of the two *bhukti* of sun and moon instead of the *bhuktyantara*, in the same manner as in the *canones* the time of full moon and opposition is computed.

On *middle* time.

If you know the distance of the moment from noon or midnight, whether you correct the places of sun and moon according to the one or the other, its time is called the *middle* one. For if the moon followed the ecliptic as accurately as the sun, this time would be that which we want to find. However, the moon deviates from the ecliptic. Therefore, she does not at that time stand on the circle of the sun or on the circle which, as far as observation goes, is equal to it. For this reason the places of sun and moon and the dragon's head and tail are computed for the *middle* time.

Method for computing *vyatîpâta* and *vaidhṛita*.

According to this time they compute the declinations of sun and moon. If they are equal, this is the time which is sought for. If not, you consider the declination of the moon.

If, in computing it, you have added her latitude to the declination of the degree which she occupies, you subtract the latitude of the moon from the declination of the sun. However, if, in computing it, you have subtracted her latitude from the degree which the moon occupies, you add her latitude to the declination of the sun. The result is reduced to arcs by the tables of the *karadajât* of declination, and these arcs are kept in memory. They are the same which are used in the canon *Karaṇatilaka*.

Further, you observe the moon at the *middle* time. If she stands in some of the *odd* quarters of the ecliptic, *i.e.* the vernal and autumnal ones, whilst her declination is less than the declination of the sun, in that case the time of the two declinations equalling each other—and that is what we want to find—falls *after* the *middle*, *i.e.* the future one; but if the declination of the moon is larger than that of the sun, it falls *before* the *middle* *i.e.* the past one.

If the moon stands in the *even* quarters of the ecliptic (*i.e.* the summer and winter quarters), just the reverse takes place.

Another method by Pulisa.

Pulisa adds together the declinations of sun and moon in *vyatîpâta*, if they stand on different sides of the solstice, and in *vaidhṛita*, if they stand on the same side of the solstice. Further, he takes the difference between the declinations of sun and moon in *vyatîpâta*, if they stand on the same side, and in *vaidhṛita*, if they stand on different sides. This is the first value which is kept in memory, *i.e.* the *middle* time.

Further, he reduces the minutes of the days to *mâshas*, supposing that they are less than one-fourth of a day. Then he computes their motions by means of the *bhukti* of sun and moon and the dragon's head and tail, and he computes their places according to the amount of *middle* time, which they occupy, in the past and the future. This is the second value which is kept in memory.

By this method he manages to find out the condition of the past and the future, and compares it with the *middle* time. If the time of the two declinations equalling each other for both sun and moon is past or future, in that case the *difference* between the two values kept in memory is the *portio divisionis* (divisor); but if it is past for the one and future for the other, the *sum* of the two values kept in memory is the *portio divisionis*.

Page 300.

Further, he multiplies the minutes of the days, which have been found, by the first value kept in memory, and divides the product by the *portio divisionis*. The quotient represents the minutes of the distance from the *middle* time which minutes may either be past or future. Thus the time of the two declinations equalling each other becomes known.

The author of the canon *Karaṇatilaka* makes us return to the arc of the declination which has been

Another method by the author of the *Karanatilaka*.

kept in memory. If the corrected place of the moon is less than three zodiacal signs, it is that which we want; if it is between three and six signs, he subtracts it from six signs, and if it is between six and nine signs, he adds six signs thereto; if it is more than nine signs, he subtracts it from twelve signs. Thereby he gets the second place of the moon, and this he compares with the moon's place at the time of the correction. If the second place of the moon is *less* than the first, the time of the two declinations equalling each other is future; if it is *more* than the first, the time of their equalling each other is past.

Further, he multiplies the difference between the two places of the moon by the *bhukti* of the sun, and divides the product by the *bhukti* of the moon. The quotient he adds to the place of the sun at the time of the correction, if the second place of the moon is larger than the first; but he subtracts it from the sun's place, if the second place of the moon is less than the first. Thereby he finds the place of the sun for the time when the two declinations are equal to each other.

For the purpose of finding it, he divides the difference between the two places of the moon by the *bhukti* of the moon. The quotient gives minutes of days, indicative of the distance. By means of them he computes the places of sun and moon, of the dragon's head and tail, and of the two declinations. If the latter are equal, it is that which we want to find. If they are not equal, the author repeats the calculation so long till they are equal and till the correct time has been found.

Thereupon he computes the measure of sun and moon. However, he disregards half of the sum of them, so that in the further calculation he uses only the one half of their measures. He multiplies it by 60 and divides the product by the *bhuktyantara*. The quotient represents the minutes of the *falling* (*pâta ?*).

The correct time, which has been found, is marked in three different places. From the first number he subtracts the minutes of the *falling*, and to the last number he adds them. Then the first number is the time of the beginning of *vyatîpâta* or *vaidhṛita*, whichever of the two you want to compute. The second number is the time of its middle, and the third number the time of its end.

The author's books on the subject.

We have given a detailed account of the bases on which these methods rest in a special book of ours, called *Khayâl-alkusûfaini* (*i.e.* the image of the two eclipses), and have given an accurate description of them in the canon which we have composed for *Syâvabala* (?), the Kashmîrian, and to which we have given the title *The Arabic Khaṇḍakhâdyaka*.

About the *yogas* being unlucky.

Bhaṭṭila (?) thinks the whole day of either of these two *yogas* to be unlucky, whilst Varâhamihira thinks only that duration of them to be unlucky which is found by the computation. He compares the unlucky portion of the day to the wound of a gazelle shot with a poisoned arrow. The disease does not go beyond the environs of the poisoned shot; if it is cut out, the injury is removed.

According to what Pulisa mentions of Parâśara, the Hindus assume a number of *vyatîpâtas* in the lunar stations, but all of them are computed by the same method which he has given. For the calculation does not increase in its kind; only the single specimens of it become more numerous.

Quotation from Bhaṭṭila (?) on unlucky times

The Brahman Bhaṭṭila (?) says in his canon :—

"Here there are 8 times, which have certain gauge-measures. If the sum of the corrected places of sun and moon is equal to them, they are unlucky. They are :

"1. *Bak-shûta* (?). Its gauge-measure is 4 zodiacal signs.

"2. *Gaṇḍânta*. Its gauge-measure is 4 signs and 13½ degrees.

"3. *Lâṭa* (?), or the general *vyatîpâta*. Its gauge-measure is 6 signs.

"4. *Câsa* (?). Its gauge-measure is 6 signs and $6\frac{2}{3}$ degrees.

"5. *Barh* (?), also called *barhvyatîpâta*. Its gauge-measure is 7 signs and $16\frac{2}{3}$ degrees.

"6. *Kâladaṇḍa*. Its gauge-measure is 8 signs and $13\frac{1}{3}$ degrees.

"7. *Vyâshâta* (?). Its gauge-measure is 9 signs and $23\frac{1}{3}$ degrees.

"8. *Vaidhṛita*. Its gauge-measure is 12 signs."

These *yogas* are well known, but they cannot all be traced back to a rule in the same way as the 3d and 8th ones. Therefore they have no certain duration determined by minutes of the *falling*, but only by general estimates. Thus the duration of *vyâkshâta* (?) and of *bakshâta* (?) is one *muhûrta*, according to the statement of Varâhamihira, the duration of *Gaṇḍânta* and of *Barh* (?) two *muhûrtas*.

The Hindus propound this subject at great length and with much detail, but to no purpose. We have given an account of it in the above-mentioned book. (See ii. 208.)

Twenty-seven *yogas* according to the *Karaṇatilaka*.

Page 301.

The canon *Karaṇatilaka* mentions twenty-seven *yogas*, which are computed in the following manner:

Add the corrected place of the sun to that of the moon, reduce the whole sum to minutes, and divide the number by 800. The quotient represents complete *yogas*. Multiply the remainder by 60, and divide the product by the sum of the *bhuktis* of sun and moon. The quotient represents the minutes of days and minor fractions, viz. that time which has elapsed of the current *yoga*.

We have copied the names and qualities of the *yogas* from Śrîpâla, and exhibit them in the following table:-

TABLE OF THE TWENTY-SEVEN "YOGAS."

The number.	Their names.	Whether good or bad.	The number.	Their names.	Whether good or bad.	The number.	Their names.	Whether good or bad.
1	Vishkambha.	Good.	10	Gaṇḍa.	Bad.	19	Parigha.	Bad.
2	Prîti.	Good.	11	Vṛiddhi.	Good.	20	Śiva.	Good.
3	Râjakama (?).	Bad.	12	Dhruva.	Good.	21	Siddha.	Good.
4	Saubhâgya.	Good.	13	Vyâghâta (?).	Bad.	22	Sâdhya.	Middling.
5	Śobhana.	Good.	14	Harshaṇa.	Good.	23	Śubha.	Good.
6	Atigaṇḍa.	Bad.	15	Vajra.	Bad.	24	Śukra.	Good.
7	Sukarman.	Good.	16	Siddhi.	Good.	25	Brahman.	Good.
8	Dhṛiti.	Good.	17	K-n-n-âta (?).	Bad.	26	Indra.	Good.
9	Śûla.	Bad.	18	Varîyas.	Bad.	27	Vaidhṛiti.	Bad.

CHAPTER LXXX.

ON THE INTRODUCTORY PRINCIPLES OF HINDU ASTROLOGY, WITH A SHORT DESCRIPTION OF THEIR METHODS OF ASTROLOGICAL CALCULATIONS.

Indian astrology unknown among Muhammadans.

OUR fellow-believers in these (Muslim) countries are not acquainted with the Hindu methods of astrology, and have never had an opportunity of studying an Indian book on the subject. In consequence, they imagine that Hindu astrology is the same as theirs and relate all sorts of things as being of Indian origin, of which we have not found a single trace with the Hindus themselves. As in the preceding part of this our book we have given something of everything, we shall also give as much of their astrological doctrine as will enable the reader to discuss questions of a similar nature with them. If we were to give an exhaustive representation of the subject, this task would detain us very long, even if we limited ourselves to delineate only the leading principles and avoided all details. **Page 302.**

First, the reader must know that in most of their prognostics they simply rely on means like auguring from the flight of birds and physiognomy, that they do not—as they ought to do—draw conclusions, regarding the affairs of the sublunary world, from the seconds (*sic*) of the stars, which are the events of the celestial sphere.

On the planets.

Regarding the number seven as that of the planets, there is no difference between us and them. They call them *graha*. Some of them are throughout lucky, viz.

Jupiter, Venus and the Moon, which are called *saumyagraha.* Other three are throughout unlucky, viz. Saturn, Mars, and the Sun, which are called *krûragraha.* Among the latter, they also count the dragon's head, though in reality it is not a star. The nature of one planet is variable and depends upon the nature of that planet with which it is combined, whether it be lucky or unlucky. This is Mercury. However, alone by itself, it is lucky.

The following table represents the natures of the seven planets and everything else concerning them :—

Names of the planets.	*Sun.*	*Moon.*	*Mars.*	*Mercury.*	*Jupiter.*	*Venus.*	*Saturn.*
Whether they are lucky or unlucky.	Unlucky.	Lucky, but depending upon the planet near her. Middling in the first, lucky in the second, and unlucky in the last ten days of the month.	Unlucky.	Lucky, when it is alone. Else depending upon the nature of the planet near it.	Lucky.	Lucky.	Unlucky.
What elements they indicate.	...	...	Fire.	Earth.	Heaven.	Water.	Wind.
Whether they indicate male or female beings.	Male.	Female.	Male.	Neither male nor female.	Male.	Female.	Neither male nor female.
Whether they indicate day or night.	Day.	Night.	Night.	Day and night together.	Day.	Day.	Night.
What point of the compass they indicate.	East.	North-west.	South.	North.	North-east.	Between east and west.	West.
What colour they indicate.	Bronze-colour.	White.	Light red.	Pistachio-green.	Gold-colour.	Many colours.	Black.
What time they indicate.	Ayana.	Muhûrta.	Day.	*Ritu*, *i.e.* a sixth part of the year.	Month.	*Paksha*, *i.e.* half a month.	Year.

Page 303.

Names of the planets.	*Sun.*	*Moon.*	*Mars.*	*Mercury.*	*Jupiter.*	*Venus.*	*Saturn.*
What season they indicate.	o	Varsha.	Grishma.	Śarad.	Hemanta.	Vasanta.	Śiśira.
What taste they indicate.	Bitter.	Saltish.	...	A mixture of all tastes.	Sweet.	...	...
What material they indicate.	Bronze.	Crystal.	Gold.	Small pearls.	Silver, or if the constellation is very strong, gold.	Pearl.	Iron.
What dress and clothes they indicate.	Thick.	New.	Burned.	Wet from water.	Between new and shabby.	Whole.	Burned.
What angel they indicate.	Nema (?).	Ambu, the water.	Agni, the fire.	Brahman.	Mahâdeva.	Indra.	...
What caste they indicate.	Kshatriyas and commanders.	Vaiśyas and commanders.	Kshatriyas and generals.	Śûdras and princes.	Brahmans and ministers.	Brahmans and ministers.	...
Which Veda they indicate.	o	o	Sâmaveda.	Atharvanaveda.	Ṛigveda.	Yajurveda.	o
The months of pregnancy.	The fourth month, in which the bones become hard.	The fifth month, in which the skin appears.	The second month, in which the embyro attains consistency.	The seventh month, in which the child becomes complete, and receives the memory.	The third month, in which the limbs begin to branch off.	The first month, in which the semen and the menstrual blood become mixed.	The sixth month, when the hair grows.

Character as based on the three primary forces.	Satya.	Satya.	Tamas.	Rajas.	Satya.	Rajas.	Tamas.
Mitra. Friendly planets.	Jupiter, Mars, Moon.	Sun, Mercury.	Jupiter, Sun, Moon.	Sun, Venus.	Sun, Moon, Mars.	Saturn, Mercury.	Venus, Mercury.
Śatru. Hostile planets.	Saturn, Venus.	There is no planet hostile to her.	Mercury.	Moon.	Venus, Mercury.	Sun, Moon.	Mars, Sun, Moon.
Vimiśra. Indifferent planets.	Mercury.	Saturn, Jupiter, Mars, Venus.	Venus, Saturn.	Saturn, Jupiter, Mars.	Saturn.	Jupiter, Mars.	Jupiter.
What parts of the body they indicate.	The breath and the bones.	The root of the tongue and the blood.	The flesh and brain.	Voice and skin.	Intellect and fat.	Semen.	Sinews, flesh, and pain.
The scale of their magnitude.	1	2	6	5	4	25 (!)	7
Years of *shaḍáya*.	19	25	15	12	15	21	20
Years of *naisargka*.	20	1	2	9	18	20	50

Explanatory notes to the preceding table.

The column of this table which indicates the order of the size and power of the planets, serves for the following purpose:—Sometimes two planets indicate exactly the same thing, exercise the same influence, and stand in the same relation to the event in question. In this case, the preference is given to that planet which, in the column in question, is described as the larger or the more powerful of the two.

The months of pregnancy.

The column relating to the months of pregnancy is to be completed by the remark that they consider the eighth month as standing under the influence of a horoscope which causes abortion. According to them, the embryo takes, in this month, the fine substances of the food. If it takes all of them and is then born, it will remain alive; but if it is born before that, it will die from some deficiency in its formation. The ninth month stands under the influence of the moon, the tenth under that of the sun. They do not speak of a longer duration of pregnancy, but if it happens to last longer, they believe that, during this time, some injury is brought about by the wind. At the time of the horoscope of abortion, which they determine by tradition, not by calculation, they observe the conditions and influences of the planets and give their decision accordingly as this or that planet happens to preside over the month in question.

Page 304.

Friendship and enmity of the planets.

The question as to the friendship and enmity of the planets among each other, as well as the influence of the *dominus domûs*, is of great importance in their astrology. Sometimes it may happen that, at a particular moment of time, this *dominium* entirely loses its original character. Further on we shall give a rule as to the computation of the *dominium* and its single years.

The zodiacal signs.

There is no difference between us and the Hindus regarding the number twelve as the number of the signs of the ecliptic, nor regarding the manner in which the *dominium* of the planets is distributed over them.

The following table shows what qualities are peculiar to each zodiacal sign as a whole:—

The Zodiacal Signs.	*Aries.*	*Taurus.*	*Gemini.*	*Cancer.*	*Leo.*	*Virgo.*	*Libra.*	*Scorpio.*	*Arcitenens.*	*Capricornus.*	*Amphora.*	*Pisces.*
Their dominants.	Mars.	Venus.	Mercury.	Moon.	Sun.	Mercury.	Venus.	Mars.	Jupiter.	Saturn.	Saturn.	Jupiter.
Altitudes Degrees.	10	3	0	0	0	15	20	0	0	28	0	27
Altitude.	Sun.	Moon.	0	Jupiter.	0	Mercury.	Saturn.	0	0	Mars.	0	Venus.
Dominants of the *mûlatrikoṇa*.	Mars.	Moon.	0	0	Sun.	Mercury.	Venus.	0	Jupiter.	0	Saturn.	0
Whether male or female.	Male.	Female.	Male.	Female.	Male.	Female.	Male.	Female.	Male.	Female.	Male.	Female.
Whether lucky or unlucky.	Unlucky.	Lucky.	Unlucky.	Lucky.	Unlucky.	Lucky.	Unlucky.	Lucky.	Unlucky.	Lucky.	Unlucky.	Lucky.
The colours.	Reddish.	White.	Green.	Yellowish.	Gray.	Many coloured.	Black.	Golden.	...	Striped white and black.	Brown.	Dust-coloured.
The directions.	Due east.	S.S.E.	W.S.W.	N.N.W.	E.N.E.	Due south.	Due west.	Due north.	E.S.E.	S.S.W.	W.N.W.	N.N.E.
In what manner they rise.	Stretched on the ground.	Stretched on the ground.	Lying on the side.	Stretched on the ground.	Standing erect.	Standing erect.	Standing erect.	Standing erect.	Stretched on the ground.	Stretched on the ground.	Standing erect.	Standing erect.

Page 305.

The Zodiacal Signs.	*Aries.*	*Taurus.*	*Gemini.*	*Cancer.*	*Leo.*	*Virgo.*	*Libra.*	*Scorpio.*	*Arcitenens.*	*Capricornus.*	*Amphora.*	*Pisces.*
Whether turning, fixed or double-bodied.	Moving.	Resting.	Moving and resting together.	Moving.	Resting.	Moving and resting together.	Moving.	Resting.	Moving and resting together.	Moving.	Resting.	Moving and resting together.
Whether at night, or during day, according to some people.	At night.	At night.	At night.	At night.	During day.	During day.	During day.	During day.	At night.	At night.	During day.	During day.
What parts of the body they indicate.	Head.	Face.	Shoulders and hands.	Breast.	Belly.	Hip.	Under the navel.	Male and female genitals.	The loins.	The knees.	The calves.	The two feet.
Seasons.	Vasanta.	Grishma.	Grishma.	Varsha.	Varsha.	Śarad.	Śarad.	Hemanta.	Hemanta.	Śiśira.	Śiśira.	Vasanta.
Their figures.	A ram.	An ox.	A man with a lyre, and a club in his hand.	Crab.	Lion.	A girl with an ear of corn in herhand.	A scale.	A scorpion.	A horse, the head and upper half of which have human shape.	A being with the face of a goat. There is much water in its figure.	A kind of boat or barge.	Two fishes.

What kinds of beings they are.	Quadruped.	Quadruped.	Human biped.	Amphibious.	Quadruped.	Biped.	Biped.	Amphibious.	The upper half a biped, the lower half a quadruped.	The first half a biped, the latter half watery.	The first half a biped, the other half watery, or the whole a human being.	Watery.
The times of their strongest influence according to the different kinds.	At night.	At night.	During the day.	During the saṁdhi.	At night.	During the day.	During the day.	During the saṁdhi.	The human part during the day, the other at night.	During the saṁdhi.	The human part in daytime, the other at night.	During the saṁdhi.

Explanation of some technical terms of astrology. The *height* or *altitudo* of a planet is called, in the Indian language, *uccastha*, its particular degree *paramoccastha*. The *depth* or *dejectio* of a planet is called *nîcastha*, its particular degree *paramanîcastha*. *Mûlatrikoṇa* is a powerful influence, attributed to a planet, when it is in the *gaudium* in one of its two houses (cf. ii. 225).

They do not refer the *aspectus trigoni* to the elements and the elementary natures, as it is our custom to do, but refer them to the points of the compass in general, as has been specified in the table.

They call the *turning* zodiacal sign (τροπικόν) *cararâśi*, *i.e.* moving, the *fixed* one (στερεόν) *sthirarâśi*, *i.e.* the *resting* one, and the *double-bodied* one (δίσωμα) *dvisvabhâva*, *i.e.* both together.

The houses. As we have given a table of the zodiacal signs, we next give a table of the *houses* (*domus*), showing the qualities of each of them. The one half of them above **Page 306.** the earth they call *chatra*, *i.e.* parasol, and the half under the earth they call *nau*, *i.e.* ship. Further, they call the half ascending to the midst of heaven and the other half descending to the *cardo* of the earth, *dhanu*, *i.e.* the bow. The *cardines* they call *kendra* (κέντρον), the next following houses *paṇaphara* (ἐπαναφορά), and the *inclining* houses *âpoklima* (ἀπόκλιμα) :—

The Houses.	What they indicate.	On the *aspects*, the *ascendens* being taken as basis.	Which zodiacal signs exercise the greatest influence in them.	Which planets exercise the greatest influence in them.	How much is to be subtracted from the unlucky years of the House.	How much is to be subtracted from the lucky years of the House.	How they are divided according to the horizon.	Into what classes they are divided according to the shadow of noon.
Ascendens.	Head and soul.	Basis for the calculation.	The human signs.	Mercury and Jupiter.	o	o	Ship.	Ascending bow.
II.	Face and property.	Two stand in aspect with the *ascendens*.	o	o	o	o		
III.	The two arms and brothers.	The *ascendens* looks towards it, but it does not look towards the *ascendens*.	o	o	o	o		
IV.	Heart, parents, friends, house, and joy.	Two stand in aspect with the *ascendens*.	The watery signs.	Venus and Moon.	o	o		Descending bow.
V.	Belly, child, and cleverness.	Two stand in aspect with the *ascendens*.	o	o	o	o		
VI.	The two sides, the enemy and riding animals.	It looks towards the *ascendens*, but the *ascendens* does not look towards it.	o	o	o	o		
VII.	Under the navel and women.	Two stand in aspect with the *ascendens*.	...	Saturn.	$\frac{1}{6}$ of them.	$\frac{1}{12}$ of them.	Parasol.	
VIII.	Return and death.	The *ascendens* looks towards it, but it does not look towards the *ascendens*.	...	o	$\frac{1}{5}$	$\frac{1}{10}$		
IX.	The two loins, journey and debt.	Two stand in aspect with the *ascendens*.	...	o	$\frac{1}{4}$	$\frac{1}{8}$		

The Houses.	What they indicate.	On the *aspects*, the *ascendens* being taken as basis.	Which zodiacal signs exercise the greatest influence in them.	Which planets exercise the greatest influence in them.	How much is to be subtracted from the unlucky years of the House.	How much is to be subtracted from the lucky years of the House.	How they are divided according to the horizon.	Into what classes they are divided according to the shadow of noon.
X.	The two knees and action.	Two stand in aspect with the *ascendens*.	The quadrupeds.	Mars.	$\frac{1}{3}$	$\frac{1}{6}$	Parasol.	Ascending bow.
XI.	The two calves and income.	It looks towards the *ascendens*, but the *ascendens* does not look towards it.	0	0	$\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{1}{4}$		
XII.	The two feet and expenses.	Two do not stand in aspect with the *ascendens*.	0	0	The whole.	$\frac{1}{2}$		

Page 307.

The hitherto mentioned details are in reality the cardinal points of Hindu astrology, viz. the planets, zodiacal signs, and *houses*. He who knows how to find out what each of them means or portends deserves the title of a clever adept and of a master in this art.

On the division of a zodiacal sign in *nîmbahras*.

Next follows the division of the zodiacal signs in minor portions, first that in *nîmbahras*, which are called *horâ*, *i.e.* hour, because half a sign rises in about an hour's time. The first half of each *male* sign is unlucky as standing under the influence of the sun, because he produces male beings, whilst the second half is lucky as standing under the influence of the moon, because she produces female beings. On the contrary, in the *female* signs the first half is lucky, and the second unlucky.

2. In *drekkâṇas*.

Further, there are the triangles, called *drekkâṇa*. There is no use in enlarging on them, as they are simply identical with the so-called *draijânât* of our system.

3. In *nuhbahras*.

Further, the *nuhbahrât* (Persian, "*the nine parts*"), called *navâṁśaka*. As our books of introduction to the art of astrology mention two kinds of them, we shall here explain the Hindu theory regarding them, for the information of Indophiles. You reduce the distance between 0° of the sign and that minute, the *nuhbahr* of which you want to find, to minutes, and divide the number by 200. The quotient represents complete *nuhbahras* or ninth-parts, beginning with the *turning* sign, which is in the triangle of the sign in question; you count the number off on the consecutive signs, so that one sign corresponds to one *nuhbahr*. That sign which corresponds to the last of the ninth-parts which you have is the dominant of the *nuhbahr* we want to find.

The first *nuhbahr* of each *turning* sign, the fifth of each *fixed* sign, and the ninth of each *double-bodied* sign is called *vargottama, i.e.* the greatest portion.

4. In twelfth-parts.

Further, the *twelfth-parts*, called *the twelve rulers*. For a certain place within a sign they are found in the following manner:—Reduce the distance between 0° of the sign and the place in question to minutes, and divide the number by 150. The quotient represents complete *twelfth-parts*, which you count off on the following signs, beginning with the sign in question, so that one twelfth-part corresponds to one sign. The dominant of the sign, to which the last twelfth-part corresponds, is at the same time the dominant of the twelfth-part of the place in question.

5. In 30 degrees or ὅρια.

Further, *the degrees* called *triṅśâṁśaka, i.e.* the thirty degrees, which correspond to our *limits* (or ὅρια). Their order is this: The first five *degrees* of each *male* sign belong to Mars, the next following five to Saturn, the next eight to Jupiter, the next seven to Mercury, and the last five to Venus. Just the reverse order takes place in the *female* signs, viz. the first five *degrees* belong to Venus, the next seven to Mercury, the next eight to Jupiter, the next five to Saturn, and the last five to Mercury.

These are the elements on which every astrological calculation is based.

On the different kinds of the *aspect*.

The nature of the aspect of every sign depends upon the nature of the *ascendens* which at a given moment rises above the horizon. Regarding the *aspects* they have the following rule :—

A sign does not look at, *i.e.* does not stand *in aspectu* with the two signs immediately before and after it. On the contrary, each pair of signs, the beginnings of which are distant from each other by one-fourth or one-third or one-half of the circle, stand in aspect with each other. If the distance between two signs is one-sixth of the circle, the signs forming this *aspect* are counted in their original order; but if the distance is five-twelfths of the circle, the signs forming the *aspect* are counted in the inverse order.

There are various degrees of *aspects*, viz. :—

The aspect between one sign and the fourth or eleventh following one is a *fourth-part* of an aspect;

The aspect between one sign and the fifth or ninth following one is *half* an aspect;

The aspect between a sign and the sixth or tenth following one is *three-quarters* of an aspect;

The aspect between a sign and the seventh following one is a *whole* aspect.

The Hindus do not speak of an *aspect* between two planets which stand in one and the same sign.

Friendship and enmity of certain planets in relation to each other.

With reference to the change between the friendship and enmity of single planets with regard to each other, the Hindus have the following rule :—

Page 308.

If a planet comes to stand in signs which, in relation to its rising, are the tenth, eleventh, twelfth, first, second, third, and fourth signs, its nature undergoes a change for the better. If it is most inimical, it becomes moderated ; if it is moderated, it becomes friendly ; if it is friendly, it becomes most friendly. If the planet comes to stand in all the other signs, its nature undergoes a change for the worse. If originally it is friendly, it becomes moderate; if it is moderate, it becomes inimical; if it is inimical, it becomes even worse. Under such circumstances, the nature of a planet is an accidental one for the time being, associating itself with its original nature.

The four forces of each planet.

After having explained these things, we now proceed to mention *the four forces* which are peculiar to each planet:—

Laghujâtakam, ch ii. 8.

I. The habitual force, called *sthânabala*, which the planet exercises, when it stands in its *altitudo*, its *house*, or the house of its friend, or in the *nuhbahr* of its house, or its *altitudo*, or its *mûlatrikoṇa*, *i.e.* its *gaudium* in the line of the lucky planets. This force is peculiar to sun and moon when they are in the lucky signs, as it is peculiar to the other planets when they are in the unlucky signs. Especially this force is peculiar to the moon in the first third of her lunation, when it helps every planet which stands *in aspect* with her to acquire the same force. Lastly, it is peculiar to the *ascendens* if it is a sign representing a biped.

Lagh. ii. 11.

II. The force called *dṛishṭibala*, *i.e.* the lateral one, also called *dṛigbala*, which the planet exercises when standing in the *cardo* in which it is strong, and, according to some people, also when standing in the two houses immediately before and after the *cardo*. It is peculiar to the *ascendens* in the day, if it is a sign representing a biped, and in the night, if it is a four-footed sign, and in both the *saṁdhis* (periods of twilight at the beginning and end) of the other signs. This in particular refers to the astrology of nativities. In the other parts of astrology this force is peculiar, as they maintain, to the tenth sign if it represents a quadruped, to the seventh sign if it is Scorpio and Cancer, and to the fourth sign if it is Amphora and Cancer.

Lagh. ii. 5

III. *The conquering force*, called *ceshṭâbala*, which a planet exercises, when it is in retrograde motion, when it emerges from concealment, marching as a visible star till the end of four signs, and when in the north it meets one of the planets except Venus. For to Venus the south is the same as the north is to the other planets. If the two (——— ? illegible) stand in it (the south), it is peculiar to them that they stand in the ascending half (of the sun's annual rotation), proceeding towards the summer solstice, and that the moon in particular stands near the other planets—except the sun—which afford her something of this force.

The force is, further, peculiar to the *ascendens*, if its dominant is in it, if the two stand in aspect with Jupiter and Mercury, if the *ascendens* is free from an aspect of the unlucky planets, and none of them—except the dominant—is in the *ascendens*. For if an unlucky planet is in it, this weakens the aspect of Jupiter and Mercury, so that their dwelling in this force loses its effect.

Laghujâtakam, ii. 6.

IV. The fourth force is called *kâlabala*, *i.e.* the temporal one, which the daily planets exercise in the day, the nightly planets during the night. It is peculiar to Mercury in the *saṁdhi* of its rotation, whilst others maintain that Mercury always has this force, because he stands in the same relation to both day and night.

Further, this force is peculiar to the lucky planets in the white half of the month, and to the unlucky stars in the black half. It is always peculiar to the *ascendens*.

Other astrologers also mention years, months, days, and hours among the conditions, under which the one or other of the four forces is peculiar to a planet.

These, now, are the forces which are calculated for the planets and for the *ascendens*.

If several planets own, each of them, several forces, that one is preponderant which has the most of them. If two planets have the same number of *balas* or forces, that one has the preponderance the magnitude of which is the larger. This kind of magnitude is in the table of

Page 309.

ii. 215, called *naisargikabala*. This is the order of the planets in magnitude or force.

Lagh. ii. 7.

The years of life which the single planets bestow. Three species of these years.

The middle years which are computed for the planets are of three different species, two of which are computed according to the distance from the *altitudo*. The measures of the first and second species we exhibit in the table (ii. 215).

The *shaḍâya* and *naisargika* are reckoned as the degree of *altitudo*. The first species is computed when the above-mentioned forces of the sun are preponderating over the forces of the moon and the *ascendens* separately.

The second species is computed if the forces of the moon are preponderating over those of the sun and those of the *ascendens*.

The third species is called *aṁśâya*, and is computed if the forces of the *ascendens* are preponderating over those of sun and moon.

The first species.

The computation of the years of the first species for each planet, if it does not stand in the degree of its *altitudo*, is the following:—

Lagh. vi. 1

You take the distance of the star from the degree of its *altitudo* if this distance is more than six signs, or the difference between this distance and twelve signs, in case it is less than six signs. This number is multiplied by the number of the years, indicated by the table on page 812. Thus the signs sum up to months, the degrees to days, the minutes to day-minutes, and these values are reduced, each sixty minutes to one day, each thirty days to one month, and each twelve months to one year.

The computation of these years for the *ascendens* is this:—

Lagh. vi. 2.

Take the distance of the degree of the star from 0° of Aries, one year for each sign, one month for each $2\frac{1}{2}$ degrees, one day for each five minutes, one day-minute for each five seconds.

The second species. The computation of the years of the second species for the planets is the following :—

Take the distance of the star from the degree of its *altitudo* according to the just-mentioned rule (ii. 227). This number is multiplied by the corresponding number of years which is indicated by the table, and the remainder of the computation proceeds in the same way as in the case of the first species.

The computation of this species of years for the *ascendens* is this :—

Take the distance of its degree from 0° of Aries, a year for each *nuhbahr;* months and days, &c., in the same way as in the preceding computation. The number you get is divided by 12, and the remainder being less than 12, represents the number of years of the *ascendens*.

The third species. The computation of the years of the third species is the same for the planets as for the *ascendens*, and is similar to the computation of the years of the *ascendens* of the second species. It is this :—

Take the distance of the star from 0° of Aries, one year for each *nuhbahr*, multiplying the whole distance by 108. Then the signs sum up to months, the degrees to days, the minutes to day-minutes, the smaller measure being reduced to the larger one. The years are divided by 12, and the remainder which you get by this division is the number of years which you want to find.

Laghujâtakam, ch. vi. 1. All the years of this kind are called by the common name *âyurdâya*. Before they undergo the equation they are called *madhyamâya*, and after they have passed it they are called *sphuṭâya*, *i.e.* the *corrected* ones.

The years of life bestowed by the *ascendens*. The years of the *ascendens* in all three species are *corrected* ones, which do not require an equation by means of two kinds of subtraction, one according to the position of the *ascendens* in the æther, and a second according to its position in relation to the horizon.

To the third kind of years is peculiar an equation by means of an addition, which always proceeds in the same manner. It is this:— **Various computations for the duration of life.**

If a planet stands in its largest portion or in its house, the *drekkāṇa* of its house or the *drekkāṇa* of its *altitudo*, in the *nuhbahr* of its house or the *nuhbahr* of its *altitudo*, or, at the same time, in most of these positions together, its years will be the double of the middle number of years. But if the planet is in retrograde motion or in its *altitudo*, or in both together, its years are the threefold of the middle number of years. Page 310.

Regarding the equation by means of the subtraction (*vide* ii. 228) according to the first method, we observe that the years of the planet, which is in its *dejectio*, are reduced to two-thirds of them if they are of the first or second species, and to one-half if they belong to the third species. The standing of a planet in the house of its opponent does not impair the number of its years.

The years of a planet which is concealed by the rays of the sun, and thus prevented from exercising an influence, are reduced to one-half in the case of all three species of years. Only Venus and Saturn are excepted, for the fact of their being concealed by the rays of the sun does not in any way decrease the numbers of their years.

As regards the equation by means of subtraction according to the second method, we have already stated in the table (ii. 221, 222) how much is subtracted from the unlucky and lucky stars, when they stand in the houses above the earth. If two or more planets come together in one house, you examine which of them is the larger and stronger one. The subtraction is added to the years of the stronger planet and the remainder is left as it is.

If to the years of a single planet, years of the third species, two additions from different sides are to be made, only one addition, viz., the longer one, is taken into account. The same is the case when two subtractions are to be made. However, if an addition as well as a subtraction is to be made, you do the one first and then the other, because in this case the sequence is different.

By these methods the years become *adjusted*, and the sum of them is the duration of the life of that man who is born at the moment in question.

The single elements of the computation of the duration of life.

It now remains for us to explain the method of the Hindus regarding the *periods* (*sic*). Life is divided in the above-mentioned three species of years, and immediately after the birth, into years of sun and moon. That one is preponderating which has the most forces and *balas* (*vide* ii. 225); if they equal each other, that one is preponderating which has the greatest *portio* (*sic*) in its place, then the next one, &c. The companion of these years is either the *ascendens* or that planet which stands in the *cardines* with many forces and *portiones*. The several planets come together in the *cardines*, their influence and sequence are determined by their forces and shares. After them follow those planets which stand near the *cardines*, then those which stand in the *inclined* signs, their order being determined in the same way as in the preceding case. Thus becomes known in what part of the whole human life the years of every single planet fall.

However, the single parts of life are not computed exclusively in the years of the one planet, but according to the influences which companion-stars exercise upon it, *i.e.* the planets which stand in aspect with it. For they make it partake in their rule and make it share in their division of the years. A planet which stands in the same sign with the planet ruling over the part of life in question, shares with it one-half. That which stands in the fifth and ninth signs, shares with it one-third. That which stands in the fourth and eighth signs, shares with it one-fourth. That which stands in the seventh sign, shares with it one-seventh. If, therefore, several planets come together in one position, all of them have in common that share which is necessitated by the position in question.

How one planet is affected by the nature of another one.

The method for the computation of the years of such a companionship (if the ruling planet stands in aspect with other planets) is the following:—

Take for the master of the years (*i.e.* that planet which rules over a certain part of the life of a man) one as numerator and one as denominator, *i.e.* $\frac{1}{1}$, one whole, because it rules over the whole. Further, take for each companion (*i.e.* each planet which stands in aspect with the former) only the numerator of its denominator (not the entire fraction). You multiply each denominator by all the numerators and their sum, in which operation the original planet and its fraction are disregarded. Thereby all the fractions are reduced to one and the same denominator. The equal denominator is disregarded. Each numerator is multiplied by the sum of the year and the product divided by the sum of the numerators. The quotient represents the years *kâlambûka* (*kâlabhâga ?*) of a planet.

Page 311.

As regards the order of the planets, after the question as to the preponderance of their influence has been decided (? *text in disorder*), in so far as each of them exercises its individual influence. In the same way as has already been explained (*vide* ii. 230), the preponderating planets are those standing in the *cardines*, first the strongest, then the less strong, &c., then those standing near the *cardines*, and lastly those standing in the *inclined* signs.

Special methods of inquiry of the Hindu astrologers.

From the description given in the preceding pages, the reader learns how the Hindus compute the duration of human life. He learns from the positions of the planets, which they occupy on the origin (*i.e.* at

Laghujātakam, ch. iii. 3.

the moment of birth) and at every given moment of life in what way the years of the different planets are distributed over it. To these things Hindu astrologers join certain methods of the astrology of nativities, which other nations do not take into account. They try, *e.g.*, to find out if, at the birth of a human being, its father was present, and conclude that he was absent, if the moon does not stand in aspect with the *ascendens*, or if the sign in which the moon stands is enclosed between the signs of Venus and Mercury, or if Saturn is in the *ascendens*, or if Mars stands in the seventh sign.

Chap. iii. 4 (?).—Further, they try to find out if the child will attain full age by examining sun and moon. If sun and moon stand in the same sign, and with them an unlucky planet, or if the moon and Jupiter just quit the aspect with the *ascendens*, or if Jupiter just quits the aspect with the united sun and moon, the child will not live to full age.

Further, they examine the station in which the sun stands, in a certain connection with the circumstances of a lamp. If the sign is a *turning* one, the light of the lamp, when it is transferred from one place to the other, moves. If the sign is a *fixed* one, the light of the lamp is motionless; and if the sign is a *double-bodied* one, it moves one time and is motionless another.

Further, they examine in what relation the degrees of the *ascendens* stand to 30. Corresponding to it is the amount of the wick of the lamp which is consumed by burning. If the moon is full moon, the lamp is full of oil; at other times the decrease or increase of the oil corresponds to the wane and increase of the moonlight.

Chap. iv. 5.—From the strongest planet in the *cardines* they draw a conclusion relating to the door of the house, for its direction is identical with the direction of this planet or with the direction of the sign of the *ascendens*, in case there is no planet in the *cardines*.

Chap. iv. 6.—Further, they consider which is the light-giving body, the sun or moon. If it is the sun, the house will be destroyed. The moon is beneficent, Mars burning, Mercury bow-shaped, Jupiter constant, and Saturn old.

Chap. iv. 7—If Jupiter stands in its *altitudo* in the tenth sign, the house will consist of two wings or three. If its *indicium* is strong in Arcitenens, the house will have three wings; if it is in the other double-bodied signs, the house will have two wings.

Chap. iv. 8.—In order to find prognostics for the throne and its feet they examine the third sign, its squares and its length from the twelfth till the third signs. If there are unlucky planets in it, either the foot or the side will perish in the way that the unlucky planet prognosticates. If it is Mars, it will be turned; if it is the sun, it will be broken; and if it is Saturn, it will be destroyed by old age.

Chap. iv. 10.—The number of women who will be present in a house corresponds to the number of stars which are in the signs of the *ascendens* and of the moon. Their qualities correspond to the images of these constellations.

Those stars of these constellations which stand above the earth refer to those women who go away from the house, and those which stand under the earth prognosticate the women who will come *to* the house and enter it.

Laghujâtakam, ch. xii. 3. 4.

Further, they inquire into the coming of the spirit of life in man from the dominant of the *drekkâṇa* of the stronger planet of either sun or moon. If Jupiter is the drekkâṇa, it comes from Devaloka; if it is Venus or the moon, the spirit comes from Pitṛiloka; if it is Mars or the sun, the spirit comes from Vṛiśčikaloka; and if it is Saturn or Mercury, the spirit comes from Bhṛiguloka.

Likewise they inquire into the departing of the soul after the death of the body, when it departs to that planet which is stronger than the dominant of the drekkâṇa of the sixth or eighth houses, according to a similar rule to that which has just been laid down. However, if Jupiter stands in its *altitudo*, in the sixth house, or in the eighth, or in one of the *cardines*, or if the *ascendens* is Pisces, and Jupiter is the strongest of the planets, and if the constellation of the moment of death is the same as that of the moment of birth, in that case the spirit (or soul) is liberated and no longer wanders about.

Page 412.

On comets.

I mention these things in order to show the reader the difference between the astrological methods of our people and those of the Hindus. Their theories and methods regarding aerial and cosmic phenomena are very lengthy and very subtle at the same time. As we have limited ourselves to mentioning, in their astrology of nativities, only the theory of the determination of the length of life, we shall in this department of science limit ourselves to the species of the comets, according to the statements of those among them who are supposed to know the subject thoroughly. The analogy of the comets shall afterwards be extended to other more remote subjects.

The head of the Dragon is called *râhu*, the tail *ketu*. The Hindus seldom speak of the tail, they only use the head. In general, all comets which appear on heaven are also called *ketu*.

Quotations from the *Saṁhitâ* of Varâhamihira.

Várâhamihira says (chap. iii. 7–12):—

"The Head has thirty-three sons who are called *tâmasakîlaka*. They are the different kinds of the comets, there being no difference whether the head extends away from them or not. Their prognostics correspond to their shapes, colours, sizes, and positions. V. 8.—The worst are those which have the shape of a crow or the shape of a beheaded man, those which have the shape of a sword, dagger, bow and arrow. V. 9, 10.—They are always in the neighbourhood of sun and moon, exciting the waters so that they become thick, and exciting the air that it becomes glowing red. They bring the air into such an uproar that the tornadoes tear out the largest trees, that flying pebbles beat against the calves and knees of the people. They change the nature of the time, so that the seasons seem to have changed their places. When unlucky and calamitous events become numerous, such as earthquakes, landslips, burning heat, red glow of heaven, uninterrupted howling of the wild beasts and screaming of the birds, then know that all this comes from the children of the Head. V. 11.—And if these occurrences take place together with an eclipse or the effulgence of a comet, then recognise in this what thou hast predicted, and do not try to gain prognostics from other beings but the Sons of the Head. V. 12.—In the place of the calamity, point towards their (the comets) region, to all eight sides with relation to the body of the sun."

Varâhamihira says in the *Saṁhitâ* (chap. xi. 1–7):—

"I have spoken of the comets not before having exhausted what is in the books of Garga, Parâśara, Asita and Devala, and in the other books, however numerous they may be.

"It is impossible to comprehend their computation if the reader does not previously acquire the knowledge of their appearing and disappearing, because they are not of one kind, but of many kinds.

"Some are high and distant from the earth, appearing between the stars of the lunar stations. They are called *divya*.

"Others have a middle distance from the earth, appearing between heaven and earth. They are called *ântarikshya*.

"Others are near to the earth, falling down upon the earth, on the mountains, houses and trees.

"Sometimes you see a light falling down to the earth, which people think to be a fire. If it is not fire, it is *keturûpa, i.e.* having the shape of a comet.

"Those animals which, when flying in the air, look like sparks or like fires which remain in the houses of the *piśâcas*, the devils, and of the demons, efflorescent substances and others do not belong to the genus of the comets.

"Therefore, ere you can tell the prognostics of the comets, you must know their nature, for the prognostics Page 313. are in agreement with it. That category of lights which is in the air, falling on the banners, weapons, houses, trees, on horses and elephants, and that category coming from a Lord which is observed among the stars of the lunar stations—if a phenomenon does not belong to either of these two categories nor to the above-mentioned phantoms, it is a telluric *ketu*.

V. 5.—"Scholars differ among each other regarding the number of the comets. According to some there are 101, according to others 1000. According to Nârada, the sage, they are only one, which appears in a multitude of different forms, always divesting itself of one form and arraying itself in another.

V. 7.—"Their influence lasts for as many months as their appearance lasts days. If the appearance of a comet lasts longer than one and a half month, subtract from it forty-five days. The remainder represents the months of its influence. If the appearance lasts longer than two months, in that case state the years of its influence to be equal to the number of the months of its appearance. The number of comets does not exceed the number 1000."

We give the contents of the following table in order to facilitate the study of the subject, although we have not been able to fill out all the single fields of the diagram, because the manuscript tradition of the single paragraphs of the book either in the original or in the copy which we have at our disposal is corrupt. The author intends by his explanations to confirm the theory of the ancient scholars regarding the two numbers of comets which he mentions on their authority, and he endeavours to complete the number 1000.

Page 314.

Their names.	Their descent.	How many stars each comet has.	Sum total.	Their qualities.	From what direction they appear.	Their prognostics.
...	The children of Kiraṇa.	25	25	Similar to pearls in rivulets of crystal or gold-coloured.	Only in east and west.	It bodes the fighting of the kings with each other.
...	The children of the Fire (?)	25	50	Green, or of the colour of fire or of lac, or of blood, or of the blossom of the tree.	S.E.	It bodes pestilence.
...	The children of Death.	25	75	With crooked tails, their colour inclining to black and dark.	S.	It bodes hunger and pestilence.
...	The children of the Earth.	22	97	Round, radiant, of the colour of water or sesame oil, without tails.	N.E.	It bodes fertility and wealth.
...	The children of the Moon.	3	100	Like roses, or white lotus, or silver, or polished iron or gold. It shines like the moon.	N.	It bodes evil. in consequence of which the world will be turned topsy-turvy.
Brahmadaṇḍa.	Son of Brahman.	1	101	Having three colours and three tails.	In all directions.	It bodes wickedness and destruction.
...	The children of Venus.	84	185	White, large, brilliant.	N. and N.E.	It bodes evil and fear.
Kanaka.	The children of Saturn.	...	...	Radiant, as if they were horns.	In all directions.	It bodes misfortune and death.
Vikaca.	The children of Jupiter.	65	...	Brilliant, white, without any tails.	S.	It bodes destruction and misfortune.

Their names.	Their descent.	How many stars each comet has.	Sum total.	Their qualities.	From what direction they appear.	Their prognostics.
Taskara, *i.e.* the thief.	The children of Mercury.	51	...	White, thin, long. The eye is dazzled by them.	In all directions.	It bodes misfortune.
Kauṅkuma.	The children of Mars.	60	...	It has three tails, and the colour of the flame.	N.	It bodes the extremity of evil.
Tâmasa-kîlaka.	The children of the Head.	36	...	Of different shapes.	About the sun and moon.	It bodes fire.
Viśvarûpa.	The children of the Fire.	120	...	Of a blazing light like the flame.	...	It bodes evil.
Aruṅa.	The children of the Wind.	77	... ...	They have no body, that you could see a star in them. Only their rays are united, so that these appear as rivulets. Their colour is reddish or greenish.	...	It bodes general destruction.
Gaṇaka.	The children of Prajâpati.	204	...	Square comets, eight in appearance, and 304 in number.	...	It bodes much evil and destruction.
Kaṅka.	The children of the Water.	32	...	Its (?) are united, and it is shining like the moon.	...	It bodes much fear and evil in Puṇḍra.
Kabandha.	The children of the Time.	...	...	Like the cut-off head of a man.	. .	It bodes much destruction.
...	...	9	...	One in appearance, nine in number. White, large.	In all directions.	It bodes pestilence.

Page 315.

Further quotations from the *Saṁhitâ* of Varâhamihira.

The author (Varâhamihira) had divided the comets into three classes: the *high* ones near the stars; the *flowing* ones near the earth; the *middle* ones in the air, and he mentions each one of the *high* and *middle* classes of them in our table separately.

He further says (chap. xi. 42) :—

"If the light of the middle class of comets shines on the instruments of the kings, the banners, parasols, fans, and fly-flaps, this bodes destruction to the rulers. If it shines on a house, or tree, or mountain, this bodes destruction to the empire. If it shines on the furniture of the house, its inhabitants will perish. If it shines on the sweepings of the house, its owner will perish."

Further Varâhamihira says (chap. xi. 6) :—

"If a shooting-star falls down opposite to the tail of a comet, health and wellbeing cease, the rains lose their beneficial effects, and likewise the trees which are holy to Mahâdeva—there is no use in enumerating them, since their names and their essences are unknown among us Muslims—and the conditions in the realm of Cola, Sita, the Huns and Chinese are troubled."

Further he says (chap. xi. 62) :—

"Examine the direction of the tail of the comet, it being indifferent whether the tail hangs down or stands erect or is inclined, and examine the lunar station, the edge of which is touched by it. In that case predict destruction to the place and that its inhabitants will be attacked by armies which will devour them as the peacock devours the snakes.

"From these comets you must except those which bode something good.

"As regards the other comets, you must investigate in what lunar stations they appear, or in what station their tails lie or to what station their tails reach. In that case you must predict destruction to the princes of those countries which are indicated by the lunar stations in question, and other events which are indicated by those stations."

The Jews hold the same opinion regarding the comets as we hold regarding the stone of the Ka'ba (viz. that they all are stones which have fallen down from heaven). According to the same book of Varâhamihira, comets are such beings as have been on account of their merits raised to heaven, whose period of dwelling in heaven has elapsed and who are then redescending to the earth.

The following two tables embody the Hindu theories of the comets:—

Page 316.

TABLE OF COMETS OF THE GREATEST HEIGHT IN THE ÆTHER.

1	Vasâ.	West.	It is flashing and thick, and extends itself from the north.	It bodes death and excessive wealth and fertility.
2	Ashti	West.	Less bright than the first.	It bodes hunger and pestilence.
3	Śastra.	West.	Similar to the first.	It bodes the fighting of the kings with each other.
4	Kapâlaketu.	East.	Its tail extends till nearly the midst of heaven. It has a smoke-colour and appears on the day of new-moon.	It bodes the abundance of rain, much hunger, illness and death.
5	Ṛaudra.	From the east in Pûrvâshâḍhâ, Pûrvabhâdrapadâ, and Revati.	With a sharp edge, surrounded by rays. Bronze-coloured. It occupies one-third of heaven.	It bodes the fighting of the kings with each other.
6	Calaketu.	West.	During the first time of its appearance it has a tail as long as a finger towards the south. Then it turns towards the north, till it becomes as long as to the south, the Great Bear and the Pole, then the Falling Eagle. Rising higher and higher it passes round to the south and disappears there.	It ruins the country from the tree Prayâga till Ujjayinî. It ruins the Middle Country, whilst the other regions fare differently. In some places there is pestilence, in others drought, in others war. It is visible between 10–12 months.

TABLE OF COMETS OF THE GREATEST HEIGHT IN THE ÆTHER—*Continued.*

7	Śvetaketu.	South.	It appears at the beginning of night and is visible during seven days. Its tail extends over one-third of heaven. It is green and passes from the right side to the left.	When these two comets shine and lighten, they bode health and wealth. If the time of their appearance exceeds seven days, two-thirds of the affairs of men and of their lives are ruined. The sword is drawn, revolutions prevail, and there will be misfortune during ten years.
8	Ka.	West.	It appears in the first half of night, its flame is like scattered peas, and remains visible during seven days.	
9	Raśmiketu (?)	The Pleiades.	It has the colour of smoke.	It ruins all human affairs and creates numerous revolutions.
10	Dhruvaketu (?)	Appears between heaven and earth wherever it likes.	It has a big body, it has many sides (?) and colours, and is bright flashing.	It bodes health and peace.

Page 317.

TABLE OF COMETS OF MIDDLE HEIGHT IN THE SKY.

Their number.	Their names.	From what direction they appear.	Description.	Their prognostics.
1	**Kumuda.**	**West.**	Namesake of the lotus, which is compared with it. It remains one night, and its tail is directed towards the south.	It bodes lasting fertility and wealth for ten years.
2	**Maṇiketu.**	**West.**	It lasts only one quarter of a night. Its tail is straight, white, similar to the milk which spurts out of the breast when it is milked.	It bodes a great number of wild animals and perpetual fertility during four and a half months.
3	**Jalaketu.**	**West.**	Flashing. Its tail has a curve from the west side.	It bodes fertility and well-being of the subjects during nine months.
4	**Bhavaketu.**	**East.**	It has a tail like that of a lion towards the south.	It is visible only one night. It bodes perpetual fertility and well-being during as many *months* as its appearance last *muhūrtas*. If its colour becomes less bright, it bodes pestilence and death.

TABLE OF COMETS OF MIDDLE HEIGHT IN THE SKY—*Continued.*

Their number.	Their names.	From what direction they appear.	Description.	Their prognostics.
5	**Padmaketu.**	South.	It is as white as the white lotus. It lasts one night.	It bodes fertility, joy, and happiness for seven years.
6	**Âvarta.**	West.	It appears at midnight, bright shining and light gray. Its tail extends from the left to the right.	It bodes wealth during as many months as its appearance lasts *muhûrtas.*
7	**Samvarta.**	West.	With a tail with a sharp edge. It has the colour of smoke or bronze. It extends over one-third of heaven, and appears during the *saṁdhi.*	The lunar station in which it appears becomes unlucky. It ruins as well that which it bodes, as the lunar station. It bodes the unsheathing of the weapons and the destruction of the kings. Its influence lasts as many years as its appearance lasts *muhûrtas.*

This is the doctrine of the Hindus regarding the comets and their presages. Page 318.

On meteorology.

Only few Hindus occupy themselves in the same way as physical scholars among the ancient Greeks did, with exact scientific researches on the comets and on the nature of the other phenomena of heaven (τὰ μετέωρα), for also in these things they are not able to rid themselves of the doctrines of their theologians. Thus the Matsya-Purâṇa says:—

"There are four rains and four mountains, and their basis is the water. The earth is placed on four elephants, standing in the four cardinal directions, which raise the water by their trunks to make the seeds grow. They sprinkle water in summer and snow in winter. The fog is the servant of the rain, raising itself up to it, and adorning the clouds with the black colour."

With regard to these four elephants the *Book of the Medicine of Elephants* says:—

"Some male elephants excel man in cunning. Therefore it is considered a bad omen if they stand at the head of a herd of them. They are called *manguniha* (?). Some of them develop only one tooth, others three and four; those which belong to the race of the elephants bearing the earth. Men do not oppose them; and if they fall into a trap, they are left to their fate."

The Vâyu-Purâṇa says:—

"The wind and the sun's ray raise the water from the ocean to the sun. If the water were to drop down from the sun, rain would be hot. Therefore the sun hands the water over to the moon, that it should drop down from it as cold water and refresh the world."

As regards the phenomena of the sky, they say, for instance, that the thunder is the roaring of *Airâvata*, *i.e.*, the riding-elephant of Indra the ruler, when it drinks from the pond Mânasa, rutting and roaring with a hoarse voice.

The rainbow (lit. bow of Ḳuzaḥ) is the bow of Indra, as our common people consider it as the bow of Rustam.

Conclusion.

We think now that what we have related in this book will be sufficient for any one who wants to converse with the Hindus, and to discuss with them questions of religion, science, or literature, on the very basis of their own civilisation. Therefore we shall finish this treatise, which has already, both by its length and breadth, wearied the reader. We ask God to pardon us for every statement of ours which is not true. We ask Him to help us that we may adhere to that which yields Him satisfaction. We ask Him to lead us to a proper insight into the nature of that which is false and idle, that we may sift it so as to distinguish the chaff from the wheat. All good comes from Him, and it is He who is clement towards His slaves. Praise be to God, the Lord of the worlds, and His blessings be upon the prophet Muḥammad and his whole family!

ANNOTATIONS.

VOL. I.

ANNOTATIONS.

VOL. I.

P. 1. *Title.*—The author proposes to investigate the *reality* (=*ḥakîḳa*) of Hindu modes of thought in the entire extent of the subject. He describes the religious, literary, and scientific traditions of India, not the country and its inhabitants. However, in some chapters he gives more than the title promises; *cf.* his notes on the roads and on the courses of the rivers.

The contents of the eighty chapters of the book may be arranged under the following heads:—

Chap. 1. General Introduction.

Chap. 2–11. On Religious, Philosophical, and cognate subjects.

Chap. 12–17. On Literature and Metrology, Strange Customs and Superstitions.

Chap. 18–31. On Geography, Descriptive, Mathematical, and Traditional, *i.e.* Pauranic.

Chap. 32–62. On Chronology and Astronomy, interspersed with chapters of Religious Tradition, *e.g.* on Nârâyaṇa, Vâsudeva, &c.

Chap. 63–76. On Laws, Manners and Customs, Festivals and Fast Days.

Chap. 77--80. On Astrological Subjects.

The word *maḳûla*, translated by *category*, is a technical term of Arabian philosophy. It was coined by the first Arabian translators of Aristotle for the purpose of rendering κατηγορία, and has since become current in the school language of Islam (*cf.* the Arabic title of *Aristotelis Categoriæ Græce cum versione Arabica*, &c., edid. J. Th. Zenker, Lipsiæ, 1846). The Syrian predecessors of those Arabian translators had simply transferred the Greek word just as it is into their own language; *cf. e.g.* Jacob of Edessa in G. Hoffmann's *De Hermeneutici sapud Syros Aristotelis*, Lipsiæ, 1869, p. 17.

That a Muslim author should investigate the ideas of idolaters, and not only such as Muslims may adopt, but also such as they must reject and condemn, that he quotes the Koran and the Gospel side by side (p. 4–5), is a proof of a broadness of view and liberality of mind more frequently met with in the ancient times of Islam, in the centuries before the establishment of Muhammadan orthodoxy by Alghazzâlî (died A.D. 1111), than later. There was more field for utterances of mental individuality before the ideas of all the nations of Islam were moulded into a unity which makes it difficult to recognise the individual influences of every single nation on the general development of the Muhammadan mind, before all Islam had become one huge religious community, in which local and national differences seem to have lost most of their original importance for the spiritual life of man. The work of Alberuni is unique in Muslim literature, as an earnest attempt to study an idolatrous world of thought, not proceeding from the intention of attacking and refuting it, but uniformly showing the desire to be just and impartial, even when the opponent's views are declared to be inadmissible. There can be hardly a doubt that under other circumstances, in other periods of Muslim history and other countries, the present work might have proved fatal to its author; and it shows that the religious policy of King Maḥmûd, the great destroyer of Hindu temples and idols, under whom Alberuni wrote, must have been so liberal as to be rarely met with in the annals of Islam (*cf.* pp. 268, 269).

P. 5. *The master 'Abû-Sahl, &c.*—Al-tiflîsî, *i.e.* a native of Tiflis in the Caucasus, is not known from other sources. I suppose he was one of the high civil functionaries of the realm or court of Maḥmûd. The name *Sahl* occurs very frequently among men of Persian descent of those times, and the title *Ustâdh* = master, is in the Ta'rîkh-i-Baihaḳî always prefixed, if not precisely as an official title, at all events as a title expressive of profound respect on the part of the speaker, to the names of the ministers and highest civil officials of Maḥmûd and Mas'ûd, such as Bû Sahl Zauzanî, Bû Sahl Ḥamdûni, Bû Naṣr Mushkân, the minister of state, whose secretary Al-baihaḳî was, as well as to the name of Alberuni (٨٣٦, 16), but never to the names of the great military men (*cf.* on titles in the Ghaznawî empire, A. de Biberstein Kazimirski, *Menoutchehrî*, Paris, 1887, p. 308). Administrative skill was a legacy left by the organisation of the Sasanian empire to the Persians of later centuries, whilst military qualities seem entirely to have disappeared among the descendants of Rustam. For all the generals and officers of Maḥmûd and Mas'ûd were Turks, as Altuntash, Arslan Jâdhib, Ariyarok, Bagtagîn, Bilkâtagîn, Niyâltagìn, Noshtagin, &c. The Ghazna princes spoke Persian with their civil functionaries, Turkish with their generals and soldiers (*cf.* Elliot, History of India, ii. 81, 102).

P. 5. *The Mu'tazila sect.*—The dogma, *God has no knowledge*, is part of their doctrine on the qualities of God, maintained especially by Ma'mar Ibn 'Abbâd Al-Sulamî. (*Cf.* on this and related subjects the treatise of H. Steiner, *Die Mutaziliten oder die Freidenker im Islam*, Leipzig, 1865, pp. 50, 52, 59, and Al-Shahrastânî's "Book of Religious and Philosophical Sects," edited by Cureton, London, 1846, p. 30, ll. 7–9). Proceeding from the study of Greek philosophy, the doctors of this school tried to save the free will of man as against predestination. There was once in Arabic a large literature composed by them and by their opponents, most of which is unknown, at all events not yet brought to light. Most of these books were of a polemical nature, and it is against their polemical bias that the criticism of Alberuni is directed. With regard to his own work, he expressly declares (p. 7) that it is not a polemical one. The book which Abû-Sahl had before him, and which gave rise to the discussion between him and our author, was probably one like that of Abulḥasan Al-'ash'arî (died A.D. 935), the great predecessor of Alghazzâlî, "On the Qualities of God," in which he attacks the Mu'tazila doctrine of the negation of God's omniscience. (*Cf.* W. Spitta, *Zur Geschichte Abulḥasan Al-'Ash'arî's*, Leipzig, 1876, p. 64.) The same author has also written an extensive work against the antagonists of the orthodox faith, against Brahmins, Christians, Jews, and Magians (v. ib. p. 68).

Our information regarding the ancient literature on the history of religion and philosophy (the latter proceeding from a work of the Neoplatonist Porphyrius) is very scanty, and mostly limited to titles of books. The work of Shahrastânî (died A.D. 1153) is a late compendium or مختصر (v. his pref., 1, 8). His editor, Cureton, intended to give "Observations respecting the sources from which this author has probably derived his information" (English pref., p. iv.), but, as far as I am aware, he has not carried out his intention. There is an excellent treatise on the history of religions in the *Fihrist* of Al-nadîm (composed about A.D. 987) on p. ٣١٨—٣٥١. The same author mentions (p. ١٧٧) an older work on doctrines and religions by Alḥasan Ibn Mûsâ Alnaubakhtî (mentioned by Mas'ûdî), who also wrote against metempsychosis. Parts of a similar work of Ibn Ḥazm, an Arab of Spain (died A.D. 1064), are extant in the libraries of Vienna and Leyden. Mr. C. Schefer has recently published in his *Chrestomathie Persane*, Paris, 1883, a useful little book in Persian called كتاب بيان الاديان, composed by Abul-Ma'âli Muhammad Ibn 'Uḳail, who wrote in Ghazna, under the king Mas'ûd Ibn Ibrâhîm (A.D. 1089–1099), half a century after Alberuni, whose *Indica* he quotes in his book. He calls it آراء الهند, *i.e.* "The Doctrines of the Hindus" (p. ١٣٨). Two more treatises in Persian on the history of religions are mentioned by C. Schefer, *Chrestomathie Persane*, pp. 136, 137.

An author who seems to have written on subjects connected with the history of religions is one Abû-Ya'ḳûb of Sijistân, as Alberuni (i. 64–65) quotes his theory on the metempsychosis from a book of his, called *Kitâb-kashf-almaḥjûb*.

Pp. 6–7. *Alêrânshahrî and Zurḳân.*—Our author has not made any use of the Muhammadan literature on the belief of the Hindus, as far as such existed before his time; evidently he did not give it the credit of a *bonâ fide* source of historical information. Throughout his book he derives his statements exclusively either from Indian books or from what he had heard himself. He makes an exception of this rule only in favour of Alêrânshahrî, the author of a general work on the history of religions. Alberuni seems to have known this book already (A.D. 1000) when he wrote his "Chronology," for there he gives two quotations, one an Eranian, and the other an Armenian tradition, on the authority of Alêrânshahrî (v. "Chronology of Ancient Nations," &c., translated by Dr. C. Edward Sachau, London, 1879, pp. 208, 211).

The word Êrânshahr was known to the Arabs as the name of the whole Sasanian empire, from the Oxus to the Euphrates. So it is used, *e.g.* by Abû-'Alî 'Aḥmad Ibn 'Umar Ibn Dusta in his geographical work (British Museum, add. 23,378 on fol. 120*b*), where he describes the whole extent of it. If, however, Êrânshahr here means the place where the author Abul'abbâs was born, we must take the word in the more restricted meaning, which is mentioned by Albalâdhurî. For it is also the name of a part of the Sasanian empire, viz. one of the four provinces of Khurâsân, the country between Nîshâpur, Tûs, and Herât. Accordingly, we suppose that Alêrânshahrî means a native of this particular province. *Cf.* Almuḳaddasî, p. ٣١٣, Yâḳût, i. ٤١٨. According to another tradition, the name Êrânshahr also applied to Nîshâpur, *i.e.* the name of the province was used to denote its capital. *Cf.* Almuḳaddasî, p. ٢٩٩.

Alêrânshahrî, a sort of freethinker according to Alberuni, is only once quoted (i. 326, a Buddhistic tradition on the destruction and renovation of the world). But as Alberuni praises his description of Judaism, Christianity, and Manichæism, we may suppose that the information of the *Indica* on these subjects, *e.g.* the quotation from the Gospel (p. 4-5), was taken from Êrânshahrî.

Incorporated in the work of Êrânshahrî was a treatise on Buddhism by an author, Zurḳân, who is entirely unknown. Although Alberuni speaks very slightingly of this author, and although he does not mention him anywhere save in the preface, he seems to have borrowed from him those notes on Buddhistic subjects which are scattered through his work (v. *Index Rerum*, s.v. Buddhists). This sort of information is not of a very high standard, but other sources on Buddhism, literary or oral, do not seem to have been at the command of Alberuni. The Hindus with whom *he* mixed were of the Brahminical creed, not Buddhists. In the countries where he had lived, in Khwârizm, Jurjân, the country round Ghazna (Zâbulistân), and the Panjâb, there had been no opportunity for studying Buddhism; and also among the numerous soldiers, officers, artisans, and other Indians in the service of Maḥmûd in Ghazna and other places, there do not seem to have been Buddhists, or else Alberuni would have used such occasions for filling out this blank in his knowledge.

In the *Fihrist* (ed. G. Flügel, Leipzig, 1871), on p. ٣٤٩–٣٥١ there is an extensive report on India and China, which is derived from the following sources:—

1. The account of Abû-Dulaf of Yanbû', who had travelled to India and China about A.D. 941.

2. That of a Christian monk from Najrân, who by order of the Nestorian Katholikos had also travelled to India and China in the years A.D. 980–987.

3. From a book dated A.D. 863, of an unknown author, a book which had passed through the hands of the famous Alkindî. Was this perhaps the work of Alêrânshahrî, and the note on Buddha on p. ٣٤٧ by Zurḳân?

The origin of the chapter on Indian subjects in Shahrastânî (ed. Cureton, London, 1846), on p. ٤٤٤ *seq.* is not known. At all events, this author has not made use of Alberuni's work.

Pp. 7–8. *Greeks, Sûfîs, Christians.*—In order to illustrate the ideas of the Hindus, and to bring them nearer to the understanding of his Muslim readers, Alberuni quotes related ideas—

1. Of the Greeks (*cf.* i. 24).
2. The Christians.
3. The Jews.
4. The Manichæans; and
5. The *Ṣûfîs.*

Pantheism in Islam, the doctrine of the Ṣûfîs, is as near akin to the Neoplatonic and Neopythagorean schools of Greek philosophy as to the Vedânta school of Hindu philosophers. It was in our author's time already represented by a very large literature. He quotes some Ṣûfî sentences, *e.g.* of Abû Bakr Al-shiblî, and Abû Yazîd Albisṭâmî, who are known from other sources (i. 87, 88), and a Ṣûfî interpretation of a Koranic passage (i. 88). *Cf.* besides, the *Index Rerum*, s.v. Ṣûfism. He gives i. 33, 34, several etymologies of the word Ṣûfî, which he himself identifies with Σοφία.

The notes relating to Mânî and the **Manichæans** (v. *Index Rerum*), and the quotations from their books, are probably mostly taken from Alêrânshahrî (v. p. 18). However, it must be kept in mind that, at the time of our author, the works of Mânî still existed, and he himself found the "Book of Mysteries" and others in his native country, though perhaps at a time subsequent to the date of the composition of the *Indica*. *Cf. Chronologie Orientalischer Völker*, herausgegeben von Ed. Sachau, Leipzig, 1878, Vorwort, pp. xi. and xxxvi. The following works of Mânî are quoted: "Book of Mysteries," كتاب الاسرار; *Thesaurus vivificationis* كنز الاحياء, i. 39. *Cf. Mani, seine Lehre und seine Schriften*, by G. Flügel, Leipzig, 1862.

As regards the Jews, I am not informed to what degree Jewish colonies were in those times spread over Central Asia. Alberuni derived probably his knowledge of Judaism also from Alêrânshahrî (p. 253). That in earlier years, during his stay in Jurjân, he was acquainted with a Jewish scholar is apparent from his chronological work ("Chronology of Ancient Nations," p. 269).

Alberuni's knowledge of Christianity may have been communicated by various channels besides the book of his predecessor Alêrânshahrî, as during his time it was far spread in Central Asia, and even at the court of Maḥmûd in Ghazna (*e.g. Abulkhair Alkhammâr*, p. 256), there lived Christians. It has not yet been investigated in detail how far Nestorian Christianity had been carried eastward across Central Asia towards and into China. *Cf.* Assemani's *Notitia Ecclesiarum Metropolitanarum et Episcopalium quæ sunt Patriarchæ Nestoriano Subjectæ* (*Bibliotheca Orientalis*, vol. iv. p. DCCV. *seq.*). Barhebræus speaks of Uigûri monks ܕܝܪ̈ܝܐ ܐܝܓܘܪ̈ܝܐ (ib. ii. 256), and from the same time date some of the Syriac inscriptions on Christian tombstones recently found in Russian Central Asia and published in Petersburg, 1886. Alberuni mentions Christians in his native country Khwârizm (Khiva), and in Khurâsân, and not only Nestorians, but also Melkites, whilst he expressly states that he does not know the Jacobites. *Cf.* "Chronology of Ancient Nations," pp. 283, 4; 292, 12; 295, 22; 312, 16.

Where Alberuni learned Greek philosophy, and who introduced him to the study of Plato's Dialogues and *Leges*, he does not state himself. The Arabic translations which he used, and which are tolerably correct, had passed through Syriac versions which are now no longer extant (*e.g.* those of Plato). Alberuni was personally acquainted and had literary connections with a man who was one of the first representatives of Greek learning in the Muslim world in that age, Abulkhair Alkhammâr, and it was perhaps to him that Alberuni owed part of his classical education. Abulkhair was born a Christian in Bagdad, A.H. 942. He lived some time in Khwârizm, and migrated thence, together with Alberuni and others, to Ghazna, A.D. 1017, after Maḥmûd had annexed that country to his empire. He died in Ghazna during Maḥmûd's reign, *i.e.* before A.D. 1030, and is said to have become a Muslim towards the end of his life. He was a famous physician, and wrote on medical subjects and on Greek philosophy; besides he translated the works of Greek philosophers (*e.g.* Theophrast) from Syriac into Arabic. Of his writings we may mention a "Book of Comparison of the Theory of the (Greek) Philosophers and of the Christians," "Explanation of the Theory of the Ancients (*i.e.* Greek philosophers) regarding the Creator and regarding Laws," "The Life of the Philosopher," "On the ὕλη," "On Meteorology," &c. His pedigree points to a Persian descent. *Cf.* *Chronologie Orientalischer Völker*, Einleitung, p. xxxii., *Fihrist*, p. ٢٦٥, and the work of Shahrazûrî نزهة الارواح وروضة الافراح (manuscript of the Royal Library of Berlin, MSS. Orient. oct. 217, fol. 144*b*–146*a*); C. Schefer, *Chrestomathie Persane*, p. 141.

It must be observed that Alberuni, in comparing Hindu doctrines with those of Plato, follows in the wake of Megasthenes, who says: Παραπλέκουσι δὲ καὶ μύθους, ὥσπερ καὶ Πλάτων. περί τε ἀφθαρσίας ψυχῆς καὶ τῶν καθ' ᾅδου κρίσεων καὶ ἄλλα τοιαῦτα (Schwanbeck, Bonn, 1846, p. 138).

P. 8. *Sâṅkhya* (*or* *Sâṁkhyâ*) and *Pâtañjala.*—The former word is here written *sângu* سانْگُ. It may be doubtful whether the second is to be read *Pâtañjala* or *Patañjali*. Alberuni generally says كتاب باتنجل, which may be translated *the book of* (the author) *Patañjali*, or *the book* (which is called) *Patañjali* or *Pâtañjala*. Only in one place, i. 68 (٣٤, 5), he says صاحب كتاب باتنجل, *the author of the book of Patañjali*, where apparently باتنجل means the title of the book, not the name of the author. The long *a* in the Arabic writing would rather indicate the pronunciation *Pâtañjala* than *Patañjali*, but in this respect the transliteration is not always uniform, as sometimes a short Indian *a* has been rendered by a long *â* in Arabic, *e.g.* تال *tala*, برهمن *brahman*, گاندهرب *gandharva*, ماتلوك *madhyaloka*, سوتال *sutala*, بجيانند *vijayanandin*, پار *para*, باسو *vasu*, ماهوره *mathurâ*, مهاتال *mahâtala*. Only in two places the word باتنجل evidently means the author, i. 70 (٣٤, 20), and 87 (٤٣, 3). The name of the author seems to have been current also as meaning his book. Therefore, and because in Sanskrit generally the name *Patañjali* is quoted, I have given the preference to the latter form of the name.

Alberuni has transferred large portions of his translations of the books *Sâṁkhya* and *Patañjali*, which he had published at an earlier date, into the *Indica*.

Pp. 17–19.—In a similar way to Alberuni, the poet Mîr Khusrau discourses on classical and vernacular in his *Nuh-sipihr*. He mentions the word *Sanskrit*, whilst Alberuni only speaks of *Hindî* (v. Elliot, "History of India," iii. 562, 556; also v. 570, "On the Knowledge of Sanskrit by Muhammadans").

There were Hindu dragomans in the service of Mahmûd, both in the civil administration and in the army, large portions of which were Hindus under Hindu officers (Elliot, ii. 109; some fought in Karmân, Khwârizm, and before Merw for their Muslim master, ib. ii. 130, 131). Part of these troops were *Kannara*, *i.e.* natives of Karnâtadeśa (here i. 173).

A specimen of these interpreters is Tilak, the son of Jai Sen (*i.e.* Tilaka the son of Jayasena). After having pursued his studies in Kashmîr, he became interpreter first to Ḳâḍî Shîrâzî Bulḥasan ʿAlî, a high civil official under Maḥmûd and Masʿûd (Elliot, ii. 117, 123), then to Aḥmad Ibn Ḥasan of Maimand, who was grand vizîr, A.D. 1007–1025, under Maḥmûd, and a second time, 1030–1033, under Masʿûd, and rose afterwards to be a commanding officer in the army (Elliot, ii. 125–127). This class of men spoke and wrote Hindî (of course with Arabic characters) and Persian (perhaps also Turkish, as this language prevailed in the army), and it is probably in these circles that we must look for the origin of Urdû or Hindustânî. The first author who wrote in this language, the Dante of Muhammadan India, is one Masʿûd, who died a little more than a century after the death of King Maḥmûd (A.H. 525 = A.D. 1131). *Cf.* A. Sprenger, "Catalogue of the Arabic, Persian, and Hindustany Manuscripts of the Libraries of the King of Oudh," Calcutta, 1854, pp. 407, 485. If we had any of the Hindî writings of those times, they would probably exhibit the same kind of Indian speech as that which is found in Alberuni's book.

P. 18.—The bearing of the words وتقييدها باعراب الخ (9, 14, 15), which I have translated "and must pronounce the case-endings either," &c., is doubtful. The word *'iʿrâb* means *the process or mode of Arabizing* a foreign word, and refers both to consonants and vowels. An *'iʿrâb mashhûr* would be *a generally known Arabic mode of pronunciation of a word of Indian origin*, an *'iʿrâb maʿmûl* such a pronunciation of an Indian word in Arabic as is not yet known, but invented for the purpose. *E.g.* the Sanskrit word *dvîpa* appears in two different forms, as *dîb*, ديب, which must be classed under the first head, and as *dbîp*, دبيپ, which belongs to the second class. If it is this the author means, we must observe that the former class, *i.e.* the class of words which had already general currency in Arabic before he wrote his *Indica*, is insignificantly small in comparison with the large number of words which by Alberuni were for the first time presented to a reader of Arabic (v. preface of the edition of the Arabic original, p. xxvii.).

Another meaning of the word *'iʿrâb* is the *vowel-pronunciation at the end of the words*, chiefly the nouns; in fact the case-endings. Accordingly, *'i'râb mashhûr* may mean *case-ending* (in German, *vocalischer Auslaut*) *as it is generally used* in Hindî, *e.g.* گيتا *gîtâ*, ريوتى *revatî*, and *'i'râb ma'mûl, a case-ending added to a word purposely* in order to make it amenable to the rules of Arabic declension (diptoton and triptoton), *e.g.* لنكُ *lanku* = Skr. *lankhâ*, گرر *gauru* = Skr. *Gaurî*, بندُ *bindu* = Skr. *Vindhya*. The vocalisation of these words is liable to lead us into an error. Is بندُ an Arabic diptoton, or is its final vocal the termination of the noun in Hindî? If the former were the case, we ought also to have بندَ in genitive and accusative, and we ought to read برنْ *a caste* (*varṇa*), املیچْ *an impure one* (*mlechha*), مانْ *a measure* (*mâna*), &c. But these forms do not occur in the manuscript, and therefore I hold the termination *u* to be the Indian nominative, developed out of the *ô* of Prakrit, and still extant in Sindhî. (*Cf.* E. Trumpp, *Die Stammbildung des Sindhî*, "Journal of the German Oriental Society," xvi. p. 129; his "Grammar of the Sindhî Language," p. 32). The Arabic manuscript is not sufficiently accurate to enable us to form an opinion to what extent names in Alberuni's Hindî terminated in *u*, but we must certainly say that this is the case in the vast majority of nouns. If we are correct in this, the term *'i'râb ma'mûl* cannot mean *an artificial case-ending or one invented or added for the purpose*, because it existed already in the Indian dialect whence Alberuni took the word.

Of the words الاحتيال لضبطها بتغيير النقط والعلامات وتقييدها باعراب امّا مشهور وامّا معمول, the former half refers to the writing of the consonants (and perhaps of the *Lesezeichen*). Accordingly the latter half ought to refer to the vowels; but *'i'râb* does not mean *vowels* or *vocalisation*; it only means the vocalisation of the final consonant of the word. Therefore I am inclined to prefer the first of the two interpretations here proposed, and to translate *for in order to fix the pronunciation we must change the points* (*i.e.* the diacritical points of the consonants, ژ، ز ڨ ق ف ڭ ك, &c.) *and the signs* (perhaps he means the Hamza, which cannot be applied to Indian sounds), *and must secure its correct pronunciation by such a process of Arabizing as is either already in general use or is carried out* (or invented) *for the purpose.* This is an example (and there are hundreds more) of the concise style of the author, so sorely fraught with ambiguity. Every single word is perfectly clear and certain, and still the sentence may be understood in entirely different ways.

P. 19. 3. *Which in our Persian grammatical system are considered as, &c.*—Literally, "Which *our companions* call having," &c. Speaking of his fellow-Muslims in opposition to the Hindus, the author always says *our companions, our people*, not meaning national differences, Arab, Persian, or Turk, but exclusively the difference of creed.

In Sanskrit a word (a syllable) may commence with one, two, or three consonants, *e.g. dvi, jyâ, strî, kshveda*, which is impossible in Arabic, where each syllable begins and ends with *one* consonant only. Alberuni's comparison cannot, therefore, refer to Arabic.

In Persian, the rules for the beginning and end of the syllable are different. Whilst in the ancient forms of Eranian speech a syllable could commence with two consonants, as, *e.g. fratama, khsapa*, Neo-Persian permits only one consonant at the beginning of a syllable, *fardum, shab.* However, the end of a syllable may consist of two consecutive consonants, as in *yâft* يافت, *baksh* بخش, *khushk* خشك, *mara* مرد, &c. Alberuni seems to hint at these examples, and at a doctrine of certain grammarians, who are not known, to this effect, that the first of these two consonants is to be considered as having not a complete or clear vowel, but an indistinct *hidden* one, something like a *schwa mobile* of Hebrew grammar.

There is a small number of words (or syllables) in Neo-Persian which indeed commence with the two consonants خو, as, *e.g.* خويش, خواب, استخوان, خواهر, خواستن, but they were at the author's time pronounced as a single one, if we may judge from the metrical system of the *Shâhnâma* of his contemporary Firdausî, who was only a little older than himself. (*Cf.* similar remarks of the author, i., 138, 139.)

P. 20. *Sagara.*—The story of Sagara is related in *Vishṇu-Purâṇa*, translated by Wilson-Hall, vol. iii. p. 289–295. The words وعهدى ببعضهم and شكرت نعمته الخ might make us think that these events happened within the recollection of the author; but this is not necessarily the case. The former words may be interpreted, "*I recollect the story of a Hindu who*," &c., *i.e.* "I recollect having heard the story," &c.; and the words with which he winds up the story may mean, "I feel thankful to my fate that it was not I and my contemporaries whom he treated thus, but former generations."

P. 21. *Shamaniyya.*—The Buddhists are in Arabic called by this name, which is derived from a Prakritic form of Sanskrit *śramaṇa* (Strabo Σαρμᾶναι, Hieronymus *Samanaei*), and by the word المحمّرة, *i.e. the red robed-people* (=*raktapaṭa*), which refers to the red-brown (=*kâshâya*) cloaks of the Buddhist monks. *Cf.* Kern, *Der Buddhismus und seine Geschichte in Indien*, übersetzt von H. Jacobi, Leipzig, 1882, ii. 45. See another note of our author's on Buddhism in his "Chronology of Ancient Nations," pp. 188, 189. It is extremely difficult, from the utter lack of historic tradition, to check the author's statements as to the western extension of Buddhism, which certainly never reached Mosul. Before all, it will be necessary to examine how far Alberuni, when speaking of the ancient history and institutions of Eran, was under the influence of the poets of his time, Daḳiḳî, Asadî, and Firdausî, who versified Eranian folklore for the edification of the statesmen of the Samanian and Ghaznavî empires, all of them of Eranian descent. Hearing the songs of the heroic exploits of their ancestors consoled them to a certain degree for the only too palpable fact that their nation was no longer the ruling one, but subject to another; that Arabs and Turks had successively stepped into the heritage of their ancestors.

It must be observed that the negotiators of the cities of Sindh, whom they sent to the Muslim conquerors when first attacked by them, were invariably *śramaṇas* (v. Albalâdhurî), which seems to indicate that Sindh in those times, *i.e.* about A.D. 710, was Buddhistic. *Cf.* H. Kern, *Der Buddhismus und seine Geschichte in Indien*, ii. 543.

P. 21. *Muḥammad Ibn Alḳâsim.*—The brilliant career of the conqueror of Sindh falls into the years A.D. 707–714. By Albalâdhurî (p. ٤٣٩), Ibn-Al'athir, and others he is called Muḥ. Ibn Alḳâsim *Ibn Muḥammad*, not Ibn Almunabbih, as here and p. 116. When Alberuni wrote, Islam was known in Sindh already 350 years (since A.D. 680), and was established there 320 years (since about A.D. 710). On the history of the conquest of Sindh, *cf.* Albalâdhurî's *Kitâb-alfutûh*, p. ۴۳۱, translated by Reinaud, "Fragments," p. 182; Elliot, History of India, i. 113.

Instead of Bahmanvâ read *Bamhanvâ* = *Brahmanavâṭa.*

P. 23. The words of Varâhamihira are found in his *Brihat-Saṁhitâ*, translated by Kern in the "Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society," 1870, p. 441 (ii. 15): "The Greeks, indeed, are foreigners, but with them this science is in a flourishing state. Hence they are honoured as though they were Ṛishis; how much more then a twice-born man, if he be versed in astrology."

P. 25. *Think of Socrates, &c.*—The author speaks of a *Socratic fate* or *calamity*, meaning a fate like that which befell Socrates. I do not know from what particular source Alberuni and his contemporaries derived their information about the history of Greek philosophy. There is a broad stream of literary tradition on this subject in Arabic literature, but it has not yet been investigated what was its origin, whether it proceeded from one source or from several. Those men, mostly Greek heathens from Ḥarrân or Syrian Christians, who had enjoyed the Greek education of the time, not only translated Greek literature into Syriac and Arabic for the benefit of their Arab masters, but wrote also general works on the history of Greek learning and literature, probably translating and adopting for their purpose some one of the most current schoolbooks on this subject, used in the schools of Alexandria, Athens, Antioch, &c. Among authors who wrote such books, some being mere compilations of the famous sentences of Greek sages (doxographic), others having a more historic character, are Ḥunain Ibn 'Isḥâḳ, his son 'Isḥâḳ Ibn Ḥunain, and Ḳusṭâ Ibn Lûḳâ (*i.e.* Constans the son of Lucas). But what were the Greek works from which they took their information, and which they probably communicated to the Arabs exactly as they were? I am inclined to think that they used works of Porphyrius and Ammonius, the Greek originals of which are no longer extant.

P. 25. *Jurare in verba, &c.*—The Hindus consider, *e.g.* the sciences of astronomy and astrology *as founded upon tradition*, and their authors produce in their books side by side their own perhaps more advanced ideas and some silly notions of any predecessors of theirs, although they are fully aware that both are totally irreconcilable with each other. *Cf.* the words of Varâhamihira to this effect in *Bṛihat Saṁhitâ*, ix. 7, and the note of his commentator Utpala to v. 32. Alberuni pronounces most energetically against this kind of scientific composition when speaking of Brahmagupta in chapter lix. on eclipses.

P. 27. *Beyond all likeness and unlikeness*, an expression frequent in the description of the Deity. Literally translated: *things that are opposite to each other and things that are like each other*. Perhaps the rhyme *ḍidd* and *nidd*, *'aḍdâd* and *'andâd*, has contributed to the coining of this term. As for the idea, it may be compared with the term *dvandvâs* in Hindu philosophy = *pairs of opposites*, as pleasure and pain, health and sickness. *Bhagavad-Gîtâ*, ii. 45, vii. 27: "Yoga Aphorisms of Patañjali" (edited by Rajendralâlâ Mitra), ii. 48, p. 111.

P. 27. *Who is the worshipped one? &c.*—The greater part of this extract from Patañjali has been translated into Persian by Abulma'âlî Muḥammad Ibn 'Ubaid-Allâh in his *Kitâb-bayân-al'adyân*; v. C. Schefer, *Chrestomathie Persane*, i. ۱۳۸--۱۳۹ : سوال كدامست آن معبود كه همه كان بتوفيق او راه يابند بعبادت او جواب آنكه همه اميدها بدوست وهمه بيمها الخ.

P. 27. *Patañjali.*—The book of this name used and translated by the author had the form of a conversation between two persons, simply called "the asking one," and "the answering one," and its subject was *the search for liberation and for the union of the soul with the object of its meditation* (i. 132), *the emancipation of the soul from the fetters of the body* (i. 8). It was a popular book of theosophy, propounding in questions and answers the doctrine of the Yoga, a theistic philosophy developed by Patañjali out of the atheistic Sâṁkhya philosophy of Kapila. *Cf.* J. Davies, "Hindu Philosophy," *Sâñkhyâ Kârikâ* of *Iśvara Kṛishṇa*, London, 1881, p. 116. The latter is called *nirîśvara* =

not having a lord, the former *seśvara* = having a lord. It mostly treats of *moksha* (salvation) and metempsychosis. It contained not only theory, but also tales (i. 93), Haggadic elements by way of illustration.

Alberuni's Patañjali is totally different from "The Yoga Aphorisms of Patañjali" (with the commentary of Bhoja Râjâ, and an English translation by Rajendralâlâ Mitra, Calcutta, 1883), and, as far as I may judge, the philosophic system of the former differs in many points essentially from that of the Sûtras.

Moreover, the extracts given in the *Indica* stand in no relation with the commentary of Bhoja Râjâ, although the commentator here and there mentions ideas which in a like or similar form occur in Alberuni's work, both works being intended to explain the principles of the same school of philosophy.

Besides the text of Patañjali, a commentary also is mentioned and quoted (i. 232, 234, 236, 238, 248), مفسر كتاب باتنجل or مفسر باتنجل. It is most remarkable that the extracts from this commentary are all of them not of a philosophic, but of a plainly Paurânic character, treating of cosmographic subjects, the *lokas, Mount Meru*, the different spheres, &c. The name of the commentator is not mentioned. If the quotations on i. 273 *seq.* may be considered as derived from this commentary, the author was Balabhadra. V. index i. *s.v.* Patañjali.

P. 29. *Gîtâ.*—The book *Gîtâ* is, according to Alberuni, a part of the book *Bhârata* (*i.e. Mahâbhârata*, which term does not occur in the *Indica*[1]), and a conversation between Vâsudeva and Arjuna (قال باسديو لارجن). It is largely quoted in chapters relating to religion and philosophy. We have now to examine in what relation Alberuni's *Gîtâ* stands to the well-known *Bhagavad-Gîtâ* as we have it in our time. *Cf.* "Hindu Philosophy," "The Bhagavad-Gîtâ, or the Sacred Lay," translated by J. Davies, London, 1882. The latter is described as *a skilful union of the systems of Kapila and Patañjali with a large admixture of the prevailing Brâhmanic doctrines.* Although the opinions regarding its origin differ widely, it can scarcely be denied that it is not free from having been influenced to a certain degree by

---

[1] *Cf.* Alberuni on the *Mahâbhârata*, i. 132, 133.

Christianity, and that it could not have been composed before the third Christian century. Chapter xi. gives the impression of having been modelled after a Christian apocalypsis.

The quotations from the *Gîtâ* (or *Song*) may be divided into three classes:—

(1.) Such as exhibit a close relationship with certain passages in the *Bhagavad-Gîtâ*. Parts of sentences are here and there almost identical, but nowhere whole sentences; v. i. 40, 52, 73, 74, 86, 87, 103, 104, 218 (v. *note*), 352; ii. 169.

(2.) Such as show a certain similarity, more in the ideas expressed than in the wording, with passages in the *Bhagavad-Gîtâ;* v. i. 29, 70, 71, 78, 79, 103, 104, 122.

(3.) Such as cannot be compared, either in idea or in wording, with any passage in the *Bhagavad-Gîtâ;* v. i. 52, 53, 54, 70, 71, 73, 74, 75, 76, 78, 79, 80, 92, 122; ii. 137, 138.

The single texts will be discussed in the notes to the places in question.

The quotations given by Alberuni cannot have been translated from the *Bhagavad-Gîtâ* in its present form. Admitting even that the translator translated as little literally and accurately as possible (and the texts of Alberuni do *not* give this impression), there remains a great number of passages which on no account could be derived from the present Sanskrit text, simply because they do not exist there. Or has Alberuni translated a commentary of the *Bhagavad-Gîtâ* instead of the original? The text of the extracts, as given in the *Indica*, is remarkably short and precise, extremely well worded, without any repetition and verbosity, and these are qualities of style which hardly point to a commentary.

Alberuni seems to have used an edition of the *Bhagavad-Gîtâ* totally different from the one which *we* know, and which also in India seems to be the only one known. It must have been more ancient, because the notorious Yoga elements are not found in it, and these have been recognised by the modern interpreters as interpolations of a later time. Secondly, it must have been more complete, because it exhibits a number of sentences which are not found in the *Bhagavad-Gîtâ*.

Various generations of Hindu scholars have modelled and remodelled this book, one of the most precious gems of their literature, and it seems astonishing that an edition of it which existed as late as the time of Alberuni should not have reached the nineteenth century.

As regards the quotation on this page (29), it exhibits only in the substance a distant relationship with *Bhagavad-Gîtâ*, x. 3: "He who knows Me as unborn and without beginning, the mighty Lord of the world, he of mortals is free from delusion, he is free from all sin."

P. 30. *Sâṁkhya*.—The book *Sâṁkhya*, as used and translated by Alberuni, had the form of a conversation between an anchorite and a sage, and it contained a treatise on the *origines and a description of all created beings* (i. 8), a book *on divine subjects* (i. 132). It was composed by Kapila. The author quotes it largely on questions of religion and philosophy. The Sâṁkhya philosophy of Kapila is the most ancient system of thought among the Hindus, the source of the Yoga doctrine of Patañjali. *Cf.* Colebrooke, "Essays," i. 239–279; J. Davies, "Hindu Philosophy," &c., p. 101 *seq.*

The relation between Alberuni's *Sâṁkhya* and the so-called *Sâṁkhyapravacanam* ("The Sânkhya Aphorisms of Kapila," translated by Ballantyne, London, 1885) is a very distant one, and is limited to this, that there occurs a small number of passages which show a similarity of matter, not of form. The latter book (the *Sûtras*) seems to be a late secondary production; v. A. Weber, *Vorlesungen über Indische Literaturgeschichte*, p. 254, note 250. Besides, the philosophic system propounded by Alberuni under the name of *Sâṁkhya* seems in various and essential points to differ from that of the *Sûtras*; it seems altogether to have had a totally different tendency. The *Sûtras* treat of *the complete cessation of pain*; the first one runs thus: "Well, the complete cessation of pain, (which is) of three kinds, is the complete end of man;" whilst the *Sâṁkhya* of Alberuni teaches *moksha* by means of knowledge.

Next we have to compare Alberuni's *Sâṁkhya* with the *Sâṁkhya Kârikâ* of Îśvara Krishṇa (v. Colebrooke, "Essays," i. 272; J. Davies, "Hindu Philosophy," London, 1881). Both works teach *moksha* by means of knowledge, and contain here and there the same subject-matter. It must be observed that of those illustrative tales which Alberuni's *Sâṁkhya* gives in full length, short indications are found in the *Sâṁkhya Kârikâ*. Its author, Îśvara Kṛishṇa, says at the end of his book that he has written his seventy *Sûtras, excluding illustrative tales*. This is not quite correct, as sometimes, though he has not told them, he has at all events indicated them. His words show that he has copied from a book like the *Sâṁkhya* of Alberuni, in which *the tales* were not only indicated, but related at full length. *Cf.* A. Weber, *Vorlesungen über Indische Literaturgeschichte*, Berlin, 1876, p. 254, note 250. Hall considers the *S. Pravacanam* to be younger than the *S. Kârikâ*.

If, in the third place, we examine the *Bhâshya* of Gauḍapâda, we find that it is not identical with Alberuni's *Sâṁkhya*, but a near relative of it. *Cf.* the *Sâṁkhya Kârikâ*, &c., translated by Colebrooke, also the *Bhâshya* of Gauḍapâda, translated by H. H. Wilson, Oxford, 1837; Colebrooke, "Essays," i. 245. Most of the quotations given by Alberuni are found only slightly differing in Gauḍapâda, and some agree literally, as I shall point out in the notes to the single passages. Almost all the illustrative tales mentioned by Alberuni are found in Gauḍapâda, being, as a rule, more extensive in Alberuni than in Gauḍapâda. The latter seems to have taken his information from a work near akin to, or identical with, that *Sâṁkhya* book which was used by Alberuni.

According to Colebrooke (in the preface of the work just mentioned, on p. xiii.), Gauḍapâda was the teacher of Śaṁkara Âcârya, who is said to have lived in the eighth Christian century. *Cf.* also A. Weber, *Vorlesungen*, pp. 179, 254, and 260. Alberuni does not mention Gauḍapâda, as far as I can see. Or is he perhaps identical with *Gauḍa the anchorite*, whom Alberuni mentions even before Kapila? *Cf.* the passage, i. 131–132: "Besides the Hindus have books, &c., on the process of becoming God and seeking liberation from the world, as, *e.g.* the book composed by Gauḍa the anchorite, which goes by his name."

Kapila, the father of the Sâṁkhya philosophy, is mentioned by Alberuni also as the author of a book called

Nyâyabhâshâ, "on the Veda and its interpretation, also showing that it has been created, and distinguishing within the Veda between such injunctions as are obligatory only in certain cases and those which are obligatory in general" (i. 132). The subject of this book is evidently not related to the Nyâya philosophy, but to the tenets of the Mîmâṁsâ philosophy, *i.e.* the Pûrvamîmâṁsâ, (Colebrooke, "Essays," i. p. 319–349; J. Davies, "Hindu Philosophy," p. 2; Thibaut, *Arthasaṁgraha,* Benares, 1882), a system of rules which are applied to the text of the Veda and its sacrifical prescriptions.

P. 31. *The anthropomorphic doctrines, the teachings of the Jabriyya sect, &c.*—The sect, called Jabriyya, Jabariyya, and Mujbara teaches that the actions of man proceed from God. They are the followers of Al-najjâr. *Cf. Fihrist,* p. 179 *seq.*

The *Ahl-altashbîh,* or anthropomorphists, teach that God is similar to His creatures. *Cf. Statio Quinta et Sexta et appendix libri Mevakif,* edit. Th. Sœrensen, Leipzig, 1858, p. 362; *Kitâb-i-Yamînî* of Al-Utbî, translated by J. Reynolds, London, 1858, preface, pp. xxv. xxix.; "Book of Religious and Philosophical Sects," by Alshahrastânî, edited by Cureton, pp. 59, 61, and 75 *seq.*

I understand the passage وتحريم النظر فى شىء (١٤, 11, 12) as meaning *the prohibition of the study* (not *discussion,* as I have translated, which would be المناظرة) *of a subject, i.e.* a question of a religious bearing; but I am not aware what particular event the author hints at by these words. At the intolerant religious policy of the Khalif Alkâdir? King Maḥmûd was a great *Ketzerrichter.* Probably a stout adherent of the theory of the harmony of throne and altar, which his contemporaries Al-'Utbî (in his preface) and Alberuni (i. 99) call *twins,* he tried to cover the illegitimate, revolutionary origin of his dynasty, which was still fresh in the memory of the men of the time; he maintained the most loyal relations with the spiritual head of Islam, the Khalif of Bagdad, Alkâdir (A.H. 381–422), who had clad the usurpation of his family with the mantle of legitimacy; and in order to please him, he hunted down the heretics in his realm in Khurasan as in Multân (*cf.* Reynolds, l. l., p. 438 *seq.*), impaling or stoning them. He tried to rid the Khalif of the real or suspected votaries of his opponent, the Anti-Khalif in Egypt, the famous Ḥâkim, famous by his madness and by being considered by the Druzes as the originator of their creed. The religious policy of Maḥmûd may be retraced to the following principles:—

(1.) Perfect toleration for the Hindus at his court and in his army.

(2.) Persecution of certain Muslim sectarians in the interest of the Khalif, of the Karmatians and other sects of Shiitic tendencies. (*Cf.* A. von Kremer, *Geschichte der herschenden Ideen des Islam*, Leipzig, 1868, p. 127.)

(3.) Predilection for a Muslim sectarian from Sijistân by the name of Abû-'Abdillâh Ibn Alkirâm, by whose influence both Sunnites and Shiites had to suffer (*cf. Alshahrastânî*, p. ٢٠). How long the influence of this man had lasted, and how far his doctrines had been carried into practice, does not appear from Alshahrastânî's account.

That, notwithstanding all this, there was a large margin for liberty of religious thought under the rule of Maḥmûd and his immediate successor, is sufficiently illustrated by the tenor of Alberuni's work. Altogether, it must be kept in mind that before Alghazzâlî the Muslim Church was not that concentrated organisation nor that all-overwhelming force which it has been ever since and keeps up in our days. To those who only know the centuries of Muslim history after the establishment of the orthodox Church, it sounds next to incredible that the military chief of a Khalif should have been an infidel (a Zoroastrian ?). *Cf.* the story of Afshîn, the general of the Khalif Almu'taṣim, in *Menoutchetri, Poète Persan*, par A. de Biberstein. Kazimirski, p. 149.

P. 33. τὸ λανθάνειν.—The word *kumûn*, which I have thus rendered, means *to be hidden*. Not knowing to what school of Greek philosophers the author refers, I can only give the note of Reiske, "اهل الكمون, Philosophi qui omnes animas simul et semel creatas et reconditas in Adamo putant" (Freytag, *Lexicon Arabicum*, s.h.v.).

P. 33. *Pailâsôpâ, &c.*—As Syrian scholars were the author's teachers in Greek philosophy, he knows the Greek word φιλόσοφος only in its Syrian garb ܦܝܠܣܘܦܐ.

The *Ahl-aṣṣuffa* were certain persons, poor refugees and houseless men, who during the first years of Muhammad's stay in Medîna passed the night in the *ṣuffa* of the mosque of the Prophet in Medîna, which was a covered place, an appurtenance of the mosque, roofed over with palm-sticks (*Lane*).

Abulfatḥ Albustî was a famous poet of the time. A native of Bust in Northern Afghanistan, he was in the service of the governor, who held the place under the Sâmânî dynasty, and after the conquest of Bust by Sabuktagîn he entered the service of this prince and of his son Maḥmûd. Under Mas'ûd he lived still in Ghazna, for Baihaḳî mentions that he had fallen into disgrace and had to carry water for the royal stables. By the intervention of Baihaḳî, he was restored into the good graces of the prime minister, Aḥmad Ibn Hasan of Maimand. *Cf.* Elliot, "History of India," ii. 82, 84, iv. 161; Ethé, *Rûdagî's Vorläufer und Zeitgenossen*, p. 55. According to Ḥâjî Khalîfa (iii. 257, iv. 533), he died A.H. 430 (A.D. 1039). For further information see Shahrazûrî, *Nuzhat-al'arwâḥ*, fol. 182*b* (MS. of the Royal Library, Berlin, MSS. Orient. octav. 217); Al-Baihaḳî, *Tatimmat-ṣuwân-alḥikma*, fol. 22*b* (MS. of the same library, Petermann, ii. 737); also *Mirchondi Historia Gasnevidarum Persice*, by F. Wilken, Berlin, 1832, p. 144. Towards the end of his life he is said to have travelled with an embassy of the Khaḳân of Transoxiana to that country, and to have died there.

P. 34. *Galenus.*—The author quotes the following works of Galenus:—

(1.) λόγος προτρεπτικός.

(2.) A commentary to the aphorisms of Hippokrates, a book of which I do not know the Greek original (*cf.* i. 35, ii. 168).

(3.) كتاب الميامر (from the Syriac ܡܐܡܪ̈ܐ) = περὶ συνθέσεως φαρμάκων τῶν κατὰ τόπους.

(4.) كتاب البرهان = *the book of the proof*, of which I do not know the Greek original; *cf.* i. 97.

(5.) اخلاق النفس = *de indole animæ* (περὶ ἠθῶν ?), of which the Greek original likewise is not known to me; *cf.* i. 123, 124.

(6.) كتاب فاطاجانس = περὶ συνθέσεως φαρμάκων κατὰ γένη.

Besides, the author gives some quotations from Galenus without mentioning from what particular book they were taken; *cf.* i. 222, 320. *Cf.* on Galen's works in Arabic Dr. Klamroth, "Journal of the German Oriental Society," vol. xl. 189 *seq.*

The passage here given is found in Προτρεπτικὸς ἐπὶ τὰς τέχνας, ed. Abrah. Willet, Lugduni Bat., 1812, chap. ix. pp. 29, 30:—ὡς καὶ τῶν ἀνθρώπων τοὺς ἀρίστους θείας ἀξιωθῆναι τιμῆς, οὐχ ὅτι καλῶς ἔδραμον ἐν τοῖς ἀγῶσιν ἢ δίσκον ἔῤῥιψαν ἢ διεπάλαισαν· ἀλλὰ διὰ τὴν ἀπὸ τῶν τεχνῶν εὐεργεσίαν. Ἀσκληπιὸς γέ τοι καὶ Διόνυσος εἴτ' ἄνθρωποι πρότερον ἤστην εἴτ' ἀρχῆθεν, τιμῶν ἀξιοῦνται μεγίστων, ὁ μὲν διὰ τὴν ἰατρικὴν, ὁ δ' ὅτι τὴν περὶ τοὺς ἀμπέλους ἡμᾶς τέχνην ἐδίδαξεν.

The two passages on p. 36 are probably taken from the *Protrepticus* too. With the former compare the words in chap. ix. (on p. 22 editio Kühn, vol. i.): Εἰ δ' οὐκ ἐθέλεις ἐμοὶ πείθεσθαι, τόν γε θεὸν αἰδέσθητι τὸν Πύθιον.

Shortly afterwards follows the second quotation, verses quoted by Galen from Herodotus, i. 65:

Ἥκεις, ὦ Λυκόεργε, ἐμὸν ποτὶ πίονα νηόν.
Δίζω ἤ σε θεὸν μαντεύσομαι ἢ ἄνθρωπον,
ἀλλ' ἔτι καὶ μᾶλλον θεὸν ἔλπομαι, ὦ Λυκόεργε.

P. 35. *Plato.*—The author quotes the following works of Plato:—

(1.) *Phædo.*
(2.) *Timæus* (*cf.* also *Proclus*).
(3.) *Leges.*

Of the three quotations on this passage, the middle one is found in *Timæus*, 41A:—Ἐπεὶ δ' οὖν πάντες κ. τ. λ., λέγει πρὸς αὐτοὺς ὁ τόδε τὸ πᾶν γεννήσας τάδε· θεοὶ θεῶν κ. τ. λ., ἀθάνατοι μὲν οὐκ ἐστὲ οὐδ' ἄλυτοι τὸ πάμπαν· οὔτι μὲν δὴ λυθήσεσθέ γε οὐδὲ τεύξεσθε θανάτου μοίρας, τῆς ἐμῆς βουλήσεως μείζονος ἔτι δεσμοῦ καὶ κυριωτέρου λαχόντες ἐκείνων οἷς ὅτ' ἐγίγνεσθε ξυνεδεῖσθε.

The first and third quotations are not found in the Greek text, and Ed. Zeller, to whom I applied for help, thinks that both are taken from a commentary on *Timæus* by some Christian author, as *e.g.* Johannes Philoponus, the former having being derived from 40D (περὶ δὲ τῶν ἄλλων δαιμόνων εἰπεῖν καὶ γνῶναι τὴν γένεσιν κ.τ.λ.), the latter from passages like 32B and 92B.

The index of the works of Johannes Philoponus or Scholasticus (Steinschneider, *Al-Fârâbî*, p. 152 *seq.*) does not mention a commentary on *Timæus*, if it is not concealed under the title of one of his books, فى الكون, الفساد, *i.e. on existing and perishing*. As he was a literary opponent of Nestorius, he seems to have been a strict Monophysite, which would be in keeping with the third quotation, "God is in the single number," &c. *Cf.* the note to pp. 56, 57.

P. 36. *Johannes Grammaticus* (identical with J. Philoponus and Scholasticus) is five times quoted. There are three extracts from his *Refutatio Procli*, and two more, the origin of which is not mentioned, but probably taken from the same book. The passage here mentioned is found in *Joannis Grammatici Philoponi Alexandrini contra Proclum de Mundi æternitate*, libri xviii., Venetiis, 1551, Greek and Latin, in the 18th λόγος, chap. ix. (there is no pagination; *cf.* the Latin translation, p. 95):—

μὴ δὲ γὰρ εἰδέναι πω ἐκείνους ἄλλό τι θεὸν πλὴν τῶν φαινομένων σωμάτων ἡλίου καὶ σελήνης καὶ τῶν λοιπῶν, ὥσπερ καὶ μέχρι νῦν τῶν βαρβάρων ὑπολαμβάνειν τοῦς πλείστους. ὕστερον δέ φησιν εἰς εὔνοιαν καὶ τῶν ἄλλων θεῶν τῶν ἀσωμάτων ἕλληνας ἐλθόντας, τῷ αὐτῷ κἀκείνους προσαγορεῦσαι ὀνόματι.

I have not succeeded in identifying the other four quotations, i. 65, 226, 231, 284. *Cf.* on this author, *Fihrist*, p. 254, and Dr. Steinschneider, *Alfârâbî*, pp. 152, 162.

P. 37. *Baal.* The form of the word بعلا (Syriac ܒܥܠܐ) shows that the Arabic Bible-text which Alberuni used had been translated from Syriac.

P. 39. *Mânî.*—*Vide* note to pp. 7, 8.

P. 40. *Gîtâ.*—*Cf.* with these words the *Bhagavad-Gîtâ* (of J. Davies), xv. 14, 15:—

"Entering into the *earth*, I sustain all things by my vital force, and becoming *a savoury juice*, I nourish all herbs (v. 14).

"I become *fire*, and enter into the bodies of all that breathe, &c. And I am seated in the hearts of all: from

Me come *memory*, *knowledge*, and the power of reason," &c. (v. 15).

Davies supposes the whole of verse 15 to be an interpolation, but this remark must, as it seems, be limited to the final sentence of verse 15 only, *i.e.* to the words: "I form the Vedânta, and I am one who knows the Vedas."

P. 40. *Apollonius.*—A Greek book of Apollonius of Tyana of this title is not known to me, but it exists in Arabic كتاب فى العلل (*Liber de Causis*), in the library of Leyden, *cf.* Wenrich, *De Auctorum Græcorum Versionibus et Commentariis Syriacis, Arabicis, &c.*, p. 239.

Pp. 40–44.—The Sâṃkhya doctrine of the twenty-five *tattvas* is found in the commentary of Gauḍapâda to the *Sâṁkhya Kârikâ* of Îśvara Kṛishṇa, where also the saying of Vyâsa (here i. 44 and 104) is found. *Cf.* the translation of H. H. Wilson, p. 79, i. 14.

P. 40. *Buddha, dharma, saṅgha.*—This note on the Buddhistic trinity probably rests on the authority of Zurḳân, as he was quoted in the book of *Erânshahrî*: *cf.* note to pp. 6, 7. It shows that Alberuni had no original information regarding Buddhism, and it justifies his harsh judgment on the worth of the tradition of Zurkân, *v.* i. 7.

The name *Buddhodana* is nothing, and by mistake derived from *Śuddhodana*, the name of Buddha's father. Perhaps Zurḳân had read not بدهودن but بسودهودني, which would be *Śauddhodani*, i.e. *the son of Śuddhodana* or Buddha.

P. 41. *Vâyu Purâṇa.*—Of the Purâṇas the author had the *Âditya*, *Matsya*, and *Vâyu Purâṇas*, *i.e.* only portions of them (i. 130), and probably the whole of *Vishṇu-Purâṇa*. Most of his Pauranic quotations are taken from *Vâyu*, *Vishṇu*, and *Matsya Purâṇas*. *Cf.* on the Purâṇas, A. Weber, *Vorlesungen*, p. 206, and note 206 on p. 208.

P. 42.—The *five mothers* are a blunder of the author's instead of *the five measures*, i.e. *pañcamâtrâni* (*pañcatanmâtrâṇi*).

The combination between the senses and the elements, as it is given here and on p. 43, also occurs in the *Vaiśe-*

shika—philosophy of Kaṇâda: *cf.* Colebrooke, "Essays," i. 293 *seq.* Compare also *Vishṇu-Purâṇa*, i. 2, p. 35, and Hall's note 1. There are similar elements in the philosophy of the Bauddhas or Saugatas: v. Colebrooke, *l.c.* i. 416, 417.

P. 42.—The quotation from Homer is not found in the Greek text, nor do I know the Greek original of the second verse. Were they taken from some Neo-Pythagorean book?

P. 43. *Porphyry.*—This is the only quotation from Porphyry, from a book of his which is not extant in the Greek original. According to Wenrich, *l.c.* p. 287, there has once been in Syriac a translation of the fourth book of a *Liber Historiarum Philosophorum*, probably identical with the work here mentioned. The note on the Milky Way (i. 281) is perhaps taken from this same source.

P. 43. *Lacuna.*—In the Arabic text (٢١, 15) is missing the relation between the *hearing* and the *air*, the complement to the words *hearing airy* in l. 14.

P. 43. *Plato.*—As the author does not mention the source whence he took these words, I conjecture that they were derived from *Timæus*, 77, A, B, or from some commentary on this passage: *cf.* note to p. 35.

P. 45. *Matres simplices.*—*Cf.* note to p. 42. On the Sâṁkhya theory regarding the union of soul and matter, *cf. Sâṁkhya Kârikâ, vv.* 20, 21, 42, and Gauḍapâda's *Bhâshya*.

P. 47. *Dancing-girl.*—This example is likewise found in Gauḍapâda, p. 170 (*Bhâshya* to *v.* 59 of the *Saṁkhya Kârikâ*); that of the blind and the lame on p. 76 (to *v.* 21).

P. 48. *Mânî.*—*Vide* note to pp. 7, 8.

P. 48. *The book of Sâṁkhya, &c.*—The theory of predominance among the three primary forces (*guṇa*), *v.* in Gauḍapâda, pp. 92, 93, to *v.* 25, p. 49 to *v.* 12; the comparison of the soul with a spectator on p. 72 to v. 19 (also *Bhagavad-Gîtâ*, xiv. 23); the story of the innocent among the robbers on p. 74 to *v.* 20.

P. 49. *The soul is in matter, &c.*—The soul compared to a charioteer, v. in Gauḍapâda, p. 66 to *v.* 17.

Pp. 52–54. *Vâsudeva speaks to Arjuna, &c.*—Of these quotations from *Gîtâ*, compare the passage, "Eternity is common to both of us, &c., whilst they were concealed from you," with *Bhagavad-Gîtâ*, iv. 5: "Many have been in past time the births of me, and of thee also, Arjuna. All these I know, but thou knowest them not, O slayer of foes!"

Of the other quotations on these two pages, I do not see how they could be compared with any passage in *Bhagavad-Gîtâ*, except for the general tenor of the ideas. With the phrase, "For he loves God and God loves him," *cf. Bhagavad-Gîtâ*, xii. 14–20, "Who worships me is dear to me."

P. 54. *Vishṇu-Dharma.*—Alberuni gives large quotations from this book. He speaks of it i. 132, and translates the title as *the religion of God.*

I do not know the Sanskrit original of the book, for it is totally different from the *Vishṇu-Smriti*, or *Vishṇu-Sûtra*, or *Vaishṇava Dharmaśâstra*, translated by J. Jolly ("The Institutes of Vishṇu," Oxford, 1880), a law-book in a hundred chapters, similar to those of Âpastamba, Yâjnavalkya, Vasishṭha, the Gṛihyasûtras, &c. Our *Vishṇu-Dharma* is a sort of Purâṇa, full of those legends and notions characteristic of the literature of Purâṇas; but the author does not assign it to them. Most of the extracts here given are conversations between the sage Mârkaṇḍeya and Vajra, others a conversation between the king Parîksha and the sage Śatânîka. The extracts treat of mythological subjects (i. 54); the twelve suns (i. 216, 217); the pole (i. 241); the planets and fixed stars (i. 287, 288); star-legends (i. 291); the story of Hiraṇyâksha (ii. 140); the names of the Manvantaras (i. 387); the dominants of the planets (ii. 121): in particular, of chronological and astronomical subjects. The author has taken several series of names from the *Vishṇu-Dharma*. He seems to quote it sometimes without mentioning its title. So, *e.g.* I am inclined to attribute the traditions of Śaunaka (i. 113, 126) to this book. The quotation (ii. 398) on Vâsudeva, Saṁkarshaṇa, Pradyumna, and Aniruddha, as the names of Hari in the four *Yugas*, is found likewise among the doctrines of the Vaishṇava sect, the Pâñcarâtras, or Bhâgavatas: *cf.* Colebrooke, "Essays," i. 439, 440. Vishṇu is the chief god of those Hindus with whom Alberuni held relation. Were they Vaishṇava sects, and was the *Vishṇu-Dharma* a special code of theirs? On the heterodox sect of Vishṇu or Vâsudeva worshippers just mentioned, *cf.* Colebrooke, *l.c.* pp. 437–443.

Colebrooke mentions a book, *Vishṇu-Dharmottara-Purâṇa*, which is said to have comprehended the Brahmasiddhânta of Brahmagupta: *cf.* "Essays," ii. 348. This work is perhaps identical with the *Vishṇu-Dharma* used by Alberuni. As he had a copy of the *Brahmasiddhânta*, he had it perhaps as a portion of this larger work.

P. 54. *Lakshmî, who produced the Amṛita.*—For the legend of Lakshmî v. *Vishnu-Purâṇa*, i. 9, where it is Dhanvantari who brings the Amṛita-cup, not Lakshmî. Apparently this goddess is meant here, and not Lakshmaṇa, as the manuscript has it, the brother of Râma. When Alberuni wrote this, he seems to have mistaken Lakshmî for a masculine being, or else we must write مخرجة in the text ٢٧, 3, instead of مخرج.

The Arabic *hanâ'a* (=*aisance, félicité*) is an attempt of Alberuni's to translate the Sanskrit *amṛita*=ambrosia, which scarcely any one of his readers will have understood. *Cf.* the Arabic text, ١٢٦, 6 (here i. 253).

P. 54. *Daksha, who was beaten by Mahâdeva.*—*Cf.* the story of the destruction of Daksha's sacrifice by order of Śiva, as communicated by Hall in his edition of Wilson's *Vishṇu-Purâṇa* as appendix to i. viii. p. 120 *seq.* (Sacrifice of Daksha, from the *Vâyu-Purâṇa*).

P. 54. *Varâhamihira.*—Of this author Alberuni quotes the following works:—

(1.) *Bṛihatsaṁhitâ.*

(2.) *Bṛihajjâtakam*, i. 158, 219, 220, ii. 118.

(3). *Laghujâtakam*, i. 158.
(4.) *Pañcasiddhântikâ*, i. 153, ii. 7, 190.

Books of the same author, which Alberuni mentions without giving extracts from them, are *Shaṭpañcâśikâ* and هور ندبج هشرت (?), both with astrological contents (i. 158). Perhaps the two books called *Yogayâtrâ* and *Tikanî*(?)-*yâtrâ* (i. 158) are also to be attributed to Varâhamihira. Besides there are mentioned several commentaries, one of the *Bṛihat-Saṁhitâ* by Utpala, from Kashmîr (i. 298), and one of the *Bṛihajjâtakam* by Balabhadra.

One of the sources whence Alberuni has drawn most copiously is the *Bṛihat-Saṁhitâ*, or, as *he* calls it, the *Saṁhitâ*: *v.* the edition of the Sanskrit original by Dr. Kern, Calcutta, 1865, and his translation in the "Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society" for the years 1870, 1871, 1873, 1875. Alberuni praises Varâhamihira as an honest man of science (i. 366), and maintains that he lived 526 years before his own time, which is A.D. 1030. Accordingly, the date of Varâhamihira would be A.D. 504. *Cf.* ii. 86.

In the preface to the edition, p. 61, Kern mentions the *Shaṭpañcâśikâ* and the *Yogayâtrâ*. Both the *Bṛihat-Saṁhitâ* and *Laghujâtakam* had been translated into Arabic by Alberuni.

The passage here (p. 54) quoted is found in chap. iii. *v.* 13–15 ("Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society," 1870, p. 446).

P. 54. *Mânî.*—*Vide* note to pp. 7, 8.

P. 55. *Patañjali.*—*Vide* note to p. 27.

Pp. 56, 57. *Phædo.*—The two quotations from *Phædo* are the following:—

70C. παλαιὸς μὲν οὖν ἔστι λόγος, οὗ μεμνήμεθα, ὡς εἰσὶν ἐνθένδε ἀφικόμεναι ἐκεῖ, καὶ πάλιν γε δεῦρο ἀφικνοῦνται καὶ γίγνονται ἐκ τῶν τεθνεώτων, καὶ εἰ τοῦθ' οὕτως ἔχει, πάλιν γίγνεσθαι ἐκ τῶν ἀποθανόντων τοὺς ζῶντας, ἄλλο τι ἢ εἶεν ἂν αἱ ψυχαὶ ἡμῶν ἐκεῖ, κ.τ.λ.

ἆρ' οὑτωσὶ γίγνεται πάντα, οὐκ ἄλλοθεν ἢ ἐκ τῶν ἐναντίων τὰ ἐναντία, κ.τ.λ.

The sentences which in the Arabic follow after these words ("Our souls lead an existence of their own," &c.) cannot be combined with the Greek text, and I suppose they were taken from some commentary.

The second quotation is found

72E. ὅτι ἡμῖν ἡ μάθησις οὐκ ἄλλο τι ἢ ἀνάμνησις τύγχανει οὖσα, καὶ κατὰ τοῦτοε ἀνάγκη που ἡμᾶς ἐν προτέρῳ τινὶ χρόνῳ μεμαθηκέναι ἃ νῦν ἀναμιμνησκόμθα. τοῦτο δὲ ἀδύνατον, εἰ μὴ ἦν που ἡμῶν ἡ ψυχὴ, πρὶν ἐν τῷδε τῶ ἀνθρωπίνῳ εἴδει εἶναι κ.τ.λ.

73D. οὐκοῦν οἶσθα ὅτι οἱ ἐρασταὶ, ὅταν ἴδωσι λύραν ἢ ἱμάτιον ἢ ἄλλυ τι, οἷς τὰ παιδικὰ αὐτῶν εἴωθε χρῆσθαι, πάσχουσι τοῦτο. ἔγνωσάν τε τὴν λύραν καὶ ἐν τῇ διανοίᾳ ἔλαβον τὸ εἶδος τοῦ παιδός, οὗ ἦν ἡ λύρα; τοῦτο δέ ἐστιν ἀνάμνησις.

In some sentences the Arabic and Greek texts agree literally; in others they differ to such an extent that this extract, too, does not seem to be taken from a simple translation of the text of *Phædo*, but rather from a work in which text and commentary were mixed together, and the original form of a dialogue was changed into that of a simple relation. Alberuni erroneously held this to be the original form of the book. We have arrived at a similar result in the case of Plato's *Timæus*.

Proclus has composed a commentary on the saying of Plato that the soul is immortal, in three sections: *v.* Wenrich, *De Auctorum Græcorum Versionibus*, &c., p. 288; and Zeller, *Philosophie der Griechen*, iii. 6, 780, 1. This was probably an Arabic edition of *Phædo*, and possibly that one which Alberuni used. *Cf.* note to p. 35.

The quotations from *Phædo* given farther on (pp. 65–67) agree more accurately with the Greek original, but in them, too, the dialogistic form has disappeared.

P. 57. Proclus is twice quoted, here and i. 86. Both extracts seem to be derived from some commentary on *Timæus*, which was *different* from that commentary known in our time and edited by Schneider, Breslau, 1887. The words here mentioned probably refer to *Timæus*, 44 A B C:—καὶ διὰ δὴ ταῦτα πάντα τὰ παθήματα νῦν κατ' ἀρχάς τε ἄνους ψυχὴ γίγνεται τὸ πρῶτον, ὅταν εἰς σῶμα ἐνδεθῇ θνητὸν κ.τ.λ. χωλὴν τοῦ βίου διαπορευθεὶς ζωήν, ἀτελὴς καὶ ἀνόητος εἰς Ἅιδου πάλιν ἔρχεται.

The commentary of Proclus referring to these words (pp. 842, 843, ed. Schneider) is entirely different from the Arabic words.

The other quotation (i. 86) is derived from the same book, and refers to *Timæus*, 44D:—εἰς σφαιροειδὲς σῶμα ἐνέδησαν, τοῦτο ὃ νῦν κεφαλὴν ἐπονομάζομεν, ὃ θειότατον τ' ἐστὶ καὶ τῶν ἐν ἡμῖν πάντων δεσποτοῦν, κ.τ.λ.

The commentary of Proclus (ed. Schneider) breaks off a little before this passage, at the beginning of 44D.

I am inclined to believe that the work, simply introduced by "Proclus says," is identical with that one which he calls *Timæus* (*cf.* note to page 35), a work which was—

(1.) Not a simple translation of the book, but a translation and a commentary together, the one running into the other; and which

(2.) Was different from the now extant commentary of *Timæus* by Proclus. Therefore Proclus must either have made two editions of *Timæus*, or he is not really the author of the book used by Alberuni. In the one place the name is written بروقلس, in the other ابروقلس.

P. 57.—The *seat* (العرش) and the *throne* (الكرسيّ) of God. By these two words Muḥammad calls the throne of God in the Koran. Allah's sitting on his throne, as mentioned in the Koran, has been a subject of deep speculation among Muslim theologians. *Cf. Zur Geschichte Abulḥasan Al-Aś'arî's*, von W. Spitta, Leipzig, 1876, pp. 106, 107. and the note on p. 144.

P. 60. *Vishṇu-Purâṇa.*—The passage is found in Book II. chap. vi. (Wilson-Hall, ii. p. 216). The order in which the hells are enumerated and their names differ to some extent:—

Alberuni.	*Sanskrit original.*
Raurava.	Raurava.
Rodha.	Rodha.
Taptakumbha.	Śûkara.
Mahâjvâla.	Tâla.
5. Śavala.	5. Taptakumbha.
Kṛimîśa.	Taptaloha.
Lâlâbhaksha.	Mahâjvâla.
Viśasana.	Lavaṇa.
Adhomukha.	Vimoha.
10. Rudhirândha.	10. Kṛimibhaksha.

Alberuni.	*Sanskrit original.*
Rudhira.	Krimîśa.
Vaitaraṇî.	Lâlâbhaksha.
Kṛishṇa.	Vedhaka.
Asipatravana.	Viśasana.
15. Vahnijvâla.	15. Adhomukha.
Sandaṁśaka.	Pûyavaha.
	Rudhirândha.
	Vaitaraṇî.
	Kṛishṇa.
	20. Asipatravana.
	Vahnijvâla.
	Sandaṁśa.
	Śvabhojana.

P. 62. *Sâṁkhya.*—I do not find anything corresponding in the *Sâṁkhya Kârikâ* nor Gauḍapâda's commentary. As for the idea, *cf.* "Sâṁkhya Aphorisms," iv. 32.

P. 63. *Âtivâhika.*—On the *âtivâhika* = that which is swifter than the wind in passing from body to body, *cf. Sâṁkhya Kârikâ*, ed. Colebrooke-Wilson, p. 133.

The *Barzakh* is mentioned in the Koran, 23, 102; 25, 55; 55, 20.

P. 63. *Vishṇu-Purâṇa.*—This quotation is related in substance to Book II. chap. vi. pp. 221–224: *cf.* the uninterrupted thinking (*saṁsmaraṇa*) with the *remembrance of Hari, the meditation on Vâsudeva.* Are the words of Alberuni an extract from this passage?

P. 64. *Sâṁkhya.*—The *S. Kârikâ* and Gauḍapâda do not seem to offer anything analogous to this passage.

P. 64. *A theosoph, &c.*—The passage relating to the four degrees of metempsychosis has been translated into Persian by Abulma'âlî Muḥammad Ibn 'Ubaid-Allâh in his *Bayân al'adyân*: *v.* C. Schefer, *Chrestomathie Persane*, i. ۱۴۸, l. 3–8.

Abû-Ya'ḳub and his work are not known to me from other sources.

P. 65. *Johannes Grammaticus.*—*Vide* note to p. 36.

Phædo.—The quotations on pp. 65–67 agree pretty accurately with the Greek text.

The body is earthy. &c., 81 C, D:—

Ἐμβριθὲς δέ γε, ὦ φίλε, τοῦτο οἴεσθαι χρὴ εἶναι καὶ βαρὺ καὶ γεῶδες καὶ ὁρατόν· ὃ δὴ καὶ ἔχουσα ἡ τοιαύτη ψυχὴ βαρύνεταί τε καὶ ἕλκεται πάλιν εἰς τὸν ὁρατὸν τόπον φόβῳ τοῦ ἀειδοῦς τε καὶ Ἅιδου, ὥσπερ λέγεται, περὶ τὰ μνήματά τε καὶ τοὺς τάφους κυλινδουμένη, περὶ ἃ δὴ καὶ ὤφθη ἄττα ψυχῶν σκιοειδῆ φαντάσματα, οἷα παρέχονται αἱ τοιαῦται ψυχαὶ εἴδωλα αἱ μὴ καθαρῶς ἀπολυθεῖσαι, ἀλλὰ καὶ τοῦ ὁρατοῦ μετέχουσαι, διὸ καὶ ὁρῶνται.

It appears that these are not the souls, &c., 81D–82A:—

Εἰκὸς μέντοι, ὦ Κέβης· καὶ οὔ τί γε τὰς τῶν ἀγαθῶν ταύτας εἶναι, ἀλλὰ τὰς τῶν φαύλων, αἳ περὶ τὰ τοιαῦτα ἀναγκάζονται πλανᾶσθαι δίκην τίνουσαι τῆς προτέρας τροφῆς κακῆς οὔσης· καὶ μέχρι γε τούτου πλανῶνται, ἕως ἂν τῇ ξυνεπακολουθοῦντος τοῦ σωματοειδοῦς ἐπιθυμίᾳ πάλιν ἐνδεθῶσιν εἰς σῶμα.

Ἐνδοῦνται δὲ, ὥσπερ εἰκός, εἰς τοιαῦτα ἤθη ὁποῖ' ἄττ' ἂν καὶ μεμελετηκυῖαι τύχωσιν ἐν τῷ βίῳ. Τὰ ποῖα δὴ ταῦτα λέγεις, ὦ Σώκρατες; Οἷον τοὺς μὲν γαστριμαργίας τε καὶ ὕβρεις καὶ φιλοποσίας μεμελετηκότας καὶ μὴ διευλαβημένους εἰς τὰ τῶν ὄνων γένη καὶ τῶν τοιούτων θηρίων εἰκὸς ἐνδύεσθαι· ἢ οὐκ οἴει; πάνυ μὲν οὖν εἰκὸς λέγεις. Τοὺς δέ γε ἀδικίας τε καὶ τυραννίδας καὶ ἁρπαγὰς προτετιμηκότας εἰς τὰ τῶν λύκων τε καὶ ἱεράκων καὶ ἰκτίνων γένη.

If I did not think that I am going, &c., 63B:—

εἰ μὲν μὴ ᾤμην ἥξειν πρῶτον μὲν παρὰ θεοὺς ἄλλους σοφούς τε καὶ ἀγαθούς, ἔπειτα καὶ παρ' ἀνθρώπους τετελευτηκότας ἀμεινοὺς τῶν ἐνθάδε, ἠδίκουν ἂν οὐκ ἀγανακτῶν τῷ θανάτῳ.

P. 66. *When a man dies, a daimon, &c.*, 107D, 108C:—

λέγεται δὲ οὕτως, ὡς ἄρα τελευτήσαντα ἕκαστον ὁ ἑκάστου δαίμων, ὅσπερ ζῶντα εἰλήχει, οὗτος ἄγειν ἐπιχειρεῖ εἰς δή τινα

τόπον, οἷ δεῖ τοὺς συλλεγέντας διαδικασαμένους εἰς Ἅιδου πορεύεσθαι μετὰ ἡγεμόνος ἐκείνου, ᾧ δὴ προστέτακται τοὺς ἐνθένδε ἐκεῖσε πορεῦσαι. τυχόντας δ' ἐκεῖ, ὧν δεῖ τυχεῖν, καὶ μείναντας ὃν χρὴ χρόνον, ἄλλος δεῦρο πάλιν ἡγεμὼν κομίζει ἐν πολλαῖς χρόνου καὶ μακραῖς περιόδοις. ἔστι δὲ ἄρα ἡ πορεία οὐχ ὡς ὁ Αἰσχύλου Τήλεφος λέγει· ἐκεῖνος μὲν γὰρ ἁπλῆν οἶμόν φησιν εἰς Ἅιδου φέρειν, ἡ δ'οὔτε ἁπλῆ οὔτε μία φαίνεταί μοι εἶναι. οὐδὲ γὰρ ἂν ἡγεμόνων ἔδει, οὐ γάρ πού τις ἂν διαμάρτοι οὐδαμόσε μιᾶς ὁδοῦ οὔσης. νῦν δὲ ἔοικε σχίσεις δὲ καὶ περιόδους πολλὰς ἔχειν· ἀπὸ τῶν ὁσίων τε καὶ νομίμων τῶν ἐνθάδε τεκμαιρόμενος λέγω. ἡ μὲν κοσμία τε καὶ φρόνιμος ψυχὴ ἕπεταί τε καί οὐκ ἀγνοεῖ τὰ παρόντα· ἡ δ' ἐπιθυμητικῶς τοῦ σώματος ἔχουσα, ὅπερ ἐν τῷ ἔμπροσθεν εἶπον, περὶ ἐκεῖνο πολὺν χρόνον ἐπτοημένη καὶ περὶ τὸν ὁρατὸν τόπον πολλὰ ἀντιτείνασα καὶ πολλὰ παθοῦσα βίᾳ καὶ μόγις ὑπὸ τοῦ προστεταγμένου δαίμονος οἴχεται ἀγομένη. ἀφικομένην δὲ ὅθιπερ αἱ ἄλλαι, τὴν μὲν ἀκάθαρτον καί τι πεποιηκυῖαν τοιοῦτον, ἢ φόνων ἀδίκων ἡμμένην ἢ ἄλλ' ἄττα τοιαῦτα εἰργασμένην, ἃ τούτων ἀδελφά τε καὶ ἀδελφῶν ψυχῶν ἔργα τυγχάνει ὄντα, ταύτην μὲν ἅπας φεύγει τε καὶ ὑπεκτρέπεται καὶ οὔτε ξυνέμπορος οὔτε ἡγεμὼν ἐθέλει γίγνεσθαι, αὐτὴ δὲ πλανᾶται ἐν πάσῃ ἐχομένη ἀπορίᾳ, ἕως ἂν δή τινες χρόνοι γένωνται, ὧν ἐλθόντων ὑπ' ἀνάγκης φέρεται εἰς τὴν αὐτῇ πρέπουσαν οἴκησιν· ἡ δὲ καθαρῶς τε καὶ μετρίως τὸν βίον διεξελθοῦσα καὶ ξυνεμπόρων καὶ ἡγεμόνων θεῶν τυχοῦσα ᾤκησεν τὸν αὐτῃ ἑκάστη τόπον προσήκοντα.

Those of the dead who led a middle sort of life, &c., and *Those who repented of their sins, &c.*, 113D–114C:—

καὶ οἳ μὲν ἂν δόξωσι μέσως βεβιωκέναι, πορευθέντες ἐπὶ τὸν Ἀχέροντα, ἀναβάντες ἃ δὴ αὐτοῖς ὀχήματά ἐστιν, ἐπὶ τούτων ἀφικνοῦνται εἰς τὴν λίμνην, καὶ ἐκεῖ οἰκοῦσί τε καὶ καθαιρόμενοι τῶν τε ἀδικημάτων διδόντες δίκας ἀπολύονται, εἴ τίς τι ἠδίκηκεν, τῶν τε εὐεργεσιῶν τιμὰς φέρονται κατὰ τὴν ἀξίαν ἕκαστος. οἳ δ' ἂν δόξωσιν ἀνιάτως ἔχειν διὰ τὰ μεγέθη τῶν ἁμαρτημάτων, ἱεροσυλίας πολλὰς καὶ μεγάλας ἢ φόνους ἀδίκους καὶ παρανόμους

πολλοὺς ἐξειργασμενοι ἢ ἄλλα ὅσα τοιαῦτα τυγχάνει ὄντα, τούτους δὲ ἡ προσήκουσα μοῖρα ῥίπτει εἰς τὸν Τάρταρον, ὅθεν οὔποτε ἐκβαίνουσιν. οἳ δ' ἂν ἰάσιμα μέν, μεγάλα δὲ δόξωσιν ἡμαρτηκέναι ἁμαρτήματα, οἷον πρὸς πατέρα ἢ μητέρα ὑπ' ὀργῆς βίαιόν τι πράξαντες, καὶ μεταμέλον αὐτοῖς τὸν ἄλλον βίον βιῶσιν, ἢ ἀνδροφόνοι τοιούτῳ τινὶ ἄλλῳ τρόπῳ γένωνται, τοιούτους δὲ ἐμπεσεῖν μὲν εἰς τὸν Τάρταρον ἀνάγκη, ἐμπεσόντας δὲ αὐτοὺς καὶ ἐνιαυτὸν ἐκεῖ γενομένους ἐκβάλλει τὸ κῦμα, τοὺς μέν ἀνδροφόνους κατὰ τὸν Κωκυτόν, τοὺς δὲ πατραλοίας και μητραλοίας κατᾶ τὸν Πυριφλεγεθοντα . ἐπειδάν δὲ φερόμενοι γένωνται κατὰ τὴν λίμνην τὴν 'Αχερουσιάδα, ἐνταῦθα βοῶσί τε καὶ καλοῦσιν, οἱ μὲν οὓς ἀπέκτειναν, οἳ δὲ οὓς ὕβρισαν, καλέσαντες δ' ἱκετεύουσι καὶ δέονται ἐᾶσαι σφᾶς ἐκβῆναι εἰς τὴν λίμνην καὶ δέξασθαι, καὶ ἔαν μὲν πείσωσιν, ἐκβαίνουσί τε καὶ λήγουσι τῶν κακῶν, εἰ δὲ μὴ, φέρονται αὖθις εἰς τὸν Τάρταρον καὶ ἐκεῖθεν πάλιν εἰς τοὺς ποταμούς, καὶ ταῦτα πάσχοντες οὐ πρότερον παύονται, πρὶν ἂν πείσωσιν οὓς ἠδίκησαν· αὕτη γὰρ ἡ δίκν ὑπὸ τῶν δικαστῶν αὐτοῖς ἐτάχθη· οἳ δὲ δὴ ἂν δόξωσι διαφερόντως πρὸς τὸ ὁσίως βιῶναι, οὗτοί εἰσιν οἱ τῶνδε μὲν τῶν τόπων τῶν ἐν τῇ γῇ ἐλευθερούμενοί τε καὶ ἀπαλλαττόμενοι ὥσπερ δεσμωτηρίων, ἄνω δὲ εἰς τὴν καθαρὰν οἴκησιν. ἀφικνούμενοι καὶ ἐπὶ τῆς γῆς οἰκιζόμενοι.

P. 68. *Ignorance, knowledge.*—*Cf. Sáṅkhya Káriká*, *v.* 44, "By knowledge is deliverance; by the reverse, bondage."

P. 69. *These eight things, &c.*—*Cf.* the Commentary of Bhojarâjâ to "The Yoga Aphorisms of Patañjali," &c., *v.* xlv., also Gauḍapâda's *Bhâshya* to the *Sâṅkhyâ Kârikâ*, *v.* xxiii. (pp. 83, 84), where he quotes the work of Patanjali (*Pâtañjala*).

P. 69. *Passing through several stages.*—*Cf.* with these four stages of knowledge the "*seven kinds of enlightenment*" in "The Yoga Aphorisms," ii. *v.* xxvii., and Commentary.

The fourth stage of Alberuni's Patañjali corresponds to the seventh kind of Bhojadeva.

P. 70. *In the book Gîtâ.*—There is no passage like this in the *Bhagavad-Gîtâ*. The words, "pleasures which in reality are pains" (p. 71, 6), may be compared with *Bhagavad-Gîtâ*, v. 22: "For the pleasures that are born of (these) contacts are the wombs of pain."

A similar sentence recurs in another quotation from *Gîtâ* here on p. 78, l. pen: "Pleasures of a kind which, in reality, are disguised pains."

P. 71. *Socrates.*—The following quotation is composed of the two passages, *Phædo*, 65 B–D and 67A:—

ὅταν μὲν γὰρ μετὰ τοῦ σώματος ἐπιχειρῇ τι σκοπεῖν, δῆλον ὅτι τότε ἐξαπατᾶται ὑπ' αὐτοῦ. Ἀληθῆ λέγεις. Ἆρ' οὖν οὐκ ἐν τῷ λογίζεσθαι, εἴπερ που ἄλλοθι, κατάδηλον αὐτῇ γίγνεταί τι τῶν ὄντων; Ναί. λογίζεται δέ γέ που τότε κάλλιστα, ὅταν μηδὲν τούτων αὐτὴν παραλυπῇ, μήτε ἀκοὴ μήτε ὄψις μήτε ἀλγηδὼν μήτε τις ἡδονή, ἀλλ' ὅ τι μάλιστα αὐτὴ καθ' αὑτὴν γίγνηται ἐῶσα χαίρειν τὸ σῶμα, καὶ καθ' ὅσον δύναται μὴ κοινωνοῦσα αὐτῷ μηδ' ἁπτομένη ὀρέγηται τοῦ ὄντος. Ἔστι ταῦτα. Οὐκοῦν καὶ ἐνταῦθα ἡ τοῦ φιλοσόφου ψυχὴ μάλιστα ἀτιμάζει τὸ σῶμα καὶ φεύγει ἀπ' αὐτοῦ, ζητεῖ δὲ αὐτὴ καθ' αὑτὴν γίγνεσθαι.

67A.—καὶ ἐν ᾧ ἂν ζῶμεν, οὕτως, ὡς ἔοικεν, ἐγγυτάτω ἐσόμεθα τοῦ εἰδέναι, ἐὰν ὅ τι μάλιστα μηδὲν ὁμιλῶμεν τῷ σώματι μηδὲ κοινωνῶμεν, ὅ τι μὴ πᾶσα ἀνάγκη, μηδὲ ἀναπιμπλώμεθα τῆς τούτου φύσεως, ἀλλὰ καθαρεύωμεν ἀπ' αὐτοῦ, ἕως ἂν ὁ θεὸς αὐτὸς ἀπολύσῃ ἡμᾶς. καὶ οὕτω μὲν καθαροὶ ἀπαλλαττόμενοι τῆς τοῦ σώματος ἀφροσύνης, μετὰ τοιούτων τε ἐσόμεθα καὶ γνωσόμεθα δι' ἡμῶν πᾶν τὸ εἰλικρινές. τοῦτο δ' ἐστὶν ἴσως τὸ ἀληθές.

The words خدعت حينئذ مند (٣٥, 8) are barbaric Arabic = τότε ἐξαπατᾶται ὑπ' αὐτοῦ. Probably the Syriac translation had a passive word with ܡܢܗ = ὑπ' αὐτοῦ, and this was literally rendered in Arabic by منه. The reading of the MS. معه cannot be accounted for in any way.

P. 71. *From the book Gîtâ.*—The text is not found in the *Bhagavad-Gîtâ.*

P. 72. *Kapila, for he was born knowing.*—*Cf.* Colebrooke, "Essays," i. 242.

P. 72. *Cupidity, wrath, and ignorance,*—"The Yoga Aphorisms," ii. 3 *seq.*, mention *five afflictions:* ignorance, egoism, desire, aversion, and ardent attachment to life. Perhaps we may also compare *Sâṁkhya Kârikâ*, *v.* lxiii., where seven modes are enumerated by which nature binds herself: virtue, dispassionateness, power, vice, ignorance, passion, and weakness.

P. 73.—The three primary forces are *rajas, tamas, sattva.*

P. 73. *To stop all motions, and even the breathing.*—*Cf. on the stoppage of motion* and the expulsion and retention of breath, "Yoga Aphorisms of Patañjali," i. xxxiv., and the notes of Râjendralâlâ Mitra.

P. 73. *In the book Gîtâ.*—The two quotations as given here are not found in the *Bhagavad-Gîtâ.* Only the comparison with the lamp occurs in vi. 19: "As a lamp sheltered from the wind does not flicker;" this is the wonted simile of the Yogin who is subdued in thought," &c.

Also the comparison with the waters of the rivers not increasing the ocean is found ii. 70: "He attains to peace into whom all desires enter as rivers enter into the ocean, which is ever filled, and (yet) remains within its bounds," &c.

P. 74. *The following nine rules.*—Five of these commandments are mentioned in "The Yoga Aphorisms," ii. xxx., and the other four seem to be identical with the five obligations mentioned in ii. xxxii.

P. 75.—*Pythagoras.*—I do not know the Greek original of this saying. The idea of the body being a fetter to the soul is frequently met with in the book of the Neopythagorean philosophers, as Apollonius of Tyana and others;

cf. Zeller, *Philosophie der Griechen*, iii. 2, p. 156. For two more sentences of Pythagoras, *v.* i. p. 85, where Alberuni states that he has taken them from Ammonius, *v.* note to p. 85.

P. 75. *The book Sâṁkhya says.*—It is difficult to say whether the Arabic manuscript has يطمعه or يظنه, and not knowing a Sanskrit parallel to this saying, I am thrown upon conjecture. Preferring the latter reading, I translate: "Everything which man opines (*i.e.* on which he forms an opinion) is a terminus to him, for he does not go beyond it," which may mean that as long as the thinking faculty of soul has not ceased, it is not liberated, has not attained *moksha*. Cf. *Sâṁkhya Kârikâ*, v. lxviii.: "When separation of the informed soul from its corporeal frame at length takes place, and nature in respect of it ceases, then is absolute and final deliverance accomplished."

Pp. 75, 76. *Gîtâ.*—The three quotations from this book are not found in the *Bhagavad-Gîtâ.*

P. 76. *Socrates.*—The quotations given here are found in *Phædo*, 84E–85B:—

καὶ, ὡς ἔοικε, τῶν κύκνων δοκῶ φαυλότερος ὑμῖν εἶναι τὴν μαντικὴν, οἳ ἐπειδὰν αἴσθωνται ὅτι δεῖ αὐτοὺς ἀποθανεῖν, ᾄδοντες καὶ ἐν τῷ πρόσθεν χρόνῳ, τότε δὴ πλεῖστα καὶ μάλιστα ᾄδουσι, γεγηθότες ὅτι μέλλουσι παρὰ τὸν θεὸν ἀπίεναι οὗπερ εἰσὶ θεράποντες, κ.τ.λ. ἀλλ' ἅτε, οἶμαι, τοῦ 'Απόλλωνος ὄντες μαντικοί τέ εἰσι καὶ προειδότες τὰ ἐν Ἅιδου ἀγαθὰ ἄδουσι καὶ τέρπονται ἐκείνην' τὴν ἡμέραν διαφερόντως ἢ ἐν τῷ ἔμπροσθεν χρόνῳ. ἐγὼ δὲ καὶ αὐτὸς ἡγοῦμαι ὁμόδουλός τε εἶναι τῶν κύκνων καὶ ἱερὸς τοῦ αὐτοῦ θεοῦ, καὶ οὐ χεῖρον ἐκείνων τὴν μαντικὴν ἔχειν παρὰ τοῦ δεσπότου, οὐδὲ δυσθυμότερον αὐτῶν τοῦ βίου ἀπαλλάττεσθαι.

In the middle a passage has been left out by Alberuni, or by the author of that edition of *Phædo* which he used.

P. 76. *In the book of Patañjali.*—To the explanation of the four parts of the path of liberation on pp. 76–80 I do not know a parallel from a Sanskrit source.

P. 77. *In the book Vishṇu-Dharma.*—*Cf.* on this the note to p. 54. The Arabic text has not Parikshit, but *Parîkṣha*, which name is mentioned by Hall in a note to *Vishṇu-Purâṇa*, iv., chap. xx. p. 154.

Pp. 78, 79. *The book Gîtâ.*—These three extracts are not found in the *Bhagavad-Gîtâ*. The words, "He who mortifies his lust," &c., compare with *Bhagavad-Gîtâ*, iv. 21, "Void of hope, self-restrained in thought, performing merely bodily work, he contracts no sin." Regarding the passage, "Pleasures of a kind which, in reality, are disguised pains," *v.* note to p. 70.

The expression, *the nine doors of thy body* (p. 79, 8), is also found in *Bhagavad-Gîtâ*, v. 13: "in the city of nine gates," *i.e.* in the body. *Cf.* also *Sâṁkhya Kârikâ*, *v.* xxxv.

Pp. 79, 80. *The book Gîtâ.*—These quotations cannot be compared with anything in the *Bhagavad-Gîtâ*.

P. 81. *Patañjali.*—There is a certain resemblance between these words and the last of "The Yoga Aphorisms" (iv. xxxviii.): "Isolation is the regression of the qualities devoid of the purpose of soul, or it is the abiding of the thinking power in its own nature."

Pp. 81, 82. *Sâṁkhya.*—The comparison with the wheel of the potter (not the silk-weaver) is also found in *Sâṁkhya Kârikâ*, *v.* lxvii.

P. 82. *In the book of Patañjali.*—I have not found these two passages anywhere else. As to the faculties of the perfect Yogin, *cf.* "Yoga Aphorisms," iii. 42, 44, 45.

P. 83. *The Sûfî explain the Koranic verse, &c.*—Being asked about the story of *Dhulḳarnaini* (Bicornutus, *i.e.* Alexander), Muhammad says, "*We* (*i.e.* Allah) *have made room for him on earth;*" or, as Sale translates, "*We stablished for him on earth,*" which means, *We have given him* *a position of well-established authority or power on earth*, and this authority or power is interpreted by Ṣûfî commentators in accordance with their tenets, perfectly harmonising with those of the Yoga philosophy.

Pp. 83, 84. *Sâṁkhya.*—With the tale of the man travelling in the night with his pupils compare a similar one in Gauḍapâda's *Bhâshya* to *Sâṁkhya Kârikâ*, v. xxx. (on p. 106).

P. 85.—*Ammonius*, a philosopher of the Neoplatonic school, v. Zeller, *Philosophie der Griechen*, iii.c. 829 *seq.* A Greek book of his which contains these extracts from Pythagoras and Empedocles is not known. He has been known to the Arabs as commentator of Aristotle: v. Wenrich, *De Auctorum Græcorum Versionibus*, p. 289; Fihrist, p. ٢٥٣.

By Heracles in the passage, "Empedocles and his successors as far as Heracles," is probably meant Heraclides Ponticus.

Pp. 85, 86. *Socrates says.*—The first extract is identical with *Phædo*, 79D, the second is composed of 80B, 80A, 81 A B, the order of the Greek text having been abandoned.

Phædo, 79D. Ὅταν δέ γε αὐτὴ καθ' αὑτὴν σκοπῇ, ἐκεῖσε οἴχεται εἰς τὸ· καθαρόν τε καὶ ἀεὶ ὂν καὶ ἀθάνατον καὶ ὡσαύτως ἔχον, καὶ ὡς συγγενὴς οὖσα αὐτοῦ ἀεὶ μετ' ἐκείνου τε γίγνεται, ὅτανπερ αὐτὴ καθ' αὑτήν γένηται καὶ ἐξῇ αὐτῇ, καὶ πέπαυταί τε τοῦ πλάνου καὶ περὶ ἐκεῖνα ἀεὶ κατὰ ταὐτὰ ὡσαύτως ἔχει ἅτε τοιούτων ἐφαπτομένη· καὶ τοῦτο αὐτῆς τὸ παθημα φρόνησις κέκληται.

80B. Σκόπει δή, ἔφη, ὦ Κέβης, εἰ ἐκ πάντων τῶν εἰρημένων τάδε ἡμῖν ξυμβαίνει, τῷ μὲν θειῴ καὶ ἀθανάτῳ καὶ νοητῷ καὶ μονοειδεῖ καὶ ἀδιαλύτῳ καὶ ἀεὶ ὡσαύτως καὶ κατὰ ταὐτὰ ἔχοντι ἑαυτῷ ὁμοιότατον εἶναι ψυχήν, τῷ δ'ἀνθρωπίνῳ καὶ θνητῳ καὶ ἀνοητῳ καὶ πολυειδεῖ καὶ διαλυτῷ καὶ μηδέποτε κατὰ ταὐτὰ ἔχοντι ἑαυτῷ ὁμοιότατον αὖ εἶναι σῶμα.

80A. ἐπειδὰν ἐν τῷ αὐτῷ ὦσι ψυχὴ καὶ σῶμα, τῷ μὲν δουλευειν καὶ ἄρχεσθαι ἡ φύσις προστάττει, τῇ δὲ ἄρχειν καὶ δεσπόζειν.

81 A and B. Οὐκοῦν οὕτω μὲν ἔχουσα εἰς τὸ ὅμοιον αὐτῇ, τὸ αειδές, ἀπέρχεται, τὸ θεῖόν τε καὶ ἀθάνατον καὶ φρόνιμον, οἷ ἀφικομένῃ ὑπάρχει αὐτῇ εὐδαίμονι εἶναι, πλάνης καὶ ἀνοίας καὶ φόβων καὶ ἀγρίων ἐρώτων καὶ τῶν ἄλλων κακῶν τῶν ἀνθρωπείων ἀπηλλαγμένη, ὥσπερ δὲ λέγεται κατὰ τῶν μεμνημένων, ὡς ἀληθῶς τὸν λοιπὸν χρόνον μετὰ τῶν θεῶν διάγουσα; οὕτω φῶμεν, ὦ Κέβης, ἢ ἄλλως; οὕτω νὴ Δί', ἔφη ὁ Κέβης· 'Εὰν δέ γε, οἶμαι, μεμιασμένη καὶ ἀκάθαρτος τοῦ σώματος ἀπαλλάττηται, ἅτε τῷ σώματι ἀεὶ ξυνοῦσα καὶ τοῦτο θεραπεύουσα καὶ ἐρῶσα καὶ γεγοητευμένη ὑπ' αὐτοῦ, ὑπό τε τῶν ἐπιθυμιῶν καὶ ἡδονῶν, ὥστε μηδὲν ἄλλο δοκεῖν εἶναι ἀληθὲς ἀλλ' ἢ τὸ σωματοειδὲς οὗ τις ἂν ἅψαιτο, κ.τ.λ.

Pp. 86, 87. *Arjuna says.*—The comparison of Brahman with an *aśvattha* tree is found in *Bhagavad-Gîtâ*, xv. 1–6, and x. 26.

The doctrine of Patañjali.—Ideas similar to these Ṣûfî sentences are found in *Bhagavad-Gîtâ*, vi. 28–31, describing the union of the soul with Brahman.

Pp. 87, 88.—On Abû-Bakr Ash-shiblî *cf.* Ibn Khallikân, translated by De Slane, i. 511–513; Abulmaḥâsin, *Annales*, ii. 313. He lived in Bagdad, was a pupil of Junaid, died A.H. 334 = A.D. 946, in Bagdad, and was buried there. On Abû-Yazîd Albisṭâmî *cf.* Ibn Khallikân, nr. 311. He died A.H. 261 = A.D. 875. Jâmî has articles on these two mystics with many quotations from them in his *Nafaḥât-al'uns* (Lee's "Persian Series," the *Nafahât-alons*, &c., or the Lives of the Soofis, by Jâmî, Calcutta, 1859, pp. 201 and 62).

P. 88. *The Ṣûfî explain the Koranic passage* (Sura 2, 68), *&c.*—"And when you had killed a person and were disputing among yourselves (the one throwing the blame on the other), whilst God was bringing to light what you concealed, then we spoke: Beat him (the killed person) with part of her (the killed cow mentioned in the preceding"). In that case the killed person will again become alive and tell who murdered him. "Thus God brings to life the dead ones," &c. *Cf.* A. Geiger, *Was hat Mohammed aus dem Judenthume aufgenommen?* Bonn, 1833, p. 172. Muḥammad has moulded this part of Sûra 2 from elements taken directly or indirectly from Numb. xix. 2 *seq.*, and Deut. xxi. 2 *seq.*

The Sufies try to show by this sentence that the body must be mortified before the heart can become alive by mystic knowledge.

P. 89. *Sâṁkhya.*—For the two enumerations of created beings, v. Gauḍapâda to S. Kârikâ, liii. p. 162, and xliv. p. 143.

The reading of the MS سومين is certainly wrong. The author means *saumya* = سومى, but it would have been better to write سوم in accordance with ديت = *daitya*. As all the other words of this enumeration stand in the singular, it is not allowable to read this word in a plural form, سومين like رشين, the *Ṛishis*, پترين the *Pitṛis*.

P. 90. *In the book Gîtâ.*—The first quotation on the prevalence of one of the three *guṇas*, *sattva*, *rajas*, *tamas*, is to be compared with *Bhagavad-Gîtâ*, xvii. 3, 4, *seq.*, and xiv. 6–8 *seq.*

The second extract, "Belief and virtue," &c. I am inclined to combine with *Bhagavad-Gîtâ*, xvi. 3, 4, *seq.*

P. 91. *People say that Zoroaster, &c.*—The author was aware of the identity of the Persian *dêv* (demon) with the Indian *deva* (god). It is in this way that he tries to account for the discrepancy of the meaning.

P. 92. *Sâṁkhya*, v. p. 89; *Vâsudeva*, v. p. 90, or *Bhagavad-Gîtâ*, xvii. 4.

P. 95. *Galenus*, περὶ συνθέσεως φαρμάκων τῶν κατὰ τόπους, ed. Kühn, vol. xiii. p. 268;—

Ξανθὴν μὲν τρίχα βάλλε μυρίπνοον ἰσοθέοιο
Οὗ λύθρος Ἑρμείας λάμπεται ἐν βοτάναις.
Κρόκου δὲ σταθμὸν φρένας ἀνέρος, οὐ γὰρ ἄδηλον,
Βάλλε δὲ καὶ δραχμὴν Ναπλίου Εὐβοέως, κ.τ.λ.
Δραχμὴν καὶ ῥίζης ψευδωνύμου, ἣν ἀνέθρεψε
Χῶρος ὁ τὸν Πίσσῃ Ζῆνα λοχευσάμενος.

The second quotation, v. on p. 271 :—

ἀξιοῖ βάλλειν ἣν ψευδώνυμον εἴρηκε ῥίζαν, ἐπειδὴ στάχυς ὀνομάζεται νάρδου· βούλεταί δ' αὐτὴν εἶναι Κρητικὴν, ἔνθα φησίν, ἣν ἀνέθρεψε χῶρος ὁ τὸν Πίσσῃ Ζῆνα λοχεύσαμενος, ἐπειδὴ τὸν Δία φασὶν οἱ μυθολόγοι κατὰ τὸ Δικταῖον ὄρος ἐν Κρήτῃ τραφῆναι, κρυπτόμενον ὑπὸ τῆς μητρὸς Ῥ'ας, ὅπως μὴ καὶ αὐτὸς ὑπὸ τοῦ πατρὸς τοῦ Κρόνου καταπόθῃ.

P. 96. *Europe, the daughter of Phœnix, &c.*—In the source whence the author drew his information about Greek legends, Greek, Hebrew, and Persian traditions seem to have been mixed together. It was synchronistic like the *Chronicon* of Eusebius, with which it is nearly related (note to p. 105), comparing the dates of Greek history with those of the Biblical and Persian history. Julius Africanus and Eusebius are the fathers of this kind of literature, but I do not know by whom the book which Alberuni used had been composed. *Cf. Eusebi chronicorum canonum quæ supersunt*, ed. A. Schœne, ii. p. 13 (Zeus), 26 (Cecrops), 32, 34 (Asterius); also the Syriac Epitome, p. 204, 206.

P. 96. *The story of Alexander* is derived from the romance of Pseudo-Kallisthenes (ed. Didot), which Eastern scholars have mistaken for a historic record.

"Man cannot oppose the gods" (p. 97, 1) = πρὸς πάντας γὰρ δυνάμεθα οἱ βασιλεῖς, πρὸς δὲ τοὺς θεοὺς οὐ δυνάμεθα (ed. Didot, i. 9).

"When then he died," &c., "from a wound in the neck," &c. (p. 97, 4) = πεσὼν δὲ Νεκτανεβὼς λαμβάνει φοβερὸν τραῦμα κατὰ τοῦ ἰσχίου αὐτοῦ (i. 14).

P. 97. *Galenus.*—*Cf.* note to p. 34.

P. 97. *Aratus.*—The author quotes the *Phænomena* and a commentary to them, which exhibits certain relations with the scholia edited by Immanuel Bekker, but is not identical with them. As I learn from my colleague, Professor C. Robert, this commentary is to be combined with the *Catasterismi* of Pseudo-Eratosthenes.

The first quotation from *Aratus* is *v.* I *seq.*

Ἐκ Διὸς ἀρχώμεσθα, τὸν οὐδέποτ' ἄνδρες ἐῶμεν
Αῤῥητον· μεσταὶ δὲ Διὸς πᾶσαι μὲν ἀγυιαί,
Πᾶσαι δ' ἀνθρώπων ἀγοραὶ, μεστὴ δὲ θάλασσα
Καὶ λιμένες· πάντη δὲ Διὸς κεχρήμεθα πάντες.
Τοῦ γὰρ καὶ γένος εἰμέν· ὁ δ' ἤπιος ἀνθρώποισιν
Δεξιὰ σημαίνει, λαοὺς δ' ἐπὶ ἔργον ἐγείρει,
Μιμνήσκων βιότοιο· λέγει δ' ὅτε βῶλος ἀρίστη
Βουσί τε καὶ μακέλῃσι· λέγει δ' ὅτε δεξιαὶ ὧραι
Καὶ φυτὰ γυρῶσαι, καὶ σπέρματα πάντα βαλέσθαι.
Αὐτὸς γὰρ τάγε σήματ' ἐν οὐρανῷ ἐστήριξεν,
Λστρα διακρίνας· ἐσκέψατο δ' εἰς ἐνιαυτὸν
Λστέρας, οἵ κε μάλιστα τετυγμένα σημαίνοιεν
Ανδράσιν ὡράων, ὄφῤ ἔμπεδα πάντα φύωνται.
Τῷ μιν ἀεὶ πρῶτόν τε καὶ ὕστατον ἱλάσκονται.
Χαῖρε, πάτερ, μέγα θαῦμα, μὲγ' ἀνθρώποισιν ὄνειαρ,
Αὐτὸς καὶ προτέρη γενεή, χαίροιτε δὲ Μοῦσαι
Μειλίχιαι μάλα πᾶσιν, κ.τ.λ.

P. 97. *Commentary on the Phænomena of Aratus.*—The following quotation from the *Scholia Sangermanensia*, p. 55, I owe to the kindness of Professor Robert: "Crates autem Jovem dictum cœlum, invocatum vero merito ærem et ætherem, quod in his sint sidera, et Homerum Jovem dixisse in aliqua parte cœlum."

ὡς δ' ὅτι ταρφεῖαι νεφέλαι Διὸς ἐκποτίονται
—(*Ilias*, i. 3571).

The common tradition of this verse is—

ὡς δ' ὅτι ταρφεῖαι νιφάδεις Διὸς ἐκποτίονται, and thus it has been rendered by Alberuni. *Cf.* on the *Scholia Sangermanensia*, C. Robert, *Eratosthenis Catasterismorum Reliquiæ*, Berlin, 1878, p. 21.

P. 99. *These twins, state and religion.*—*Vide* note to p. 79.

P. 100. *When Ardashîr Ibn Bâbak.*—*Cf.* with these ranks of the Persian nation under the Sasanians the "Chronology of Ancient Nations," translated by Dr. Edward Sachau, London, 1878, pp. 203 and 206; *Geschichte der Perser und Araber zur Zeit der Sasaniden*, by Th. Nöldeke, p. 437 *seq.*

P. 101. *The Vaiśya who were created from.*—In the Arabic text, ۴۹, 4, there is a lacuna, where originally stood the words "from the thigh (*ûru*) of Brahman. The Sûdra who were created from." *Cf.* Manu, *Dharmaśâstra*, i. 87, *mukha-bâhu-ûru-paj-jânâṁ.*

P. 101. *Hâdî, Doma, &c.*—Of these classes of outcast people, the Badhatau are not known to me. The Caṇḍâla are well known, called *Sandâlia* by Ibn Khurdâdhbih (Elliot "History of India," i. 16). The Hâdîs and Ḍom are mentioned by Colebrooke, "Essays," ii., "Enumeration of Indian Classes," p. 169, note 3. On the latter (*cf.* Rom, the name of the gipsies), *v.* "Memoirs on the History, Folk-lore, and Distribution of the Races," &c., by Elliot, edited by Beames, London, 1869, i. p. 84. Are the Badhatau identical with the Bediyâs, mentioned in the note of Colebrooke just quoted?

P. 103. *Vâsudeva answered.*—The first quotation from *Gîtâ* is identical with *Bhagavad-Gîtâ*, xviii. 41–45; the second is similar to ii. 31–38.

P. 104. *The saying of Vyâsa.*—*Vide* note to pp. 40–44.

P. 104. *Vâsudeva.*—This quotation from *Gîtâ* much resembles *Bhagavad-Gîtâ*, ix. 32, 33.

P. 105. *Minos.*—I cannot acquit the book on ancient history which Alberuni used of the blunder of having split the Minos of Greek traditions into two persons, a

Minos and a Μιanos (*sic*). *Cf.* on this source note to p. 96.

At the time of Darius, &c.—Except the synchronism of Persian history, the whole passage relating to Numa Pompilius may be derived from Eusebius, *Chronicon*, ii. 82:—

Νουμᾶς μετὰ Ῥωμύλον βασιλεύσας Ῥώμης πρῶτος νόμους Ρωμαίοις εἰσήγαγεν· [ὁ αὐτὸς τὸ Καπετώλιον ἐκ θεμελίων ᾠκοδόμησεν·] ὁ αὐτὸς τῷ ἐνιαυτῷ δύο μῆνας προσέθηκε, τόν τε Ἰανουάριον καὶ τὸν Φεβρουάριον, δεκαμηναίου τοῦ ἐνιαυτοῦ πρὸ τούτου χρηματίζοντος· ὁ αὐτὸς καὶ κογγιάριον ἔδωκεν, ἀσσάρια ξύλινα καὶ σκύτινα καὶ ὀστράκινα.

P. 105. *Plato.*—These extracts from Plato's *Leges* are the remnant of an Arabic translation. We give the Greek text for the purpose of comparison:—

I. 1. Ἀθηναῖος. Θεὸς ἤ τις ἀνθρώπων ὑμῖν, ὦ ξένοι, εἴληφε τὴν αἰτίαν τῆς τῶν νόμων διαθέσεως; Κλενίας. Θεὸς, ὦ ξένε, θεός, ὥς γε τὸ δικαιότατον εἰπεῖν, παρὰ μὲν ἡμῖν Ζεύς, παρὰ δὲ Λακεδαιμονίοις, ὅθεν ὅδ' ἐστίν, οἶμαι φάναι τούτους Ἀπόλλωνα.

I. 6. Ὥσπερ τό τε ἀληθές, οἶμαι, καὶ τὸ δίκαιον ὑπέρ γε θείας διαλεγομενους λέγειν, οὐχ ὡς πρὸς ἀρετῆς τι μόριον καὶ ταῦτα τὸ φαυλότατον ἐτίθει βλέπων, ἀλλὰ πρὸς πᾶσαν ἀρετήν, κ.τ.λ.

I. 6. οἱ Κρητῶν νόμοι οὐκ εἰσὶ μάτην διαφερόντως ἐν πᾶσιν εὐδόκιμοι τοῖς Ἕλλησιν· ἔχουσι γὰρ ὀρθῶς, τοὺς αὐτοῖς χρωμένους εὐδαίμονας ἀποτελοῦντες· ἅπαντα γὰρ τὰ ἀγαθὰ πορίζουσι.

II. 1. θεοὶ δὲ, οἰκτείραντες τὸ τῶν ἀνθρώπων ἐπίπονον τεφυκὸς γένος, ἀναπαύλας τε αὐτοῖς τῶν πόνων ἐτάξαντο τὰς τῶν ἑορτῶν ἀμοιβάς, καὶ Μούσας Ἀπόλλωνά τε μουσαγέτην καὶ Διόνυσον ξυνεορταστὰς ἔδοσαν.

II. 1. ἡμῖν δὲ οὓς εἴπομεν θεοὺς ξυγχορευτὰς δεδόσθαι, τούτους εἶναι καὶ τοὺς δεδωκότας τὴν ἔνρυθμόν τε καὶ ἐναρμόνιον αἴσθησιν μεθ' ἡδονῆς, ᾗ δή κινεῖν τε ἡμᾶς καὶ χορηγεῖν ἡμῖν τούτους, ᾠδαῖς τε καὶ ὀρχήσεσιν ἀλλήλους ξυνείροντας, χορούς τε ὠνομακέναι τὸ παρὰ τῆς χαρᾶς ἔμφυτον ὄνομα.

P. 107. *Śântanu.*—*Cf. Vishṇu-Purâṇa,* iv. ch. xx. p. 158, and the notes. The story of the curse of Pâṇḍu is given in the *Mahâbhârata Âdiparvan,* v. 3812 *seq.*

Vyâsa.—His mother is Satyavatî: *v. Vishṇu-Purâṇa,* l. c. The birth of Vyâsa is mentioned in *Mahâbhârata Âdiparvan,* v. 3802.

P. 108. *Pancahîr,* better *Panchîr.*—The author means the alpine countries of the Hindukush between Kashmîr and a line from Faizabad to Kabul, *i.e.* the Hazâra country, Svât, Citrâl, and Kafiristan. It is well known that polyandry exists among the Tibetan tribes in the Alps between Kashmîr and Tibet, but I am not aware whether it is also found among the inhabitants of the more western extension of the Himâlaya which he mentions, *e.g.* among the Siyâhposh. On polyandry in the Panjab *v.* Kirkpatrick in "Indian Antiquary," 1878, 86.

The Panchîr mentioned by the author is the tributary of the Kâbul-Rûd. Another Pancahîr (*sic*) is mentioned by the Arab geographer Yâḳût as a city in Bactriana with rich silver mines.

Among the heathen Arabs.—*Cf.* here i. 185.

P. 109. *A certain Jewish marriage.*—On this custom in India and Indian tradition, *cf.* Elliot-Beames, "Memoirs," i. 274, s.v. *Karâo.*

P. 109. *Barshawâr the Girshâh.*—This seems to be a mistake, and I propose to read, as I have done in the edition of the Arabic text, پدشوارگرشاه, *i.e.* the Shâh of Padashvârgir or Prince of Tabaristân (as *e.g.* Gîlânshâh = the Shâh of Gîlân). *Cf.* P. de Lagarde, *Beiträge zur Baktrischen Lexicographie,* p. 50; Sachau, "Chronology of Ancient Nations," p. 47, 19, and note; Nöldeke, *Geschichte der Perser und Araber zur Zeit der Sasaniden,* p. 462.

P. 112.—The story of Romulus is drawn from the *Chronographia* of Joannes Malalas, book vii. (Bonn edition, p. 172).

P. 113. *Ambarîsha.*—The story of this king seems to have been taken from the *Vishṇu-Dharma, v.* note to p. 54. Probably Ambarîsha, the son of Nabhâga, is meant, famous as a worshipper of Vishṇu. *Cf. Vishṇu-Purâṇa*, book iv. chap. ii. p. 257, note 1.

P. 116. *Nârada.*—The story of this saint, a Moses in India, is not known to me from other sources.

P. 116. *Jalam Ibn Shaibân.*—The pronunciation of the former name is conjectural, the history of this Karmatian chief unknown. The expedition of King Maḥmûd against Multân took place A.D. 1006, in the ninth year of his rule, the seventh year of his usurpation of sovereignty, in which he had left out the name of his Sâmânî liege-lord on the coins and in the public prayer, and had received the investiture, a robe and a title, from the source of all legitimacy in the Muslim world, the Khalif Alḳâdir, the great enemy and persecutor of the Karmatians. *Cf.* on this expedition Elliot, "History of India," ii. p. 441.

P. 116, l. 21.—There is an error in the calculation of the years. From the end of the Kṛitayuga up to the year 4132 of the Kaliyuga there have elapsed—

	Years.
Of the Tretâyuga	1,296,000
Of the Dvâparayuga	864,000
Of the Kaliyuga	4,132
Sum	2,164,132

As Alberuni gives but 216,432 years, it seems he has omitted by inadvertence the cipher 1 (*Schram*).

P. 117, l. 7.—The above supposition is confirmed by this passage; it ought to be the 132 years instead of the 432 years. One can consider 132 years as a kind of arbitrary equivalent for the sum of about 100 years, but 432 years cannot be an equivalent for about 100 years (*Schram*).

P. 117, l. 10.—It must be 2,164,000 instead of 216,000 (*Schram*).

P. 117. *Varâhamihira says.*—This extract is a translation of *Bṛihat-Saṁhitâ*, chap. lviii. §§ 30–48, 56–57, on the fabrication of the idols (p. 117–120); chap. lviii. §§ 4952, on the consequences of faults in the construction of idols (p. 120); chap. lx. § 19, on the various classes of priests (p. 121); chap. lx. §§ 4, 5, on the effects of the idols (p. 121). The order of the single verses is to some extent different from that of the Sanskrit text as exhibited in the edition of Kern. In the Arabic text, p. ٥٧, ١, in the lacuna after السهم; are required the words والسيف والترس, (“ the sword and shield ”).

P. 122. *Gîtâ.*—I do not know similar passages in *Bhagavad-Gîtâ*. The first quotation distantly reminds one of *Bhagavad-Gîtâ*, iv. 25.

P. 123. *Plato.*—This quotation shows considerable confusion in the rendering of the Greek text. *Cf. Leges*, iv. 8. πρῶτον μὲν, φαμέν, τιμὰς τὰς μετ' Ὀλυμπίους τε καὶ τοὺς τὴν πόλιν ἔχοντας θεοὺς τοῖς χθονίοις ἄν τις θεοῖς ἄρτια καὶ δεύτερα καὶ ἀριστερὰ νέμων ὀρθότατα τοῦ τῆς εὐσεβείας σκοποῦ τυγχάνοι, τοῖς δὲ τούτων ἄνωθεν τὰ περιττὰ καὶ ἀντίφωνα τοῖς ἔμπροσθεν ῥηθεῖσι νῦν δή· μετὰ θεοὺς δὲ τούσδε καὶ τοῖς δαίμοσιν ὅ γ' ἔυφρων ὀργιάζοι τ' ἂν, ἥρωσι δὲ μετὰ τούτους· ἐπακολουθεῖ δ' αὐτοῖς ἱδρύματα ἴδια πατρῴων θεῶν κατὰ νόμον ὀργιαζόμενα· γονέων δὲ μετὰ ταῦτα τιμαὶ ζώντων, ὡς θέμις, ὀφείλοντα ἀποτίνειν τὰ πρῶτά τε καὶ μέγιστα ὀφειλήματα, κ.τ.λ.

The underlined words are the original of the Arabic quotation. The translator has rendered δαίμοσιν by آلهة (gods), ἥρωσι by سكينات, by which elsewhere the word Μοῦσαι is translated, and ὀργιάζειν by نُصِبَ بالسرّ (instead of نصب فى اجتهد = السرّ). He seems to have mistaken the meaning of the word ἐπακολουθεῖ, translating in this way: “they (the ἱδρύματα = اصنام) follow in rank after the πάτρῳοι θεοὶ, *i.e.* you shall not put the πάτρῳοι θεοὶ in the first place, but worship them *secundo loco*.

P. 123. *Galenus.*—*Vide* note to p. 34.

P. 126.—The tradition of Śaunaka from Venus (so the Arabic text), *i.e.* Śukra, is perhaps taken from the *Vishṇu-Dharma*: *v.* note to p. 54.

Vishṇu-Purâṇa.—Compare this quotation with book iii. chap. ii. p. 29 (ed. Wilson-Hall). The *Great Bear* is called the *Seven Ṛishis* in Sanskrit.

P. 126. *Vasukra.*—This reading does not quite accurately correspond to the Arabic signs, which must be read *Vaśukra.* I have preferred the former, because it is mentioned in the St. Petersburg Dictionary as the name of a man who occurs in the *Veda* as a poet of Vaidic hymns.

P. 127. *Galenus.*—The quotation from Galenus must be compared with the following passage in his περὶ συνθέσεως φαρμάκων κατὰ γένη (ed. Kühn, tom. xiii. p. 995):—

ἠυρέθη δὲ ὑπὸ Μενεκράτους, κ.τ.λ. ἰατικὸν φάρμακον. ἐπιγέγραπται δὲ τὸ βίβλιον, κ.τ.λ. αὐτοκράτωρ ὁλογράμματος· αὐτοκράτωρ μὲν, ἐπειδὴ τούτῳ προσπεφώνηται, ὁλογράμματος δὲ διότι χωρὶς χαρακτήρων ὅλαις ταῖς συλλαβαῖς γέγραπται β′ καὶ γ′ καὶ δ′ καὶ ἐ καὶ τῶν ἄλλων ἀριθμῶν ἕκαστος, κ.τ.λ. τοῦτο δ᾽ ἔπραξεν ὁ Μενεκράτης, ἐπειδὴ πολλάκις οὐ μόνον ἀκόντων ἁμαρτάνεσθαι συμβαίνει κατὰ τὰς γραφὰς ἀλλὰ καὶ διὰ φθόνον ἑκόντων ἐνίων, κ.τ.λ.

εἰκότως οὖν ηὐδοκίμησε τὰ Δαμοκράτους βίβλια τῶν φαρμάκων εἰς μέτρα γραφέντα [καὶ εἴπερ ἅπαντα τὸν τρόπον τοῦτον ἐγέγραπτο], κάλλιστον ἂν ἦν.

That which I have underlined forms the text as given by Alberuni.

P. 127. *Vyâsa had four śishya.*—Cf. *Vishṇu-Purâṇa*, book iii. chap. iv.

P. 128. *A peculiar kind of recitation.*—This is a description of the four *páṭhas, padapâṭha, kramapâṭha*, &c. *Cf.* Colebrooke, "Essays," i. 18.

P. 128. *Kâṇḍin.*—The word ى.. evidently refers to the divisions of the Yajurveda called *kaṇḍikâ*. The text of the Yajurveda is composed of *Kânrî*, and its name (the name of Yajurveda? what name of it?) is derived from it (from *kânrî?*), *i.e.* the collection (or totality) of *kânrî*." It does not appear which one of the names of *Yajurveda* is here meant by the author as having been derived from *kânrî.* Is there a name of Yajurveda like *kâṇḍika* or *kâṇḍin*, meaning *consisting of kaṇḍikâs?*

In *kânrî*=*kaṇḍikâ* the cerebral *ḍ* is rendered by an Arabic *r*, as in کرب *kuḍava*, بیاری *vyâḍi*, گور *garuḍa*, درور *draviḍa*, ناری *nâḍî*, ناری *vinâḍî*, بیرورج *vaiḍûrya*, &c. The termination in long *î* seems to be characteristic of the vernacular form of Indian speech, and is probably a survival of the more ancient termination *ika*, *ikâ*. *Cf.* R. Hörnle, "Comparative Grammar of the Gaudian Languages," § 195, 203, 205.

P. 128. *Yâjnavalkya.*—*Cf.* *Vishṇu-Purâṇa*, book iii. chap. v.

P. 129. *The well-known story.*—It is told by Alberuni himself, i. p. 396.

P. 131. *Vishṇu-Purâṇa.*—This index of the Purâṇas occurs in book iii. chap. vi. pp. 66, 67. In the Arabic text ٦٣, 12, read کہ instead of گرد.

P. 131. *Smṛiti.*—The author erroneously calls it a book. It is the literature on law, and the twenty sons of Brahman here mentioned are authors of *Dharmaśâstras*. *Cf.* on *smṛiti* (opp. *śruti*), Colebrooke, "Essays," i. 337, 466; A. Weber, *Vorlesungen*, p. 296, note 327; *Indische Studien*, i. 232.

Alberuni sometimes quotes *the book Smṛiti*. However, he had not the book himself, but transferred those quotations from the *Brahmasiddhânta* of Brahmagupta. In reality it is the latter author who quotes it. As, according to him, the book *smṛiti* was composed by Manu (*v.* here ii. 110, 111), he means the *Dharmaśâstra* of Manu. This law code is only once clearly referred to by Alberuni (ii. 164), but in a manner which makes me think that it was not in his hands. On Manu, as the author of the great *Mânasa* (a work on astronomy and astrology?), *v.* p. 157.

P. 132. *Gauḍa.*—On the proposed identification with Gauḍapâda, *v.* note to p. 30.

Sâṁkhya.—*Vide* the same note.

Patañjali.—*Vide* note to p. 27.

Nyâyabhâshâ.—This my transliteration of نايبهاش will perhaps seem doubtful, as the contents of the book have no relation to the Nyâya philosophy or logical system of Gautama (*cf.* Colebrooke, "Essays," i. 280), but are clearly identical with the Mîmâṁsâ philosophy of Jaimini, who is here mentioned a few lines farther on. However, I do not know another mode of reading the word. That Kapila was the author of such a work does not seem to be known.

Mîmâṁsâ.—*Cf.* Colebrooke, "Essays," i. 319. In opposition to Kapila, Jaimini teaches that the Veda is primeval and superhuman. This theory and the discussions through which it has passed are also found in the history of Islam applied to the Koran. According to Islam, the Koran too is primeval and superhuman.

Laukâyata: read *Lôkayata.*—It is the materialistic doctrine of the Cârvâka sect that perception alone is a means of proof. *Cf.* G. A. Jacob, "Manual of Hindu Pantheism," Vedântasâra, p. 74; Colebrooke, "Essays," i. 426 *seq.*, 456 *seq.*; J. Muir, verses from the *Sarva-darśana-sangraha*, &c., illustrating the tenets of the Chârvâkas or Indian materialists, "Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society," 1861, p. 299, and "Journal of the German Oriental Society," xiv. 519.

Bṛihaspati is the founder of this school; his *sûtra* is quoted by Bhâskara-âcârya. The *Bârhaspatyasûtram* is mentioned by A. Weber, *Vorlesungen*, p. 263.

P. 132. *Agastya.*—His doctrine is not known to me. Is it identical with that of the Jainas? *Cf.* Colebrooke, "Essays," ii. 173.

Vishṇu-Dharma.—*Vide* note to p. 54.

P. 132. *Bhârata*, i.e. *Mahâbhârata*, which is repeatedly mentioned by Alberuni. *Bhagavad-Gîtâ* is a part of it (i. 132). The story of the birth of Vâsudeva and of his five brothers (i. 401–406) is taken from *Mahâbhârata.*

I am not quite certain whether Alberuni had a copy of the work. When giving quotations from the book, he does not mention it, which he probably would have done if he had had it in hand.

P. 133.—With the index of the chapters of *Mahâbhârata* *cf.* Monier Williams, "Indian Epic Poetry," p. 91 *seq.* The list of Alberuni exhibits some remarkable differences.

P. 135. *Pâṇini.*—The reading of the MS. is *pânriti*,

بانرت which I cannot explain. If پانرن *pânrini* is the correct reading, we must remember that in the sound *ṇ* there is an admixture of the sound *r*. So Hörnle, "Comparative Grammar," p. 15, says: "The cerebral *ṇ* contains the sound of *r*, being somewhat like *rn*." In this way Alberuni has transliterated the *n* in the word *baṇij*, which he writes برنج *barnij*. Accordingly we should expect to find پارنن *pârnini*, but the author seems to have written پانرن *pânrini*.

P. 135.—The word شكهت = *śishyahita*, has been deciphered by Professor Kielhorn, Göttingen.

P. 136. *Sâtavâhana*.—Other forms of the name are *Sâlavâhana*, *Sâlivâhana* (Hemacandra, i. 211); but Alberuni clearly notes the pronunciation *Samalvâhana*, which is not known to me from other sources.

P. 136.—Instead of *mâudakaṁ* read *modakaṁ* = *mâ udakaṁ*.

P. 136.—*Abul'aswad*, &c., is, according to the literary tradition, the originator of their grammatical science. *Cf.* G. Flügel, *Grammatische Schulen der Araber*, p. 19 *seq.*

P. 136. *Chandas*.—In translating the chapter on metrics, I have derived much help from Colebrooke, "Essays," ii. p. 57 (on Sanskrit and Prâkrit poetry), and from Weber's edition of the Sûtras of Piṅgala (*Indische Studien*, vol. viii.). Alberuni, however, seems to have used other sources and to have followed another system, which has greatly increased the task of the translator.

P. 137. *Piṅgala*.—What are the Sanskrit forms of the names چلت *calitu*, گيْسِت *gaisitu*, اوَّلِياند *auliyându*?

The chapter of Brahmagupta's *Brahmasiddhânta*, of which the author here (p. 147–150) communicates a few extracts, is chap. xxi., *On the calculation of the measures of poetry and on metrics*, v. i. 155.

P. 138.—*Alkhalîl*, also mentioned i. 147, is in Arabic literature the father of the science of metrics. *Cf.* G. Flügel, *Grammatische Schulen der Araber*, p. 37.

Sabab.—*Cf.* Freytag, *Arabische Verskunst*, p. 64, 65.

P. 140. *Madhya.*—I do not know this term in Sanskrit, and the signs مذ admit of different transliterations. Both the terms *madhyâ* and *madhu* are used in metrical terminology, but with different meanings. *Cf.* Colebrooke, "Essays," ii. 141 (*madhu*), and ii. 136, 141 (*madhyâ*).

P. 141. *Haribhaṭṭa?*—This name is not known to me as that of an author of a lexicographical work. The MS. clearly writes *hariuddu*, which may represent various other forms of Sanskrit names.

P. 141.—The single letters *m*, *y*, *r*, &c., denoting the single feet, are mentioned by Colebrooke, "Essays," ii. 63.

P. 142. *Place the numeral* 2, *&c.*—The rule, as explained in ll. 4, &c., differs from that one which is followed in the example (ll. 11–14), in so far as in the former place the subtraction of 1 ("*and from the product* (4) *he subtracts* 1") has been omitted. But even if we correct the text of the rule according to the exemplification, it cannot be correct, and we agree with Alberuni that something in the manuscript must have been wrong (also in the passage below, ll. 30–34). For it can be applied not to all eight feet, but only to two, viz., to

$$||< (2\times 2=4-1=3\times 2=6-1=5)$$

and to

$$|<| (2\times 2=4-1=3\times 2=6),$$

i.e. these two feet occupy respectively the fifth and sixth places in the arrangement on p. 141 (below).

P. 143. *The Greeks, too, &c.*—The comparison with Greek metrics is unintelligible, as something must have been dropped in the Arabic text.

P. 143. *Consonant or syllable.*—I suppose the author means syllable. The Arabic word حرف has the same inconvenience as Sanskrit *akshara* of meaning both *syllable* and *sound* (mostly *consonant*).

P. 143. *Âryâ.*—This reading is a conjecture of mine, as the MS. has *aral*, which I cannot explain. The description given by the author seems to be applicable to the

Âryâ metre, which could be known to him from his study of Brahmagupta's *Brahmasiddhânta*. *Cf.* Colebrooke, "Essays," ii. 66.

P. 144. *Skandha.*—A kind of Âryâ metre, *v.* Colebrooke, "Essays," ii. 137; or *skandhaka*, *v.* Weber, *Indische Studien*, viii. 295.

Khafîf.—This Arabic metre, represented in European fashion, is the following:—

–⏑– – | – –⏑– | –⏑– –

P. 145. *Vṛitta.*—On the metre of this name *v.* Colebrooke, "Essays," ii. 145. However the signs برِت (*b–r–t*) admit of variọus other ways of reading. The MS. has *britu.*

P. 147. *Śloka.*—On the rules relating to this metre *v.* Colebrooke, "Essays," ii. 107.

P. 150. *I have only seen a single leaf.*—This translation is to be replaced by, "I have only studied a single leaf."

P. 151. *Galenus.*—The quotation is found in his περὶ συνθέσεως φαρμάκων κατὰ γένη (ed. Kühn), tom. xiii. p. 996:—

ἀλλ' ἥ γε διὰ τῶν χυλῶν ὑπὸ Μενεκράτους εὑρεθεῖσα διὰ τῶνδε τῶν τριμέτρων στοιχείων ὑπὸ Δαμοκράτους γέγραπται.

P. 153. *Siddhânta.*—On the literature of the Siddhântas *v.* E. Burgess, *Sûrya Siddhânta*, p. 418–422.

Śrîsheṇa is written with *kh* instead of *sh*, as *bhâshâ* = *bhâkhâ*. *Cf.* Hörnle, "Comparative Grammar of the Gauḍian Languages," § 19 and 20.

Varâhamihira.—*Vide* note to p. 54.

Pp. 153, 154. *Brahmagupta.*—His work, the *Brahmasiddhânta*, has been very largely used by Alberuni. It exists in manuscript, but has not yet been completely edited or translated. Alberuni translated it into Arabic when he wrote the *Indica* (A.D. 1030). We do not know whether he ever finished it.

Brahmagupta was only thirty years of age when he wrote this work. He is accused of the sin against conscience of having propagated futilities and lies in order to please the bigoted priests and the ignorant rabble of his nation, in order to avoid those dangers in which Socrates perished. *Vide* chap. lix. on eclipses, and specially ii. 111. Besides, Alberuni accuses him of undue animosity against Âryabhaṭa (i. 376).

Brahmagupta holds a remarkable place in the history of Eastern civilisation. It was he who taught the Arabs astronomy before they became acquainted with Ptolemy; for the famous *Sindhind* of Arabian literature, frequently mentioned, but not yet brought to light, is a translation of his *Brahmasiddhânta;* and the only other book on Indian astronomy, called *Alarkand*, which they knew, was a translation of his *Khaṇḍakhâdyaka.*

The latter work (here ii. 7) is also called *Karaṇakhaṇḍakhâdyaka* (i. 156). It was explained in a special commentary by Balabhadra (ii. 187).

A third composition of Brahmagupta's called *Uttarakhaṇḍakhâdyaka*, is mentioned i. 156, and quoted ii. 87, 91.

Cf. on Brahmagupta Colebrooke, "Essays," ii. 409 *seq.*; Dr. Bhâu Dâjî, "Brief Notes on the Age and Authenticity of the Works of Âryabhaṭa, Varâhamihira, Brahmagupta, &c.," in the "Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society," 1865, vol. i. 392 *seq.*

Notes from Varâhamihira's *Pañcasiddhântikâ* have been edited by G. Thibaut in the "Journal of the Asiatic Society of Bengal," 1884, vol. liii. p. 259.

Sindhind is mentioned ii. 191, as the only source of the information of Muslims on Indian astronomy and astrology. According to ii. 90, the Indian computation of the heliacal risings of the stars and the moon is identical with that given in Sindhind. It is called the *great sindhind* (*Siddhânta*) ii. 18.

Alberuni has written a treatise on it. See preface to the Arabic edition, p. xx.

P. 154. *Pulisa.*—This name and Paulisa are written Puliśa and Pauliśa in Utpala's commentary to the *Saṁhitâ* of Varâhamihira; but as Alberuni writes them constantly with a س, not ش, I am inclined to believe that he and his Pandits pronounced *Pulisa* and *Paulisa.* Alberuni has drawn from the *Pulisasiddhânta* almost as largely as from the *Brahmasiddhânta*, and was occupied with translating it (*v.* also i. 375).

The relation between Pulisa and Paulisa is this:—

Paulisa is the sage who communicates his wisdom in this *Siddhânta*. He was a native of Saintra, *i.e.* Alexandria.

Pulisa is the redactor or editor of the book. The one as well as the other is called يونانى, *Greek* (not رومى Byzantine Greek). "Pulisa says in his *Siddhânta* that Paulisa the Greek had mentioned somewhere," &c., i. 266.

A commentator of this *Siddhânta* is mentioned i. 339 med., where I now prefer to translate: "The commentator of the *Siddhânta* of Pulisa," &c.

Pulisa quotes Parâśara (ii. 208), and is himself quoted by Âryabhaṭa jun. (i. 316).

Paulisa is quoted by Brahmagupta, i. 374 (v. note).

Cf. on the *Pulisasiddhânta* H. Kern, *The Bṛhat Sañhitâ*, preface, p. 48.

P. 156.—*Âryabhaṭa* senior is clearly distinguished from Âryabhaṭa junior, who is mostly called "that one from Kusumapura," *i.e.* Pâṭaliputra (Patna). Alberuni knows him only through the quotations in the works of Brahmagupta. He mentions two of his works, *Daśagîtikâ* and *Âryâshṭaśata*, which have been edited by Kern, *Ârya-bhaṭîyam*, 1874. *Cf.* Dr. Bhâu Dâjî, "Brief Notes on the Age and Authenticity of the Works of Âryabhaṭa," &c., p. 392.

P. 156. *Balabhadra*.—Of his works are mentioned:—

(1.) A *tantra*.

(2.) A *Saṁhitâ*.

(3.) A commentary of the *Bṛihajjâtakam* of Varâhamihira (p. 158).

(4.) A commentary to the *Khaṇḍakhâdyaka* of Brahmagupta.

(5.) He is supposed to be the author of the book *Khaṇḍakhâdyakaṭippâ*.

Alberuni always calls him *the commentator*, and frequently quotes him without indicating from what particular book he quotes. He gives on his authority the latitude of Kanoj and Tâneshar, and passes harsh judgment on him i. 244, 275. *Cf.* also note to p. 27.

P. 156. *Bhânurajas* (also on p. 157).—The Arabic MS. writes *Bahânarjus*, which I cannot identify. A slight alteration (of بهانرجس to بهانوجس) would give *Bhânuyaśas*, which name was suggested to me by G. Bühler.

P. 156. *Kûra-babayâ.*—As *kûra* means *rice*, ببيا, *babayâ*, must mean *mountain*. Is it a vernacular form for *parvata*?

P. 156. *Khaṇḍa-khâdyaka-tappâ.*—The MS. has *tappâ* or *tippâ* (*tuppâ*), of which I do not know the Sanskrit form. تبّا changed to تپّن would be = *ṭippanî* or commentary.

Vijayanandin.—Alberuni quotes from him a method for the computation of the longitude of a place (i. 313), a note on the dominants of year, month, and *horâ* (i. 343), on the circumpolar stars (ii. 90), an *ahargaṇa* rule (ii. 49, 50). An astronomer of this name is mentioned by Dr. Bhâu Dâjî as anterior to Śrîsheṇa, the author of *Romakasiddhânta*: v. "The Age and Authenticity of the Works of Âryabhaṭa," &c. ("Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society," 1864), p. 408.

P. 156. *Bhadatta* (*? Mihdatta*).—The MS. reads مهدتّ. Bhadatta is mentioned by Kern in the preface to his *Bṛhat Sañhitâ*, p. 29. Alberuni quotes from the work of Vitteśvara a note on the motion of the Great Bear (i. 392), on the mean places of the stars (ii. 60), on the diameters of sun and moon (ii. 79), the latitude of Kashmîr (i. 317), the era used in the book (ii. 7). It must have been translated into Arabic before Alberuni wrote the *Indica*, because he complains that that part of the book which he had was badly translated (ii. 55).

P. 157. *Utpala.*—Besides these two *Karaṇas*, he has composed—

(1.) A commentary to the great *Mânasa* composed by Manu.

(2.) The *Praśnacûḍâmaṇi* (p. 158).

(3.) A commentary to the *Saṁhitâ* of Varâhamihira (p. 298).

(4.) The book *Srûdhava* (?), whence Alberuni has taken metrological and chronological notes (p. 334, 336, 361). *Cf.* on Utpala Kern's preface to his *Bṛhat Sañhitâ*, p. 61.

The book-title *râhunrâkarana*, i.e. *breaking of the Karaṇas*, seems to be corrupt. One expects the word *karaṇa* in the first place, and a word for *breaking* in the second.

P. 157.—On *Manu* as an authority in astronomy and astrology, v. Kern, preface to *Bṛhat Sañhitâ*, p. 42. *Cf.* note to p. 131.

P. 157. *Puñcala* (?).—The author quotes from him a statement relating to the precession of the equinoxes; he speaks highly of him, and says that a theory of his was adopted by Utpala (i. pp. 366, 367).

I do not know of such an Indian name. The nearest approach to it is *Muñjâla*, that of an astronomer quoted by Colebrooke, "Essays," ii. 330, 332.

P. 157. *Bhaḍila* (?).—The MS. has *bahattal*, and I suppose that the correct reading is *Bhaṭṭila*. The name is perhaps a derivation (diminutive ?) from *bhaṭṭa*, as *kumârila* from *kumâra*, *pushaṇḍhila* from *shaṇḍha*. Alberuni quotes him, ii. 208, in the chapter on the *yogas*.

On Parâśara and Garga *cf.* Kern, *Bṛhat Sañhitâ*, preface, pp. 31, 33; on Satya, Jîvaśarman, p. 51; on Maṇittha, p. 52. Mau is probably identical with Maya: v. Weber, *Vorlesungen*, p. 270.

P. 158. *Of Varâhamihira, &c.*—This author has composed not only the *Shaṭpañcâśikâ* and *Horâpañcahotriya* (?), but also the *Yogayâtrâ*, *Tikanîyâtrâ* (?), and *Vivâhapaṭala*: v. Kern, *Bṛhat Sañhitâ*, preface, pp. 25, 26; his translation of the *Yogayâtrâ* in Weber's *Indische Studien*, x. 161.

The name of the author of the book on architecture is missing in the Arabic text. If it was not likewise a work of Varâhamihira's, it may have been composed by Nagnajit or Viśvakarman: v. Kern, *l. c.* p. 51.

P. 158. *Srûdhava.*—I do not know the corresponding Sanskrit form. It seems to be some relative of *śruti*. If *śrutayas* had currency in the meaning of *traditions*, I should identify it with *srûdhava*. Is it = *śrotavya ?*

The word is the title of two different books, one by Utpala from Kashmîr (v. note to p. 157), and the one here mentioned, on *omina* and *portenta*, lucky and unlucky days, &c. It probably contained the names of the twenty-four *horâ* (i. 344); it mentioned the names of the third parts of the day (ii. 120), the names of the *vishṭi* (ii. 201), the unlucky days of the year (ii. 192), the name of Vikramâditya (ii. 6, *vide* note to the place).

The reading of the word بنگا as *Bangâla* is probably not correct. Is it = *puṇyakâla?*

P. 158. *Gudhâmana* (?), in the Arabic *jûrâman*.—As the word is translated by *unknown*, one thinks of a derivation of the word *guh* = to conceal (v. *gûḍha*). The Arabic characters may also be read *cûḍâmaṇi*. If *praśna jûrâman* (?) really meant what Alberuni says, one would expect *gûḍhapraśna*.

P. 158. *Sangahila, Pîruvâna*.—I do not know the Sanskrit equivalents of these two names. The former might be a word like *śriṅkhala* or *śriṅgalâ* (*Syncellus?*) Prithûdaka is the author of a commentary on the *Brahmasiddhânta*: v. Colebrooke, "Essays," ii. 411.

P. 159. *Caraka*.—The ancient Arabic translation of his medical work is sometimes quoted by Alberuni, and to judge from these quotations the translation was not free from blunders nor the manuscript-tradition free from the effects of carelessness: *v.* a quotation on weights, i. 162, 163; one on the origin of medicine, i. 382. *Cf.* Weber, *Vorlesungen*, pp. 284, 289.

P. 159. *Pañcatantra*.—*Cf.* on this book and on Ibn Almuḳaffa's share in its translation, Benfey's introduction to his translation of the *Pancatantra* (Leipzig, 1859). On the translations of the book and on the influence which King Maḥmûd of Ghazna has had on its fate, *cf.* Colebrooke, "Essays," ii. 148. The work of Ibn Almuḳaffaʿ is that one edited by S. de Sacy, 1816.

P. 160. *Chapter XV*.—For the translation of this chapter on metrology, I have derived much help from Colebrooke, "On Indian Weights and Measures" ("Essays," i. 528 *seq.*), and Marsden's *Numismata Orientalia*, new edition, Part I., "Ancient Indian Weights," by E. Thomas, London, 1874; A. Weber, *Ueber ein Fragment der Bhagavatî*, II. Theil, p. 265 note.

The weight of one dirham = one-seventh *mithkâl*, dates from the time of the Khalif Omar.

The weight of one dirham = seven *dânak*, is peculiar to India in the author's time, for in general one dirham = six *dânak*. *Cf.* Sauvaire, *Matériaux pour servir à l'Histoire de la Numismatique et de la Métrologie Musulmanes*, Paris, 1882, pp. 43, 81, 98; on the *mithkâl*, p. 35; on the *fuls*, p. 108. On the ancient denars of Sindh *cf.* Elliot, "History of India," i. 11 (Abû Zaid), 24 (Masûdî), 35 (Ibn Ḥaukal).

P. 162. *Varâhamihira.*—This passage is *Bṛihat Saṁhitâ*, chap. lviii. v. 1. The following quotation on *yava, andî, mâsha*, and *suvarṇa*, I do not find in his *Saṁhitâ*.

P. 162. *Caraka.*—The Arabic translation of this book is not extant. The Indian words which occur in the extracts from this book are not so accurately written as those in Alberuni's own work, and offer more difficulties in the way of identification: *v.* note to p. 159.

P. 162. *Jîvaśarman.*—The words "As I have been told (by him)," may better be translated "As I have heard it from him." Alberuni does not quote from a book of his, but only says "he *has told, mentioned*," "I have heard from him." Accordingly, he seems to have been a contemporary and personal acquaintance of Alberuni's, in the same way as Srîpâla. Alberuni relates on his authority details regarding a festival in Kashmîr and Svât, ii. 181, 182. Besides, a Jîvaśarman is mentioned as the author of a *Jâtakam*, i. 157, who seems to have been a different person altogether, and lived before the time of Varâhamihira: *v.* Kern's Preface to *Bṛhat Sañhitâ*, p. 29.

P. 164. *Varâhamihira.*—This quotation seems to correspond to *Bṛihat Saṁhitâ*, chap. xxiii. v. 2. At all events, it is the passage to which Śrîpâla refers.

Śrîpâla.—Alberuni quotes him a second time, i. 240, where he speaks of a star, *śûla*, as observed in Multân, which people considered as unlucky, and ii. 209, he copies from him the names of the twenty-seven yogas. Perhaps Śrîpâla was a scholar living at Multân in the time of the author. Alberuni does not mention a book of his.

P. 165. *Śiśupâla.*—The story of Kṛishṇa's killing Śiśupâla (*Śiśupâlabadha*) is told in the *Mahâbhârata*, Sabhâ-Parvan, v. 1336 *seq.*

P. 165. *Alfazârî* is one of the fathers of Arabian literature, the first propagator of Indian astronomy among the Arabs. His works are, as far as I am aware, not extant. Probably this Muḥammad Ibn Ibrâhîm Alfazârî was the son of Ibrâhîm Ibn Ḥabîb Alfazârî, the first constructor of astrolabes among the Arabs, who as a surveyor partook in the foundation of Bagdad. *Cf. Fihrist*, p. ۲۷۳. Gildemeister, in his *Scriptorum Arabum de rebus Indicis loci*, p. 101, gives the translation of an article of Alḳifṭî on our Fazârî.

According to the quotations of Alberuni (*v.* index *s. v.* Alfazârî), this scholar used the word *pala* in the meaning of day-minute; he reckoned the circumference of the earth in اجوان, *i.e. yojanas*; he (together with Ya'ḳûb Ibn Ṭâriḳ) mentions a town, *Târa*, in a sea in Yamakoṭi; he gives a method for the computation of the longitude of a place from two latitudes; his book contained the cycles of the planets as derived from Hindu scholars, the members of an embassy from some part of Sindh, who called on the Khalif Almanṣûr, A.H. 154 (=A.D. 771). Alberuni charges him with having misunderstood the meaning of the word Âryabhaṭa, which he is said to have used as meaning $\frac{1}{1000}$ of the measures of the great Siddhânta, *i.e.* the *Brahmasiddhânta* of Brahmagupta. Lastly, Alfazârî (together with Ya'ḳûb) has used the word بذماسه (*padamâsa?*) in the sense of *adhimâsa* (leap-month). On the whole, Alberuni finds that the tradition of Indian astronomy by Alfazârî is not very trustworthy, and that in it the names or *termini technici* are often corrupt and badly written.

As Alfazârî and Ya'ḳûb Ibn Ṭâriḳ are sometimes mentioned in the same context, there must have been a close relation between these two authors, the nature of which I have no means for examining. Have both learned from the same Hindu scholar, and have they independently of each other committed their information to writing? Or has the one made a new edition or a commentary of the work of the other? *Vide* note to p. 169 (Ya'ḳûb).

P. 165. *Sibi.*—The word occurs thrice, and is written سيى (*siyî ?*); only in one place it seemed to be سبى, but on repeated comparison of the MS. I find that originally here, too, was written سيى. I do not know a measure of such a name. Perhaps it is the *bîsî*, of which 16 = 1 *pantî* (p. 166, l. 2 in Somanâth). *Cf.* Colebrooke, "Essays," i. 536; sixteen *bîsîs* = one *pantî.*

P. 166. *Khwârizmian.*—The comparison of the measures of this country, the modern Khîva, will remind the reader that it was the native country of the author.

P. 166. *Varâhamihira.*—I have not succeeded in finding this quotation in his *Saṁhitâ.*

P. 167. *Varâhamihira.*—The passage here quoted is *Saṁhitâ*, chap. xviii. v. 26–28.

P. 167. *'Ajvân.*—Alberuni only mentions the plural form, not the singular, which would be *jûn* or *jaun*, *jôn*. I take the word to be the Arabized form of *yojana*. The change from *yojana* to *jôn* was perhaps facilitated by a Prakritic pronunciation on the part of the Hindu teachers of Alfazârî, according to which a *j* between two vowels may be dropped. *Cf. gao* = *gaja*, *raadam*, *rajata* (Vararuci, ii. 2).

P. 168.—*Archimedes* fixed π as a measure between $3\frac{1}{7}$ and $3\frac{10}{71}$. *Cf.* J. Gow, "Short History of Greek Mathematics," Cambridge, 1884, p. 235.

P. 169.—*Ya'ḳûb Ibn Târiḳ* seems to have been the most prominent predecessor of Alberuni in the field of astronomy, chronology, and mathematical geography on an Indian basis. He is frequently quoted in the *Indica*, much more than Alfazârî.

Here he gives the measures of the circumference and the diameter of the zodiacal sphere in *yojanas*, in which Alberuni recognises the system of Pulisa. He speaks of a city, Târa, within a sea in Yamakoṭi (i. 303). He gives the measures of the radius, diameter, and circumference of the earth in *yojanas* (i. 312), a statement on the latitude of Ujain, and a quotation from the book *Arkand* on the same subject (i. 316). He mentions the four *mânas* or measures of time, *sauramâna*, *cândramâna*, &c. (i. 353). His work contained tables of the revolutions of the planets, borrowed from a Hindu who had come in an embassy from Sindh to the court of the Khalif Almanṣûr, A.H 154 (=A.D. 771), but Alberuni finds in these tables considerable deviations from those of the Hindus (ii. 15). He is accused of having misunderstood the word Âryabhaṭa, so as to take it not for the name of an author, but for a technical term meaning $\frac{1}{1000}$ of the measures employed in the great Siddhânta (that of Brahmagupta), on ii. 18, 19. He called the leap-month ذماسه (*padamâsa ?*) instead of *adhimâsa* (ii. 23). He gives an incorrect method for the computation of the solar days in the *ahargaṇa* and for the reduction of years into days (by the side of a correct one) on ii. 26, 34, 38. He gives further details of the *ahargaṇa* computation (ii. 44, 45), and a table indicating the distances of the planets from the earth, borrowed from a Hindu, A.H. 161 (=A.D. 777, 778), on ii. 67, 68.

Accordingly the work of Ya'ḳûb seems to have been a complete system of astronomy, chronology, and mathematical geography. It is called *Compositio Sphærarum* and also الزيج, *i.e. Canon.*

Alberuni sometimes criticises Ya'ḳûb, and maintains that he had committed errors, that he mis-spelled the Indian words, and that he simply borrowed the tables from his Hindu authority without examining them by calculation.

On his relation to Alfazârî, *v.* note to p. 165.

When Alberuni wrote his Chronology, he did not possess the work of Ya'ḳûb, for there he gives a note on the four *mânas* and on the word ذماسه (*padamâsa ?*) on the authority of Ya'ḳûb, but taken from the work of another author. *Vide* my translation, p. 15.

As Ya'ḳûb studied in the years A.H. 154 and 161 (A.D. 771, 778), he must have lived in the second half of the eighth Christian century (probably in Babylonia). This is nearly all we know of him. *Cf.* Reinaud, *Mémoire sur l'Inde*, p. 313; Steinschneider, *Zeitschrift der Deutschen Morgenländischen Gesellschaft*, 24, 332, 354.

The *Fihrist*, p. ۲۷۸. has a note on him in which there is some confusion. The work *Compositio Sphærarum* is erroneously mentioned among the works of ʻUṭârid Ibn Muḥammad, whilst it is apparently identical with the work here called *Canon*. It consisted of two parts, one on the sphere and one on the periods (the *yugas?*). According to Fihrist, he had written two more books, one on the division of the sine in *kardajât*, and another on *what is derived from the arc of the meridian.*

Regarding the embassy from Sindh, from which the Arabs are said to have got the first information on Indian astronomy, in fact, the two works of Brahmagupta, the *Brahmasiddhânta* (*Sindhind*) and the *Khaṇḍakhâdyaka* (called *Arkand*), I cannot find any historical account in the Arabic annals. We do not learn anything from Ibn Wâḍiḥ or Ṭabarî of the presence of a Sindhî embassy in Babylonia in the year 154 (A.D. 771), as Alberuni has it, nor in the year 156 (A.D. 773), as Alḥusain Ibn Muḥammad Ibn Alâdamî maintains (Gildemeister, *Scriptorum Arabum de rebus Indicis loci*, p. 101), nor of the presence of Hindu scholars in Babylonia in the year 161 (A.D. 777). This only is related by Ibn Wâḍiḥ, that when Abulabbâs Ṣaffâḥ, the first Abbaside Khalif, was dying in Anbâr, there arrived at his court an embassy from Sindh, A.H. 136 (A.D. 753). At all events, at the time of the Khalif Almanṣûr, Sindh obeyed this prince, and Islam had spread not only in Sindh, but far beyond it into the adjacent countries, both by war and by commerce. There must have been many occasions for petty Hindu princes in Sindh to send special missions to the political centre of the Muslim realm.

When Yaʻḳûb wrote, the *Arkand* (*Khaṇḍakhâdyaka*) had already been translated into Arabic. By whom? By Alfazârî?

In the first fifty years of Abbaside rule there were two periods in which the Arabs learned from India, first under Manṣûr (A.D. 753–774), chiefly astronomy, and secondly under Hârûn (786–808), by the special influence of the ministerial family Barmak, who till 803 ruled the Muslim world, specially medicine and astrology.

P. 170. *Socrates.*—I do not know the Greek form of this *dictum*. It must be observed that according to the common tradition hides of animals were first prepared for vellum at Pergamum long after Socrates.

P. 171.—On the fabrication of papyrus, *cf.* Wilkinson, "Manners and Customs of the Ancient Egyptians," ii. p. 180.

P. 172. *As for the Greek alphabet, &c.*—The source of this tradition on the origin of the Greek alphabet seems to be certain scholia to the *Ars Grammatica* of Dionysius Thrax: *v.* Immanuel Bekker, *Anecdota Græca*, Berlin, 1816, vol. ii. p. 780 *seq.* The synchronistic notes point more to Joannes Malalas; perhaps these things were originally mentioned in the lacuna O 129.

Asidhas seems to be a mistake for Palamedes, *Agenon* for Agenor.

P. 173. *Bahmanwâ.*—Read *Bamhanvâ.* Other forms of the name are *Bâmîvân* and *Bâînvâh*: *v.* Elliot, "History of India," i. 34, 189, 369, and the papers of Haig in the "Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society," 1884, p. 281, and of Bellasis in the "Journal" of the Bombay branch, vol. v., 1857, p. 413, 467.

For Kannara, *v.* note to pp. 17–19. Andhradeśa identified by Cunningham with Telingâna, *v.* his "ancient Geography of India," p. 527.

Bhaikshukî.—Alberuni writes *Baikshuka*, probably *that of the bhikshu* or beggar-monks, *i.e.* the *śramaṇa* or Buddhistic monks. Is the *Audunpûr* mentioned by Alberuni, identical with the famous Buddhistic monastery *Udaṇḍapuri* in Magadha (?). *Cf.* H. Kern, *Der Buddhismus und seine Geschichte in Indien*, German by H. Jacobi, Leipzig, 1882, vol. ii. p. 545.

What Malvashau is I do not know (Malla-vishaya ?).

P. 175.—To the orders of numbers, *cf.* Weber, *Vedische Angaben über Zeittheilung und hohe Zahlen*, in *Zeitschrift der Deutschen Morg. Gesellschaft*, xv. 132.

Pp. 178, 179.—This table has already been published by F. Wöpcke, *Mémoire sur la Propagation des Chiffres Indiens*, p. 103 *seq.*; A. C. Burnell, "Elements of South Indian Palæography," ii. ed., p. 77. Compare also E. Jaquet, *Mode d'Expression Symbolique des Nombres Em-*

ployé par les Indiens, les Tibétains et les Javanais (*Extrait du Journal Asiatique*); Brown, "Sanskrit Prosody and Numerical Symbols," London, 1869, p. 49 *seq*.

P. 181. *Pushaṇḍhila.*—The eunuch is called *shaṇḍha*. This seems to be a diminutive form compounded with the word *puṁs* (G. Bühler).

P. 182. *They magnify the nouns of their language, &c.*—This somewhat enigmatic sentence seems to have the following meaning:—An Arabic word, *e.g.* *ḳarsh* (a sea-animal), is magnified, *i.e.* receives a larger form, by being changed into the diminutive form, *i.e.* *ḳuraish* (a small sea-animal, as a proper noun, the name of the tribe to which Muḥammad belonged). The diminutive form serves the purpose of magnifying the form of the word: *cf.* Kashshâf to Koran. 106, 2, والتصغير للتعظيم (not للتفخيم). If the Hindus magnify their nouns by giving them the feminine gender, this must be referred to some of the pleonastic suffixes, *e.g.* *â*, *î*, which are added to Indian nouns without altering their meaning. In appearance they are the terminations of the feminine gender, in reality euphonic changes of the more ancient suffixes *aka* and *ikâ*, *e.g.* *paṭâ*, board, by the side of *paṭ*. *Cf.* Hörnle, "Comparative Grammar of the Gauḍian Languages," § 194 *seq*.

P. 183.—An explanation of the Indian chess has been published by A. Van der Linde, *Geschichte und Litteratur des Shachspiels*.

P. 189. *Nâgârjuna.*—*Cf.* on him A. Weber, *Vorlesungen*, pp. 306, 307; H. Kern, *Der Buddhismus und seine Geschichte in Indien*, ii. 501; Beal, "Indian Antiquary," 1886, 353.

P. 189. *Vyâḍi.*—A lexicographer of this name is mentioned in a certain connection with Vikramâditya by Colebrooke, "Essays," ii. 19.

P. 190.—*Raktâmala* = *rakta* = red, and *amala* = *emblica officinalis*. I do not see how the word could be understood to mean *oil* and *human blood*.

P. 191. *Bhojadeva.*—*Cf.* on this king of Mâlava, Lassen, *Indische Alterthumskunde*, iii. p. 845 *seq*.

P. 192. *Vallabhî*.—On the end of this city, *cf.* Lassen, *Indische Alterthumskunde*, iii. 532 *seq.*, and also Nicholson and Forbes on the ruins of the place, in "Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society," vol. xiii. (1852), p. 146, and vol. xvii. (1860), p. 267.

P. 196. *For it is not navigable.*—This passage agrees almost literally with Plato's *Timæus*, 25D:—

διὸ καὶ νῦν ἄπορον καὶ ἀδιερεύνητον γέγονε τὸ ἐκεῖ πέλαγος, πηλοῦ κάρτα βραχέος ἐμποδὼν ὄντος ὃν ἡ νῆσος ἱζομένη παρέσχετο.

P. 197. *The various tribes of the Zanj.*—The traditions of the Arabs regarding Eastern Africa have been collected by Marcel Devic in his *Le Pays des Zendjs*, Paris, 1883.

P. 197.—The configuration of the northern coast of the Indian Ocean seems to have been a favourite subject of Alberuni, for he mentions it again on p. 270.

P. 199.—*Mâhûra*, so written by Alberuni, is written مهرة, *Mahura*, by his elder contemporary Al-ʿutbî, more in keeping with the Sanskrit vowels (*Mathurâ*).

Alberuni reckons the distances in *farsakh*, regarding the measure of which he unfortunately does not give accurate information. According to i. 167, 1 yojana = 32,000 yards = 8 miles; 1 mile = 4000 yards; and according to i. 200, 1 farsakh = 4 miles = 1 kuroh; 1 farsakh = 16,000 yards. *Cf.* also Aloys Sprenger, *Die Post- und Reiserouten des Orients*, Vorrede, p. xxvi., who proves that one Arabian mile = *præter propter* 2000 metres = 2186 yards, whilst the English geographical mile = 2025 yards. If we, therefore, want to compare Alberuni's distances with English miles, we must reckon—

1 English mile = $1\frac{161}{2025}$ Arabian mile
1 Arabian mile = $\frac{2025}{2186}$ English mile.
1 *farsakh* = 4 Arabian miles = $3\frac{771}{1093}$ English miles.

P. 200.—Alberuni gives sixteen itineraries which seem to have been communicated to him by the military and civil officers of King Maḥmûd (on some of these roads he had marched with large armies, *e.g.* to Kanoj and to Somanâtha), from merchants and sailors, from Hindu and Muslim travellers. The starting-points of these itineraries are Kanoj, Mâhûra (now Muttra), Anhilvâra (now Pattan), Dhâr in Mâlavâ, and two less known places, Bârî, the temporary capital of the realm of Kanoj, after the old capital had been taken by the Muslims, and a place called Bazâna.

These itineraries are—1. From Kanoj to Allahabad, and thence towards the eastern coast of India as far as Kâñcî (Conjeveram), and farther south. 2. From Kanoj (or Bârî) to Benares, and thence to the mouth of the Ganges. 3. From Kanoj eastward as far as Kamroop, and northward to Nepal and the Tibetan frontier. 4. From Kanoj southward as far as Banavâsi on the southern coast. 5. From Kanoj to Bazâna or Nârâyan, the then capital of Guzarât. 6. From Muttra to Dhâr, the capital of Mâlavâ. 7. From Bazâna to Dhâr and Ujain. 8. From Dhâr in Mâlavâ towards the Godâvarî. 9. From Dhâr to Tâna, on the coast of the Indian Ocean. 10. From Bazâna to Somanâtha, on the south coast of Kathiavar. 11. From Anhilvâra to Tâna, on the west coast, north of Bombay. 12. From Bazâna *viâ* Bhâtî to Loharânî, at the mouth of the Sindh river. 13. From Kanoj to Kashmîr. 14. From Kanoj to Pânipat, Attok, Kâbul, Ghazna. 15. From Babrahân to Addishtân, the capital of Kashmîr. 16. From Tîz, in Makrân, along the coast as far as Setubandha, opposite Ceylon.

Cf. the following latitudes and longitudes, taken from the *Canon Masudicus*:—

Tree of Prayâga, 25° 0′ lat., 106° 20′ long.; Kuraha, 26° 1′ lat., 106° 40′ long.; Tîauri, 23° 0′ lat., 106° 30′ long.; Kajûrâha, 24° 4′ lat., 106° 50′ long.; Bazâna (?) or Nârâyan, 24° 35′ lat., 106° 10′ long.; the country Kannakara, 22° 20′ lat., 107° 0′ long.; Sharvâr, 24° 15′ lat., 107° 50′ long.; Pâṭaliputra, 22° 30′ lat., 108° 20′ long.; Mungîrî, 22° 0′ lat., 109° 10′ long.; Dûgum, 22° 40′ lat., 110° 50′ long.; Bârî, 26° 30′ lat., 105° 50′ long.; Dûdahî, 25° 40′ lat., 102° 10′ long.; Dahmâla, 31° 10′ lat., 100° 55′ long.; Shirshâraha, 38° 50′ lat., 102° 10′ long.; Bhillamâla, 23° 50′ lat., 87° 45′ long.; Bamhanvâ, 26° 40′ lat., 85° 0′ long.; Loharânî, 24° 40′ lat., 84° 25′ long.; Daibal, 24° 10′ lat., 82° 30′ long.; Bhâtiya, 28° 40′ lat., 96° 0′ long.; Ujain, 24° 0′ lat., 100° 50′ long.; Tîz, 26° 15′ lat., 83° 0′ long.; Kandî, 33° 40′ lat., 95° 50′ long.; Dunpûr, 33° 45′ lat., 96° 25′ long.; Tanjore (?), 15° 0′ lat., 115° 0′ long.; Rameshar, 13° 0′ lat., 118° 0′ long.; Jahrâvar, 39° 50′ lat., 96° 15′ long.; كدور 31° 1′ lat., 95° 55′ long. Longitude is reckoned from the coast of the Atlantic; that of Bagdad is 70°.

P. 200.—*Barhamshil* = *Brâhmanaśaila* = Brahmin's rock (?).

Tree of Prayâga = Allahabad, at the confluence of Ganges and Jumna.

In line 20 after 12 *farsakh* (in the Arabic only 12 without *farsakh*) there is apparently a lacuna.

Uwaryahâr.—One expects an indication of Orissa (Ûrîyâdeśa). The word might also be read *Ûrîyahâr.* Is *Ûrîyadhârâ* meant? *Ûrdabîshau* perhaps = *ûrdhva-vishaya.*

Jaur's possessions, i.e. the Cola empire; *v.* also here, i. 209, and Lassen, *Indische Alterthumskunde*, ii. 435, iv. 230 *seq.*

P. 200. *Bârî.*—Regarding the situation of this place the following statements must be taken into account:—It was situated ten farsakh or three to four days' march distant from Kanoj towards the east, east of the Ganges, in the neighbourhood of the confluence of the rivers رهب and كوينى and Sarayu. It was twenty-five farsakh distant from Oudh. The name *Bârî* occurs also in Elliot-Beames, "Memoirs," ii. 83, as that of a subdivision of the district Agra.

P. 201.—*Kâmrû* is apparently *Kâmarûpa* and Tilvat = Tirhoot. The latter is by mistake also written *Tanvat.* Are we to read *Tirût?* The word is perhaps composed of *Tarû*, the name of the nation who lived there, and a word like *bhukti.*

The empire of Shilahat.—Is this to be identified with Sylhet, the province of Assam?

Bhoteshar seems to be *bhauṭṭa-îśvara*, lord of the *bhauṭṭas*, or Tibetans.

P. 202.—*Kajûrâha* is = *kharjûra-bhâya.*

Tîaurî.—According to a well-known rule of Prakrit (Vararuci, ii. 2), the name Τιάτουρα (Ptolemy, vii. i. 63) would become something like Tiaurî. As there is a lacuna in the Arabic manuscript, the situation of this place cannot be accurately defined.

Kannakara.—This is probably identical with *Kamkar*, the realm of the Balharâ, according to Masʿûdi: *v.* Elliot, "History of India," i. 25.

P. 202. *Bazâna.*—The reading is conjectural. For an identification v. Archæological Survey of India, ii. 242. For *Saḥanyâ* (*Suhaniyâ*) v. *ibid.* ii. 399.

On Guzarât, the empire of the Gurjjara kings, not identical with modern Guzerat, *cf.* Cunningham, "Ancient Geography of India," p. 312 *seq.*; Elliot, *l. c.* p. 358.

Jadûra.—This reading is uncertain. Perhaps all the signs of the Arabic text (احر حدوره) are the name of a place.

P. 202.—*Bâmahûr* is perhaps identical with Ptolemy's Βαμμόγουρα (Pf. vii. i. § 63), as in some cases an *h* represents an elder *g*; *e.g.* جندراهه Candarâha = *Candrabhâgâ*, ديوهر *devahar* = *devagṛiha*, *kulahara* (Prakrit) = *kulagṛiha*.

P. 203. *Namâvur*, *Alîspûr.*—Are these names to be identified with *Nimâr* and *Ellichpur* in Central India? *Cf.* G. Smith, "Geography of British India," pp. 339, 347.

P. 203. *Śarabha.*—This digression of the author's is repeated by Muḥammad 'Aufî in his story-book: *v.* Elliot, "History of India," ii. 202.

P. 205.—*Anhilvâra* = Analavâṭa = modern Pattan in Northern Baroda: *v.* G. Smith, *l. l.* p. 297; Elliot, "History of India," i. 363.

Lârdesh = Λαρικὴ of Ptolemy, vii. i. 4.

Bihroj = Broach = Βαρύγαζα, G. Smith, p. 263.

Rihanjûr is probably identical with 'Αγρινάγαρα (Ptolemy, vii. i. § 63). Two consonants frequently undergo a metathesis, if one of them is a *liquid*. *Agrinagara* has become Arginagara, and the *g* is here represented by an *h*, as in *Candarâha* = *Candrabhâgâ*.

Loharânî seems to be identical with Λωνίβαρε of Ptolemy, vii. i. § 2. A metathesis of the middle consonants has taken place, and *b* has become *h*. It is also called *Lohâniyye* (i. 316).

P. 20.—*Jâlandhar* is the Κυλινδρινὴ of Ptolemy, vii. i. § 42, G. Smith, p. 207.

Ballâvar = *Vallâpura*, v. Cunningham, *l. c.* pp. 135, 133. Is it identical with modern Phillaur? G. Smith, p. 208.

P. 206.—*Kavîtal* = *Kapisthala* = Καμβίσθολοι (Megasthenes), now *Kapoorthala*, G. Smith, p. 208. *Vide* also *Kaithal* in Elliot's "History of India," ii. 337, 353.

Mandahûkûr.—*Cf.* Elliot, *l. c.* i. 530.

P. 206. *Kusnarî.*—I am inclined to identify this river with the *Kunhar* (G. Smith, p. 231). Is the Mahvî = Kishen-Ganga?

P. 207.—*Ûshkârâ* is explained by Cunningham, *l. c.* p. 99, as Hushkapura, Huvishkapura and Barâmûla as *Varâhamûla*.

P. 208.—*Tâkeshar* is perhaps to be explained as *Takkaîśvara*, like Bhoteshar = Bhauṭṭa-îśvara. *Cf.* on *Ṭakka*, Cunningham, *l. c.* p. 749.

Râjavarî seems to be identical with Rajaori (G. Smith, p. 228).

P. 208. *The coast of India begins with Tîz.*—*Cf.* with this route along the coast that one given by Ibn Khurdâdbih in Elliot, "History of India," i. 15, 16; A. Sprenger, *Die Post- und Reiserouten des Orients*, pp. 80–82.

Munha = Skr. *mukha*, Prakrit *muhaṁ*, Hindî *muṅh*: *v.* Hörnle, "Comparative Grammar," § 116.

Daibal.—On the identification with Karâci v. Elliot, "History of India," i. 375. Daibal-Sindh is the *Diulcindi* of Duarte Borbosa, translated by Stanley, p. 49 (Hakluyt Society).

Pp. 208, 209.—*Baroî* = Baroda, *Kanbâyat* = Kambay, *Bihroj* = Broach. *Sûbâra* is identical with Skr. *Śûrpâraka*, Ptolemy's Σούπαρα, and the *Sufâla* of the Arabs. *Tâna* = Skr. *sthâna*, and *Sandân* is perhaps = *saṁdhâna*. To Sûbâra, *cf.* Bhagvânlál Indraji, "Antiquarian Remains of Sopara," &c., "Journal" of the Bombay branch, 1881, 1882, vol. xv. p. 273.

P. 209.—*Panjayâvar* seems to be a mistake for some older form of the name *Tanjore*.

Râmsher = *Râmeśvara*?—On Râma and the monkeys of the Kishkindha mountains *cf.* the fourth book of the *Râmâyaṇa*.

P. 210.—The theory of the rising and disappearing of the Dîva islands seems to have been a favourite one of the author's, for he explains it in three different places; *v.* p. 233, and ii. 106.

P. 211.—*Shauḥaṭ* is explained by Johnson as a tree whence bows are made, and *mulammaʿ* means *having different colours.* What particular sort of wood this means I do not know.

P. 211.—*Indravedi* must be changed into *Antarvedi,* "the old name of the Lower Doáb, extending from about Etawah to Allahabad." Elliot-Beames, "Memoirs," ii. 10; Elliot, "History of India," ii. 124.

Is *Bhâtal* identical with Ptolemy's Παταληνή?

P. 213. *We have already mentioned,* viz. on p. 17.

P. 214. ὧραι καιρικαί, *i.e.* the ancient division of day and night, each in twelve equal parts, of whatsoever length day and night happened to be. These hours were different in the different seasons of the year. On the contrary, the ὧραι ἰσημεριναί, probably of scientific origin, are the twenty-fourth part of a nychthemeron, always equal throughout the course of the whole year. *Cf.* Ideler, *Handbuch der Chronologie,* i. 86.

P. 214. *Horâ.*—The Persian *nîmbahra* means *half part,* and in astrology one-half or fifteen degrees of a sign of the zodiac; *v.* ii. 222.

P. 214, l. 30.—The distance between the sun and the degree of the ascendens divided by fifteen gives in hours the time which has passed since sunrise; the dominus of the day being at once the dominus of the first hour, the rule here given is evidently correct (*Schram*).

P. 215.—For names of planets *v.* E. Burgess, *Sûrya Siddhânta,* pp. 422, 423, and A. Weber, *Indische Studien,* ii. 261.

Instead of آتنيو read آفنيو, *âvaneya.* The word *bibatâ* is probably some form of *vivasvant.*

The reader will notice the Greek names *heli* ἥλιος, *âra*

'Αρης, *hemna* "Ερμης, *jîva* Ζεύς, *âsphujit* 'Αφροδίτη, *koṇa* Κρόνος.

Pp. 216, 217, 218. *Vishṇudharma.—Vide* note to p. 54.

P. 217. *Table.*—I shall here give the names of the months as the author probably pronounced them, but cannot be held responsible for the details of the vowel-pronunciation: *cetr*, *bêshâk*, *jert*, *âshâr*, *shrâban*, *bhadro*, *âshûj*, *kârtik*, *manghir*, *posh*, *mâg*, *pâgun*. Perhaps most of these names terminated in short *u*, as *manghiru*. *Cf.* the Hindustani names in Dowson's "Grammar of the Urdû," 1887, p. 259.

The *vernacular* names of the suns are perhaps to be pronounced: *rabi*, *bishnu*, *dhâta*, *biḍhâta*, *arjamu*, *bhagu*, *sabita*, *pûsha*, *trashta*, *arku*, *dibâkaru*, *anshu*.

The difference between vernacular and classical speech is repeatedly referred to. *Vide* i. 18 (*v.* note), 218.

P. 218. *With the tradition of the Vishṇudharma.*—After these words must be added the following, which I have overlooked in translating: "And further he (*i.e.* Vâsudeva) has spoken in the *Gîtâ*, '*I am like the vasanta*, *i.e.* the equinox, *among the six parts of the year*.' This too proves that the tradition as given in the first table is correct." Cf. *Bhagavad-Gîtâ*, x. 35.

P. 218.—Compare the table of the *nakshatras* with E. Burgess, *Sûrya Siddhânta*, p. 468.

P. 219.—*Varâhamihira.—Vide* note to p. 54.

P. 220.—The Greek names *kriya* κριός, *tâmbiru* ταῦρος, *jituma* δίδυμοι, *pârthîna* παρθένος, &c., are declared to be not generally known. *Cf.* A. Weber, *Indische Studien*, ii. 259. Instead of *jîtu* read *cetthu*.

P. 222. *Galenus.*—I have not been able to verify this quotation about Asclepius in the Greek works of Galenus.

P. 223. *From the belief of the nations who lived in ancient times in and round Babel, &c.*—That information to which the author here refers was probably derived from the books of the Manichæans.

P. 223. *Plato.*—This quotation is not identical with *Timæus* 36 B–D, but apparently derived therefrom. It runs:—

> ταύτην οὖν τὴν ξύστασιν πᾶσαν διπλῆν κατὰ μῆκος σχίσας μέσην πρὸς μέσην, κ.τ.λ. τὴν δ' ἐντὸς σχίσας ἑξαχῇ ἑπτὰ κύκλους ἀνίσους, κ.τ.λ.

Cf. note to p. 35.

Pp. 223, 224.—On *Brahmagupta* and *Pulisa*, *v.* notes to pp. 153, 154.

P. 225. *Vasishṭha, Âryabhaṭa.*—The author does not take the theories of these men from their own works; he only knew them by the quotations in the works of Brahmagupta. He himself states so expressly with regard to Âryabhaṭa, *Cf.* note to p. 156, and the author, i. 370.

P. 225, 227. *Balabhadra.*—*Vide* note to p. 156.

P. 226. *Aristotle.* *Cf.* his *Phys.* vii. 1, and *Metaph.* xii. 8, 24.

P. 226. *Ptolemy.*—*Cf.* the edition of Halma, Paris, 1813, tome i. p. 2:

> τὸ μὲν τῆς τῶν ὅλων πρώτης κινήσεως πρῶτον αἴτιον, εἴ τις
> κατὰ τὸ ἁπλοῦν ἐκλαμβάνοι, θεὸν ἀόρατον καὶ ἀκίνητον ἂν
> ἡγήσαιτο, καὶ τὸ τούτου ζητητέον εἶδος θεολογικὸν, ἄνω που
> περι τὰ μετεωρότατα τοῦ κόσμου τῆς τοιαύτης ἐνεργείας νοη-
> θείσης ἂν μόνον, καὶ καθάπαξ κεχωρισμένης τῶν αἰσθητῶν
> οὐσιῶν.

P. 226. *Johannes Grammaticus.*—*Vide* note to p. 36. I have not been able to find this quotation in the Greek text.

Pp. 228, 229.—The author repeatedly complains of the great verbosity of the Sanskrit caused by the necessities of the authors, who will only write in metre, and require a great number of synonyms, in order that one word may fit into the metre if others will not. *Cf.* i. 213, 217, 299.

P. 229. *For those men who, &c.*—This is the only passage in which Alberuni clearly speaks of his Pandits. Apparently he tried hard to learn Sanskrit, but could not succeed on account of the difficulties of which he himself complains, and he studied Indian literature in the same manner as the first English scholars in Bengal, by the help of native Pandits.

P. 230. *Table.*—*Cf. Vishṇu-Purâṇa*, ii. 209, where the fifth and seventh earths are called *mahâtala* and *pâtâla*.

Also the *Vâyu-Purâṇa* (ed. Rajendralâlâ Mitra, Calcutta, 1880) offers somewhat different names, viz. *atalam, sutalam, vitalam, gabhastalam, mahâtalam, śrîtalam, pâtâlam,* and *kṛishṇa-bhaumam, pâṇḍu, raktam, pîta, śarkara, śilâmayam, sauvarṇa* (vol. i. p. 391, v. 11–14).

P. 231. *The spiritual beings, &c.*—This list of names is literally taken from *Vâyu-Purâṇa*, vol. i. p. 391, v. 15–394, v. 43 (*Adhyâya*, 50).

P. 231. *Johannes Grammaticus.*—I have not been able to find this quotation in the Greek text, nor the verse of Homer. *Vide* note to p. 36.

P. 231. *Plato.*—Cf. *Timæus*, 41 A:—

Θεοὶ θεῶν ὧν ἐγὼ δημιουργὸς πατήρ τε ἔργων, ἃ δι' ἐμοῦ γενόμενα ἄλυτα ἐμοῦ γ' ἐθέλοντος· τὸ μὲν οὖν δὴ δεθὲν πᾶν λυτόν, τό γε μὴν καλῶς ἁρμοσθὲν καὶ ἔχον εὖ λύειν ἐθέλειν κακοῦ.

P. 232. *Vishṇu-Purâṇa.*—The seven lokas. *Vide* ii. 226, 227.

P. 232. *The commentator of the book of Patañjali.*—*Cf.* note to p. 27.

P. 233. *Dîbajât.*—This remark was already made on p. 210.

P. 235. *Vishṇu-Purâṇa.*—*Vide* the *dvîpas* and seas, *Vishṇu-Purâṇa*, ii. 109.

P. 236.—*Lokâloka*, which means a *not-gathering place.* Apparently the author had not quite understood the nature of the compound *loka-aloka*, i.e. *world and not-world.*

P. 237. *Vishṇu-Purâṇa.*—The first quotation seems to correspond to ii. 211–213, the second to ii. 204, and the third (on p. 238) to ii. 225–227.

Śeshâkhya is apparently a mistake for *Śesha-âkhya*, i.e. *having the name of Śesha.*

P. 240.—The story of Viśvâmitra's attempt at creating a second world is taken from *Râmâyaṇa*, i. chaps. lvii.–lx.; but here the king is called *Triśaṅku.*

P. 240.—On *Śrîpâla*, *v.* note to p. 164. The city of Multân is in various places mentioned by the author in such a remarkable manner as makes me think that he knew it, and that he had lived there for some time. When King Maḥmûd, A.H. 408 (A.D. 1017), had returned from Khwârizm-Khîva after the conquest of the country, and had carried along with him the princes of the conquered house of Ma'mûn, many scholars (among them Alberuni), officers, and soldiers, did he send some of these (among them Alberuni) as state prisoners to Multân, which he had conquered years before? In this way, nineteen years later (A.H. 427), the princes of the family of Altuntash, who had ruled Khwârizm after the Ma'mûnîs, were treated by Maḥmûd's grandson, Majdûd, who sent them as state prisoners to Lahore. At all events, it is perfectly certain that Alberuni cannot have been in favour with King Maḥmûd, or he would have dedicated one of his books to him. *Cf.* Sachau, *Zur ältesten Geschichte und Chronologie von Khwârizm*, i. pp. 16, 28.

P. 240.—*Aljaihânî* is one of the fathers of Muslim literature on geography and travels in the eastern part of the Khaliphate, minister of one of the Sâmânî kings of Central Asia towards the end of the ninth Christian century. His work is most extensively quoted, but has not yet come to light. *Cf.* Aloys Sprenger, *Die Post- und Reiserouten des Orients*, Vorrede, p. xvii.

P. 241. *When Brahman wanted, &c.*—On the division of Brahman, on Dhruva, &c., *cf. Vishṇu-Purâṇa*, i. pp. 104, 161 *seq.*

P. 242. 1020 *to* 1030 *stars.*—This is the number of stars enumerated in the star-catalogue of 'Abdurraḥmân Sûfî (*cf.* Schjellerup, *Description des Étoiles fixes par Alṣûfî*, St. Petersburg, 1874), which Alberuni has transferred into his *Canon Masudicus.*

Should those men breathe and receive, &c.—I am not quite certain whether I have found out the right meaning of these words or not.

P. 243. *The commentator Balabhadra, &c.*—*Vide* note to p. 156.

P. 245, l. 10.—The values here given correspond to the greatest declination of 24°. So AT = 1397′ is the sine of 24°, BT = 298′ the versed sine of 24°, and TH the difference between this latter and the radius 3438′ (*Schram*).

P. 245, l. 12. *Kardajât.*—The word *kardaja* seems to be derived from the Persian *karda* = *cut*, meaning a *segment.* The radius is equal to 3438 minutes of the periphery, which are called *kardajât.* *Cf.* i. 275, and ii. 205.

P. 246, 1.—Read 24° instead of 23°.

P. 246. *Âryabhaṭa of Kusumapura* is repeatedly quoted by Alberuni. He mentions the orders of the numbers from *ayutaṁ* to *parapadma*, i. 176. Here he speaks of the height of Mount Meru, on the longitude of Kurukshetra, i. 316 (where he quotes Pulisa and Pṛithusvâmin), on the day of the Devas and that of the Pitaras, i. 330. He calls the *cashaka vinâḍî*, i. 335. From a book of his it is quoted that 1008 *caturyugas* are one day of Brahman; half of it is *utsarpiṇî*, the other half *avasarpiṇî* (Jaina terms), i. 371. Unfortunately I cannot read the title of this book; the signs may be النتف, and it must remain uncertain whether it is an Arabic word with the article or an Indian one.

Alberuni warns the reader not to confound this Âryabhaṭa with the elder scholar of this name, to whose followers he belongs. In this place (i. 246) Alberuni does not seem to have used a work of Âryabhaṭa *junior* himself, but to have taken these words of his from a commentary of Balabhadra. We learn here that the book had been translated into Arabic, but do not learn which particular work of Balabhadra's. Was it his commentary on the *Khaṇḍakhâdyaka* of Brahmagupta? *Vide* note to p. 156. That Alberuni had made a new edition of the Arabic version of the *Khaṇḍakhâdyaka* is known (*v.* edition of the Arabic original, pref. p. xx.); perhaps he had also procured himself an Arabic translation of Balabhadra's commentary. *Cf.* on this younger Âryabhaṭa, Kern, *Bṛhat Sañhitâ*, preface, pp. 59, 60, and Dr. Bhâu Dâjî, "Brief Notes on the Age and Authenticity of the Works of Âryabhaṭa, Varâhamihira," &c., p. 392. Alberuni always calls him Âryabhaṭa of Kusumapura (Patna), to distinguish him from his elder namesake.

P. 247. *Śuktibâm.*—This seems to be some vernacular form for *Śuktimat. Vishṇu-Purâṇa*, ii. 127. Rikshabâm = *Rikshavat* (?).

P. 248. *The Vishṇu-Purâṇa says.*—I do not find this quotation in the *Vishṇu-Purâṇa. Cf. V. P.* ii. 117.

P. 248. *The commentator of the book of Patañjali.*—*Vide* note to p. 27.

P. 249. *Alerânshahrî.*—*Vide* note to pp. 6, 7.

P. 249. *Ardiyâ* and Girnagar (?) are apparently the same mountains which the Avesta calls *hara berezaiti* and *taera*.

P. 254. *Vishṇu-Purâṇa.*—The quotations from the *V. P.* given in this chapter are found in ii. p. 191 *seq.*

P. 254.—*Jauṇu*, as here the river Yamunâ is called, corresponds to the Prakrit form prescribed by Vararuci ii. 3, viz. *Jauṇâ*.

P. 257. *Vâyu-Purâṇa.*—The names of the rivers are found in the 45th *Adhyâya*, vol. i. pp. 349–350. The order of enumeration of the mountains in the Sanskrit text is this: Pâriyâtra, Ṛiksha, Vindhya, Sahya, Malaya, Mahendra, Śukti.

V. 97.

vedasmṛitir vedavatî vṛitradhnî sindhur eva ca
varṇâśâ candanâ caiva satîrâ mahatî tathâ.

V. 98.

parâ carmmaṇvatî caiva vidiśâ vetravaty api
śiprâ hy avantî ca tathâ pâriyâtrâsrayâḥ smṛitâḥ.

V. 99.

śoṇo mahânadaś caiva narmmadâ sumahâdrumâ
mandâkinî daśârṇâ ca citrakûṭâ tathaiva ca.

V. 100.

tamasâ pipyalâ śroṇî karatoyâ piśâcikâ
nîlotpalâ vipâśâ ca bañjulâ bâluvâhinî.

V. 101.

siterajâ śuktimatî makruṇâ tridivâ kramât
ṛikshapâdât prasûtâs tâ nadyo maṇinibhodakâḥ.

V. 102.

tâpî payoshṇî nirbbandhyâ madrâ ca nishadhâ nadî
venvâ vaitaraṇî caiva śitivâhuḥ kumudvatî.

V. 103.

toyâ caiva mahâgaurî durgâ câ 'ntaḥśilâ tathâ
vindhyapâdapraśûtâś ca nadyaḥ puṇyajalâḥ śubhâḥ.

V. 104.

godâvarî bhîmarathî kṛishṇâ vaiṇy atha vañjulâ
tuṅgabhadrâ suprayogâ kâuverî ca tathâ, pagâ
dakshiṇâpathanadyas tu sahyapâdâd viniḥsṛitâḥ.

V. 105.

kṛitamâlâ tâmravarṇâ pushpajâty utpalâvatî
malayâbhijâtâs tâ nadyaḥ sarvâḥ śitajalâḥ śubhâḥ.

V. 106.

trisâmâ ṛitukûlyâ ca ikshulâ tridivâ ca yâ
lâṅgûlinî vaṁśadharâ mahendratanayâḥ smṛitâḥ.

V. 107.

ṛishîkâ sukumârî ca mandagâ maudavâhinî
kûpâ palâśinî caiva śuktimatprabhavâḥ smṛitâḥ.

P. 259.—Very similar to this enumeration of rivers is that in the *Vâyu-Purâṇa*, adhyâya 45, vv. 94–108:—

V. 94.

pîyante yair imâ nadyo gaṅgâ sindhusarasvatî
śatadruś candrabhâgâ ca yamunâ sarayûs tathâ.

V. 95.

irâvatî vitastâ ca vipâśâ devikâ kuhûḥ
gomatî dhutapâpâ ca bâhudâ ca dṛishadvatî.

V. 96.

kauśikî ca tṛitîyâ tu niścîrâ gaṇḍakî tathâ
ikshu lohita ityetâ himavatpâdaniḥsṛitâḥ.

The following verse, already given in the note to p. 273, mentions the rivers flowing from the Pâriyâtra.

P. 259. *Vedasinî.*—Write *Vidâsinî.*

P. 259. *Kâyabish.*—The realm of Kâyabish is here identified with Kâbul. The signs may be read *Kâyabish* or *Kâyabshi*; only the consonants are certain. This reminds one forcibly of the name of the Indo-Scythian king *Kadaphes.* A dental sound between two vowels may in later forms be represented by a *y*, as *e.g.* in *Biyattu* = *Vitastâ.* Or is the word to be combined with Panini's *Kâpishî* (*Capissene* in Pliny)? *Cf.* Paṇini and the geography of Afghanistan and the Panjâb in "Indian Antiquary," 1872, p. 21.

P. 259. *Ghûzak.*—This pass ('*akaba* in Arabic) is also mentioned in Elliot, "History of India," ii. 20, 449 (Ghûrak).

P. 259. *Below the town of Parvân.*—It is mentioned in the maps at about the distance of eight miles, as the crow flies, north of Tschârikar. The road from Anderâb to Parvân has been sketched by Sprenger, *Post- und Reiserouten*, map nr. 5.

P. 259. *The rivers Nûr and Ḳirâ.*—Read *Ḳirâṭ* instead of Ḳirâ. *Cf.* Elliot, *l. c.* ii. 465.

P. 260.—*Bhâtul* seems to mean a sub-Himalayan country between the Beas and the Satlej. It occurs only here and p. 211 (together with Antarvedi). Masudi (Elliot, "History of India," i. 22) mentions it as the name of one of the five rivers of Panjab.

The union of the seven rivers.—This tradition apparently refers to the *hapta hendu* of the Avastâ, Vendidad i. 73.

P. 261. *Matsya-Purâṇa.*—Not having this book at hand, I give the corresponding passage from the *Vâyu-Purâṇa*, adhyâya 47, vv. 38–58:—

V. 38.

nadyâḥ śrotas tu gaṅgâyâḥ pratyapadyata saptadhâ
nalinî hrâdinî caiva pâvanî caiva prâggatâ.

V. 39.

sîtâ cakshuś ca sindhuś ca pratîcîṁ diśam âśritaḥ
saptamî tv anugâ tâsâṁ dakshiṇena bhagîrathî, &c.

V. 42.

upagacchanti tâḥ sarvâ yato varshati vâsavaḥ
sirindhrân kuntalâṇs cînân varvarân yavasân druhân.

V. 43.

rushâṇâṁś ca kuṇindâṁsca aṅgalokavarâṁś ca yo
kṛitvâ dvidhâ sindhumaruṁ sîtâ 'gât paścimodadhiṁ.

V. 44.

atha cînamarûṁś caiva naṅgaṇân sarvamûlikân
sâdhrâṁs tushârâṁs tampâkân pahlavân daradân śakân
etân janapadân cakshuḥ srâvayantî gato 'dadhiṁ.

V. 45.

daradâṁś ca sakâśmîrân gândhârân varapân hradân
śivapaurân indrahâsân vadâtîṁś ca visarjayân.

V. 46.

saindhavân randhrakarakân bhramarâbhîrarohakân
śunâmukhâṁs cordhvamanûn siddhacâraṇasevitân.

V. 47.

gandharvân kinnarân yakshân rakshovidyâdharoragân
kalâpagrâmakâṁś caiva pâradân sîgaṇân khasân.

V. 48.

kirâtâṁś ca pulindâṁś ca kurûn sabharatân api
pañcâlakâśimâtsyâṁś ca magadhâṅgâṁs tathaiva ca.

V. 49.

brahmottarâṁś ca vaṅgâṁśca tâmaliptâṁs tathaiva ca
etân janapadân âryyân gaṅgâ bhâvayate śubhân.

V. 50.

tataḥ pratihatâ vindhye pravishṭâ dakshiṇodadhim
tataś câ 'hlâdinî puṇyâ prâcînâbhimukhî yayau.

V. 51.

plâvayanty upabhogâṁś ca nishâdânâñ ca jâtayaḥ
ghîvarân ṛishakâṁś caiva tathâ nîlamukhân api.

V. 52.

keralân ushṭrakarṇâṁś ca kirâtân api caiva hi
kâlodarân vivarṇâṁś ca kumârân svarṇabhûshitân.

V. 53.

sâ maṇḍale samudrasya tirobhûtâ 'nupûrvataḥ
tatas tu pâvanî caiva prâcîm eva diśaṅ gatâ.

V. 54.

apathân bhâvayantî 'ha indradyumnasaro pi ca
tathâ kharapathâṁś caiva indraśaṅkupathân api.

V. 55.

madhyen 'dyânamaskarân kuthaprâvaraṇân yayau
indradvîpasamudre tu pravishṭâ lavaṇodadhiṁ.

V. 56.

tataś ca nalinî câ 'gât prâcîmâśâṁ javena tu
tomarân bhâvayantî ha haṁsamârgân sahûhukân.

V. 57.

pûrvân deśâṁs ca sevantî bhittvâ sâ bahudhâ girîn
karṇaprâvaraṇâṁś caiva prâpya câ 'śvamukhân api.

V. 58.

sikatâparvatamarûn gatvâ vidyâdharân yayau
nemimaṇḍalakoshṭhe tu pravishṭâ sâ mahodadhiṁ.

P. 262. *Vishnu-Purâna.*—This quotation occurs *V. P.* ii. 192. Instead of Anutapata, Shikhi, and Karma, read *Anutaptâ*, *Sikhi*, and *Kramu*.

P. 263. *Created.*—This word seems to prove that Alberuni already adhered to the dogma of orthodox Islam, that the Koran had been created by God from all eternity, and had been preserved on a table in heaven before God revealed it to mankind by the mouth of his prophet, Muhammad.

P. 264. *Ibn Almuḳaffa'* ('Abdallâh) and '*Abdalkarîm* are also mentioned in the author's "Chronology of Ancient Nations," pp. 80 and 108.

P. 265. *For this the astronomers requite them, &c.*—When writing these criticisms, the author probably thought of Brahmagupta. *Cf.* the chapter on eclipses, ii. 110 *seq.*

P. 267. *Yamakoṭi, Laṅkâ, &c.*—*Cf.* the same names in *Sûrya-Siddhânta*, xii. 38–40.

P. 268. *Âryabhaṭa, Vasishṭha, Lâṭa.*—All the astronomers quoted in this context were not known to the author from their own works, but only through quotations in the works of Brahmagupta. Also the words of Varâhamihira (here and p. 272) seem to be quotations of Brahmagupta (evidently p. 276), although they possibly might have been taken from Varâhamihira's *Pañcasiddhântikâ*. Pulisa, of course, must be excepted, as his *Siddhânta* was in the hands of Alberuni, and in course of being translated by him.

P. 271. *Amarâvatî, Vaivasvata, &c.*—*Cf.* on these four cities *Vishṇu-Purâṇa*, ii. 240.

P. 273. *Âpta-purâṇa-kârṇa.*—I do not see how the Arabic signs must be read. The translation of the term means *the true ones who follow the Purâṇa.*

P. 274, l. 37.—TA being the sine of $3\frac{3}{4}°$ is equal to 225′, its square to 50,625; TB the versed sine of $3\frac{3}{4}°$ is 7′, and HT = radius — TB = 3438′ − 7 = 3431 (*Schram*).

P. 275, l. 3.—The following calculation seems to have been made very negligently, for there are several faults in it. The radius 795° 27′ 16″ is correctly determined, for employing the ratio 7 : 22 between diameter and circumference, we are indeed led to this number. But already in the determination of BC there is a fault. Alberuni seems to have converted 0° 7′ 42″ into yojanas, instead of converting 0° 7′ 45″; for 360° being equivalent to 5000 yojanas, we get for 1° 13 yojana, 7 krośa, $444\frac{4}{9}$ yards, for 1′ 1 krośa, $3407\frac{11}{27}$ yards, and for 1″ $123\frac{37}{81}$ yards, and reckoning with those numbers we get 0° 7′ 42″, and not 0° 7′ 45″, which corresponds to 57,035 yards. Further, the rule he makes use of is completely erroneous; it is not true that the relation between the height of two observers is the same as the relation between the sines of their respective fields of vision. If this were the case, we should have $\sec \alpha - 1 : \sin \alpha = \sec \beta - 1 : \sin \beta$, or the quotient $\frac{\sec \alpha - 1}{\sin \alpha}$ would be a constant for every value of α, which, of course, is not the case. But even with his incorrect rule we cannot find the numbers he has found. This rule is 4 yards : sine of field of vision = 57,035 yards : 225′, so one would have sine of field of vision $= \frac{4 \times 225'}{57035}$; but he finds the sine of the field of vision equal to $0^\circ\ 0'\ 1''\ 3'''$, which corresponds to $\frac{1000'}{57035}$, and not to $\frac{900}{57035}$. Therefore Alberuni seems to have reckoned $4 \times 225 = 1000$ instead of 900. Also the length of each degree is not quite correct; it is not 13 yojana, 7 krośa, $333\frac{1}{3}$ yards, but, as above stated, 13 yojana, 7 krośa, $444\frac{4}{9}$ yards. Lastly, if we convert by means of this *number* $0^\circ\ 0'\ 1''\ 3'''$ into yards, we find $129\frac{2}{3}$ yards, so that the $291\frac{2}{3}$ yards he speaks of seem to have been arrived at by an erroneous metathesis of the original ciphers (*Schram*).

P. 277.—*Prâṇa.*—*Cf.* on this measure of time here i. 334, 335.

P. 278.—*The inhabitants of Mount Meru, &c.*, till *as a westward motion*, almost identical with *Sûrya-Siddhânta*, xii. 55.

P. 281. *There is a story of an ancient Greek, &c.*—Probably taken from Porphyry's book on the opinions of the most prominent philosophers about the nature of the sphere. *Vide* note to p. 43.

P. 289. *The Greeks determined, &c.*—The author has given a description of the winds, according to the Arabian and Persian views, in his "Chronology of Ancient Nations," pp. 340, 341.

P. 291. *Atri, Daksha, &c.*—The legends here referred to are found in *Vishṇu-Purâṇa*, i. 153, ii. 21 *seq.*

P. 294.—*The Ṛishi Bhuvana-kośa* (*i.e.* globe) is only mentioned in this place, and not known to me from other sources. His work, the title of which is not given, seems to have treated of geography.

P. 295. *Samnâra* (?).—Thus the manuscript seems to have it. The signs may also be read *Samnâd.*

P. 297. *Kûrmacakra.*—*Vide* on this term a note of H. Kern, *Bṛihat Saṁhitâ*, translation, to the title (*kûrmavibhâga*) of chap. xiv.

P. 298. *Utpala, a native of Kashmîr.*—*Vide* note to p. 157.

P. 298.—*Stone-tower, i.e.* the Λίθινος πύργος of Ptolemy, vi. 13, 2.

P. 299.—Bûshang, a place near Herat, to the west. Sakilkand, also Iskilkand, is identified with *Alexandria* by Elliot, "History of India," i. 336, note 1. Perhaps it is identical with Σιγὰλ πόλις of Stephanus. *Cf.* Droysen, *Geschichte des Hellenismus*, iii. 2, 217.

P. 299.—This extract from *Vâyu-Purâṇa* is found in adhyâya 45, vol. i. pp. 350–353, vv. 109–136. Alberuni gives the directions in the following order: east, south, west, north; whilst the Sanskrit text has this order: north, east, south, west. In comparing the following text with Alberuni, the *varietas lectionis* given in the footnotes of the Calcutta edition can sometimes be used with advantage.

V. 109.

kurupâñcalâḥ śâlvâś caiva sajâñgalâḥ

V. 110.

śûrasenâ bhadrakârâ bodhâḥ śatapatheśvaraiḥ
vatsâḥ kisashṭâ kulyâś ca kuntalâḥ kâśikośalâḥ.

V. 111.

atha pârśvê tilaṅgâś ca magadhâś ca vṛikaiḥ saha.

V. 115.—NORTH.

vâhlîkâ vâḍhadhânâś ca âbhîrâḥ kâlatoyakâḥ
aparîtâś ca śûdrâś ca pahlavâś carmakhaṇḍikâḥ.

V. 116.

gândhârâ yavanâś caiva sindhusauvîrabhadrakâḥ
śakâ hradâḥ kulindâś ca paritâ hârapûrikâḥ.

V. 117.

ramaṭâ raddhakaṭakâḥ kekayâ daśamânikâḥ
kshatriyopaniveśâś ca vaiśyaśûdrakulâni ca.

V. 118.

kâmbojâ daradâś caiva varvarâḥ priyalaukikâḥ
pinas caiva tushârâś ca pahlavâ vâhyatodarâḥ.

V. 119.

âtreyâś ca bharadvâjâḥ prasthalâś ca kaserukâḥ
lampâkâ stanapâś caiva pîḍikâ juhuḍaiḥ saha

V. 120.

apagâś câ 'limadrâś ca kirâtânâñ ca jâtayaḥ
tomârâ haṁsamârgâśca kâśmîrâs taṅgaṇâs tathâ.

V. 121.

cûlikâś câ hukâś caiva pûrṇadarvâs tathaiva ca

V. 122.—EAST.

andhravâkâḥ sujarakâ antargiri vahirgirâḥ
tathâ pravaṅgavaṅgeyâ mâladâ mâlavarttinaḥ.

V. 123.

brahmottarâḥ pravijayâ bhârgavâ geyamarthakâḥ
prâgjyotishâś ca muṇḍâś ca videhâs tâmaliptakâḥ
mâlâ magadhagovindâḥ.

V. 124B.—SOUTH.

pâṇḍyâś ca keralâś caiva caulyâḥ kulyâs tathaiva ca
setukâ mûshikâś caiva kumanâ vanavâsikâḥ
mahârâshṭrâ mâhishakâḥ kaliṅgâś ca.

V. 126.

abirâḥ saha cai 'shîkâ âṭavyâś ca varâś ca ye
pulindrâ vindhyamûlîkâ vaidarbhâ daṇdakaiḥ saha.

V. 127.

pînikâ maunikâś caiva asmakâ bhogavarddhanâḥ
nairṇikâḥ kuntalâ andhrâ udbhidâ nalakâlikâḥ.

V. 128.

dâkshiṇâtyas ca vaideśâ aparâṅs tân nibhodhata
śûrpâkârâḥ kolavanâ durgâḥ kalîtakaiḥ saha.

V. 129.

puleyâś ca surâlâś ca rûpasâs tâpasaiḥ saha
tathâ turasitâś caiva sarvê caiva paraksharâḥ.

V. 130.

nâsikyâ 'dyâś ca ye cânye ye caivâ 'ntaranarmadâḥ
bhânukacchrâḥ samâheyâḥ sahasâ śâśvatair api.

V. 131.

kacchîyâś ca surâshṭrâs, ca anarttâś câ 'rvudaiḥ saha.

V. 132.—West.

mâlavâś ca karûshâś ca mekalâśco 'tkalaiḥ saha
uttamarṇâ daśârṇâś ca bhojâḥ kishkindhakaiḥ saha.

V. 133.

tosalâḥ kosalâś caiva traipurâ vaidikâs tathâ
tumurâs tumburâś caiva shaṭsurâ nishadhaiḥ saha.

V. 134.

anupâs tuṇḍikerâś ca vîtihotrâ hy avantayaḥ.

V. 135.

nigarharâ haṁsamârgâḥ kshupaṇâs taṅgaṇâḥ khasâḥ.

V. 136.

kuśaprâvaraṇâś caiva hûṇâ darvâḥ sahûdakâḥ
trigarttâ mâlavâś caiva kirâtâs tâmasaiḥ saha.

Pp. 300–303.—This extract from Varâhamihira's *Samhitâ* is taken from chap. xiv. *Cf.* the text in Kern's edition, p. 87, the *varietas lectionis*, pp. 12–14, and his translation in "Journal of the Asiatic Society," 1870, p. 81–86. The number of discrepancies between these two traditions is very considerable. In many places Alberuni and his Pandit may not have read their manuscript with sufficient accuracy; in others, the Sanskrit manuscript-tradition may exhibit blunders arising from a not uncommon confusion of characters that are much like each other. The Arabic manuscript-tradition is on the whole correct but the copyist of the Arabic text, too, may have contributed in some case to increase the number of errors. To some Indian names he has added explanatory glosses, *e.g. Sauvîra, i.e.* Mûltân and Jahrâvâr. It is a pity he has done this so sparingly.

P. 303. *Ya'kûb and Alfazârî.—Vide* notes to pp. 169 and 165.

P. 304.—*Abû-Ma'shar*, author of many books, chiefly on astrology, died A.H. 272 = A.D. 885. He is known to the Middle Ages in Europe as Albumaser.

P. 306. *Cupola of the earth.*—If this expression has not been derived from the Indian, the question arises, Who introduced it among the Arabs? Was it Alfazârî?

P. 306. *Râvaṇa the demon.*—The author refers to the fifth and sixth books of the *Râmâyaṇa*, which he apparently did not know, or he would not have called it, as he constantly does, *the story of Râma and Râmâyaṇa*; *v.* pp. 307, 310, and ii. 3. I have not succeeded in deciphering the name of the fortress; the Arabic signs cannot be combined with the name Trikûṭa.

P. 308.—*A straight line from Laṅkâ to Meru* is also mentioned on p. 316. The first degree of longitude, according to the Indian system, is also described in *Sûrya-Siddhânta*, i. 62. Instead of Kurukshetra the author seems to have pronounced *Kurukketru*. At all events, he did not write a *sh*. Therefore the compound *ksh* must have undergone the Prakritic change into *kkh*, as in *pokkharo* = *pushkara* (Vararuci, iii. 29).

P. 309. *These wares are deposited, &c.*—This kind of commerce with savage nations is the same as that carried on by Carthage with tribes on the west coast of Africa; *v.* Herodotus, iv. 196; C. Müller, *Geographi Græci Minores*, i. p. xxvii., and Meltzer, *Geschichte der Karthager*, p. 232 and 506.

P. 310.—*Langabâlûs* is identified with the Nicobar

Islands by A. Sprenger, *Post- und Reiserouten des Orients*, p. 88.

P. 312. *Deśântara.*—*Vide* the rule for its computation in *Sûrya-Siddhanta*, i. 60, 61.
Alarkand, Ibn Ṭâriḳ.—*Cf.* note to p. 169.

P. 312.—*Al-arkand* is identified by Alberuni with the *Khaṇḍakhâdyaka* of Brahmagupta (ii. 7). In another place (ii. 48) the author identifies the word *arkand* with *ahargaṇa*. Both of these identifications can hardly be justified phonetically, and therefore I prefer to suppose as the Sanskrit original of *Arkand* a word like *Âryakhaṇḍa*, whilst apparently the word *ḥarḳan* (title of an Arabic calendar, ii. 52) is identical with *ahargaṇa*.

The author complains of the Arabic translation of *Al-arkand* being a bad one, and at some time of his life (probably after the composition of the *Indica*) he has published a new and amended edition of this translation. *Cf.* preface to the Arabic edition, p. xx. The Arabic *Arkand* has not yet been discovered in the libraries of Europe. The author has borrowed from this book the following notes:—(1) 1050 yojanas are the diameter of the earth (i. 312, 316). (2) The latitude of Ujain is 22° 29′, and that of Almanṣûra 24° 1′ (i. 316). Here the author states that also Ya'ḳûb Ibn Ṭâriḳ had quoted the book, but erroneously. (3) The straight shadow in Loharânîî is $5\frac{3}{8}$ digits (i. 316). (4) Alberuni quotes from *Alarkand* a method for the computation of the era *Shakh*, by which the Gupta era is meant (ii. 48, 49).

P. 312.—On the relation between yojana and mile, *v.* note to p. 199.

P. 312, l. 22.—Using the ratio of 7 : 22 between diameter and circumference, we find 3300 yojanas as the circumference corresponding to a diameter of 1050 yojanas. So 3300 yojanas is the circumference of the earth given in the handbook *Al-arkand*. This agrees with the last lines of p. 315, where it is said that 3200 yojanas are 100 yojanas less than the value given by *Al-arkand* (*Schram*).

P. 313. *The author of Karaṇatilaka, i.e. Vijayanandin.* —*Vide* note to p. 156.

P. 313.—*Vyastatrairâśika* is a technical term for a certain algebraic calculation. *Cf.* Colebrooke, "Algebra," p. 34, § 76.

P. 314.—*Alfazârî in his canon*, which was a translation of the *Brahmasiddhânta* of Brahmagupta; *v.* note to pp. 153, 165.

P. 314, l. 11.—The calculation of the *deśântara* is, as Alberuni remarks, quite erroneous, as the difference of longitude is not taken into account (*Schram*).

P. 315, l. 25.—The number in the lacuna must be 80, for Alberuni says at the bottom of the page, "If we invert the calculation and reduce the parts of the great circle to yojanas, according to this method we get the number 3200." But to get 3200 we must multiply $\frac{360}{9}$ by 80. The rule, "Multiply the yojanas of the distance between two places by 9 and divide the product by 80," serves to convert this distance given in yojanas into degrees. This distance, then, is considered as the hypothenuse of a right-angled triangle, one of the sides of which is the difference of the latitudes, the other the unknown difference of the longitudes; this latter is found by taking the root of the difference of the squares of hypothenuse and known side. This difference of longitude is then expressed in degrees; to get it expressed in day-minutes we must further divide by 6, as there are 360° in a circle, but only 60 day-minutes in a day (*Schram*).

P. 316.—*The line connecting Laṅkâ with Meru*, already mentioned on p. 308.

P. 316. *Ya'ḳûb Ibn Ṭâriḳ, Alarkand.*—*Vide* note to p. 169, 312.

P. 317. *Catlaghtagîn.*—Not knowing the etymology of this Turkish name, I am also ignorant of its pronunciation. The second part of the compound seems to be *tagîn* =

valorous, as in Toghrultagîn, *i.e. valorous like a falcon.* As جيلغن, *jîlghan*, means a large spear, one might think of reading *Jîlghattagîn*, i.e. *valorous with the spear*, but this is very uncertain. Another name of a similar formation is *kutlughtagîn*, *katlagh*, but probably entirely different. *Vide* Biberstein-Kazimirski, *Menoutschehri* preface, p. 136; Elliot, "History of India," ii. 352, iii. 253.

P. 317.—*Karaṇasâra* by Vitteśvara; *v.* note to p. 156.

P. 317.—The fortress *Lauhûr*, also mentioned p. 208 as Lahûr, must not be confounded with Lauhâvar or Lahore. Situation unknown. According to the author's *Canon Masudicus*, it has latitude 33° 40′, longitude 98° 20′. Comparing these latitudes with those given in Hunter's Gazetteer, we do not find that they much differ:—

	Hunter.	Alberuni.
Ghazna	33° 34′	33° 35′
Kâbul	34° 30′	33° 47′
Peshavar	34° 1′ 45″	34° 44′
Jailam	32° 55′ 26″	33° 20′
Siyalkote	32° 31′	32° 58′
Multân	30° 12′	29° 40′

On the identity of Waihand and Attok, *cf.* Cunningham, "Ancient Geography of India," p. 54.

Mandakkakor (the name is differently written) was the fortress of Lahore, according to the author's statement in his *Canon Masudicus*.

Nandna is explained by Elliot ("History of India," ii. 450, 451) as a fort on the mountain Bâlnâth, a conspicuous mountain overhanging the Jailam, and now generally called Tilla. *Cf.* also Elliot, *l. c.* ii. 346, note 347, 366.

The places Dunpûr (pronunciation perfectly uncertain) and *Kandî* (also read Kîrî), *the station of the Amîr*, seem to have been on the road from Ghazna to Peshavar. Near the latter place was fought the decisive battle between King Mas'ûd and his blinded brother Muḥammad, A.D. 1040, and there the former was murdered by the relatives of those who ten years earlier had thought to win his favour by betraying his brother, and were killed or maltreated in reward. *Cf.* Elliot, *l. c.* iv. 199, note 1, 138, ii. 150, 112 (Persian text, p. 274), 273, note 3.

I conjecture Dunpûr to have been identical with Jalalabad or some place near it. Latitude of Jalalabad, 34° 24′; that of Dunpûr, 34° 20′.

Kandi, more southern than Dunpûr and nearer to Kâbul, must have been a place like Gandamak or near it. If it is called *the station (post-relai) of the Amîr*. We may understand by this Amîr the father of King Maḥmûd, the Amîr Sabuktagîn, who first constructed the roads leading to the Indian frontier, as Alberuni informs us on p. 22.

On the identification of Bamhanwâ or Almansûra in Sindh, *v.* Cunningham, *l. l.* p. 271 *seq.*

The statements of Alberuni regarding the Kabul valley and environs have been laid down in a sketch-map of Aloys Sprenger, *Post- und Reiserouten des Orients*, No. 12; the Punjâb and the approaches of Kashmîr, ibid. No. 13.

P. 319.—*Muḥammad Ibn*, &c., is the famous *Razes* of the Middle Ages, who died probably A.D. 932. The author has written a catalogue of his works which exists in Leyden; *v. Chronologie Orientalischer Völker von Alberuni*, Einleitung, p. xi.; Wüstenfeld, *Geschichte der Arabischen Aerzte*, No. 98.

P. 320.—*Alexander of Aphrodisias* is the famous commentator of Aristotle, who lived in Athens about 200 after Christ. *Cf.* Fihrist, p. 252, and Zeller, *Geschichte der Griechischen Philosophie*, 3, 419. The quotation is found in Aristotle, *Phys.* vii. 1.

P. 320. *Varâhamihira.*—This quotation corresponds to *Saṁhitâ*, i. v. 6, 7. Instead of Kumbhaka the Sanskrit text has Kaṇâda.

P. 322. *Timæus.*—This quotation seems to be derived from 42 D E:—

τὸ δὲ μετὰ τὸν σπόρον τοῖς νέοις παρέδωκε θεοῖς σώματα πλάττειν θνητά, κ.τ.λ. καὶ λαβόντες ἀθάνατον ἀρχὴν θνητοῦ ζῴου, κ.τ.λ.

In the Arabic text, p. ١٦٤, 17, read مائتة instead of مائية, and مائتا instead of مائيا.

P. 324. *That being who is above him, i.e.* a being of the next higher order.—The opposite of the term لمن يعلوه is لمن دونه (for the being of the next lower order) on p. ١٧٧, 20 (translation i. 351).

P. 325. *Vishṇu-Purâṇa.*—The first words, *Maharlokâ lies, &c., there is one kalpa,* are found in ii. chap. vii. p. 226. The sons of Brahman are mentioned in *Vishṇu-Purâṇa*, ii. 200, note. The name Sanandanâda (Sanandanâtha?) is perhaps a mistake for Sanâtana. *Cf. Sâṁkhya Kârikâ* with the commentary of Gauḍapâda by Colebrooke-Wilson, p. 1.

P. 325.—*Abû-Ma'shar.*—*Vide* note to p. 304.

P. 325. *Alerânshahrî.*—*Vide* note to pp. 6, 7.

P. 327. *The country without latitude, i.e. niraksha* in Sanskrit.—*Vide* p. 267, and *Sûrya-Siddhânta*, xii. 44, note.

P. 330. *Âryabhaṭa of Kusumapura, i.e.* junior.—*Cf.* note to p. 246.

P. 333.—The terms *parârdha* and *kha* have been explained, pp. 175, 178.

P. 334. *The book Srûdhava by Utpala.*—*Vide* notes to pp. 157, 158.

A system of the measures of time has also been given by Colebrooke, "Essays," i. 540 *seq.*

P. 336. *Ś-M-Y.*—This name is so written here and p. 337. The Arabic signs are to be read *Shammî* or *Shamiyyu.* I do not know a Sanskrit name of this form. Is it = *Samaya?*

The same name seems to occur a third time, ii. 188, but is there written *S-M-Y.* Alberuni says that S-M-Y had *dictated* a method for the computation of the *saṁkrânti;*

he therefore, perhaps, was a scholar of the time and a personal acquaintance (teacher?) of Alberuni's. The title of a book of his is not mentioned.

P. 338.—*The spêd muhra* or *white shell*, an Indian blowing instrument, is also mentioned by Elliot, "History of India," ii. 215, note.

Purshûr (پرشور), as the manuscript has, is probably a mistake for پرشاور, *Purushâvar*, *i.e.* Peshavar.

P. 338. *Horæ æquinoctiales* and *temporales.*—*Vide* note to p. 214.

P. 339. *The commentator of the Siddhânta, Pulisa.*—Read instead of this, "The commentator of the Siddhânta of Pulisa," and compare note to pp. 153, 154. Who this commentator was is not mentioned.

P. 340.—*Abhijit* means the 8th *muhûrta* of the day. The Arabic form ابجتى corresponds perhaps to Sanskrit *abhijiti*.

P. 340. *Vyâsa.*—This statement points to Mahâbhârata, the Âdi-parvan, v. 4506; but the chronological detail is not found there.

P. 340. *Śiśupâla.*—*Vide* note to p. 165.

P. 342.—The names of the dominants of the *muhûrtas* are also mentioned in the following four lines taken from Aufrecht's Catalogue of the Sanskrit manuscripts of the Bodleian Library, p. 332*a*:—

rudrâhimitrapitaro vasuvârriviśve vedhâ vidhiḥ śatamakhaḥ puruhûtavahnî.

naktaṁcaraś ca varuṇâryamayonayaś ca prokṭâ dinê daśa ca paṁca tathâ muhûrtâḥ

niśâmuhûrtâ giriśâjapâdâhirbudhnyapûshâśviyamâgnayaśca.

vidhâtṛicaṁdrâditi jîvavishṇutigmadyutitvâshṭrasami raṇâś ca.

P. 343. *Except the astrologers.*—*Cf.* the meaning of *horâ* in astrology, ii. 222.

P. 343. *Vijayanandin.*—*Vide* note to p. 156. The title of his book would be in Arabic غرة الزيجات (*Ghurrat-alzîjât*).

P. 344. *Names of the horás.*—I have not found these names in Sanskrit. Perhaps they are mentioned in some commentary to *Sûrya Siddhânta*, xii. 79.

On *Srúdhava*, *v.* note to p. 158.

P. 347. *Physical scholars know, &c.*—There is a similar passage on the physical effects of moonlight in the author's "Chronology of Ancient Nations," p. 163. I am afraid I have not caught the sense of the sentence, "and that she affects (?) linen clothes," &c.

P. 348. *Atuh* (?).—The MS. seems to read *âtvahhu*.

The word بربه, BRBA, is perhaps a mistake for برقه, *barkhu*, which, according to the table, ii. 197 (*cf.* Trumpp, "Grammar of the Sindhî Language," p. 158), is the name of the first day of a *paksha*.

P. 348. *Veda.*—The author gives six quotations from the *Veda*: one taken from *Patañjali* (i. 29), one from *Sâṁkhya* (i. 31), two from the *Brahmasiddhânta* of Brahmagupta (ii. 110, 111), and two quotations which were probably communicated to him by his Pandits, as he does not mention a particular source whence he took them (i. 348 and ii. 348).

P. 352. *Vâsudeva.*—The quotation corresponds to *Bhagavad-Gîtâ*, viii. 17.

The book Smṛiti.—*Vide* note to p. 131. This quotation seems to have been taken from Manu, *Dharmaśâstra*, i. 72.

P. 353.—The information on the four *mânas* (*cf. Sûrya-Siddhânta*, chap. xiv.), as given by Ya'ḳûb, was the only one at the disposal of Alberuni at the time when he wrote his "Chronology" (*v.* English edition, p. 15). It was communicated to him by the *Kitâb-alghurra* of Abû Muḥammad Alnâ'ib Alâmuli. The *four different kinds of spaces of time* mentioned there are the four *mânas, saura, sâvana, candra* and *nakshatra*.

P. 353.—*Bhukti*, in Arabic *buht*, is the daily motion of a planet; *cf. Sûrya-Siddhânta*, i. 27, note, and here ii. 195. The Arabic form does not seem to have passed through an intermediate stage of a Prakritic nature, for in Prakrit it would have been *bhuttî* (Vararuci, iii. 1).

P. 355. *The sâvana-mâna is used, &c.*—*Cf.* the similar rules in *Sûrya-Siddhânta*, xiv. 3, 13, 15, 18, 19.

P. 356. *Uttarâyaṇa.*—On the two *ayanas cf. Sûrya-Siddhânta*, xiv. 9.

P. 357. *Ṛitu.*—*Vide* the description of the six seasons in *Sûrya-Siddhânta*, xiv. 10, 16.

P. 358. *Dominants of the halves of the months.*—I do not know a Sanskrit list of these names. The *Âśana* (*Âshunu*) perhaps means *Aśvin* or *Aśvinî*.

P. 359. *Dimas* (probably pronounced *dimasu*) = Sanskrit *divasa*, is the shibboleth of the Indian vernacular dialect spoken round Alberuni, and probably by himself. I do not know which dialect this was, nor whether there are any traces of it in our days. The change between *v* and *m* is also observed in the following examples:— چرمنمت *carmanmat* = *carmaṇvatî* (Chambal), هممنت *himamant* = *himavant*, جاگملك *jâgamalku* = *yâjnavalkya*, مچی *maccî* = *vatsya*, سگریم *sugrîmu* = *sugrîva*. Some examples of the change of *v* to *m* are also given by Hörnle, "Comparative Grammar," § 134.

P. 359. *The three sounds h, kh, and sh, &c.*—On the pronunciation of *sh* as *kh*, *cf.* Hörnle, *l. c.* § 19, and on the further change of *kh* to *h*, ibid. § 19. Examples of the former change are numerous in the *Indica*; of examples of the latter, *cf.* منهه *munha* = *mukha*, ببرهان *babrahân* = *vaprakhâna* (?), and also آهارى *âhârî*, *cf.* *âshâḍha*, كهكند *kihkind* = *kishkindha*. In Prakrit *muham* = *mukha* (Vararuci, ii. 27.

P. 361. *Srûdhava by Utpala.*—*Vide* note to p. 157.

P. 362. 1 *ghaṭî* = 16 *kalâ*.—*Cf.* with these measures of time the statements on pp. 336, 337.

P. 364. *Chapter XL.*—It has also been translated by Reinaud, *Fragments Arabes et Persans*, pp. 155–160.

P. 364. *Saṁdhi udaya* and *saṁdhi astamana.*—One would expect *saṁdhyudaya* and *saṁdhyastamana*, but there is no trace of a *y*. The forms have a vernacular character, and must be explained according to the analogy of دُتِ *duti* = *dyuti*, and انتز *antazu* = *antyaja*.

Hiraṇyakaśipu.—The story of this king and his son Prahlâda is told by the *Vishṇu-Purâṇa*, ii. 34 *seq.*

P. 366. *Saṁdhi.*—The way it is used in astrology is shown by the table, ii. 219.

P. 366. *Puñjala.*—*Vide* note to p. 157. The tradition here given is very similar to that mentioned by Colebrooke, "Essays," ii. 332, 333.

P. 366, l. 35.—We find that the beginning of the Hindu solar year 854 Sakakala takes place A.D. 932, March 22, 6 *ghaṭi* 40′ 15″, which corresponds to March 22, 7 h. 40 m. civil Greenwich time, whilst the real instant of the solstice is March 15, 12 h. 15 m. civil Greenwich time, so that the solstice precedes the calculation by 6 days and 19 hours, which agrees very well with the 6° 50′ which Puñjala mentions (*Schram*).

P. 368. *Aharyaṇa* = *ahar* + *gaṇa*.—The author's erroneous explanation is repeated ii. 26.

Sind-hind = *siddhânta*.—It may be questioned whether the inorganic *n* has been introduced into the word by the Arabs, or whether it existed already in the pronunciation of the Hindus from whom they learned the word. I do not know of a rule to this effect in Prakrit or vernacular, but there are certain Indian words which apparently show a similar phonetic process. *Cf. e.g.* Prakrit *uṭṭô* (Sanskrit, *ushṭra*), which in Eastern Hindhî has become *ũṭ* or *ũṅṭ*. Hörnle, "Comparative Grammar of the Gauḍian Languages," § 149.

P. 370. *Âryabhaṭa, sen.*—*Vide* note to p. 156.

Âryahbaṭa of Kusumapura. *Vide* note to p. 246.

The word I cannot decipher may be read الىدعٮ, *i.e.* the article and three consonants with three dots above them, something like الذنف.

P. 371.—*Utsarpiṇî, avarsarpiṇî*, are terms employed in the Jaina system. *Cf.* Colebrooke, "Essays," ii. 186, 194.

P. 372. *The book Smṛiti mentions.*—This is Manu, *Dharmaśâstra*, i. 80.

P. 375. *A translation of his whole work, &c.*—*Cf.* note to pp. 153, 154. Alberuni was translating the *Pulisa-Siddhânta*, which until that time had not yet been translated into Arabic by Muslim scholars, because they did not like its theological tendency.

P. 376. *Brahmagupta.*—*Vide* note to pp. 153, 154.

P. 378.—In writing the introductory sentences of chap. xliii., the author seems to have had in mind Plato's *Timæus*, 22C: πολλαὶ καὶ κατὰ πολλὰ φθοραὶ γεγόνασιν ἀνθρώπων καὶ ἔσονται, κ.τ.λ.

P. 379.—*The pedigree of Hippocrates* is known from Tzetzes, chil. vii. host. 115. *Cf.* "The Genuine Works of Hippocrates," translated by Fr. Adams, London, 1849, vol.

i. p. 23. The name انلوسوس seems to be a repetition of the name Hippolochos, ابولوحس. If it is dropped from the list, we have the fourteen generations which the author counts between Hippocrates and Zeus.

The Arabic ماخلون seems to be a mistake for ماخاون, *Machaon*.

P. 380. *Paraśurâma.*—*Vide* this legend in *Vishṇu-Purâṇa*, iv. 19 (here added from the *Mahâbhârata*).

P. 380. *Buddhodana.*—*Vide* my conjecture as to the origin of this name in note to p. 40.

The *Muḥammira.*—This term has been explained in note to p. 21.

P. 382. *Garga, the son of.*—The name of his father is written *Jashû* or *Jashô* (here and p. 397). Could this be Yaśodâ?

P. 382.—*'Alî Ibn Zain* was a Christian physician in Merw; *cf.* Shahrazûrî, MS. of the Royal Library, Berlin, MS. Or., octav. 217, fol. 144*b*; the same in Baihaḳî, ibid. No. 737, fol. 6*a*. According to this tradition, his son was the author of the famous medical book *Firdaus-alḥikma*. *Cf.* also Fihrist, p. 296 and notes; Wüstenfeld, *Geschichte der Arabischen Aerzte*, No. 55.

The book Caraka.—*Vide* note to p. 159.

P. 383. *Kṛiśa, the son of Âtreya.*—If this is what the author means, the Arabic signs فدرس must be altered to فرس. *Cf.* A. Weber, *Vorlesungen*, p. 284, note 309.

P. 383.—The quotation from Aratus is *Phænomena*, vv. 96–134. I give the text from Imm. Bekker, *Aratus cum Scholiis*, Berlin, 1828:—

> 'Αμφοτέροισι δὲ ποσσὶν ὑποσκέπτειο βοώτεω
> Παρθένον, ἥ ῥ' ἐν χερσὶ φέρει Στάχυν αἰγλήεντα.
> εἴτ' οὖν 'Αστραίου κείνη γένος, ὅν ῥά τέ φασιν
> ἄστρων ἀρχαῖον πατέρ' ἔμμεναι, εἴτε τευ ἄλλου,
> εὔκηλος φορέοιτο · λόγος γε μὲν ἐντρέχει ἄλλος·

ἀνθρύποις, ὡς δῆθεν ἐπιχθονίη πάρος ἦεν,
ἤρχετο δ' ἀνθρώπων κατεναντίη, οὐδέ ποτ' ἀνδρῶν
οὐδέ ποτ' ἀρχαίων ἠνήνατο φῦλα γυναικῶν,
ἀλλ' ἀναμὶξ ἐκάθητο καὶ ἀθανάτη περ ἐοῦσα.
καί ἑ Δίκην καλέεσκον · ἀγειρομένη δὲ γέροντας
ἠέ που εἰν ἀγορῇ ἦ εὐρυχόρῳ ἐν ἀγυιῇ,
δημοτέρας ἤειδεν ἐπισπέρχουσα θέμιστας.
οὔπω λευγαλέου τότε νείκεος ἠπίσταντο,
οὐδὲ διακρίσιος περιμεμφέος οὐδὲ κυδοιμοῦ ·
αὔτως δ' ἔζωον. χαλεπὴ δ' ἀπέκειτο θάλασσα,
καὶ βίον οὔπω νῆες ἀπόπροθεν ἠγίνεσκον ·
ἀλλὰ βόες καὶ ἄροτρα καὶ αὐτὴ πότνια λαῶν
μυρία πάντα παρεῖχε Δίκη, δώτειρα δικαίων.
τόφρ' ἦν ὄφρ' ἔτι γαῖα γένος χρύσειον ἔφερβεν.
ἀργυρέῳ δ' ὀλίγη τε καὶ οὐκέτι πάμπαν ὁμοίη
ὡμίλει, ποθέουσα παλαιῶν ἤθεα λαῶν.
ἀλλ' ἔμπης ἔτι κεῖνο κατ' ἀργύρεον γένος ἦεν.
ἤρχετο δ' ἐξ ὀρέων ὑποδείελος ἠχηέντων
μουνάξ · οὐδέ τεῳ ἐπεμίσγετο μειλιχίοισιν ·
ἀλλ' ὁπότ' ἀνθρώπων μεγάλας πλήσαιτο κολώνας,
ἠπειλει δὴ ἔπειτα καθαπτομένη κακότητος,
οὐδ' ἔτ' ἔφη εἰσωπὺς ἐλεύσεσθαι καλέουσιν.
οἵην χρύσειοι πατέρες γενεὴν ἐλίποντο
χειροτέρην · ὑμεῖς δὲ κακώτερα τεξείεσθε.
καὶ δή που πόλεμοι, καὶ δὴ καὶ ἀνάρσιον αἷμα
ἔσσεται ἀνθρώποισι, κακοῖς δ' ἐπικείσεται ἄλγος.
ὣς εἰποῦσ' ὀρέων ἐπεμαίετο, τοὺς δ' ἄρα λαούς
εἰς αὐτὴν ἔτι πάντας ἐλίμπανε παπταίνοντας.
ἀλλ' ὅτε δὴ κἀκεῖνοι ἐτέθνασαν, οἱ δ' ἐγένοντο,
χαλκείη γενεὴ, προτέρων ὀλοώτεροι ἄνδρες,
οἳ πρῶτοι κακοεργὸν ἐχαλκεύσαντο μάχαιραν
εἰνοδίην, πρῶτοι δὲ βοῶν ἐπάσαντ' ἀροτήρων,
καὶ τότε μισήσασα Δίκη κείνων γένος ἀνδρῶν
ἔπταθ' ὑπουρανίη.

P. 384. *The commentator of the book of Aratus.*—This

commentary is not identical with the scholia edited by Bekker. *Cf. Eratosthenis Catasterismorum Reliquiæ*, rec. C. Robert, pp. 82–84.

P. 385. *Plato.*—This quotation is from *Leges*, iii. 677; but the phrases forming the conversation have been omitted.

ΑΘΗΝ. Τὸ πολλὰς ἀνθρώπων φθορὰς γεγονέναι κατακλυσμοῖς τε καὶ νόσοις καὶ ἄλλοις πολλοῖς, ἐν οἷς βραχύ τι τὸ τῶν ἀνθρώπων λείπέσθαι γένος, κ.τ.λ. ὡς οἱ τότε περιφυγόντες τὴν φθορὰν σχεδὸν ὄρεινοί τινες ἂν εἶεν νομεῖς ἐν κορυφαῖς που, σμικρὰ ζώπυρα τοῦ τῶν ἀνθρώπων γένους διασεσωσμένα, κ.τ.λ. καὶ δὴ τοὺς τοιούτους γε ἀνάγκη που τῶν ἄλλων ἀπείρους εἶναι τεχνῶν καὶ τῶν ἐν τοῖς ἄστεσι πρὸς ἀλλήλους μηχανῶν εἴς τε πλεονεξίας καὶ φιλονεικίας καὶ ὁπόσ' ἄλλα κακουργήματα πρὸς ἀλλήλους ἐπινοοῦσιν.

P. 387.—*Cf.* with this table *Vishṇu-Purâṇa*, book iii. chap. i. and ii., and the Bombay edition, 1886.

Stâmasa seems to be a mistake for *Tâmasa.*

Caitraka instead of *caitra* seems to have been derived from an erroneous reading of the beginning of the Sanskrit *caitrakiṁpurushâdyâśca.*

Sudivya seems to have risen from a wrong division of the words *Paraśu* (other readings *Parabhu*, *Parama*) *Divya.* The Bombay edition reads *prajâḥparamadivyâdyâstasya.*

Antata, the name of Indra in the fifth Manvantara, can hardly be combined with the *Vibhu* of Sanskrit tradition.

Sîndhu Reva.—These words, whatever their proper pronunciation may be, are not found in the Sanskrit text.

Puru Muru is Sanskrit *Uru Puru*, but *Pramukha* is a gross mistake, for the text has *urupuruśatadyumnapramukhâḥ*, *i.e.* Uru, Puru, Śatadyumna, and others.

Nabasa and *Dhrishṇâ* are mistakes for *Nabhaga* and *Dhṛishṭa.*

Virajas, *Aścarvarî*, *Nirmogha.*—The Sanskrit text runs *viracâścorvarîvâṁścanirmohâdyâs*, which Alberuni has divided into *viraja-aścorvarîvâṁśca-nirmoha.* Cf. *Scor-*

varî Vâṁśca on p. 394. Wilson reads the second name *Arvarîvat.*

Mahâvîrya, name of Indra in the ninth Manvantara, instead of *Adbhuta*, rests on a misinterpretation of these words: *teshâm indrô mahâvîryô bhavishyatyadbhutô dvija.*

Sudharmâtman.—The Sanskrit text has *Sarvadharmâ.*

Devata-Vânupadevâśca, instead of *Devavat* and *Upadeva*, rests on a wrong division of the words *devavânupadevaśca.*

Vicitra-adyâ, a mistake for *vicitrâdyâ, i.e. Vicitra and others.*

Urur, *Gabhî* (*sic* MS.), *Budhnya-adyâ*, a mistake for *urugabhîrabudhnyâdyâ, i.e. Uru; Gabhîra, Budhnya, and others.*

P. 388.—*The same book relates*, viz., *Vishṇu-Purâṇa*, iii. p. 20.

On *Priyavrata*, *v.* ibid. ii. p. 101.

P. 389.—*A pious woman*, viz., Arundhatî, v. p. 390.

P. 390.—On the Seven Ṛishis, or Ursa Major, *cf.* Colebrooke, "Essays," ii. 310.

P. 391.—The almanac or calendar from Kashmîr for the Śaka-year 951 (A.D. 1029) is quoted in two other places, ii. 5 and ii. 8.

P. 391.—On the ancient astronomer Garga, *cf.* Kern, *Bṛhat Sañhitâ*, preface, pp. 33 *seq.*

P. 392. *Only by* 525 *years.*—*Cf.* on *Varâhamihira* note to p. 54.

P. 392. *Karaṇasâra* by Vitteśvara.—*Vide* note to p. 156.

P. 394.—This table is taken from *Vishṇu-Purâṇa*, book iii. chaps. i. and ii.

2. *Manvantara: Dattu Nirishabha.*—A mistake for *Dattoni Ṛishabha.*

Niśvara.—Alberuni read *Nirśava.*

Śvorvarî Vâṁśca.—The author has wrongly divided the word *ścorvarîvâṁśca* (ed. Bombay *śvorvarîvâṁśca*). *Cf.* note to p. 387.

4. *Manvantara: Jyoti* (read *Jyotis*) *Dhâman.*—Mistake for *Jyotirdhâman.*

Caitrogni, as the author has, is a mistake for *Caitrâgnî.*

Varaka.—Ed. Bombay, *Vamaka;* Wilson-Hall, *Vanaka.*

5. *Manvantara: Rurdhvabâhu* has risen through the wrong division of the two words *vedaśrîrûrdhvabâhu.*

Apara has by mistake been taken for a proper noun in the following words:—*ûrdhvabâhustathâparaḥ.*

Subâhu (*Srabâhu?*).—The Sanskrit text has *sradhâman.*

6. *Manvantara: Atinâman.*—The Arabic text has *atimânu.* Or are we to read اتنام instead of اتمان?

Carshayaḥ (=*and the Rishis*) by mistake derived from the following passage:—*saptâsannitivcarshayaḥ.*

9. *Manvantara: Harya,* in the Sänskrit tradition *Bharya.* Perhaps we must read بهّب instead of هّب.

Medhâdhṛiti (Wilson-Hall), *medhâmṛiti* (ed. Bombay). Alberuni seems to have read *Vedhâdhṛiti,* if we are not to read ميذهادت instead of بيذهادت.

10. *Manvantara: Satya* (Wilson-Hall).—The Arabic has something like *Sattayô.*

Sukshetra.—The Arabic has *Sushera* instead of *Satyaketu.* Perhaps the author has overlooked this word and copied the following one, viz., *Sukshetra.*

11. *Manvantara: Niścara,* in the Arabic *viścara.*

Agnîdhra = Agnitejas. The Arabic has *agnîtru* اكنيتر, which is perhaps to be changed to اكنتيز (*agnitejas*).

Nagha.—Wilson-Hall, *Anagha.*

12. *Manvantara: Sutaya,* in the Sanskrit text *sutapâśca.* Perhaps the author has read *sutayâśca.*

Dyuti and *Iścânyas* have by mistake been derived from the following verse—

tapodhṛitirdyutiścânyaḥsaptamastutapodhanaḥ.

13. *Manvantara: Tatvadarśîca,* mistake for *Tatvadarṣin,* for the Sanskrit text has *tatvadarśîca.*

Vyaya, mistake for *Aryaya.* The author seems to have read *dhritimân vyayaśca* instead of *dhṛitimânaryayaśca.*

14. *Manvantara: Agniba* instead of *Agnibâhuḥ.*

Gnûdhra.—The ed. Bombay reads *mâgadhognûdhraṇvaca.* Other readings, *Grûdhra, Agnîdhra.*

Yuktasa and *Jita* are taken from the following verse—

yuktas-tathâ-jitaś-cânyo-manuputrân ataḥ śṛiṇu.

P. 395.—*Vâlakhilyas* are known as pigmy sages from the *Vishṇu-Purâṇa*, but I do not find there this story of them and Śatakratu.

P. 396. *Bali, the son of Virocana*, and his Vazîr *Venus*, *i.e.* Śukra.—*Vide Vishṇu-Purâṇa*, iii. p. 19, note. There is a Hindu festival called after him *Balirâjya*; *v.* ii. 182.

P. 397. *Vishṇu-Purâṇa.*—This quotation is found III. ii. p. 31.

P. 398.—The second quotation from *Vishṇu-Purâṇa* is III. iii. p. 33.

Kali, the son of Jashô (?).—*Vide* note to p. 382.

P. 398.—The names of the Vyâsas of the twenty-nine Dvâpara-yugas have been taken from *Vishṇu-Purâṇa*, III. iii. pp. 34–37. The author's tradition differs a little from the Sanskrit text, in so far as he does not always combine the same Vyâsa with the same Dvâpara, particularly towards the end of the list. The names agree in both traditions, except *Trivṛishan*, for which the Arabic has something like *Trivarta* or *Trivṛitta*. Besides, in the word Riṇajyeshṭha (in Arabic *Rinajertu*) the author has made a mistake. The Sanskrit verse runs thus—

kṛitaṁjayaḥ saptadaśe ṛiṇajyoshṭâdaśe smṛitaḥ.

Alberuni has read *ṛiṇajyeshṭoshṭâdaśe* instead of *ṛiṇajyeshṭâdaśe*, and has wrongly divided these words into *ṛiṇajyeshṭo-ashṭâdaśe* instead of *ṛiṇajyo ashṭâdaśe*. Further, he has been guided by the analogy of *jyaishṭha* (the name, of the month), which in vernacular was pronounced *jertu*, in changing *ṛiṇajyeshṭa* into *rinajertu*.

P. 398. *Vishṇu-Dharma.*—In mentioning Vâsudeva, Saṁkarshaṇa, &c., as the names of Vishṇu in the yugas, this source agrees with the teaching of the sect of the

Bhâgavatas or Pâñcarâtras.—*Vide* Colebrooke, "Essays," i. 439, 440.

P. 401.—The story of the birth of Vâsudeva, *i.e.* Krishṇa, is related in the *Vishṇu-Purâṇa*, book v. chap. iii.

P. 403. *The children of Kaurava, &c.*—The following traditions are taken from the *Mahâbhârata*: the dice-playing from book ii., or *sabhâparvan*; the preparing for battle from book v., or *udyogaparvan*; the destruction of the five brothers by the curse of the Brahmin from book xvi., or *mausalaparvan*; their going to heaven from book xvii., or *mahâprasthânikaparvan*.

The introductory sentence of this relation, وكان اولاد كورو على بنى العمومة, literally, "The children of Kaurava were over their cousins," is odd, and perhaps not free from a lacuna. Pâṇḍu had died, and his children grow up in Hastinapura, at the court of Kaurava, *i.e.* Dhritarâshṭra, their uncle, the brother of Pâṇḍu. One expects a sentence like "The children of Kaurava cherished enmity against their cousins," but as the Arabic words run, one could scarcely translate them otherwise than I have done. The children of Kaurava had "the charge of their cousins," &c.

P. 407. On the *akshauhiṇî cf.* H. H. Wilson, "Works," 2d edit., iv. p. 290 (on the art of war as known to the Hindus).

Mankalus seems to be a mistake for *Myrtilus*. *Cf. Eratosthenis Catasterismorum Reliquiæ*, rec. C. Robert, p. 104. The source of Alberuni seems to have been a book like the chronicle of *Johannes Malalas*.

The second tradition, taken from a commentary on Aratus' *Phænomena* (*vide* note to p. 97), is found in the same book, *Eratosthenis, &c.*, p. 100, 98. For this information I am indebted to my colleague, Professor C. Robert.

P. 408.—The number 284,323 of people who ride on chariots and elephants is a mistake for 284,310. I do not see what is the origin of this surplus of 13 men. However, the wrong number must be kept as it is, since the author reckons with it in the following computation.

ANNOTATIONS.

VOL. II.

P. 1.—The famous chronological chapter xlix. consists of two parts of very different value. Part i., on p. 2–5, an explanation of the mythical eras of the Hindus, is taken from the *Vishṇu-Dharma*, on which work *cf.* note to i. p. 54.

Part ii., on p. 5–14, containing information of a historical character, has not been drawn from a literary source. If the author had learned these things from any particular book or author, he would have said so. His information is partly what educated people among Hindus believed to be historic and had told him, partly what he had himself observed during his stay among Hindus and elsewhere. That their historic tradition does not deserve much credit is matter of complaint on the part of the author (on pp. 10, 11), and that altogether the description of historic chronology, as far as he was able to give it, is by no means in all points satisfactory, is frankly admitted by the author himself (on p. 9). Whatever blame or praise, therefore, attaches to this chapter must in the first instance be laid to the charge, not of Alberuni, but of his informants. What he tells us is to be considered as the *vulgata* among educated Hindus in the north-west of India in his time.

Although the tales which had been told Alberuni may not have been of a high standard, still it is much to be regretted that he has not chosen to incorporate them into his *Indica* (*cf.* p. 11, 1–6).

Whether his hope (expressed on p. 8), that he might some day learn something more of this subject, was realised or not, I cannot make out. However, the stray notes on Indian chronology scattered through his *Canon Masudicus*, which he wrote some years after the *Indica*, do not seem to betray that his Indian studies had made much progress.

In all researches on Indian chronology, Alberuni's statements play an eminent part, specially those relating to the epochs of the Śaka and Gupta eras. *Cf.* among others the following publications:—

Fergusson, "On Indian Chronology," "Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society," vol. iv. (1870), p. 81; and "On the Saka, Samvat, and Gupta Eras," vol. xii. (1880), p. 259.

E. Thomas, "The Epoch of the Guptas," ibid. vol. xiii. (1881), p. 524.

Oldenberg, "On the Dates of Ancient Indian Inscriptions and Coins," "Indian Antiquary," 1881, p. 213.

Fleet, "The Epoch of the Gupta Era," ibid., 1886, p. 189.

Drouin, "Chronologie et Numismatique des Rois Indo-Scythes," in "Revue Numismatique," 1888, premier trimestre, pp. 8 *seq.*

M. Müller, "India, What can it teach us?" pp. 281, 286, 291.

P. 2.—As the author had to compare a number of different eras with each other, he stood in need of a common standard to which to reduce all of them, and for this purpose he chose the New-Year's Day or first Caitra of the year 953 of the Śaka era, which corresponds to—

(1.) A.D. 1031, 25th February, a Thursday.
(2.) A. Hijrae 422, 28th Ṣafar.
(3.) A. Persarum 399, 19th Ispandârmadh-Mâh.

The Naurôz or New-Year's Day of the Persian year 400 fell on 9th March 1031 A.D., which is the day 2,097,686 of the Julian period (*Schram*).

P. 2, l. 30.—This refers to the year of the kaliyuga 3600, as there have elapsed 10 divya years or 3600 years of the present yuga. On the next page Alberuni makes the calculation for the gauge-year, or the year 4132 of the kaliyuga. A kalpa being a day of Brahmaṇ, 8 years, 5 months, 4 days correspond to 8 × 720 + 5 × 60 + 4 × 2, or 6068 kalpas, or 26,213,760,000,000 years. Of the present kalpa there have elapsed six manvantaras or 1,840,320,000 years, seven samdhis or 12,096,000 years, twenty-seven caturyugas or 116,640,000 years, the kritayuga or 1,728,000 years, the tretayuga or 1,296,000 years, the dvaparayuga or 864,000 years, and of the kaliyuga 4132 years; so altogether of the seventh manvantara 120,532,132 years, of the kalpa 1,972,948,132 years, and of Brahman's life 26,215,732,948,132 years, as stated p. 3, ll. 6–9 (*Schram*).

P. 3. *It was I who told it to Yudhishṭhira, &c.*—The author of *Vishṇu-Dharma* refers in these words to the third *parvan* (*vanaparvan*) of the *Mahâbhârata*.

P. 4, l. 29.—From the beginning of Brahman's life to that of the present kalpa there have elapsed 6068 kalpas or 6068 × 1008 × 4,320,000 or 26,423.470,080,000 years. Six manvantaras = 6 × 72 × 4,320,000 or 1,866,240,000 years; twenty-seven cataryugas = 27 × 4,320,000 or 116,640,000 years; three yugas + 4132 years = 3 × 1,080,000 + 4132 or 3,244,132 years. The latter number represents the years elapsed of the caturyuga; adding to it successively the other numbers of years, we find the numbers given ll. 29–31 of this page. The Arabic manuscript has 26,425,456,200,000 instead of 26.425,456,204,132 (*Schram*).

P. 6, l. 3.—In the book *Srûdhava, &c.*, *cf.* note to i. p. 158.

Candrabîja.—I first took the reading of the manuscript to be جنّدربير, but now I believe I can see a pale dot above the last consonant, so that we may read جندربيز.

On the *shashṭyabda*, or sixty-years cycle, *cf.* chap. lxii. p. 123.

P. 6. *The epoch of the era of Śaka, &c.*—Alberuni speaks of this era in his *Canon Masudicus* (composed during the reign of Mas'ûd) in the following terms: الوقت بلغة الهند هو كال واشهر التواريخ عندهم وخاصّة عند منجّميهم شككال اى وقت سق ويحسب من سنة هلاكه لانّه كان متغلّبا عليه والرسم فيه وفى غيره ان تذكر سنيه التامّة دون الناقصة. (Beginning of the sixth chapter, book i., copied from the Codex Elliot, now in the British Museum.)

Translation: "*Time* is called *Kâla* in the language of the Hindus. The era most famous among them, and in particular among their astronomers, is the *Śakakâla*, i.e. *the time of Śaka*. This era is reckoned from the year of his destruction, because he was ruling (rather, tyrannising) over it (*i.e.* over that time). In this as well as in other eras it is the custom to reckon only with complete, not with incomplete or current years."

Then the author goes on to give rules for the comparison of the Śaka era with the Greek, Persian, and Muslim eras.

A later author, 'Abû-Sa'id 'Abd-alḥayy Ibn Alḍaḥḥâk Ibn Maḥmûd Gardêzî (Gardez, a town east of Ghazna), has reproduced the information of Alberuni on the Saka era in Persian. Not having the original (MS. Ouseley 240, Bodleian Library, Oxford) at my disposal, I give a translation made years ago:—

"The Hindu era is called شكال, because كال (*kâla*) means *time*, and شك (*Śaka*) is the name of a king whose death was made an era; he did the Hindus a great deal of harm, so they made the date of his death a festival" (Oxford manuscript, p. 352).

The place *Karûr* is also mentioned in the *Chachnâma*. *Vide* Elliot, "History of India," i. 139, 143, 207.

P. 7. *Al-arkand.*—*Cf.* note to i. 312. The book does not seem to exist in the collections of Arabic manuscripts in Europe.

P. 8.—The pronunciation of the names Kanîr, Bardarî, Mârîgala, and Nîrahara (Nîra-gṛiha?) is more or less conjectural.

Alberuni identifies *Mârîgala* with *Takshaśila* (vol. ii. 302), *i.e.* the Taxila of the ancients. The name *Mârîgala* seems to be preserved in that of a *range of hills lying only two miles to the south of Shahdhesi* (Cunningham, "Ancient Geography of India," p. 111). The place is also mentioned in the *Ṭâbaḳati-Nâṣirî*. *Vide* Elliot, "History of India," ii. 271, 273.

P. 9.—*Durlabha*, a native of Multân, is only twice mentioned. Here the author quotes from him a method for the computation of the Śaka era, and p. 54 a method for the computation of *ahargaṇa*. According to him, the Indian year commenced with the month Mârgaśîrsha, but the astronomers of Multân commenced it with Caitra (p. 10).

P. 10. *Barhatakîn.*—The name occurs only in this one place. If it were an Indian name, I should think of something like *Vṛihatkîna* (or *Vṛihatketu* برهتكيت). If it is Turkish, it is a compound, the second part of which is *tagîn* (as in *Toghrultagîn* and similar names). As the author declares the dynasty to be of Tibetan origin, the question is whether the name may be explained as Tibetan.

P. 10. *Var.*—As the Arabic verb may be connected either with the preposition *bi* or with the accusative, we may read either *bvr* or *vr*.

P. 10, l. 25. *He began to creep out.*—In the Arabic text, p. ۲۰۷, 8, read اخذ يخرج instead of احد يخرج.

P. 11. *Kanik.*—Only the three consonants *KNK* are certain. We may read them *Kanik* or *Kanikku*, which would be a Middle-Indian *Kanikkhu* for Sanskritic *Kanishka*. Thus the name Turk was pronounced by the Middle-Indian tongue as *Turukkhu*, and Sanscritisized as *Turuskha*.

This Zopyrus-story was reproduced by Muḥammad ʿAufî. *Cf.* Elliot, "History of India," ii. 170.

P. 13. *Lagatûrmân.*—The uncouth formation of this name seems to point to a Non-Indian (Tibetan?) origin. I at first thought to combine it with the name of the Tibetan king, *Langtarma*, who abolished Buddhism, A.D. 899 (*v.* Prinsep, "Useful Tables," ii. 289), as our Lagatûrmân was the last of a series of Buddhistic kings, and as the names resemble each other to some extent. However, this combination seems delusive.

The name Kallar is written *Kallr* كلّر. Could this name be combined with *Kulusha* (Kalusha?), which *e.g.* occurs as the name of the Brahmin minister of the Mahratta Râja Sambajî?

P. 13, l. 17. *The Brahman kings.*—The word *sâmanta* means *vassal*.

Kamalû was a contemporary of the prince ʿAmr Ibn Laith, who died A.D. 911. *Cf.* Elliot, "History of India," ii. 172. Is the name a hypokoristikon of one like *Kamalavardhana?*

Ânandapâla, *Bhîmapâla*, and *Trilocanapâla* mean *having Śiva as protector*. If, therefore, these princes, like the Indo-Scythian kings (*cf.* Drouin, *Revue Numismatique*, 1888, 48), were Śiva-worshippers, we must explain the name *Jaipâl* perhaps as *Jayâpâla*, i.e. *having Durgâ* (the wife of Śiva) *as protector*. *Cf.* the Hindu kings of Kabul in Elliot, "History of India," ii. 403 *seq.* (in many points antiquated).

The name *Trilocanapâla* (here *Tarûcanpâl*) has been much disfigured in the Arabic writing. *Vide* the Puru Jaipal in Elliot, *l.c.*, ii. 47, 463, 464.

P. 13, l. 14. *The latter was killed.*—The Arabic manuscript has قتل, which may be read قيل (*narratum est*) or قتل (*interfectus est*). I have not been able to ascertain whether the year in question was that of the enthronisation of Trilocanapâla, or that of his death. I prefer, however (with Reinaud), to read قتل, "*he was killed*," because evidently the author stood so near to the events in question that he could have ample and trustworthy information, and that, in fact, an *on dit* (قيل) seems here entirely out of place.

P. 13, l. 22. *The slightest remnant*, literally *one blowing fire*, a well-known simile for *nobody*. *Cf. e.g.* Hasan Nizâmî in Elliot's "History of India," ii. 235, l. 13.

P. 15.—For Alfazârî and Ya'ḳûb Ibn Ṭariḳ, *cf.* note to i. 165; 169.

Muḥammad Ibn Isḥâḳ of Sarakhs is mentioned only here and in the tables on pp. 16 and 18, besides in Alberuni's "Chronology" (English edition, p. 29).

P. 16, l. 6 of the table.—It is not clearly said in the text that the anomalistic revolution is meant, but the numbers which Alberuni quotes leave no doubt on the subject. The days of a kalpa are 1,577,916,450,000, which being divided by the number 57,265,194,142, give for one revolution $27\frac{31756208166}{57265194142}$ days, or 27 days 13 h. 18 min. 33 sec., whilst the anomalistic revolution of the moon is equivalent to 27 days 13 h. 18 min. 37 sec., an agreement so very close, that every doubt that there could be meant anything but the anomalistic revolution is completely excluded. Moreover, the number of the revolutions of the apsis, 488,105,858, being augmented by 57,265,194,142, is equal to 57,753,300,000, the number of sidereal revolutions; and, indeed, the revolutions of the apsis, *plus* the anomalistic revolutions, must be equal to the sidereal revolutions (*Schram*).

P. 16.—The note in the table "The anomalistic revolution of the moon is here treated," &c., is not quite clear, and probably materially incorrect. That the term حاصّة القمر means the anomaly (ἀνωμαλία in Greek, *kendra* (κέντρον) in Sanskrit), was first pointed out to me by my friend and colleague, Prof. Förster; but this note, which seems to be intended as a sort of explanation of the term, does not exactly render what astronomers understand by *anomaly*. Literally translated it runs thus: "The *Ḥâṣṣat-alḳamar* stands in the place of the *apsis*, because the result is its (whose? the apsis'?) share, since it (the *ḥâṣṣat-alḳamar*) is the difference between the two motions" (لّن ما يخرج يكون حصّته ان (not او) هى فضل ما بين الحركتين). Accordingly, we must translate the term as "falling to the moon as her lot or share," viz., movement, in Arabic الحركة الحاصّة القمر. Therefore, in the Arabic text, pp. ٢٠٩ and ٢١٠, 8 write حاصّة instead of خاصّة.

P. 19.—Abû-alḥasan of Ahwâz is mentioned only in this place. He seems to have been a contemporary of Alfazârî and Ya'ḳûb Ibn Ṭâriḳ.

P. 20. *Annus procrastinationis.*—*Vide* the author's "Chronology" (English edition), p. 73. *Malamâsa*, in Hindustani *malmâs*. *Vide* Dowson, "Hindustani Grammar," p. 258.

P. 21, l. 24.—A caturyuga or 4,320,000 solar years consists of 53,433,300 lunar months or 1,602,999,000 lunar days; so one solar year has $371\frac{31}{480}$ lunar days, and the difference between the solar and lunar days of a year is $11\frac{31}{480}$. The proportion 360 lunar days : $11\frac{31}{480}$ days $= x$ lunar days : 30 days gives for x the number of

$976\frac{464}{5311}$, which is equivalent to $976\frac{4176}{47799}$. *Vide* p. 24 l. 53 (*Schram*).

P. 22, l. 17.—Read 22^{iii} instead of 23^{iii} (*Schram*).

P. 23. *Padamâsa.*—This seems to be an old mistake which has crept into the Arabic manuscripts of the works of Alfazârî and Ya'ḳûb. *Cf.* the author's "Chronology" (English edition), p. 15.

P. 27.—The rule given in the first fifteen lines of this page is completely erroneous, and consequently the example calculated after this rule is so too. The right method would be the following :—"The complete years are multiplied by 12; to the product are added the months which have elapsed of the current year. The sum represents the partial solar months. You write down the number in two places; in the one place you multiply it by 5311, *i.e.* the number which represents the universal adhimâsa months. The product you divide by 172,800, *i.e.* the number which represents the universal solar months. The quotient you get, *as far as it contains complete months*, is added to the number in the second place, and the sum so obtained is multiplied by 30; to the product are added the days which have elapsed of the current month. The sum represents the candrâhargaṇa, *i.e.* the sum of the partial lunar days." These two proceedings would be identical, if we were not to omit fractions; but as an adhimâsa month is only intercalated when it is complete, we must first determine the number of adhimâsa months, and, *omitting the fractions*, change them to days; whilst when we multiply beforehand by 30, the fractions of the adhimâsa months are also multiplied, which is not correct. This is at once seen in the example which he works out after this rule, and we wonder that Alberuni himself did not see it. He is calculating the ahargaṇas for the beginning of a year, consequently also for the beginning of a month, and, notwithstanding, he is not at all surprised to find (p. 30) 28 days and 51 minutes of the month already passed.

The adhimâsa days are nothing else than adhimâsa months converted into days. As the number of the adhimâsa months must be a whole, so the number of the adhimâsa days must be divisible by 30. Accordingly, the number quoted, p. 29, l. 30, not being divisible by 30, is at once recognised as erroneous, and it is astonishing when he says in the following lines, "If, in multiplying and dividing, we had used the months, we should have found the adhimâsa months and multiplied by 30, they would be equal to the here-mentioned number of adhimâsa days." In this case certainly the number ought to be divisible by 30. Perhaps he would have found the fault, if not, by a strange coincidence, the difference between the true value and the false one had been exactly 28 days or four complete weeks, so that though the number considered is an erroneous one, yet he finds, p. 30, l. 9, the right week-day.

Alberuni finds, p. 29, l. 2, as the sum of days from the beginning of the kalpa to the seventh manvantara 676,610,573,760. Further, he finds, l. 7, that from the beginning of the seventh manvantara till the beginning of the present caturyuga there have elapsed 42,603,744,150 days, and, l. 12, that till the beginning of the kaliyuga there have elapsed 1,420,124,805 days of the present caturyuga. Adding these numbers, we find that the sum of days elapsed from the beginning of the kalpa to that of the caturyuga is 720,634,442.715; but as he finds, p. 30, l. 5, that from the same epoch to the gauge-date there have elapsed 720,635,951,963 days, so the gauge-date would be 1,509,248 days after the beginning of the kaliyuga. Now we know that the gauge-date is 25th February 1031 (see p. 2, l. 17, and note), or the day 2,097,686 of the Julian period, whilst the first day of the kaliyuga, as is generally known, coincides with the 18th February 3102 before Christ or with the day 588,466 of the Julian period, so that the difference of the two dates is 1,509,220, and not 1,509,248 days.

To this result we shall also come when working out Alberuni's example after the method stated in the beginning of this note. Instead of p. 29, l. 16, we should then have: the years which have elapsed of the kalpa up to that year are 1,972.948,132. Multiplying them by 12, we get as the number of their months 23,675,377,584. In the date which we have adopted as gauge-year there is no month, but only complete years; therefore we have nothing to add to this number. It represents the partial solar months. We multiply it by 5311 and divide the product by 172,800; the quotient 727,661,633$\frac{3463}{3600}$ represents the adhimâsa months. Omitting the fractions, we add 727,661,633 to the partial solar months 23,675,377,584, and get 24,403,039,217 as the partial lunar months. By multiplying this number by 30 we get days, viz., 732,091,176,510. As there are no days in the normal date, we have no days to add to this number. Multiplying it by 55,739 and dividing the product by 3,562,220, we get the partial ûnarâtra days, viz., 11,455,224,575$\frac{193439}{3562222}$. This sum of days without the fraction is subtracted from the partial lunar days, and the remainder, 720,635,951,935, represents the number of the civil days of our gauge-date. Dividing it by 7, we get as remainder 4, which means that the last of these days is a Wednesday. Therefore the Indian year commences with a Thursday, The difference between 720,635,951,935 and the beginning of the kaliyuga 720,634,442,715 is, as it ought to be, 1,509,220 days (*Schram*).

In the beginning of chap. lii., in the Arabic text, ٢١٦ 8, it seems necessary to write شهور and الشهور instead of ايام and الايام.

P. 29, l. 10. *Thursday.*—The Arabic manuscript has *Tuesday.*

P. 30, l. 10–17.—This ought to run as follows:—We have found above 727,661,633$\frac{3463}{3600}$ for the adhimâsa months; the wholes represent the number of the adhimâsas which have elapsed, viz., 727,661,633, whilst the fraction is the time which has already elapsed of the current adhimâsa month. By multiplying this fraction by 30 we get it expressed in days, viz., $\frac{3463}{120}$ days, or 28 days 51 minutes 30 seconds, so that the current adhimâsa month wants only 1 day 8 minutes 30 seconds more to become a complete month (*Schram*).

P. 31, l. 19.—The number 1,203,783,270 is found by adding the 30 × 1,196,525 or 35,895,750 adhimâsa days to the 1,167,887,520 solar days (*Schram*).

P. 31, l. 24.—The number of days from the beginning of the caturyuga to the gauge-date is here found by Pulisa's method to be 1,184,947,570, whilst p. 33, l. 16, the number of days from the beginning of the caturyuga to that of the kaliyuga is found to be 1,183,438,350. The difference between both numbers is (as it ought to be) 1,509,220 days (*Schram*).

P. 33, l. 24.—The method of Âryabhaṭa is the same as that given before, only the numbers by which we are to multiply and to divide, are different according to his system, which supposes a different number of revolutions in a kalpa. According to Âryabhaṭa the elder, a caturyuga has 1,577,917,500 days (see vol. i. p. 370, l. 28). As to the revolutions of sun and moon, they seem to be the same as given by Pulisa. The tables, pages 16 and 17, are not quite correct in this, as they give, for instance, for the revolutions of the moon's node and apsis the 1000th part of their revolutions in a kalpa, whilst in vol. i. p. 370, l. 16, it is said that, according to Pulisa and Âryabhaṭa, the kalpa has 1008 caturyugas. But p. 19, l. 15, the numbers 4,320,000 for the sun and 57,753,336 for the moon are given as possibly belonging to the theory of Âryabhaṭa. The same numbers are cited by Bentley in his "Historical View of the Hindu Astronomy," London, 1825, p. 179, as belonging to the system of the so-called spurious Ârya Siddhanta. It is doubtless the same system, for if we compare the number of days between the beginning of the kalpa and that of the kaliyuga, which Bentley states in the above-cited book, p. 181, to be 725,447,570,625, with the same sum quoted by Alberuni, p. 33, l. 29, there can scarcely be a doubt as to the identity of both systems, especially as this number 725,447,570,625 is a curious one, giving Thursday for the first day of the kalpa, whilst the other systems give Sunday for this date. Of this book Bentley says, p. 183: "It would be needless to waste any more time in going over its contents; what has been shown must be perfectly sufficient to convince any man of common sense of its being a downright modern forgery;" and p. 190, "The spurious Brahma Siddhanta, together with the spurious Ârya Siddhanta, are doubtless the productions of the last century at farthest." Perhaps he would have chosen more reserved expressions, if he had known that this "production of the last century" was already cited by Alberuni.

When we adopt these numbers for a caturyuga, *i.e.* 1,577,917,500 civil days, 4,320,000 revolutions of the sun and 57,753,336 revolutions of the moon, and consequently 53,433,336 lunar months, we find the numbers belonging to a yuga by dividing the above numbers by four, as in this system the four yugas are of equal length. Thus we get for a yuga 394,479,375 civil days, 1,080,000 solar years, and consequently 12,960,000 solar months, and 388,800,000 solar days, 13,358,334 lunar months, 400,750,020 lunar days, 398,334 adhimâsa months, and 6,270,645 ûnarâtra days. To find the number 725,449,079,845 mentioned, p. 33, l. 31, as the sum of days between the beginning of the kalpa and the gauge-date, we are to proceed as follows:—From the beginning of the kaliyuga to our gauge-date there have elapsed 4132 years, which multiplied by 12 give 49,584 as the partial solar months. This number multiplied by the universal adhimâsa months 398,334, and divided by the universal solar months 12,960,000, gives $1523\frac{44837}{45000}$ as the number of adhimâsa months. This number, without the fraction added to the solar months 49,584, gives 51,107 as the number of the partial lunar months, which multiplied by 30 gives 1,533,210 as the number of the partial lunar days. This number multiplied by the universal ûnarâtra days 6,270,645 and divided by the universal lunar days 400,750,020 gives $23,990\frac{2473785}{4452778}$ as the sum of the partial ûnarâtra days; and 23,990 subtracted from the partial lunar days 1,533,210 gives 1,509,220 as the civil days elapsed of the kaliyuga till the gauge-date, identical with the number found in note to p. 27. These 1,509,220 days added to the 725,447,570,625 days which separate the beginning of the kalpa and the kaliyuga, give the number of 725,449,079,845 days cited p. 33, l. 31. Finally, the number of days elapsed of Brahman's life before the present kalpa, is got by multiplying the number of days in a kalpa, *i.e.* 1,590,540,840,000 (see page 370, vol. i.) by 6068, the number of the kalpas elapsed before the present one (*Schram*).

P. 34, l. 32.—There is here the same fault as that which led Alberuni to a false result, p. 27. The multiplication by 30 must be made after dropping the fraction of the adhimâsa months, not before (*Schram*).

P. 36, l. 1.—The lacuna must have contained a phrase like this:—"In three different places; they multiply the number in the lowest place by 77, and divide the product by 69,120." This follows clearly from the explanation which he gives in the following page (*Schram*).

P. 36, l. 9.—Read *lunar* instead of *solar*, in the Arabic (٢٢٤, 7, last word), القمريّة instead of الشمسيّة.

P. 36, l. 10.—The expression is a very concise one, so that it is not quite clear what is meant (l. 14) by the "middle number."—It is to be understood in the following manner: "This number of the partial lunar days is written down in two different places, one under the other. The one of these is "in the uppermost place" (l. 17); they multiply the lower number by 11, and write the product under *it*. Then they divide it, *i.e.* the product, by 403,963, and add the quotient to the middle number, *i.e.* to the product of eleven times the partial lunar days (*Schram*).

P. 36, l. 26.—A certain number of months A is to be divided by $65\frac{1155}{15933}$. If we wish to get the same result by dividing only by 65, we must subtract from A a certain number X which is to be determined by the equation $\frac{A}{65\frac{1155}{15933}}=\frac{A-X}{65}$. This equation gives for X the value $X=A\left(\frac{\frac{1155}{15933}}{65\frac{1155}{15933}}\right)$, or, reduced, $X=A\left(\frac{1155}{1036800}\right)$, or at last $X=A\left(\frac{77}{69120}\right)$. The equation $X=A\left(\frac{\frac{1155}{15933}}{65\frac{1155}{15933}}\right)$ can also be written in the form $65\frac{1155}{15933}:\frac{1155}{15933}=A:X$, that is, as Alberuni states it (l. 30), "the whole divisor stands in the same relation to its fractions as the divided number to the subtracted portion" (*Schram*).

P. 36, l. 33.—Alberuni has not made the calculation given above in a general way, but he has made it only for a special case, for the gauge-date. He finds the fraction $\frac{77}{89120}$, which he would find for every other date, as this fraction is independent of the number A (*Schram*).

P. 37, l. 26.—Here again a certain number of ûnarâtra days A is to be divided by $63\frac{50663}{55739}$. If we wish to get the same result by dividing only by $63\frac{10}{11}$, or, which is the same, by $\frac{703}{11}$, we must add to A a certain number X, which is determined by the equation

$$\frac{A+X}{\frac{703}{11}}=\frac{A}{63\frac{50663}{55739}}\text{ or }A+X=A\left(\frac{703}{11\times 63\frac{50663}{55739}}\right)\text{ or }X=A\left(\frac{703-11\times 63\frac{50663}{55739}}{11\times 63\frac{50663}{55739}}\right)$$

$$=A\left(\frac{703-702\frac{55642}{55739}}{702\frac{55642}{55739}}\right)\text{ or }X=A\left(\frac{\frac{97}{55739}}{\frac{39184420}{55739}}\right)=A\left(\frac{97}{39184420}\right)$$

or at last, dividing numerator and denominator by 97, we find $X=\frac{A}{403963\frac{9}{97}}$. The $\frac{9}{97}$ are neglected (see p. 38, l. 9) (*Schram*).

P. 38, l. 25.—The Arabic manuscript has 77,139, instead of 7739, as Dr. Schram demands; *v.* p. 39, l. 7, and p. 40, l. 8.

P. 39, l. 20.—Here he grants that the 28 days which we get over 727,661,633 months are to be reckoned after the beginning of the month Caitra, so that the result found, p. 29, l. 30, agrees with the 28th, not with the first Caitra (*Schram*).

P. 39, l. 24.—The middle number was multiplied by $\frac{2481}{9600}$; a solar year has $365\frac{2481}{9600}$ days (l. 36), or 52 weeks 1 day and $\frac{2481}{9600}$ of a day. By adding the product of the number of years multiplied by $\frac{2481}{9600}$ to this number itself, we get the sum of days by which these years exceed whole weeks. The rest of the calculation is sufficiently explained by Alberuni himself (*Schram*).

P. 41, l. 19.—This is the same case as p. 36, only the numbers are a little different. If A is the number of months to be divided by $32\frac{35552}{63389}$, and we wish to subtract a number from A so as to get the same result by dividing the difference by 32 only, we have the equation

$$\frac{A}{32\frac{35552}{66389}} = \frac{A - X}{32}$$

which gives for X the value

$$A\left(\frac{\frac{35552}{66389}}{32\frac{35552}{66389}}\right) \text{ or } X = A\left(\frac{35552}{2160000}\right) \text{ or } X = A\left(\frac{1111}{67500}\right).$$

Alberuni has again made the calculation for a special case, the gauge-date, and found the same fraction (*Schram*).

P. 41, l. 20.—" This number of days," viz., the number of solar days corresponding to the given date (*Schram*).

P. 41, l. 33.—The MS. has 974 instead of 976.

P. 42, l. 3.—The number of solar days, 1,555,222,000, is here taken as divisor instead of the number of adhimâsa months, 1,593,336. The fraction ought to be $976\frac{104064}{1593336}$ $= 976\frac{4336}{66389}$, the common divisor 24 (*Schram*).

P. 42, l. 6.—Alberuni does not seem to have understood Pulisa's calculation which is correct, although there seems to be a lacuna in its explanation. According to Pulisa's theory, there are in a caturyuga 1,555,200,000 solar days and 1,593,336 adhimâsa months. Dividing the first number by the second, we get as the time within which an adhimâsa month sums up $976\frac{104064}{1593336}$ days. So one would get the number of adhimâsa months by dividing the given number of solar days by the number $976\frac{104064}{1593336}$; but Pulisa prefers not to reckon with the fraction, so he diminishes the number of given days by a certain amount and divides only by 976. The number which is to be subtracted from the given days is easily found by the following equation:—

Let D be the number of given solar days; we then have

$$\frac{D}{976\frac{104064}{1593336}} = \frac{D - X}{976} \text{ or } X = D\left(\frac{\frac{104064}{1593336}}{976\frac{104064}{1593336}}\right) \text{ or } X = D\left(\frac{\frac{104064}{1593336}}{\frac{1555200000}{1593336}}\right)$$
$$\text{or } X = D\left(\frac{104064}{1555200000}\right).$$

Now 384 is a common divisor to 104,064 and the divisor 1,555,200,000. So we get $X = D\frac{271}{4050000}$, just as Pulisa finds it (*Schram*).

P. 42, l. 22.—Not only is it not "quite impossible that this number should, in this part of the calculation, be used as a divisor," but it needs must be used as a divisor. This we see at once when, instead of working out the calculation with special numbers, we make it algebraically. Let S be the number of solar days in a caturyuga, and A the number of adhimâsa months in a caturyuga. Then the number of days within which one adhimâsa month sums up, will be found by dividing S by A. By this division we shall get wholes and a fraction; let the wholes be represented by Q and the numerator of the fraction by R. We then have $\frac{S}{A} = Q + \frac{R}{A}$ or $S = AQ + R$. Now if, the given number of solar days being D, we have to divide D by $Q + \frac{R}{A}$ to get the number of adhimâsa months, but as we wish to divide by Q alone, we must subtract from D a number X, which will be found by the equation

$$\frac{D}{Q+\frac{R}{A}} = \frac{D-X}{Q} \text{ or } X = D\left(\frac{\frac{R}{A}}{Q+\frac{R}{A}}\right) \text{ or } X = D\left(\frac{R}{AQ+R}\right)$$

As $AQ + R$ is equal to S, we have $X = D\frac{R}{S}$, where S is the number of solar days in a caturyuga, which must necessarily be a divisor in this part of the calculation (*Schram*).

P. 42, l. 31.—As one ûnarâtra day sums up in $63\frac{50663}{55739}$ lunar days (see p. 37, l. 17), we have again the equation

$$\frac{L}{63\frac{50663}{55739}} = \frac{L-X}{63} \text{ or } X = L\left(\frac{\frac{50663}{55739}}{63\frac{50663}{55739}}\right) \text{ or } X = L\left(\frac{50663}{3562220}\right)$$

where L represents the number of the given lunar days.

P. 44, l. 1.—The number 720,635,951,963 is not correct, as we have seen in note to p. 27. It is too great by 28 days. But the number of adhimâsa days, 21,829,849,018 (l. 10), is also 28 days too great. So the difference is again correct. There is the same fault as at p. 27. The calculation ought to run as follows:—The partial civil days which have elapsed up to our gauge-date are 720,635,951,935. This number is given, and what we want to find is how many Indian years and months are equal to this sum of days. First we multiply the number by 55,739 and divide the product by 3,506,481; the quotient is 11,455,224,575$\frac{1934309}{3506481}$ ûnarâtra days. We add 11,455,224,575 to the civil days; the sum is 732,091,176,510 lunar days. Dividing this number by 30, we get as quotient 24,403,039,217 lunar months (and no fraction; so we see that the date in question consists of a number of months only, or, what is the same, that the date corresponds to the beginning of a month). Multiplying the lunar months by 5311 and dividing the product by 178,111, we get 727,661,633$\frac{166224}{178111}$ adhimâsa months; 727,661,633 adhimâsa months subtracted from the 24,403,039,217 lunar months give 23,675,377,584 solar months, which divided by 12 give 1,972,948,132 years and no fraction. So we find the given date corresponding not only to the beginning of a month, but also to that of a year. We find the same number of years of which the gauge-date consists (see p. 29, l. 17) (*Schram*).

P. 45, l. 12.—This rule must indeed be based on some complete misunderstanding, for it is absolutely erroneous, as Alberuni rightly remarks (*Schram*).

P. 46, l. 1.—If we calculate from the beginning of the kalpa or the caturyuga, there are in the epoch neither fractions of the adhimâsa months nor of ûnarâtra days; but as the great number of days embraced by such long periods makes the calculation wearisome, the methods set forth in this chapter start neither from the beginning of the kalpa nor from that of the caturyuga, but from dates chosen arbitrarily and nearer to the time for which they are to be employed. As such epochs are not free from fractions of the adhimâsa months and ûnarâtra days, these fractions must be taken into account (*Schram*).

P. 46, l. 27.—The numbers employed here do not belong to Brahmagupta's, but to Pulisa's system. The year taken as epoch is the year 587 Śakakâla. As we have seen, p. 31, ll. 8–10, that in the moment of the beginning of our gauge-date or of the year Śakakâla 953, there have elapsed 3,244,132 years of the caturyuga, there must have elapsed

3,243,766 years of the caturyuga till the beginning of the year 587 Śakakâla. We must now first calculate the adhimâsa months and ûnarâtra days for this epoch. After Pulisa's method (p. 41, l. 29), we have: 3,243,766 years are equal to 38,925,192 solar months or 1,167,755,760 solar days. This number multiplied by 271 and divided by 4,050,000 gives $78,138\frac{4043}{5625}$. As here the nearest number is to be taken, we get 78,139, which, subtracted from 1,165,755,760, gives 1,167,677,621. This latter number divided by 976 gives as the number of adhimâsa months $1,196,391\frac{5}{976}$. Now 1,196,391 adhimâsa months are equal to 35,891,730 adhimâsa days, which, added to 1,167,755,760 solar days, give 1,203,647,490 lunar days. According to Pulisa's theory (see p. 26, l. 9), there are in a caturyuga 1,603,000,080 lunar and 25,082,280 ûnarâtra days; so one ûnarâtra day sums up in $63\frac{63379}{69673}$ lunar days. Therefore we should have to divide the given number of lunar days L by $63\frac{63379}{69673}$, but we prefer to subtract from L a certain number X, and to divide the rest by $63\frac{10}{11}$ or $\frac{703}{11}$. The number X will be given by the equation $\frac{L}{63\frac{63379}{69673}} = \frac{L-X}{\frac{703}{11}} = \frac{11\ L - 11\ X}{703}$. This equation gives for X the value $X = \left(\frac{\frac{439}{69673}}{703\frac{439}{69673}}\right) L$ or $X = \left(\frac{439}{48980558}\right) L$ or $X = \left(\frac{1}{111573\frac{11}{439}}\right) L$, or nearly $11\ X = \frac{11\ L}{111573}$.

Now L being equal to 1,203,647,490 lunar days, $11\ L$ will be equal to 13,240,122,390 lunar days; this number divided by 111,573 gives $118,667\frac{89199}{111573}$. Taking the nearest number, we subtract 118,668 from 13,240,122,390 and get 13,240,003,722, which divided by 703 gives $18,833,575\frac{497}{703}$ as the number of ûnarâtra days. This added to the 1,203,647,490 lunar days gives for the date of our epoch the number of civil days 1,184,813,915.

This number divided by 7 gives 5 as remainder. Now the last day before the present caturyuga was a Monday (see p. 33, l. 11), therefore the last day before our epoch is a Saturday, and any number of days elapsed since that epoch if divided by 7 will indicate by the remainder, the week-day counted from Sunday as 1, as it is said, p. 47, l. 19. Now the whole method is easily recognised as thoroughly correct. Instead of multiplying the partial solar days by $\frac{271}{4050000}$, we multiply them by $\frac{1}{14945}$, which is sufficiently correct, as $\frac{271}{4050000}$ is equal to $\frac{1}{14944\frac{176}{271}}$. As besides the whole adhimâsa months there is yet a fraction of $\frac{5}{976}$ adhimâsa months in our epoch, we add 5 before dividing by 976. The calculation of the ûnarâtra days has already been explained; but as in our epoch besides the whole ûnarâtra days there is still a fraction of $\frac{497}{703}$ ûnarâtra days, we must add 497 before dividing by 703. The whole proceeding is thus explained (*Schram*).

P. 48, l. 11.—The calculation has been made for the complete years elapsed *before* our gauge-date. So we get the week-day of the last day *before* the first Caitra of the gauge-date, and if this is a Wednesday, the first Caitra itself is a Thursday; *cf.* p. 30, l. 9.

The first day of this epoch corresponds to the day 1,964,031 of the Julian period. Adding 133,655 to 1,964,031, we have for the first Caitra 953 the day 2,097,686 of the Julian period, as it ought to be (*Schram*).

P. 48, l. 21.—The 18th Isfandârmadh of Yazdajird 399 corresponds in fact to Wednesday, 24th February 1031, the day before the first Caitra 953 Śakakâla (see note to p. 2, l. 17) (*Schram*).

P. 49, l. 22. *By six years.*—The Arabic manuscript has *seven* instead of *six*.

P. 50, l. 1.—The method here employed is based on Pulisa's theory. According to this theory, the solar days must be divided by $976\frac{4336}{66389}$ to get the adhimâsa months. Now $976\frac{4336}{66389}$ with sufficient accuracy is equal to $976\frac{2}{30}$ or $\frac{29282}{30}$.

If S represents the number of solar months, the solar days or 30 S are to be divided by $\frac{29282}{30}$, or, what is the same, 900 S must be divided by 29282.

To get the ûnarâtra days, the lunar days must be divided by $63\frac{63379}{69673}$ (see note to p. 46, l. 27). Now $63\frac{63379}{69673}$ is equal to $\frac{703\frac{439}{69673}}{11}$, or with sufficient accuracy $\frac{703\frac{2}{300}}{11}$, or at least equal to $\frac{210902}{3300}$. So the multiplications and divisions of this method are explained.

The constant numbers which are to be added, are inherent to the epoch. The year 888 Śakakâla corresponds to the year 3,244,067 of the caturyuga; 3,244,067 years are equal to 38,928,804 solar months, or 1,167,864,120 solar days. These solar months multiplied by 66,389 and divided by 2,160,000 give $1,196,502\frac{4063}{180000}$ adhimâsa months, or 35,895,060 adhimâsa days. This added to the 1,167,864,120 solar days gives 1,203,759,180 lunar days. Eleven times this number is equal to 13,241,350,980; this latter number divided by 111,573 gives $118678\frac{90486}{111573}$, or the nearest number 118,679. Subtracting this from 13,241,350,980, the remainder is 13,241,232,301, which being divided by 703, gives $18,835,323\frac{232}{703}$ ûnarâtra days; these days subtracted from the lunar days give for the number of civil days 1,184,923,857. Dividing this last number by 7, we get the remainder 5; and as the last day before the present caturyuga was a Monday (see p. 33, l. 11), the last day before the epoch here adopted is a Saturday, so that any number of days elapsed since that epoch, if divided by 7, will indicate by the remainder the week-day counted from Sunday as 1. The first day of this epoch corresponds to the day 2,073,973 of the Julian period. We have found in our epoch the fraction of adhimâsa month $\frac{4063}{180000}$, which is equal to $\frac{660\frac{172766}{180000}}{29282}$ or very nearly $\frac{661}{29282}$ adhimâsa month, so we must add 661 before dividing by 29282.

The fraction of ûnarâtra days $\frac{232}{703}$ is equal to $\frac{69,600\frac{461}{703}}{210902}$ or nearly to $\frac{69601}{210902}$. Therefore we must add 96,601 before dividing by 210,902. Alberuni has, instead of this number 69,601, the number 64,106, 4 instead of 9, and the last three numbers reversed (*Schram*).

P. 50, l. 35.—We had 780 months; adding thereto the 23 adhimâsa months, we have 803 months, which being multiplied by 30 give 24090, and not 24060 days. All the following faults are the consequences of this one (*Schram*).

P. 51, l. 2.—It ought to be "adding thereto 69,601, we get the sum 79,566,601. By dividing it by 210,902, we get the quotient 377, *i.e.* ûnarâtra days, and a remainder of $\frac{56547}{210902}$, *i.c.* the *avamas.*" (In the Arabic text, p. ٣٢٧, 17, the reading of the MS. ought not to have been altered.) The correct result is 23,713 civil days. If we divide this number by 7, we find the remainder 4, which shows again that the last day before our gauge-date is a Wednesday. By adding 23,713 to 2,073,973, we get for the first Caitra 953 the day 2,097,686 of the Julian period, as it ought to be (*Schram*).

P. 51, l. 4.—Read 377, instead of 307.

P. 51, l. 9.—This method works with numbers much less accurate than the preceding ones. It is assumed that one adhimâsa month sums up in $32\frac{4}{7}$ solar months. So the solar months are divided by $32\frac{4}{7}$ or by $\frac{228}{7}$, or, what is the same, they are multiplied by $\frac{7}{228}$. For the time within which an ûnarâtra day sums up, there is simply taken $63\frac{10}{11}$, and the lunar days are divided by $63\frac{10}{11}$ or $\frac{703}{11}$, or, what is the same, multiplied by $\frac{11}{703}$. The epoch corresponds to the year 427 Śakakâla, or the year 3,243,606 of the caturyuga. This number of years is equal to 38,923,272 solar months, which, multiplied by 66,389 and divided by 2,160,000, give $1,196,331\frac{29789}{30000}$ adhimâsa months. The author has taken 1,196,332 adhimâsa months and neglected the little fraction $\frac{211}{30000}$, so that he has no fractions of adhimâsa months. These 1,196,332 adhimâsa months added to the 38,923,272 solar months give 40,119,604 lunar months or 1,203.588,120 lunar days. Multiplying by 11, we have 13,239,469,320, which divided by 111,573 gives $118,661\frac{105567}{111573}$ or 118,662. Subtracting this from 13,239.469,320, we have 13,239,350,658, which divided by 703 gives $18,832,646\frac{520}{703}$ for the number of ûnarâtra days. So the fraction of ûnarâtra days is $\frac{520}{703}$, very near to that adopted by the author of the method, viz., $\frac{514}{703}$. By subtracting the ûnarâtra days from the lunar days we get as the number of civil days 1,184,755,474, which is divisible by 7. So, as the last day before the caturyuga was Monday, the last day before this epoch is also Monday, and the number of days elapsed since this epoch if divided by 7, will give a remainder which indicates the week-day, counting Tuesday as 1. The first day of this epoch corresponds to the day 1,905,590 of the Julian period (*Schram*).

P. 51, l. 24.—It is easily understood why this method is called that of the Siddhânta of the Greeks. It is assumed that an adhimâsa month sums up in $32\frac{4}{7}$ or $\frac{228}{7}$ solar months. Now $\frac{228}{7}$ solar months are equal to $\frac{19}{7}$ solar years. Therefore this method is apparently an application of the cycle of nineteen years of the Greeks (*Schram*).

P. 52, l. 2.—32 months 17 days 8 ghaṭî and 34 cashaka are only another expression for $32\frac{4}{7}$ months (*Schram*).

P. 52, l. 10.—The number of civil days is 192096; dividing by 7, we have as remainder 2. As in this method (see note to p. 51, l. 9) Tuesday is to be reckoned as 1, this gives for the last day before our gauge-date Wednesday. Adding 192,096 to 1,905,590, we get as the first Caitra 953 the day 2,097,686 of the Julian period, as it ought to be (*Schram*).

P. 52, l. 20. *Al-harkan.*—This book is mentioned only in this passage. The author calls it a *canon*, زيج, *i.e.* a collection of astronomical, chronological, and astrological tables and calculations. Whether it was an original composition in Arabic or translated from Sanskrit, and from what original, we do not learn from him. The word seems to be an Arabic rendering of *ahargaṇa*. Alberuni quotes from this book the computation of an era the epoch of which falls 40,081 days later than that of the Persian era, and compares it with the gauge-date (p. 53).

P. 52, l. 22.—If the epoch should fall 40,081 days after that of the era Yazdajird, it would fall on the first Caitra of the year 664 Śakakâla; but this is not the case. The first of Sha'bân of the year 197 coincides with the beginning of Vaiśâkha 735. As there are 72 years to be subtracted, we should come to Vaiśâkha 663, and to begin with the beginning of a year, the epoch must be postponed to Caitra 664. But this is of no importance, as we shall see that Alberuni altogether misunderstood the method here given (*Schram*).

P. 52, l. 24.—These two dates do not agree to a day. The first Ferwerdinmâh Yazdajird coincides with 16th June 632; 40,081 days later was Monday, 12th March 742, whilst the 21st Daimâh of the year 110 of Yazdajird corresponds to Sunday, 11th March 742. But as the date itself is erroneous, this is of no importance (*Schram*).

P. 52, l. 27.—As the numbers which form multiplications and divisions in this method are identical with those of the Pañca Siddhântikâ (p. 51), we can reckon the constants by the directions there given. The epoch of the method of Al-harkan is the beginning of Sha'bân of the year 197. But this date corresponds to the beginning of Vaiśakha 735 Śakakâla. So we should have for this date the following calculation:—Subtracting 427 from 735 years and 1 month, we get 308 years 1 month, or 3697 months; 3697 multiplied by 7 and divided by 228 gives for the number of adhimâsa months $113\frac{115}{228}$; the 113 adhimâsa months added to the 3697 solar months give 3810 lunar months or 114,300 lunar days. This number multiplied by 11 is 1,257,300; we add 514, which gives us 1,257,814; this divided by 703 gives for the number of ûnarâtra days $1789\frac{147}{703}$. So we should have all the numbers wanted for our epoch if, in fact, this epoch were the true epoch. But we have to add 864 months to the interval. Therefore these 864 months, which must always be added, must first be subtracted from the epoch, so that this latter is thrown back by 72 years. Now 72 years or 864 solar months multiplied by 7 and divided by 228 give the number of $26\frac{120}{228}$ adhimâsa months. These together with the 864 solar months are 890 lunar months or 26,700 lunar days, which multiplied by 11 and divided by 703 give $417\frac{540}{703}$ ûnarâtra days. So we have to subtract from the numbers first found $26\frac{120}{228}$ adhimâsa months and $417\frac{540}{703}$ ûnarâtra days. The number of adhimâsa months inherent to our true epoch will then be $113\frac{115}{228} - 26\frac{120}{228} = 86\frac{223}{228}$, or with sufficient accuracy 87 without a fraction, and the number of ûnarâtra days $1789\frac{147}{703} - 417\frac{540}{703} = 1371\frac{301}{703}$. Therefore no fraction is to be added to the adhimâsa months, whilst to the ûnarâtra days there must be added $\frac{301}{703}$, or nearly $\frac{11 \times 28}{703}$. Therefore we must add 28 (not 38) before multiplying by $\frac{11}{703}$. The 114,300 lunar days of the first epoch diminished by the 26,700 lunar days of the 72 years, give 87,600 lunar days. Subtracting therefrom 1371 ûnarâtra days, we have 86,229 civil days, which being divided by 7 give as remainder 3. So the last day before this epoch is Thursday, and the number of days elapsed since the epoch of this method, if divided by 7, will give a remainder indicating the week-day, counting Friday as 1. The first day of this epoch corresponds to the day 1,991,819 of the Julian period (*Schram*).

P. 53, l. 1.—It must be 28, not 38 (see preceding note) (*Schram*).

P. 53, l. 6.—We must add 1, if we wish to have the week-day of the date itself, not that of the last day before it.

P. 53, l. 8.—Here Friday is considered as the first day of the week, not, as in the Indian books, Sunday. This ought to have been remarked (*Schram*).

P. 53, l. 9.—Alberuni's notes to this method of Alharkan are perhaps the weakest part of his work. His very first remark shows a complete misunderstanding of the whole calculation. The method is correct, for the months of the seventy-two years with which it begins are solar. If, as Alberuni would have them, they were lunar, and the rest of the months, as he understands it, were lunar too, then the calculation would simply be nonsense; for finding adhimâsa months is nothing else than finding the number which we must add to convert solar months into lunar ones. But when the months are already lunar, how can one add anything to them to make them once more lunar? (*Schram*).

P. 53, l. 15.—The example he works out is as erroneous as the remarks on the method itself. It must be clear to anybody who examines the method given on p. 52, that by the words (l. 29), "Add thereto the months which have elapsed between the first of Sha'bân of the year 197 and the first of the month in which you happen to be," there can only be meant solar months. The author fixed the initial epoch in his calendar by saying "1 Sha'bân 197," instead of fixing it in the Indian calendar by saying "first Vaiśakha 735." This accidental circumstance, which is of no consequence, induced Alberuni to think that he was to take the interval in lunar months, as the Arabic calendar has only lunar months, and he did not notice that lunar months in this part of the calculation would be absolutely impossible. He takes, in fact, in the example, the interval in lunar months, for there are 2695 lunar months between the first Sha'bân 197 and first Rabi' I. 422, and to these 2695 lunar months he adds the 864 months which he knows to be solar. Then he changes all these mingled months, of which the greatest part are already lunar, to lunar ones, as if they all were solar, and at last he wonders that the result is nonsense, and tries to amend the method. The only fault in the matter is that he did not understand the method.

If we wish to exemplify the method of the canon *Al-harkan* in the case of our gauge-date, *i.e.* the first Caitra 953 Śakakâla, we must proceed as follows:—Subtracting from 953 years 735 years 1 month, we get as interval 217 years 11 months or 2615 solar months; adding thereto 864 solar months, we have 3479 solar months. This multiplied by 7 and divided by 228 gives for the number of adhimâsa months $106\frac{185}{228}$; adding the 106 adhimâsa months to the 3479 solar months, we get 3585 lunar months, or 107,550 lunar days. We add 28, and multiplying 107,578 by 11, we have 1,183,358, which number divided by 703 gives the number $1683\frac{209}{703}$ for the ûnarâtra days. Subtracting the 1683 ûnarâtra days from the 107,550 lunar days, we have 105,867 civil days. We add 1 in order to get the week-day of the first Caitra 953, and dividing by 7, we get as remainder 7. And as here Friday is considered as 1, so 7 corresponds to Thursday, and the first Caitra 953 is found to be Thursday. By adding 105,867 to 1,991,819 we have for the first Caitra of the year 953 the day 2,097,686 of the Julian period, as it ought to be (*Schram*).

P. 53, l. 33.—The emendation is as erroneous as the example was. The 25,958 days are counted from the epoch falling 40,081 days after that of Yazdajird to the first Sha'bân 197. But 25,958 days are equal to 879 Arabic months, or 73 years and 3 months. Further, he takes again the interval in lunar months, so that now in the amended method he has nothing but lunar months, which he changes to lunar months as if they were solar. So he gets a number which is, of course, absolutely erroneous, but he thinks it to be correct, for in the last instance he commits a new fault by *subtracting* 1 instead of adding it. And so by an accidental combination of different faults he finds by chance a week-day which agrees with that of the day before our gauge-date (*Schram.*)

P. 54, l. 12.—As the multiplications and divisions of this method have already been explained in the note to pp. 36 and 37, we have here to account for the constant numbers only which are inherent to the epoch. The epoch is 854 Śakakâla, which corresponds to the year 1,972,948,033 of the kalpa. Multiplying 1,972,948,033 by 12, we find 23,675,376,396 solar months, which multiplied by 1,593,300,000, the adhimâsa months of a kalpa, and divided by 51,840,000,000, the solar months of a kalpa, give the quotient $727,661,597\frac{6463}{14400}$ as the number of adhimâsa months. Adding the 727,661,597 adhimâsa months to the 23,675,376,396 solar months, we have 24,403,037,993 lunar months or 732,091,139,790 lunar days. This latter number multiplied by 25,082,550,000, the ûnarâtra days of a kalpa, and divided by 1,602,999,000,000, the lunar days of a kalpa, gives for the number of ûnarâtra days $11,455,224,000\frac{347481}{356222}$. Subtracting the 11,455,224,000 ûnarâtra days from the 732,091,139,790 lunar days, we find as the number of civil days elapsed from the beginning of the kalpa to this epoch 720,635,915,790, a number which divided by 7 gives as remainder 0. So, as the last day preceding the kalpa was a Saturday (see p. 28, l. 31), the last day before this epoch is also a Saturday, and any number of days elapsed since this epoch, if divided by 7, shows by its remainder the week-day counted from Sunday as 1. The fraction of the adhimâsa months inherent to the epoch has been found to be $\frac{6463}{14400}$. Now $\frac{6463}{14400}$ is equal to $\frac{29\frac{2459}{14400}}{65}$, or very nearly $\frac{29}{65}$; so we add 29 before dividing by 65. The fraction of the ûnarâtra days is $\frac{347481}{356222}$. Now again $\frac{347481}{356222}$ is equal to $\frac{685\frac{267073}{356222}}{703}$, or nearly $\frac{686}{703}$; so we add 686 before dividing by 703.

The first day of this epoch coincides with the day 2,061,541 of the Julian period (*Schram*).

P. 55, l. 5.—This method consists in finding first the difference of the mean longitude of sun and moon. The numbers are Pulisa's. There are in a caturyuga 4,320,000 revolutions of the sun, and 57,753,336 revolutions of the moon. The difference, 53,433,336, is the number of lunar months. In every lunar month the moon gains one revolution or 360 degrees over the sun. Dividing 53,433,336 by the solar years 4,320,000, we find as the number of lunar months belonging to one solar year $12\frac{132778}{360000}$. So in every solar year the moon gains over the sun $12\frac{132778}{360000}$ revolutions.

Omitting the whole revolutions which have no interest, the moon gains over the sun $\frac{132778}{360000}$ revolutions, or, what is the same, $132\frac{778}{1000}$ degrees. Now $\frac{778}{1000}$ degrees are equal to $46\frac{68}{100}$ or to $46\frac{34}{50}$ minutes. So the moon gains over the sun in every solar year 132 degrees $46\frac{34}{50}$ minutes. By multiplying the number of years by 132 degrees $46\frac{34}{50}$ minutes, we find the number of degrees which the moon has gained in the given interval over the sun. Now if in the beginning of this epoch sun and moon had been together, this would be the difference of the mean longitude of sun and moon. But as this was only in the beginning of the caturyuga, but not at the moment of our epoch, there is an initial difference between the longitudes of sun and moon which must be added. Our epoch, or the year 821 Śakakâla, corresponds to the year 3,244,000 of the caturyuga. Multiplying 3,244,000 by the number of lunar months 53,433,336, and dividing by the number of solar years 4,320,000, we find that in these 3,244,000 years the moon gained over the sun $40,124,477\frac{112}{360}$ revolutions. Dropping again the whole revolutions, we see that the moon was in advance of the sun at the moment of our epoch by $\frac{112}{360}$ revolutions, or 112 degrees. Therefore these 112 degrees must be added, and all the numbers of this method find in this their explanation. The result for our gauge-date, 358° 41′ 46″, is the number of degrees, minutes, and seconds by which the moon is in advance of the sun at the moment of the beginning of the *solar* year 821, that is, in the moment when the sun enters Aries. As in the beginning of the luni-solar year sun and moon must have been in conjunction, the beginning of the luni-solar year has preceded that of the solar year by an interval which was just sufficient for the moon to make 358° 41′ 46″ in advance of the sun. Now as the moon gains 360 degrees in a lunar month or 30 lunar days, so she gains 12° in every lunar day. Therefore dividing 358° 41′ 46″ by 12, we get the number of lunar days and fractions by which the luni-solar year's beginning preceded that of the solar year. The fractions of the lunar days are changed to ghaṭîs and cashakas. Thereby we get 29 days 53 ghaṭîs 29 cashakas as the time by which the beginning of the luni-solar year preceded the sun's entering Aries, in agreement with the fraction of the adhimâsa month found on p. 31, l. 17. For $\frac{44837}{45000}$ adhimâsa months are also equal to 29 days 53 ghaṭîs 29 cashakas. The number 27 days 23 ghaṭîs 29 cashakas which he gives, p. 55, l. 25, is obtained by dividing 328° 41′ 46″, and not 358° 41′ 46″, by 12 (*Schram*).

P. 55, l. 17.—The Arabic manuscript has 328 instead of 358.

P. 55, l. 33.—The number is 132° $46\frac{34}{60}$, and not 132° 46′ 34″ (as the Arabic manuscript has). Therefore the *portio anni* is not 11° 3′ 52″ 50^{iii}, but 11 days 3 ghaṭîs 53 cashakas 24″; and the *portio mensis* not 0° 55′ 19″ 24^{iii} 10^{iv}, but 0 days 55 ghaṭîs 19 cashakas 27^{iii}.

The reason of this calculation is the following:—In a year or 12 solar months the moon gains over the sun 132° $46\frac{34}{60}$. As she gains 12 degrees in every lunar day, the twelfth part of these degrees will represent the sum of lunar days and their fractions which the solar year contains over 360, that is to say, the sum of adhimâsa days and their fractions. One solar month containing 0 adhimâsa days 55 ghaṭîs 19 cashakas 27^{iii}, the number of solar months within which one adhimâsa month or 30 lunar days sum up, will be found by dividing 30 days by 0 days 55 ghaṭîs 19 cashakas 27″. This gives 2 years 8 months 16 days 3 ghaṭî 55 cashaka.

P. 56, l. 1.—There must be a great lacuna, for the first lines of this page are absolutely without meaning. I am inclined to attribute this lacuna to the source whence the author drew this information, *i.e.* the Arabic translation of Karaṇasâra.

P. 59, l. 23.—The calculation should be made in the following manner:—The sum of days of the kaliyuga is multiplied by the star-cycles of a kalpa and divided by the civil days of a kalpa, viz., 1,577,916,450,000. So we get the revolutions and part of a revolution which the planet has made during the time elapsed since the beginning of the kaliyuga. But in the beginning of the kaliyuga all planets have not been in conjunction; this was only the case in the beginning of the kalpa. Therefore to the fractions of revolutions which the planet made since the beginning of the kaliyuga, we must add its place at this beginning itself, *i.e.* the fraction of a revolution which every planet had at the beginning of the kaliyuga, the whole revolutions being of no interest. But Brahmagupta adds these numbers before dividing by the civil days of the kalpa, and this is quite natural, both fractions having by this proceeding the same divisor. Therefore what he calls the *basis*, ought to be the fraction of every planet at the beginning of the kaliyuga multiplied by the civil days of the kalpa; but he has made a great mistake. Instead of multiplying the fractions by the civil *days* of a kalpa, viz., 1,577,916,450,000, he has multiplied them by the years of a kalpa, viz., 4,320,000,000. Therefore all numbers given on p. 60 as the *bases* are entirely erroneous. To find the fractions for each planet and the *bases* we have the following calculation: From the beginning of the kalpa to that of the kaliyuga there have elapsed 1,972,944,000 years; so to get the places of the planets at the beginning of the kaliyuga we ought to multiply the revolutions of each planet by 1,972,944,000, and to divide them by the years of a kalpa, 4,320,000,000. As these two numbers have the common divisor 432,000, we multiply the revolutions of each planet by 4567 and divide them by 10,000. This will give us the place of the planet at the beginning of the kaliyuga. We have thus for the single planets:—

For Mars, 2,296,828,522 revolutions multiplied by 4567 and divided by 10,000 give $1,048,961,585\frac{9974}{10000}$ revolutions; so the place of Mars at the beginning of the kaliyuga is $\frac{9974}{10000}$ of a revolution.

For Mercury, 17,936,998,984 revolutions multiplied by 4567 and divided by 10,000 give $8,191,827,435\frac{9928}{10000}$ revolutions; so the place of Mercury is $\frac{9928}{10000}$ revolutions.

For Jupiter, 364,226,455 revolutions multiplied by 4567 and divided by 10,000 give $166,342,221\frac{9985}{10000}$ revolutions; so his place is $\frac{9985}{10000}$ revolutions.

For Venus, 7,022,389,492 revolutions multiplied by 4567 and divided by 10,000 give $3,207,125,280\frac{9964}{10000}$; so her place is $\frac{9964}{10000}$ revolutions.

For Saturn, 146,567,298 revolutions multiplied by 4567 and divided by 10,000 give $66,937,284\frac{9966}{10000}$ revolutions; and his place is $\frac{9966}{10000}$ revolutions.

For the sun's apsis, 480 revolutions multiplied by 4567 and divided by 10,000 give $219\frac{2160}{10000}$ revolutions; and its place is $\frac{2160}{10000}$ revolutions.

For the moon's apsis, 488,105,858 revolutions multiplied by 4567 and divided by 10,000 give $222,917,945\frac{3486}{10000}$ revolutions; and its place is $\frac{3486}{10000}$ revolutions.

For the moon's node, 232,311,168 revolutions multiplied by 4567 and divided by 10,000 give $106,096,510\frac{4256}{10000}$ revolutions; and its place is $\frac{4256}{10000}$ revolutions.

Multiplying now the place of every planet by 1,577,916,450,000, we get the following *bases* for the single planets:—

For Mars, 1,573,813,867,230.
„ Mercury, 1,566,555,451,560.
„ Jupiter, 1,575,549,575.325.
„ Venus, 1,572,235,950,780.
„ Saturn, 1,572.551,534,070.
„ the sun's apsis, 340,829,953,200.
„ the moon's apsis, 550,061,674,470.
„ the ascending node, 671,561,241,120 (*Schram*).

P. 67, l. 14. A.H. 161.—According to p. 15, the year was A.H. 154. *Cf.* note to i. 169.

P. 71.—With the orbits of the planets *cf. Sûrya-Siddhânta*, xii. 90, note.

Pp. 74 *seq.*—As for the Arabic terminology of these pages, it deserves to be noticed that—

(1.) القطر المعدّل means *the true distance* = Sanskrit *mandakarṇa*.

(2.) That القطر المقوّم means *the true distance of the shadow's end*; and

(3.) *Sinus totus*, جيب الكلّ = Sanskrit *trijîvâ* or *trijyâ*, means *the sinus of three zodiacal signs or 90 degrees*, *i.e.* the radius.

P. 74, ll. 17, 18.—Instead of TC = طج the Arabic manuscript has KC = كج, which has been corrected by Dr. Schram.

P. 75, l. 34.—The lacuna must be something like the following:—"For *KC* must be divided by the divisor kept in memory" (*Schram*).

P. 78, l. 27.—This and the two following passages are not clear. Alberuni does not seem to have understood the subject, for the shadow is neither the greatest nor the mean, but the true shadow; and the shadow from which one is to subtract, *i.e.* 1581, is nothing else than the earth's diameter, which also is neither the mean nor the greatest, but always the same (*Schram*).

P. 79.—*Alkhwârizmî* is mentioned here and ii. 114 (on the various colours of eclipses). According to *Fihrist*, p. ٢٧٤, he composed an epitome of the Sindhind (*Brahma-Siddhânta*). He is famous as the author of a work on algebra, edited by Rosen, London, 1831. *Cf.* also L. Rodet, *L'Algèbre d'Alkhwârizmî et les Methodes Indienne et Grecque* ("Journal Asiatique," 101 (1878), pp. 5 *seq.*).

P. 82. *Two suns, two moons, &c.*—This theory, as well as the expression *fish* (a name for the polar star?), seem to be of Jaina origin. *Cf.* Colebrooke, "Essays," ii. 201.

P. 84.—*Cf.* with this table of the *Nakshatras* a paper of Thibaut, "The Number of the Stars constituting the several Nakshatras according to Brahmagupta, &c.," the "Indian Antiquary," 1885, p. 43; also Colebrooke, "Essays," ii. 284, and *Sûrya-Siddhânta*, p. 321.

P. 89, l. 32.—In the Arabic text, p. ٢١٤٦, 15, read الف instead of الفين. The number of years is 1800, not 2800.

P 90. *Kâlâṁśaka*.—This term (also *kâlâṁśa*) is explained in *Sûrya-Siddhânta*, note to ix. 5.

The work *Ghurrat-alzîjât*, only once mentioned, is perhaps identical with the *Kitâb-alghurra*, which Alberuni quotes in his "Chronology" (my translation, p. 15 *et passim*). Its author was Abû-Muḥammad Alnâ'ib Alâmulî, who has used the work of Ya'ḳûb Ibn Ṭâriḳ. *Cf.* note to i. 169.

P. 90, l. 21.—Emendation of the *khaṇḍakhâdyaka* (also on p. 91), *i.e.* Uttarakhaṇḍakhâdyaka.

On Vijayanandin (l. 26), the author of *Karaṇatilaka*, *cf.* note to i. p. 156.

P. 101.—The enumeration of mountains, here taken from the *Matsya-Purâṇa*, may be checked by the help of *Vishṇu-Purâṇa*, ii. 141, note 2, and ii. 191 *seq.* The last name is written *bahâshîr* in the Arabic, which I cannot identify with an Indian name. Perhaps it is a blunder for *mahâshîr*, which might represent *mahâśaila*. *Vide Vishṇu-Purâṇa*, II. iv. p. 197.

P. 101.—On the *Aurva* legend, *cf. Vishṇu-Purâṇa*, III. viii. p. 81, note.

P. 102.—The story of Soma, the husband of the daughters of Prajâpati (the lunar stations), occurs in its elements already in the Vedic period. *Cf.* H. Zimmer, *Altindisches Leben*, pp. 355, 375.

P. 104.—On the Hindu theory of ebb and flow, *cf. Vishṇu-Purâṇa*, ii. 203, 204. The two names, of which I have not found the Indian equivalents, are written *baharn* and *vuhar* in the Arabic.

P. 105. *The Vishṇu-Purâṇa says.*—The author seems to refer to *Vishṇu-Purâṇa*, II. iv. p. 204: "The rise and fall of the waters of the different seas is five hundred and ten (not 1500) inches" (or finger-breadths).

P. 106.—The author's theory of the origin of the Dîbajât has already been mentioned, vol. i. 233.

P. 110.—As to the strictures of the author on the sincerity of Brahmagupta, *cf.* note to p. 25 (here ii. p. 263). The passages which excited the indignation of Alberuni do not express the view of Brahmagupta, but were simply taken by him from older books—in fact, written *pûrvaśâstrânusârena*. *Cf.* Kern, translation of *Bṛihat-Saṁhitâ*, note to chap. iii. v. 4 (p. 445).

P. 114, l. 12. *Kinds of eclipses.*—Read instead of this, *colours of the eclipses.* On Alkhwârizmî, *cf.* note to ii. 79. What the author here mentions as a view of the Hindus, agrees literally with *Sûrya-Siddhânta*, vi. 23.

P. 116.—On the *Khaṇḍakhâdyaka*, the Sanskrit original of the Arabic *Sindhind*, *cf.* note to i. 153, 154.

P. 118.—On the *Bṛihajjâtakam* of Varâhamihira, *cf.* note to i. 219.

P. 119.—Rules for finding the dominants or regents of the day, month, and year are given in the *Sûrya-Siddhânta*, i. 51, 52; xii. 78, 79.

P. 120.—On the *srûdhava* (?) of Mahâdeva, not to be confounded with the book of the same title by Utpala, *cf.* note to i. 157.

P. 120. *Table of the serpents.*—The names of this table must be compared with the names in *Vishṇu-Purâṇa*, ii. 74, 285. The words *Suku* and *Cabrahasta* seem to be mistakes of the Arabic copyist for *Vâsuki* and *Cakrahasta*.

P. 121.—The names of the dominants of the planets are not known to me from a Sanskrit source. Therefore the pronunciation of some of them remains uncertain.

Pp. 121, 122.—The names of the dominants of the Nakshatras are given by A. Weber, *Ueber den Vedakalender Namens Jyotisham*, p. 94. *Cf.* also *Sûrya-Siddhânta*,

viii. 9, pp. 327 *seq.*, and *Vishṇu-Purâṇa*, II. viii., notes on pp. 276, 277.

Instead of *Mitra*, the deity presiding over Anurâdhâ, it would perhaps be better to write *Maitra*, and in the Arabic ميتر (*Vishṇu-Purâṇa*, ii. p. 277).

The latter part of this list in the Arabic text is not free from confusion.

The regent of Uttarabhâdrapadâ is placed side by side with Pûrvabhâdrapadâ, whilst the latter station is left without its regent, which is *aja ekapât* (*Sûrya-Siddhânta*, p. 343). A part of this word seems to be extant in the square for *aśvinî*, which has اشو كبار. Perhaps this is to be read *aśvin ajaikapâd*, اشو اجيكباد, in which case the Arabic copyist has made two blunders, dropping part of the word *ajaikapâd* and placing it in the wrong square.

P. 123.—On the sixty-years cycle *cf.* *Sûrya-Siddhânta*, i. 55, and xiv. 17; Varâhamihira, *Bṛihat-Saṁhitâ*, viii. 20–53.

P. 125.—For the names Saṁvatsara, Parivatsara, &c., *cf.* *Bṛihat-Saṁhitâ*, viii. 24; *Sûrya-Siddhânta*, xiv. 17, note; Weber, *Ueber den Vedakalender genannt Jyotisham*, p. 34–36.

Pp. 127, 128.—The dominants of the single *lustra* are given in *Bṛihat-Saṁhitâ*, chap. viii. 23.

The names of the single years exhibit some differences from the Sanskrit text (*Bṛihat-Saṁhitâ*, viii. 27–52).

No. 8, بهاس instead of *bhâva*, has risen from a wrong division of the words of the text—

śrîmukhabhâvasâhvau,

i.e. *śrîmukha-bhâva-sâhvau*.

No. 9, جى instead of جو =*yuvan*, is perhaps a mistake of the copyist of the Arabic text.

No. 15, بِش, *visha* (in Kern's edition *vṛisha*), is not a mistake, but a different reading. The word in brackets (*Vṛishabha*) is to be cancelled.

No. 18, نَتُ, *natu*, cannot be combined with *pârthiva*. It corresponds to *nataṁ*. *Cf.* Kern's various readings to chap. viii. 35.

No. 30, جنر. The name of the thirtieth year is *durmukha*. Perhaps the reading جنر has risen from a wrong division of these words (viii. 38)—

manmatho 'sya paratašca durmukhaḥ,

so as to represent the elements *-ca dur-*.

No. 34, سرب (*śarva*), seems to be a mistake for *śarvari* or *sarvarin*.

No. 40, *parâvasu* is the reading of some manuscripts for *parabhâva*. *Cf.* Kern, various readings to viii. 41.

No. 48. This year is called *ânanda* by Kern, but the reading of Alberuni, *vikrama*, occurs also in Sanskrit manuscripts. *Cf.* various readings to viii. 45.

No. 56. The ندبه of the text seems to be a blunder of the copyist for *dundubhi* (viii. 50).

No. 57. *aṁgâra* or *aṁgâri*, the reading of certain manuscripts instead of *udgâri* (viii. 50).

No. 58 and 60. The words كتاكر (instead of ركتاكر,) and كّرو = *raktâksha* and *kshaya*, seem to be examples of a phonetic change between *sh* and *r*.

The same list of names is given in *Sûrya-Siddhânta*, i. 55, note.

P. 130.—With this chapter on the four parts of the life of a Brahman *cf. Vishṇu-Purâṇa*, book III. chap. ix.

P. 131.—The complete verse of Bashshâr is this—

> "The earth is dark, but the fire is bright,
> And the fire is worshipped, since there is fire."

This is the saying of a man whose parents had come as prisoners of war from Tukhâristân on the Upper Oxus, but he was born in Baṣra, and lived in Bagdad under the Khalif Almahdî. As he stood under the accusation of being a heretic (Zoroastrian or Manichæan), or, according to another version, because he had composed satirical verses on the Khalif, he was, notwithstanding his great age, sentenced to be beaten, and died in consequence, A.H. 167 = A.D. 784. *Cf.* Ibn Khallikân, *Vita*, No. 112.

P. 134, l. 1.—The south, as the direction foreboding evil, has already once been mentioned in connection with the islands Laṅkâ and Vaḍavâmukha, *vide* i. 307, 308.

Pp. 134, 135.—With this description of Âryâvarta *cf.* Manu, ii. 17 *seq.*; Vâsishṭha, i. 12; and Baudhâyana, i. 1, 9–12 ("Sacred Laws of the Âryas," translated by G. Bühler, Oxford, 1879–82).

P. 135.—On the vegetables which must not be eaten, *cf.* Manu, v. 5, and Vâsishṭha, xiv. 33. *Nâlî* seems to be = Sanskrit *nâlikâ*.

P. 136.—The contents of this chapter are nearly related to *Vishṇu-Purâṇa*, book III. chap. viii.

P. 137.—The story of King Râma, the Brahmin, and the *Caṇḍâla*, taken from the *Râmâyaṇa*, *vide* in Wilkins' "Hindu Mythology" (Calcutta, 1882), p. 319.

Pp. 137, 138.—The two quotations of Alberuni from the *Bhagavadgîtâ* can hardly be compared with any passage in the book in its present form. *Cf.* note to i. 29.

P. 139.—On the *aśvamedha* or horse-sacrifice, *cf.* Colebrooke, "Essays," i. 55, 56.

Pp. 140, 141.—This legend, as given on the authority of the *Vishṇu-Dharma*, is not known to me from a Sanskrit source.

P. 142.—As the original of this quotation from the *Purâṇas* is not known to me, the pronunciation of some of the proper nouns remains uncertain.

P. 143.—The story of Sagara, Bhagîratha, and the Ganges, is related by H. H. Wilson, "Works," vol. ii. p. 168. *Cf.* also Wilkins' "Hindu Mythology," p. 385. The source of this legend is the first book of *Râmâyaṇa*.

P. 145.—I do not know the original of this quotation from Varâhamihira's *Saṁhitâ*.

Pp. 145, 146.—The words here attributed to Śaunaka are probably taken from the *Vishṇu-Dharma*. *Cf.* note to i. 54.

P. 147.—The story of the head of Brahman is part of the legend of Śiva's fight with the Asura Jalandhara. *Cf.* Kennedy's "Researches," p. 456.

P. 149.—This and the following chapters treat of subjects which are discussed more or less in every Indian law-book, as in those of Manu, Âpastamba, Gautama, and others. Alberuni, however, does not seem to have drawn directly from any of these books, but rather from his own experience, from what his Pandits had told him, and what he himself had observed during his stay in India.

P. 153.—Alḥajjâj was governor of Babylonia during twenty years under the Omayyade Kalif ʻAbdulmalik (684–704) and his son Alwalîd (704–714).

P. 153. *That a Brahmin and a Caṇḍâla are equal to him.*—*Cf.* the saying of Vyâsa, the son of Parâśara, here vol. i. p. 44.

P. 155.—On the forbidden degrees of marriage, *cf.* Manu, iii. 5.

P. 156.—On *garbâdhâna, sîmaṁtonnayanam*, &c., *cf.* the *Dharmaśâstra* of Gautama, viii. 14; also the *Gṛihyasûtras* of Aśvalâyana, i. 13, 14.

P. 157. *Thus, when Kâbul was conquered, &c.*—The sentence added in brackets to indicate the meaning of the author's words, as I understand them, ought to run thus: "(which proves that he abhorred the eating of cows' meat and sodomy, but that he did not consider harlotry as anything baneful or unlawful)."

The detail in the history of Kâbul here alluded to is not known from other sources, *e.g. Balâdhurî*. During the Omayya Kaliphate of Damascus, both Kâbul and Sijistan bravely fought against the Muslims. During certain years they were subdued and had to pay tribute, but Kâbul always remained under the sway of its Hindu (Brahmin) kings of the Pâla dynasty. It was incorporated into the Kalif's empire under the Abbaside Ma'mûn; it had to receive a Muslim governor, but retained at his side the Hindu Shâh. The same double rule existed in Khwârizm.

About A.D. 950–975 the city of Kâbul was already Muslim, whilst the suburb was inhabited by the Hindus (and by Jews). Kâbul was the coronation-city for the Pâla dynasty, as Königsberg in Prussia for the Hohenzollerns. Even when they ceased to reside in Kâbul, they had to be crowned there.

By the Ispahbad, mentioned by Alberuni, I understand the Hindu governor who ruled over the city for the Pâla king. Our author applies a title of the Sasanian empire to the official of a Hindu empire.

In what year the negotiation referred to by Alberuni took place is not known. Perhaps under Ma'mûn, when the city was definitely ceded to the Muslim conquerors.

It seems to have been the public opinion among Muslims that Hindus considered fornication as lawful, as Ibn Khurdâdhbih expresses it (Elliot, "History of India," i. 13), whilst, according to Alberuni, they considered it indeed as unlawful, but were lax in punishing it.

P. 157.—The Buyide prince 'Aḍud-aldaula, who held Persia under his sway, died A.H. 372 = A.D. 982. Not long before Alberuni wrote, the last of their dominions had been annexed to the empire of Mahmûd of Ghazna.

P. 158.—'Iyâs Ibn Mu'âwiya was judge in Baṣra under the Omayya Khalif Omar Ibn 'Abdala'zîz, and died there, A.H. 122 = A.D. 740.

P. 159.—With the author's description of the ordeals, *cf.* Manu, viii. 114 *seq.*, and a translation of the chapter on ordeals from the *Vyâvahâra Mayûkha* by G. Bühler, in "Journal of the Asiatic Society of Bengal," 1867, vol. xxxv. pp. 14 *seq.*; Stenzler, *Die Indischen Gottesurtheile*, in *Zeitschrift der Deutschen Morgenländischen Gesellschaft*, ix. p. 661. The last-mentioned kind of ordeal (p. 160) is also described in Elliot's "History of India," i. 329 (the Sindian ordeal of fire).

P. 164. *According to a passage in the book Manu.—Cf.* Manu, ix. 118.

P. 166.—For the first quotation from *Phædo*, 81D, *cf.* note to i. p. 65. The second quotation can hardly be identified with any passage in *Phædo*. Perhaps it is derived from a commentary on the following words, 81C:—

ἀλλὰ διειλημμένην γε, οἶμαι, ὑπὸ τοῦ σωματοειδοῦς, ὃ αὐτῇ ἡ ὁμιλία τε καὶ συνουσία τοῦ σώματος διὰ τὸ ἀεὶ ξυνεῖναι καὶ διὰ τὴν πολλὴν μελέτην ἐνεποίησε ξύμφυτον.

P. 167.—The quotation from *Phædo* is found 115C–116A:—

Θάπτωμεν δέ σε τίνα τρόπον; ὅπως ἄν, ἔφη· βούλησθε, ἐάνπερ γε λάβητέ με καὶ μὴ ἐκφύγω ὑμᾶς, κ.τ.λ.

ἐγγυήσασθε οὖν με πρὸς Κρίτωνα, ἔφη, τὴν ἐναντίαν ἐγγύην ἢ ἣν οὗτος πρὸς δικαστὰς ἠγγυᾶτο, οὗτος μὲν γὰρ ἦ μὴν ταραμενεῖν. ὑμεῖς δὲ ἦ μὴν μὴ παραμενεῖν ἐγγυήσασθε, ἐπειδὰν ἀποθάνω, ἀλλὰ οἰχήσεσθαι ἀπιόντα, ἵνα Κρίτων ῥᾷον φέρῃ, καὶ μὴ ὁρῶν μου τὸ σῶμα ἢ καιόμενον ἢ κατορυττόμενον ἀγανακτῇ ὑπὲρ ἐμοῦ ὡς δεινὰ πάσχοντος μηδὲ λέγῃ ἐν τῇ ταφῇ, ὡς ἢ προτίθεται Σωκράτη ἢ ἐκφέρει ἢ κατορύττει, κ.τ.λ.

ἀλλὰ θαρρεῖν τε χρὴ καὶ φάναι τοὐμὸν σῶμα θάπτειν καὶ θάπτειν οὕτως, ὅπως ἄν σοι φίλον ᾖ καὶ μάλιστα ἡγῇ νόμιμον εἶναι.

P. 168. *Galenus, &c.*—I do not know the Greek original of this quotation. *Cf.* note to i. p. 35.

P. 169.—The words of Vâsudeva are a quotation from *Bhagavad-Gîtâ*, viii. 24.

P. 171. *Johannes Grammaticus.*—*Cf.* note to i. 36.

P. 171.—The two quotations from *Phædo* are found in 62C:—

ἴσως τοίνον ταύτῃ οὐκ ἄλογον μὴ πρύτερον αὑτὸν ἀποκτιννύναι δεῖν, πρὶν ἀνάγκην τινὰ θεὸς ἐπιπέμψῃ, ὥσπερ καὶ τὴν νῦν ἡμῖν παροῦσαν.

And 62B:—

ὡς ἔν τινι φρουρᾷ ἐσμεν οἱ ἄνθρωποι καὶ οὐ δεῖ δὴ ἑαυτὸν ἐκ ταύτης λύειν οὐδ' ἀποδιδράσκειν, κ.τ.λ. τὸ θεοὺς εἶναι ἡμῶν τοὺς ἐπιμελουμένους καὶ ἡμᾶς τοὺς ἀνθρώπους ἓν τῶν κτημάτων τοῖς θεοῖς εἶναι.

P. 174.—For the *Vishṇu-Purâṇa*, *vide* note to i. 54. The reading *Duve* is not certain, as the Arabic text has only دوى.

The names *Dilîpa*, *Dushyanta*, and *Yayâti* have been verified by means of the index to *Vishṇu-Purâṇa*.

P. 175, last line.—On the festival of the birth of Vâsudeva-Kṛishṇa (*Kṛishṇajanmâshṭamî*), *cf.* Weber, "Indian Antiquary," 1874, p. 21; 1877, p. 161; *Zeitschrift der Deutschen Morgenländischen Gesellschaft*, vi. p. 92.

P. 176, l. 11.—The Arabic manuscript has آتج, *i.e. âtaj*. For the word *aṭṭâṭaja*, *cf.* H. H. Wilson, "Essays and Lectures," ii. 232.

P. 176, l. 19. *Devasînî*.—The latter half of this word is apparently a derivation from the root *svap* = to sleep. In Prakrit *sleep* = *siviṇo* (Sanskrit *svapna*). *Vide Vararuci*, i. 3.

P. 177, l. 20.—*Deotthînî*, also called *deotthân* and *diṭṭhwan*. *Cf.* H. H. Wilson, "Glossary of Technical Terms," pp. 133, 134, 143, and "Memoirs on the History, Folklore, and Distribution of the Races of the North-Western Provinces of India," by H. Elliot, edited by J. Beames, i. 245.

P. 177.—The here-mentioned *bhîshma-pañca-râtri* seems to be identical with the *bhîshma-pañcakam* mentioned by Wilson, "Essays and Lectures," ii. 203.

P. 177.—The name *Gaur-t-r*, كورتر, occurs also ii. 179, and is apparently a vernacular form for *gaurî-tṛitîyâ*. *Cf.* Wilson, *l. l.* p. 185.

P. 178.—With this calendar of festivals are to be compared the treatise of H. H. Wilson, "The Religious Festivals of the Hindus," in his "Essays and Lectures," ii. p. 151 *seq.*, and Garcin de Tassy, *Notice sur les fêtes popu-*

laires des Hindous, Paris, 1834. This chapter, as well as the preceding one, would perhaps receive much light from the *Jyotirvidhâbharaṇam*, chap. xxi. *Cf.* Weber, "Journal of the German Oriental Society," vol. xxii. p. 719; and xxiv. p. 399.

This chapter has been translated into Persian by Abû-Sa'îd Gardezî (manuscript of the Bodleian Library in Oxford, Ouseley 240). *Cf.* note to ii. 6.

P. 178. *Agdûs.*—The Arabic has only اكدوس, which might be something like *ajya-divasa*.

Muttai.—This pronunciation is given by the manuscript. The name, not to be confounded with the Arabic name *Mattâ* (Matthæus), is perhaps identical with the name of a prince of Siwistan mentioned by Elliot, "History of India," i. 145–153.

Hindolî-caitra.—*Cf. Dola-yâtrâ* or *Holî* of Wilson, p. 223.

Bahand.—*Vide* Wilson, *l. c.*, and *vasanta*, here ii. 179.

P. 179. *Gaur-t-r.*—*Cf.* note to ii. 177.

P. 180. *Gâihat* (?), &c.—In the Arabic text the word ما must be added before يطعم.

In the following line there is a lacuna, which in my translation I have filled up by the help of the Persian translation of Gardêzî which runs thus:—

کانهت بود (sic) واین روز ششم بود که اندر این روز زندانیان
را طعام دهند. In another place Gardêzî writes کابهت.

P. 181.—On *Jîvaśarman*, *cf.* note to i. 164.

P. 182. *Kirî* (?).—This is perhaps only a misspelling of the Arabic copyist for كندى, *Kandî* (*Gandî Ribâṭ-ala'mîr*). *Cf.* note to i. 317, and Elliot, "History of India," ii. 112, 150; iv. 138; *Baihakî*, ed. Morley, p. 274. It is the place where King Mas'ûd was murdered.

P. 182. *Dîbâlî*=*dîpâvali* (row of lamps).—*Cf.* Wilson, "Glossary of Technical Terms," p. 114. Gardezî has ديوالى, *dîvâlî*.

ταύτης λύειν οὐδ' ἀποδιδράσκειν, κ.τ.λ. τὸ θεοὺς εἶναι ἡμῶν τοὺς ἐπιμελουμένους καὶ ἡμᾶς τοὺς ἀνθρώπους ἓν τῶν κτημάτων τοῖς θεοῖς εἶναι.

P. 174.—For the *Vishṇu-Purâṇa*, *vide* note to i. 54. The reading *Duve* is not certain, as the Arabic text has only دوى.

The names *Dilîpa*, *Dushyanta*, and *Yayâti* have been verified by means of the index to *Vishṇu-Purâṇa*.

P. 175, last line.—On the festival of the birth of Vâsudeva-Kṛishṇa (*Kṛishṇajanmâshṭamî*), *cf.* Weber, "Indian Antiquary," 1874, p. 21; 1877, p. 161; *Zeitschrift der Deutschen Morgenländischen Gesellschaft*, vi. p. 92.

P. 176, l. 11.—The Arabic manuscript has آتج, *i.e. âtaj*. For the word *aṭṭâṭajâ*, *cf.* H. H. Wilson, "Essays and Lectures," ii. 232.

P. 176, l. 19. *Devasînî*.—The latter half of this word is apparently a derivation from the root *svap* = to sleep. In Prakrit *sleep* = *siviṇo* (Sanskrit *svapna*). *Vide Vararuci*, i. 3.

P. 177, l. 20.—*Deotthînî*, also called *deotthân* and *diṭṭhwan*. *Cf.* H. H. Wilson, "Glossary of Technical Terms," pp. 133, 134, 143, and "Memoirs on the History, Folklore, and Distribution of the Races of the North-Western Provinces of India," by H. Elliot, edited by J. Beames, i. 245.

P. 177.—The here-mentioned *bhîshma-pañca-râtri* seems to be identical with the *bhîshma-pañcakam* mentioned by Wilson, "Essays and Lectures," ii. 203.

P. 177.—The name *Gaur-t-r*, كورتر, occurs also ii. 179, and is apparently a vernacular form for *gaurî-tṛitîyâ*. *Cf.* Wilson, *l. l.* p. 185.

P. 178.—With this calendar of festivals are to be compared the treatise of H. H. Wilson, "The Religious Festivals of the Hindus," in his "Essays and Lectures," ii. p. 151 *seq.*, and Garcin de Tassy, *Notice sur les fêtes popu-*

laires des Hindous, Paris, 1834. This chapter, as well as the preceding one, would perhaps receive much light from the *Jyotirvidhâbharaṇam*, chap. xxi. *Cf.* Weber, "Journal of the German Oriental Society," vol. xxii. p. 719; and xxiv. p. 399.

This chapter has been translated into Persian by Abû-Sa'îd Gardezî (manuscript of the Bodleian Library in Oxford, Ouseley 240). *Cf.* note to ii. 6.

P. 178. *Agdûs.*—The Arabic has only اگدوس, which might be something like *ajya-divasa.*

Muttai.—This pronunciation is given by the manuscript. The name, not to be confounded with the Arabic name *Mattâ* (Matthæus), is perhaps identical with the name of a prince of Siwistan mentioned by Elliot, "History of India," i. 145–153.

Hindolî-caitra.—*Cf. Dola-yâtrâ* or *Holî* of Wilson, p. 223.

Bahand.—*Vide* Wilson, *l. c.*, and *vasanta*, here ii. 179.

P. 179. *Gaur-t-r.*—*Cf.* note to ii. 177.

P. 180. *Gâihat* (?), &c.—In the Arabic text the word ما must be added before يطعم.

In the following line there is a lacuna, which in my translation I have filled up by the help of the Persian translation of Gardêzî which runs thus:—

كانهت بود (sic) واين روز ششم بود كه اندر اين روز زندانيان را طعام دهند. In another place Gardêzî writes كابهت.

P. 181.—On *Jîvaśarman, cf.* note to i. 164.

P. 182. *Kirî* (?).—This is perhaps only a misspelling of the Arabic copyist for كندى, *Kandî* (*Gandî Ribâṭ-ala'mîr*). *Cf.* note to i. 317, and Elliot, "History of India," ii. 112, 150; iv. 138; *Baihakî*, ed. Morley, p. 274. It is the place where King Mas'ûd was murdered.

P. 182. *Dîbâlî*=*dîpâvali* (row of lamps).—*Cf.* Wilson, "Glossary of Technical Terms," p. 114. Gardezî has ديوالى, *dîvâlî*.

P. 183. *Sâgârtam*=*śâkâshṭamî*.—*Cf.* Wilson "Essays," ii. 208.

P. 183.—*Câmâha* seems to be = *caturdaśî mâgha*, *mânsartagu*=*mânsâshṭaka*, *pûrârtaku*=*pûrâshṭaka*, and *mâhâtan*=*mâghâshṭamî*. *Cf.* Wilson, "Essays," ii. 183, 184, 181.

P. 183.—The festival *dhola* seems to be identical with *holi*, *holikâ* or *dol-jâtrâ*. *Cf.* Wilson, p. 147, 210. Instead of *dhola* the Persian translation of Gardêzî has هولى, *hôlî*.

P. 184. *Śivarâtri*.—*Cf.* Wilson, p. 210.

P. 184.—*Pûyattanu* is perhaps = *pûpâshṭamî*. Cf. *pûpâshṭakâ*.

P. 186.—On the 15th Mâgha, as the beginning of kaliyuga, *cf.* Wilson, "Essays and Lectures," ii. p. 208. Alberuni seems to have taken his information regarding the *yugâdyâ* or beginning of a *yuga* from *Vishṇu-Purâṇa*, III. chap. xiv. p. 168.

P. 187, l. 5.—The number of lunar days, 1,603,000,010 (*sic* MS.), must, according to Dr. Schram, be altered to 1,603,000,080.

P. 188. *Vishuva*.—On the use of this term in astronomy, *cf.* *Sûrya-Siddhânta*, iii. 6, note.

P. 188.—On *Samaya* (?), *cf.* note to i. 336.

P. 189, l. 17, after the table.—The solar year is 365 days 15^{i} 30^{ii} 22^{iii} 30^{iv}, not 365 days 30^{i} 22^{ii} 30^{iii} 0^{iv}. Accordingly the last line must run thus: "(*i.e.* 1 day 15^{i} 30^{ii} 22^{iii} 30^{iv} are equal to $\frac{4027}{32000}$)" (*Schram*).

P. 190, l. 7.—The *bhâgahâra* is not 572, as the manuscript has, but 576, and the fraction $\frac{725}{576}$ (*Schram*).

P. 190.—*Auliatta* (?). The name is written اولت بن سهاوى. A more literal rendering is this: "And that which

A. the son of S. has dictated of the same (subject), is based on the theory of Pulisa." This author seems to have been contemporaneous with Alberuni, as also Samaya (ii. 188).

P. 190. *Varâhamihira.*—*Cf.* note to i. 54.

The term *shaḍaśîtimukha* is explained in *Sûrya-Siddhânta*, xiv. 6, note.

P. 191.—On the *Parvan*, *cf.* chap. lx.

P. 192. *Saṁhitâ.*—The author quotes here the *Bṛihat-Saṁhitâ*, chap. xxxii. 24–26.

P. 192.—On the book *Srûdhava*, *cf.* note to i. 157 and ii. 120. Is the word = *sarvadhara?*

P. 194.—With the theory of the *karaṇas*, cf. *Sûrya-Siddhânta*, ii. 67–69.

P. 195.—For an explanation of the term *bhukti*, *cf.* *Sûrya-Siddhânta*, i. 27, note.

P. 197.—The names of the *common karaṇas* are found in *Sûrya-Siddhânta*, ii. 69, note.

The other names are Indian numerals of a vernacular stamp. The corresponding Sindhî forms are *barkhu* (?), *biô*, *ṭriô*, *cothõ*, *panjõ*, *chahô*, *satõ*, *athõ*, *nãõ*, *ḍahõ*, *yârhõ*, *bârhõ*, *têrhõ*, *coḍhõ*. *Cf.* Trumpp, "Sindhi Grammar," pp. 158, 174. The form *pancâhî* (= the 15th) has, as far as I can see, no analogy in the vernacular dialects.

P. 199.—*Saṁkrânti* means the sun's entrance into a sign of the zodiac. *Cf.* *Sûrya-Siddhânta*, xiv. 10, note.

P. 200. *Alkindî.*—The way in which this scholar has transformed the Hindu theory of the *karaṇas* is instructive, as showing how Indian subjects were handled by the Arabs before Alberuni, even by the most learned and enlightened among them. The first knowledge of these things was probably communicated to the Arabs by the translation of the *Brahma-Siddhânta* (*Sindhind*) and *Khaṇḍakhâdyaka* (*Arkand*) of Brahmagupta. On Alkindi, *cf.*

G. Flügel, *Alkindî, genannt der Philosoph der Araber*, Leipzig, 1857 (in vol. i. of the *Abhandlungen für die Kunde des Morgenlandes*).

P. 201.—The names of the *vishṭis*, as taken from the *Srûdhava* (of Mahâdeva?—*cf.* note to ii. 120), are not known to me from a Sanskrit source. However, *vaḍavâmukha*, *ghora*, and *kâlarâtri* seem to be certain. The words بلو and جوال might be *plava* and *jvâla*, but كرال ?

The other series of names of the *vishṭis*, according to Alkindî, which by a mistake have been omitted in the Arabic text, may be transliterated in this way:—

(1.) Shûlpî (*śûlapadî?*).
(2.) Jamadûd (*yâmyodadhi?*).
(3.) Ghora.
(4.) Nastarînish.
(5.) Dârunî (*dhâriṇî?*).
(6.) Kayâlî.
(7.) Bahayâmani.
(8.) Bikata (*vyakta?*).

P. 204. *On the yogas.*—The contents of this chapter are near akin to those of chap. xi. of the *Sûrya-Siddhânta*. Compare also in the same book ii. 65, 66. The technical term *pâta*, which literally means *fall* (for its astrological meaning, *cf. l. c.* xi. 5, note), has in Arabic been rendered by the word سقوط, *i.e. falling* (page ٣, 11, 24), here ii. 207, 208, 209. In the Arabic text on p. ٢٩٩, 7, read تَدل instead of يدله, and to the word بيدرت, l. 16, it must be added that the manuscript has بيدران.

P. 205.—On the *Karaṇatilaka* of Vijayanandin, *cf.* note to i. 156.

P. 207.—The *bhuktyantara* has been explained, ii. 195.

P. 208.—*Syâvabala* (?) seems to have been a Hindu from Kashmîr who had become a Muslim, and wanted, by means of an *Arabic* book, to be informed on certain chapters of *Hindu* astrology. The pronunciation *Syâvabala* is ont certain. The Arabic manuscript has *siyâupal*.

P. 208.—On the Brahmin *Bhaṭṭila*, *cf.* note to i. 157. The names of the yogas which he mentions are not known to me from other sources. The names *gaṇḍânta*, *kâladaṇḍa*, and *vaidhṛita* are certain, and *barh* is probably *varsha*.

P. 209.—On Śrîpâla, *cf.* note to i. 164.

P. 210.—With the names of this table *cf.* *Sûrya-Siddhânta*, ii. 65, note (also p. 432). The بخكر of the Arabic seems to be a mistake for بخكم, *vishkambha*; No. 15, كتند, a mistake for كند, *gaṇḍa*.

Instead of *âyushmant* (name of the third yoga), the Arabic has رازكم (*râjakama?*); instead of *vyatipâta* it has كننات (*gatipâta?*).

P. 211.—The contents of this astrological chapter are principally taken from the *Laghujâtakam* (*i.e.* the smaller book of nativity) by Varâhamihira, of which the chapters i. ii. have been translated by A. Weber (*Indische Studien*, 2, 277 *seq.*), whilst the remainder has been translated by H. Jacobi (*De Astrologiæ Indicæ* horâ *appellatæ originibus. Accedunt Laghujâtaki capita inedita* iii.–xii., Bonn, 1872). Alberuni does not always adhere to the order of the paragraphs which we have in the Sanskrit text, and for certain parts he seems to have drawn from some commentary.

The exact meaning of the term *seconds of the stars* (the same page, ll. 23, 24), ثوانى النجوم, is not known to me.

Pp. 213–215.—The *table of planets* is taken from chapters ii. iii. iv. of the *Laghujâtakam*.

For the reading of the terms *naisargika*, *vimiśra*, and *shaḍâya* (p. 215), I am indebted to Prof. H. Jacobi, Kiel.

The number 25, كه, in the column with the heading *The scale of their magnitude*, seems to be a mistake for 3, ج.

Pp. 217–219.—This table of the zodiacal signs has been taken from *Laghujâtakam*, chap. i.

Pp. 221, 222.—This table of the *Houses* has been taken from *Laghujâtakam*, chap. i. 15.

P. 234.—The notes on comets and other meteorological subjects, with which the author concludes his book, have been taken from the *Bṛihat-Saṁhitâ* of Varâhamihira.

Pp. 237–238.—This table of comets is taken from *Bṛihat-Saṁhitâ*, chap. xi. 10–28.

The *children of the fire* are called *hutâśasutâḥ* in Sanskrit, in Arabic اولاد الثان, which I cannot explain.

Pp. 241–244.—This table of comets is taken from *Bṛihat-Saṁhitâ*, chap. xi. 29–51.

The reading بنمك ت, instead of *padmaketu*, seems to be a mistake of the copyist for بذمكيت.

P. 245. *Book of the medicine of elephants.*—On this and similar literature, *cf.* A. Weber, *Vorlesungen über Indische Literaturgeschichte*, p. 289.

INDEX I.

â = âditya, i. 215
abda, ii. 118
abdhi, i. 178
Abhâpûrî, i. 200
âbhâstala, i. 230
Abhi, i. 303
abhijit, i. 340, 341, 342; ii. 66, 85, 87, 127
Abhîra, i. 300, 301, 302
abhra, i. 178
Âbika (?), i. 299
âcârya, i. 155
Âcûd (?), ii. 143
Âdarśa, i. 302
âḍhaka, i. 162, 163, 164
adhas, i. 290
adhimâsa, ii. 20 *seq.*, 23; universal or partial, ii. 23
Adhishṭhâna, i. 207; ii. 181
adhomukha, i. 61
âdi, i. 178; ii. 23
âdi-purâṇa, i. 130
Aditi, ii. 121
Âdittahaur, i. 206
âditya, i. 116, 179, 215, 216, 291
âdityavâra, i. 213
âditya-purâṇa, i. 130, 168, 217, 229, 230, 232, 248, 368
âdityaputra, i. 215
adri, i. 178
aga, i. 178
agastya, i. 132; ii. 66, 91, 92, 94
Agastyamata, i. 132
Agdûs (f), ii. 178
âgneya, i. 290, 297, 301; ii. 203
Agneya, i. 358
Agni, i. 131, 178, 242, 342, 357, 358, 394; ii. 121, 125
Agniba (!), i. 394
Agnîdhra, i. 394
agnihotrin, i. 102
Agnijihva, i. 231
Agnimukha, i. 231
Agnîtya, i. 302
Agniveśa, i. 159
agokîru, i. 220
ahan, i. 368; ii. 26
ahaṅkâra, i. 41
ahargana, i. 355, 368; ii. 26, 27 *seq.*, 34, 46 *seq.*, 48, 60, 116, 184
âhârî, ii. 179
Ahirbudhnya, i. 342; ii. 66, 122
âhoi, ii. 180
ahorâtra, i. 359
aindra, i. 135
Airâvata, ii. 245
aiśâna, i. 290, 297; ii. 202
aiśânya, i. 303
Aja, i. 342, 358
Aja, ekapâd, ii. 122
Ajodaha (Ayodhyâ), i. 200
Âkara, i. 301
âkâśa, i. 178
akshara, i. 172
akshauhiṇî, i. 179, 403, 407, 408
akshi, i. 178
Alika, i. 300
Alîspûr, i. 203
Amarâvatî, i. 271
Amarâvatîpura, i. 271
amâvâsya, i. 348; ii. 185, 197
ambara, i. 178, 303
ambaratala, i. 230
Ambarîsha, i. 113
Ambashṭha, i. 301
amṛita, i. 54, 253, 262, 344; ii. 107
aṁśaka, i. 140, 144
aṁśâya, ii. 227
aṁśu, i. 217, 230
aṁśumant, i. 217
anala, ii. 123
Ânandapâla, i. 135; ii. 13

Ananta, i. 237, 247, 298
Ânâr, i. 205
Ânartta, i. 300, 302
Andhra, i. 299, 300, 301
Andhradeśa, i. 173
Andhrî, i. 173
andî, i. 161, 162, 163
aṅga, i. 178, 301
aṅgâra, ii. 128
Aṅgiras, i. 131, 215, 291, 390; ii. 127
aṅgula, i. 166
Anhilvâra, i. 153, 205; ii. 6, 7
anîkinî, i. 407
Anila, i. 342
Ânila, i. 248
Aniruddha, i. 398
Añjana, i. 300
aṅka, i. 174
anta, i. 220
Antaka, i. 342
antara, i. 178; ii. 195
Antardvîpa, i. 302
Antariksha, i. 398
ântarikshya, ii. 235
Antarvedi, i. 211 (notes).
Antaḥśilâ, i. 257
antya, i. 175
antyaja, i. 101
aṇu, i. 337
Anuhlâda, i. 231
anurâdhâ, i. 218, 391, 393; ii. 85, 86, 122, 176
Anûru, i. 253
Anutaptâ, i. 262
anuvatsara, ii. 125
Anuviśva, i. 303
âpaddharma, i. 133
Apâṁmûrti, i. 394
apâna, i. 339
Apara (!), i. 394
Aparânta (?), i. 300
Aparântaka, i. 302
Âpas, i. 342; ii. 122
Âpastamba, i. 131
apratidhṛishya, i. 372
apsaras, i. 247, 248
Apsûr, i. 202
âpta-purâṇa-kâra, i. 237
âra, i. 215
araṇya, i. 133
Âravâmbashtha, i. 302
arbuda, i. 176
arbudam, i. 177
ardhanâgarî, i. 173
Ardin, i. 202
ârdrâ, i. 218; ii. 66, 84, 86, 121
argha, ii. 95
Arhant, i. 119, 121
Arhata (?), ii. 142
Ari, i. 300
Arjuna, i. 29, 52, 352, 403; ii. 138
Ârjunâyana, i. 302
arka, i. 179, 215, 217; ii. 125
ârki, i. 215
Arkutîrtha, i. 200
Aror, i. 205, 260
artha, i. 178
Arthayâshava (?), i. 299
Aruṇâ, i. 259
Aruṇa, i. 255; ii. 143, 238
Arundhatî, i. 390
Âruṇi, i. 394
Arvasudhana (?), i. 303
âryâ, i. 143
Âryabhata, i. 156, 168, 225, 227, 244, 246, 266, 267, 268, 275, 277, 280, 370, 373, 376, 377, 386; ii. 16, 17, 18, 19, 33, 111, 190
Âryabhaṭa (of Kusumapura), i. 176, 246, 316, 330, 335, 370
Âryaka, i. 254
Aryaman, i. 217, 242, 342; ii. 121, 199
âryâshṭaśata, i. 157, 386
âryâvarta, i. 173; ii. 6
âśâ, i. 179
âśâla (?), i. 230
Âśana (?), i. 358
Asâvil, i. 209
âsbati (?), i. 215
Aścûrvarî, i. 387
âshâḍha, i. 211, 217, 218, 357, 358, 403; ii. 96, 99, 100, 173, 176, 179, 193
ashṭa, i. 178
ashṭaka, ii. 183
ashṭi, i. 179
Âsî, i. 202
asipattravana, i. 61
asita, i. 215; ii. 235
âśleshâ, i. 218, 291; ii. 84, 121
Asmaka, i. 300, 302
âsphujit, i. 215
âśramavâsa, i. 133
aśoka, ii. 180
Astagiri, i. 302
asthi, ii. 241
asura, i. 90, 247, 325, 331
aśvamedha, i. 133; ii. 2, 139
Aśvavadana, i. 301
Aśvamukha, i. 262

Aśvatara, i. 231, 247
aśvattha, i. 86 ; ii. 140, 141
Âśvatthâman, i. 133, 394, 398, 405, 406
âśvayuja, i. 217, 218, 358, 403 ; ii. 98, 173, 177, 179, 186, 193
aśvin, i. 159, 178 ; ii. 122, 128
aśvinî, i. 218, 242, 369 ; ii. 84, 86, 122, 128
atala, i. 230
Âṭavya, i. 300
âtharvaṇaveda, i. 127, 129
atidhṛiti, i. 179
atîn, ii. 197
Atinâman, i. 394
ativâhika, i. 63
âtman, i. 351
âtmapurusha, i. 321
Âtreya, i. 163, 300, 383
Atri, i. 131, 291, 301, 390, 394
aṭṭâṭaja, ii. 176
atvh (?), i. 348
atyashṭi, i. 179
Audumbara, i. 300
Auliatta (?), ii. 190
Aurva, ii. 101
Autata (?), i. 387
auttami, i. 387
avama ii. 38, 43, 47, 48, 50, 51, 53, 54
âvaneya, i. 215
Avanti, i. 298, 301
Âvarta, ii. 244
avasarpiṇî, i. 371
avaśvâsa, i. 339
avyakta, i. 40
ayana, i. 356, 366 ; ii. 118
Âyanâ (?), i. 257
âyurdâya, ii. 228
ayuta, i. 175
ayutam, i. 176, 177

b = Budha, i. 215
Babrahân, i. 206
Bâdara, i. 302
badhatau (?), i. 101, 102
Baga, i. 208
Baba, i. 261
bahand, ii. 178
Bahîmarvara, i. 261
Bahrôj (v. Bihroj), i. 205, 261
Bâhudâsa (!), i. 259
bahudhânya, ii. 127
bakshûta (!), ii. 208
bala, ii. 226, 230
Balabandhu, i. 387
Balabhadra, i. 156, 157, 158, 225, 227, 236, 238, 248 (?). 241, 243, 244, 246, 273, 274, 275, 279, 281, 282, 317, 401, 403 ; ii. 70, 75, 187
Balabhid, ii. 127
Baladeva, i. 118
Baladevapattana, i. 301
bâlâgra, i. 162
Balâhaka, ii. 101
bâlava, ii. 197, 199
Bali, i. 117, 129, 231 387, 396 ; ii. 3, 11, 145, 182
Balirâjya, ii. 182
Ballâvar, i. 205
Bâlûka (!), i. 257
Bâluvâhiṇî, i. 257
Bâmahûr, i. 202
Bamhanvâ (not Bahmānvâ), i. 21. 173, 205, 316
Banârasî (Benares), i. 200
Banavâs, i. 202
Baṅgâla, i. 158
baṇij, ii. 197, 199
Bañjulâ, i. 257
bâra, i. 213
Baramûlâ, i. 207
Barbara, i. 261 302 ; ii. 129
Bardarî, ii. 8
bardî (?), i. 405
barh, i. 359
Barhamśil, i. 200
Bârî, i. 200, 201, 261
barkhu, i. 359, 348 (?) ; ii. 197
Barodâ, i. 403
Barôî, i. 208 ; ii. 105
barsh, i. 359
Barshâvar (Peshavar), i. 211
Bârvancat, i. 261
Baśârṇa (!), i. 300
bava, ii. 197, 199
Bavârîj, i. 208
Bazâna (?), i. 202, 205, 300
Benares, i. 22, 156, 173 ; ii. 146, 147
Bhadatta (?), i. 156
Bhaḍila (?), i. 157
Bhadrakâra (!), i. 299
Bhadra, i. 300, 301
bhâdrapada, i. 217, 218, 340, 358, 403 ; ii. 8, 98, 173, 175, 177, 180, 193
Bhadrâśva, i. 249
Bhaga, i. 217, 358 ; ii. 121, 128
bhâgahâra, ii. 30, 189, 190
Bhagavat, i. 255
Bhâgavata, i. 121, 131

Bhagavatî, i. 118, 120 ; ii. 177, 179, 180
Bhâgeya (!), i. 342
Bhagîratha, ii. 143, 144
Bhâilsân, i. 202
bhaikshukî, i. 173
Bhalla, i. 303
Bhânurajas (?), i. 156
bhânu, i. 176, 215, 217
Bhânuyaśas (?), (*cf.* Bhânurajas), i. 157
Bhânukacchra (!), i. 300
bhâra, i. 165
bhara, i. 130
Bharadva, i. 300
Bharadvâja, i. 394, 398
bharaṇî, i. 218 ; ii. 84, 122
Bhhrata, i. 262, 294
Bhârata, i. 29, 117, 132, 134 ; ii. 1, 147, 152
Bhâratavarsha, i. 249, 294, 295, 296, 297
Bhârgava, i. 132, 215, 372, 398
Bharma (?), ii. 120
bharna (?), ii. 104
Bharukaccha, i. 301
Bhâtal, i. 211
Bhâtî, i. 205
Bhâtiya, i. 173
Bhaṭṭila, ii. 208
Bhâtul, i. 260
bhaumya, i. 215
bhautya, i. 387
bhâva, ii. 127
bhavaketu, ii. 243
Bhâvin (?), i. 254
Bhavishya, i. 131
bhavishya-purâṇa, i. 130
Bhillamâla, i. 153, 267
Bhîma, ii. 13
Bhîmapâla, ii. 13
Bhîmarathî, i. 257
Bhîmasena, i. 403
Bhîshma, i. 133
bhîshmapañcarâtrî, ii. 177.
Bhogaprastha, i. 302
Bhogavardhana, i. 300
Bhoja, i. 300
Bhoteshar, i. 201, 206
bhramara, ii. 92
Bhṛigu, i. 77, 215, 291
bhṛiguputra, i. 215
bhṛiguloka, ii. 233
Bhujaga, i. 342
bhukti, i. 353 ; ii. 80, 83, 195, 200, 205, 206, 207
bhuktyantara, ii. 195
bhûmi (!), i. 387
Bhûmihara, i. 203
bhûpa, i. 179
bhûri, i. 175
Bhûrisheṇa, i. 387
bhûrja, i. 171
bhûrloka, i. 45, 232, 233, 238
bhûta, i. 90, 92, 93, 178
Bhûtapura, i. 303
Bhuvanakośa, i. 294
bhuvarloka, i. 45, 232, 238
bibatâ (?), i. 215
Bihat, i. 201
Bihrôj, i. 209
bîsî (?), i. 165, 166
Bîtra, i. 262
Bîtûr, i. 259
biya, ii. 197
Biyâha, i. 259, 260
Biyatta, i. 206, 259, 260
Blv (? plava), ii. 202
Bodha, i. 299
bodhana, i. 215
Brahmadaṇḍa, ii. 237
brahmâdi (!), ii. 116
Brahmagupta, i. 147, 150, 153, 154, 156, 168, 223, 224, 241, 243, 267, 272, 276, 277, 279, 280, 282, 283, 312, 314, 335, 368, 369, 370, 372, 373, 374, 376, 377, 386 ; ii. 4, 7, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19, 24, 28, 31, 46, 59, 71, 73, 74, 75, 76, 77, 78, 82, 90, 110, 111, 112, 186, 189, 192
brahmâhorâtra, i. 331
brahmaloka, i. 233
brahman, i. 28, 54, 72, 77, 89, 92, 94, 100, 116, 118, 125, 129 ; his sons, i. 131, 134, 153, 155, 157, 159, 176, 241, 256, 266, 321, 322, *seq.*, 331, 332, 342, 350, 352, 360, 361, 363, 369, 380, 386 ; ii. 2 ; life of, ii. 28, 63, 99, 115, 116, 118, 120, 145, 147, 199, 237
Brahman, era of, ii. 1
brâhmaṇa, 100, 102, 104, 121
brahmaṇa (?), ii. 159
brahmâṇḍa, i. 131, 221 *seq.*, 237
brahmâṇḍa-purâṇa, i. 130
Brahmâṇî, i. 119
Brahmapura, i. 303
brahma-purâṇa, i. 130
Brahmaputra, i. 387
brahmarshi, i. 93, 247
Brahmarûpa, i. 256
Brahmasâvarṇi, i. 387

brahmasiddhânta, i. 138, 153; table of contents, i. 154, 223, 224, 267, 276, 352; ii. 110, 112
Brahmavaivarta, i. 131
Brahmin, ii. 95, 96, 98, 100, 109. 110, 111, 139 *seq.*, 149, 151, 153, 179, 180, 181, 183, 185, 191
Brahmottara, i. 262
Bṛihaspati, i. 132, 398
bṛihaspativâra, i. 213
budha, i. 215
budhavâra, i. 213
Buddha, i. 40, 119, 121, 158, 243; ii. 169
Buddhodana, i. 40, 380
Budhnya, i. 387
burlû (?), i. 204

c=candra, i. 215
Cabrahasta (?), ii. 120
cadur (!), ii. 127
caitra, i. 212, 217, 218, 358, 369, 394, 403; ii. 8, 10, 39, 48, 123, 173, 176; festivals, ii. 178, 186, 187, 193
caitra-cashati (?), ii. 179
Caitraka (?), i. 387
cakhaka, i. 334
cakra, i. 114, 117, 118, 341; ii. 101, 107
cakrasvâmin, i. 117; ii. 103
Cakshabhadra (?), ii. 120
Cakshu, i. 261
câkshukha, i. 387
Cakshus, i. 261
câkshusha, i. 387
calaketu, ii. 241
Calitu (?), i. 137
câmâha, ii. 183, 184
câmara, i. 140
Câmuṇḍâ, i. 120
camû, i. 407
caṇa (?), i. 163
Cañcûka, i. 302
caṇḍâla, i. 101, 239, 344, 381; ii. 137, 138, 153
Candanâ, i. 259
Candarâha, i. 260
candra, i. 178, 215, 216; ii. 21, 101
cândra, i. 135, 215
Candrabhâgâ, i. 259
Candrabîja (?), ii. 6
Candrâha, i. 206, 259
candrâhargaṇa, ii. 27
candramâna, i. 353, 354
candraparvata, ii. 143
Candrapura, i. 300
candrâyaṇa, ii. 173
cântima (?), i. 344
Caraka, i. 159, 162, 382
Carmadvîpa, i. 301
Carmakhaṇḍila, i. 300
Carmaṇvatî, i. 257, 259; ii. 134
Carmaraṅga, i. 302
Carshayaḥ (!), i. 394
cashaka, i. 334 *seq.*, 337; ii. 52, 56, 189
caturyuga, i. 325, 354, 359, 368 *seq.*, 372 *seq.*, 386, 398; ii. 1, 2, 17, 18, 28, 57 *seq.*, 186, 189
catushpada, ii. 197, 198, 200
Caulya, i. 299
caudahî, ii. 197
caut, ii. 197.
ceshṭâbala, ii. 225
chandas, i. 136
chidra, i. 178
cikitsâ, i. 355
Cîna, i. 261, 303; ii. 239
Cipitanâsika, i. 302
Cîranivasana, i. 303
citrâ, i. 218, 342; ii. 85, 121, 127
citrabhânu, ii. 127
Citrakûṭa, i. 301
Citrâṅgada, ii. 120
Citrapala, i. 257
Citrakûṭâ, i. 257
Citraśâlâ, i. 255
Citrusena, i. 387
C-n-d-sara (?), ii. 143
Cola, i. 301; ii. 239
Colika (?), i. 301
Cyavana, i. 231

DADHI, i. 178, 235
dadhimaṇḍa, i. 235
dadhisâgara, i. 156, 235
Dahâla, i. 202
dahana, i. 178
dâharîya (?), i. 344
dahîn, ii. 197
Dahmâla, i. 205
Daibal, i. 208
Daihak, i. 189
daitya, i. 91, 231, 237, 247, 248, 267, 272, 279, 280, 364; ii. 140
daityântara, i. 266
Daksha, i. 54, 131, 291, 387
dakshakula, i. 357
dakshaputra, i. 387
dakshiṇa, i. 290
Dâkshiṇâtya, i. 300

dakshiṇâyana, i. 356, 357
Dâmara, i. 303
damariyâ (?), i. 344
Damin, i. 254
Dâmodara, i. 403
dânadharma, i. 133
Dânak, i. 203
dânava, i. 91, 231, 237, 248, 256, 272, 330, 331
dânavaguru, i. 215
Daṇḍa, i. 303; ii. 97
Daṇḍahamâr (?), ii. 176
Daṇḍaka, i. 300
Daṇḍakâvana, i. 301
dantin, i. 178
Dantura, i. 301
Darada, i. 261
Daraur, i. 200
darbha, ii. 130, 131
Dardura, i. 301
Dârva, i. 303
Darvad, i. 209
daśagîtikâ, i. 157, 386
daśalaksha, i. 176
daśam, i. 175
Dâsameya, i. 303
Darva, i. 300
Daśapura, i. 301
Daśaratha, i. 117, 306, 372
Dâsârna, i. 301
Daśârṇâ, i. 257
daśasahasra, i. 176
Dâsera (!), i. 302
Daseruka (!), i. 300
dasra, i. 178, 342
dasta, i. 166
Datta, i. 394
deotthînî, ii. 177
deśântara, i. 312, 314, 315
deva, i. 90, 91, 92, 95, 159, 176, 247, 248, 252, 256, 266, 272, 330, 331; ii. 63, 66, 96, 99, 139, 140, 141, 177, 279, 280, 357
devagṛiha, ii. 178
devaka, i. 330, 352, 369, 372
Devakîrti, i. 158
Devala, i. 132; ii. 235
devaloka, ii. 233
devamantrin, i. 215
Devânîga, i. 387
devapitâ, i. 215
devapurohita, i. 215
devasîni, ii. 176
Devaśreshṭa, i. 387
Devata (?), i. 387
devejya, i. 215
Devikâ, i. 259
Dhâman, i. 394
Dhanañjaya, i. 231, 398
dhanishtha, i. 218, 291; ii. 85
dhanishṭhâ, ii. 122, 124
dhanu, i. 166, 220
Dhanushman (!), i. 302
Dhanya, i. 254
Dhâr, i. 202, 203
Dhâra, i. 191
dharaṇî, i. 178
dharma, i. 40, 132, 242, 291
Dharmâraṇya, i. 300
dharmasâvarni, i. 387
Dhâtṛi, i. 217, 238, 342; ii. 127
dhî, i. 178
Dhîvara, i. 262
dhôla, ii. 183
Dhṛishṇa, i. 387
Dhṛitaketu, i. 387
Dhṛitarâshtra, i. 108, 403
dhṛiti, i. 179
Dhṛitimat, i. 394
dhruva, i. 239, 241
dhruvagṛiha (?), ii. 180
Dhûlika (?), i. 261
dhruvaketu (?), ii. 242
dhurâ (?), ii. 21
dhurâshâḍha, ii. 21
Dhutapâpâ, i. 259
dhyânagrahâdhyâya, i. 155
dîbâlî, ii. 182
dîkshita, i. 102
Dilîpa, ii. 174
dimasu, i. 359
Dipâpâ, i. 262
Dîptimat, i. 394
Dîrghagrîva, i. 302
Dîrghakeśa, i. 302
Dîrghamukha, i. 302
Dirvarî (Drâviḍî), i. 173
Dirvarîdeśa, i. 173
diś, i. 178, 179
Dîvakanbâr, i. 210
Divâkara, i. 158, 215, 217
Dîva-kûdha, i. 210
divasa, i. 359
Dîvârśa (!), i. 301
Divaspâti, i. 387
divya, i. 42, 374; ii. 235
divyâhorâtra, i. 329
Divyatattva, i. 157
divyavarsha, i. 359, 368; ii. 2
Diyâmau, i. 205
Dkîsh (?), ii. 140
domba, i. 101, 102

Dramiḍa, i. 302
draṅkshana, i. 161
Draviḍadeśa, i. 173
Draviṇa, ii. 101
drekkâṇa, ii. 229, 233
dṛigbala, ii. 225
Dribâla (?), i. 300
Dṛishadvatî, i. 259
dṛishṭibala, ii. 225
Droṇa, i. 133, 162, 163, 164, 254, 394, 398, 405, 406 ; ii. 101
Drûta, i. 259
Dûdahî, i. 202
Dûgum, i. 201
Dûgumpûr, i. 200
dundubhi, ii. 128
Dunpûr, i. 206, 211, 317
Durga, i. 300
Durgâ, i. 257
Durgavivṛitti, i. 135
Durlabha, ii. 9, 10, 54
durmati, ii. 128
durtama (?), i. 371
Durvâsas, i. 404
Duryodhana, i. 133
Dushyanta, ii. 174
duvâbî, ii. 197
duvê, ii. 174
Dvaipâyana, i. 398
dvâpara, i. 372, 397, 398
dvâpara-yuga, i. 126, 373 ; description, i. 380 ; ii. 5 ; its beginning, ii. 186
Dvâr, i. 207
dvijeśvara, i. 216
dvîpa, i. 168, 233, 234, 235, 236, 243, 251 *seq.*, 265, 295, 301, 388 ; ii. 144
dvisvabhâva, ii. 220
Dyuti, i. 394
Dyutimat, i. 394

EKACARAṆA, i. 303
ekam, i. 175
ekanakta, ii. 172
Ekapada, i. 301
Ekavilocana, i. 302
Elâpatra, ii. 120

GA, i. 140
gabhastala, i. 230
Gabhastimat, i. 230, 296
Gabhîra, i. 387
gadâ, i. 133
gagana, i. 178
gâihat (?), ii. 180
Gaisitu (?), i. 137
gaja, i. 178, 300
Gajakarṇa, i. 231
Gâlava, i. 394
gaṇa, i. 407
gana (?), ii. 181
Gaṇaka, ii. 238
Gaṇapati (?), ii. 121
Gaṇarâjya, i. 301
gaṇḍa, i. 203
Gaṇḍakî, i. 259
gaṇḍânta, ii. 208
gaudha, i. 42
Gandhamâdana, i. 248, 249
Gandhâra, i. 21, 259, 261, 300, 303
gandharva, i. 89, 91, 238, 247, 262, 303
gândharva, i. 296
Gandharvî, ii. 142
Gaṅgâ, i. 200 *seq.*, 203, 253, 254, 259, 261 ; ii. 144
Gaṅgâdvâra, i. 199
Gaṅgâsâgara, i. 261
Gangâsâyara, i. 201
Gangeya, i. 202
gara, ii. 197, 199
Garbha, i. 236
garbhâdhâna, ii. 156
Garga, i. 157, 342, 382, 390, 391 ; ii. 96, 110, 235
garuḍa, i. 114, 130 131, 193, 194, 231, 253, 344
Gauḍa, the anchorite, i. 132
Gauḍaka, i. 301
gaura, i. 161
Gaura (?), ii. 143
Gauragrîva, i. 300
Gaurî (Gauḍî), i. 173
Gaurî, i. 119 ; ii. 121, 179, 182, 183
Gaur-t-r (gaurî-tṛitîyâ), ii. 177, 179
Gautama, i. 131, 394, 398
gâyatrî, i. 147
ghana, i. 140, 144, 146
ghatî, i. 334 *seq.*, 337, 338, 349, 362, 366 ; ii. 48, 52, 56, 189, 190, 195, 200
ghaṭikâ, i. 279, 282, 286
Ghora, ii. 202
Ghorwand, i. 259
Ghosha, i. 300, 303
ghṛitamaṇḍa, i. 235
Ghûzak, i. 259
Giri, i. 302
Girnagara, i. 301
gîtâ, quoted, i. 29, 30, 40, 52–54, 70–72, 73–74, 75, 76, 78, 79, 80, 86, 90, 103–104, 122

dakshiṇâyana, i. 356, 357
Dâmara, i. 303
damarîyâ (?), i. 344
Dâmin, i. 254
Dâmodara, i. 403
dânadharma, i. 133
Dânak, i. 203
dânava, i. 91, 231, 237, 248, 256, 272, 330, 331
dânavaguru, i. 215
daṇḍa, i. 303 ; ii. 97
Daṇḍahamâr (?), ii. 176
Daṇḍaka, i. 300
Daṇḍakâvana, i. 301
dantin, i. 178
Dantura, i. 301
Darada, i. 261
Daraur, i. 200
darbha, ii. 130, 131
Dardura, i. 301
Dârva, i. 303
Darvad, i. 209
daśagîtikâ, i. 157, 386
daśalaksha, i. 176
daśam, i. 175
Dâsameya, i. 303
Darva, i. 300
Daśapura, i. 301
Daśaratha, i. 117, 306, 372
Dâsârṇa, i. 301
Daśârṇâ, i. 257
daśasahasra, i. 176
Dâsera (!), i. 302
Daseruka (!), i. 300
dasra, i. 178, 342
dasta, i. 166
Datta, i. 394
deotthînî, ii. 177
deśântara, i. 312, 314, 315
deva, i. 90, 91, 92, 95, 159, 176, 247, 248, 252, 256, 266, 272, 330, 331 ; ii. 63, 66, 96, 99, 139, 140, 141, 177, 279, 280, 357
devagṛiha, ii. 178
devaka, i. 330, 352, 369, 372
Devakîrti, i. 158
Devala, i. 132 ; ii. 235
devaloka, ii. 233
devamantrin, i. 215
Devânîga, i. 387
devapitâ, i. 215
devapurohita, i. 215
devasînî, ii. 176
Devaśreshṭa, i. 387
Devata (?), i. 387
devejya, i. 215
Devikâ, i. 259
Dhâman, i. 394
Dhanañjaya, i. 231, 398
dhanishtha, i. 218, 291 ; ii. 85
dhanishṭhâ, ii. 122, 124
dhanu, i. 166, 220
Dhanushman (!), i. 302
Dhanya, i. 254
Dhâr, i. 202, 203
Dhâra, i. 191
dharaṇî, i. 178
dharma, i. 40, 132, 242, 291
Dharmâraṇya, i. 300
dharmasâvarni, i. 387
Dhâtṛi, i. 217, 238, 342 ; ii. 127
dhî, i. 178
Dhîvara, i. 262
dhôla, ii. 183
Dhṛishṇa, i. 387
Dhṛitaketu, i. 387
Dhṛitarâshṭra, i. 108, 403
dhṛiti, i. 179
Dhṛitimat, i. 394
dhruva, i. 239, 241
dhruvagṛiha (?), ii. 180
Dhûlika (?), i. 261
dhruvaketu (?), ii. 242
dhurâ (?), ii. 21
dhurâshâḍha, ii. 21
Dhutapâpâ, i. 259
dhyânagrahâdhyâya, i. 155
dîbâlî, ii. 182
dîkshita, i. 102
Dilîpa, ii. 174
dimasu, i. 359
Dipâpâ, i. 262
Dîptimat, i. 394
Dîrghagrîva, i. 302
Dîrghakeśa, i. 302
Dîrghamukha, i. 302
Dirvarî (Drâviḍî), i. 173
Dirvarîdeśa, i. 173
diś, i. 178, 179
Dîvakanbâr, i. 210
Divâkara, i. 158, 215, 217
Dîva-kûdha, i. 210
divasa, i. 359
Dîvârśa (!), i. 301
Divaspâti, i. 387
divya, i. 42, 374 ; ii. 235
divyâhorâtra, i. 329
Divyatattva, i. 157
divyavarsha, i. 359, 368 ; ii. 2
Diyâmau, i. 205
Dkîsh (?), ii. 140
domba, i. 101, 102

Dramiḍa, i. 302
draṅkshana, i. 161
Draviḍadeśa, i. 173
Draviṇa, ii. 101
drekkâṇa, ii. 229, 233
dṛigbala, ii. 225
Dribâla (?), i. 300
Dṛishadvatî, i. 259
dṛishṭibala, ii. 225
Droṇa, i. 133, 162, 163, 164, 254, 394, 398, 405, 406; ii. 101
Drûta, i. 259
Dûdahî, i. 202
Dûgum, i. 201
Dûgumpûr, i. 200
dundubhi, ii. 128
Dunpûr, i. 206, 211, 317
Durga, i. 300
Durgâ, i. 257
Durgavivṛitti, i. 135
Durlabha, ii. 9, 10, 54
durmati, ii. 128
durtama (?), i. 371
Durvâsas, i. 404
Duryodhana, i. 133
Dushyanta, ii. 174
duvâbî, ii. 197
duvê, ii. 174
Dvaipâyana, i. 398
dvâpara, i. 372, 397, 398
dvâpara-yuga, i. 126, 373; description, i. 380; ii. 5; its beginning, ii. 186
Dvâr, i. 207
dvijeśvara, i. 216
dvîpa, i. 168, 233, 234, 235, 236, 243, 251 *seq.*, 265, 295, 301, 388; ii. 144
dvisvabhâva, ii. 220
Dyuti, i. 394
Dyutimat, i. 394

EKACARAṆA, i. 303
ekam, i. 175
ekanakta, ii. 172
Ekapada, i. 301
Ekavilocana, i. 302
Elâpatra, ii. 120

GA, i. 140
gabhastala, i. 230
Gabhastimat, i. 230, 296
Gabhîra, i. 387
gadâ, i. 133
gagana, i. 178
gâihat (?), ii. 180
Gaisitu (?), i. 137
gaja, i. 178, 300
Gajakarṇa, i. 231
Gâlava, i. 394
gaṇa, i. 407
gana (?), ii. 181
Gaṇaka, ii. 238
Gaṇapati (?), ii. 121
Gaṇarâjya, i. 301
gaṇḍa, i. 203
Gaṇḍakî, i. 259
gaṇḍânta, ii. 208
gaudha, i. 42
Gandhamâdana, i. 248, 249
Gandhâra, i. 21, 259, 261, 300, 303
gandharva, i. 89, 91, 238, 247, 262, 303
gândharva, i. 296
Gandharvî, ii. 142
Gaṅgâ, i. 200 *seq.*, 203, 253, 254, 259, 261; ii. 144
Gaṅgâdvâra, i. 199
Gaṅgâsâgara, i. 261
Gangâsâyara, i. 201
Gangeya, i. 202
gara, ii. 197, 199
Garbha, i. 236
garbhâdhâna, ii. 156
Garga, i. 157, 342, 382, 390, 391; ii. 96, 110, 235
garuḍa, i. 114, 130 131, 193, 194, 231, 253, 344
Gauḍa, the anchorite, i. 132
Gauḍaka, i. 301
gaura, i. 161
Gaura (?), ii. 143
Gauragrîva, i. 300
Gaurî (Gauḍî), i. 173
Gaurî, i. 119; ii. 121, 179, 182, 183
Gaur-t-r (gaurî-tṛitîyâ), ii. 177, 179
Gautama, i. 131, 394, 398
gâyatrî, i. 147
ghana, i. 140, 144, 146
ghaṭî, i. 334 *seq.*, 337, 338, 349, 362, 366; ii. 48, 52, 56, 189, 190, 195, 200
ghaṭikâ, i. 279, 282, 286
Ghora, ii. 202
Ghorwand, i. 259
Ghosha, i. 300, 303
ghṛitamaṇḍa, i. 235
Ghûzak, i. 259
Giri, i. 302
Girnagara, i. 301
gîtâ, quoted, i. 29, 30, 40, 52–54, 70–72, 73–74, 75, 76, 78, 79, 80, 86, 90, 103–104, 122

Gnîdhra (!), i. 394
go, i. 178
Godâvar, i. 203
Godâvarî, i. 257
gokarṇa, i. 167
Gomatî, i. 259
gomeda, i. 235
gomedadvîpa, i. 235, 255
Gomukha, i. 231
Gonarda, i. 301
Govinda, i. 299, 403
graha, i. 140
grâha, i. 204
grîshma, i. 357
Guḍa, i. 300
gûḍhâmana (?), i. 158
gûhanîya, i. 344
gulma, i. 407
guṇakâra, ii. 30, 189, 190
gûnâlahîd (?), ii. 181
Gupta, ii. 5, 7, 49
Guptakâla, ii. 7, 9, 49
guru, i. 138, 140, 145, 146, 215, 342 ; ii. 121
Guruhâ, i. 302
guvâna-hâtrîj, ii. 182
Guzarât, i. 202
Gvalior, i. 202

HÂDÎ (?), i. 101, 102
Hâhu (!), i. 257
Haihaya, i. 302
Haṁsamârga, i. 262
Haṁsapura, i. 298
Hârahaura, i. 298
Haramakôṭ, i. 207
harbâli (?), ii. 180
Hari, i. 254, 342, 362, 398
Haribhaṭṭa (?), i. 141
Haripurusha, i. 252
Hârîta, i. 131
harivaṁśa-parvan, i. 138
Harivarshai, 249
Harsha, ii. 5, 7
Haryâtman, i., 398
hasta, i. 218 ; ii. 85, 121
hastin, i. 140, 141, 146
hattha, i. 166
hauhava (?), i. 408
Havishmat, i. 394
Havya, i. 394
Hayagrîva, i. 231
helî, i. 215
Hemagiri, i. 302
hemalamba, ii. 128
hemakûṭa, i. 247, 249
Hemakûṭya, i. 301
hemanta, i. 357
Hematâla, i. 302
hemna, i. 215
Himagiri, i. 249
himagu, i. 215
himamayûkha, i. 215
himaraśmi, i. 215
Himavân, i. 302
Himavant, i. 119, 246, 247, 248, 258, 261, 294, 295, 308 ; ii. 179
Hindhu, ii. 129
hindolî-caitra, ii. 178
Hiraṇmaya, i. 249
Hiraṇyakaśipu, i. 364
Hiraṇyâksha, i. 231 ; ii. 140
Hiraṇyaroman, i. 394
homa, i. 128 ; ii. 96, 133
horâ, i. 343 ; their names, 344
horâ-pañca-hotṛiya (?), i. 158
horâdipati, i. 343
Hrâdinî, i. 261, 262
Hṛishîkeśa, i. 403
Hudvuda (?), i. 300
Hûhaka (!), i. 300
Hûna, i. 300, 302
Hutâśa, ii. 127
hutâśana, i. 178

IDÂVATSARA, ii. 125
ikshu, i. 235
Ikshulâ, i. 257
ikshurasoda, i. 235
ikhûnu (?), i. 178
Ikshvâku, i. 387
ilâ (?), i. 230
Ilâvṛita, i. 248
Indra, i. 89, 92, 93, 113, 119, 159, 217, 231, 252, 271, 292, 342, 357 361, 386, 387, 393, 396, 398 ; ii. 101, 102, 115, 127, 128, 175, 246
Indradvîpa, i. 262
Indradyumna, i. 262
Indradyumnasaras, i. 262
Indrâgnî, i. 342, 358 ; ii. 121
Indramaru, i. 261
Indrâṇî, i. 120
Indravêdi (v. Antarvedi), i. 211
indriya, i. 178
indriyâṇi, i. 43
Indu, i. 153, 178, 215 ; ii. 121
Irâva, i. 206, 260
Irâvatî, i. 259
Iścânyas (!), i. 394
Ishîka, i. 300
ishṭin, i. 102

ishu, i. 178
Îśvara, i. 31, 179, 361, 362, 363; ii. 127

JADÛRA ( ), i. 202
Jâgara, i. 230, 300
Jahrâvar, i. 260, 300, 302
Jailam, i. 206, 207, 259, 317
Jaimini, i. 127, 132
Jâjâhotî, i. 202
Jajjamau, i. 200
Jajjanîr, i. 206
jalaketu, ii. 243
Jâlandhar, i. 205
jalapradânika, i. 138
jalâśaya, i. 178
jalatantu, i. 204
Jamadagni, i. 394
jambu, i. 235; ii. 129
jambudvîpa, i. 235, 243, 251, 258
janâ (?), i. 163
janaloka, i. 232
Janârdana, i. 254
Janarta (?), i. 231
Jandrâ, i. 202
Jaṅgala, i. 299
Jâṅgala, i. 300
Janpa, i. 200
Jânujaṅgha, i. 387
Jarmapattana (?), i. 301
Jaśu (?), i. 382, 397
jâtaka, i. 100, 157
jâtakarman, ii. 156
Jaṭâsura, i. 303
Jaṭâdhara, i. 301
Jaṭhara, i. 301
Jatt, i. 401
Jattaraur, i. 202
Jaun (Yamunâ), i. 199, 200 *seq.*, 206, 254, 259, 261
Jaur, Hindu king, i. 200, 209
jaya, ii. 127
Jayanta (?), i. 231
Jayantî, ii. 175
Jayapâla, i. 135; ii. 13
Jîmûr, i. 209
Jîmûta, ii. 101
Jina, i. 119, 243
jinaloka, i. 238
Jishṇu, i. 153
Jita, i. 394
jîtu, i. 220 (? cettham)
jituma, i. 220
jîva, i. 215, 358
jîvaharaṇî, i. 344
Jîvaśarman, i. 157, 164; ii. 181, 182
jña, i. 215
Jriṅga, i. 302
jûga, i. 220
Jûdarî, i. 211
Jvâla (?), ii. 202
jvalana, i. 140, 141, 143, 145, 146, 178
jyaishṭha, i. 217, 218, 340, 358, 403; ii. 173; festivals, ii. 179, 193
jyeshṭhâ, i. 218; ii. 85, 86, 122
Jyotis, i. 394
Jyotisha, i. 300
Jyotishmat, i. 394

KA, ii. 242
Kabandha (?), i. 231; ii. 238
Kâbul, i. 206, 259, 317; ii. 157
Kâca (?), i. 261
Kacch, i. 208, 260
Kacchâra, i. 303
Kacchîya, i. 300
kadamba, i. 272
Kadara, ii. 129
Kadrû, i. 252
Kaikaya, i. 302
Kailâsa, i. 248, 302; ii. 142, 143
Kailâvata, i. 302
Kaj, i. 260
Kajûrâha, i. 202
Kakutstha, ii. 176
kalâ, i. 160, 335, 337, 362
kâlabala, ii. 226
kâlabhâga (?), ii. 231
Kâlâjina, i. 301
Kâlaka, i. 302
kâlâṁśaka, ii. 90
Kâlanemi, i. 231
Kâlanjar, i. 202
Kalâpagrama, i. 262
kâlarâtri, i. 344; ii. 203
kalasî, i. 166
Kâlatoyaka, i. 300
Kâlavṛinta, ii. 129
Kâlayavana, ii. 5
kâlayukta, ii. 128
kali, i. 140, 382, 397; ii. 1, 198
Kalîdara, i. 262
Kâlika (?), i. 261
kalikâla, ii. 1, 5
Kaliṅga, i. 231, 298, 299, 301
Kâliya, i. 231
kaliyuga, i. 325, 373; description, i. 380, 397, 399; ii. 1, 4, 17, 18, 28, 59, 60; its beginning, ii. 186
Kâlkoṭi, i. 300

Kallar, ii. 13
Kalmâsha (?), ii. 121
kalpa, i. 54, 175, 279, 325, 332, 350, 352, 354, 360, 362, 368 *seq.*, 386; ii. 1, 15 *seq.*, 17, 18, 23, 28, 57 *seq.*, 118
kalpâhargaṇa, i. 368; ii. 116
kalpana, i. 368
Kalyâṇavarman, i. 158
Kamalû, ii. 13
kâma, i. 140, 141, 145, 146
kamaṇḍalu, i. 118
Kambala, i. 231, 247
Kâmboja, i. 302
Kâmrû, i. 201
Kaṁsa, i. 340, 401, 403; ii. 180
Kâmyakavana, ii. 3
Kanaka, i. 302; ii. 237
Kanashṭharâjya (!), i. 303
Kanbâyat, i. 208
Kâñcî, i. 301
Kand, i. 203
Kaṇḍakasthala, i. 301
Ḳandhâr (Gandhâra), i. 206
Kaṅdî, i. 317; ii. 182.
kâṇḍin, ii. 128
Kanik, ii. 11 *seq.*
Kanik-caitya, ii. 11
Kanîr, ii. 8
Kânjî, i. 200, 209
Kaṅka, ii. 101, 238
Kankaṭa, i. 301
Kaunakara, i. 202
Kaunara, i. 173
Kanoj, i. 21, 165, 173, 198, 199, 200 *seq.*, 261, 317; ii. 5, 8, 11, 129
Kaṇṭhadhâna, i. 302
kanyâ, i. 219, 220
kapâlaketu, ii. 241
Kapila, i. 72, 132, 255, 302, 321, 325, 397
Kapishṭhala, i. 300
karabha, i. 167
karâla, i. 344
Karamoda (?), i. 257
karaṇa, i. 155, 156, 157, 354; ii. 194 *seq.*, 197, 198, 200
karaṇacûḍâmaṇi, i. 157
karaṇakhaṇḍakhâdyaka, i. 156
karaṇaparatilaka, i. 157
karaṇapâta, i. 157
karaṇasâra, i. 156, 317, 392; ii. 7, 54, 60, 79, 80
karaṇatilaka, i. 156, 313, 343; ii. 7, 50, 60, 80, 205, 206
karâra (?), ii. 181
Karaskara, i. 300
Karatoyâ, i. 259
kark (=khaḍga), i. 204
karkâdi, i. 356
karkadannu (khaḍgadanta ?), i. 204
karkaṭa, i. 220
Karkoṭa, ii. 120
Karkoṭaka, i. 247; ii. 120
Karlî, town, i. 317
Karma, i. 262, v. *Kramu*
karman, i. 321
Kârmaṇeyaka, i. 301
Karmâra, i. 231
karmendriyâṇi, i. 44
Karṇa, i. 133
Karṇaprâvaraṇa, i. 262, 300, 302
Karnâṭa, i. 173, 301; ii. 135
Karnâṭadeśa, i. 173
karsha, i. 163
kârttika, i. 217, 218, 358, 403; ii. 98, 173, 177; festival, ii. 182, 186, 193
Kârttikeya, i. 54
Karûr, ii. 6
Karûsha, i. 300
Karvaṭa, i. 300
Kaśerumat, i. 296
Kashmîr, i. 21, 22, 108, 126, 135, 173, 174, 205, 206 *seq.*, 211, 258, 303, 317, 391, 393; ii. 8, 9, 104, 148, 178, 181
kâshṭhâ, i. 336 *seq.*, 362
Kâśi, i. 299, 300
Kaśyapa, i. 216, 242, 252, 291, 394; ii. 96, 100
Kâśyapapura, i. 298
Kâtantra, i. 135
Kâtyâyana, i. 131
katt, i. 206
kaulava, ii. 197, 199
Kaumârî, i. 120
Kauninda, i. 303
Kauṅkuma, ii. 238
Kaurava, i. 403
kaurba, i. 220
Kausalaka, i. 301
Kaushaka (?), i. 262
Kauśikî, i. 259
Kaustuba, i. 261
Kauverya, i. 301
Kâvanâ, i. 259
Kavara, i. 261
Kavâṭadhâna (!), i. 302
Kâverî, i. 257
Kavînî, i. 261

Kavîtal, i. 206
Kâvya, i. 394
Kâyabish, i. 259
Kerala, i. 299
Keralaka, i. 301
Keśadhara, i. 302
Kesari, i. 231
Keśava, i. 218, 361, 362, 403
Keśvara, i. 342 ; ii 121
ketu, ii. 234, 236
Ketumâla, i. 249
keturûpa, ii. 235
kha, i. 178, 333, 350
Khajara, i. 302
khadira, ii. 99
khaṇḍa, i. 156, 295; 302
khaṇḍakhâdyaka, i. 156, 312 ; ii. 7, 46, 49, 60, 79, 83, 86, 87, 90, 91, 116, 119, 184, 187
khaṇḍakhâdyakaṭippâ (?), i. 156
khara, ii. 127
Kharapatha, i. 262
khârî, i. 164
kharva, i. 175, 176, 177
Khasa (?), i. 262
Khasha, i. 301, 303
Khastha, i. 302
khendu, i. 179
Kumbhakarṇa, ii. 3
Khyâti, i. 387
Kilikind, i. 209
Kîkara, i. 262
kîlaka, ii. 128
Kiṁnara, i. 262
Kiṁpurusha, i. 249, 251, 262 ; ii. 142
kinnara, i. 91
kinstughna, ii. 197, 198
Kirâ, i. 259
Kîra, i. 303
Kiraṇa, ii. 237
Kirâta, i. 262, 300, 302, 303
Kîrî (*v.* Kandî), ii. 182
Kirpa (!), i. 257
Kirva (?), i. 257
Kisadya, i. 299
Kishkindha, i. 300, 301
kishku, i. 167
Kodara (?), i. 300
Kokala, i. 303
Kolavana, i. 300
Kollagiri, i. 301
Koṅkana, i. 301
koṇa, i. 215
Kopa, i. 300
Kosala, i. 299, 300, 301
koṭi, i. 92, 175, 176, 177, 236, 248, 284, 303, 304
koṭipadma, i. 176
Krâla (?), i. 300 ; ii. 202
Kramu, ii. 262 (v. notes)
Krathanaka, i. 231
Kratu, i. 390
krauñca, i. 235, 302
Kravya, i. 302
kṛicchra, ii. 172
kṛimîśa, i. 60
Kṛipa, i. 394
Krîra-samudra, i. 301
kṛishṇa, i. 61, 231, 255, 257, 398
kṛishṇabhûmi, i. 230
kṛishṇapaksha, i. 359
Krishṇavaiḍûrya, i. 301
kṛita, i. 178, 372
Kṛitamâlâ, i. 257
Kṛitaṁjaya, i. 398
Krauñcadvîpa, i. 235, 254, 301
kṛitayuga, i. 116, 373 ; description, i. 379 ; ii. 182 ; its beginning, i. 396, 397, 398 ; ii. 186
kṛiti, i. 179 ; ii. 129
kṛittikâ, i. 140–145, 218, 291, 344 ; ii. 84, 121
Kṛiśa (?), i. 383
kriya, i. 220
kroḍa, i. 344
krodha, ii. 128
krodhin, ii. 128
krośa, i. 166, 167, 275
Krûra (?), i. 261
krûrâkshi (?), i. 215
kshatriya, i. 101, 104, 125, 247, 388 ; ii. 95, 98, 136, 155, 157, 161, 162, 170, 191
kshaya, ii. 128
Kshemadhûrta (?), i. 303
Kshetrapâla, i. 120
kshîra, i. 235, 284
kshîrodaka, i. 235
Kshudramîna, i. 302
kshairîtâ (?), ii. 186
kshaṇa, i. 335, 337
kshâra, i. 235
Kubata, i. 261
Kubera, i. 119 ; ii. 115
Kucika, i. 303
Kûdaishahr (?), ii. 181
kuḍava, i. 162, 163, 164, 165
Kuhû, i. 259
kuja, i. 215
Kukura, i. 300
kûla, i. 356

Kulârjak, i. 207
Kulata, i. 261
Kulika, i. 344, 345
Kuliuda, i. 298, 300
kulîra, i. 220
Kulûta, i. 303
Kulûtalahaḍa, i. 302
Kulya, i. 299
Kumârî, i. 257
kumbha, i. 220
kumbhakarṇa, ii. 3
Kumbhaka, i. 321
Kumuda, i. 255; ii. 243
Kumudvatî, i. 257
Kunaṭha, i. 303
Kuñjaradarî, i. 301
Kûnk, i. 200
Kunkan (Konkan), i. 203
Kuntala, i. 299, 300
Kupatha (?), i. 262
kûra-babayâ (?), i. 156
Kuraha, i. 200
Kurava, i. 302
kûrma, i. 131
kûrmacakra, i. 297
kûrma-purâṇa, i. 130
kuroh, ii. 66
Kuru, i. 132, 249, 262, 292, 299, 380
Kurukshetra, i. 308, 316; ii. 147
Kurura, i. 254
kuśa, i. 235, 397
kuśadvîpa, i. 235, 254, 325
Kushikâna, i. 262
Kuśaprâvarana, i. 262
Kusnârî, i. 206
kusuma, i. 140, 146
kusumakâra, i. 357
Kusumanaga, i. 301
Kusumapura, i. 316, 380, 335, 370
kuṭâra; i. 120
kuṭhâra, i. 181
Kutî, i. 205
kuṭṭaka, i. 155

LA, i. 140
Ladda (?), i. 205
laghu, i. 138
Lagatûrmân, ii. 13
laghu, i. 145, 146
Lahore, i. 259
Lahûr, i. 208
laksha, i. 175, 236, 284
Lakshmî, i. 54; ii. 182
lâlâbhaksha, i. 61
Lamghân, i. 259, 317; ii. 8
Lampâka, i. 300

Lanbagâ, i. 259; ii. 8
Lâṅgûlinî, i. 257, 2
Laṅkâ, i. 209, 267, 268, 301, 303, 306 *seq.*, 316, 370
Lârân, i. 209
Lârdesb, i. 205
Lârî, i. 173
Lâṭa, i. 153, 268, 269, 280
Lâṭadeśa, i. 173
Lauhâvur (Lahore), i. 206, 208
Lauhûr, castle, i. 317
Laukâyata, i. 132
laukikakâla, ii. 9, 54
lava, i. 336, 337, 362
lavaṇa, i. 235
lavaṇamushti, i. 156
lavaṇasamudra, i. 235
Likhita, i. 131
likhyâ, i. 162
liṅga, i. 117, 131, 181; ii. 102, 103
Litta (!), i. 300
liyaya, i. 220
locana, i. 178
Lohâvar, ii. 8
lokakâla, ii. 8
lokânanda, i. 157
Lônî, ii. 6
Loharânî, i. 205, 208, 260, 316
Lohitâ, i. 259
Lohita, i. 231; ii. 143
Lohitanadî, ii. 143
Lohitya, i. 301
loka, i. 59, 232, 238
lokâloka, i. 236, 237, 249, 284, 286
lokapâla, i. 247
Lûpa (?), i. 257

MADDHYANDÂ (?), ii. 142
Mâdhava, i. 403
Madhra (?), i. 300
Madhu, i. 394
Madhusûdana, i. 403
madhya (?), i. 140, 141, 143, 144, 145, 146, 175
madhyadeśa, i. 173, 198, 251, 290
madhyaloka, i. 59
madhyama, ii. 195
madhyamâya, ii. 228
Madra, i. 302
Madraka, i. 303
madrî (?), i. 161
Madura, i. 298
madya (?), i. 252
Maga, i. 21, 121
Magadha, i. 299
Magadha, i. 262, 298, 301

Mâgadha, i. 255, 394
mâgha, i. 211, 217, 218, 403 ; ii. 177 ; festivals, 183, 186
maghâ, i. 218, 390, 391 ; ii. 84, 121, 124, 180
mahâbhûta, i. 41, 42, 321, 382
Mahâcîn, i. 207
Mahâdeva, i. 54, 92, 93, 94, 117, 118, 119, 120, 121, 130, 131, 136, 158, 176, 179 181, 292, 342, 361, 362 ; ii. 6, 102, 103, 120, 125, 140, 143, 144, 147, 179, 180, 181, 182, 184, 192, 239
Mahâgaurî, i. 257
Mahâgrîva, i. 301
Mahâjambha, i. 231
mahâjvâla, i. 60
Mahâkâla, i. 202
mahâkalpa, i. 332
mahâkhya (?), i. 230
Mahâmegha, i. 231
Mahânada, i. 257
Mahanâra, i. 259
mahânavamî, ii. 179
mahâpadma, i. 175, 176, 247; ii. 120
Mahârâshṭra, i. 299
maharloka, i. 232, 238, 325
Mahârṇava, i. 302
Mahâśaila, ii. 101
mahâśaṅku, i. 176
mahâtala, i. 230
mâhâtan, ii. 183
Mahâṭavi, i. 301
mahâtrîj, ii. 183
Mahâvikâ (?), i. 257
Mahâvîrya, i. 386
Mahendra, i. 242, 247, 257, 301
mâheya, i. 215, 300
mahîdhara, i. 178
Mahisha, i. 254, 299, 325
Mahoshṇîsha, i. 231
Mahrattadeshu, i. 203
Mâhûra, i. 199, 202 ; ii. 147, 175
Mahvî, i. 206
Mainâka, ii. 101
maitra, i. 358
Maitreya, i. 63, 388, 397
Maitreyî, ii. 174
Maivâr, i. 202
makara, i. 204, 219, 220; ii. 93
makarâdi, i. 356
mala, ii. 20
Mâla, i. 299
Malada (?), i. 300
malamâsa, ii. 20
Mâlava, i. 173, 191, 202, 249, 299 300, 303, 308
Mâlavartika, i. 299
Malaya, i. 200, 247, 257, 301
Malayaparvata, i. 248
Mâlindya, i. 301
Malla, i. 300
Malvârî, i. 173
Malvashau, i. 173
Mâlyavant, i. 248
mâna, i. 166, 353, 355
Mânahala, i. 303
manas, i. 44
mânasa, i. 157, 247, 255, 256, 366 ; ii. 143, 245
Mânasottama, i. 256
manda, i. 215 ; ii. 142
Mandaga, i. 255
Mandagir, i. 203
Mandahûkûr, i. 206
Mandâkinî, i. 257 ; ii. 142
Mandakkakor, i. 317
Mandavâhinî, i. 257
Mâṇḍavya, i. 157, 300, 302, 303
Mandeha, i. 254
maṅgala, i. 178, 215, 261
maṅgalabâra, i. 213
manguniha (?), ii. 245
maṇiketu, ii. 243
Maṇimân, i. 302
Maṇittha, i. 157
maṅmatha, ii. 127
Manojava, i. 387
mânsartagu, ii. 183
Manu, i. 131, 132, 157, 179, 241, 386 ; his children, 387, 393 ; ii. 110, 111, 118, 127, 162
manushyâhorâtra, i. 328
manushyaloka, i. 59
manvantara, i. 179, 241, 291, 359, 361, 367, 369, 372 *seq.*, 386 *seq.*; their names, 387, 393, 398 ; ii. 1, 2, 17, 118, 119
Mara, i. 261
Mâraka, i. 302
mârgaṇa, i. 178
mârgaśîrsha, i. 217, 218, 358, 402, 403 ; ii. 10, 174 ; festivals, 182, 193
marîci, i. 163, 242, 390
Mârîkala, i. 302
Mârîgala, ii. 8
Mârkaṇḍeya, i. 54, 131, 241, 321, 340, 360, 372, 386 ; ii. 2, 3, 64, 66
mârkaṇḍeya-purâṇa, i. 130
Maru, i. 261, 300

Marucîpaṭṭana, i. 301
Marukucca, i. 302
Marut, ii. 199
mâsa, i. 179, 359
mâsârdham, i. 178
mâsha, i. 160, 161, 162, 163, 164; ii. 206
Mashaka (!), i. 299
mâsopavâsa, ii. 173
Maṭhara, i. 302
Mathurâ, i. 300, 308, 401, 403; ii. 5
mâtrâ, i. 139, 140
matsya, i. 131, 300
Mâtsya, i. 262
matsya-purâṇa, i. 130, 168, 235, 236, 247, 248, 251, 252, 254, 255, 258, 261, 271, 284, 285, 286, 325; ii. 62, 65, 101, 102. 142, 245
Mau, i. 157
mausala, i. 133
mâyâ, i. 344
Meda, i. 300
Medhâdhṛiti, i. 394
Megha, i. 231
Meghavân, i. 302
Mekala, i. 300, 301
Meru, i. 243 *seq.*, 257. 265, 271, 274, 302, 303, 308, 316; according to the Buddhists 326, 327, 329; ii. 82, 96, 129, 142
mesha, i. 220
meshâdi, i. 357
Mihrân, i. 260
mîmâṁsâ, i. 132
mîna, i. 220
Mithilâ, i. 301
mithuna, i. 219, 220
Mîrat (Meerut), i. 205
Mitra, i. 217, 242, 342; ii. 122, 199
Mitrâkhya, ii. 115
mleccha, i. 19, 302; ii. 137
modaka, i. 136
moksha, i. 70, 80; ii. 133
mokshadharma, i. 133
mora, i. 166
Mrâvarta, i. 249
Mṛiga, i. 255
mṛigalâñchana, i. 137; ii. 102
mṛigaśiras, ii. 86
mṛigaśîrsha, i. 218, 342; ii. 84, 121
mṛigavyâdha, ii. 91
mṛitasaṁjîvan, i. 254
mṛittâla, i. 230
mṛityasâra, i. 344
Mṛityu, i. 398
Mrûna, i. 261
Mucukunda, i. 231
Mudrakaraka (?), i. 299
Muhrân (Sindh), i. 204
muhûrta, i. 239, 287, 337, 338 *seq.*, 341; their names, 342, 366; ii. 118, 119, 243, 244
Mukta, i. 301
mûla, i. 218, 298; ii. 85, 122, 179
Mûlasthâna, i. 298
mûlatrikoṇa, ii. 225
Mûlika (!), i. 300
Mûltân (mûlastâna), i. 21, 116, 153, 205, 211, 240, 260, 300, 302, 308, 317; ii. 6, 8, 9, 54, 145, 148, 184
Mundla (!), i. 299
Mungîrî, i. 200
Munha, i. 208
muni, i. 93, 178, 238
Muñja, i. 231
Muru, i. 387
Mûshika, i. 299
Muttai, ii. 178

NABASA (?), i. 387
Nâbhâga, i. 394
nâḍî, i. 335
naga, i. 178
nâga, i. 91, 178, 247, 267, 344; ii. 120, 197, 198
Nâgadvîpa, i. 296
nâgaloka, i. 59
nâgara, i. 173
Nâgarapura, i. 156
Nagarasaṁvṛitta, i. 257, 296
Nâgârjuna, i. 189
Nagarkoṭ, i. 260; ii. 11
Nagha, i. 394
nagna, i. 121
Nagnaparṇa, i. 301
Nahusha, i. 93
Naipâl, i. 201
nairṛita, i. 290, 297, 301
nairṛiti, ii. 203
naisargika, ii. 215, 227
naisargikabala, ii. 227
Naitika (?), i. 300
nakha, i. 179
nakshatra, ii. 64
nakshatramâna, i. 353, 354
nakshatranâtha, i. 216
Nakula, i. 403
Nalaka, i. 300
nâlî, ii. 135
Nâlikera, i. 301
Nalinî, i. 261, 262
nalva, i. 166

nâmakarman, ii. 156
Namâvur, i. 203
Namiyya, i. 203
Namuci, i. 231
nanda, i. 178, 231, 401; ii. 120
nandagola, i. 401 ; ii. 148
Nandanâ, i. 257
nandana, ii. 127
Nandanavana, i. 244 ; ii. 96
nanda-purâṇa, i. 130
Nandavishṭha, i. 303
Nandikeśvara, i. 93
Nandna, i. 317
Nara, i. 387
Nârada, i. 116, 131, 237, 357 ; ii. 96, 101, 236
Naraka, i. 236
naraloka, i. 59
Narasiṁha, i. 365, 366
narasiṁha-purâṇa, i. 130
Nârâyaṇa, i. 94, 106, 118, 129, 132, 176, 193, 202, 216, 241, 242, 342, 363, 395 *seq.*, 398, 403 ; ii. 127, 145, 167
Nârîmukha, i. 302
Narmadâ, i. 257, 259
Nâsikya, i. 300, 301
nâtha, ii. 103
Naumand (?), ii. 129
navakaṇḍa, i. 297
navakhaṇḍaprathama, i. 294, 296
navan, i. 178
navin, ii. 197
netra, i. 178
nidâgha, i. 357
niḥśvâsa, i. 339
nikharva, i. 175, 176
Nîla, i. 231, 247, 249 ; ii. 142
Nîlamukha, i. 262
nimesha, i. 335 *seq.*, 337, 362
Nîrahara, ii. 8
niraksha, i. 267
Nirâmaya, i. 387
Nirbindhyâ, i. 257
Niṛishabha (!), i. 394
Nirmogha, i. 387
Nirmoha, i. 394
nirṛiti, i. 358 ; ii. 122
Nirutsuka, i. 394
Niśâkara, i. 342
Niścara, i. 394
Niścirâ, i. 259
niśeśa, i. 216
Nishaha (?), i. 262
Nishadha, i. 247, 248, 249, 257, 301 ; ii. 142
nishkubâda (?), i. 231
Nishprakampa, i. 394
Niśvara, i. 394
nitala, i. 230
nîvra, i. 140
niyutam, i. 176, 177
nṛipa, i. 179
Nṛisiṁhavana, i. 302
Nûr, i. 259
nyagrodha, i. 256
nyarbuda, i. 175, 176
nyâyabhâshâ, i. 132

OM, i. 173
odâd (?), ii. 183
Oḍra, i. 301

PADA, ii. 23
pâda, i. 143, 144, 145, 147, 148, 150, 160
padamâsa, ii. 23
Padha, i. 300
padma, i. 114, 131, 175, 176 ; ii. 120
padmaketu, ii. 244
Padmanâbhi, i. 403
Padma-Tulya (?), i. 300
Padnâr, i. 209
Pahlava, i. 300
Paila, i. 127
paitâmaha, i. 153
Pâjaya (?), i. 257
paksha, i. 140, 143, 145, 146, 178, 359 ; ii. 118
pala, i. 162, 163, 164, 165
palâśa, ii. 131
Palâśinî, i. 257
Palhava, i. 261
pâli, i. 161
Palola, i. 303
Pañcahasta, i. 387
pancâhî, ii. 197
Pâñcâla, i. 133, 262, 298, 299
pañca mâtaras, i. 42
Pañcanada, i. 260, 302
pañca-siddhântikâ, i. 153 ; ii. 7, 51 190
Pañcaśikha, i. 325
pañcatantra, i. 159
Panchîr, i. 108, 259
pancî, ii. 197
Pâṇḍava, i. 178
Pâṇḍava-kâla, ii. 1, 5
Pâṇḍu, i. 107, 132, 133, 199, 300, 380, 403
Pâṇḍya, i. 299
Pâṇini, i. 135

Pânipat, i. 205
pânîya, i. 235
Panjayâvar (?), i. 209
pantî, i. 166
pâpagraha, i. 216
Parâ, i. 257, 259
parâka, ii. 173
paramapada, ii. 2
parapadma, i. 176
parârdha, i. 174, 175, 333
parârdhakalpa, i. 333
Parâśara, i. 44, 63, 107, 131, 157, 369, 388, 394, 397; ii. 96, 208, 235
Pâraśava, i. 302
Paraśurâma, i. 380
paraśvadha, ii. 203
Pâraṭa, i. 302
parâvasu, ii. 128
Pareśvara, i. 158
paridhâvin, ii. 128
Parîksha, i. 77, 113
parivatsara, ii. 125
Pâriyâtra, i. 247, 257, 259, 300
Parjanya, i. 217, 394
Parnâśâ, i. 257, 259
pârthiva, i. 42; ii. 127
pârtîna, i. 220
parvan, i. 132; ii. 115 *seq.*, 119, 191
Parvân, i. 259
parvata, i. 140, 141, 143, 145, 146, 178; ii. 101, 199
Parvatamaru, i. 262
parvatî (?), ii. 181
paścima, i. 290
pâshâṇabhûmi, i. 230
Paśupâla, i. 303
pâta, ii. 207
pâtâla, i. 59, 230, 397; ii. 140
Pâṭaliputra, i. 200
pâtañjala, i. 8
Patañjali, i. 27, 55-56, 68-70, 76, 80, 81, 82, 87, 93, 132, 189, 232, 234, 235, 236, 238, 248
Patheśvara, i. 299
patti, i. 407
pattṛin, i. 178
Paulisa, i. 153, 266
Pauṇḍra, i. 301
Paurava, i. 303
pausha, i. 217, 218, 358, 403; ii. 174, 177; festivals, 183, 193
pâvaka, i. 178
pavana, i. 178
Pâvanî, i. 261, 262
pavitra, ii. 130
Payoshṇî, i. 257
Phalgulu, i. 302
phâlguna, i. 217, 218, 358, 403; ii. 174; festivals, 183, 193
Phaṇikâra, i. 301
Pheṇagiri, i. 302
pîlumant (?), ii. 129
piṇḍa, ii. 104
Piṇḍâraka, ii. 120
Piṅgala, i. 137; ii. 128
Piṅgalaka, i. 303
Pinjaur, i. 205
Pipyala, i. 257
Pîruvâna (?), i. 158
Piśâbika (?), i. 257
piśâca, i. 89, 90, 92, 247; ii. 236
Pîta, i. 255
pîtabhûmi, i. 230
pitâmaha, i. 178, 361
pitanda (?), ii. 142
pitaras, i. 89, 98, 232, 248, 330, 357; ii. 121, 128, 133
pitṛi, i. 342
pitṛiloka, i. 233, 236, 238; ii. 233
pitṛînâmahorâtra, i. 328
pitṛipaksha, ii. 180
pitrya, i. 358
Pîvara, i. 394
plaksha, i. 235
plava, ii. 128
plavaṅga, ii. 128
Pojjihana (!), i. 300
prabhava, ii. 127
Pradyumna, i. 118, 158, 398
Prâgjyotisha, i. 299, 301
prahara, i. 337
Prahlâda, i. 365
prajâpati, i. 89, 92, 94, 159, 291, 357 398; ii. 102, 121, 125, 127, 238
prakṛiti, i. 41
pramâṇa, i. 353
pramâdin, ii. 128
pramâthin, ii. 127
pramoda, ii. 127
Pramukha (?), i. 387
prâṇa, i. 277, 334 *seq.*, 337, 339, 361, 394
Praśastâdri, i. 302
praśna-gûḍhâmana (?), i. 155
prastha, i. 162, 163, 164, 165
prasthâna, i. 133
prathama, i. 295
Prathanga (?), i. 299
Pratimaujas, i. 394
Prâtragira (?), i. 299
Prayâga, i. 200; ii. 170 241

prâyaścitta, i. 355
prayuta, i. 175, 176, 177
preta, i. 90
Prishaka, i. 262
pṛitanâ, i. 407
pṛithivî, i. 238
Pṛithu, i. 292, 394
Prithûdakasvâmin, i. 158
Pṛithusvâmin, i. 316
Priyavrata, i. 241, 387
Proshṭhapada, ii. 127
puhâi (?), ii. 180
pûhaval (?), ii. 183
Puhlinga (!), i. 299
Pulaha, i. 390
Pulastya, i. 390
Pulindra, i. 300
Pulisa, i. 153, 154, 168, 169, 224, 266, 275, 276, 278, 312, 313, 316, 335, 339, 370, 374, 375, 376, 377; ii. 4, 18, 19, 24, 31, 41, 42, 58, 67, 69, 70, 72, 74, 91, 187, 190, 192, 208
Pulisa-siddhânta, i. 153, 177, 275, 333; ii. 31
Pûkala, i. 302
Pûkara, ii. 147
Puleya, i. 300
Pulinda, i. 262
punarvasu, i. 218; ii. 66, 84, 121, 176, 180
Puñcala (?), i. 157, 366, 367
Puñjâdri, i. 303
puṇyakâla, ii. 187, 191, 192
purâṇas, i. 92; ii. 136
purâṇa, i. 130, 233, 238, 264, 273, 283; ii. 110, 113
Purandara, i. 387, 397
pûrârtaku, ii. 183
Purika, i. 301
Pûrṇa, i. 262
pûrṇimâ, i. 348; ii. 185, 197
purohita, ii. 132
Purshâvar (Peshavar), i. 206, 259, 317
Purshûr (Peshavar ?), i. 338
Puru, i. 387
purusha, i. 31, 40, 321
purusha, i. 324, 332, 333, 350, 351, 360, 386; ii. 118
Purushâda, i. 300
purushâhorâtra, i. 332
Purushaparvata, i. 248
Purushâvar (v. Purshâvar), ii. 11
pûrva, i. 290
pûrvabhâdrapadâ, i. 218, 240; ii. 85, 122
Pûrvadeśa, i. 173
pûrvaphalgunî, i. 218, 291; ii. 85, 121, 128
pûrvâshaḍhâ, i. 218, 291; ii. 85, 122.
pûshan, i. 217, 342, 358; ii. 122
pushaṇḍila (?), i. 181
Pushkala, i. 254
Pushkalâvatî, i. 302
pushkara, i. 235, 254, 261; ii. 120
pushkaradvîpa, i. 235, 255, 256, 284, 286
Pushpajâti, i. 257
pushya, i. 218, 291; ii. 66, 84, 121
pûthî, i. 171
pûyattanu (?) ii. 184

Rada (?), i. 231
Rahab, i. 261
râhu, i. 293; ii. 234
râhucakra, i. 292
râhunrâkaraṇa (?), i. 157
râî, ii. 11
raibhya (?), i. 387
raivata, i. 387
Raivataka, i. 302
raja, i. 162
râjadharma, i. 133
Râjagirî, i. 205, 208
Râjanya, i. 302
râjarshi, i. 93
rajas, i. 40, 399
Râjaurî, i. 202
Râjâvarî, i. 208
râkshasa, i. 89, 90, 91, 92, 231, 247, 248, 262, ; ii. 3, 128
rakta, i. 215
raktabhûmi, i. 230
raktâksha (?), ii. 128
raktâmala, i. 190
Râma, i. 117, 121, 166, 209, 258, 306, 307, 310, 372, 380, 397; ii. 3, 137
Râmadî (?), i. 257
Râmâyaṇa, i. 307, 310; ii. 3
Rameshar (?), i. 209
Râmsher (?), i. 209
Ramyaka, i. 249
randhra, i. 178
Raṅka, i. 182
rasa, i, 42, 178, 188
rasâtala, i. 230
rasâyana, i. 80, 188, 191, 198
rasâyana-tantra, i. 156
Râshṭra, i. 301, 303
raśmi, i. 178

raśmiketu (?), ii. 242
ratha, i. 407, 408
râtrî, i. 359
raucya, i. 387
raudra, i. 344, 358 ; ii. 128, 241
raurava, i. 60
Râvaṇa, i. 306, 307, 380 ; ii. 3
Râvaṇaśiras, i. 179
ravi, i. 215, 216, 217, 342
ravicandra, i. 178
Rebha (?), i. 387
reṇu, i. 162
Revanta, i. 119
revatî, i. 218, 291, 342, 369 ; ii. 66, 85, 86, 122, 177, 180
ṛic, i. 128
Ṛigveda, i. 127, 128
Rihanjûr, i. 205
Ṛiksha, i. 257
Ṙiṇajyeshṭha (?), i. 398
Ṛishabha, i. 301 ; ii. 101
ṛishi, i. 98, 106, 130, 237, 239, 241, 404 ; ii. 96, 103
Ṛishîka, i. 257
Ṛishika, i. 301
Ṛishyamûka, i. 301
Ṛishyaśriṅga, i. 394
Ṛitadhâman, i. 387
ṛitu (?), i. 178, 357, 359 ; ii. 118
Ṛitukûlyâ, i. 257
rodha, i. 60
rodhakṛit, ii. 128
rodhinî, i. 218
rohiṇî, i 218 344, 401 ; ii. 66, 84, 96, 97, 99, 100, 102, 121, 175, 176, 177
Rohîtaka, i. 308, 316
Romaka, i. 267, 303
Romaka-siddhânta, i. 153
rudhira, i. 61
rudhirândha, i. 61
Rudra, i. 94, 179, 342, 362, 363 ; ii. 120, 121, 140
rudraputra, i. 387.
rukmâksha (?), ii. 129
Rûm, i. 268, 272
Rumaṇa (?), i. 299
Rûmîmaṇḍala, i. 262
rûpa, i. 42, 140, 178
rûpa-pañca (?), ii. 179
Rûpaka, i. 300
Rûrasa (?), i. 261
Rûrdhwabâhu (!), i. 394
ruvu, i. 161, 162

SABÂTÎ (?), i. 261
śabda, i. 42
sabhâ-parvan, i. 133
Sadâśiva, i. 361, 362, 363
Saddânâ (?), i. 257
sâdhâraṇa, ii. 128
sâgara, i. 178
Sagara, i. 20 ; ii. 143, 176, 169
sâgârtam, ii. 183
sahadeva, i. 403
Sahanyâ, i. 202
sahasram, i. 175, 177
sahasrâṁśu, i. 179
Sahâwî (?), ii. 190
Sahishṇu, i. 394
Sahya, i. 247, 257
śailasutâpati, ii. 125
Śailodâ, ii. 143
saindhava, i. 173, 261
Saintra, i. 153
Sairîkîrṇa (?), i. 301
Sairindha, i. 303
Śaka, i. 300, 302 ; ii. 5, 6, 8
śâka, i. 235
śâkadvîpa, i. 235, 252, 253
śakakâla, i. 366, 390, 391, 392 ; ii. 6, 7, 9, 28, 123, 129, 188, 190
śâkaṭa, i. 135
śâkaṭâyana, i. 135
śakra, i. 358 ; ii. 122
Śakrânala, ii. 128
śakti, i. 118, 119, 363
śakuni, ii. 197, 198, 200
śakvara, i. 241
śalâka, i. 239
Salila, i. 261
Sâlkot, i. 317
śâlmali, i. 235
śâlmalidvîpa, i. 235, 254
Sâlva, i. 299
Ṣâlvanî (!), i. 300
Śalya, i. 133
sama, i. 371
Samalvâhana, i. 136
sâman, i. 129
Sâmanta, ii. 13
Samaṭata, i. 301
sâmaveda, i. 127, 129, 396
Samaya (?), i. 336, 337 ; ii. 188
Sâmba, i. 118
sâmba-purâṇa, i. 130
Sâmbhapura, i. 298
Sâmbhapuruyâtrâ, ii. 184
saṁdhi, i. 128, 364, 366, 369, 372 ; ii. 2, 17, 110, 133, 225, 226, 244
saṁdhi-astamana, i. 364
saṁdhi udaya, i. 364
saṁdhyâṁśa, i. 372, 373

saṁhitâ, i. 157, 167, 298, 299, 320, 389, 391 ; ii. 66, 86, 88, 92, 107, 110, 111, 115, 123, 126, 145, 192, 235
śamî, ii. 141
Śaṁkara, ii. 147
Saṁkarshaṇa, i. 398
Sâṁkhya, i. 8 ; quoted, i. 30, 48, 62, 64, 75, 81, 83, 89, 92, 132
saṁkrânti, i. 344 ; ii. 188, 189, 190, 199
samuâra (?), i. 295
samudra, i. 175, 178
Samûhuka, i. 262
Saṁvarta, i. 131 ; ii. 244
saṁvartaka, ii. 101
Saṁvatsara, i. 242 ; ii. 8, 9, 123, 125, 129
Saṁyamaṇîpura, i. 271
śanaiścara, i. 215
śanaiścarabâra, i. 213
Sanaka, i. 325
Sananda, i. 325
Sanandanâtha, i. 325
sandaṁśaka, i. 61
Sandân, i. 209
Sâṇḍî (?), ii. 142
Saṅgahila (śṛinkhala ?), i. 158
Saṅgavanta (?), i. 261
saṅgha, i. 40
Śankara, i. 94
śaṅkha, i. 114, 131, 301, 338 ; ii. 120
Śaṅkhâksha, i. 231
śaṅku, i. 166, 175, 176
Śaṅkukarṇa, i. 231
Śaṅkupatha, i. 262
śânta (?), ii. 188
Śântahaya, i. 387
Śântanu, i. 107
śânti, i. 133, 387
Śântika, i. 302
śânta, i. 358
saptan, i. 178
saptarshayas, i. 389
śara, i. 178
sâra, i. 113
śarabha, i. 203
Śarad, i. 357 ; ii. 98
śârada, i. 117. 303
Śaradhâna, i. 302
śarâśîtimukha, ii. 190
Sârasvata, i. 158, 300, 398
Sarasvatî, ii. 99, 142
sârâvalî, i. 158
Śarayu, i. 259 ; ii. 143
Sarayuśatî (?), ii. 143
śarkara, i. 230
sarpa, ii. 129
sârpa, i. 358
Sarpâs, ii. 121
sarpis, i. 235
Sarsutî, i. 257, 261, 405 ; ii. 105, 142
Sarva, i. 259, 261
sarvadhârin, ii. 127
sarvajit, ii. 127
śarvarî (?), ii. 128
Sarvatraga, i. 387
Śaryâti, i. 387
śaśalakshaṇa, ii. 102
Śaśideva, i. 135
śaśidevavṛitti, i. 135
śaśin, i. 178; ii. 115
śastra, ii. 241
sat, ii. 197
śatabhishaj, i. 218 ; ii. 85, 122
śatadyumna, i. 387
Śâtaka, i. 303
Śatakratu, i. 396
śatam, i. 175
Śatânîka, i. 77
Śatarudra, i. 259
Śataśîrsha, i. 231
Śatâtapa, i. 131
Śâtavâhana, i. 136
satîn, ii. 197
sattra, i. 344
satva, i. 40
Satya, i. 157, 394, 399
Satyaka, i. 385
satyaloka, i. 232, 233, 238
Saulika, i. 301
Saumya, i. 89, 215, 296, 344, 358 ; ii. 128
Śaunaka, i. 77, 113, 126, 380 ; ii. 145
sauptika, i. 133
saura, i. 215
saurâhargaṇa, ii. 27
sauramâna, i. 353, 354
Sauvîra, i. 298, 300, 302
Sâva, i. 259
śavala, i. 60
Savana, i. 394
sâvana, i. 328 ; ii. 21
sâvanâhargaṇa, ii. 27
sâvanamâna, i. 353
Savañjulâ, i. 257
Śavara (?), i. 300, 301
sâvarṇi, i. 387
savitâ, ii. 121
savitṛi, i. 216, 217, 398 ; ii. 121

sâyaka, i. 178
Ścorvaî (!), i. 394
senâmukha, i. 407
Śesha, i. 231
Śeshâkhya, i. 237
Setubandha, i. 209, 307
Setûka, i. 299
shaḍâya, ii. 215, 227
Shakruṇâ (?), i. 257
Shamîlân, i. 206
Sharvâr, i. 200
Sharvat, i. 259
shashṭyabda, ii. 5, 6, 123, 124, 129
shaṭ, i. 178 ; ii. 177
Shataldar (Satlej), i. 259, 260
shatpañcâśikâ, i. 158
Shattumâna (?), i. 300
shidda (?), ii. 39
Shilahat, i. 201
Shirshâraha, i. 205
Shmâhina (?), i. 259
sibî (?), i. 165
Śibika, i. 301
Śibirâ, i. 301
siddha, i. 93, 192, 238, 247
siddhamâtṛikâ, i. 173
siddhânta, i. 153, 155 ; of Pulisa, 224, 266, 339, 374 ; ii. 18
Siddhapura, i: 267, 268, 303, 304
siddhârtha, ii. 128
Śikhi, i. 262, 387
śilâtala, i. 230
sîmaṁtonnayanam, ii. 156
siṁha, i. 220
Siṁhala, i. 301
Siṁhaladvîpa, i. 233
Siṁhika (?), ii. 111
Sindh, i. 173, 198, 206, 259, 261, 270, 298, 300, 302, 310, 387 ; ii. 6, 8, 15, 48, 104, 120, 132
Sindhusâgara, i. 260
Singaldîb, i. 209
Śini, i. 257
Śiprâ, i. 259
Sirvâ (?), i. 257
śishya, i. 127
śishyahitâvṛitti, i. 135
śiśira, i. 357
Śiśumâra, i. 231, 241, 242
śiśupâla, i. 165, 340, 341
sita, i. 215 ; ii. 239
Sîta, i. 249
Sîtâ, i. 261
śîtâ, i. 178
śîtadîdhiti, i. 215
śîtakâla, i. 357
śîtâṁśu, i. 178, 215, 216
śîtamayûkhamâlin, ii. 125
śîtaraśmi, i. 215
Śiva, i. 131, 342, 362, 363 ; ii. 128
Śivapaura, i. 261
śivarâtri, ii. 184
Skanda, i. 118, 131 ; ii. 140
skanda-purâṇa, i. 130
skandha, a metre, i. 144
strî, i. 133
śloka, i. 127, 132, 137, 147
Śmaśrudhara, i. 301
smṛiti, i. 131, 352, 372, 373, 374, 386 ; ii. 110, 111
Sneha, i. 254
śokakṛit, ii. 128
soma, i. 215, 216, 252, 253, 342 ; ii. 103, 128
somabâra, i. 213
Somadatta, i. 239
somagraha, i. 216
Somamantra, ii. 97
Somanâtha, i. 117, 161, 165, 189, 205, 208, 261, 357, 405 ; ii. 9, 103, 104, 105, 176
soma-purâṇa, i. 130
Somaśushma, i. 398
Śona, i. 257
śoshiṇî, i. 344
sparśa, i. 42
sphuṭa, ii. 195
sphuṭâya, ii. 228
śravaṇa, i. 218 ; ii. 85, 99, 122
śrâvaṇa, i. 211, 217, 218, 358, 403 ; ii. 98, 173, 176 ; festivals, 179, 193
Śrî, i. 118, 119 ; ii. 6, 199
Śrîdhara, i. 403
Śrî Harsha, ii. 5
śrîmukha, ii. 127
Śriṅgâdri, i. 249
Śṛiṅgavant, i. 248
Śrîpâla, i. 164, 240
Śrîparvata, i. 248
Śrîsheṇa, i. 153, 266, 376 ; ii. 111
Śroṇî, i. 257
srûdhava (?), i. 158, 334, 336, 344, 361 ; ii. 6, 120, 192, 201–203
stâmasa (?), i. 387
Stambha, i. 394
sthânabala, ii. 225
Strîrâjya, i. 302
Subâhu, i. 394
Sûbâra, i. 209
śubha, i. 344
śubhakṛit, ii. 128

subhânu, ii. 127
Śuci, i. 387, 394
Śuddhodana, i. 380
Sudharmâtman (?), i. 387
Sudivya (?), i. 387
śûdra, i. 101, 125, 247, 302; ii. 6, 95, 98, 136, 150, 152, 155, 157, 163, 170, 191
Sugrîva, i. 156
Suhma, i. 300; ii. 101
Suka (?), ii. 120
Sukhâ, i. 271
Sukhâpura, i. 271
śukla, ii. 127
śuklabhûmi, i. 230
śuklapaksha, i. 359
Śukra, i. 132, 215, 358, 394; ii. 121, 199
śukrabâra, i. 213
Sukṛita, i. 262
Sukṛiti, i. 394
Ṣukshetra, i. 387, 394
Ṣukti, i. 257
Ṣuktibâm (?), i. 247
Śuktimatî, i. 257
Sukûrda, i. 261
śûla, i. 119, 210
Śûladanta, i. 231
Sûlika, i. 300, 302
Sumâli, i. 231
Sumanas, i. 255
Sumantu, i. 127
Sumedhas, i. 394
Sunnâm, i. 206
śûnya, i. 178
Suprayogâ, i. 257
surâ, i. 235
Surasa, i. 257
surakshas, i. 231
Śûrasena, i. 299, 300, 302
Surâshṭra, i. 300
Surejya, ii. 127
sureṇu, i. 251
sûri, i. 217
śûrpa, i. 163
Śûrpakarṇa, i. 300
Śûrpakâraka, i. 300
sûrya, i. 179, 215
Śûryâdri, i. 301
sûryaputra, i. 215
Sûrya-siddhânta, i. 153
Susaṁbhâvya, i. 387
Suśâuti, i. 387
Śushmin, i. 254
sûtaka, i. 355
sutâla, i. 230
sutala, i. 230
Sutapas, i. 394
Sutaya, i. 394
sûtra, i. 158
suvarṇa, i. 160, 161, 162, 163, 164
Suvarṇabhûmi, i. 303
Suvarṇadvîpa, i. 210; ii. 106
suvarṇavarṇa, i. 230
svâdûdaka, i. 235
Ṣvamukha, i. 302
Śvâpada, i. 231
Svargabhûmi, i. 262
svargârohaṇa, i. 133
svarloka, i. 45, 232, 233, 397
svârocisha, i. 387
svârociya, i. 387
Ṣvastikajaya, i. 231
Śvât, ii. 182
svâtî, i. 218, 391; ii. 85, 99, 100, 121
Svayaṁbhû, i. 398
svayambhuva, i. 241, 387
Śveta, i. 248; ii. 142
śvetaketu, ii. 242
Ṣyâmâka, i. 303
Syâvabala (?), ii. 208

TAITILA, ii. 197, 199
Tâkeshar, i. 208; ii. 8
Takshaka, i. 231, 247; ii. 120
Takshaśila, i. 302
tala, i. 290
tâla, i. 167, 230
Tâlahala, i. 302
tâlaka, i. 188
Târakruti (?), i. 302
Tâlakûna (?), i. 300
Tâlikaṭa, i. 301
Tâmalipta, i. 262
Tâmaliptikâ, i. 301
Tâmara, i. 262, 300
tamas, i. 40, 237, 399
Tamasâ, i. 257
tâmasa, i. 300
tâmasakîlaka, ii. 234, 238
tâmbiru, i. 220
Tâmrâ, i. 259
Tâmraliptika, i. 299
Tâmraparṇa, i. 301
Tâmravarṇâ, i. 257, 296
Tâna, i. 203, 205, 209, 298
tanduâ, i. 204
Tâneshar, i. 117, 199, 205, 300, 308, 316, 317; ii. 103, 145, 147
Taṅgaṇa, i. 303
Tankaṇa, i. 301
tantra, i. 155, 156

Tanvat (?), i. 201
tapana, i. 178
Tâpasâśrama, i. 301
Tapasvin, i. 394
Tâpî, i. 257
Tapodhṛiti, i. 394
tapoloka, i. 232
Tapomûrti, i. 394
Taporati, i. 394
taptakumbha, i. 60
Târa (?), i. 303 ; ii. 64
Târakâksha, i. 231
taraṇa, ii. 64
târaṇa, ii. 127
târî, i. 171
târkshya-purâṇa, i. 130
Tarojanapâla, ii. 13, 14
Tarû, i. 201
Tarûpana (?), i. 300
Taskara, ii. 238
tattva, i. 44, 179
Tattvadarśîca (!), i. 394
taukshika, i. 220
Tavallesbar, i. 208
Tharpura (?), i. 300
thohar (Sindhî), i. 192
Tiaurî, i. 202
tikani- (?)-yâtrâ, i. 158
Tillîta (?), i. 300
Tilvat, i. 201
Timingilâśana (?), i. 301
tiryagloka, i. 59
Tishya, i. 254, 372, 380
tithi, i. 179 ; ii. 194, 195, 201–203
Tobâ, i. 257
tola, i. 160, 162
trahagattata (?), ii. 192
trahî, trohî, ii. 197
Traipura, i. 300
tranjâi, ii. 182
trâsanîya, i. 344
trayam, i. 178
Trayyâruṇa, i. 398
tretâ, i. 372
tretâyuga, i. 253, 373, 397, 398 ; ii. 186
Tridhâman, i. 398
Tridivâ, i. 257, 262
Trigarta, i. 300, 302
triguṇa (?), i. 178
triharkasha (?), ii. 191
trihaspaka (?), ii. 191
trijagat, i. 178
trikâla, i. 178
trikaṭu, i. 178
Trikûṭa, i. 248
Trilocanapâla, ii. 13, 14
Trinetra, i. 303
triṅsaṁśaka, ii. 223
Tripavâ (?), i. 257
Tripurântika, i. 248
Tripurî, i. 301
Trisâgâ, i. 257
Triśira, i. 231
Trivikrama, i. 403
Trivṛisha, i. 398
triya, ii. 197
truṭi, i. 335 *seq.*, 337, 362, 363
Tukhâra, i. 261, 302
tulâ, i. 165, 219, 220
tulâdi, i. 357
Tumbavana, i. 301
Tumbura, i. 300
Tuṅgabhadrâ, i. 257
Turagânana, i. 302
Tûrân, i. 208
Tvashtṛi, i. 217, 342, 358 ; ii. 117, 121, 127

UDAKA, i. 136
Udayagiri, i. 301
Udbhira, i. 300
Uddehika, i. 300
udruvaga, i. 220
Udunpûr, i. 173
udvatsara, ii. 125
Udyânamarûra, i. 262
udyoga, i. 133
Ugrabhûti, i. 135
Ujain, i. 189, 202, 259, 298, 301, 304, 308, 311, 313, 316
Ujjayinî, ii. 241
Ûlyânda (?), i. 137
Umâdevî, i. 54
Ûmmalhâra, i. 209
ûna, ii. 21
ûnarâtra, i. 354 ; ii. 21 ; universal or partial, 23, 25, 34, 37, 186, 187, 192
Uñjara (?), i. 231
Ûpakâna, i. 262
upari, i. 290
Upavaṅga, i. 301
upavâsa, ii. 172
Uraga, i. 262
Ûrdhabîshau, i. 200
Ûrdhvakarṇa, i. 301
Ûrdvakuja, i. 231
Ûrja, i. 394
Urur, i. 387
urvarâ, i. 178
uśanas, i. 77, 131, 398

Ûshkârâ, i. 207
ushṇakâla, i. 357
Ushṭrakarṇa, i. 262
Uskala, i. 301
utâmasa (?), i. 387
Utkala, i. 300
utkṛiti, i. 179
Utpala, i. 157, 158, 298, 334, 336, 337, 361, 367
Utpalavinî (?), i. 257
utsarpiṇî, i. 371
Uttama, i. 398
Uttamaujas, i. 387
Uttamarṇa, i. 300
Uttânapâda, i. 241, 242
uttara, i. 290
uttarabhâdrapadâ, i. 218, 342 ; ii. 85, 86, 122, 127
uttarakhaṇḍakhâdyaka, i. 156 ; ii. 87, 90, 91
uttarakûla, i. 357
Uttarakurava, i. 302
uttaramânasa, ii. 142
Uttaranarmada, i. 300
uttaraphalguṇî, i. 218 ; ii. 84, 121
uttarâshâḍhâ, i. 218 ; ii. 85, 122
uttarâyaṇa, i. 356, 357 ; ii. 169
Uvaryahâr (?), i. 200

VAḌAVÂMUKHA, i. 266, 267, 269, 272, 278, 279, 302, 307, 327 ; ii. 201
Vaḍavânala, ii. 104
Vâḍha, i. 300
Vadhra, ii. 101
vâhinî, i. 407
Vahirgira, i. 299
Vâhlîka (!), i. 300
vahnijvâla, i. 61
Vaidarbha, i. 300
Vaideśa, i. 300
vaidhṛita, ii. 204, 206, 208
Vaidika, i. 300
Vaiḍûrya, i. 301
Vaihand, i. 206, 259, 317
Vaiṇyâ, i. 257
Vairahma (?), i. 344
vaiśâkha, i. 217, 218, 358, 403 ; ii. 123, 173 ; festivals, 179, 182, 186, 193
vaishṇava, i. 357
Vaishṇavî, i. 120
vaiśvânara, i. 178
Vaiśaṁpayana, i. 127
vaiśya, i. 101, 125, 247, 302 ; ii. 95, 98, 136, 155, 157, 170, 191
vaitaraṇî, i. 61, 257
Vaivasvata, i. 271, 387
Vâjasravas, i. 398
vajra, i. 119, 236, 241, 321, 360, 386 ; ii. 2, 3, 65, 203
vajrabrahmahatyâ, ii. 162
Vâka, i. 299
vakra, i. 215 ; ii. 101
Vâlikhilya, i. 395
Vallabha, i. 192, 193, 209 ; ii. 5, 6
Vallabhî, i. 192 ; ii. 6
Vâlmîki, i. 398 ; ii. 3
Vâmana, i. 129, 131, 396, 408
vâmana-purâṇa, i. 130
Vaṁśavara, i. 257
Vâṁśca (!), i. 394
vâna, i. 178, 300
Vanarâjya, i. 303
Vanaugha, i. 302
Vânavâsî, i. 301
Vanavâsika, i. 299
Vaṅga, i. 301
Vaṅgeya, i. 299
Vânupadevaś-ca, i. 387
Vaprîvan, i. 398
Vapushmat, i. 394
var (?), ii. 10
vâra, i. 355
Varâha, i. 131
Varâhamihira, i. 23, 54, 117-121, 153, 157, 158, 162, 164, 166, 167, 219, 220, 266, 268, 272, 276, 297, 299, 300 *seq.*, 320, 348, 389, 391, 392 ; ii. 7, 51, 66, 70, 86, 87, 88, 89, 92, 95, 103, 107 *seq.*, 113, 115, 116, 118, 123, 145, 190, 208, 235, 239, 240
varâha-purâṇa, i. 130
Vârâhî, i. 120
Varaka, i. 394
Vardhamâna, i. 301
varga, i. 297, 298
Vâricara, i. 301
varṇa, i. 100
varsha, i. 359
varshakâla, i. 211, 357 ; ii. 94
Varuṇa, i. 217, 242, 271, 292, 342, 358, 372 ; ii. 92, 115, 122
varuṇamantra, ii. 97
Varvara, i. 261
Vasâ, ii. 241
vâsara, ii. 118
vasanta, i. 357 ; ii. 179
Vasâti, i. 302
Vasavas, ii. 122
Vasishṭha, i. 115, 131, 225, 239, 268, 280, 340, 390, 394, 398 ; ii. 66, 96

vasishṭha-siddhânta, i. 153
vasu, i. 178, 291, 342, 394
Vâsudeva, i. 29, 52, 104, 107, 122, 133, 165, 199, 218, 254, 340, 341, 352, 362, 397, 398, 400 *seq.*, 401 *seq.*, 403 ; ii. 105, 137, 138, 147, 148, 175, 176, 177, 178, 180, 181, 182
Vâsuki, i. 231, 247 ; ii. 120
Vasukra, i. 126
Vasumân, i. 302
vaṭa, ii. 170
Vatsa, i. 299, 300, 301
vâyava, i. 290, 297, 302 ; ii. 202
Vâyavamantra, ii. 97
Vâyu, i. 292 ; ii. 66, 121
vâyu-purâṇa, i. 41, 130, 168, 194, 230, 231, 232, 234, 239, 241, 248, 251, 257, 258, 271, 287, 295, 296, 299 *seq.*, 337 ; ii. 62, 63, 65, 142, 245
veda, i. 29, 31, 104, 125, 131, 132, 178, 348, 393, 396, 398 ; ii. 21, 22, 82, 95, 96, 110, 111, 131, 136, 139, 140, 152, 179
Vedabâhu, i. 394
Vedasmṛiti, i. 257, 259
Vedaśrî, i. 394
Vedavatî, i. 257
vega, i. 344
Veṇâ, i. 301
Venavyâsa, i. 398
Veṇumatî, i. 259, 302
Venvâ, i. 257
Vibhâ, i. 271
vibhava, ii. 127
Vibhâvarîpura, i. 271
Vicitra, i. 387
Vidarbha, i. 301
Vidâsinî, i. 259
Vidhâtṛi, i. 217, 238
Vidiśâ, i. 257, 259
vidyâdhara, i. 91, 262 ; ii. 92
vidyut, i. 42
Vidyujjihva, i. 231
vighaṭikâ, i. 334
vijaya, ii. 127
Vijayanandin, i. 156, 343 ; ii. 49, 90
Vikaca, ii. 237
vikârin, ii. 128
vikrama, ii. 127, 128
Vikramâditya, i. 189 ; ii. 5, 6, 7, 129
vikṛita, ii. 127
vilambin, ii. 128
Vimalabuddhi, i. 158
vinâḍî, i. 337
Vinatâ, i. 252, 253
Vinâyaka, i. 120, 134
Vindhya, i. 247, 248, 257, 262, 301 ; ii. 92
Vindhyamûli, i. 300
Vipaścit, i. 387
Virâj, i. 241
Virajas, i. 387, 394
Virañcana, i. 361, 362
Virâṭa, i. 133
Viriñcya, i. 342
Virocana, i. 117, 231, 396 ; ii. 11
virodhin, ii. 127
viśâkhâ, i. 218, 231, 291, 391 ; ii. 85, 121
viśâla, i. 230, 344
Viśâlâ, i. 259
Viśâlyakaraṇa, i. 254
viśasana, i. 61
visha, ii. 159
Vishṇu, i. 94, 118, 130, 131, 216, 217, 231, 242, 253, 255, 358, 365, 382, 388, 394, 397, 398, 403 ; ii. 107, 120, 121, 122
Vishṇucandra, i. 153, 266, 376 ; ii. 111
vishṇu-dharma, i. 54, 113–115 (?), 126 (?), 132, 216, 217, 218, 241, 242, 287, 288, 291, 321, 329, 331, 332, 344, 353, 354, 358, 360, 372, 379, 380, 381, 386, 387, 398 ; ii. 2, 3, 21, 64, 65, 102, 121, 140, 145 (?), 174, 175
Vishṇupada, ii. 142
vishṇu-purâṇa, i. 47, 60, 61, 63, 77, 126, 130, 131, 230, 232, 235, 237, 238, 248, 254, 255, 256, 262, 325, 387, 388, 393 ; ii. 62, 105, 131, 132
Vishṇuputra, i. 387
vishṭi, ii. 197, 199
vishuva, ii. 188
viśva, i. 179, 342
Viśvakarman, ii. 121
Viśvâmitra, i. 239, 322, 394
Viśvarûpa, ii. 238
viśvâvasu, ii. 128
viśvedevâḥ, i. 357, 358 ; ii. 122
vitala, i. 230
Vitastâ, ii. 181
vitasti, i. 167
vitta (?), i. 215
Vitteśvara, i. 156, 392
vivâhapaṭala, i. 158
Vivarṇa, i. 262
Vivasvant, i. 217

Viviṁśa, i. 254
viyat, i. 178
Viyattha, i. 259
Voḍha, i. 325
Vokkâṇa, i. 302
Vṛihaspati, i. 131, 215
Vṛika, i. 299
Vṛikavaktra, i. 231
vṛiścika, i. 220
vriścikaloka, ii. 233
Vṛisha, i. 301, 387
vṛishabha (?), ii. 127
Vṛishabadhvaja, i. 300
vṛishan, i. 220
vṛishṇî, i. 344
Vṛitraghnî (?), i. 257
vṛitta, i. 145
vubara (?), ii. 104
Vyâḍi, i. 189–191
Vyâgramukha, i. 300
vyâkaraṇa, i. 135
vyakta, i. 41
Vyâlagrîva, i. 301
Vyâna (?), ii. 121
Vyâsa, i. 44, 104, 107, 108, 126, 127, 131, 132, 134, 171, 238, 340, 341, 352, 369, 394, 397, 398
vyâsamaṇḍala, i. 238
vyastatrairâśika, i. 313
vyatîpâta, ii. 204, 206, 208
Vyaya, i. 394; ii. 127

YÂDAVA, i. 133, 404, 405
yâhî, ii. 197
Yajna, i. 242
Yâjnavalkya, i. 128, 131, 132; ii. 174
yajnopavîta, i. 181; ii. 130, 136
yajurveda, i. 127, 128
yaksha, i. 89, 91, 92, 247, 262
Yama, i. 131, 178, 271, 291, 292, 303, 342; ii. 115, 122
Yamakoṭi, i. 267, 268, 272, 303
yamala, i. 178
Yamunâ, i. 308, 316
Yâmuna, i. 300, 302
yâmya, i. 358
Yâmyodadhi, i. 301
Yaśodâ (?), i. 382, 397, 401
Yaśovati, i. 302
yâtrâ, ii. 178
Yaudheya, i. 303
yava, i. 160, 162
Yavana, i. 153, 158, 300, 302; ii. 5
Yâvana-koṭi, i. 306
Yavasa (?), i. 261
Yayâti, ii. 174
yoga, ii. 191, 204 *seq.*
yogayâtrâ, i. 158
yojana, i. 153, 167, 168, 169, 224, 234, 236, 244 *seq*, 265, 311; ii. 65, 67
yojanas of heaven, ii. 72, 74, 79
Yima, i. 119
Yudhishṭhira, i. 340, 341, 390, 391, 403; ii. 3
yuga, i. 298, 367, 372 *seq.*, 397; ii. 1, 2, 124; their beginnings, 186, 187
yûkâ, i. 162
Yuktasa, i. 394
yuvan, ii. 127

ZÂBAJ, i. 210
Zauba (?), ii. 142
Zindutunda (?), i. 261

INDEX II.

ABDALKARÎM Ibn 'Abî Al'aujâ', i. 264
'Abdallâh Ibn Almukaffa', i. 159
Abd-almun'im v. Abû-Sahl, i. 5
Abû-Aḥmad Ibn Catlaghtagîn, i. 317
Abû-al'abbâs Alêrânshahrî (v. Aleranshahrî), i. 6
Abû-al'aswad Al-du'alî, i. 136
Abû-alfatḥ Albustî, i. 34
Abû-alḥasan of Ahvâz, ii. 19
Abû-Bakr Al-shiblî, i. 87
Abû-Ma'shar, i. 304, 325
Abû-Sahl 'Abd-almun'im Ibn 'Alî Ibn Nûḥ Al-tiflisî, i. 5, 7 (also under 'Abd-almun'im)
Abû-Ya'kûb of Sijistân, his book *Kashf-almaḥjûb*, i. 64
Abû-Yazîd Albisṭâmî, i. 88
Aḍud-aldaula, ii. 157
Afghans, i. 208
Afrâsiâb, i. 304
Al-êrânshahrî v. Abû-al'abbâs, i. 6, 249, 326
Alexander, story of his birth, i. 96
Alexander of Aphrodisias, i. 320
Alexandria, i. 153
Alfazârî, i. 165. 303, 314, 315 ; ii. 15, 16, 17, 18, 23
Al-ḥajjâj, ii. 153
'Alî Ibn Zain of Tabaristan, i. 382
Aljâḥiz, i. 204
Al jaihânî, book of routes, i. 240
Alkhalîl Ibn 'Aḥmad, i. 138, 147
Al-khwârizmî, ii. 79, 114
Alkindî, ii. 200, 201
Alma'mûra, i. 21
almanac from Kashmîr, i. 391
Almanṣûr, Khalif.
Al-manṣûra, i. 21, 173, 193, 205, 260, 316 ; ii. 6
Ammonius, i. 85
Aphrodisius, i. 407
Apollonius, *de causis rerum*, i. 40
Arabian astronomy (lunar stations), ii. 81, 90
Arabian metric, i. 138, 142, 144
Arabian traditions, i. 170, 185
Arabic literature, translation of Caraka, i. 159 ; Kalila and Dimna, translation from the Indian corrupt, i. 162
Arabs, i. 302 ; different forms of matrimony with them, i. 108 ; their idols, i. 123
Aratus, i. 97, 383 ; scholia on the *Phænomena*, i. 97, 384
Archimedes, i. 168
Ardashîr Ibn Bâbak, i. 100, 109
Ardiyâ, Eranian, i. 249
Aristotle, letter to Alexander, i. 124, 225, 226, 232 ; φυσικὴ ἀκρόασις, i. 320
Arjabhar, ii. 19
Arkand, i. 312, 316 ; ii. 7, 48, 49
Asclepius, i. 222
Asvira, i. 207

BABYLONIA, ii. 153
Bagdâd, ii. 15, 67
Balkh, i. 21, 260, 304
Barhatagîn, ii. 10
Baridîsh, Eranian, i. 260
Barmecides, i. 159
Barshawâr, i. 109
Barzakh, i. 63
Barzôya, i. 159
Bashshâr Ibn Burd, ii. 131
Bhatta-Shâh, i. 207
Bhattavaryân, i. 207
bist (=vishti), ii. 201
Bolor mountains, i. 117, 207
Bolor-Shâh, i. 206

Buddhists, i. 7, 21, 40, 91, 121, 156; their writing, 173; their cosmographic views, 249, 326; ii. 169
Bûshang, i. 299

CALENDAR of Kashmîr, ii. 5, 8
Ceylon, i. 209; pearls, i. 211
chess, i. 183–185
China, ii. 104
Chinese, ii. 239
Chinese paper, i. 171
Christianity, i. 6, 8
Christians, their use of the words Father and Son, i. 38
Christian views, i. 69
Christians, i. 94; ii. 186
Christian traditions, ii. 151, 161
clepsydræ, i. 337
Commodus, Emperor, i. 123
Constantine, Emperor, ii. 161

DAIBAL, i. 208
Daizan, i. 109
Dânak, Persian, i. 163
Denars, i. 309
Dîbajât (Maledives, Laccadives), i. 233; ii. 106
Dirhams, i. 160, 163, 164
diz (Persian), i. 304

EMPEDOCLES, i. 85
era of the realm of Sindh, ii. 48, 49
era of Yazdajird, ii. 48, 49
Eranian traditions, i. 249
Erânshahr,
Erichthonius, i. 407

FÂRFAZA, i. 299
farsakh, Persian, i. 167, 311; ii. 67, 68
Fulûs, i. 160
Fûsanj, i. 299

GALENUS, i. 222, 320; *de indole animæ*, i. 123; *book of speeches*, i. 95; *book of deduction*, i. 97; commentary to the Apothegms of Hippocrates, ii. 168; Protreticus, i. 34; commentary on the Aphorisms of Hippocrates, i. 35, 36; *Κατὰ γένη*, i. 127, 151
Gauge-year, ii. 2, 7, 28, 31, 39, 44, 47, 48, 50, 53
Ghazna, i. 117, 206, 317
Ghaznîn, ii. 103
ghûr, measure in Khwârizm, i. 166
Ghurrat-alzîjât, ii. 90
Ghuzz (Turks), ii. 168
Gilgit, i. 207
Girnagar, Eranian, i. 250
Girshâh, i. 109
Gospel, quoted, i. 4
Greek legends, i. 96
Greek philosophy, i. 7, 24, 33
Greek traditions, i. 105, 112, 143; origin of the alphabet, i. 172; on the astrolabe, i. 215, 219, 220, 222; on the Milky Way, i. 281, 289; on the first meridian, i. 304; on the chariot of war, i. 407

HARKAN, ii. 52
Hebrew, i. 36, 37, 38
Herbadh, i. 109
Hindus, their language, i. 17; classical and vernacular, i. 18; shortcomings of manuscript tradition, i. 18; the metrical form of composition, i. 19; their aversion to strangers, i. 20; their systems of matrimony, i. 107; the balance they use, i. 164; relation between authors (writers) and the nation at large, i. 265; their architecture, ii. 144
Hippocrates, his pedigree, i. 379
Homer, i. 42, 98
Huns, ii. 239

IBN ALMUKAFFA', i. 264
Impîlâ, name of the rhinoceros with the Negroes, i. 204
India, rainfall, i. 211, 212
Isfandiyâd, i. 193
Islam, sectarian views, i. 31, 263, 264
Ispahbad (of Kâbul), ii. 157
'Iyâs Ibn Mu'âwiya, ii. 158

JABRIYYA, a Muslim sect, i. 31
Jalam Ibn Shaibân, i. 116
Jam, i. 304
Jewish tradition on the tetragrammaton, i. 173
Jews, i. 6, 109; ii. 240
Johannes Grammaticus, refutation of Proclus, i. 36, 65, 226, 231; ii. 171
Jûn, Arabised form of *yojana*, i. 167
Jurjân, i. 258, 305; ii. 182
Jûzajân, i. 308

KÂBUL, i. 22; its history, ii. 10, 157

Kâbul-Shâhs, ii. 10
Kâf mountain, i. 193, 249
Kaikâ'ûs, i. 304
Kaikhusrau, i. 304
Kalîla and Dimna, i. 159
Kandî (?), ii. 182
Kangdiz, i. 304
Kanz-al'iḥyâ, title of a book of the Manichæans, quoted, i. 39
kardajât, i. 245, 275 ; ii. 205
Karmatians, i. 116, 117
Kâ'ûs, i. 193
Kashmîr, i. 117
katâ-birds, i. 195
Khaṇḍakhâdyaka, Arabic, ii. 208
khôm, Eranian, i. 249
Khoten, i. 206
Khayâl-alkusûfaini (by Alberuni), ii. 208
Khurâsân, i. 21
Khwârizm, sea of, i. 258
Khwârizmian measures, i. 166
kirṭâs (papyrus), i. 170
Kitâb-almanshûrât (by Ptolemy), ii. 69
Kitâb-ṭibb-alfiyala, ii. 245
Koran, i. 4 ; Ṣûfî interpretation, i. 83, 88 ; quoted, i. 170, 222 ; sectarian interpretations, i. 263 ; quoted, i. 264 ; ii. 111, 113
Ḳulzum, i. 270
Ḳumair islands, i. 210
ḳurṭaḳ, Arabic piece of dress, i. 180, 239

LACCADIVES, i. 210, 233
Langa (dove-country), i. 309
Langabâlûs, i. 241, 310
lavang (=clove), i. 309
Lôhâniyya, i. 316
lunar stations (of the Hindus), i. 297

MAḤMÛD (Yamîn-aldaula), i. 22, 117 ; ii. 2, 13, 103
Makrân, i. 208
Maledives, i. 210, 233
Manâ, Arabic, i. 163, 164, 166
Mânî, i. 48, 54, 55 ; his Book of Mysteries, i. 54, 264, 381 ; ii. 105, 169
Manichæans, i. 7, 39, 111, 123, 159
Miftâḥ-'ilm-alhai'a (by Alberuni), i. 277
miḳyâs, Arabic, i. 166
mithḳâl, i. 160. 161, 163, 164
Mu'âwiya, Khalif, i. 124
Muḥammad Ibn Alḳâsim, the conqueror of Sindh, i. 21, 116
Muḥammad Ibn Isḥâḳ, of Sarakhs, ii. 15, 16, 18
Muḥammad Ibn Zakariyyâ Al-râzî, i. 319
Muḥammira (Buddhists), i. 380
Muḳl, Arabic, a tree, i. 208
Mulamma', Arabic, kind of wood, i. 211
Multân, i. 121
Mu'tazila, i. 5
Myrtilus (?), i. 407

NARD, a play, i. 182
Nauroz, ii. 2
Nikâḥ-almaḳt, i. 109
Nile, sources, i. 270
nîmbahr, Persian, i. 343
nîmbahra, Persian, i. 214
Nîmroz, i. 198
Nîshâpûr, i. 305
nuhbahr, ii. 225, 228, 229

ORDEALS, ii. 159, 160
Oxus, i. 260

PAPER, i. 171
papyrus, i. 171
Persian, i. 40 ; vazîdaj = guzîda, i. 158, 213, 214 ; *susmâr*, i. 241
Persian grammar, technical term, i. 19
Persian metric, i. 138
Persian traditions, i. 21, 63, 100, 109, 193, 304
Plato, i. 43, 65, 67 ; *Leges*, i. 105, 123 ; 379, 385 ; *Timæus*, i. 35, 223, 231, 322 ; *Phædo*, i. 56, 57, 65–67, 71, 76, 85, 86 ; ii. 166, 167, 171
Pontus Euxinus, i. 258
Porphyry, quoted, i. 43
Proclus, i. 57, 86
Ptolemy, Almajest, i. 226, 269 ; geography, 298, 390 ; ii. 69
Pythagoras, i. 65, 75, 85

RAMM, island, i. 210
ratl, Arabic, i. 163
Rome, i. 306
Romulus and Remus, i. 112
Rustam, ii. 246

SABUKTAGÎN (Nâṣir-aldaula), i. 22

Śakakâla, ii. 46, 47, 49, 50, 51, 54, 55
Śakilkand, i. 299
Samarḳand, paper of, i. 171
Sarakhs, ii. 15
Sattî, ii. 155
Seven Ṛishis, i. 394
Shakh (=Śaka ?), ii. 48, 49
Shamaniyya (*śramaṇa*), i. 21
Shapûrḳân, i. 304, 308
Shâsh, i. 298
shauhaṭ, Arabic, kind of wood, i. 211
Shiltâs, i. 207
Shughnân-Shâh, i. 206
Sicily, i. 124
Sidâr, Arabic, piece of dress, i. 180
Sijistân, i. 198
Simonides, i. 172
Sindh, Muhammadan conquest, i. 21, 22, 165; Eranian, i. 260; mission from Sindh to Bagdad, ii. 15
Sindhind, i. 153, 332, 368; ii. 90, 191
Slavonians, ii. 167
Slavonians, sea of the, i. 258
smallpox (a wind blowing from Laṅkâ), i. 309
Socrates, i. 25, 85, 170; ii. 171
Sogdiana, i. 249
spêd-muhra, Persian, i. 328
Stoa, i. 98
Sufâla, i. 204, 211, 270; ii. 104
Sufi, explanation of the word, i. 33
Ṣûfîs, i. 351
Ṣûfism, i. 8, 57, 62, 69, 76, 83, 87, 88
sukhkh, measure in Khwârizm, i. 166
susmâr, Persian, i. 241
Syria, i. 270
Syriac, *pailâsôpâ*, i. 33

TARKÎB-AL'AFLÂK (v. Ya'ḳûb), i. 316, 353; ii. 67
Tartarus, i. 67
Tâshkand, i. 298
Tausar, i. 109
Tibet, i. 201, 206
Tibetans, ii. 10
Tirmidh, i. 260, 302
Tîz, i. 208
Tûrân, i. 208
Turks, i. 22, 206, 252, 302; ii. 10, 135, 178
Tûz, Persian, name of a tree, i. 171

UNANG, i. 207
Uzain (ujain), i. 308

VAKHÂN-SHÂH, i. 206
vellum, i. 171

WAḲWÂḲ, island, i. 210

YA'ḲÛB Ibn Ṭâriḳ, his *Tarkîb-al'aflâk*, i. 169, 303, 312, 316, 353; ii. 15, 18, 23, 26, 34, 38, 44, 45, 67, 68
Yazdajird, his era, ii. 48
Yemen (distinguished from Arabia), i. 270

ZÂBAJ, i. 210; ii. 106
Zanj, the nations of Eastern Africa, i. 252, 270; ii. 104
Zarḳân, i. 7
Zindîk, i. 264
Zoroaster, i. 21, 91, 96
Zoroastrians (in Sogdiana), i. 249, 260; their dakhmas, ii. 167

SOME VALUABLE BOOKS ON HISTORY

THE A-IN-I AKBARI in 3 Vols. (Bound in Two) / *Abu-l-Fazl Allami*
THE ADMINISTRATION OF THE MOGHUL EMPIRE / *Ishtiaq Husain Qureshi*
THE AGRARIAN SYSTEM OF MOSLEM INDIA: A Historical Essay with Appendices/ *W H Moreland*
AKBAR AND RISE OF THE MUGHAL EMPIRE / *G B Malleson*
ANNALS AND ANTIQUITIES OF RAJASTHAN: Or the Central and Western Rajput State of India in 3 Vols./ *James Tod*
ARCHITECTUR OF MANSARA: Illustrations of Architectural and sculptural objects/ *Prasanna Kumar Acharya*
ARCHITECTUR OF MANSARA / *Prasanna Kumar Acharya*
THE ARMY OF THE INDIAN MUGHALS: Its organization and administrati on/ *William Irvine*
THE ART OF WAR IN ANCIENT INDIA / *P C Chakravarti*
ASOKA AND THE BUDDHIST EMPEROR OF INDIA / *Vincent A Smith*
ASOKA TEXT AND GLOSSARY / *Alfred C Woolner*
AURANGZIB AND THE DECAY OF THE MUGHAL EMPIRE / *Stanley Lane-Poole*
BABAR: Rulers of India/ *Stanley Lane-Poole*
BRITISH INDIA AND ITS RULERS / *H S Cunningham*
A COMPREHENSIVE HISTORY OF INDIA IN 3 VOLS.: Civil, Military And Social From The First Landing of The English, To The Sup/ *Henry*
A CONCISE HISTORY OF THE INDIAN PEOPLE / *H G Rawlinson*
A CONSTITUTIONAL HISTORY OF INDIA 1600-1935 / *Arthur B Keith*
THE COPPER COINS OF INDIA INCLUDING BANGLADESH, BURMA, NEPAL AND PAKISTAN 2 parts in 1/ *W H Valentine*
A DICTIONARY OF HINDU ARCHITECTURE / Prasanna Kumar Acharya
THE EARLY HISTORY OF ISLAM IN 2 VOLS. bound in one / *Saiyid Safdar Hosain*
EMINENT MUSLIM FREEDOM FIGHTERS 1562-1947 / *G Allana*
AN ENCYCLOPAEDIA OF HINDU ARCHITECTURE / *Prasanna Kumar Acharya*
FROM AKBAR TO AURANGZEB: A Study in Indian Economic History/ *W H Moreland*
THE GRAND REBEL: An Impression of Shivaji Founder of Maratha Empire/ *Dennis Kincaid*
HINDU ARCHITECTURE IN INDIA AND ABROAD / *Prasanna Kumar Acharya*
HISTORY LITERATURE AND MYTHOLOGY OF THE HINDOOS IN 4 VOLS: Including A Minute Desption of Their Manners and Customs .../ *William Ward*
HISTORY OF CASTE IN INDIA: Evidence of The Laws of Manu on the Social Conditions in India During the 3rd Century A.D.../ *S V Ketkar*
A HISTORY OF DELHI UNDER THE LATER MUGHULS / *Percival Spear*
A HISTORY OF HINDU CIVILIZATION DURING BRITISH RULE (Three Volumes Bound in One)/ *Pramath Nath Bose*
THE HISTORY OF HYDER SHAH / *M M D L T*
HISTORY OF INDIA 150 AD TO 350 AD / *K P Jayaswal*
HISTORY OF INDIA DOWN TO THE END OF THE REGION OF QUEEN VICTORIA/ *M Prothero*
HISTORY OF INDIA FROM THE EARLIEST TIMES TO THE PRESENT DAY / *George Dunbar*
HISTORY OF INDIA: From the Earliest Times to the Twentieth Century in 2 Vols./ *H G Keene*
HISTORY OF INDIAN AND EASTERN ARCHITECTURE IN 2 VOLS.Bound in one/ *James Fergusson*
A HISTORY OF MUSLIM PHILOSOPHY: With Short Accounts of Other Disciplines & The Modern Renaissance in Muslim Lands 2 Vols./ *M M Sharif*
HISTORY OF NEPAL / *Pandit Sri Gunanand*
HISTORY OF THE MAHRATTAS 3 VOLS BOUND IN ONE / *James Grant Duff*
HISTORY OF THE PUNJAB 1799-1947 / *Ikram Ali Malik*

HISTORY OF THE RISE OF THE MAHOMEDAN POWER IN INDIA: Till the Year A.D. 1612 in 4 Vols./ *John Briggs*
HISTORY OF THE SIKHS: From the Origin of the Nation to the Battles of the Sutlej/ *J D Cunningham*
INDIA AND TIBET / *Franics Younghusband*
INDIA AT THE DEATH OF AKBAR: An Economic Study/ *W H Moreland*
INDIA'S STRUGGLE FOR SWARAJ / *R G Pradhan*
INDIAN ARCHITECTURE:According to Mansara-Silpasastra / *Prasanna Kumar Acharya*
INDIAN ECONOMIC LIFE: Past and Present/ *Brij Narain*
INDIAN JEWELLERY / *Thomas Holbein Hendley*
KINGS OF KASHMIRA IN 3 VOLS: Being A Translation of The Sanskrita Work Rajatarangini of Kahlana Pandita/ *Jogesh Chunder Dutt*
LAHORE: PAST AND PRESENT (Being an account of Lahore Compiled from Original Sources)/ *M Baqir*
THE LATER MUGHALS 2 VOLS. IN 1 / *William Irvin*
LIONS OF THE PUNJAB: Culture in the Making/ *Richard G Fox*
LOCAL GOVERNMENT IN ANCIENT INDIA / *Radakumud Mookerji*
MANASARA ON ARCHITECTURE AND SCULPTURE:Sanskrit text with critical notes/ *Prasanna Kumar Acharya*
MEDIAEVAL INDIA: Under Mohammedan Rule (A.D. 712 - 1764)/ *Stanley Lane-Poole*
MEMOIRS ON SIND IN 2 VOLS / *R Hughes Thomas*
THE MINIATURE PAINTING AND PAINTERS OF PERSIA, INDIA AND TURKEY FROM THE 8TH TO THE 18TH CENTURY in 2 Vols/ *F R Martin*
MOGUL INDIA (1653-1708) OR STORIA DO MOGOR IN 4 VOLS. / *Niccolao Manucci*
THE PANJAB NORTH-WEST FRONTIER PROVINCE AND KASHMIR / *Sir James Douie*
QUAID-I-AZAM JINNAH: Studies in Interpretation/ *Sharif Al Mujahid*
THE SHAH-NAMAH OF FARDUSI Translated from the original Persian/ *Alexander Rogers*
THE SIKANDAR NAMA E BARA:Abu mohammed bin yusuf bin mu,Ayyid i ni zamu d din/ *H Wilberforce Clarke*
THE SIKHS: An Ethnology/ A E Barstow
THE SOCIAL HISTORY OF KAMARUPA (3 VOLS BOUND IN ONE) / *Nagendra Nath Vasu*
SOME ASPECTS OF MEDIEVAL INDIAN HISTORY / *U N Day*
STUDIES IN INDIAN HISTORY AND CULTURE / *Nagendra Nath Law*
THE TABAQAT-I-AKBARI: A History of India from the Early Musalman Invasions to the 38th Year of the Reign of Akbar in 3 Vols.
THE TARIKH-I-MUBARAKSHAHI / *Y Bin A Bin 'A' Sirhindi*
TEXTBOOK OF INDIAN EPIGRAPHY / *K Satya Murty*
TRAVELS IN THE MOGUL EMPIRE AD 1656-1668 / *Francois Bernier*
THE TUZUK-I-JAHANGIRI OR MEMOIRS OF JAHANGIR 2 Vols. Bound in One/ *Henry Beveridge*
WORLD HISTORY— NEW HORIZONS / *Jagdish P Sharma*

Available at:

D.K. Publishers Distributors (P) Ltd.
1, Ansari Road, Darya Ganj, New Delhi-110002
Phones: 3261465, 3278368, Fax: 091-011-3264368

Alberuni's India is not a polemical but a simple historic record of facts during the period (997-1030) of Sultan Mahmud of Ghazani. Through his literary history of India, Alberuni detailed out contemporary chronicles of India's intellectual development, religious understanding and its philosophy and astrology—astronomy, both according to the Greek and Hindu system, as he was a master of these disciplines. He also devoted his research into the realm of sciences of physics, mathematics, chemistry. The principal objective of his writing about India was to acquaint the readers about India and its culture, customs, law, manners and civilization by comparing them with the theories of ancient Greece. Alberuni was also a Physical Science scholar and worked on material science, optics, mechanics, minerology, geology and he did not accept traditions of former ages as he wanted to understand them and to criticise them. His professional zeal and the principle of learning enabled him to leave an account of India which was considered to be the best of its kind.

ISBN 81-7536-307-X **Rs. 300**

LOW PRICE PUBLICATIONS
Delhi-110052